



Developer's Guide



Borland®
C++Builder™ 6
for Windows®

Borland Software Corporation
100 Enterprise Way, Scotts Valley, CA 95066-3249

Refer to the DEPLOY document located in the root directory of your C++Builder product for a complete list of files that you can distribute in accordance with the C++Builder License Statement and Limited Warranty.

Borland Software Corporation may have patents and/or pending patent applications covering subject matter in this document. Please refer to the product CD or the About dialog box for the list of applicable patents. The furnishing of this document does not give you any license to these patents.

COPYRIGHT © 1983–2002 Borland Software Corporation. All rights reserved. All Borland brand and product names are trademarks or registered trademarks of Borland Software Corporation in the United States and other countries. All other marks are the property of their respective owners.

Printed in the U.S.A.

CPE1360WW21001 6E4R0102
02030405-9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1
PDF

Contents

Chapter 1

Introduction 1-1

| | |
|---|-----|
| What's in this manual? | 1-1 |
| Manual conventions | 1-3 |
| Developer support services | 1-3 |
| Ordering printed documentation. | 1-3 |

Part I

Programming with C++Builder

Chapter 2

Developing applications with C++Builder 2-1

| | |
|---|-----|
| Integrated development environment. | 2-1 |
| Designing applications | 2-2 |
| Creating projects | 2-3 |
| Editing code | 2-3 |
| Compiling applications | 2-4 |
| Debugging applications. | 2-4 |
| Deploying applications | 2-5 |

Chapter 3

Using the class libraries 3-1

| | |
|---|-----|
| Understanding the class libraries | 3-1 |
| Properties, methods, and events | 3-2 |
| Properties | 3-2 |
| Methods | 3-3 |
| Events | 3-3 |
| User events | 3-3 |
| System events | 3-3 |
| Objects, components, and controls. | 3-4 |
| TObject branch | 3-5 |
| TPersistent branch | 3-6 |
| TComponent branch | 3-7 |
| TControl branch | 3-8 |
| TWinControl/TWidgetControl branch | 3-9 |

Chapter 4

Using BaseCLX 4-1

| | |
|--|-----|
| Using streams | 4-2 |
| Using streams to read or write data | 4-2 |
| Stream methods for reading and writing | 4-2 |
| Reading and writing components. | 4-3 |
| Copying data from one stream to another. . . | 4-3 |

| | |
|---|------|
| Specifying the stream position and size. . . . | 4-3 |
| Seeking to a specific position | 4-4 |
| Using Position and Size properties | 4-4 |
| Working with files | 4-4 |
| Approaches to file I/O | 4-5 |
| Using file streams | 4-5 |
| Creating and opening files using file streams | 4-6 |
| Using the file handle | 4-6 |
| Manipulating files. | 4-7 |
| Deleting a file. | 4-7 |
| Finding a file | 4-7 |
| Renaming a file. | 4-9 |
| File date-time routines | 4-9 |
| Copying a file | 4-9 |
| Working with ini files and the system Registry. | 4-10 |
| Using TIniFile and TMemIniFile. | 4-10 |
| Using TRegistryIniFile | 4-11 |
| Using TRegistry | 4-12 |
| Working with lists. | 4-12 |
| Common list operations | 4-13 |
| Adding list items. | 4-13 |
| Deleting list items | 4-14 |
| Accessing list items | 4-14 |
| Rearranging list items | 4-14 |
| Persistent lists | 4-14 |
| Working with string lists. | 4-15 |
| Loading and saving string lists | 4-15 |
| Creating a new string list. | 4-16 |
| Short-term string lists | 4-16 |
| Long-term string lists | 4-16 |
| Manipulating strings in a list. | 4-17 |
| Counting the strings in a list | 4-18 |
| Accessing a particular string | 4-18 |
| Locating items in a string list. | 4-18 |
| Iterating through strings in a list. | 4-18 |
| Adding a string to a list. | 4-18 |
| Moving a string within a list | 4-18 |
| Deleting a string from a list. | 4-19 |
| Associating objects with a string list | 4-19 |
| Working with strings. | 4-19 |
| Wide character routines. | 4-20 |
| Commonly used routines for AnsiStrings. | 4-21 |

| | |
|---|------|
| Commonly used routines for null-terminated strings. | 4-23 |
| Printing | 4-25 |
| Converting measurements | 4-25 |
| Performing conversions | 4-26 |
| Performing simple conversions | 4-26 |
| Performing complex conversions | 4-26 |
| Adding new measurement types | 4-26 |
| Creating a simple conversion family and adding units | 4-27 |
| Declare variables | 4-27 |
| Register the conversion family | 4-27 |
| Register measurement units | 4-27 |
| Use the new units. | 4-28 |
| Using a conversion function | 4-28 |
| Declare variables | 4-28 |
| Register the conversion family | 4-28 |
| Register the base unit. | 4-29 |
| Write methods to convert to and from the base unit. | 4-29 |
| Register the other units. | 4-29 |
| Use the new units. | 4-29 |
| Using a class to manage conversions. | 4-30 |
| Creating the conversion class | 4-30 |
| Declare variables | 4-31 |
| Register the conversion family and the other units | 4-31 |
| Use the new units. | 4-32 |
| Creating drawing spaces | 4-33 |

Chapter 5

Working with components **5-1**

| | |
|---|-----|
| Setting component properties | 5-2 |
| Setting properties at design time | 5-2 |
| Using property editors | 5-2 |
| Setting properties at runtime | 5-3 |
| Calling methods | 5-3 |
| Working with events and event handlers | 5-3 |
| Generating a new event handler | 5-4 |
| Generating a handler for a component's default event | 5-4 |
| Locating event handlers | 5-4 |
| Associating an event with an existing event handler | 5-4 |
| Using the Sender parameter. | 5-5 |
| Displaying and coding shared events. | 5-5 |

| | |
|--|-----|
| Associating menu events with event handlers. | 5-5 |
| Deleting event handlers | 5-6 |
| Cross-platform and non-cross-platform components | 5-6 |
| Adding custom components to the Component palette | 5-8 |

Chapter 6

Working with controls **6-1**

| | |
|---|------|
| Implementing drag and drop in controls. | 6-1 |
| Starting a drag operation. | 6-1 |
| Accepting dragged items. | 6-2 |
| Dropping items | 6-2 |
| Ending a drag operation | 6-3 |
| Customizing drag and drop with a drag object | 6-3 |
| Changing the drag mouse pointer. | 6-4 |
| Implementing drag and dock in controls. | 6-4 |
| Making a windowed control a docking site. | 6-4 |
| Making a control a dockable child. | 6-4 |
| Controlling how child controls are docked | 6-5 |
| Controlling how child controls are undocked. | 6-6 |
| Controlling how child controls respond to drag-and-dock operations | 6-6 |
| Working with text in controls | 6-6 |
| Setting text alignment. | 6-7 |
| Adding scroll bars at runtime | 6-7 |
| Adding the clipboard object | 6-8 |
| Selecting text. | 6-8 |
| Selecting all text | 6-8 |
| Cutting, copying, and pasting text | 6-9 |
| Deleting selected text | 6-9 |
| Disabling menu items. | 6-9 |
| Providing a pop-up menu | 6-10 |
| Handling the OnPopup event | 6-10 |
| Adding graphics to controls | 6-11 |
| Indicating that a control is owner- drawn. | 6-11 |
| Adding graphical objects to a string list | 6-12 |
| Adding images to an application | 6-12 |
| Adding images to a string list | 6-12 |
| Drawing owner-drawn items. | 6-13 |
| Sizing owner-draw items. | 6-14 |
| Drawing owner-draw items | 6-14 |

Chapter 7

Building applications, components, and libraries **7-1**

| | |
|---|------|
| Creating applications | 7-1 |
| GUI applications | 7-1 |
| User interface models | 7-2 |
| SDI applications. | 7-2 |
| MDI applications | 7-2 |
| Setting IDE, project, and compilation options | 7-3 |
| Programming templates. | 7-3 |
| Console applications | 7-4 |
| Using the VCL and CLX in console applications | 7-4 |
| Service applications | 7-4 |
| Service threads | 7-7 |
| Service name properties | 7-8 |
| Debugging service applications. | 7-9 |
| Creating packages and DLLs | 7-10 |
| When to use packages and DLLs | 7-11 |
| Using DLLs in C++Builder | 7-11 |
| Creating DLLs in C++Builder | 7-11 |
| Creating DLLs containing VCL and CLX components. | 7-12 |
| Linking DLLs. | 7-15 |
| Writing database applications | 7-15 |
| Distributing database applications. | 7-16 |
| Creating Web server applications | 7-16 |
| Using Web Broker | 7-17 |
| Creating WebSnap applications. | 7-18 |
| Using InternetExpress | 7-18 |
| Creating Web Services applications | 7-18 |
| Writing applications using COM. | 7-19 |
| Using COM and DCOM. | 7-19 |
| Using MTS and COM+ | 7-19 |
| Using data modules | 7-20 |
| Creating and editing standard data modules | 7-20 |
| Naming a data module and its unit file. | 7-21 |
| Placing and naming components | 7-22 |
| Using component properties and events in a data module | 7-22 |
| Creating business rules in a data module. | 7-23 |
| Accessing a data module from a form | 7-23 |
| Adding a remote data module to an application server project | 7-23 |
| Using the Object Repository | 7-24 |

| | |
|--|------|
| Sharing items within a project | 7-24 |
| Adding items to the Object Repository | 7-24 |
| Sharing objects in a team environment | 7-24 |
| Using an Object Repository item in a project. | 7-25 |
| Copying an item | 7-25 |
| Inheriting an item | 7-25 |
| Using an item. | 7-25 |
| Using project templates. | 7-25 |
| Modifying shared items | 7-26 |
| Specifying a default project, new form, and main form | 7-26 |
| Enabling Help in applications. | 7-26 |
| Help system interfaces | 7-27 |
| Implementing ICustomHelpViewer. | 7-28 |
| Communicating with the Help Manager | 7-28 |
| Asking the Help Manager for information. | 7-28 |
| Displaying keyword-based Help | 7-29 |
| Displaying tables of contents. | 7-30 |
| Implementing IExtendedHelp Viewer | 7-30 |
| Implementing IHelpSelector. | 7-31 |
| Registering Help system objects. | 7-32 |
| Registering Help viewers | 7-32 |
| Registering Help selectors | 7-32 |
| Using Help in a VCL Application. | 7-33 |
| How TApplication processes VCL Help. | 7-33 |
| How VCL controls process Help. | 7-33 |
| Using Help in a CLX Application. | 7-34 |
| How TApplication processes CLX Help. | 7-34 |
| How CLX controls process Help. | 7-34 |
| Calling a Help system directly | 7-35 |
| Using IHelpSystem | 7-35 |
| Customizing the IDE Help system | 7-35 |

Chapter 8

Developing the application user interface **8-1**

| | |
|--|-----|
| Controlling application behavior | 8-1 |
| Working at the application level. | 8-2 |
| Handling the screen. | 8-2 |
| Setting up forms. | 8-2 |
| Using the main form | 8-2 |
| Hiding the main form. | 8-3 |

| | | | |
|--|------|---|------|
| Adding forms | 8-3 | Registering actions | 8-28 |
| Linking forms | 8-3 | Creating and managing menus | 8-29 |
| Managing layout | 8-4 | Opening the Menu Designer | 8-30 |
| Using forms. | 8-5 | Building menus | 8-30 |
| Controlling when forms reside in | | Naming menus. | 8-31 |
| memory | 8-5 | Naming the menu items | 8-31 |
| Displaying an auto-created form | 8-5 | Adding, inserting, and deleting menu | |
| Creating forms dynamically. | 8-6 | items. | 8-31 |
| Creating modeless forms such as | | Adding separator bars | 8-33 |
| windows | 8-6 | Specifying accelerator keys and | |
| Creating a form instance using a local | | keyboard shortcuts. | 8-33 |
| variable. | 8-7 | Creating submenus | 8-34 |
| Passing additional arguments to forms | 8-7 | Creating submenus by demoting | |
| Retrieving data from forms | 8-8 | existing menus | 8-34 |
| Retrieving data from modeless | | Moving menu items | 8-35 |
| forms | 8-8 | Adding images to menu items | 8-35 |
| Retrieving data from modal forms | 8-10 | Viewing the menu | 8-36 |
| Reusing components and groups of | | Editing menu items in the Object | |
| components. | 8-12 | Inspector | 8-36 |
| Creating and using component templates | 8-12 | Using the Menu Designer context | |
| Working with frames | 8-13 | menu | 8-37 |
| Creating frames. | 8-13 | Commands on the context menu. | 8-37 |
| Adding frames to the Component | | Switching between menus at design | |
| palette | 8-14 | time | 8-37 |
| Using and modifying frames | 8-14 | Using menu templates | 8-38 |
| Sharing frames | 8-15 | Saving a menu as a template. | 8-39 |
| Developing dialog boxes | 8-15 | Naming conventions for template | |
| Using open dialog boxes. | 8-16 | menu items and event handlers | 8-40 |
| Organizing actions for toolbars and | | Manipulating menu items at runtime. | 8-40 |
| menus | 8-16 | Merging menus | 8-41 |
| What is an action? | 8-18 | Specifying the active menu: Menu | |
| Setting up action bands | 8-18 | property. | 8-41 |
| Creating toolbars and menus | 8-19 | Determining the order of merged | |
| Adding color, patterns, or pictures | | menu items: GroupIndex property. | 8-41 |
| to menus, buttons, and toolbars. | 8-20 | Importing resource files | 8-42 |
| Adding icons to menus and | | Designing toolbars and cool bars | 8-42 |
| toolbars. | 8-21 | Adding a toolbar using a panel | |
| Creating toolbars and menus that | | component | 8-43 |
| users can customize. | 8-22 | Adding a speed button to a panel | 8-44 |
| Hiding unused items and categories | | Assigning a speed button's glyph | 8-44 |
| in action bands | 8-22 | Setting the initial condition of a | |
| Using action lists. | 8-23 | speed button | 8-44 |
| Setting up action lists | 8-23 | Creating a group of speed buttons. | 8-45 |
| What happens when an action fires | 8-24 | Allowing toggle buttons | 8-45 |
| Responding with events | 8-24 | Adding a toolbar using the toolbar | |
| How actions find their targets. | 8-26 | component | 8-45 |
| Updating actions | 8-26 | Adding a tool button | 8-46 |
| Predefined action classes | 8-27 | Assigning images to tool buttons | 8-46 |
| Writing action components | 8-28 | | |

| | |
|---|------|
| Setting tool button appearance and initial conditions | 8-46 |
| Creating groups of tool buttons | 8-47 |
| Allowing toggled tool buttons | 8-47 |
| Adding a cool bar component | 8-47 |
| Setting the appearance of the cool bar | 8-48 |
| Responding to clicks | 8-48 |
| Assigning a menu to a tool button | 8-48 |
| Adding hidden toolbars | 8-49 |
| Hiding and showing toolbars | 8-49 |

Chapter 9

Types of controls **9-1**

| | |
|---|------|
| Text controls | 9-1 |
| Edit controls. | 9-2 |
| Edit control properties. | 9-2 |
| Memo and rich edit controls. | 9-2 |
| Text viewing controls (CLX only). | 9-3 |
| Labels | 9-3 |
| Specialized input controls. | 9-4 |
| Scroll bars | 9-4 |
| Track bars | 9-5 |
| Up-down controls (VCL only) | 9-5 |
| Spin edit controls (CLX only) | 9-5 |
| Hot key controls (VCL only) | 9-5 |
| Splitter controls. | 9-6 |
| Buttons and similar controls | 9-6 |
| Button controls | 9-6 |
| Bitmap buttons | 9-7 |
| Speed buttons. | 9-7 |
| Check boxes. | 9-7 |
| Radio buttons. | 9-8 |
| Toolbars | 9-8 |
| Cool bars (VCL only). | 9-8 |
| List controls. | 9-9 |
| List boxes and check-list boxes | 9-9 |
| Combo boxes | 9-10 |
| Tree views | 9-10 |
| List views | 9-11 |
| Date-time pickers and month calendars (VCL only). | 9-11 |
| Grouping controls | 9-11 |
| Group boxes and radio groups | 9-12 |
| Panels | 9-12 |
| Scroll boxes | 9-12 |
| Tab controls | 9-13 |
| Page controls | 9-13 |
| Header controls. | 9-13 |

| | |
|--|------|
| Display controls. | 9-14 |
| Status bars | 9-14 |
| Progress bars. | 9-14 |
| Help and hint properties | 9-15 |
| Grids | 9-15 |
| Draw grids. | 9-15 |
| String grids. | 9-15 |
| Value list editors (VCL only). | 9-16 |
| Graphic controls. | 9-16 |
| Images | 9-17 |
| Shapes | 9-17 |
| Bevels | 9-17 |
| Paint boxes. | 9-17 |
| Animation control (VCL only). | 9-17 |

Chapter 10

Working with graphics and multimedia **10-1**

| | |
|---|-------|
| Overview of graphics programming | 10-1 |
| Refreshing the screen | 10-2 |
| Types of graphic objects | 10-3 |
| Common properties and methods of Canvas. | 10-4 |
| Using the properties of the Canvas object | 10-5 |
| Using pens | 10-5 |
| Using brushes | 10-8 |
| Reading and setting pixels | 10-9 |
| Using Canvas methods to draw graphic objects. | 10-10 |
| Drawing lines and polylines | 10-10 |
| Drawing shapes | 10-11 |
| Handling multiple drawing objects in your application | 10-12 |
| Keeping track of which drawing tool to use. | 10-12 |
| Changing the tool with speed buttons | 10-13 |
| Using drawing tools. | 10-13 |
| Drawing on a graphic. | 10-16 |
| Making scrollable graphics | 10-17 |
| Adding an image control | 10-17 |
| Loading and saving graphics files. | 10-19 |
| Loading a picture from a file | 10-19 |
| Saving a picture to a file. | 10-20 |
| Replacing the picture | 10-20 |
| Using the clipboard with graphics | 10-21 |
| Copying graphics to the clipboard | 10-22 |

| | |
|--|-------|
| Cutting graphics to the clipboard | 10-22 |
| Pasting graphics from the clipboard | 10-22 |
| Rubber banding example | 10-23 |
| Responding to the mouse | 10-24 |
| Responding to a mouse-down action | 10-25 |
| Adding a field to a form object l to track mouse actions | 10-26 |
| Refining line drawing | 10-27 |
| Working with multimedia | 10-29 |
| Adding silent video clips to an application. | 10-29 |
| Example of adding silent video clips. | 10-30 |
| Adding audio and/or video clips to an application. | 10-31 |
| Example of adding audio and/or video clips (VCL only) | 10-33 |

Chapter 11

Writing multi-threaded applications 11-1

| | |
|--|-------|
| Defining thread objects | 11-1 |
| Initializing the thread | 11-2 |
| Assigning a default priority | 11-2 |
| Indicating when threads are freed | 11-3 |
| Writing the thread function | 11-4 |
| Using the main VCL/CLX thread. . . . | 11-4 |
| Using thread-local variables. | 11-5 |
| Checking for termination by other threads | 11-6 |
| Handling exceptions in the thread function | 11-6 |
| Writing clean-up code | 11-7 |
| Coordinating threads | 11-7 |
| Avoiding simultaneous access | 11-7 |
| Locking objects | 11-7 |
| Using critical sections | 11-8 |
| Using the multi-read exclusive-write synchronizer. | 11-8 |
| Other techniques for sharing memory | 11-9 |
| Waiting for other threads | 11-9 |
| Waiting for a thread to finish executing. | 11-9 |
| Waiting for a task to be completed | 11-10 |
| Executing thread objects | 11-11 |
| Overriding the default priority | 11-11 |

| | |
|--|-------|
| Starting and stopping threads | 11-11 |
| Debugging multi-threaded applications . . . | 11-12 |
| Naming a thread. | 11-12 |
| Converting an unnamed thread to a named thread | 11-12 |
| Assigning separate names to similar threads | 11-13 |

Chapter 12

Exception handling 12-1

| | |
|--|-------|
| C++ exception handling | 12-1 |
| Exception handling syntax | 12-1 |
| The try block | 12-2 |
| The throw statement. | 12-2 |
| The catch statement | 12-3 |
| Rethrowing exceptions | 12-4 |
| Exception specifications | 12-4 |
| Unwinding exceptions | 12-5 |
| Safe pointers | 12-5 |
| Constructors in exception handling. . . . | 12-6 |
| Handling uncaught and unexpected exceptions | 12-6 |
| Structured exceptions under Win32. | 12-6 |
| Syntax of structured exceptions | 12-7 |
| Handling structured exceptions | 12-8 |
| Exception filters | 12-8 |
| Mixing C++ with structured exceptions | 12-10 |
| C-based exceptions in C++ program example | 12-11 |
| Defining exceptions | 12-12 |
| Raising exceptions. | 12-12 |
| Termination blocks | 12-13 |
| C++Builder exception handling options | 12-14 |
| VCL/CLX exception handling | 12-15 |
| Differences between C++ and VCL/CLX exception handling | 12-15 |
| Handling operating system exceptions. . | 12-15 |
| Handling VCL and CLX exceptions. . . . | 12-16 |
| VCL and CLX exception classes | 12-16 |
| Portability considerations | 12-18 |

Chapter 13

C++ language support for the VCL and CLX 13-1

| | |
|--|------|
| C++ and Object Pascal object models. | 13-1 |
| Inheritance and interfaces | 13-2 |

| | | | |
|---|-------|---|-------|
| Using interfaces instead of multiple inheritance | 13-2 | EXISTINGARRAY macro | 13-19 |
| Declaring interface classes | 13-2 | C++ functions that take open array arguments. | 13-19 |
| IUnknown and IInterface | 13-3 | Types defined differently | 13-19 |
| Creating classes that support IUnknown | 13-4 | Boolean data types. | 13-19 |
| Interfaced classes and lifetime management. | 13-5 | Char data types | 13-20 |
| Object identity and instantiation | 13-5 | Delphi interfaces. | 13-20 |
| Distinguishing C++ and Object Pascal references | 13-5 | Resource strings | 13-21 |
| Copying objects | 13-6 | Default parameters | 13-21 |
| Objects as function arguments | 13-7 | Runtime type information | 13-22 |
| Object construction for C++Builder VCL/CLX classes. | 13-7 | Unmapped types | 13-23 |
| C++ object construction | 13-7 | 6-byte Real types. | 13-23 |
| Object Pascal object construction | 13-8 | Arrays as return types of functions | 13-23 |
| C++Builder object construction | 13-8 | Keyword extensions. | 13-23 |
| Calling virtual methods in base class constructors | 13-10 | __classid | 13-23 |
| Object Pascal model | 13-10 | __closure | 13-24 |
| C++ model. | 13-11 | __property | 13-26 |
| C++Builder model | 13-11 | __published. | 13-27 |
| Example: calling virtual methods. | 13-11 | The __declspec keyword extension | 13-28 |
| Constructor initialization of data members for virtual functions. | 13-12 | __declspec(delphiclass) | 13-28 |
| Object destruction | 13-13 | __declspec(delphireturn) | 13-28 |
| Exceptions thrown from constructors | 13-13 | __declspec(delphirtti) | 13-28 |
| Virtual methods called from destructors | 13-14 | __declspec(dynamic) | 13-29 |
| AfterConstruction and Before Destruction | 13-14 | __declspec(hidesbase). | 13-29 |
| Class virtual functions | 13-15 | __declspec(package). | 13-29 |
| Support for Object Pascal data types and language concepts | 13-15 | __declspec(pascalimplementation) | 13-29 |
| Typedefs. | 13-15 | __declspec(uuid). | 13-29 |
| Classes that support the Object Pascal language. | 13-16 | | |
| C++ language counterparts to the Object Pascal language. | 13-16 | | |
| Var parameters | 13-16 | | |
| Untyped parameters | 13-16 | | |
| Open arrays. | 13-17 | | |
| Calculating the number of elements | 13-17 | | |
| Temporaries | 13-18 | | |
| array of const | 13-18 | | |
| OPENARRAY macro | 13-19 | | |

| | |
|---|-------------|
| Chapter 14 | |
| Developing cross-platform applications | 14-1 |
| Creating cross-platform applications | 14-1 |
| Porting Windows applications to Linux | 14-2 |
| Porting techniques | 14-2 |
| Platform-specific ports | 14-2 |
| Cross-platform ports | 14-3 |
| Windows emulation ports | 14-3 |
| Porting your application | 14-3 |
| CLX versus VCL. | 14-5 |
| What CLX does differently. | 14-5 |
| Look and feel. | 14-6 |
| Styles | 14-6 |
| Variants | 14-6 |
| Registry | 14-6 |
| Other differences. | 14-7 |
| Missing in CLX | 14-7 |
| Features that will not port directly | 14-8 |
| CLX and VCL unit comparison | 14-8 |

| | |
|---|-------|
| Differences in CLX object constructors | 14-11 |
| Handling system and widget events | 14-12 |
| Sharing source files between Windows and Linux | 14-12 |
| Environmental differences between Windows and Linux | 14-13 |
| Directory structure on Linux | 14-15 |
| Writing portable code | 14-15 |
| Using conditional directives | 14-16 |
| Emitting messages | 14-17 |
| Including inline assembler code. | 14-18 |
| Programming differences on Linux | 14-19 |
| Cross-platform database applications | 14-19 |
| dbExpress differences | 14-20 |
| Component-level differences | 14-21 |
| User interface-level differences | 14-21 |
| Porting database applications to Linux. | 14-22 |
| Updating data in dbExpress applications | 14-24 |
| Cross-platform Internet applications | 14-25 |
| Porting Internet applications to Linux. | 14-26 |

Chapter 15 Working with packages and components **15-1**

| | |
|--|------|
| Why use packages? | 15-2 |
| Packages and standard DLLs | 15-2 |
| Runtime packages | 15-3 |
| Using packages in an application. | 15-3 |
| Dynamically loading packages | 15-4 |
| Deciding which runtime packages to use. | 15-4 |
| Custom packages. | 15-4 |
| Design-time packages | 15-5 |
| Installing component packages. | 15-5 |
| Creating and editing packages | 15-6 |
| Creating a package. | 15-6 |
| Editing an existing package. | 15-7 |
| Package source files and project options files | 15-8 |
| Packaging components. | 15-8 |
| Understanding the structure of a package | 15-9 |
| Naming packages. | 15-9 |
| Requires list | 15-9 |

| | |
|--|-------|
| Contains list | 15-10 |
| Building packages. | 15-10 |
| Package-specific compiler directives | 15-11 |
| Using the command-line compiler and linker | 15-12 |
| Package files created by building | 15-12 |
| Deploying packages | 15-13 |
| Deploying applications that use packages | 15-13 |
| Distributing packages to other developers | 15-13 |
| Package collection files | 15-13 |

Chapter 16 Creating international applications **16-1**

| | |
|--|-------|
| Internationalization and localization | 16-1 |
| Internationalization | 16-1 |
| Localization | 16-1 |
| Internationalizing applications | 16-2 |
| Enabling application code | 16-2 |
| Character sets | 16-2 |
| OEM and ANSI character sets | 16-2 |
| Multibyte character sets. | 16-3 |
| Wide characters | 16-3 |
| Including bi-directional functionality in applications | 16-4 |
| BiDiMode property | 16-6 |
| Locale-specific features | 16-8 |
| Designing the user interface | 16-8 |
| Text | 16-8 |
| Graphic images | 16-9 |
| Formats and sort order | 16-9 |
| Keyboard mappings. | 16-9 |
| Isolating resources. | 16-10 |
| Creating resource DLLs. | 16-10 |
| Using resource DLLs | 16-11 |
| Dynamic switching of resource DLLs | 16-12 |
| Localizing applications. | 16-12 |
| Localizing resources. | 16-12 |

Chapter 17 Deploying applications **17-1**

| | |
|--|------|
| Deploying general applications | 17-1 |
| Using installation programs | 17-2 |
| Identifying application files | 17-2 |
| Application files | 17-3 |

| | |
|---|-------|
| Package files | 17-3 |
| Merge modules | 17-3 |
| ActiveX controls | 17-5 |
| Helper applications. | 17-5 |
| DLL locations | 17-5 |
| Deploying CLX applications | 17-6 |
| Deploying database applications. | 17-6 |
| Deploying dbExpress database applications | 17-7 |
| Deploying BDE applications | 17-8 |
| Borland Database Engine | 17-8 |
| SQL Links | 17-9 |
| Deploying multi-tiered database applications (DataSnap) | 17-10 |
| Deploying Web applications | 17-10 |
| Deploying to Apache servers | 17-10 |
| Programming for varying host environments. | 17-11 |
| Screen resolutions and color depths | 17-12 |
| Considerations when not dynamically resizing | 17-12 |
| Considerations when dynamically resizing forms and controls | 17-12 |
| Accommodating varying color depths | 17-13 |
| Fonts | 17-14 |
| Operating systems versions. | 17-14 |
| Software license requirements | 17-15 |
| DEPLOY. | 17-15 |
| README | 17-15 |
| No-nonsense license agreement | 17-15 |
| Third-party product documentation | 17-15 |

Part II

Developing database applications

Chapter 18

Designing database applications 18-1

| | |
|--|------|
| Using databases | 18-1 |
| Types of databases | 18-2 |
| Database security. | 18-3 |
| Transactions. | 18-4 |
| Referential integrity, stored procedures, and triggers | 18-5 |
| Database architecture | 18-5 |
| General structure | 18-6 |
| The user interface form. | 18-6 |
| The data module | 18-6 |

| | |
|---|-------|
| Connecting directly to a database server | 18-7 |
| Using a dedicated file on disk | 18-9 |
| Connecting to another dataset | 18-10 |
| Connecting a client dataset to another dataset in the same application. | 18-11 |
| Using a multi-tiered architecture. | 18-12 |
| Combining approaches | 18-14 |
| Designing the user interface | 18-15 |
| Analyzing data | 18-15 |
| Writing reports. | 18-16 |

Chapter 19

Using data controls 19-1

| | |
|--|-------|
| Using common data control features | 19-2 |
| Associating a data control with a dataset | 19-3 |
| Changing the associated dataset at runtime. | 19-3 |
| Enabling and disabling the data source | 19-4 |
| Responding to changes mediated by the data source | 19-4 |
| Editing and updating data | 19-5 |
| Enabling editing in controls on user entry | 19-5 |
| Editing data in a control. | 19-5 |
| Disabling and enabling data display | 19-6 |
| Refreshing data display. | 19-6 |
| Enabling mouse, keyboard, and timer events | 19-7 |
| Choosing how to organize the data | 19-7 |
| Displaying a single record | 19-7 |
| Displaying data as labels | 19-8 |
| Displaying and editing fields in an edit box | 19-8 |
| Displaying and editing text in a memo control. | 19-8 |
| Displaying and editing text in a rich edit memo control | 19-9 |
| Displaying and editing graphics fields in an image control | 19-9 |
| Displaying and editing data in list and combo boxes. | 19-10 |
| Handling Boolean field values with check boxes | 19-13 |
| Restricting field values with radio controls | 19-13 |
| Displaying multiple records | 19-14 |

| | |
|--|-------|
| Viewing and editing data with TDBGrid. | 19-15 |
| Using a grid control in its default state | 19-15 |
| Creating a customized grid | 19-16 |
| Understanding persistent columns | 19-17 |
| Creating persistent columns. | 19-17 |
| Deleting persistent columns. | 19-18 |
| Arranging the order of persistent columns | 19-19 |
| Setting column properties at design time | 19-19 |
| Defining a lookup list column. | 19-20 |
| Putting a button in a column | 19-21 |
| Restoring default values to a column | 19-21 |
| Displaying ADT and array fields. | 19-22 |
| Setting grid options | 19-24 |
| Editing in the grid | 19-25 |
| Controlling grid drawing | 19-25 |
| Responding to user actions at runtime | 19-26 |
| Creating a grid that contains other data-aware controls | 19-27 |
| Navigating and manipulating records. | 19-28 |
| Choosing navigator buttons to display | 19-29 |
| Hiding and showing navigator buttons at design time | 19-29 |
| Hiding and showing navigator buttons at runtime | 19-29 |
| Displaying fly-over help. | 19-30 |
| Using a single navigator for multiple datasets | 19-30 |

Chapter 20

Using decision support components 20-1

| | |
|--|------|
| Overview | 20-1 |
| About crosstabs | 20-2 |
| One-dimensional crosstabs | 20-2 |
| Multidimensional crosstabs. | 20-3 |
| Guidelines for using decision support components. | 20-3 |
| Using datasets with decision support components. | 20-4 |
| Creating decision datasets with TQuery or TTable. | 20-5 |

| | |
|---|-------|
| Creating decision datasets with the Decision Query editor. | 20-6 |
| Using decision cubes | 20-7 |
| Decision cube properties and events | 20-7 |
| Using the Decision Cube editor | 20-7 |
| Viewing and changing dimension settings | 20-8 |
| Setting the maximum available dimensions and summaries. | 20-8 |
| Viewing and changing design options | 20-8 |
| Using decision sources | 20-9 |
| Properties and events | 20-9 |
| Using decision pivots. | 20-9 |
| Decision pivot properties. | 20-10 |
| Creating and using decision grids | 20-10 |
| Creating decision grids | 20-10 |
| Using decision grids | 20-11 |
| Opening and closing decision grid fields. | 20-11 |
| Reorganizing rows and columns in decision grids | 20-11 |
| Drilling down for detail in decision grids | 20-11 |
| Limiting dimension selection in decision grids. | 20-12 |
| Decision grid properties | 20-12 |
| Creating and using decision graphs | 20-13 |
| Creating decision graphs | 20-13 |
| Using decision graphs | 20-13 |
| The decision graph display. | 20-15 |
| Customizing decision graphs | 20-15 |
| Setting decision graph template defaults | 20-16 |
| Customizing decision graph series. | 20-17 |
| Decision support components at runtime. | 20-18 |
| Decision pivots at runtime | 20-18 |
| Decision grids at runtime. | 20-18 |
| Decision graphs at runtime. | 20-19 |
| Decision support components and memory control | 20-19 |
| Setting maximum dimensions, summaries, and cells | 20-19 |
| Setting dimension state. | 20-20 |
| Using paged dimensions | 20-20 |

| | |
|--|-------------|
| Chapter 21 | |
| Connecting to databases | 21-1 |
| Using implicit connections | 21-2 |
| Controlling connections | 21-2 |
| Connecting to a database server | 21-3 |
| Disconnecting from a database server | 21-3 |
| Controlling server login | 21-4 |
| Managing transactions | 21-6 |
| Starting a transaction | 21-6 |
| Ending a transaction | 21-8 |
| Ending a successful transaction | 21-8 |
| Ending an unsuccessful transaction | 21-8 |
| Specifying the transaction isolation level | 21-9 |
| Sending commands to the server | 21-10 |
| Working with associated datasets | 21-12 |
| Closing all datasets without disconnecting from the server | 21-12 |
| Iterating through the associated datasets | 21-12 |
| Obtaining metadata | 21-13 |
| Listing available tables | 21-13 |
| Listing the fields in a table | 21-13 |
| Listing available stored procedures | 21-14 |
| Listing available indexes | 21-14 |
| Listing stored procedure parameters | 21-14 |

| | |
|---|-------------|
| Chapter 22 | |
| Understanding datasets | 22-1 |
| Using TDataSet descendants | 22-2 |
| Determining dataset states | 22-3 |
| Opening and closing datasets | 22-4 |
| Navigating datasets | 22-5 |
| Using the First and Last methods | 22-6 |
| Using the Next and Prior methods | 22-6 |
| Using the MoveBy method | 22-7 |
| Using the Eof and Bof properties | 22-7 |
| Eof | 22-7 |
| Bof | 22-8 |
| Marking and returning to records | 22-9 |
| The Bookmark property | 22-9 |
| The GetBookmark method | 22-9 |
| The GotoBookmark and Bookmark Valid methods | 22-9 |
| The CompareBookmarks method | 22-9 |
| The FreeBookmark method | 22-10 |
| A bookmarking example | 22-10 |
| Searching datasets | 22-10 |

| | |
|--|-------|
| Using Locate | 22-10 |
| Using Lookup | 22-11 |
| Displaying and editing a subset of data using filters | 22-12 |
| Enabling and disabling filtering | 22-13 |
| Creating filters | 22-13 |
| Setting the Filter property | 22-14 |
| Writing an OnFilterRecord event handler | 22-15 |
| Switching filter event handlers at runtime | 22-15 |
| Setting filter options | 22-15 |
| Navigating records in a filtered dataset | 22-16 |
| Modifying data | 22-17 |
| Editing records | 22-17 |
| Adding new records | 22-18 |
| Inserting records | 22-19 |
| Appending records | 22-19 |
| Deleting records | 22-19 |
| Posting data | 22-20 |
| Canceling changes | 22-21 |
| Modifying entire records | 22-21 |
| Calculating fields | 22-22 |
| Types of datasets | 22-23 |
| Using table type datasets | 22-25 |
| Advantages of using table type datasets | 22-25 |
| Sorting records with indexes | 22-26 |
| Obtaining information about indexes | 22-26 |
| Specifying an index with IndexName | 22-26 |
| Creating an index with IndexFieldNames | 22-27 |
| Using Indexes to search for records | 22-27 |
| Executing a search with Goto methods | 22-28 |
| Executing a search with Find methods | 22-29 |
| Specifying the current record after a successful search | 22-29 |
| Searching on partial keys | 22-29 |
| Repeating or extending a search | 22-29 |
| Limiting records with ranges | 22-30 |
| Understanding the differences between ranges and filters | 22-30 |
| Specifying ranges | 22-30 |

| | | | |
|---|-------|---|-------|
| Modifying a range | 22-33 | Programming a calculated field | 23-7 |
| Applying or canceling a range | 22-34 | Defining a lookup field | 23-8 |
| Creating master/detail relationships. | 22-34 | Defining an aggregate field. | 23-10 |
| Making the table a detail of another | | Deleting persistent field | |
| dataset | 22-34 | components | 23-10 |
| Using nested detail tables | 22-36 | Setting persistent field properties | |
| Controlling Read/write access to | | and events | 23-10 |
| tables. | 22-37 | Setting display and edit properties | |
| Creating and deleting tables | 22-37 | at design time. | 23-11 |
| Creating tables | 22-37 | Setting field component properties | |
| Deleting tables | 22-40 | at runtime. | 23-12 |
| Emptying tables | 22-40 | Creating attribute sets for field | |
| Synchronizing tables. | 22-40 | components. | 23-12 |
| Using query-type datasets | 22-41 | Associating attribute sets with field | |
| Specifying the query | 22-42 | components. | 23-13 |
| Specifying a query using the | | Removing attribute associations | 23-14 |
| SQL property | 22-42 | Controlling and masking user | |
| Specifying a query using the | | input. | 23-14 |
| CommandText property | 22-43 | Using default formatting for numeric, | |
| Using parameters in queries | 22-43 | date, and time fields | 23-14 |
| Supplying parameters at design | | Handling events | 23-15 |
| time. | 22-44 | Working with field component methods | |
| Supplying parameters at runtime. | 22-45 | at runtime | 23-16 |
| Establishing master/detail relationships | | Displaying, converting, and accessing | |
| using parameters | 22-46 | field values. | 23-17 |
| Preparing queries. | 22-47 | Displaying field component values | |
| Executing queries that don't return a | | in standard controls | 23-17 |
| result set. | 22-47 | Converting field values. | 23-17 |
| Using unidirectional result sets. | 22-48 | Accessing field values with the default | |
| Using stored procedure-type datasets. | 22-48 | dataset property | 23-19 |
| Working with stored procedure | | Accessing field values with a dataset's | |
| parameters. | 22-50 | Fields property. | 23-19 |
| Setting up parameters at design | | Accessing field values with a dataset's | |
| time. | 22-50 | FieldByName method. | 23-20 |
| Using parameters at runtime | 22-52 | Setting a default value for a field | 23-20 |
| Preparing stored procedures | 22-52 | Working with constraints | 23-21 |
| Executing stored procedures that don't | | Creating a custom constraint. | 23-21 |
| return a result set | 22-53 | Using server constraints | 23-21 |
| Fetching multiple result sets | 22-53 | Using object fields | 23-22 |
| | | Displaying ADT and array fields | 23-23 |
| | | Working with ADT fields. | 23-23 |
| | | Using persistent field | |
| | | components. | 23-24 |
| | | Using the dataset's FieldByName | |
| | | method | 23-24 |
| | | Using the dataset's FieldValues | |
| | | property. | 23-24 |
| | | Using the ADT field's FieldValues | |
| | | property. | 23-24 |

Chapter 23

Working with field components 23-1

| | |
|--|------|
| Dynamic field components | 23-2 |
| Persistent field components | 23-3 |
| Creating persistent fields | 23-4 |
| Arranging persistent fields | 23-5 |
| Defining new persistent fields | 23-5 |
| Defining a data field | 23-6 |
| Defining a calculated field | 23-7 |

| | |
|---|-------|
| Using the ADT field's Fields property | 23-24 |
| Working with array fields | 23-25 |
| Using persistent fields | 23-25 |
| Using the array field's FieldValues property | 23-25 |
| Using the array field's Fields property | 23-25 |
| Working with dataset fields | 23-25 |
| Displaying dataset fields | 23-26 |
| Accessing data in a nested dataset | 23-26 |
| Working with reference fields | 23-26 |
| Displaying reference fields | 23-26 |
| Accessing data in a reference field | 23-27 |

Chapter 24

Using the Borland Database Engine

24-1

| | |
|--|-------|
| BDE-based architecture | 24-1 |
| Using BDE-enabled datasets | 24-2 |
| Associating a dataset with database and session connections | 24-3 |
| Caching BLOBs | 24-4 |
| Obtaining a BDE handle | 24-4 |
| Using TTable | 24-4 |
| Specifying the table type for local tables | 24-5 |
| Controlling read/write access to local tables | 24-6 |
| Specifying a dBASE index file | 24-6 |
| Renaming local tables | 24-7 |
| Importing data from another table | 24-7 |
| Using TQuery | 24-8 |
| Creating heterogeneous queries | 24-9 |
| Obtaining an editable result set | 24-10 |
| Updating read-only result sets | 24-11 |
| Using TStoredProc | 24-11 |
| Binding parameters | 24-11 |
| Working with Oracle overloaded stored procedures | 24-12 |
| Connecting to databases with TDatabase | 24-12 |
| Associating a database component with a session | 24-12 |
| Understanding database and session component interactions | 24-13 |
| Identifying the database | 24-13 |

| | |
|---|-------|
| Opening a connection using TDatabase | 24-15 |
| Using database components in data modules | 24-16 |
| Managing database sessions | 24-16 |
| Activating a session | 24-17 |
| Specifying default database connection behavior | 24-18 |
| Managing database connections | 24-19 |
| Working with password-protected Paradox and dBASE tables | 24-21 |
| Specifying Paradox directory locations | 24-23 |
| Working with BDE aliases | 24-24 |
| Retrieving information about a session | 24-26 |
| Creating additional sessions | 24-26 |
| Naming a session | 24-27 |
| Managing multiple sessions | 24-28 |
| Using transactions with the BDE | 24-29 |
| Using passthrough SQL | 24-30 |
| Using local transactions | 24-31 |
| Using the BDE to cache updates | 24-31 |
| Enabling BDE-based cached updates | 24-33 |
| Applying BDE-based cached updates | 24-33 |
| Applying cached updates using a database | 24-34 |
| Applying cached updates with dataset component methods | 24-35 |
| Creating an OnUpdateRecord event handler | 24-35 |
| Handling cached update errors | 24-37 |
| Using update objects to update a dataset | 24-39 |
| Creating SQL statements for update components | 24-40 |
| Using multiple update objects | 24-43 |
| Executing the SQL statements | 24-44 |
| Using TBatchMove | 24-47 |
| Creating a batch move component | 24-47 |
| Specifying a batch move mode | 24-48 |
| Appending records | 24-48 |
| Updating records | 24-49 |
| Appending and updating records | 24-49 |
| Copying datasets | 24-49 |
| Deleting records | 24-49 |

| | |
|--|-------|
| Mapping data types | 24-49 |
| Executing a batch move | 24-50 |
| Handling batch move errors | 24-51 |
| The Data Dictionary | 24-51 |
| Tools for working with the BDE | 24-53 |

Chapter 25

Working with ADO components 25-1

| | |
|--|-------|
| Overview of ADO components | 25-1 |
| Connecting to ADO data stores | 25-2 |
| Connecting to a data store using | |
| TADOConnection. | 25-3 |
| Accessing the connection object. | 25-4 |
| Fine-tuning a connection | 25-4 |
| Forcing asynchronous connections | 25-5 |
| Controlling time-outs. | 25-5 |
| Indicating the types of operations | |
| the connection supports | 25-5 |
| Specifying whether the connection | |
| automatically initiates transactions | 25-6 |
| Accessing the connection's commands | 25-7 |
| ADO connection events | 25-7 |
| Events when establishing a | |
| connection | 25-7 |
| Events when disconnecting | 25-7 |
| Events when managing | |
| transactions | 25-8 |
| Other events. | 25-8 |
| Using ADO datasets | 25-8 |
| Connecting an ADO dataset to | |
| a data store | 25-9 |
| Working with record sets | 25-10 |
| Filtering records based on | |
| bookmarks | 25-10 |
| Fetching records | |
| asynchronously | 25-11 |
| Using batch updates | 25-11 |
| Loading data from and saving | |
| data to files. | 25-14 |
| Using TADODataSet | 25-15 |
| Using Command objects | 25-16 |
| Specifying the command | 25-17 |
| Using the Execute method. | 25-17 |
| Canceling commands | 25-17 |
| Retrieving result sets with | |
| commands. | 25-18 |
| Handling command parameters | 25-18 |

Chapter 26

Using unidirectional datasets 26-1

| | |
|---|-------|
| Types of unidirectional datasets | 26-2 |
| Connecting to the database server | 26-2 |
| Setting up TSQLConnection | 26-3 |
| Identifying the driver | 26-3 |
| Specifying connection parameters | 26-4 |
| Naming a connection description | 26-4 |
| Using the Connection Editor | 26-5 |
| Specifying what data to display. | 26-5 |
| Representing the results of a query | 26-6 |
| Representing the records in a table | 26-6 |
| Representing a table using | |
| TSQLDataSet | 26-6 |
| Representing a table using | |
| TSQLTable | 26-7 |
| Representing the results of a stored | |
| procedure. | 26-7 |
| Fetching the data | 26-8 |
| Preparing the dataset | 26-8 |
| Fetching multiple datasets | 26-9 |
| Executing commands that do not | |
| return records | 26-9 |
| Specifying the command to | |
| execute | 26-9 |
| Executing the command | 26-10 |
| Creating and modifying server | |
| metadata | 26-10 |
| Setting up master/detail linked | |
| cursors | 26-11 |
| Accessing schema information | 26-12 |
| Fetching metadata into a unidirectional | |
| dataset | 26-12 |
| Fetching data after using the | |
| dataset for metadata. | 26-13 |
| The structure of metadata | |
| datasets | 26-13 |
| Debugging dbExpress applications. | 26-17 |
| Using TSQLMonitor to monitor | |
| SQL commands | 26-17 |
| Using a callback to monitor | |
| SQL commands | 26-18 |

Chapter 27

Using client datasets 27-1

| | |
|--|------|
| Working with data using a client | |
| dataset | 27-2 |
| Navigating data in client datasets | 27-2 |

| | | | |
|---|-------|--|-------|
| Overview of a three-tiered application. | 29-3 | Specifying a connection using SOAP | 29-25 |
| The structure of the client application. | 29-4 | Brokering connections | 29-25 |
| The structure of the application server. | 29-5 | Managing server connections | 29-26 |
| The contents of the remote data module | 29-6 | Connecting to the server | 29-26 |
| Using transactional data modules | 29-6 | Dropping or changing a server connection | 29-26 |
| Pooling remote data modules | 29-8 | Calling server interfaces | 29-27 |
| Choosing a connection protocol | 29-9 | Connecting to an application server that uses multiple data modules. | 29-28 |
| Using DCOM connections | 29-9 | Writing Web-based client applications | 29-28 |
| Using Socket connections | 29-9 | Distributing a client application as an ActiveX control | 29-30 |
| Using Web connections. | 29-10 | Creating an Active Form for the client application. | 29-30 |
| Using SOAP connections. | 29-11 | Building Web applications using InternetExpress | 29-31 |
| Building a multi-tiered application | 29-11 | Building an InternetExpress application | 29-31 |
| Creating the application server. | 29-12 | Using the javascript libraries | 29-33 |
| Setting up the remote data module. | 29-13 | Granting permission to access and launch the application server. | 29-33 |
| Configuring the remote data module when it is not transactional | 29-13 | Using an XML broker | 29-34 |
| Configuring a transactional remote data module | 29-14 | Fetching XML data packets. | 29-34 |
| Configuring TSoapDataModule. | 29-15 | Applying updates from XML delta packets | 29-35 |
| Extending the application server's interface | 29-16 | Creating Web pages with an InternetExpress page producer | 29-36 |
| Adding callbacks to the application server's interface | 29-17 | Using the Web page editor | 29-37 |
| Extending a transactional application server's interface | 29-17 | Setting Web item properties | 29-37 |
| Managing transactions in multi-tiered applications | 29-17 | Customizing the InternetExpress page producer template. | 29-38 |
| Supporting master/detail relationships. | 29-18 | | |
| Supporting state information in remote data modules. | 29-19 | Chapter 30 | |
| Using multiple remote data modules | 29-20 | Using XML in database applications 30-1 | |
| Registering the application server | 29-21 | Defining transformations | 30-1 |
| Creating the client application | 29-21 | Mapping between XML nodes and data packet fields | 30-2 |
| Connecting to the application server. | 29-22 | Using XMLMapper | 30-4 |
| Specifying a connection using DCOM | 29-23 | Loading an XML schema or data packet | 30-4 |
| Specifying a connection using sockets | 29-23 | Defining mappings | 30-4 |
| Specifying a connection using HTTP | 29-24 | Generating transformation files | 30-5 |
| | | Converting XML documents into data packets | 30-6 |
| | | Specifying the source XML document. | 30-6 |
| | | Specifying the transformation | 30-7 |
| | | Obtaining the resulting data packet. | 30-7 |

| | |
|--|-------|
| Converting user-defined nodes | 30-7 |
| Using an XML document as the source for a provider | 30-8 |
| Using an XML document as the client of a provider | 30-9 |
| Fetching an XML document from a provider | 30-9 |
| Applying updates from an XML document to a provider | 30-10 |

Part III

Writing Internet applications

Chapter 31

Writing CORBA applications **31-1**

| | |
|--|-------|
| Overview of a CORBA application | 31-1 |
| Understanding stubs and skeletons | 31-2 |
| Using Smart Agent | 31-3 |
| Activating server applications | 31-3 |
| Binding interface calls dynamically | 31-4 |
| Writing CORBA servers | 31-4 |
| Defining object interfaces | 31-5 |
| Using the CORBA Server Wizard | 31-5 |
| Generating stubs and skeletons from an IDL file | 31-6 |
| Using the CORBA Object Implementa- tion Wizard | 31-6 |
| Instantiating CORBA objects | 31-7 |
| Using the delegation model | 31-8 |
| Viewing and editing changes | 31-9 |
| Implementing CORBA Objects | 31-9 |
| Guarding against thread conflicts | 31-11 |
| Changing CORBA interfaces | 31-12 |
| Registering server interfaces | 31-12 |
| Writing CORBA clients | 31-13 |
| Using stubs | 31-14 |
| Using the dynamic invocation interface | 31-15 |
| Testing CORBA servers | 31-16 |
| Setting up the testing tool | 31-16 |
| Recording and running test scripts. | 31-17 |

Chapter 32

Creating Internet server applications **32-1**

| | |
|--|------|
| About Web Broker and WebSnap | 32-1 |
| Terminology and standards. | 32-3 |

| | |
|---|-------|
| Parts of a Uniform Resource Locator | 32-3 |
| URI vs. URL | 32-4 |
| HTTP request header information. | 32-4 |
| HTTP server activity | 32-5 |
| Composing client requests | 32-5 |
| Serving client requests | 32-5 |
| Responding to client requests | 32-6 |
| Types of Web server applications | 32-6 |
| ISAPI and NSAPI | 32-6 |
| CGI stand-alone | 32-7 |
| Win-CGI stand-alone | 32-7 |
| Apache | 32-7 |
| Web App Debugger | 32-7 |
| Converting Web server application target types. | 32-8 |
| Debugging server applications | 32-9 |
| Using the Web Application Debugger | 32-9 |
| Launching your application with the Web Application Debugger. | 32-9 |
| Converting your application to another type of Web server application | 32-10 |
| Debugging Web applications that are DLLs | 32-10 |
| User rights necessary for DLL debugging. | 32-11 |

Chapter 33

Using Web Broker **33-1**

| | |
|---|------|
| Creating Web server applications with Web Broker. | 33-1 |
| The Web module. | 33-2 |
| The Web Application object | 33-3 |
| The structure of a Web Broker application | 33-3 |
| The Web dispatcher. | 33-4 |
| Adding actions to the dispatcher | 33-4 |
| Dispatching request messages | 33-5 |
| Action items | 33-5 |
| Determining when action items fire. | 33-6 |
| The target URL. | 33-6 |
| The request method type | 33-6 |
| Enabling and disabling action items. | 33-6 |
| Choosing a default action item. | 33-7 |
| Responding to request messages with action items | 33-7 |
| Sending the response | 33-8 |

| | |
|---|-------|
| Using multiple action items | 33-8 |
| Accessing client request information | 33-8 |
| Properties that contain request header information | 33-9 |
| Properties that identify the target | 33-9 |
| Properties that describe the Web client | 33-9 |
| Properties that identify the purpose of the request | 33-9 |
| Properties that describe the expected response | 33-10 |
| Properties that describe the content | 33-10 |
| The content of HTTP request messages | 33-10 |
| Creating HTTP response messages | 33-10 |
| Filling in the response header | 33-11 |
| Indicating the response status | 33-11 |
| Indicating the need for client action | 33-11 |
| Describing the server application | 33-12 |
| Describing the content | 33-12 |
| Setting the response content | 33-12 |
| Sending the response | 33-12 |
| Generating the content of response messages | 33-13 |
| Using page producer components | 33-13 |
| HTML templates | 33-13 |
| Specifying the HTML template | 33-14 |
| Converting HTML-transparent tags | 33-15 |
| Using page producers from an action item | 33-15 |
| Chaining page producers together | 33-16 |
| Using database information in responses | 33-17 |
| Adding a session to the Web module | 33-17 |
| Representing database information in HTML | 33-18 |
| Using dataset page producers | 33-18 |
| Using table producers | 33-18 |
| Specifying the table attributes | 33-18 |
| Specifying the row attributes | 33-19 |
| Specifying the columns | 33-19 |
| Embedding tables in HTML documents | 33-19 |

| | |
|---|-------|
| Setting up a dataset table producer | 33-20 |
| Setting up a query table producer | 33-20 |

Chapter 34

Creating Web Server applications using WebSnap 34-1

| | |
|--|-------|
| Fundamental WebSnap components | 34-2 |
| Web modules | 34-2 |
| Web application module types | 34-3 |
| Web page modules | 34-4 |
| Web data modules | 34-4 |
| Adapters | 34-5 |
| Fields | 34-5 |
| Actions | 34-6 |
| Errors | 34-6 |
| Records | 34-6 |
| Page producers | 34-6 |
| Creating Web server applications with WebSnap | 34-7 |
| Selecting a server type | 34-8 |
| Specifying application module components | 34-8 |
| Selecting Web application module options | 34-10 |
| WebSnap tutorial | 34-11 |
| Create a new application | 34-11 |
| Step 1. Start the WebSnap application wizard | 34-11 |
| Step 2. Save the generated files and project | 34-11 |
| Step 3. Specify the application title | 34-12 |
| Create a CountryTable page | 34-12 |
| Step 1. Add a new Web page module | 34-12 |
| Step 2. Save the new Web page module | 34-13 |
| Add data components to the CountryTable module | 34-13 |
| Step 1. Add data-aware components | 34-13 |
| Step 2. Specify a key field | 34-14 |
| Step 3. Add an adapter component | 34-14 |
| Create a grid to display the data | 34-15 |
| Step 1. Add a grid | 34-15 |

| | |
|---|-------|
| Step 2. Add editing commands to the grid | 34-17 |
| Add an edit form | 34-18 |
| Step 1. Add a new Web page module | 34-18 |
| Step 2. Save the new module | 34-18 |
| Step 3. Make CountryTableU accessible to the new module | 34-18 |
| Step 4. Add input fields | 34-18 |
| Step 5. Add buttons. | 34-19 |
| Step 6. Link form actions to the grid page. | 34-20 |
| Step 7. Link grid actions to the form page | 34-20 |
| Run the completed application | 34-21 |
| Add error reporting | 34-21 |
| Step 1. Add error support to the grid. | 34-21 |
| Step 2. Add error support to the form | 34-22 |
| Step 3. Test the error-reporting mechanism. | 34-22 |
| Advanced HTML design | 34-23 |
| Manipulating server-side script in HTML files | 34-24 |
| Login support | 34-24 |
| Adding login support | 34-25 |
| Using the sessions service | 34-26 |
| Login pages | 34-26 |
| Setting pages to require logins | 34-28 |
| User access rights. | 34-28 |
| Dynamically displaying fields as edit or text boxes | 34-29 |
| Hiding fields and their contents. | 34-30 |
| Preventing page access. | 34-30 |
| Server-side scripting in WebSnap | 34-30 |
| Active scripting. | 34-31 |
| Script engine | 34-31 |
| Script blocks. | 34-31 |
| Creating script | 34-32 |
| Wizard templates | 34-32 |
| TAdapterPageProducer | 34-32 |
| Editing and viewing script | 34-32 |
| Including script in a page | 34-32 |
| Script objects | 34-32 |
| Dispatching requests and responses. | 34-33 |
| Dispatcher components | 34-34 |
| Adapter dispatcher operation. | 34-34 |

| | |
|---|-------|
| Using adapter components to generate content | 34-34 |
| Receiving adapter requests and generating responses | 34-35 |
| Image request | 34-37 |
| Image response. | 34-37 |
| Dispatching action items | 34-38 |
| Page dispatcher operation | 34-38 |

Chapter 35

Working with XML documents 35-1

| | |
|--|------|
| Using the Document Object Model | 35-2 |
| Working with XML components | 35-3 |
| Using TXMLDocument. | 35-3 |
| Working with XML nodes | 35-4 |
| Working with a node's value. | 35-4 |
| Working with a node's attributes | 35-5 |
| Adding and deleting child nodes | 35-5 |
| Abstracting XML documents with the Data Binding wizard | 35-5 |
| Using the XML Data Binding wizard | 35-7 |
| Using code that the XML Data Binding wizard generates. | 35-8 |

Chapter 36

Using Web Services 36-1

| | |
|--|-------|
| Understanding invocable interfaces | 36-2 |
| Using nonscalar types in invocable interfaces | 36-3 |
| Registering nonscalar types. | 36-4 |
| Registering typedef'ed types and enumerated types | 36-6 |
| Using remotable objects. | 36-7 |
| Remotable object example | 36-8 |
| Writing servers that support Web Services. | 36-9 |
| Building a Web Service server | 36-10 |
| Using the SOAP application wizard | 36-11 |
| Adding new Web Services | 36-12 |
| Editing the generated code | 36-12 |
| Using a different base class | 36-12 |
| Using the Web Services Importer | 36-13 |
| Creating custom exception classes for Web Services | 36-14 |
| Generating WSDL documents for a Web Service application. | 36-15 |
| Writing clients for Web Services. | 36-16 |
| Importing WSDL documents | 36-16 |
| Calling invocable interfaces | 36-16 |

| | |
|---|-------------|
| Chapter 37 | |
| Working with sockets | 37-1 |
| Implementing services | 37-1 |
| Understanding service protocols | 37-2 |
| Communicating with applications | 37-2 |
| Services and ports | 37-2 |
| Types of socket connections. | 37-2 |
| Client connections | 37-3 |
| Listening connections | 37-3 |
| Server connections | 37-3 |
| Describing sockets | 37-3 |
| Describing the host. | 37-4 |
| Choosing between a host name | |
| and an IP address | 37-4 |
| Using ports | 37-5 |
| Using socket components | 37-5 |
| Getting information about the | |
| connection. | 37-6 |
| Using client sockets | 37-6 |
| Specifying the desired server | 37-6 |
| Forming the connection | 37-6 |
| Getting information about the | |
| connection | 37-6 |
| Closing the connection. | 37-7 |
| Using server sockets | 37-7 |
| Specifying the port | 37-7 |
| Listening for client requests | 37-7 |
| Connecting to clients | 37-7 |
| Closing server connections | 37-7 |
| Responding to socket events | 37-8 |
| Error events | 37-8 |
| Client events | 37-8 |
| Server events | 37-9 |
| Events when listening | 37-9 |
| Events with client connections | 37-9 |
| Reading and writing over socket | |
| connections | 37-9 |
| Non-blocking connections. | 37-10 |
| Reading and writing events | 37-10 |
| Blocking connections. | 37-10 |

Part IV

Developing COM-based applications

| | |
|-------------------------------------|-------------|
| Chapter 38 | |
| Overview of COM technologies | 38-1 |
| COM as a specification and | |
| implementation | 38-1 |

| | |
|--|-------|
| COM extensions | 38-2 |
| Parts of a COM application | 38-2 |
| COM interfaces | 38-3 |
| The fundamental COM interface, | |
| IUnknown | 38-4 |
| COM interface pointers | 38-4 |
| COM servers | 38-5 |
| CoClasses and class factories | 38-6 |
| In-process, out-of-process, and | |
| remote servers | 38-6 |
| The marshaling mechanism | 38-8 |
| Aggregation | 38-9 |
| COM clients | 38-9 |
| COM extensions. | 38-10 |
| Automation servers | 38-12 |
| Active Server Pages | 38-13 |
| ActiveX controls | 38-13 |
| Active Documents. | 38-14 |
| Transactional objects | 38-14 |
| COM+ Event and event subscriber | |
| objects. | 38-15 |
| Type libraries. | 38-16 |
| The content of type libraries | 38-16 |
| Creating type libraries. | 38-17 |
| When to use type libraries | 38-17 |
| Accessing type libraries. | 38-17 |
| Benefits of using type libraries | 38-18 |
| Using type library tools | 38-18 |
| Implementing COM objects with | |
| wizards. | 38-19 |
| Code generated by wizards | 38-22 |

| | |
|--|-------------|
| Chapter 39 | |
| Working with type libraries | 39-1 |
| Type Library editor | 39-2 |
| Parts of the Type Library editor | 39-2 |
| Toolbar | 39-3 |
| Object list pane. | 39-4 |
| Status bar | 39-5 |
| Pages of type information. | 39-5 |
| Type library elements | 39-8 |
| Interfaces | 39-8 |
| Dispinterfaces | 39-9 |
| CoClasses. | 39-9 |
| Type definitions | 39-9 |
| Modules. | 39-10 |
| Using the Type Library editor | 39-10 |
| Valid types | 39-11 |
| Creating a new type library. | 39-12 |

| | |
|--|-------|
| Opening an existing type library | 39-13 |
| Adding an interface to the type library | 39-13 |
| Modifying an interface using the type library | 39-14 |
| Adding properties and methods to an interface or dispinterface | 39-14 |
| Adding a CoClass to the type library | 39-15 |
| Adding an interface to a CoClass | 39-15 |
| Adding an enumeration to the type library | 39-16 |
| Adding an alias to the type library | 39-16 |
| Adding a record or union to the type library | 39-16 |
| Adding a module to the type library | 39-17 |
| Saving and registering type library information | 39-17 |
| Saving a type library | 39-18 |
| Refreshing the type library | 39-18 |
| Registering the type library | 39-18 |
| Exporting an IDL file | 39-19 |
| Deploying type libraries | 39-19 |

Chapter 40 **Creating COM clients** **40-1**

| | |
|---|-------|
| Importing type library information | 40-2 |
| Using the Import Type Library dialog | 40-3 |
| Using the Import ActiveX dialog | 40-4 |
| Code generated when you import type library information | 40-5 |
| Controlling an imported object | 40-6 |
| Using component wrappers | 40-6 |
| ActiveX wrappers | 40-7 |
| Automation object wrappers | 40-7 |
| Using data-aware ActiveX controls | 40-8 |
| Example: Printing a document with Microsoft Word | 40-10 |
| Step 1: Prepare C++Builder for this example | 40-10 |
| Step 2: Import the Word type library | 40-10 |
| Step 3: Use a VTable or dispatch interface object to control Microsoft Word | 40-11 |
| Step 4: Clean up the example | 40-12 |

| | |
|--|-------|
| Writing client code based on type library definitions | 40-12 |
| Connecting to a server | 40-12 |
| Controlling an Automation server using a dual interface | 40-13 |
| Controlling an Automation server using a dispatch interface | 40-13 |
| Handling events in an automation controller | 40-14 |
| Creating clients for servers that do not have a type library | 40-15 |

Chapter 41 **Creating simple COM servers** **41-1**

| | |
|---|-------|
| Overview of creating a COM object | 41-1 |
| Designing a COM object | 41-2 |
| Using the COM object wizard | 41-2 |
| Using the Automation object wizard | 41-4 |
| Choosing a threading model | 41-5 |
| Writing an object that supports the free threading model | 41-6 |
| Writing an object that supports the apartment threading model | 41-7 |
| Writing an object that supports the neutral threading model | 41-8 |
| Specifying ATL options | 41-8 |
| Defining a COM object's interface | 41-9 |
| Adding a property to the object's interface | 41-9 |
| Adding a method to the object's interface | 41-10 |
| Exposing events to clients | 41-10 |
| Managing events in your Automation object | 41-11 |
| Automation interfaces | 41-12 |
| Dual interfaces | 41-12 |
| Dispatch interfaces | 41-13 |
| Custom interfaces | 41-14 |
| Marshaling data | 41-14 |
| Automation compatible types | 41-14 |
| Type restrictions for automatic marshaling | 41-15 |
| Custom marshaling | 41-15 |
| Registering a COM object | 41-16 |
| Registering an in-process server | 41-16 |
| Registering an out-of-process server | 41-16 |
| Testing and debugging the application | 41-17 |

Chapter 42

Creating an Active Server Page 42-1

| | |
|---|------|
| Creating an Active Server Object | 42-2 |
| Using the ASP intrinsics | 42-3 |
| Application | 42-3 |
| Request. | 42-4 |
| Response. | 42-5 |
| Session | 42-5 |
| Server | 42-6 |
| Creating ASPs for in-process or out-of-process servers | 42-7 |
| Registering an Active Server Object | 42-7 |
| Registering an in-process server | 42-7 |
| Registering an out-of-process server | 42-8 |
| Testing and debugging the Active Server Page application | 42-8 |

Chapter 43

Creating an ActiveX control 43-1

| | |
|--|-------|
| Overview of ActiveX control creation | 43-2 |
| Elements of an ActiveX control | 43-2 |
| VCL control | 43-3 |
| ActiveX wrapper | 43-3 |
| Type library | 43-3 |
| Property page | 43-3 |
| Designing an ActiveX control | 43-4 |
| Generating an ActiveX control from a VCL control | 43-4 |
| Generating an ActiveX control based on a VCL form | 43-6 |
| Licensing ActiveX controls | 43-7 |
| Customizing the ActiveX control's interface | 43-8 |
| Adding additional properties, methods, and events | 43-9 |
| Adding properties and methods | 43-9 |
| Adding events. | 43-10 |
| Enabling simple data binding with the type library | 43-11 |
| Creating a property page for an ActiveX control. | 43-13 |
| Creating a new property page | 43-13 |
| Adding controls to a property page | 43-14 |
| Associating property page controls with ActiveX control properties. | 43-14 |
| Updating the property page. | 43-14 |
| Updating the object. | 43-15 |

| | |
|---|-------|
| Connecting a property page to an ActiveX control | 43-15 |
| Registering an ActiveX control | 43-15 |
| Testing an ActiveX control. | 43-16 |
| Deploying an ActiveX control on the Web. | 43-16 |
| Setting options. | 43-17 |

Chapter 44

Creating MTS or COM+ objects 44-1

| | |
|--|-------|
| Understanding transactional objects | 44-2 |
| Requirements for a transactional object | 44-3 |
| Managing resources | 44-3 |
| Accessing the object context | 44-4 |
| Just-in-time activation | 44-4 |
| Resource pooling | 44-5 |
| Database resource dispensers | 44-6 |
| Shared property manager. | 44-6 |
| Releasing resources | 44-9 |
| Object pooling | 44-9 |
| MTS and COM+ transaction support. | 44-10 |
| Transaction attributes | 44-11 |
| Setting the transaction attribute | 44-11 |
| Stateful and stateless objects | 44-12 |
| Influencing how transactions end | 44-12 |
| Initiating transactions. | 44-13 |
| Setting up a transaction object on the client side | 44-13 |
| Setting up a transaction object on the server side | 44-14 |
| Transaction time-out | 44-15 |
| Role-based security | 44-16 |
| Overview of creating transactional objects | 44-17 |
| Using the Transactional Object wizard | 44-17 |
| Choosing a threading model for a transactional object | 44-18 |
| Activities | 44-19 |
| Generating events under COM+ | 44-20 |
| Using the Event Object wizard. | 44-22 |
| Using the COM+ Event Subscription object wizard. | 44-23 |
| Firing events using a COM+ event object | 44-24 |
| Passing object references | 44-24 |
| Using the SafeRef method | 44-25 |
| Callbacks | 44-25 |

| | |
|---|-------|
| Debugging and testing transactional objects | 44-26 |
| Installing transactional objects | 44-27 |
| Administering transactional objects | 44-28 |

Part V

Creating custom components

Chapter 45

Overview of component creation 45-1

| | |
|--|-------|
| Class libraries. | 45-1 |
| Components and classes | 45-2 |
| How do you create components? | 45-2 |
| Modifying existing controls | 45-3 |
| Creating windowed controls | 45-3 |
| Creating graphic controls | 45-4 |
| Subclassing Windows controls | 45-4 |
| Creating nonvisual components | 45-5 |
| What goes into a component? | 45-5 |
| Removing dependencies. | 45-5 |
| Setting properties, methods, and events | 45-6 |
| Properties | 45-6 |
| Events | 45-6 |
| Methods | 45-6 |
| Encapsulating graphics | 45-7 |
| Registering components. | 45-8 |
| Creating a new component | 45-8 |
| Creating a component with the Component wizard. | 45-9 |
| Creating a component manually | 45-11 |
| Creating a unit file | 45-11 |
| Deriving the component | 45-12 |
| Declaring a new constructor. | 45-13 |
| Registering the component | 45-13 |
| Creating a bitmap for a component | 45-14 |
| Testing uninstalled components | 45-16 |
| Testing installed components. | 45-18 |
| Installing a component on the Component palette. | 45-18 |
| Making source files available | 45-19 |
| Adding the component | 45-19 |

Chapter 46

Object-oriented programming for component writers 46-1

| | |
|--------------------------------|------|
| Defining new classes | 46-1 |
| Deriving new classes. | 46-2 |

| | |
|---|-------|
| To change class defaults to avoid repetition | 46-2 |
| To add new capabilities to a class | 46-2 |
| Declaring a new component class | 46-3 |
| Ancestors, descendants, and class hierarchies | 46-3 |
| Controlling access. | 46-4 |
| Hiding implementation details | 46-4 |
| Defining the component writer's interface. | 46-6 |
| Defining the runtime interface. | 46-7 |
| Defining the design-time interface | 46-7 |
| Dispatching methods. | 46-8 |
| Regular methods | 46-8 |
| Virtual methods | 46-9 |
| Overriding methods. | 46-9 |
| Abstract class members | 46-10 |
| Classes and pointers | 46-10 |

Chapter 47

Creating properties 47-1

| | |
|---|-------|
| Why create properties? | 47-1 |
| Types of properties | 47-2 |
| Publishing inherited properties | 47-3 |
| Defining properties. | 47-3 |
| The property declaration | 47-3 |
| Internal data storage | 47-4 |
| Direct access | 47-4 |
| Access methods | 47-5 |
| The read method. | 47-6 |
| The write method | 47-6 |
| Default property values | 47-7 |
| Specifying no default value. | 47-7 |
| Creating array properties | 47-8 |
| Creating properties for sub-components | 47-9 |
| Storing and loading properties | 47-10 |
| Using the store-and-load mechanism | 47-11 |
| Specifying default values. | 47-11 |
| Determining what to store | 47-12 |
| Initializing after loading | 47-13 |
| Storing and loading unpublished properties. | 47-13 |
| Creating methods to store and load property values. | 47-13 |
| Overriding the DefineProperties method | 47-14 |

Chapter 48

Creating events 48-1

| | |
|--|------|
| What are events? | 48-1 |
| Events are closures | 48-2 |
| Events are properties. | 48-2 |
| Event types are closure types | 48-3 |
| Event handlers have a return type of void | 48-3 |
| Event handlers are optional | 48-3 |
| Implementing the standard events. | 48-4 |
| Identifying standard events. | 48-4 |
| Standard events for all controls | 48-4 |
| Standard events for standard controls. | 48-5 |
| Making events visible | 48-5 |
| Changing the standard event handling. | 48-5 |
| Defining your own events | 48-6 |
| Triggering the event | 48-6 |
| Two kinds of events | 48-7 |
| Defining the handler type | 48-7 |
| Simple notifications. | 48-7 |
| Event-specific handlers. | 48-7 |
| Returning information from the handler. | 48-7 |
| Declaring the event. | 48-8 |
| Event names start with “On” | 48-8 |
| Calling the event | 48-8 |

Chapter 49

Creating methods 49-1

| | |
|--|------|
| Avoiding dependencies | 49-1 |
| Naming methods | 49-2 |
| Protecting methods | 49-3 |
| Methods that should be public | 49-3 |
| Methods that should be protected | 49-3 |
| Making methods virtual | 49-3 |
| Declaring methods. | 49-4 |

Chapter 50

Using graphics in components 50-1

| | |
|--|------|
| Overview of graphics | 50-1 |
| Using the canvas | 50-3 |
| Working with pictures. | 50-3 |
| Using a picture, graphic, or canvas. | 50-3 |
| Loading and storing graphics. | 50-4 |

| | |
|---|------|
| Handling palettes | 50-5 |
| Specifying a palette for a control. | 50-5 |
| Off-screen bitmaps | 50-6 |
| Creating and managing off-screen bitmaps | 50-6 |
| Copying bitmapped images | 50-6 |
| Responding to changes. | 50-7 |

Chapter 51

Handling messages and system notifications 51-1

| | |
|--|-------|
| Understanding the message-handling system | 51-1 |
| What’s in a Windows message? | 51-2 |
| Dispatching messages. | 51-3 |
| Tracing the flow of messages | 51-3 |
| Changing message handling. | 51-4 |
| Overriding the handler method | 51-4 |
| Using message parameters. | 51-5 |
| Trapping messages | 51-5 |
| Creating new message handlers. | 51-6 |
| Defining your own messages | 51-6 |
| Declaring a message identifier | 51-6 |
| Declaring a message-structure type | 51-7 |
| Declaring a new message-handling method | 51-7 |
| Sending messages | 51-8 |
| Broadcasting a message to all controls in a form | 51-8 |
| Calling a control’s message handler directly | 51-9 |
| Sending a message using the Windows message queue | 51-9 |
| Sending a message that does not execute immediately | 51-10 |
| Responding to system notifications using CLX | 51-10 |
| Responding to signals. | 51-10 |
| Assigning custom signal handlers. | 51-11 |
| Responding to system events | 51-12 |
| Commonly used events. | 51-13 |
| Overriding the EventFilter method | 51-14 |
| Generating Qt events | 51-15 |

Chapter 52

Making components available at design time

52-1

| | |
|---|-------|
| Registering components. | 52-1 |
| Declaring the Register function. | 52-2 |
| Writing the Register function | 52-2 |
| Specifying the components | 52-2 |
| Specifying the palette page | 52-3 |
| Using the RegisterComponents function | 52-3 |
| Adding palette bitmaps | 52-4 |
| Providing Help for your component. | 52-4 |
| Creating the Help file | 52-5 |
| Creating the entries. | 52-5 |
| Making component help context-sensitive | 52-6 |
| Adding component help files | 52-7 |
| Adding property editors | 52-7 |
| Deriving a property-editor class | 52-7 |
| Editing the property as text | 52-8 |
| Displaying the property value. | 52-9 |
| Setting the property value | 52-9 |
| Editing the property as a whole | 52-9 |
| Specifying editor attributes | 52-10 |
| Registering the property editor | 52-11 |
| Property categories | 52-12 |
| Registering one property at a time | 52-12 |
| Registering multiple properties at once | 52-13 |
| Specifying property categories | 52-14 |
| Using the IsPropertyInCategory function | 52-15 |
| Adding component editors | 52-15 |
| Adding items to the context menu | 52-16 |
| Specifying menu items | 52-16 |
| Implementing commands | 52-16 |
| Changing the double-click behavior | 52-17 |
| Adding clipboard formats. | 52-18 |
| Registering the component editor | 52-18 |
| Compiling components into packages. | 52-19 |
| Troubleshooting custom components | 52-19 |

Chapter 53

Modifying an existing component

53-1

| | |
|--|------|
| Creating and registering the component | 53-1 |
| Modifying the component class | 53-3 |
| Overriding the constructor | 53-3 |

| | |
|---|------|
| Specifying the new default property value | 53-4 |
|---|------|

Chapter 54

Creating a graphic control

54-1

| | |
|--|-------|
| Creating and registering the component | 54-1 |
| Publishing inherited properties | 54-3 |
| Adding graphic capabilities | 54-3 |
| Determining what to draw | 54-3 |
| Declaring the property type | 54-4 |
| Declaring the property | 54-4 |
| Writing the implementation method | 54-5 |
| Overriding the constructor and destructor. | 54-5 |
| Changing default property values | 54-5 |
| Publishing the pen and brush | 54-6 |
| Declaring the data members | 54-6 |
| Declaring the access properties. | 54-6 |
| Initializing owned classes. | 54-7 |
| Setting owned classes' properties | 54-8 |
| Drawing the component image | 54-9 |
| Refining the shape drawing | 54-10 |

Chapter 55

Customizing a grid

55-1

| | |
|--|-------|
| Creating and registering the component | 55-1 |
| Publishing inherited properties | 55-3 |
| Changing initial values. | 55-3 |
| Resizing the cells | 55-4 |
| Filling in the cells | 55-6 |
| Tracking the date | 55-6 |
| Storing the internal date | 55-7 |
| Accessing the day, month, and year | 55-7 |
| Generating the day numbers | 55-9 |
| Selecting the current day | 55-11 |
| Navigating months and years | 55-11 |
| Navigating days. | 55-12 |
| Moving the selection | 55-12 |
| Providing an OnChange event. | 55-13 |
| Excluding blank cells | 55-14 |

Chapter 56

Making a control data aware

56-1

| | |
|--|------|
| Creating a data browsing control | 56-1 |
|--|------|

| | |
|--|-------|
| Creating and registering the component. | 56-2 |
| Making the control read-only. | 56-3 |
| Adding the ReadOnly property. | 56-3 |
| Allowing needed updates. | 56-4 |
| Adding the data link. | 56-5 |
| Declaring the data member. | 56-5 |
| Declaring the access properties. | 56-6 |
| An example of declaring access properties. | 56-6 |
| Initializing the data link. | 56-7 |
| Responding to data changes. | 56-7 |
| Creating a data editing control. | 56-8 |
| Changing the default value of FReadOnly. | 56-9 |
| Handling mouse-down and key-down messages. | 56-9 |
| Responding to mouse-down messages. | 56-9 |
| Responding to key-down messages. | 56-10 |
| Updating the field data link class. | 56-11 |
| Modifying the Change method. | 56-11 |
| Updating the dataset. | 56-12 |

Chapter 57

Making a dialog box a component **57-1**

| | |
|---|------|
| Defining the component interface. | 57-1 |
| Creating and registering the component. | 57-2 |
| Creating the component interface. | 57-3 |
| Including the form unit files. | 57-3 |
| Adding interface properties. | 57-4 |
| Adding the Execute method. | 57-5 |
| Testing the component. | 57-6 |

Chapter 58

Extending the IDE **58-1**

| | |
|--|------|
| Overview of the Tools API. | 58-2 |
| Writing a wizard class. | 58-3 |
| Implementing the wizard interfaces. | 58-4 |
| Simplifying implementing interfaces. | 58-6 |
| Installing the wizard package. | 58-7 |
| Obtaining Tools API services. | 58-7 |
| Using native IDE objects. | 58-8 |
| Using the INTAServices interface. | 58-9 |
| Adding an image to the image list. | 58-9 |
| Adding an action to the action list. | 58-9 |

| | |
|---|-------|
| Deleting toolbar buttons. | 58-10 |
| Debugging a wizard. | 58-11 |
| Interface version numbers. | 58-11 |
| Working with files and editors. | 58-12 |
| Using module interfaces. | 58-13 |
| Using editor interfaces. | 58-13 |
| Creating forms and projects. | 58-14 |
| Creating modules. | 58-14 |
| Notifying a wizard of IDE events. | 58-18 |
| Installing a wizard DLL. | 58-22 |
| Using a DLL without runtime packages. | 58-23 |

Appendix A

ANSI implementation-specific standards **A-1**

Appendix B

WebSnap server-side scripting reference **B-1**

| | |
|--------------------------------------|------|
| Object types. | B-1 |
| Adapter type. | B-2 |
| Properties. | B-2 |
| AdapterAction type. | B-4 |
| Properties. | B-4 |
| Methods. | B-6 |
| AdapterErrors type. | B-6 |
| Properties. | B-6 |
| AdapterField type. | B-6 |
| Properties. | B-6 |
| Methods. | B-9 |
| AdapterFieldValues type. | B-10 |
| Properties. | B-10 |
| Methods. | B-10 |
| AdapterFieldValuesList type. | B-10 |
| Properties. | B-10 |
| Methods. | B-11 |
| AdapterHiddenFields type. | B-11 |
| Properties. | B-11 |
| Methods. | B-11 |
| AdapterImage type. | B-12 |
| Properties. | B-12 |
| Module type. | B-12 |
| Properties. | B-12 |
| Page type. | B-12 |
| Properties. | B-12 |
| Global objects. | B-14 |
| Application object. | B-14 |

| | | | |
|----------------------------|-------|----------------------|------------|
| Properties | .B-14 | Example 4 | B-21 |
| Methods | .B-15 | Example 5 | B-21 |
| EndUser object | .B-15 | Example 6 | B-22 |
| Properties | .B-15 | Example 7 | B-22 |
| Modules object | .B-16 | Example 8 | B-23 |
| Page object | .B-16 | Example 9 | B-23 |
| Pages object | .B-16 | Example 10 | B-24 |
| Producer object | .B-17 | Example 11 | B-26 |
| Properties | .B-17 | Example 12 | B-27 |
| Methods | .B-17 | Example 13 | B-28 |
| Request object. | .B-17 | Example 14 | B-29 |
| Properties | .B-17 | Example 15 | B-30 |
| Response object. | .B-18 | Example 16 | B-32 |
| Properties | .B-18 | Example 17 | B-33 |
| Methods | .B-18 | Example 18 | B-34 |
| Session object | .B-18 | Example 19 | B-35 |
| Properties | .B-18 | Example 20 | B-35 |
| JScript Examples | .B-19 | Example 21 | B-36 |
| Example 1 | .B-20 | Example 22 | B-37 |
| Example 2 | .B-20 | | |
| Example 3 | .B-20 | | |
| | | Index | I-1 |

Tables

| | | | | | |
|------|---|------|-------|--|-------|
| 1.1 | Typefaces and symbols | 1-3 | 10.4 | CLX MIME types and constants | 10-22 |
| 3.1 | Important base classes | 3-5 | 10.5 | Mouse-event parameters. | 10-24 |
| 4.1 | Open modes | 4-6 | 10.6 | Multimedia device types and their functions. | 10-32 |
| 4.2 | Share modes | 4-6 | 11.1 | Thread priorities | 11-3 |
| 4.3 | Shared modes available for each open mode | 4-6 | 11.2 | WaitFor return values | 11-10 |
| 4.4 | Attribute constants and values. | 4-8 | 12.1 | Exception handling compiler options | 12-14 |
| 4.5 | Classes for managing lists | 4-13 | 12.2 | Selected exception classes | 12-17 |
| 4.6 | String comparison routines | 4-22 | 13.1 | Object model comparison | 13-10 |
| 4.7 | Case conversion routines | 4-22 | 13.2 | Equality comparison !A == !B of BOOL variables | 13-20 |
| 4.8 | String modification routines : | 4-22 | 13.3 | Examples of RTTI mappings from Object Pascal to C++ | 13-22 |
| 4.9 | Sub-string routines | 4-23 | 14.1 | Porting techniques | 14-2 |
| 4.10 | Null-terminated string comparison routines | 4-23 | 14.2 | CLX parts | 14-5 |
| 4.11 | Case conversion routines for null-terminated strings | 4-24 | 14.3 | Changed or different features | 14-8 |
| 4.12 | String modification routines | 4-24 | 14.4 | VCL and equivalent CLX units | 14-9 |
| 4.13 | Sub-string routines | 4-24 | 14.5 | CLX-only units | 14-9 |
| 4.14 | String copying routines | 4-24 | 14.6 | VCL-only units | 14-10 |
| 5.1 | Component palette pages | 5-7 | 14.7 | Differences in the Linux and Windows operating environ- ments. | 14-13 |
| 6.1 | Properties of selected text. | 6-8 | 14.8 | Common Linux directories | 14-15 |
| 6.2 | Fixed vs. variable owner-draw styles | 6-12 | 14.9 | Comparable data-access components | 14-21 |
| 7.1 | Compiler directives for libraries | 7-10 | 14.10 | Properties, methods, and events for cached updates | 14-25 |
| 7.2 | Database pages on the Component palette. | 7-15 | 15.1 | Package files. | 15-2 |
| 7.3 | Web server applications. | 7-17 | 15.2 | Package-specific compiler directives. | 15-11 |
| 7.4 | Context menu options for data modules. | 7-21 | 15.3 | Package-specific command-line linker switches | 15-12 |
| 7.5 | Help methods in TApplication | 7-33 | 15.4 | Files deployed with a package | 15-13 |
| 8.1 | Action setup terminology. | 8-17 | 16.1 | VCL objects that support BiDi. | 16-4 |
| 8.2 | Default values of the action manager's PrioritySchedule property | 8-23 | 16.2 | VCL methods that support BiDi | 16-7 |
| 8.3 | Action classes | 8-27 | 16.3 | Estimating string lengths | 16-9 |
| 8.4 | Sample captions and their derived names | 8-31 | 17.1 | Application files | 17-3 |
| 8.5 | Menu Designer context menu commands | 8-37 | 17.2 | Merge modules and their dependencies | 17-4 |
| 8.6 | Setting speed buttons' appearance. | 8-44 | 17.3 | dbExpress deployment as stand-alone executable. | 17-7 |
| 8.7 | Setting tool buttons' appearance. | 8-46 | 17.4 | dbExpress deployment with driver DLLs | 17-8 |
| 8.8 | Setting a cool button's appearance. | 8-48 | 17.5 | SQL database client software files | 17-9 |
| 9.1 | Edit control properties | 9-2 | 19.1 | Data controls | 19-2 |
| 10.1 | Graphic object types. | 10-3 | | | |
| 10.2 | Common properties of the Canvas object. | 10-4 | | | |
| 10.3 | Common methods of the Canvas object. | 10-4 | | | |

| | | | | | |
|------|---|-------|------|---|-------|
| 19.2 | Column properties. | 19-20 | 24.7 | UpdateKind values. | 24-38 |
| 19.3 | Expanded TColumn Title properties. | 19-20 | 24.8 | Batch move modes. | 24-48 |
| 19.4 | Properties that affect the way composite fields appear. | 19-23 | 24.9 | Data Dictionary interface. | 24-52 |
| 19.5 | Expanded TDBGrid Options properties. | 19-24 | 25.1 | ADO components. | 25-2 |
| 19.6 | Grid control events. | 19-26 | 25.2 | ADO connection modes. | 25-6 |
| 19.7 | Selected database control grid properties. | 19-28 | 25.3 | Execution options for ADO datasets. | 25-11 |
| 19.8 | TDBNavigator buttons. | 19-29 | 25.4 | Comparison of ADO and client dataset cached updates. | 25-12 |
| 21.1 | Database connection components. | 21-1 | 26.1 | Columns in tables of metadata listing tables. | 26-13 |
| 22.1 | Values for the dataset State property. | 22-3 | 26.2 | Columns in tables of metadata listing stored procedures. | 26-14 |
| 22.2 | Navigational methods of datasets. | 22-5 | 26.3 | Columns in tables of metadata listing fields. | 26-14 |
| 22.3 | Navigational properties of datasets. | 22-6 | 26.4 | Columns in tables of metadata listing indexes. | 26-15 |
| 22.4 | Comparison and logical operators that can appear in a filter. | 22-14 | 26.5 | Columns in tables of metadata listing parameters. | 26-16 |
| 22.5 | FilterOptions values. | 22-15 | 27.1 | Filter support in client datasets. | 27-3 |
| 22.6 | Filtered dataset navigational methods. | 22-16 | 27.2 | Summary operators for maintained aggregates. | 27-12 |
| 22.7 | Dataset methods for inserting, updating, and deleting data. | 22-17 | 27.3 | Specialized client datasets for caching updates. | 27-17 |
| 22.8 | Methods that work with entire records. | 22-21 | 28.1 | AppServer interface members. | 28-3 |
| 22.9 | Index-based search methods. | 22-27 | 28.2 | Provider options. | 28-5 |
| 23.1 | TFloatField properties that affect data display. | 23-1 | 28.3 | UpdateStatus values. | 28-9 |
| 23.2 | Special persistent field kinds. | 23-6 | 28.4 | UpdateMode values. | 28-10 |
| 23.3 | Field component properties. | 23-11 | 28.5 | ProviderFlags values. | 28-10 |
| 23.4 | Field component formatting routines. | 23-15 | 29.1 | Components used in multi-tiered applications. | 29-3 |
| 23.5 | Field component events. | 23-15 | 29.2 | Connection components. | 29-5 |
| 23.6 | Selected field component methods. | 23-16 | 29.3 | Javascript libraries. | 29-33 |
| 23.7 | Special conversion results. | 23-19 | 32.1 | Web Broker versus WebSnap. | 32-2 |
| 23.8 | Types of object field components. | 23-22 | 33.1 | MethodType values. | 33-6 |
| 23.9 | Common object field descendant properties. | 23-23 | 34.1 | Web application module types. | 34-3 |
| 24.1 | Table types recognized by the BDE based on file extension. | 24-5 | 34.2 | Web server application types. | 34-8 |
| 24.2 | TableType values. | 24-5 | 34.3 | Web application components. | 34-9 |
| 24.3 | BatchMove import modes. | 24-8 | 34.4 | Script objects. | 34-33 |
| 24.4 | Database-related informational methods for session components. | 24-26 | 34.5 | Request information found in action requests. | 34-36 |
| 24.5 | TSessionList properties and methods. | 24-28 | 36.1 | Remotable classes. | 36-7 |
| 24.6 | Properties, methods, and events for cached updates. | 24-32 | 38.1 | COM object requirements. | 38-12 |
| | | | 38.2 | C++Builder wizards for implementing COM, Automation, and ActiveX objects. | 38-20 |
| | | | 39.1 | Type Library editor files. | 39-2 |
| | | | 39.2 | Type Library editor parts. | 39-2 |
| | | | 39.3 | Type library pages. | 39-5 |

| | | | |
|---|-------|--|-------|
| 41.1 Threading models for COM objects | 41-5 | 51.1 TWidgetControl protected methods for responding to system notifications | 51-13 |
| 42.1 IApplicationObject interface members | 42-4 | 51.2 TWidgetControl protected methods for responding to events from controls. | 51-14 |
| 42.2 IRequest interface members | 42-4 | 52.1 Predefined property-editor types | 52-8 |
| 42.3 IResponse interface members | 42-5 | 52.2 Methods for reading and writing property values | 52-9 |
| 42.4 ISessionObject interface members | 42-6 | 52.3 Property-editor attribute flags. | 52-10 |
| 42.5 IServer interface members | 42-6 | 52.4 Property categories | 52-14 |
| 44.1 IObjectContext methods for transaction support | 44-12 | 58.1 The four kinds of wizards | 58-3 |
| 44.2 Threading models for transactional objects. | 44-18 | 58.2 Tools API service interfaces | 58-8 |
| 44.3 Call synchronization options. | 44-20 | 58.3 Notifier interfaces. | 58-18 |
| 44.4 Event publisher return codes. | 44-24 | A.1 Options needed for ANSI compliance | A-1 |
| 45.1 Component creation starting points | 45-3 | A.2 Identifying diagnostics in C++ | A-3 |
| 46.1 Levels of visibility within an object | 46-4 | B.1 WebSnap object types | B-2 |
| 47.1 How properties appear in the Object Inspector | 47-2 | B.2 WebSnap global objects | B-14 |
| 50.1 Canvas capability summary | 50-3 | B.3 JScript examples of server-side scripting | B-19 |
| 50.2 Image-copying methods | 50-6 | | |

Figures

| | | | | | |
|------|---|-------|-------|--|-------|
| 3.1 | Objects, components, and controls. | 3-4 | 20.4 | Decision graphs bound to different decision sources. | 20-14 |
| 3.2 | A simplified hierarchy diagram | 3-4 | 24.1 | Components in a BDE-based application. | 24-2 |
| 8.1 | A frame with data-aware controls and a data source component | 8-15 | 29.1 | Web-based multi-tiered database application. | 29-29 |
| 8.3 | Menu terminology. | 8-29 | 31.1 | Structure of a CORBA application | 31-2 |
| 8.4 | MainMenu and PopupMenu components | 8-30 | 32.1 | Parts of a Uniform Resource Locator | 32-3 |
| 8.6 | Adding menu items to a main menu | 8-33 | 33.1 | Structure of a Server Application | 33-3 |
| 8.7 | Nested menu structures. | 8-34 | 34.2 | Web App Components dialog. | 34-9 |
| 9.2 | A progress bar | 9-14 | 34.5 | CountryTable Preview tab | 34-16 |
| 10.1 | Bitmap-dimension dialog box from the BMPDlg unit. | 10-21 | 34.6 | CountryTable HTML Script tab | 34-16 |
| 13.1 | Order of VCL-style object construction | 13-9 | 34.7 | CountryTable Preview after editing commands have been added | 34-17 |
| 16.1 | TListBox set to bdLeftToRight | 16-6 | 34.10 | Web App Components dialog with options for login support selected . . . | 34-25 |
| 16.2 | TListBox set to bdRightToLeft | 16-6 | 34.11 | An example of a login page as seen from a Web page editor | 34-27 |
| 16.3 | TListBox set to bdRightToLeft NoAlign. | 16-6 | 34.12 | Generating content flow. | 34-35 |
| 16.4 | TListBox set to bdRightToLeft ReadingOnly | 16-7 | 34.13 | Action request and response | 34-37 |
| 18.1 | Generic Database Architecture. | 18-6 | 34.14 | Image response to a request. | 34-38 |
| 18.2 | Connecting directly to the database server. | 18-8 | 34.15 | Dispatching a page. | 34-39 |
| 18.3 | A file-based database application | 18-9 | 38.1 | A COM interface | 38-3 |
| 18.4 | Architecture combining a client dataset and another dataset | 18-12 | 38.2 | Interface vtable | 38-5 |
| 18.5 | Multi-tiered database architecture. | 18-13 | 38.3 | In-process server | 38-7 |
| 19.1 | TDBGrid control | 19-15 | 38.4 | Out-of-process and remote servers | 38-8 |
| 19.2 | TDBGrid control with ObjectView set to false. | 19-23 | 38.5 | COM-based technologies | 38-11 |
| 19.3 | TDBGrid control with Expanded set to false. | 19-23 | 38.6 | Simple COM object interface | 38-19 |
| 19.4 | TDBGrid control with Expanded set to true | 19-23 | 38.7 | Automation object interface | 38-19 |
| 19.5 | TDBCtrlGrid at design time | 19-27 | 38.8 | ActiveX object interface | 38-20 |
| 19.6 | Buttons on the TDBNavigator control. | 19-28 | 39.1 | Type Library editor | 39-3 |
| 20.1 | Decision support components at design time | 20-2 | 39.2 | Object list pane | 39-4 |
| 20.2 | One-dimensional crosstab | 20-3 | 41.1 | Dual interface VTable | 41-13 |
| 20.3 | Three-dimensional crosstab | 20-3 | 43.1 | Mask Edit property page in design mode | 43-14 |
| | | | 44.1 | The COM+ Events system | 44-22 |
| | | | 45.1 | Visual Component Library class hierarchy. | 45-2 |
| | | | 45.2 | Component wizard | 45-9 |
| | | | 51.1 | Signal routing | 51-11 |
| | | | 51.2 | System event routing. | 51-13 |

Introduction

The *Developer's Guide* describes intermediate and advanced development topics, such as building client/server database applications, writing custom components, creating Internet Web server applications, and including support for industry-standard specifications such as SOAP, TCP/IP, COM+, and ActiveX. Many of the advanced features that support Web development, advanced XML technologies, and database development require components or wizards that are not available in all versions of C++Builder.

The *Developer's Guide* assumes you are familiar with using C++Builder and understand fundamental C++Builder programming techniques. For an introduction to C++Builder programming and the integrated development environment (IDE), see the *Quick Start* and the online Help.

What's in this manual?

This manual contains five parts, as follows:

- **Part I, "Programming with C++Builder,"** describes how to build general-purpose C++Builder applications. This part provides details on programming techniques you can use in any C++Builder application. For example, it describes how to use common Visual Component Library (VCL) or Component Library for Cross-Platform (CLX) objects that make user interface programming easy such as handling strings, manipulating text, implementing the common dialogs, working with graphics, error and exception handling, using DLLs, OLE automation, and writing international applications.

Generally, it rarely matters that C++Builder's underlying VCL is written in Object Pascal. However, there are a few instances where it affects your C++Builder programs. A chapter on C++ language support and the VCL describes language issues such as how C++ class instantiation differs when using VCL classes and the C++ language extensions added to support the C++Builder "component-property-event" model of programming.

A chapter describes how to use objects in the Borland Component Library for Cross-Platform (CLX) to develop applications that can be compiled and run on either Windows or Linux platforms.

The chapter on deployment details the tasks involved in deploying your application to your application users. For example, it includes information on effective compiler options, using InstallShield Express, licensing issues, and determining which packages, DLLs, and other libraries to use when building the production-quality version of your application.

- **Part II, “Developing database applications,”** describes how to build database applications using database tools and components. C++Builder lets you access many types of databases, including local databases such as Paradox and dBASE, and network SQL server databases like InterBase, Oracle, and Sybase. You can choose from a variety of data access mechanisms, including dbExpress, the Borland Database Engine, InterBaseExpress, and ActiveX Data Objects (ADO). To implement the more advanced database applications, you need the C++Builder features that are not available in all editions.
- **Part III, “Writing Internet applications,”** describes how to create applications that are distributed over the Internet. C++Builder includes a wide array of tools for writing Web server applications, including: Web Broker, an architecture with which you can create cross-platform server applications; WebSnap, with which you can design Web pages in a GUI environment; support for working with XML documents; and BizSnap, an architecture for using SOAP-based Web Services.

This part also provides a chapter on the C++Builder socket components that let you create applications that can communicate with other systems using TCP/IP and related protocols. Sockets provide connections based on the TCP/IP protocol, but are sufficiently general to work with related protocols such as Xerox Network System (XNS), Digital’s DECnet, or Novell’s IPX/SPX family.

- **Part IV, “Developing COM-based applications,”** describes how to build applications that can interoperate with other COM-based API objects. C++Builder supports COM applications that are based on the Active Template Library (ATL) wizards and a Type Library editor to ease the development of COM servers, and an importing tool lets you quickly create client applications. Support for COM clients is available in all editions of C++Builder. Support for COM servers is not available in all editions of C++Builder.
- **Part V, “Creating custom components,”** describes how to design and implement your own components, and how to make them available on the Component palette of the IDE. A component can be almost any program element that you want to manipulate at design time. Implementing custom components entails deriving a new class from an existing class type in the VCL or CLX class libraries.

Manual conventions

This manual uses the typefaces and symbols described in Table 1.1 to indicate special text.

Table 1.1 Typefaces and symbols

| Typeface or symbol | Meaning |
|--------------------|--|
| Monospace type | Monospaced text represents text as it appears on screen or in C++ code. It also represents anything you must type. |
| [] | Square brackets in text or syntax listings enclose optional items. Text of this sort should not be typed verbatim. |
| Boldface | Boldfaced words in text or code listings represent C++ reserved words or compiler options. |
| <i>Italics</i> | Italicized words in text represent C++ identifiers, such as variable or type names. Italics are also used to emphasize certain words, such as new terms. |
| <i>Keycaps</i> | This typeface indicates a key on your keyboard. For example, "Press <i>Esc</i> to exit a menu." |

Developer support services

Borland offers a variety of support options, including free services on the Internet, where you can search our extensive information base and connect with other users of Borland products, technical support, and fee-based consultant-level support.

For more information about Borland's developer support services, please see our Web site at <http://www.borland.com/devsupport/bcppbuilder>, call Borland Assist at (800) 523-7070, or contact our Sales Department at (831) 431-1064. For customers outside of the United States of America, see our Web site at <http://www.borland.com/bww/intlcust.html>.

When contacting support, be prepared to provide complete information about your environment, the version and edition of the product you are using, and a detailed description of the problem.

Ordering printed documentation

To order additional documentation, see the Borland Web site at shop.borland.com.

Programming with C++Builder

The chapters in “Programming with C++Builder” introduce concepts and skills necessary for creating C++Builder applications using any edition of the product.

Developing applications with C++Builder

Borland C++Builder is an object-oriented, visual programming environment to develop 32-bit applications for deployment on Windows and Linux. Using C++Builder, you can create highly efficient applications with a minimum of manual coding.

C++Builder provides a suite of Rapid Application Development (RAD) design tools, including programming wizards and application and form templates, and supports object-oriented programming with two comprehensive class libraries:

- The *Visual Component Library* (VCL), which includes objects that encapsulate the Windows API as well as other useful programming techniques (Windows).
- The *Borland Component Library for Cross-Platform* (CLX), which includes objects that encapsulate the Qt library (Windows or Linux).

This chapter briefly describes the C++Builder development environment and how it fits into the development life cycle. The rest of this manual provides technical details on developing general-purpose, database, Internet and Intranet applications, creating ActiveX and COM controls, and writing your own components.

Integrated development environment

When you start C++Builder, you are immediately placed within the integrated development environment, also called the IDE. This IDE provides all the tools you need to design, develop, test, debug, and deploy applications, allowing rapid prototyping and a shorter development time.

The IDE includes all the tools necessary to start designing applications, such as the:

- Form Designer, or *form*, a blank window on which to design the UI for your application.

- Component palette for displaying visual and nonvisual components you can use to design your user interface.
- Object Inspector for examining and changing an object's properties and events.
- Object TreeView for displaying and changing a components' logical relationships.
- Code editor for writing and editing the underlying program logic.
- Project Manager for managing the files that make up one or more projects.
- Integrated debugger for finding and fixing errors in your code.
- Many other tools such as property editors to change the values for an object's property.
- Command-line tools including compilers, linkers, and other utilities.
- Extensive class libraries with many reusable objects. Many of the objects provided in the class library are accessible in the IDE from the Component palette. By convention, the names of objects in the class library begin with a T, such as *TStatusBar*.

Some tools may not be included in all editions of the product.

A more complete overview of the development environment is presented in the *Quick Start* manual included with the product. In addition, the online Help system provides help on all menus, dialog boxes, and windows.

Designing applications

You can use C++Builder to design any kind of 32-bit application—from general-purpose utilities to sophisticated data access programs or distributed applications.

As you visually design the user interface for your application, C++Builder generates the underlying C++ code to support the application. As you select and modify the properties of components and forms, the results of those changes appear automatically in the source code, and vice versa. You can modify the source files directly with any text editor, including the built-in Code editor. The changes you make are immediately reflected in the visual environment.

In C++Builder, you can create your own components. Most of the components provided are written in Object Pascal. You can add components that you write to the Component palette and customize the palette for your use by including new tabs if needed.

You can also use C++Builder to design applications that run on both Linux and Windows by using CLX. CLX contains a set of classes that, if used instead of those in the VCL, allows your program to port between Windows and Linux. Refer to Chapter 14, “Developing cross-platform applications” for details about cross-platform programming and the differences between the Windows and Linux environments.

Chapter 7, “Building applications, components, and libraries,” introduces C++Builder's support for different types of applications.

Creating projects

All of C++Builder's application development revolves around projects. When you create an application in C++Builder you are creating a project. A project is a collection of files that make up an application. Some of these files are created at design time. Others are generated automatically when you compile the project source code.

You can view the contents of a project in a project management tool called the Project Manager. The Project Manager lists, in a hierarchical view, the unit names, the forms contained in the unit (if there is one), and shows the paths to the files in the project. Although you can edit many of these files directly, it is often easier and more reliable to use the visual tools in C++Builder.

At the top of the project hierarchy is a group file. You can combine multiple projects into a project group. This allows you to open more than one project at a time in the Project Manager. Project groups let you organize and work on related projects, such as applications that function together or parts of a multi-tiered application. If you are only working on one project, you do not need a project group file to create an application.

Project files, which describe individual projects, files, and associated options, have a .bpr extension. Project files contain directions for building an application or shared object. When you add and remove files using the Project Manager, the project file is updated. You specify project options using a Project Options dialog which has tabs for various aspects of your project such as forms, application, and compiler. These project options are stored in the project file with the project.

Units and forms are the basic building blocks of a C++Builder application. A project can share any existing form and unit file including those that reside outside the project directory tree. This includes custom procedures and functions that have been written as standalone routines.

If you add a shared file to a project, realize that the file is not copied into the current project directory; it remains in its current location. Adding the shared file to the current project registers the file name and path in the project file. C++Builder automatically handles this as you add units to a project.

When you compile a project, it does not matter where the files that make up the project reside. The compiler treats shared files the same as those created by the project itself.

Editing code

The C++Builder Code editor is a full-featured ASCII editor. If using the visual programming environment, a form is automatically displayed as part of a new project. You can start designing your application interface by placing objects on the form and modifying how they work in the Object Inspector. But other programming tasks, such as writing event handlers for objects, must be done by typing the code.

The contents of the form, all of its properties, its components, and their properties can be viewed and edited as text in the Code editor. You can adjust the generated code in the Code editor and add more components within the editor by typing code. As you type code into the editor, the compiler is constantly scanning for changes and updating the form with the new layout. You can then go back to the form, view and test the changes you made in the editor, and continue adjusting the form from there.

The C++Builder code generation and property streaming systems are completely open to inspection. The source code for everything that is included in your final executable file—all of the VCL objects, CLX objects, RTL sources, and project files—can be viewed and edited in the Code editor.

Compiling applications

When you have finished designing your application interface on the form and writing additional code so it does what you want, you can compile the project from the IDE or from the command line.

All projects have as a target a single distributable executable file. You can view or test your application at various stages of development by compiling, building, or running it:

- When you compile, only units that have changed since the last compile are recompiled.
- When you build, all units in the project are compiled, regardless of whether they have changed since the last compile. This technique is useful when you are unsure of exactly which files have or have not been changed, or when you simply want to ensure that all files are current and synchronized. It's also important to build when you've changed global compiler directives to ensure that all code compiles in the proper state. You can also test the validity of your source code without attempting to compile the project.
- When you run, you compile and then execute your application. If you modified the source code since the last compilation, the compiler recompiles those changed modules and relinks your application.

If you have grouped several projects together, you can compile or build all projects in a single project group at once. Choose Project | Compile All Projects or Project | Build All Projects with the project group selected in the Project Manager.

CLX To compile a CLX application on Linux, a Borland C++ solution is not yet available, but you can develop the application with C++Builder now.

Debugging applications

C++Builder provides an integrated debugger that helps you find and fix errors in your applications. The integrated debugger lets you control program execution, monitor variable values and items in data structures, and modify data values while debugging.

The integrated debugger can track down both runtime errors and logic errors. By running to specific program locations and viewing the variable values, the functions on the call stack, and the program output, you can monitor how your program behaves and find the areas where it is not behaving as designed. The debugger is described in online Help.

You can also use exception handling to recognize, locate, and deal with errors. Exceptions in C++Builder are classes, like other classes in C++Builder, except, by convention, they begin with an initial E rather than a T. See Chapter 12, “Exception handling” for details on exception handling.

Deploying applications

C++Builder includes add-on tools to help with application deployment. For example, InstallShield Express (not available in all editions) helps you to create an installation package for your application that includes all of the files needed for running a distributed application. TeamSource software (not available in all editions) is also available for tracking application updates.

Note Not all editions of C++Builder have deployment capabilities.

CLX To deploy a CLX application on Linux, a Borland C++ solution is not yet available, but you can develop the application with C++Builder now.

Refer to Chapter 17, “Deploying applications,” for specific information on deployment.

Using the class libraries

This chapter presents an overview of the class libraries and introduces some of the components that you can use while developing applications. C++Builder includes both the Visual Component Library (VCL) and the Borland Component Library for Cross-Platform (CLX). The VCL is for Windows development and CLX is for cross-platform development on both Windows and Linux. They are two different class libraries but they have many similarities.

Understanding the class libraries

VCL and CLX are class libraries made up of objects that you use when developing applications. The libraries are similar to each other and contain many of the same objects. Some objects in VCL implement features that are available on Windows only, such as objects that appear on the ADO, BDE, QReport, COM+, and Servers tabs on the Component palette. Virtually all CLX objects are available on both Windows and Linux.

All VCL and CLX objects descend from *TObject*, an abstract class whose methods encapsulate fundamental behavior like construction, destruction, and message handling. When you write classes of your own, they should descend from *TObject* in the class library you plan to use.

Components are a subset of VCL or CLX and descend from the abstract class *TComponent*. You can place components on a form or data module and manipulate them at design time. Most components are either visual or nonvisual, depending on whether they are visible at runtime. Some components appear on the Component palette.

Visual components, such as *TForm* and *TSpeedButton*, are called *controls* and descend from *TControl*. *TControl* provides properties that specify the visual attributes of controls, such as their height and width.

Nonvisual components are used for a variety of tasks. For example, if you are writing an application that connects to a database, you can place a *TDataSource* component on a form to connect a control and a dataset used by the control. This connection is not visible to the user, so *TDataSource* is nonvisual. At design time, nonvisual components are represented by an icon. This allows you to manipulate their properties and events just as you would a visual control.

Detailed reference material on all of the objects in VCL and CLX is accessible through online Help while you are programming. In the Code editor, place the cursor anywhere on the object and press F1 to display the Help topic. Objects, properties, methods, and events that are in the VCL are marked “VCL Reference” and those in CLX are marked “CLX Reference.”

Properties, methods, and events

Both the VCL and CLX form hierarchies of objects that are tied to the IDE, where you can develop applications quickly. The objects in both component libraries are based on properties, methods, and events. Each object includes data members (properties), functions that operate on the data (methods), and a way to interact with users of the class (events). The VCL and CLX are written in Object Pascal, though the VCL is based on the Windows API and CLX is based on the Qt widget library.

Properties

Properties are characteristics of an object that influence either the visible behavior or the operations of the object. For example, the *Visible* property determines whether an object can be seen or not in an application interface. Well-designed properties make your components easier for others to use and easier for you to maintain.

Here are some of the useful features of properties:

- Unlike methods, which are only available at runtime, you can see and change properties at design time and get immediate feedback as the components change in the IDE.
- You can access properties in the Object Inspector where you can modify the values of your object visually. Setting properties at design time is easier than writing code and makes your code easier to maintain.
- Because the data is encapsulated, it is protected and private to the actual object.
- The actual calls to get and set the values are methods, so special processing can be done that is invisible to the user of the object. For example, data could reside in a table, but could appear as a normal data member to the programmer.
- You can implement logic that triggers events or modifies other data during the access of the property. For example, changing the value of one property may require you to modify another. You can change the methods created for the property.
- Properties can be virtual.

- A property is not restricted to a single object. Changing one property on one object could effect several objects. For example, setting the *Checked* property on a radio button effects all of the radio buttons in the group.

Methods

A *method* is a function that is a member of a class. Methods define the behavior of an object. Class methods can access all the *public*, *protected*, and *private* properties and data members of the class and are commonly referred to as member functions. See “Controlling access” on page 46-4.

Events

An *event* is an action or occurrence detected by a program. Most modern applications are said to be event-driven, because they are designed to respond to events. In a program, the programmer has no way of predicting the exact sequence of actions a user will perform next. For example, they may choose a menu item, click a button, or mark some text. You can write code to handle the events you’re interested in, rather than writing code that always executes in the same restricted order.

Regardless of how an event is called, C++Builder looks to see if you have written any code to handle that event. If you have, that code is executed; otherwise, the default event handling behavior.

The kinds of events that can occur can be divided into two main categories:

- User events
- System events

User events

User events are actions that are initiated by the user. Examples of user events are *OnClick* (the user clicked the mouse), *OnKeyPress* (the user pressed a key on the keyboard), and *OnDblClick* (the user double-clicked a mouse button).

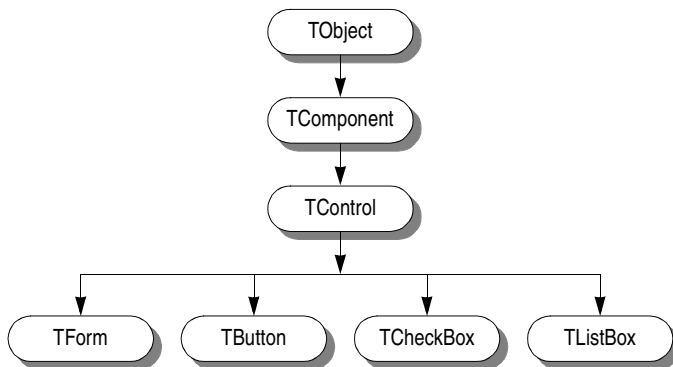
System events

System events are events that the operating system fires for you. For example, the *OnTimer* event (the Timer component issues one of these events whenever a predefined interval has elapsed), the *OnCreate* event (the component is being created), the *OnPaint* event (a component or window needs to be redrawn), and so on. Usually, system events are not directly initiated by a user action.

Objects, components, and controls

Figure 3.2 is a greatly simplified view of the inheritance hierarchy that illustrates the relationship between objects, components, and controls.

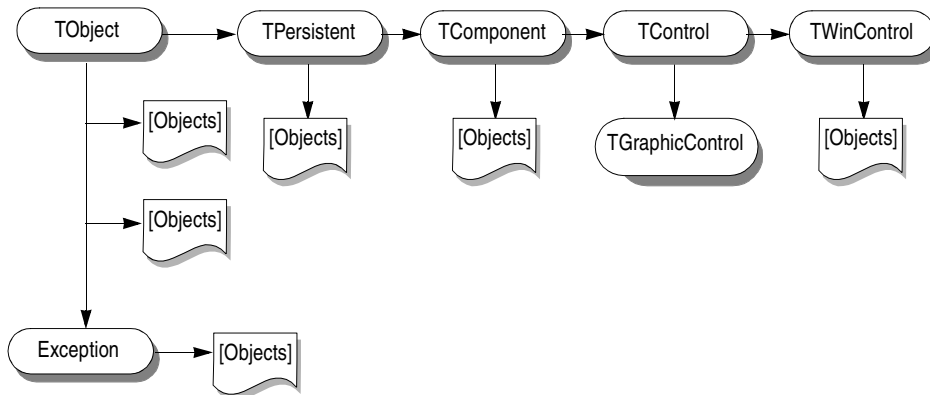
Figure 3.1 Objects, components, and controls



Every object inherits from *TObject*, and many objects inherit from *TComponent*. Controls inherit from *TControl* and have the ability to display themselves at runtime. A control like *TCheckBox* inherits all the functionality of *TObject*, *TComponent*, and *TControl*, and adds specialized capabilities of its own.

Figure 3.2 is an overview of the Visual Component Library (VCL) that shows the major branches of the inheritance tree. The Borland Component Library for Cross-Platform (CLX) looks very much the same at this level although *TWinControl* is replaced by *TWidgetControl*.

Figure 3.2 A simplified hierarchy diagram



Several important base classes are shown in the figure, and they are described in the following table:

Table 3.1 Important base classes

| Class | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| <i>TObject</i> | Signifies the base class and ultimate ancestor of everything in the VCL or CLX. <i>TObject</i> encapsulates the fundamental behavior common to all VCL/CLX objects by introducing methods that perform basic functions such as creating, maintaining, and destroying an instance of an object. |
| <i>Exception</i> | Specifies the base class of all classes that relate to exceptions. <i>Exception</i> provides a consistent interface for error conditions, and enables applications to handle error conditions gracefully. |
| <i>TPersistent</i> | Specifies the base class for all objects that implement properties. Classes under <i>TPersistent</i> deal with sending data to streams and allow for the assignment of classes. |
| <i>TComponent</i> | Specifies the base class for all nonvisual components such as <i>TApplication</i> . <i>TComponent</i> is the common ancestor of all components. This class allows a component to be displayed on the Component palette, lets the component own other components, and allows the component to be manipulated directly on a form. |
| <i>TControl</i> | Represents the base class for all controls that are visible at runtime. <i>TControl</i> is the common ancestor of all visual components and provides standard visual controls like position and cursor. This class also provides events that respond to mouse actions. |
| <i>TWinControl</i> | Specifies the base class of all user interface objects. Controls under <i>TWinControl</i> are windowed controls that can capture keyboard input. In CLX, these are called widgets, and <i>TWidgetControl</i> replaces <i>TWinControl</i> . |

The next few sections present a general description of the types of classes that each branch contains. For a complete overview of the VCL and CLX object hierarchies, refer to the VCL Object Hierarchy and CLX Object Hierarchy wall charts included with this product.

TObject branch

The *TObject* branch includes all VCL and CLX objects that descend from *TObject* but not from *TPersistent*. Much of the powerful capability of VCL and CLX objects are established by the methods that *TObject* introduces. *TObject* encapsulates the fundamental behavior common to all objects in the VCL and CLX by introducing methods that provide:

- The ability to respond when objects are created or destroyed.
- Class type and instance information on an object, and runtime type information (RTTI) about its published properties.
- Support for message-handling (VCL) or system events (CLX).

TObject is the immediate ancestor of many simple classes. Classes that are contained within the *TObject* branch have one common, important characteristic: they are transitory. What this means is that these classes do not have a method to save the state that they are in prior to destruction; they are not persistent.

One of the main groups of classes in this branch is the *Exception* class. This class provides a large set of built-in exception classes for automatically handling divide-by-zero errors, file I/O errors, invalid typecasts, and many other exception conditions.

Another type of group in the *TObject* branch are classes that encapsulate data structures, such as:

- *TBits*, a class that stores an “array” of Boolean values.
- *TList*, a linked list class.
- *TStack*, a class that maintains a last-in first-out array of pointers.
- *TQueue*, a class that maintains a first-in first-out array of pointers.

In the VCL, you can also find wrappers for external objects like *TPrinter*, which encapsulates the Windows printer interface, and *TRegistry*, a low-level wrapper for the system registry and functions that operate on the registry. These are specific to the Windows environment.

TStream is good example of another type of class in this branch. *TStream* is the base class type for stream objects that can read from or write to various kinds of storage media, such as disk files, dynamic memory, and so on.

Overall, this branch includes many different types of classes that are very useful to you as a developer.

TPersistent branch

The *TPersistent* branch includes all VCL and CLX objects that descend from *TPersistent* but not from *TComponent*. Persistence determines what gets saved with a form file or data module and what gets loaded into the form or data module when it is retrieved from memory.

Objects in this branch implement properties for components. Properties are only loaded and saved with a form if they have an owner. The owner must be some component. This branch introduces the *GetOwner* function which lets you determine the owner of the property.

Objects in this branch are also the first to include a published section where properties can be automatically loaded and saved. A *DefineProperties* method also allows you to indicate how to load and save properties.

Following are some of the other classes in the *TPersistent* branch of the hierarchy:

- *TGraphicsObject*, an abstract base class for graphics objects such as: *TBrush*, *TFont*, and *TPen*.
- *TGraphic*, an abstract base class for objects such as *TBitmap* and *TIcon*, which store and display visual images.
- *TStrings*, a base class for objects that represent a list of strings.
- *TClipboard*, a class that contains text or graphics that have been cut or copied from an application.
- *TCollection*, *TOwnedCollection*, and *TCollectionItem*, classes that maintain indexed collections of specially defined items.

TComponent branch

The *TComponent* branch contains objects that descend from *TComponent* but not *TControl*. Objects in this branch are components that you can manipulate on forms at design time. They are persistent objects that can do the following:

- Appear on the Component palette and can be changed in the form designer.
- Own and manage other components.
- Load and save themselves.

Several methods in *TComponent* dictate how components act during design time and what information gets saved with the component. Streaming is introduced in this branch of the VCL and CLX. C++Builder handles most streaming chores automatically. Properties are persistent if they are published and published properties are automatically streamed.

The *TComponent* class also introduces the concept of ownership that is propagated throughout the VCL and CLX. Two properties support ownership: *Owner* and *Components*. Every component has an *Owner* property that references another component as its owner. A component may own other components. In this case, all owned components are referenced in the component's *Array* property.

A component's constructor takes a single parameter that is used to specify the new component's owner. If the passed-in owner exists, the new component is added to the owner's *Components* list. Aside from using the *Components* list to reference owned components, this property also provides for the automatic destruction of owned components. As long as the component has an owner, it will be destroyed when the owner is destroyed. For example, since *TForm* is a descendant of *TComponent*, all components owned by the form are destroyed and their memory freed when the form is destroyed. This assumes that all of the components on the form clean themselves up properly when their destructors are called.

If a property type is a *TComponent* or a descendant, the streaming system creates an instance of that type when reading it in. If a property type is *TPersistent* but not *TComponent*, the streaming system uses the existing instance available through the property and read values for that instance's properties.

When creating a form file (a file used to store information about the components on the form), the form designer loops through its components array and saves all the components on the form. Each component “knows” how to write its changed properties out to a stream (in this case, a text file). Conversely, when loading the properties of components in the form file, the form designer loops through the components array and loads each component.

The types of classes you'll find in this branch include:

- *TActionList*, a class that maintains a list of actions used with components and controls, such as menu items and buttons.
- *TMainMenu*, a class that provides a menu bar and its accompanying drop-down menus for a form.
- *TOpenDialog*, *TSaveDialog*, *TFontDialog*, *TFindDialog*, *TColorDialog*, and so on, classes that provide commonly used dialog boxes.

- *TScreen*, a class that keeps track of what forms and data modules have been instantiated by the application, the active form, and the active control within that form, the size and resolution of the screen, and the cursors and fonts available for the application to use.

Components that do not need a visual interface can be derived directly from *TComponent*. To make a tool such as a *TTimer* device, you can derive from *TComponent*. This type of component resides on the Component palette but performs internal functions that are accessed through code rather than appearing in the user interface at runtime.

In CLX, the *TComponent* branch also includes *THandleComponent*. This is the base class for nonvisual components that require a handle to an underlying Qt object such as dialogs and menus.

See Chapter 5, “Working with components,” for details on setting properties, calling methods, and working with events for components.

TControl branch

The *TControl* branch consists of components that descend from *TControl* but not *TWinControl* (*TWidgetControl* in CLX). Objects in this branch are controls that are visual objects that the application user can see and manipulate at runtime. All controls have properties, methods, and events in common that relate to how the control looks, such as its position, the cursor associated with the control’s window (or widget in CLX), methods to paint or move the control, and events to respond to mouse actions. Controls can never receive keyboard input.

Whereas *TComponent* defines behavior for all components, *TControl* defines behavior for all visual controls. This includes drawing routines, standard events, and containership.

All visual controls share certain properties. While these properties inherited from *TControl*, they are published—and hence appear in the Object Inspector—only for components to which they are applicable. For example, *TImage* does not publish the *Color* property, since its color is determined by the graphic it displays.

There are two types of controls:

- Those that have a window (or widget) of their own.
- Those that use the window (or widget) of their parent.

Controls that have their own window are called “windowed” controls (VCL) or “widget-based” controls (CLX) and descend from *TWinControl* (*TWidgetControl* in CLX). Buttons and check boxes fall into this class.

Controls that use the window (or widget) of their parent are called graphic controls and descend from *TGraphicControl*. Images and shapes fall into this class. Graphic controls do not maintain a handle and cannot receive the input focus. Because a graphic control does not need a handle, it uses fewer system resources. Graphic controls must draw themselves and cannot be a parent to other controls.

See “Graphic controls” on page 9-16 for information about other graphics controls and Chapter 9, “Types of controls,” for details on different types of controls. See Chapter 6, “Working with controls,” for details on how to interact with controls at runtime.

TWinControl/TWidgetControl branch

In the VCL, the *TWinControl* branch includes all controls that descend from *TWinControl*. *TWinControl* is the base class for all windowed controls, which are items that you will use in the user interface of an application, such as buttons, labels, and scroll bars. Windowed controls are wrappers around a Windows control.

In CLX, *TWidgetControl*, which replaces *TWinControl*, is the base class for all widget controls, which are wrappers around *widgets*.

Windowed and widget controls:

- Can receive focus while an application is running, which means they can receive keyboard input from the application user. In comparison, other controls may only display data.
- Can be a parent of one or more child controls.
- Have a handle, or unique identifier.

The *TWinControl*/*TWidgetControl* branch includes both controls that are drawn automatically (including *TEdit*, *TListBox*, *TComboBox*, *TPageControl*, and so on) and custom controls that C++Builder must draw, such as *TDBNavigator*, *TMediaPlayer* (VCL only), and *TGauge* (VCL only). Direct descendants of *TWinControl*/*TWidgetControl* typically implement standard controls, like an edit field, a combo box, list box, or page control, and, therefore, already know how to paint themselves.

The *TCustomControl* class is provided for components that require a window handle but do not encapsulate a standard control that includes the ability to repaint itself. You never have to worry about how the controls render themselves or how they respond to events—C++Builder completely encapsulates this behavior for you.

Using BaseCLX

There are a number of units that are common to both the VCL and CLX that provide the underlying support for both component libraries. Collectively, these units are called BaseCLX. BaseCLX does not include any of the components that appear on the component palette. Rather, it includes a number of classes and global routines that are used by the components that do appear on the component palette. These classes and routines are also available for you to use in application code or when you are writing your own classes.

Note The global routines that make up BaseCLX are often called the runtime library. Do not confuse these routines with the C++ runtime library. Many of these perform functions similar to those in the C++ runtime library, but can be distinguished because the function names begin with a capital letter and they are declared in the header of a unit.

The following topics discuss many of the classes and routines that make up BaseCLX and illustrate how to use them. These uses include:

- Using streams
- Working with files
- Working with .ini files
- Working with lists
- Working with string lists
- Working with strings
- Converting measurements
- Creating drawing spaces

Note This list of tasks is not exhaustive. The runtime library in BaseCLX contains many routines to perform tasks that are not mentioned here. These include a host of mathematical functions (defined in the Math unit), routines for working with date/time values (defined in the SysUtils and DateUtils units), and routines for working with Object Pascal Variants (defined in the Variants unit).

Using streams

Streams are classes that let you read and write data. They provide a common interface for reading and writing to different media such as memory, strings, sockets, and BLOB fields in databases. There are several stream classes, which all descend from *TStream*. Each stream class is specific to one media type. For example, *TMemoryStream* reads from or writes to a memory image, *TFileStream* reads from or writes to a file.

Using streams to read or write data

Stream classes all share several methods for reading and writing data. These methods are distinguished by whether they perform the following:

- Return the number of bytes read or written.
- Require the number of bytes to be known.
- Raise an exception on error.

Stream methods for reading and writing

The *Read* method reads a specified number of bytes from the stream, starting at its current *Position*, into a buffer. *Read* then advances the current position by the number of bytes actually transferred. The prototype for *Read* is

```
virtual int __fastcall Read(void *Buffer, int Count);
```

Read is useful when the number of bytes in the file is not known. *Read* returns the number of bytes actually transferred, which may be less than *Count* if the stream did not contain *Count* bytes of data past the current position.

The *Write* method writes *Count* bytes from a buffer to the stream, starting at the current *Position*. The prototype for *Write* is:

```
virtual int __fastcall Write(const void *Buffer, int Count);
```

After writing to the file, *Write* advances the current position by the number bytes written, and returns the number of bytes actually written, which may be less than *Count* if the end of the buffer is encountered or the stream can't accept any more bytes.

The counterpart procedures are *ReadBuffer* and *WriteBuffer* which, unlike *Read* and *Write*, do not return the number of bytes read or written. These procedures are useful in cases where the number of bytes is known and required, for example when reading in structures. *ReadBuffer* and *WriteBuffer* raise an exception (*EReadError* and *EWriteError*) if the byte count can not be matched exactly. This is in contrast to the *Read* and *Write* methods, which can return a byte count that differs from the requested value. The prototypes for *ReadBuffer* and *WriteBuffer* are:

```
virtual int __fastcall ReadBuffer(void *Buffer, int Count);
```

```
virtual int __fastcall WriteBuffer(const void *Buffer, int Count);
```

These methods call the *Read* and *Write* methods to perform the actual reading and writing.

Reading and writing components

TStream defines specialized methods, *ReadComponent* and *WriteComponent*, for reading and writing components. You can use them in your applications as a way to save components and their properties when you create or alter them at runtime.

ReadComponent and *WriteComponent* are the methods that the IDE uses to read components from or write them to form files. When streaming components to or from a form file, stream classes work with the *TFile* classes, *TReader* and *TWriter*, to read objects from the form file or write them out to disk. For more information about using the component streaming system, see the online Help on the *TStream*, *TFile*, *TReader*, *TWriter*, and *TComponent* classes.

Copying data from one stream to another

When copying data from one stream to another, you do not need to explicitly read and then write the data. Instead, you can use the *CopyFrom* method, as illustrated in the following example.

The application includes two edit controls (From and To) and a Copy File button.

```
void __fastcall TForm1::CopyFileClick(TObject *Sender)
{
    TStream* stream1=TFileStream::Create(From.Text,fmOpenRead | fmShareDenyWrite);
    try
    {
        TStream* stream2 -> TFileStream::Create(To.Text fmOpenCreate | fmShareDenyRead);
        try
        {
            stream2 -> CopyFrom(stream1, stream1->Size);
        }
        __finally
        {
            delete stream2;
        }
    }
    __finally
    {
        delete stream1;
    }
}
```

Specifying the stream position and size

In addition to methods for reading and writing, streams permit applications to seek to an arbitrary position in the stream or change the size of the stream. Once you seek to a specified position, the next read or write operation starts reading from or writing to the stream at that position.

Seeking to a specific position

The *Seek* method is the most general mechanism for moving to a particular position in the stream. There are two overloads for the *Seek* method:

```
virtual int __fastcall Seek(int Offset, Word Origin);
virtual __int64 __fastcall Seek(const __int64 Offset, TSeekOrigin Origin);
```

Both overloads work the same way. The difference is that one version uses a 32-bit integer to represent positions and offsets, while the other uses a 64-bit integer.

The *Origin* parameter indicates how to interpret the *Offset* parameter. *Origin* should be one of the following values:

| Value | Meaning |
|-----------------|---|
| soFromBeginning | Offset is from the beginning of the resource. Seek moves to the position Offset. Offset must be ≥ 0 . |
| soFromCurrent | Offset is from the current position in the resource. Seek moves to Position + Offset. |
| soFromEnd | Offset is from the end of the resource. Offset must be ≤ 0 to indicate a number of bytes before the end of the file. |

Seek resets the current stream position, moving it by the indicated offset. *Seek* returns the new current position in the stream.

Using Position and Size properties

All streams have properties that hold the current position and size of the stream. These are used by the *Seek* method, as well as all the methods that read from or write to the stream.

The *Position* property indicates the current offset, in bytes, into the stream (from the beginning of the streamed data).

The *Size* property indicates the size of the stream in bytes. It can be used to determine the number of bytes available for reading, or to truncate the data in the stream.

Size is used internally by routines that read and write to and from the stream.

Setting the *Size* property changes the size of the data in the stream. For example, on a file stream, setting *Size* inserts an end of file marker to truncate the file. If the *Size* of the stream cannot be changed, an exception is raised. For example, trying to change the *Size* of a read-only file stream raises an exception.

Working with files

BaseCLX supports several ways of working with files. In addition to using file streams, there are several runtime library routines for performing file I/O. Both file streams and the global routines for reading from and writing to files are described in “Approaches to file I/O” on page 4-5.

In addition to input/output operations, you may want to manipulate files on disk. Support for operations on the files themselves rather than their contents is described in “Manipulating files” on page 4-7.

Note When using CLX in cross-platform applications, remember that although the Object Pascal language is not case sensitive, the Linux operating system is. When using objects and routines that work with files, be attentive to the case of file names.

Approaches to file I/O

There are three approaches you can take when reading from and writing to files:

- The recommended approach for working with files is to use file streams. File streams are object instances of the *TFileStream* class used to access information in disk files. File streams are a portable and high-level approach to file I/O. Because file streams make the file handle available, this approach can be combined with the next one. The next section, “Using file streams” discusses *TFileStream* in detail.
- You can work with files using a handle-based approach. File handles are provided by the operating system when you create or open a file to work with its contents. The SysUtils unit defines a number of file-handling routines that work with files using file handles. On Windows, these are typically wrappers around Windows API functions. Because the Delphi functions use Object Pascal syntax, and occasionally provide default parameter values, they are a convenient interface to the Windows API. Furthermore, there are corresponding versions on Linux, so you can use these routines in cross-platform applications. To use a handle-based approach, you first open a file using the *FileOpen* function or create a new file using the *FileCreate* function. Once you have the handle, use handle-based routines to work with its contents (write a line, read text, and so on).
- The C runtime library and standard C++ library include a number of functions and classes for working with files. These have the advantage that they can be used in applications that do not use the VCL or CLX. For information on these functions, see the online documentation for the C runtime library or the standard C++ library.

Using file streams

TFileStream is a class that enables applications to read from and write to a file on disk. It is used for high-level object representations of file streams. Because *TFileStream* is a stream object, it shares the common stream methods. You can use these methods to read from or write to the file, copy data to or from other stream classes, and read or write components values. See “Using streams” on page 4-2 for details on the capabilities that file streams inherit by being stream classes.

In addition, file streams give you access to the file handle, so that you can use them with global file handling routines that require the file handle.

Creating and opening files using file streams

To create or open a file and get access to its handle, you simply instantiate a *TFileStream*. This opens or creates a named file and provides methods to read from or write to it. If the file cannot be opened, the *TFileStream* constructor raises an exception.

```
__fastcall TFileStream(const AnsiString FileName, Word Mode);
```

The *Mode* parameter specifies how the file should be opened when creating the file stream. The *Mode* parameter consists of an open mode and a share mode OR'ed together. The open mode must be one of the following values:

Table 4.1 Open modes

| Value | Meaning |
|-----------------|--|
| fmCreate | TFileStream a file with the given name. If a file with the given name exists, open the file in write mode. |
| fmOpenRead | Open the file for reading only. |
| fmOpenWrite | Open the file for writing only. Writing to the file completely replaces the current contents. |
| fmOpenReadWrite | Open the file to modify the current contents rather than replace them. |

The share mode can be one of the following values with the restrictions listed below:

Table 4.2 Share modes

| Value | Meaning |
|------------------|--|
| fmShareCompat | Sharing is compatible with the way FCBs are opened. |
| fmShareExclusive | Other applications can not open the file for any reason. |
| fmShareDenyWrite | Other applications can open the file for reading but not for writing. |
| fmShareDenyRead | Other applications can open the file for writing but not for reading. |
| fmShareDenyNone | No attempt is made to prevent other applications from reading from or writing to the file. |

Note that which share mode you can use depends on which open mode you used. The following table shows shared modes that are available for each open mode.

Table 4.3 Shared modes available for each open mode

| Open Mode | fmShareCompat | fmShareExclusive | fmShareDenyWrite | fmShareDenyRead | fmShareDenyNone |
|-----------------|---------------|------------------|------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| fmOpenRead | Can't use | Can't use | Available | Can't use | Available |
| fmOpenWrite | Available | Available | Can't use | Available | Available |
| fmOpenReadWrite | Available | Available | Available | Available | Available |

The file open and share mode constants are defined in the SysUtils unit.

Using the file handle

When you instantiate *TFileStream* you get access to the file handle. The file handle is contained in the *Handle* property. On Windows, *Handle* is a Windows file handle. On

Linux versions of CLX, it is a Linux file handle. *Handle* is read-only and reflects the mode in which the file was opened. If you want to change the attributes of the file *Handle*, you must create a new file stream object.

Some file manipulation routines take a file handle as a parameter. Once you have a file stream, you can use the *Handle* property in any situation in which you would use a file handle. Be aware that, unlike handle streams, file streams close file handles when the object is destroyed.

Manipulating files

Several common file operations are built into the BaseCLX runtime library. The procedures and functions for working with files operate at a high level. For most routines, you specify the name of the file and the routine makes the necessary calls to the operating system for you. In some cases, you use file handles instead.

Caution Although the Object Pascal language is not case sensitive, the Linux operating system is. Be attentive to case when working with files in cross-platform applications.

Deleting a file

Deleting a file erases the file from the disk and removes the entry from the disk's directory. There is no corresponding operation to restore a deleted file, so applications should generally allow users to confirm before deleting files. To delete a file, pass the name of the file to the *DeleteFile* function:

```
DeleteFile(FileName);
```

DeleteFile returns *true* if it deleted the file and *false* if it did not (for example, if the file did not exist or if it was read-only). *DeleteFile* erases the file named by *FileName* from the disk.

Finding a file

There are three routines used for finding a file: *FindFirst*, *FindNext*, and *FindClose*. *FindFirst* searches for the first instance of a filename with a given set of attributes in a specified directory. *FindNext* returns the next entry matching the name and attributes specified in a previous call to *FindFirst*. *FindClose* releases memory allocated by *FindFirst*. You should always use *FindClose* to terminate a *FindFirst/FindNext* sequence. If you want to know if a file exists, a *FileExists* function returns *true* if the file exists, *false* otherwise.

The three file find routines take a *TSearchRec* as one of the parameters. *TSearchRec* defines the file information searched for by *FindFirst* or *FindNext*. The declaration for *TSearchRec* is:

```
struct TSearchRec
{
    int Time; // time stamp of the file
    int Size; // size of the file in bytes
    int Attr; // file attribute flags
    AnsiString Name; // filename and extension
    int ExcludeAttr; // file attribute flags for files to ignore
```

```

    unsigned FindHandle;
    _WIN32_FIND_DATA FindData; // structure with additional information
} ;

```

If a file is found, the fields of the *TSearchRec* type parameter are modified to describe the found file. You can test *Attr* against the following attribute constants or values to determine if a file has a specific attribute:

Table 4.4 Attribute constants and values

| Constant | Value | Description |
|--------------------|------------|-----------------|
| <i>faReadOnly</i> | 0x00000001 | Read-only files |
| <i>faHidden</i> | 0x00000002 | Hidden files |
| <i>faSysFile</i> | 0x00000004 | System files |
| <i>faVolumeID</i> | 0x00000008 | Volume ID files |
| <i>faDirectory</i> | 0x00000010 | Directory files |
| <i>faArchive</i> | 0x00000020 | Archive files |
| <i>faAnyFile</i> | 0x0000003F | Any file |

To test for an attribute, combine the value of the *Attr* field with the attribute constant using the *&* operator. If the file has that attribute, the result will be greater than 0. For example, if the found file is a hidden file, the following expression will evaluate to *true*: (*SearchRec.Attr & faHidden > 0*). Attributes can be combined by OR'ing their constants or values. For example, to search for read-only and hidden files in addition to normal files, pass (*faReadOnly | faHidden*) as the *Attr* parameter.

Example: This example uses a label, a button named *Search*, and a button named *Again* on a form. When the user clicks the *Search* button, the first file in the specified path is found, and the name and the number of bytes in the file appear in the label's caption. Each time the user clicks the *Again* button, the next matching filename and size is displayed in the label:

```

TSearchRec SearchRec; // global variable

void __fastcall TForm1::SearchClick(TObject *Sender)
{
    FindFirst("c:\\Program Files\\bcb6\\bin\\*.\"", faAnyFile, SearchRec);
    Label1->Caption = SearchRec->Name + " is " + IntToStr(SearchRec.Size) + " bytes in size";
}

void __fastcall TForm1::AgainClick(TObject *Sender)
{
    if (FindNext(SearchRec) == 0)
        Label1->Caption = SearchRec->Name + " is " + IntToStr(SearchRec.Size) + " bytes in size";
    else
        FindClose(SearchRec);
}

```

Note In cross-platform applications, you should replace any hard-coded pathnames with the correct pathname for the system or use environment variables (on the Environment Variables page when you choose Tools | Environment Options) to represent them.

Renaming a file

To change a file name, use the *RenameFile* function:

```
extern PACKAGE bool __fastcall RenameFile(const AnsiString OldName, const AnsiString
NewName);
```

RenameFile changes a file name, identified by *OldFileName*, to the name specified by *NewFileName*. If the operation succeeds, *RenameFile* returns *true*. If it cannot rename the file (for example, if a file called *NewFileName* already exists), *RenameFile* returns *false*. For example:

```
if (!RenameFile("OLDNAME.TXT", "NEWNAME.TXT"))
    ErrorMsg("Error renaming file!");
```

You cannot rename (move) a file across drives using *RenameFile*. You would need to first copy the file and then delete the old one.

Note *RenameFile* in the BaseCLX runtime library is a wrapper around the Windows API *MoveFile* function, so *MoveFile* will not work across drives either.

File date-time routines

The *FileAge*, *FileGetDate*, and *FileSetDate* routines operate on operating system date-time values. *FileAge* returns the date-and-time stamp of a file, or -1 if the file does not exist. *FileSetDate* sets the date-and-time stamp for a specified file, and returns zero on success or an error code on failure. *FileGetDate* returns a date-and-time stamp for the specified file or -1 if the handle is invalid.

As with most of the file manipulating routines, *FileAge* uses a string filename. *FileGetDate* and *FileSetDate*, however, use an integer parameter which takes a file handle. To get the file handle either

- Use the *FileOpen* or *FileCreate* function to create a new file or open an existing file. Both *FileOpen* and *FileCreate* return the file handle.
- Instantiate *TFileStream* to create or open a file. Then use its *Handle* property. See “Using file streams” on page 4-5 for more information.

Copying a file

The BaseCLX runtime library does not provide any routines for copying a file. However, if you are writing Windows-only applications, you can directly call the Windows API *CopyFile* function to copy a file. Like most of the runtime library file routines, *CopyFile* takes a filename as a parameter, not a file handle. When copying a file, be aware that the file attributes for the existing file are copied to the new file, but the security attributes are not. *CopyFile* is also useful when moving files across drives because neither the *RenameFile* function nor the Windows API *MoveFile* function can rename or move files across drives. For more information, see the Microsoft Windows online Help.

Working with ini files and the system Registry

Many applications use ini files to store configuration information. BaseCLX includes two classes for working with ini files: *TIniFile* and *TMemIniFile*. Using ini files has the advantage that they can be used in cross-platform applications and they are easy to read and edit. For information on these classes, see “Using TIniFile and TMemIniFile” on page 4-10 for more information.

Many Windows applications replace the use of ini files with the system Registry. The Windows system Registry is a hierarchical database that acts as a centralized storage space for configuration information. The VCL includes classes for working with the system Registry. While these are technically not part of BaseCLX (because they are only available on Windows), two of these classes, *TRegistryIniFile* and *TRegistry*, are discussed here because of their similarity to the classes for working with ini files.

TRegistryIniFile is useful for cross-platform applications, because it shares a common ancestor (*TCustomIniFile*) with the classes that work with ini files. If you confine yourself to the methods of the common ancestor (*TCustomIniFile*) your application can work on both applications with a minimum of conditional code. *TRegistryIniFile* is discussed in “Using TRegistryIniFile” on page 4-11.

For applications that are not cross-platform, you can use the *TRegistry* class. The properties and methods of *TRegistry* have names that correspond more directly to the way the system Registry is organized, because it does not need to be compatible with the classes for ini files. *TRegistry* is discussed in “Using TRegistry” on page 4-12.

Using TIniFile and TMemIniFile

The ini file format is still popular, many configuration files (such as the DSK Desktop settings file) are in this format. This format is especially useful in cross-platform applications, where you can’t always count on a system Registry for storing configuration information. BaseCLX provides two classes, *TIniFile* and *TMemIniFile*, to make reading and writing ini files very easy.

On Linux, *TMemIniFile* and *TIniFile* are identical. On Windows, *TIniFile* works directly with the ini file on disk while *TMemIniFile* buffers all changes in memory and does not write them to disk until you call the *UpdateFile* method.

When you instantiate the *TIniFile* or *TMemIniFile* object, you pass the name of the ini file as a parameter to the constructor. If the file does not exist, it is automatically created. You are then free to read values using the various read methods, such as *ReadString*, *ReadDate*, *ReadInteger*, or *ReadBool*. Alternatively, if you want to read an entire section of the ini file, you can use the *ReadSection* method. Similarly, you can write values using methods such as *WriteBool*, *WriteInteger*, *WriteDate*, or *WriteString*.

Following is an example of reading configuration information from an ini file in a form's constructor and writing values in the *OnClose* event handler.

```
--fastcall TForm1::TForm1(TComponent *Owner) : TForm(Owner)
{
    TIniFile *ini;
    ini = new TIniFile( ChangeFileExt( Application->ExeName, ".INI" ) );
```

```

Top      = ini->ReadInteger( "Form", "Top", 100 );
Left     = ini->ReadInteger( "Form", "Left", 100 );
Caption  = ini->ReadString( "Form", "Caption",
                          "Default Caption" );
ini->ReadBool( "Form", "InitMax", false ) ?
    WindowState = wsMaximized :
    WindowState = wsNormal;

delete ini;
}

void __fastcall TForm1::FormClose(TObject *Sender, TCloseAction &Action)
{
    TIniFile *ini;
    ini = new TIniFile(ChangeFileExt( Application->ExeName, ".INI" ) );
    ini->WriteInteger( "Form", "Top", Top );
    ini->WriteInteger( "Form", "Left", Left );
    ini->WriteString ( "Form", "Caption", Caption );
    ini->WriteBool   ( "Form", "InitMax",
                      WindowState == wsMaximized );

    delete ini;
}

```

Each of the Read routines takes three parameters. The first parameter identifies the section of the ini file. The second parameter identifies the value you want to read, and the third is a default value in case the section or value doesn't exist in the ini file. Just as the Read methods gracefully handle the case when a section or value does not exist, the Write routines create the section and/or value if they do not exist. The example code creates an ini file the first time it is run that looks like this:

```

[Form]
Top=185
Left=280
Caption=Default Caption
InitMax=0

```

On subsequent execution of this application, the ini values are read in when the form is created and written back out in the *OnClose* event.

Using TRegistryIniFile

Many 32-bit Windows applications store their information in the system Registry instead of ini files because the Registry is hierarchical and doesn't suffer from the size limitations of ini files. If you are accustomed to using ini files and want to move your configuration information to the Registry instead, you can use the *TRegistryIniFile* class. You may also want to use *TRegistryIniFile* in cross-platform applications if you want to use the system Registry on Windows and an ini file on Linux. You can write most of your application so that it uses the *TCustomIniFile* type. You need only conditionalize the code that creates an instance of *TRegistryIniFile* (on Windows) or *TMemIniFile* (on Linux) and assigns it to the *TCustomIniFile* your application uses.

TRegistryIniFile makes Registry entries look like ini file entries. All the methods from *TIniFile* and *TMemIniFile* (read and write) exist in *TRegistryIniFile*.

When you construct a *TRegistryIniFile* object, the parameter you pass to the constructor (corresponding to the filename for an *IniFile* or *TMemIniFile* object) becomes a key value under the user key in the registry. All sections and values branch from that root. *TRegistryIniFile* simplifies the Registry interface considerably, so you may want to use it instead of the *TRegistry* component even if you aren't porting existing code or writing a cross-platform application.

Using TRegistry

If you are writing a Windows-only application and are comfortable with the structure of the system Registry, you can use *TRegistry*. Unlike *TRegistryIniFile*, which uses the same properties and methods of other ini file components, the properties and methods of *TRegistry* correspond more directly to the structure of the system Registry. For example, *TRegistry* lets you specify both the root key and subkey, while *TRegistry* assumes `HKEY_CURRENT_USER` as a root key. In addition to methods for opening, closing, saving, moving, copying, and deleting keys, *TRegistry* lets you specify the access level you want to use.

Note *TRegistry* is not available for cross-platform programming.

The following example retrieves a value from a registry entry:

```
#include <Registry.hpp>

AnsiString GetRegistryValue(AnsiString KeyName)
{
    AnsiString S;
    TRegistry *Registry = new TRegistry(KEY_READ);
    try
    {
        Registry->RootKey = HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE;
        // False because we do not want to create it if it doesn't exist
        Registry->OpenKey(KeyName, false);
        S = Registry->ReadString("VALUE1");
    }
    __finally
    {
        delete Registry;
    }
    return S;
}
```

Working with lists

BaseCLX includes many classes that represents lists or collections of items. They vary depending on the types of items they contain, what operations they support, and whether they are persistent.

The following table lists various list classes, and indicates the types of items they contain:

Table 4.5 Classes for managing lists

| Object | Maintains |
|--------------------------|---|
| <i>TList</i> | A list of pointers |
| <i>TThreadList</i> | A thread-safe list of pointers |
| <i>TBucketList</i> | A hashed list of pointers |
| <i>TObjectBucketList</i> | A hashed list of object instances |
| <i>TObjectList</i> | A memory-managed list of object instances |
| <i>TComponentList</i> | A memory-managed list of components (that is, instances of classes descended from <i>TComponent</i>) |
| <i>TClassList</i> | A list of class references (metaclasses) |
| <i>TInterfaceList</i> | A list of interface pointers. |
| <i>TQueue</i> | A first-in first-out list of pointers |
| <i>TStack</i> | A last-in first-out list of pointers |
| <i>TObjectQueue</i> | A first-in first-out list of objects |
| <i>TObjectStack</i> | A last-in first-out list of objects |
| <i>TCollection</i> | Base class for many specialized classes of typed items. |
| <i>TStringList</i> | A list of strings |
| <i>THashedStringList</i> | A list of strings with the form Name=Value, hashed for performance. |

Common list operations

Although the various list classes contain different types of items and have different ancestries, most of them share a common set of methods for adding, deleting, rearranging, and accessing the items in the list.

Adding list items

Most list classes have an *Add* method, which lets you add an item to the end of the list (if it is not sorted) or to its appropriate position (if the list is sorted). Typically, the *Add* method takes as a parameter the item you are adding to the list and returns the position in the list where the item was added. In the case of bucket lists (*TBucketList* and *TObjectBucketList*), *Add* takes not only the item to add, but also a datum you can associate with that item. In the case of collections, *Add* takes no parameters, but creates a new item that it adds. The *Add* method on collections returns the item it added, so that you can assign values to the new item's properties.

Some list classes have an *Insert* method in addition to the *Add* method. *Insert* works the same way as the *Add* method, but has an additional parameter that lets you specify the position in the list where you want the new item to appear. If a class has an *Add* method, it also has an *Insert* method unless the position of items is predetermined. For example, you can't use *Insert* with sorted lists because items must go in sort order, and you can't use *Insert* with bucket lists because the hash algorithm determines the item position.

The only classes that do not have an *Add* method are the ordered lists. Ordered lists are queues and stacks. To add items to an ordered list, use the *Push* method instead. *Push*, like *Add*, takes an item as a parameter and inserts it in the correct position.

Deleting list items

To delete a single item from one of the list classes, use either the *Delete* method or the *Remove* method. *Delete* takes a single parameter, the index of the item to remove. *Remove* also takes a single parameter, but that parameter is a reference to the item to remove, rather than its index. Some list classes support only a *Delete* method, some support only a *Remove* method, and some have both.

As with adding items, ordered lists behave differently than all other lists. Instead of using a *Delete* or *Remove* method, you remove an item from an ordered list by calling its *Pop* method. *Pop* takes no arguments, because there is only one item that can be removed.

If you want to delete all of the items in the list, you can call the *Clear* method. *Clear* is available for all lists except ordered lists.

Accessing list items

All list classes (except *TThreadList* and the ordered lists) have a property that lets you access the items in the list. Typically, this property is called *Items*. For string lists, the property is called *Strings*, and for bucket lists it is called *Data*. The *Items*, *Strings*, or *Data* property is an indexed property, so that you can specify which item you want to access.

On *TThreadList*, you must lock the list before you can access items. When you lock the list, the *LockList* method returns a *TList* object that you can use to access the items.

Ordered lists only let you access the “top” item of the list. You can obtain a reference to this item by calling the *Peek* method.

Rearranging list items

Some list classes have methods that let you rearrange the items in the list. Some have an *Exchange* method, that swaps the position of two items. Some have a *Move* method that lets you move an item to a specified location. Some have a *Sort* method that lets you sort the items in the list.

To see what methods are available, check the Online help for the list class you are using.

Persistent lists

Persistent lists can be saved to a form file. Because of this, they are often used as the type of a published property on a component. You can add items to the list at design time, and those items are saved with the object so that they are there when the component that uses them is loaded into memory at runtime. There are two main types of persistent lists: string lists and collections.

Examples of string lists include *TStringList* and *THashedStringList*. String lists, as the name implies, contain strings. They provide special support for strings of the form Name=Value, so that you can look up the value associated with a name. In addition, most string lists let you associate an object with each string in the list. String lists are described in more detail in “Working with string lists” on page 4-15.

Collections descend from the class *TCollection*. Each *TCollection* descendant is specialized to manage a specific class of items, where that class descends from *TCollectionItem*. Collections support many of the common list operations. All collections are designed to be the type of a published property, and many can not function independently of the object that uses them to implement one of its properties. At design time, the property whose value is a collection can use the collection editor to let you add, remove, and rearrange items. The collection editor provides a common user interface for manipulating collections.

Working with string lists

One of the most commonly used types of list is a list of character strings. Examples include items in a combo box, lines in a memo, names of fonts, and names of rows and columns in a string grid. BaseCLX provides a common interface to any list of strings through an object called *TStrings* and its descendants such as *TStringList* and *THashedStringList*. *TStringList* implements the abstract properties and methods introduced by *TStrings*, and introduces properties, events, and methods to

- Sort the strings in the list.
- Prohibit duplicate strings in sorted lists.
- Respond to changes in the contents of the list.

In addition to providing functionality for maintaining string lists, these objects allow easy interoperability; for example, you can edit the lines of a memo (which are a *TStrings* descendant) and then use these lines as items in a combo box (also a *TStrings* descendant).

A string-list property appears in the Object Inspector with *TStrings* in the Value column. Double-click *TStrings* to open the String List editor, where you can edit, add, or delete lines.

You can also work with string-list objects at runtime to perform such tasks as

- Loading and saving string lists
- Creating a new string list
- Manipulating strings in a list
- Associating objects with a string list

Loading and saving string lists

String-list objects provide *SaveToFile* and *LoadFromFile* methods that let you store a string list in a text file and load a text file into a string list. Each line in the text file corresponds to a string in the list. Using these methods, you could, for example,

create a simple text editor by loading a file into a memo component, or save lists of items for combo boxes.

The following example loads a copy of the WIN.INI file into a memo field and makes a backup copy called WIN.BAK.

```
void __fastcall EditWinIni()
{
    AnsiString FileName = "C:\\WINDOWS\\WIN.INI"; // set the file name
    Form1->Memo1->Lines->LoadFromFile(FileName); // load from file
    Form1->Memo1->Lines->SaveToFile(ChangeFileExt(FileName, ".BAK")); // save to backup
}
```

Creating a new string list

A string list is typically part of a component. There are times, however, when it is convenient to create independent string lists, for example to store strings for a lookup table. The way you create and manage a string list depends on whether the list is short-term (constructed, used, and destroyed in a single routine) or long-term (available until the application shuts down). Whichever type of string list you create, remember that you are responsible for freeing the list when you finish with it.

Short-term string lists

If you use a string list only for the duration of a single routine, you can create it, use it, and destroy it all in one place. This is the safest way to work with string lists. Because the string-list object allocates memory for itself and its strings, you should use a **try...__finally** block to ensure that the memory is freed even if an exception occurs.

- 1 Construct the string-list object.
- 2 In the **try** part of a **try...__finally** block, use the string list.
- 3 In the **__finally** part, free the string-list object.

The following event handler responds to a button click by constructing a string list, using it, and then destroying it.

```
void __fastcall TForm1::ButtonClick1(TObject *Sender)
{
    TStringList *TempList = new TStringList; // declare the list
    try{
        //use the string list
    }
    __finally{
        delete TempList; // destroy the list object
    }
}
```

Long-term string lists

If a string list must be available at any time while your application runs, construct the list at start-up and destroy it before the application terminates.

- 1 In the unit file for your application's main form, add a field of type *TStrings* to the form's declaration.
- 2 Write a *constructor* for the main form that executes before the form appears. It should create a string list and assign it to the field you declared in the first step.
- 3 Write an event handler that frees the string list for the form's *OnClose* event.

This example uses a long-term string list to record the user's mouse clicks on the main form, then saves the list to a file before the application terminates.

```
//-----
#include <vcl.h>
#pragma hdrstop

#include "Unit1.h"
//-----
#pragma package(smart_init)
#pragma resource "*.dfm"
TForm1 *Form1;
//-----
__fastcall TForm1::TForm1(TComponent* Owner)
    : TForm(Owner)
{
    ClickList = new TStringList;
}
//-----
void __fastcall TForm1::FormClose(TObject *Sender, TCloseAction &Action)
{
    ClickList->SaveToFile(ChangeFileExt(Application->ExeName, ".LOG")); //Save the list
    delete ClickList;
}
//-----
void __fastcall TForm1::FormMouseDown(TObject *Sender, TMouseButton Button,
    TShiftState Shift, int X, int Y)
{
    TVarRec v[] = {X,Y};
    ClickList->Add(Format("Click at (%d, %d)",v,ARRAYSIZE(v) - 1)); //add a string to the list
}
```

Manipulating strings in a list

Operations commonly performed on string lists include:

- Counting the strings in a list
- Accessing a particular string
- Finding the position of a string in the list
- Iterating through strings in a list
- Adding a string to a list
- Moving a string within a list
- Deleting a string from a list
- Copying a complete string list

Counting the strings in a list

The read-only *Count* property returns the number of strings in the list. Since string lists use zero-based indexes, *Count* is one more than the index of the last string.

Accessing a particular string

The *Strings* array property contains the strings in the list, referenced by a zero-based index.

```
StringList1->Strings[0] = "This is the first string.";
```

Locating items in a string list

To locate a string in a string list, use the *IndexOf* method. *IndexOf* returns the index of the first string in the list that matches the parameter passed to it, and returns -1 if the parameter string is not found. *IndexOf* finds exact matches only; if you want to match partial strings, you must iterate through the string list yourself.

For example, you could use *IndexOf* to determine whether a given file name is found among the *Items* of a list box:

```
if (FileListBox1->Items->IndexOf("WIN.INI") > -1) ...
```

Iterating through strings in a list

To iterate through the strings in a list, use a **for** loop that runs from zero to *Count* $- 1$.

This example converts each string in a list box to uppercase characters.

```
void __fastcall TForm1::Button1Click(TObject *Sender)
{
    for (int i = 0; i < ListBox1->Items->Count; i++)
        ListBox1->Items->Strings[i] = UpperCase(ListBox1->Items->Strings[i]);
}
```

Adding a string to a list

To add a string to the end of a string list, call the *Add* method, passing the new string as the parameter. To insert a string into the list, call the *Insert* method, passing two parameters: the string and the index of the position where you want it placed. For example, to make the string "Three" the third string in a list, you would use:

```
StringList1->Insert(2, "Three");
```

To append the strings from one list onto another, call *AddStrings*:

```
StringList1->AddStrings(StringList2); // append the strings from StringList2 to StringList1
```

Moving a string within a list

To move a string in a string list, call the *Move* method, passing two parameters: the current index of the string and the index you want assigned to it. For example, to move the third string in a list to the fifth position, you would use:

```
StringListObject->Move(2, 4);
```

Deleting a string from a list

To delete a string from a string list, call the list's *Delete* method, passing the index of the string you want to delete. If you don't know the index of the string you want to delete, use the *IndexOf* method to locate it. To delete all the strings in a string list, use the *Clear* method.

This example uses *IndexOf* and *Delete* to find and delete a string:

```
int BIndex = ListBox1->Items->IndexOf("bureaucracy");
if (BIndex > -1)
    ListBox1->Items->Delete(BIndex);
```

Copying a complete string list

You can use the *Assign* method to copy strings from a source list to a destination list, overwriting the contents of the destination list. To append strings without overwriting the destination list, use *AddStrings*. For example,

```
Memo1->Lines->Assign(ComboBox1->Items); //overwrites original strings
```

copies the lines from a combo box into a memo (overwriting the memo), while

```
Memo1->Lines->AddStrings(ComboBox1->Items); //appends strings to end
```

appends the lines from the combo box to the memo.

When making local copies of a string list, use the *Assign* method. If you assign one string-list variable to another—

```
StringList1 = StringList2;
```

—the original string-list object will be lost, often with unpredictable results.

Associating objects with a string list

In addition to the strings stored in its *Strings* property, a string list can maintain references to objects, which it stores in its *Objects* property. Like *Strings*, *Objects* is an array with a zero-based index. The most common use for *Objects* is to associate bitmaps with strings for owner-draw controls.

Use the *AddObject* or *InsertObject* method to add a string and an associated object to the list in a single step. *IndexOfObject* returns the index of the first string in the list associated with a specified object. Methods like *Delete*, *Clear*, and *Move* operate on both strings and objects; for example, deleting a string removes the corresponding object (if there is one).

To associate an object with an existing string, assign the object to the *Objects* property at the same index. You cannot add an object without adding a corresponding string.

Working with strings

The BaseCLX runtime library provides many specialized string-handling routines specific to a string type. These are routines for wide strings, AnsiStrings, and null-terminated strings (char *). Routines that deal with null-terminated strings use the

null-termination to determine the length of the string. The following topics provide an overview of many of the string-handling routines in the runtime library.

Wide character routines

Wide strings are used in a variety of situations. Some technologies, such as XML, use wide strings as a native type. You may also choose to use wide strings because they simplify some of the string-handling issues in applications that have multiple target locales. Using a wide character encoding scheme has the advantage that you can make many of the usual assumptions about strings that do not work for MBCS systems. There is a direct relationship between the number of bytes in the string and the number of characters in the string. You do not need to worry about cutting characters in half or mistaking the second half of a character for the start of a different character.

A disadvantage of working with wide characters is that most VCL controls represent string values as single byte or MBCS strings. (CLX controls typically use wide strings.) Translating between the wide character system and the MBCS system every time you set a string property or read its value can require tremendous amounts of extra code and slow your application down. However, you may want to translate into wide characters for some special string processing algorithms that need to take advantage of the 1:1 mapping between characters and *WideChars*.

The following functions convert between standard single-byte character strings (or MBCS strings) and Unicode strings:

- `StringToWideChar`
- `WideCharLenToString`
- `WideCharLenToStrVar`
- `WideCharToString`
- `WideCharToStrVar`

In addition, the following functions translate between *WideStrings* and other representations:

- `UCS4StringToWideString`
- `WideStringToUCS4String`
- `VarToWideStr`
- `VarToWideStrDef`

The following routines work directly with *WideStrings*:

- `WideCompareStr`
- `WideCompareText`
- `WideSameStr`
- `WideSameText`
- `WideSameCaption` (CLX only)
- `WideFmtStr`
- `WideFormat`
- `WideLowerCase`
- `WideUpperCase`

Finally, some routines include overloads for working with wide strings:

- `UniqueString`
- `Length`
- `Trim`
- `TrimLeft`
- `TrimRight`

Commonly used routines for `AnsiStrings`

The `AnsiString` handling routines cover several functional areas. Within these areas, some are used for the same purpose, the differences being whether they use a particular criterion in their calculations. The following tables list these routines by these functional areas:

- Comparison
- Case conversion
- Modification
- Sub-string

Where appropriate, the tables also provide columns indicating whether a routine satisfies the following criteria.

- **Uses case sensitivity:** If locale settings are used, it determines the definition of case. If the routine does not use locale settings, analyses are based upon the ordinal values of the characters. If the routine is case-insensitive, there is a logical merging of upper and lower case characters that is determined by a predefined pattern.
- **Uses locale settings:** Locale settings allow you to customize your application for specific locales, in particular, for Asian language environments. Most locale settings consider lowercase characters to be less than the corresponding uppercase characters. This is in contrast to ASCII order, in which lowercase characters are greater than uppercase characters. Routines that use the Windows locale are typically prefaced with `Ansi` (that is, `AnsiXXX`).
- **Supports the multi-byte character set (MBCS):** MBCSs are used when writing code for far eastern locales. Multi-byte characters are represented as a mix of one- and two-byte character codes, so the length in bytes does not necessarily correspond to the length of the string. The routines that support MBCS parse one- and two-byte characters.

ByteType and *StrByteType* determine whether a particular byte is the lead byte of a two-byte character. Be careful when using multi-byte characters not to truncate a string by cutting a two-byte character in half. Do not pass characters as a parameter to a function or procedure, since the size of a character cannot be predetermined. Pass, instead, a pointer to a character or string. For more

information about MBCS, see “Enabling application code” on page 16-2 of Chapter 16, “Creating international applications.”

Table 4.6 String comparison routines

| Routine | Case-sensitive | Uses locale settings | Supports MBCS |
|---------------------|----------------|----------------------|---------------|
| AnsiCompareStr | yes | yes | yes |
| AnsiCompareText | no | yes | yes |
| AnsiCompareFileName | no | yes | yes |
| AnsiMatchStr | yes | yes | yes |
| AnsiMatchText | no | yes | yes |
| AnsiContainsStr | yes | yes | yes |
| AnsiContainsText | no | yes | yes |
| AnsiStartsStr | yes | yes | yes |
| AnsiStartsText | no | yes | yes |
| AnsiEndsStr | yes | yes | yes |
| AnsiEndsText | no | yes | yes |
| AnsiIndexStr | yes | yes | yes |
| AnsiIndexText | no | yes | yes |
| CompareStr | yes | no | no |
| CompareText | no | no | no |
| AnsiResemblesText | no | no | no |

Table 4.7 Case conversion routines

| Routine | Uses locale settings | Supports MBCS |
|-----------------------|----------------------|---------------|
| AnsiLowerCase | yes | yes |
| AnsiLowerCaseFileName | yes | yes |
| AnsiUpperCaseFileName | yes | yes |
| AnsiUpperCase | yes | yes |
| LowerCase | no | no |
| UpperCase | no | no |

Note The routines used for string file names: *AnsiCompareFileName*, *AnsiLowerCaseFileName*, and *AnsiUpperCaseFileName* all use the Windows locale. You should always use file names that are portable because the locale (character set) used for file names can and might differ from the default user interface.

Table 4.8 String modification routines :

| Routine | Case-sensitive | Supports MBCS |
|------------------|------------------|---------------|
| AdjustLineBreaks | NA | yes |
| AnsiQuotedStr | NA | yes |
| AnsiReplaceStr | yes | yes |
| AnsiReplaceText | no | yes |
| StringReplace | optional by flag | yes |

Table 4.8 String modification routines (continued):

| Routine | Case-sensitive | Supports MBCS |
|---------------|----------------|---------------|
| ReverseString | NA | no |
| StuffString | NA | no |
| Trim | NA | yes |
| TrimLeft | NA | yes |
| TrimRight | NA | yes |
| WrapText | NA | yes |

Table 4.9 Sub-string routines

| Routine | Case-sensitive | Supports MBCS |
|----------------------|----------------|---------------|
| AnsiExtractQuotedStr | NA | yes |
| AnsiPos | yes | yes |
| IsDelimiter | yes | yes |
| IsPathDelimiter | yes | yes |
| LastDelimiter | yes | yes |
| LeftStr | NA | no |
| RightStr | NA | no |
| MidStr | NA | no |
| QuotedStr | no | no |

Commonly used routines for null-terminated strings

The null-terminated string handling routines cover several functional areas. Within these areas, some are used for the same purpose, the differences being whether or not they use a particular criteria in their calculations. The following tables list these routines by these functional areas:

- Comparison
- Case conversion
- Modification
- Sub-string
- Copying

Where appropriate, the tables also provide columns indicating whether the routine is case-sensitive, uses the current locale, and/or supports multi-byte character sets.

Table 4.10 Null-terminated string comparison routines

| Routine | Case-sensitive | Uses locale settings | Supports MBCS |
|--------------|----------------|----------------------|---------------|
| AnsiStrComp | yes | yes | yes |
| AnsiStrIComp | no | yes | yes |
| AnsiStrLComp | yes | yes | yes |

Table 4.10 Null-terminated string comparison routines (continued)

| Routine | Case-sensitive | Uses locale settings | Supports MBCS |
|--------------|----------------|----------------------|---------------|
| AnsiStrLComp | no | yes | yes |
| StrComp | yes | no | no |
| StrIComp | no | no | no |
| StrLComp | yes | no | no |
| StrLComp | no | no | no |

Table 4.11 Case conversion routines for null-terminated strings

| Routine | Uses locale settings | Supports MBCS |
|--------------|----------------------|---------------|
| AnsiStrLower | yes | yes |
| AnsiStrUpper | yes | yes |
| StrLower | no | no |
| StrUpper | no | no |

Table 4.12 String modification routines

| Routine |
|---------|
| StrCat |
| StrLCat |

Table 4.13 Sub-string routines

| Routine | Case-sensitive | Supports MBCS |
|--------------|----------------|---------------|
| AnsiStrPos | yes | yes |
| AnsiStrScan | yes | yes |
| AnsiStrRScan | yes | yes |
| StrPos | yes | no |
| StrScan | yes | no |
| StrRScan | yes | no |

Table 4.14 String copying routines

| Routine |
|-----------|
| StrCopy |
| StrLCopy |
| StrECopy |
| StrMove |
| StrPCopy |
| StrPLCopy |

Printing

Technically speaking, the *TPrinter* class does not belong to *BaseCLX* because there are two separate versions, one for the VCL (in the *Printers* unit) and one for CLX (in the *QPrinters* unit). The VCL *TPrinter* object encapsulates details of Windows printers. The CLX *TPrinter* object is a paint device that paints on a printer. It generates postscript and sends that to *lpr*, *lp*, or another print command. Both versions of *TPrinter*, however, are extremely similar.

To get a list of installed and available printers, use the *Printers* property. Both printer objects use a *TCanvas* (which is identical to the form's *TCanvas*) which means that anything that can be drawn on a form can be printed as well. To print an image, call the *BeginDoc* method followed by whatever canvas graphics you want to print (including text through the *TextOut* method) and send the job to the printer by calling the *EndDoc* method.

This example uses a button and a memo on a form. When the user clicks the button, the content of the memo is printed with a 200-pixel border around the page.

To run this example successfully, include `<Printers.hpp>` in your unit file.

```
void __fastcall TForm1::Button1Click(TObject *Sender)
{
    TPrinter *Prntr = Printer();
    TRect r = Rect(200,200,Prntr->PageWidth - 200,Prntr->PageHeight- 200);
    Prntr->BeginDoc();
    for( int i = 0; i < Memo1->Lines->Count; i++)
        Prntr->Canvas->TextOut(200,200 + (i *
            Prntr->Canvas->TextHeight(Memo1->Lines->Strings[i])),
            Memo1->Lines->Strings[i]);
    Prntr->Canvas->Brush->Color = clBlack;
    Prntr->Canvas->FrameRect(r);
    Prntr->EndDoc();
}
```

For more information on the use of the *TPrinter* object, look in the online help under *TPrinter*.

Converting measurements

The *ConvUtils* unit declares a general-purpose *Convert* function that you can use to convert a measurement from one set of units to another. You can perform conversions between compatible units of measurement such as feet and inches or days and weeks. Units that measure the same types of things are said to be in the same *conversion family*. The units you're converting must be in the same conversion family. For information on doing conversions, see the next section *Performing conversions* and refer to *Convert* in the online Help.

The *StdConvs* unit defines several conversion families and measurement units within each family. In addition, you can create customized conversion families and associated units using the *RegisterConversionType* and *RegisterConversionFamily*

functions. For information on extending conversion and conversion units, see the section [Adding new measurement types](#) and refer to `Convert` in the online Help.

Performing conversions

You can use the *Convert* function to perform both simple and complex conversions. It includes a simple syntax and a second syntax for performing conversions between complex measurement types.

Performing simple conversions

You can use the *Convert* function to convert a measurement from one set of units to another. The *Convert* function converts between units that measure the same type of thing (distance, area, time, temperature, and so on).

To use *Convert*, you must specify the units from which to convert and to which to convert. You use the *TConvType* type to identify the units of measurement.

For example, this converts a temperature from degrees Fahrenheit to degrees Kelvin:

```
TempInKelvin = Convert(StrToFloat(Edit1->Text), tuFahrenheit, tuKelvin);
```

Performing complex conversions

You can also use the *Convert* function to perform more complex conversions between the ratio of two measurement types. Examples of when you might need to use this are when converting miles per hour to meters per minute for calculating speed or when converting gallons per minute to liters per hour for calculating flow.

For example, the following call converts miles per gallon to kilometers per liter:

```
double nKPL = Convert(StrToFloat(Edit1.Text), duMiles, vuGallons, duKilometers, vuLiter);
```

The units you're converting must be in the same conversion family (they must measure the same thing). If the units are not compatible, *Convert* raises an *EConversionError* exception. You can check whether two *TConvType* values are in the same conversion family by calling *CompatibleConversionTypes*.

The `StdConvs` unit defines several families of *TConvType* values. See [Conversion family variables](#) in the online Help for a list of the predefined families of measurement units and the measurement units in each family.

Adding new measurement types

If you want to perform conversions between measurement units not already defined in the `StdConvs` unit, you need to create a new conversion family to represent the measurement units (*TConvType* values). When two *TConvType* values are registered with the same conversion family, the *Convert* function can convert between measurements made using the units represented by those *TConvType* values.

You first need to obtain *TConvFamily* values by registering a conversion family using the *RegisterConversionFamily* function. After you get a *TConvFamily* value (by registering a new conversion family or using one of the global variables in the

StdConvs unit), you can use the *RegisterConversionType* function to add the new units to the conversion family. The following examples show how to do this.

Creating a simple conversion family and adding units

One example of when you could create a new conversion family and add new measurement types might be when performing conversions between long periods of time (such as months to centuries) where a loss of precision can occur.

To explain this further, the *cbTime* family uses a day as its base unit. The base unit is the one that is used when performing all conversions within that family. Therefore, all conversions must be done in terms of days. An inaccuracy can occur when performing conversions using units of months or larger (months, years, decades, centuries, millennia) because there is not an exact conversion between days and months, days and years, and so on. Months have different lengths; years have correction factors for leap years, leap seconds, and so on.

If you are only using units of measurement greater than or equal to months, you can create a more accurate conversion family with years as its base unit. This example creates a new conversion family called *cbLongTime*.

Declare variables

First, you need to declare variables for the identifiers. The identifiers are used in the new LongTime conversion family, and the units of measurement that are its members:

```
tConvFamily cbLongTime;
TConvType ltMonths;
TConvType ltYears;
TConvType ltDecades;
TConvType ltCenturies;
TConvType ltMillennia;
```

Register the conversion family

Next, register the conversion family:

```
cbLongTime = RegisterConversionFamily ("Long Times");
```

Although an *UnregisterConversionFamily* procedure is provided, you don't need to unregister conversion families unless the unit that defines them is removed at runtime. They are automatically cleaned up when your application shuts down.

Register measurement units

Next, you need to register the measurement units within the conversion family that you just created. You use the *RegisterConversionType* function, which registers units of measurement within a specified family. You need to define the base unit which in the example is years, and the other units are defined using a factor that indicates their relation to the base unit. So, the factor for *ltMonths* is 1/12 because the base unit for the LongTime family is years. You also include a description of the units to which you are converting.

The code to register the measurement units is shown here:

```
ltMonths = RegisterConversionType(cbLongTime, "Months", 1/12);
ltYears = RegisterConversionType(cbLongTime, "Years", 1);
ltDecades = RegisterConversionType(cbLongTime, "Decades", 10);
ltCenturies = RegisterConversionType(cbLongTime, "Centuries", 100);
ltMillennia = RegisterConversionType(cbLongTime, "Millennia", 1000);
```

Use the new units

You can now use the newly registered units to perform conversions. The global *Convert* function can convert between any of the conversion types that you registered with the *cbLongTime* conversion family.

So instead of using the following *Convert* call,

```
Convert(StrToFloat(Edit1->Text), tuMonths, tuMillennia);
```

you can now use this one for greater accuracy:

```
Convert(StrToFloat(Edit1->Text), ltMonths, ltMillennia);
```

Using a conversion function

For cases when the conversion is more complex, you can use a different syntax to specify a function to perform the conversion instead of using a conversion factor. For example, you can't convert temperature values using a conversion factor, because different temperature scales have a different origins.

This example, which is translated from the *StdConvs* unit, shows how to register a conversion type by providing functions to convert to and from the base units.

Declare variables

First, declare variables for the identifiers. The identifiers are used in the *cbTemperature* conversion family, and the units of measurement are its members:

```
TConvFamily cbTemperature;
TConvType tuCelsius;
TConvType tuKelvin;
TConvType tuFahrenheit;
```

Note The units of measurement listed here are a subset of the temperature units actually registered in the *StdConvs* unit.

Register the conversion family

Next, register the conversion family:

```
cbTemperature = RegisterConversionFamily ("Temperature");
```


Register the base unit

Next, define and register the base unit of the conversion family, which in the example is degrees Celsius. Note that in the case of the base unit, we can use a simple conversion factor, because there is no actual conversion to make:

```
tuCelsius = RegisterConversionType(cbTemperature, "Celsius", 1);
```

Write methods to convert to and from the base unit

You need to write the code that performs the conversion from each temperature scale to and from degrees Celsius, because these do not rely on a simple conversion factor. These functions are translated from the StdConvs unit:

```
double __fastcall FahrenheitToCelsius(const double AValue)
{
    return ((AValue - 32) * 5) / 9;
}

double __fastcall CelsiusToFahrenheit(const double AValue)
{
    return ((AValue * 9) / 5) + 32;
}

double __fastcall KelvinToCelsius(const double AValue)
{
    return (AValue - 273.15);
}

double __fastcall CelsiusToKelvin(const double AValue)
{
    return (AValue + 273.15);
}
```

Register the other units

Now that you have the conversion functions, you can register the other measurement units within the conversion family. You also include a description of the units.

The code to register the other units in the family is shown here:

```
tuKelvin = RegisterConversionType(cbTemperature, "Kelvin", KelvinToCelsius,
CelsiusToKelvin);
tuFahrenheit = RegisterConversionType(cbTemperature, "Fahrenheit", FahrenheitToCelsius,
CelsiusToFahrenheit);
```

Use the new units

You can now use the newly registered units to perform conversions in your applications. The global *Convert* function can convert between any of the conversion types that you registered with the *cbTemperature* conversion family. For example the following code converts a value from degrees Fahrenheit to degrees Kelvin.

```
Convert(StrToFloat(Edit1->Text), tuFahrenheit, tuKelvin);
```

Using a class to manage conversions

You can always use conversion functions to register a conversion unit. There are times, however, when this requires you to create an unnecessarily large number of functions that all do essentially the same thing.

If you can write a set of conversion functions that differ only in the value of a parameter or variable, you can create a class to handle those conversions. For example, there is a set standard techniques for converting between the various European currencies since the introduction of the Euro. Even though the conversion factors remain constant (unlike the conversion factor between, say, dollars and Euros), you can't use a simple conversion factor approach to properly convert between European currencies for two reasons:

- The conversion must round to a currency-specific number of digits.
- The conversion factor approach uses an inverse factor to the one specified by the standard Euro conversions.

However, this can all be handled by the conversion functions such as the following:

```
double __fastcall FromEuro(const double AValue, const double Factor, TRoundToRange FRound)
{
    return(RoundTo(AValue * Factor, FRound));
}

double __fastcall ToEuro(const double AValue, const double Factor)
{
    return (AValue / Factor);
}
```

The problem is, this approach requires extra parameters on the conversion function, which means you can't simply register the same function with every European currency. In order to avoid having to write two new conversion functions for every European currency, you can make use of the same two functions by making them the members of a class.

Creating the conversion class

The class must be a descendant of *TConvTypeFactor*. *TConvTypeFactor* defines two methods, *ToCommon* and *FromCommon*, for converting to and from the base units of a conversion family (in this case, to and from Euros). Just as with the functions you use directly when registering a conversion unit, these methods have no extra parameters, so you must supply the number of digits to round off and the conversion factor as private members of your conversion class. This is shown in the EuroConv example in the demos\ConvertIt directory (see euroconv.pas):

```
class PASCALIMPLEMENTATION TConvTypeEuroFactor : public Convutils::TConvTypeFactor
{
private:
    TRoundToRange FRound;
public:
    __fastcall TConvTypeEuroFactor(const TConvFamily AConvFamily,
        const AnsiString ADescription, const double AFactor, const TRoundToRange ARound);
    TConvTypeFactor(AConvFamily, ADescription, AFactor);
}
```

```

    virtual double ToCommon(const double AValue);
    virtual double FromCommon(const double AValue);
}

```

The constructor assigns values to those private members:

```

__fastcall TConvTypeEuroFactor::TConvTypeEuroFactor(const TConvFamily AConvFamily,
    const AnsiString ADescription, const double AFactor, const TRoundToRange ARound):
    TConvTypeFactor(AConvFamily, ADescription, AFactor);
{
    FRound = ARound;
}

```

The two conversion functions simply use these private members:

```

virtual double TConvTypeEuroFactor::ToCommon(const double AValue)
{
    return (RoundTo(AValue * Factor, FRound));
}

virtual double TConvTypeEuroFactor::ToCommon(const double AValue)
{
    return (AValue / Factor);
}

```

Declare variables

Now that you have a conversion class, begin as with any other conversion family, by declaring identifiers:

```

TConvFamily cbEuro;
TConvType euEUR; // EU euro
TConvType euBEF; // Belgian francs
TConvType euDEM; // German marks
TConvType euGRD; // Greek drachmas
TConvType euESP; // Spanish pesetas
TConvType euFFR; // French francs
TConvType euIEP; // Irish pounds
TConvType euITL; // Italian lire
TConvType euLUF; // Luxembourg francs
TConvType euNLG; // Dutch guilders
TConvType euATS; // Austrian schillings
TConvType euPTE; // Portuguese escudos
TConvType euFIM; // Finnish marks

```

Register the conversion family and the other units

Now you are ready to register the conversion family and the European monetary units, using your new conversion class. Register the conversion family the same way you registered the other conversion families:

```

cbEuro = RegisterConversionFamily ("European currency");

```

To register each conversion type, create an instance of the conversion class that reflects the factor and rounding properties of that currency, and call the `RegisterConversionType` method:

```
TConvTypeInfo *pInfo = new TConvTypeInfoEuroFactor(cbEuro, "EUEuro", 1.0, -2);
if (!RegisterConversionType(pInfo, euEUR))
    delete pInfo;
pInfo = new TConvTypeInfoEuroFactor(cbEuro, "BelgianFrancs", 40.3399, 0);
if (!RegisterConversionType(pInfo, euBEF))
    delete pInfo;
pInfo = new TConvTypeInfoEuroFactor(cbEuro, "GermanMarks", 1.95583, -2);
if (!RegisterConversionType(pInfo, euDEM))
    delete pInfo;
pInfo = new TConvTypeInfoEuroFactor(cbEuro, "GreekDrachmas", 340.75, 0);
if (!RegisterConversionType(pInfo, euGRD))
    delete pInfo;
pInfo = new TConvTypeInfoEuroFactor(cbEuro, "SpanishPesetas", 166.386, 0);
if (!RegisterConversionType(pInfo, euESP))
    delete pInfo;
pInfo = new TConvTypeInfoEuroFactor(cbEuro, "FrenchFrancs", 6.55957, -2);
if (!RegisterConversionType(pInfo, euFFR))
    delete pInfo;
pInfo = new TConvTypeInfoEuroFactor(cbEuro, "IrishPounds", 0.787564, -2);
if (!RegisterConversionType(pInfo, euIEP))
    delete pInfo;
pInfo = new TConvTypeInfoEuroFactor(cbEuro, "ItalianLire", 1936.27, 0);
if (!RegisterConversionType(pInfo, euITL))
    delete pInfo;
pInfo = new TConvTypeInfoEuroFactor(cbEuro, "LuxembourgFrancs", 40.3399, -2);
if (!RegisterConversionType(pInfo, euLUF))
    delete pInfo;
pInfo = new TConvTypeInfoEuroFactor(cbEuro, "DutchGuilders", 2.20371, -2);
if (!RegisterConversionType(pInfo, euNLG))
    delete pInfo;
pInfo = new TConvTypeInfoEuroFactor(cbEuro, "AustrianSchillings", 13.7603, -2);
if (!RegisterConversionType(pInfo, euATS))
    delete pInfo;
pInfo = new TConvTypeInfoEuroFactor(cbEuro, "PortugueseEscudos", 200.482, -2);
if (!RegisterConversionType(pInfo, euPTE))
    delete pInfo;
pInfo = new TConvTypeInfoEuroFactor(cbEuro, "FinnishMarks", 5.94573, 0);
if (!RegisterConversionType(pInfo, euFIM))
    delete pInfo;
```

Use the new units

You can now use the newly registered units to perform conversions in your applications. The global *Convert* function can convert between any of the European currencies you have registered with the new `cbEuro` family. For example, the following code converts a value from Italian Lire to German Marks:

```
Edit2->Text = FloatToStr(Convert(StrToFloat(Edit1->Text), euITL, euDEM));
```

Creating drawing spaces

The *TCanvas* class encapsulates a Windows device context in the VCL and a paint device (Qt painter) in CLX. It handles all drawing for both forms, visual containers (such as panels) and the printer object (see “Printing” on page 4-25). Using the canvas object, you no longer have to worry about allocating pens, brushes, palettes, and so on—all the allocation and deallocation are handled for you.

TCanvas includes a large number of primitive graphics routines to draw lines, shapes, polygons, fonts, etc. onto any control that contains a canvas. For example, here is a button event handler that draws a line from the upper left corner to the middle of the form and outputs some raw text onto the form:

```
void __fastcall TForm1::Button1Click(TObject *Sender)
{
    Canvas->Pen->Color = clBlue;
    Canvas->MoveTo( 10, 10 );
    Canvas->LineTo( 100, 100 );
    Canvas->Brush->Color = clBtnFace;
    Canvas->Font->Name = "Arial";
    Canvas->TextOut( Canvas->PenPos.x, Canvas->PenPos.y, "This is the end of the line" );
}
```

In Windows applications, the *TCanvas* object also protects you against common Windows graphics errors, such as restoring device contexts, pens, brushes, and so on to the value they had before the drawing operation. *TCanvas* is used everywhere in C++Builder that drawing is required or possible, and makes drawing graphics both fail-safe and easy.

See *TCanvas* in the online help reference for a complete listing of properties and methods.

Working with components

Many components are provided in the integrated development environment (IDE) on the Component palette. You select components from the Component palette and drop them onto a form or data module. You design the application's user interface by arranging the visual components such as buttons and list boxes on a form. You can also place nonvisual components such as data access components on either a form or a data module.

At first glance, C++Builder's components appear to be just like any other C++ classes. But there are differences between components in C++Builder and the standard C++ class hierarchies that most C++ programmers work with. Some differences are described here:

- All C++Builder components descend from *TComponent*.
- Components are most often used as is and are changed through their properties, rather than serving as "base classes" to be subclassed to add or change functionality. When a component is inherited, it is usually to add specific code to existing event handling member functions.
- Components can only be allocated on the heap, not on the stack (that is, they *must* be created with the **new** operator).
- Properties of components intrinsically contain runtime type information.
- Components can be added to the Component palette in the C++Builder user interface and manipulated on a form.

Components often achieve a better degree of encapsulation than is usually found in standard C++ classes. For example, consider the use of a dialog containing a push button. In a C++ Windows program developed using VCL components, when a user clicks on the button, the system generates a `WM_LBUTTONDOWN` message. The program must catch this message (typically in a **switch** statement, a message map, or a response table) and dispatch it to a routine that will execute in response to the message.

Most Windows messages (VCL) or system events (CLX) are handled by C++Builder components. When you want to respond to a message, you only need to provide an event handler.

Chapter 8, “Developing the application user interface,” provides details on using forms such as creating modal forms dynamically, passing parameters to forms, and retrieving data from forms.

Setting component properties

To set published properties at design time, you can use the Object Inspector and, in some cases, special property editors. To set properties at runtime, assign their values in your application source code.

For information about the properties of each component, see the online Help.

Setting properties at design time

When you select a component on a form at design time, the Object Inspector displays its published properties and (when appropriate) allows you to edit them. Use the *Tab* key to toggle between the left-hand Property column and the right-hand Value column. When the cursor is in the Property column, you can navigate to any property by typing the first letters of its name. For properties of Boolean or enumerated types, you can choose values from a drop-down list or toggle their settings by double-clicking in Value column.

If a plus (+) symbol appears next to a property name, clicking the plus symbol or typing ‘+’ when the property has focus displays a list of subvalues for the property. Similarly, if a minus (-) symbol appears next to the property name, clicking the minus symbol or typing ‘-’ hides the subvalues.

By default, properties in the Legacy category are not shown; to change the display filters, right-click in the Object Inspector and choose View. For more information, see “property categories” in the online Help.

When more than one component is selected, the Object Inspector displays all properties—except *Name*—that are shared by the selected components. If the value for a shared property differs among the selected components, the Object Inspector displays either the default value or the value from the first component selected. When you change a shared property, the change applies to all selected components.

Changing code-related properties, such as the name of an event handler, in the Object Inspector automatically changes the corresponding source code. In addition, changes to the source code, such as renaming an event handler method in a form class declaration, is immediately reflected in the Object Inspector.

Using property editors

Some properties, such as *Font*, have special property editors. Such properties appear with ellipsis marks (...) next to their values when the property is selected in the Object

Inspector. To open the property editor, double-click in the Value column, click the ellipsis mark, or type *Ctrl+Enter* when focus is on the property or its value. With some components, double-clicking the component on the form also opens a property editor.

Property editors let you set complex properties from a single dialog box. They provide input validation and often let you preview the results of an assignment.

Setting properties at runtime

Any writable property can be set at runtime in your source code. For example, you can dynamically assign a caption to a form:

```
Form1->Caption = MyString;
```

Calling methods

Methods are called just like ordinary procedures and functions. For example, visual controls have a *Repaint* method that refreshes the control's image on the screen. You could call the *Repaint* method in a draw-grid object like this:

```
DrawGrid1->Repaint;
```

As with properties, the scope of a method name determines the need for qualifiers. If you want, for example, to repaint a form within an event handler of one of the form's child controls, you don't have to prepend the name of the form to the method call:

```
void __fastcall TForm1::Button1Click(TObject *Sender)
{
    Repaint;
}
```

Working with events and event handlers

In C++Builder, almost all the code you write is executed, directly or indirectly, in response to *events*. An event is a special kind of property that represents a runtime occurrence, often a user action. The code that responds directly to an event—called an *event handler*—is a method of an object. The sections that follow show how to:

- Generate a new event handler.
- Generate a handler for a component's default event.
- Locate event handlers.
- Associate an event with an existing event handler.
- Associate menu events with event handlers.
- Delete event handlers.

Generating a new event handler

C++Builder can generate skeleton event handlers for forms and other components. To create an event handler,

- 1 Select a component.
- 2 Click the Events tab in the Object Inspector. The Events page of the Object Inspector displays all events defined for the component.
- 3 Select the event you want, then double-click the Value column or press *Ctrl+Enter*.
- 4 Type the code that you want to execute when the event occurs.

Generating a handler for a component's default event

Some components have a *default* event, which is the event the component most commonly needs to handle. For example, a button's default event is *OnClick*. To create a default event handler, double-click the component in the Form Designer; this generates a skeleton event-handling procedure and opens the Code editor with the cursor in the body of the procedure, where you can easily add code.

Not all components have a default event. Some components, such as *TBevel*, don't respond to any events. Other components respond differently when you double-click them in the Form Designer. For example, many components open a default property editor or other dialog when they are double-clicked at design time.

Locating event handlers

If you generated a default event handler for a component by double-clicking it in the Form Designer, you can locate that event handler in the same way. Double-click the component, and the Code editor opens with the cursor at the beginning of the event-handler body.

To locate an event handler that's not the default,

- 1 In the form, select the component whose event handler you want to locate.
- 2 In the Object Inspector, click the Events tab.
- 3 Select the event whose handler you want to view and double-click in the Value column. The Code editor opens with the cursor at the beginning of the event-handler body.

Associating an event with an existing event handler

You can reuse code by writing event handlers that respond to more than one event. For example, many applications provide speed buttons that are equivalent to drop-down menu commands. When a button initiates the same action as a menu command, you can write a single event handler and assign it to both the button's and the menu item's *OnClick* event.

To associate an event with an existing event handler,

- 1 On the form, select the component whose event you want to handle.
- 2 On the Events page of the Object Inspector, select the event to which you want to attach a handler.
- 3 Click the down arrow in the Value column next to the event to open a list of previously written event handlers. (The list includes only event handlers written for events of the same name on the same form.) Select from the list by clicking an event-handler name.

The previous procedure is an easy way to reuse event handlers. *Action lists* and in the VCL, *action bands*, however, provide powerful tools for centrally organizing the code that responds to user commands. Action lists can be used in cross-platform applications, whereas action bands cannot. For more information about action lists and action bands, see “Organizing actions for toolbars and menus” on page 8-16.

Using the Sender parameter

In an event handler, the *Sender* parameter indicates which component received the event and therefore called the handler. Sometimes it is useful to have several components share an event handler that behaves differently depending on which component calls it. You can do this by using the *Sender* parameter.

Displaying and coding shared events

When components share events, you can display their shared events in the Object Inspector. First, select the components by holding down the *Shift* key and clicking on them in the Form Designer; then choose the Events tab in the Object Inspector. From the Value column in the Object Inspector, you can now create a new event handler for, or assign an existing event handler to, any of the shared events.

Associating menu events with event handlers

The Menu Designer, along with the *MainMenu* and *PopupMenu* components, make it easy to supply your application with drop-down and pop-up menus. For the menus to work, however, each menu item must respond to the *OnClick* event, which occurs whenever the user chooses the menu item or presses its accelerator or shortcut key. This section explains how to associate event handlers with menu items. For information about the Menu Designer and related components, see “Creating and managing menus” on page 8-29.

To create an event handler for a menu item,

- 1 Open the Menu Designer by double-clicking on a *MainMenu* or *PopupMenu* component.
- 2 Select a menu item in the Menu Designer. In the Object Inspector, make sure that a value is assigned to the item’s *Name* property.
- 3 From the Menu Designer, double-click the menu item. C++Builder generates an event handler in the Code editor.

- 4 Type the code that you want to execute when the user selects the menu command. To associate a menu item with an existing *OnClick* event handler,
 - 1 Open the Menu Designer by double-clicking a *MainMenu* or *PopupMenu* component.
 - 2 Select a menu item in the Menu Designer. In the Object Inspector, make sure that a value is assigned to the item's *Name* property.
 - 3 On the Events page of the Object Inspector, click the down arrow in the Value column next to *OnClick* to open a list of previously written event handlers. (The list includes only event handlers written for *OnClick* events on this form.) Select from the list by clicking an event handler name.

Deleting event handlers

When you delete a component from a form using the Form Designer, C++Builder removes the component from the form's type declaration. It does not, however, delete any associated methods from the unit file, since these methods may still be called by other components on the form. You can manually delete a method—such as an event handler—but if you do so, be sure to delete both the method's forward declaration and its implementation; otherwise you'll get a compiler error when you build your project.

Cross-platform and non-cross-platform components

The Component palette contains a selection of components that handle a wide variety of programming tasks. The components are arranged in pages according to their purpose and functionality. For example, commonly used components such as those to create menus, edit boxes, or buttons are located on the Standard page. Which pages appear in the default configuration depends on the edition of the product you are running.

Table 3.3 lists typical default pages and components available for creating applications, including those that are not cross-platform. You can use all CLX components in both Windows and Linux applications. You can use some VCL-specific components in Windows-only CLX applications; however, the applications will not be cross-platform unless you isolate these portions of the code.

Table 5.1 Component palette pages

| Page name | Description | Cross-platform? |
|--|---|---|
| Standard | Standard controls, menus | Yes |
| Additional | Specialized controls | Yes, except ApplicationEvents, ActionManager, ActionMainMenuBar, ActionToolBar, and CustomizeDlg. LCDNumber is in CLX only. |
| Win32 (VCL)/ Common Controls (CLX) | Windows common controls | Many of the same components on the Win32 page are on the Common Controls page that appears when creating a CLX application. RichEdit, UpDown, HotKey, Animate, DateTimePicker, MonthCalendar, Coolbar, PageScroller, and ComboBoxEx are in the VCL only. TextBrowser, TextViewer, IconViewer, and SpinEdit are in CLX only. |
| System | Components and controls for system-level access, including timers, multimedia, and DDE. | No, except for Timer and PaintBox, which are on the Additional page when creating a CLX application. |
| Data Access | Components for working with database data that are not tied to any particular data access mechanism. | Yes, except for XMLTransform, XMLTransformProvider, and XMLTransformClient. |
| Data Controls | Visual, data-aware controls. | Yes, except for DBRichEdit, DBCtrlGrid, and DBChart. |
| dbExpress | Database controls that use dbExpress, a cross-platform, database-independent layer that provides methods for dynamic SQL processing. It defines a common interface for accessing SQL servers. | Yes |
| DataSnap | Components used for creating multi-tiered database applications. | No |
| BDE | Components that provide data access through the Borland Database Engine. | No |
| ADO | Components that provide data access through the ADO framework. | No |
| InterBase | Components that provide direct access to the InterBase database. | Yes |
| InterBaseAdmin | Components that access InterBase Services API calls. | Yes |
| InternetExpress | Components that are simultaneously a Web server application and the client of a multi-tiered database application. | No |
| Internet | Components for Internet communication protocols and Web applications. | No |

Table 5.1 Component palette pages (continued)

| Page name | Description | Cross-platform? |
|--------------|---|--|
| WebSnap | Components for building Web server applications. | No |
| FastNet | NetMasters Internet controls. | No |
| QReport | QuickReport components for creating embedded reports. | No |
| Dialogs | Commonly used dialog boxes. | Yes, except for OpenPictureDialog, SavePictureDialog, PrintDialog, and PrinterSetupDialog. |
| Win 3.1 | Old style Win 3.1 components. | No |
| Samples | Sample custom components. | No |
| ActiveX | Sample ActiveX controls; see Microsoft documentation (msdn.microsoft.com). | No |
| COM+ | Component for handling COM+ events. | No |
| WebServices | Components for writing applications that implement or use SOAP-based Web Services. | No |
| Servers | COM Server examples for Microsoft Excel, Word, and so on (see Microsoft MSDN documentation). | No |
| Indy Clients | Cross-platform Internet components for the client (open source Winshoes Internet components). | Yes |
| Indy Servers | Cross-platform Internet components for the server (open source Winshoes Internet components). | Yes |
| Indy Misc | Additional cross-platform Internet components (open source Winshoes Internet components). | Yes |

You can add, remove, and rearrange components on the palette, and you can create component *templates* and *frames* that group several components.

The online Help provides information about the components on the Component palette. Some of the components on the ActiveX, Servers, and Samples pages, however, are provided as examples only and are not documented.

For more information on the differences between the VCL and CLX, see Chapter 14, “Developing cross-platform applications.”

Adding custom components to the Component palette

You can install custom components—written by yourself or third parties—on the Component palette and use them in your applications. To write a custom component, see Part V, “Creating custom components.” To install an existing component, see “Installing component packages” on page 15-5.

Working with controls

Controls are visual components that the user can interact with at runtime. This chapter describes a variety of features common to many controls.

Implementing drag and drop in controls

Drag-and-drop is often a convenient way for users to manipulate objects. You can let users drag an entire control, or let them drag items from one control—such as a list box or tree view—into another.

- Starting a drag operation
- Accepting dragged items
- Dropping items
- Ending a drag operation
- Customizing drag and drop with a drag object
- Changing the drag mouse pointer

Starting a drag operation

Every control has a property called *DragMode* that determines how drag operations are initiated. If *DragMode* is *dmAutomatic*, dragging begins automatically when the user presses a mouse button with the cursor on the control. Because *dmAutomatic* can interfere with normal mouse activity, you may want to set *DragMode* to *dmManual* (the default) and start the dragging by handling mouse-down events.

To start dragging a control manually, call the control's *BeginDrag* method. *BeginDrag* takes a Boolean parameter called *Immediate* and an integer parameter called *Threshold*. If you pass **true** for *Immediate*, dragging begins immediately. If you pass **false**, dragging does not begin until the user moves the mouse the number of pixels specified by *Threshold*. If *Threshold* is -1, a default value is used. Calling

```
BeginDrag (false, -1);
```

allows the control to accept mouse clicks without beginning a drag operation.

You can place other conditions on whether to begin dragging, such as checking which mouse button the user pressed, by testing the parameters of the mouse-down event before calling *BeginDrag*. The following code, for example, handles a mouse-down event in a file list box by initiating a drag operation only if the left mouse button was pressed.

```
void __fastcall TFMForm::FileListBox1MouseDown(TObject *Sender,
    TMouseButton Button, TShiftState Shift, int X, int Y)
{
    if (Button == mbLeft) // drag only if left button pressed
    {
        TFileListBox *pLB = (TFileListBox *)Sender; // cast to TFileListBox
        if (pLB->ItemAtPos(Point(X,Y), true) >= 0) // is there an item here?
            pLB->BeginDrag(false, -1); // if so, drag it
    }
}
```

Accepting dragged items

When the user drags something over a control, that control receives an *OnDragOver* event, at which time it must indicate whether it can accept the item if the user drops it there. The drag cursor changes to indicate whether the control can accept the dragged item. To accept items dragged over a control, attach an event handler to the control's *OnDragOver* event.

The drag-over event has a parameter called *Accept* that the event handler can set to **true** if it will accept the item. *Accept* changes the cursor type to an accept cursor or not.

The drag-over event has other parameters, including the source of the dragging and the current location of the mouse cursor, that the event handler can use to determine whether to accept the drag. In the following example, a directory tree view accepts dragged items only if they come from a file list box.

```
void __fastcall TForm1::TreeView1DragOver(TObject *Sender, TObject *Source,
    int X, int Y, TDragState State, bool &Accept)
{
    if (Source->InheritsFrom(__classid(TFileListBox)))
        Accept = true;
}
```

Dropping items

If a control indicates that it can accept a dragged item, it needs to handle the item should it be dropped. To handle dropped items, attach an event handler to the *OnDragDrop* event of the control accepting the drop. Like the drag-over event, the drag-and-drop event indicates the source of the dragged item and the coordinates of the mouse cursor over the accepting control. The latter parameter allows you to monitor the path an item takes while being dragged; you might, for example, want to use this information to change the color of components if an item is dropped.

In the following example, a directory tree view, accepting items dragged from a file list box, responds by moving files to the directory on which they are dropped.

```
void __fastcall TForm1::TreeView1DragDrop(TObject *Sender, TObject *Source,
int X, int Y){
    if (Source->InheritsFrom(__classid(TFileListBox)))
    {
        TTreeNode *pNode = TreeView1->GetNodeAt(X,Y); // pNode is drop target
        AnsiString NewFile = pNode->Text + AnsiString("/") +
            ExtractFileName(FileListBox1->FileName); // build file name for drop target
        MoveFileEx(FileListBox1->FileName.c_str(), NewFile.c_str(),
            MOVEFILE_REPLACE_EXISTING | MOVEFILE_COPY_ALLOWED); // move the file
    }
}
```

Ending a drag operation

A drag operation ends when the item is either successfully dropped or released over a control that cannot accept it. At this point an end-drag event is sent to the control from which the drag was initiated. To enable a control to respond when items have been dragged from it, attach an event handler to the control's *OnEndDrag* event.

The most important parameter in an *OnEndDrag* event is called *Target*, which indicates which control, if any, accepts the drop. If *Target* is **null**, it means no control accepts the dragged item. The *OnEndDrag* event also includes the coordinates on the receiving control.

In this example, a file list box handles an end-drag event by refreshing its file list.

```
void __fastcall TFMForm::FileListBox1EndDrag(TObject *Sender, TObject *Target, int X, int Y)
{
    if (Target)
        FileListBox1->Update();
};
```

Customizing drag and drop with a drag object

You can use a *TDragObject* descendant to customize an object's drag-and-drop behavior. The standard drag-over and drag-and-drop events indicate the source of the dragged item and the coordinates of the mouse cursor over the accepting control. To get additional state information, derive a custom drag object from *TDragObject* or *TDragObjectEx* (VCL only) and override its virtual methods. Create the custom drag object in the *OnStartDrag* event.

Normally, the source parameter of the drag-over and drag-and-drop events is the control that starts the drag operation. If different kinds of control can start an operation involving the same kind of data, the source needs to support each kind of control. When you use a descendant of *TDragObject*, however, the source is the drag object itself; if each control creates the same kind of drag object in its *OnStartDrag* event, the target needs to handle only one kind of object. The drag-over and drag-and-drop events can tell if the source is a drag object, as opposed to the control, by calling the *IsDragObject* function.

TDragObjectEx descendants (VCL only) are freed automatically whereas descendants of *TDragObject* are not. If you have *TDragObject* descendants that you are not explicitly freeing, you can change them so they descend from *TDragObjectEx* instead to prevent memory loss.

Drag objects let you drag items between a form implemented in the application's main executable file and a form implemented using a DLL, or between forms that are implemented using different DLLs.

Changing the drag mouse pointer

You can customize the appearance of the mouse pointer during drag operations by setting the source component's *DragCursor* property (VCL only).

Implementing drag and dock in controls

Descendants of *TWinControl* can act as docking sites and descendants of *TControl* can act as child windows that are docked into docking sites. For example, to provide a docking site at the left edge of a form window, align a panel to the left edge of the form and make the panel a docking site. When dockable controls are dragged to the panel and released, they become child controls of the panel.

- Making a windowed control a docking site
- Making a control a dockable child
- Controlling how child controls are docked
- Controlling how child controls are undocked
- Controlling how child controls respond to drag-and-dock operations

Note Drag-and-dock properties are available in the VCL but not CLX.

Making a windowed control a docking site

To make a windowed control a docking site:

- 1 Set the *DockSite* property to **true**.
- 2 If the dock site object should not appear except when it contains a docked client, set its *AutoSize* property to **true**. When *AutoSize* is **true**, the dock site is sized to 0 until it accepts a child control for docking. Then it resizes to fit around the child control.

Making a control a dockable child

To make a control a dockable child:

- 1 Set its *DragKind* property to *dkDock*. When *DragKind* is *dkDock*, dragging the control moves the control to a new docking site or undocks the control so that it becomes a floating window. When *DragKind* is *dkDrag* (the default), dragging the

control starts a drag-and-drop operation which must be implemented using the *OnDragOver*, *OnEndDrag*, and *OnDragDrop* events.

- 2 Set its *DragMode* to *dmAutomatic*. When *DragMode* is *dmAutomatic*, dragging (for drag-and-drop or docking, depending on *DragKind*) is initiated automatically when the user starts dragging the control with the mouse. When *DragMode* is *dmManual*, you can still begin a drag-and-dock (or drag-and-drop) operation by calling the *BeginDrag* method.
- 3 Set its *FloatingDockSiteClass* property to indicate the *TWinControl* descendant that should host the control when it is undocked and left as a floating window. When the control is released and not over a docking site, a windowed control of this class is created dynamically, and becomes the parent of the dockable child. If the dockable child control is a descendant of *TWinControl*, it is not necessary to create a separate floating dock site to host the control, although you may want to specify a form in order to get a border and title bar. To omit a dynamic container window, set *FloatingDockSiteClass* to the same class as the control, and it will become a floating window with no parent.

Controlling how child controls are docked

A docking site automatically accepts child controls when they are released over the docking site. For most controls, the first child is docked to fill the client area, the second splits that into separate regions, and so on. Page controls dock children into new tab sheets (or merge in the tab sheets if the child is another page control).

Three events allow docking sites to further constrain how child controls are docked:

```
__property TGetSiteInfoEvent OnGetSiteInfo = {read=FOnGetSiteInfo, write=FOnGetSiteInfo};
typedef void __fastcall (__closure *TGetSiteInfoEvent)(System::TObject* Sender, TControl*
DockClient, Windows::TRect &InfluenceRect, const Windows::TPoint &MousePos, bool &CanDock);
```

OnGetSiteInfo occurs on the docking site when the user drags a dockable child over the control. It allows the site to indicate whether it will accept the control specified by the *DockClient* parameter as a child, and if so, where the child must be to be considered for docking. When *OnGetSiteInfo* occurs, *InfluenceRect* is initialized to the screen coordinates of the docking site, and *CanDock* is initialized to **true**. A more limited docking region can be created by changing *InfluenceRect* and the child can be rejected by setting *CanDock* to **false**.

```
__property TDockOverEvent OnDockOver = {read=FOnDockOver, write=FOnDockOver};
typedef void __fastcall (__closure *TDockOverEvent)(System::TObject* Sender,
TDragDockObject* Source, int X, int Y, TDragState State, bool &Accept);
```

OnDockOver occurs on the docking site when the user drags a dockable child over the control. It is analogous to the *OnDragOver* event in a drag-and-drop operation. Use it to signal that the child can be released for docking, by setting the *Accept* parameter. If the dockable control is rejected by the *OnGetSiteInfo* event handler (perhaps because it is the wrong type of control), *OnDockOver* does not occur.

```
__property TDockDropEvent OnDockDrop = {read=FOnDockDrop, write=FOnDockDrop};
typedef void __fastcall (__closure *TDockDropEvent)(System::TObject* Sender,
TDragDockObject* Source, int X, int Y);
```

OnDockDrop occurs on the docking site when the user releases the dockable child over the control. It is analogous to the *OnDragDrop* event in a normal drag-and-drop operation. Use this event to perform any necessary accommodations to accepting the control as a child control. Access to the child control can be obtained using the *Control* property of the *TDockObject* specified by the *Source* parameter.

Controlling how child controls are undocked

A docking site automatically allows child controls to be undocked when they are dragged and have a *DragMode* property of *dmAutomatic*. Docking sites can respond when child controls are dragged off, and even prevent the undocking, in an *OnUnDock* event handler:

```
__property TUnDockEvent OnUnDock = {read=FOnUnDock, write=FOnUnDock};
typedef void __fastcall (__closure *TUnDockEvent)(System::TObject* Sender, TControl* Client,
TWinControl* NewTarget, bool &Allow);
```

The *Client* parameter indicates the child control that is trying to undock, and the *Allow* parameter lets the docking site (*Sender*) reject the undocking. When implementing an *OnUnDock* event handler, it can be useful to know what other children (if any) are currently docked. This information is available in the read-only *DockClients* property, which is an indexed array of *TControl*. The number of dock clients is given by the read-only *DockClientCount* property.

Controlling how child controls respond to drag-and-dock operations

Dockable child controls have two events that occur during drag-and-dock operations: *OnStartDock*, analogous to the *OnStartDrag* event of a drag-and-drop operation, allows the dockable child control to create a custom drag object. *OnEndDock*, like *OnEndDrag*, occurs when the dragging terminates.

Working with text in controls

The following sections explain how to use various features of rich edit and memo controls. Some of these features work with edit controls as well.

- Setting text alignment
- Adding scroll bars at runtime
- Adding the clipboard object
- Selecting text
- Selecting all text
- Cutting, copying, and pasting text
- Deleting selected text
- Disabling menu items
- Providing a pop-up menu
- Handling the OnPopup event

Setting text alignment

In a rich edit or memo component, text can be left- or right-aligned or centered. To change text alignment, set the edit component's *Alignment* property. Alignment takes effect only if the *WordWrap* property is **true**; if word wrapping is turned off, there is no margin to align to.

For example, the following code from the RichEdit example sets the alignment depending on which button was chosen:

```
switch((int)RichEdit1->Paragraph->Alignment)
{
    case 0: LeftAlign->Down = true; break;
    case 1: RightAlign->Down = true; break;
    case 2: CenterAlign->Down = true; break;
}
```

Adding scroll bars at runtime

Rich edit and memo components can contain horizontal or vertical scroll bars, or both, as needed. When word wrapping is enabled, the component needs only a vertical scroll bar. If the user turns off word wrapping, the component might also need a horizontal scroll bar, since text is not limited by the right side of the editor.

To add scroll bars at runtime:

- 1 Determine whether the text might exceed the right margin. In most cases, this means checking whether word wrapping is enabled. You might also check whether any text lines actually exceed the width of the control.
- 2 Set the rich edit or memo component's *ScrollBars* property to include or exclude scroll bars.

The following example attaches an *OnClick* event handler to a Character | WordWrap menu item.

```
void __fastcall TEditForm::WordWrap1Click(TObject *Sender)
{
    Editor->WordWrap = ! (Editor->WordWrap);    // toggle word wrapping
    if (Editor->WordWrap)
        Editor->ScrollBars = ssVertical;        // wrapped requires only vertical
    else
        Editor->ScrollBars = ssBoth;            // unwrapped can need both
    WordWrap1->Checked = Editor->WordWrap;      // check menu item to match property
}
```

The rich edit and memo components handle their scroll bars in a slightly different way. The rich edit component can hide its scroll bars if the text fits inside the bounds of the component. The memo always shows scroll bars if they are enabled.

Adding the clipboard object

Most text-handling applications provide users with a way to move selected text between documents, including documents in different applications. The *Clipboard* object in C++Builder encapsulates a clipboard (such as the Windows Clipboard) and includes methods for cutting, copying, and pasting text (and other formats, including graphics). The *Clipboard* object is declared in the *Clipbrd* unit.

To add the *Clipboard* object to an application:

- 1 Select the unit that will use the clipboard.
- 2 In the form's .h file, add

```
#include <vcl\Clipbrd.hpp>
```

Selecting text

For text in an edit control, before you can send any text to the clipboard, that text must be selected. Highlighting of selected text is built into the edit components. When the user selects text, it appears highlighted.

Table 6.1 lists properties commonly used to handle selected text.

Table 6.1 Properties of selected text

| Property | Description |
|------------------|--|
| <i>SelText</i> | Contains a string representing the selected text in the component. |
| <i>SelLength</i> | Contains the length of a selected string. |
| <i>SelStart</i> | Contains the starting position of a string relative to the beginning of an edit control's text buffer. |

Selecting all text

The *SelectAll* method selects the entire contents of an edit control, such as a rich edit or memo component. This is especially useful when the component's contents exceed the visible area of the component. In most other cases, users select text with either keystrokes or mouse dragging.

To select the entire contents of a rich edit or memo control, call the *RichEdit1* control's *SelectAll* method.

For example:

```
void __fastcall TMainForm::SelectAll(TObject *Sender)
{
    RichEdit1->SelectAll();    // select all text in RichEdit
}
```

Cutting, copying, and pasting text

Applications that use the *Clipbrd* unit can cut, copy, and paste text, graphics, and objects through the clipboard. The edit components that encapsulate the standard text-handling controls all have methods built into them for interacting with the clipboard. (See “Using the clipboard with graphics” on page 10-21 for information on using the clipboard with graphics.)

To cut, copy, or paste text with the clipboard, call the edit component’s *CutToClipboard*, *CopyToClipboard*, and *PasteFromClipboard* methods, respectively.

For example, the following code attaches event handlers to the *OnClick* events of the *Edit | Cut*, *Edit | Copy*, and *Edit | Paste* commands, respectively:

```
void __fastcall TMainForm::EditCutClick(TObject* Sender)
{
    RichEdit1->CutToClipboard();
}

void __fastcall TMainForm::EditCopyClick(TObject* Sender)
{
    RichEdit1->CopyToClipboard();
}

void __fastcall TMainForm::EditPasteClick(TObject* Sender)
{
    RichEdit1->PasteFromClipboard();
}
```

Deleting selected text

You can delete the selected text in an edit component without cutting it to the clipboard. To do so, call the *ClearSelection* method. For example, if you have a *Delete* item on the *Edit* menu, your code could look like this:

```
void __fastcall TMainForm::EditDeleteClick(TObject *Sender)
{
    RichEdit1->ClearSelection();
}
```

Disabling menu items

It is often useful to disable menu commands without removing them from the menu. For example, in a text editor, if there is no text currently selected, the *Cut*, *Copy*, and *Delete* commands are inapplicable. An appropriate time to enable or disable menu items is when the user selects the menu. To disable a menu item, set its *Enabled* property to **false**.

In the following example, an event handler is attached to the *OnClick* event for the *Edit* item on a child form’s menu bar. It sets *Enabled* for the *Cut*, *Copy*, and *Delete* menu items on the *Edit* menu based on whether *RichEdit1* has selected text. The *Paste* command is enabled or disabled based on whether any text exists on the clipboard.

```
void __fastcall TMainForm::EditEditClick(TObject *Sender)
{
    // enable or disable the Paste menu item
    Paste1->Enabled = Clipboard()->HasFormat(CF_TEXT);
}
```

```
bool HasSelection = (RichEdit1->SelLength > 0); // true if text is selected
Cut1->Enabled = HasSelection; // enable menu items if HasSelection is true
Copy1->Enabled = HasSelection;
Delete1->Enabled = HasSelection;
}
```

The *HasFormat* method of the clipboard returns a Boolean value based on whether the clipboard contains objects, text, or images of a particular format. By calling *HasFormat* with the parameter *CF_TEXT*, you can determine whether the clipboard contains any text, and enable or disable the Paste item as appropriate.

Chapter 10, “Working with graphics and multimedia” provides more information about using the clipboard with graphics.

Providing a pop-up menu

Pop-up, or local, menus are a common ease-of-use feature for any application. They enable users to minimize mouse movement by clicking the right mouse button in the application workspace to access a list of frequently used commands.

In a text editor application, for example, you can add a pop-up menu that repeats the Cut, Copy, and Paste editing commands. These pop-up menu items can use the same event handlers as the corresponding items on the Edit menu. You don’t need to create accelerator or shortcut keys for pop-up menus because the corresponding regular menu items generally already have shortcuts.

A form’s *PopupMenu* property specifies what pop-up menu to display when a user right-clicks any item on the form. Individual controls also have *PopupMenu* properties that can override the form’s property, allowing customized menus for particular controls.

To add a pop-up menu to a form:

- 1 Place a pop-up menu component on the form.
- 2 Use the Menu Designer to define the items for the pop-up menu.
- 3 Set the *PopupMenu* property of the form or control that displays the menu to the name of the pop-up menu component.
- 4 Attach handlers to the *OnClick* events of the pop-up menu items.

Handling the OnPopup event

You may want to adjust pop-up menu items before displaying the menu, just as you may want to enable or disable items on a regular menu. With a regular menu, you can handle the *OnClick* event for the item at the top of the menu, as described in “Disabling menu items” on page 6-9.

With a pop-up menu, however, there is no top-level menu bar, so to prepare the pop-up menu commands, you handle the event in the menu component itself. The pop-up menu component provides an event just for this purpose, called *OnPopup*.

To adjust menu items on a pop-up menu before displaying them:

- 1 Select the pop-up menu component.
- 2 Attach an event handler to its *OnPopup* event.
- 3 Write code in the event handler to enable, disable, hide, or show menu items.

In the following code, the *Edit1Click* event handler described previously in “Disabling menu items” on page 6-9 is attached to the pop-up menu component’s *OnPopup* event. A line of code is added to *Edit1Click* for each item in the pop-up menu.

```
void __fastcall TMainForm::EditEditClick(TObject *Sender)
{
    // enable or disable the Paste menu item
    Paste1->Enabled = Clipboard()->HasFormat(CF_TEXT);
    Paste2->Enabled = Paste1->Enabled;           // add this line
    bool HasSelection = (RichEdit1->SelLength > 0); // true if text is selected
    Cut1->Enabled = HasSelection;                // enable menu items if HasSelection is true
    Cut2->Enabled = HasSelection;                // add this line
    Copy1->Enabled = HasSelection;
    Copy2->Enabled = HasSelection;               // add this line
    Delete1->Enabled = HasSelection;
}
```

Adding graphics to controls

Several controls let you customize the way the control is rendered. These include list boxes, combo boxes, menus, headers, tab controls, list views, status bars, tree views, and toolbars. Instead of using the standard method of drawing a control or its items, the control’s owner (generally, the form) draws them at runtime. The most common use for owner-draw controls is to provide graphics instead of, or in addition to, text for items. For information on using owner-draw to add images to menus, see “Adding images to menu items” on page 8-35.

All owner-draw controls contain lists of items. Usually, those lists are lists of strings that are displayed as text, or lists of objects that contain strings that are displayed as text. You can associate an object with each item in a list to make it easy to use that object when drawing items.

In general, creating an owner-draw control in C++Builder involves these steps:

- 1 Indicating that a control is owner-drawn.
- 2 Adding graphical objects to a string list.
- 3 Drawing owner-drawn items

Indicating that a control is owner-drawn

To customize the drawing of a control, you must supply event handlers that render the control’s image when it needs to be painted. Some controls receive these events automatically. For example, list views, tree views, and toolbars all receive events at various stages in the drawing process without your having to set any properties.

These events have names such as “OnCustomDraw” or “OnAdvancedCustomDraw.”

Other controls, however, require you to set a property before they receive owner-draw events. List boxes, combo boxes, header controls, and status bars have a property called *Style*. *Style* determines whether the control uses the default drawing (called the “standard” style) or owner drawing. Grids use a property called *DefaultDrawing* to enable or disable the default drawing. List views and tab controls have a property called *OwnerDraw* that enables or disabled the default drawing.

List boxes and combo boxes have additional owner-draw styles, called *fixed* and *variable*, as Table 6.2 describes. Other controls are always fixed, although the size of the item that contains the text may vary, the size of each item is determined before drawing the control.

Table 6.2 Fixed vs. variable owner-draw styles

| Owner-draw style | Meaning | Examples |
|------------------|--|--|
| Fixed | Each item is the same height, with that height determined by the <i>ItemHeight</i> property. | <i>lbOwnerDrawFixed</i> , <i>csOwnerDrawFixed</i> |
| Variable | Each item might have a different height, determined by the data at runtime. | <i>lbOwnerDrawVariable</i> , <i>csOwnerDrawVariable</i> |

Adding graphical objects to a string list

Every string list has the ability to hold a list of objects in addition to its list of strings.

For example, in a file manager application, you may want to add bitmaps indicating the type of drive along with the letter of the drive. To do that, you need to add the bitmap images to the application, then copy those images into the proper places in the string list as described in the following sections.

Adding images to an application

An image control is a nonvisual control that contains a graphical image, such as a bitmap. You use image controls to display graphical images on a form. You can also use them to hold hidden images that you’ll use in your application. For example, you can store bitmaps for owner-draw controls in hidden image controls, like this:

- 1 Add image controls to the main form.
- 2 Set their *Name* properties.
- 3 Set the *Visible* property for each image control to **false**.
- 4 Set the *Picture* property of each image to the desired bitmap using the Picture editor from the Object Inspector.

The image controls are invisible when you run the application.

Adding images to a string list

Once you have graphical images in an application, you can associate them with the strings in a string list. You can either add the objects at the same time as the strings, or associate objects with existing strings. The preferred method is to add objects and strings at the same time, if all the needed data is available.

The following example shows how you might want to add images to a string list. This is part of a file manager application where, along with a letter for each valid drive, it adds a bitmap indicating each drive's type. The *OnCreate* event handler looks like this:

```
void __fastcall TFMForm::FormCreate(TObject *Sender)
{
    int AddedIndex;
    char DriveName[4] = "A:\\";
    for (char Drive = 'A'; Drive <= 'Z'; Drive++) // try all possible drives
    {
        DriveName[0] = Drive;
        switch (GetDriveType(DriveName))
        {
            case DRIVE_REMOVABLE:// add a list item
                DriveName[1] = '\\0'; // temporarily make drive letter into string
                AddedIndex = DriveList->Items->AddObject(DriveName,
                    Floppy->Picture->Graphic);
                DriveName[1] = ':' // replace the colon
                break;
            case DRIVE_FIXED:// add a list item
                DriveName[1] = '\\0'; // temporarily make drive letter into string
                AddedIndex = DriveList->Items->AddObject(DriveName,
                    Fixed->Picture->Graphic);
                DriveName[1] = ':' // replace the colon
                break;
            case DRIVE_REMOTE:// add a list item
                DriveName[1] = '\\0'; // temporarily make drive letter into string
                AddedIndex = DriveList->Items->AddObject(DriveName,
                    Network->Picture->Graphic);
                DriveName[1] = ':' // replace the colon
                break;
        }
        if ((int)(Drive - 'A') == getdisk()) // current drive?
            DriveList->ItemIndex = AddedIndex; // then make that the current list item
    }
}
```

Drawing owner-drawn items

When you indicate that a control is owner-drawn, either by setting a property or supplying a custom draw event handler, the control is no longer drawn on the screen. Instead, the operating system generates events for each visible item in the control. Your application handles the events to draw the items.

To draw the items in an owner-draw control, do the following for each visible item in the control. Use a single event handler for all items.

1 Size the item, if needed.

Items of the same size (for example, with a list box style of *lsOwnerDrawFixed*), do not require sizing.

2 Draw the item.

Sizing owner-draw items

Before giving your application the chance to draw each item in a variable owner-draw control, the operating system generates a measure-item event. The measure-item event tells the application where the item appears on the control.

C++Builder determines the size of the item (generally, it is just large enough to display the item's text in the current font). Your application can handle the event and change the rectangle chosen. For example, if you plan to substitute a bitmap for the item's text, change the rectangle to be the size of the bitmap. If you want a bitmap and text, adjust the rectangle to be big enough for both.

To change the size of an owner-draw item, attach an event handler to the measure-item event in the owner-draw control. Depending on the control, the name of the event can vary. List boxes and combo boxes use *OnMeasureItem*. Grids have no measure-item event.

The sizing event has two important parameters: the index number of the item and the size of that item. The size is variable: the application can make it either smaller or larger. The positions of subsequent items depend on the size of preceding items.

For example, in a variable owner-draw list box, if the application sets the height of the first item to five pixels, the second item starts at the sixth pixel down from the top, and so on. In list boxes and combo boxes, the only aspect of the item the application can alter is the height of the item. The width of the item is always the width of the control.

Owner-draw grids cannot change the sizes of their cells as they draw. The size of each row and column is set before drawing by the *ColWidths* and *RowHeights* properties.

The following code, attached to the *OnMeasureItem* event of an owner-draw list box, increases the height of each list item to accommodate its associated bitmap.

```
void __fastcall TForm1::ListBox1MeasureItem(TWinControl *Control, int Index,
int &Height) // note that Height is passed by reference
{
    int BitmapHeight = ((TBitmap *)ListBox1->Items->Objects[Index])->Height + 2;
    // make sure list item has enough room for bitmap (plus 2)
    if (BitmapHeight > Height)
        Height = BitmapHeight;
}
```

Note You must typecast the items from the *Objects* property in the string list. *Objects* is a property of type *TObject* so that it can hold any kind of object. When you retrieve objects from the array, you need to typecast them back to the actual type of the items.

Drawing owner-draw items

When an application needs to draw or redraw an owner-draw control, the operating system generates draw-item events for each visible item in the control. Depending on the control, the item may also receive draw events for the item as a whole or subitems.

To draw each item in an owner-draw control, attach an event handler to the draw-item event for that control.

The names of events for owner drawing typically start with one of the following:

- *OnDraw*, such as *OnDrawItem* or *OnDrawCell*
- *OnCustomDraw*, such as *OnCustomDrawItem*
- *OnAdvancedCustomDraw*, such as *OnAdvancedCustomDrawItem*

The draw-item event contains parameters identifying the item to draw, the rectangle in which to draw, and usually some information about the state of the item (such as whether the item has focus). The application handles each event by rendering the appropriate item in the given rectangle.

For example, the following code shows how to draw items in a list box that has bitmaps associated with each string. It attaches this handler to the *OnDrawItem* event for the list box:

```
void __fastcall TForm1::ListBox1DrawItem(TWinControl *Control, int Index,
    TRect &Rect, TOwnerDrawState State)

    TBitmap *Bitmap = (TBitmap *)ListBox1->Items->Objects[Index];
    ListBox1->Canvas->Draw(R.Left, R.Top + 2, Bitmap); // draw the bitmap
    ListBox1->Canvas->TextOut(R.Left + Bitmap->Width + 2, R.Top + 2,
        ListBox1->Items->Strings[Index]);           // and write the text to its right
}
```


Building applications, components, and libraries

This chapter provides an overview of how to use C++Builder to create applications, libraries, and components.

Creating applications

The main use of C++Builder is designing and building the following types of applications:

- GUI applications
- Console applications
- Service applications (for Windows applications only)
- Packages and DLLs

GUI applications generally have an easy-to-use interface. Console applications run from a console window. Service applications are run as Windows services. These types of applications compile as executables with start-up code.

You can create other types of projects such as packages and DLLs that result in creating packages or dynamically linkable libraries. These applications produce executable code without start-up code. Refer to “Creating packages and DLLs” on page 7-10.

GUI applications

A graphical user interface (GUI) application is one that is designed using graphical features such as windows, menus, dialog boxes, and features that make the application easy to use. When you compile a GUI application, an executable file with start-up code is created. The executable usually provides the basic functionality of

your program, and simple programs often consist of only an executable file. You can extend the application by calling DLLs, packages, and other support files from the executable.

C++Builder offers two application UI models:

- Single document interface (SDI)
- Multiple document interface (MDI)

In addition to the implementation model of your applications, the design-time behavior of your project and the runtime behavior of your application can be manipulated by setting project options in the IDE.

User interface models

Any form can be implemented as a multiple document interface (MDI) or single document interface (SDI) form. In an MDI application, more than one document or child window can be opened within a single parent window. This is common in applications such as spreadsheets or word processors. An SDI application, in contrast, normally contains a single document view. To make your form an SDI application, set the *FormStyle* property of your *Form* object to *fsNormal*.

For more information on developing the UI for an application, see Chapter 8, “Developing the application user interface.”

SDI applications

To create a new SDI application:

- 1 Choose File | New | Other to bring up the New Items dialog.
- 2 Click on the Projects page and double-click SDI Application.
- 3 Click OK.

By default, the *FormStyle* property of your *Form* object is set to *fsNormal*, so C++Builder assumes that all new applications are SDI applications.

MDI applications

To create a new MDI application:

- 1 Choose File | New | Other to bring up the New Items dialog.
- 2 Click on the Projects page and double-click MDI Application.
- 3 Click OK.

MDI applications require more planning and are somewhat more complex to design than SDI applications. MDI applications spawn child windows that reside within the client window; the main form contains child forms. Set the *FormStyle* property of the *TForm* object to specify whether a form is a child (*fsMDIChild*) or main form (*fsMDIForm*). It is a good idea to define a base class for your child forms and derive each child form from this class, to avoid having to reset the child form’s properties.

MDI applications often include a Window pop-up on the main menu that has items such as Cascade and Tile for viewing multiple windows in various styles. When a child window is minimized, its icon is located in the MDI parent form.

To summarize what you need to do to create the windows for the MDI application,

- 1 Create the main window form or MDI parent window. Set its *FormStyle* property to *fsMDIForm*.
- 2 Create a menu for the main window that includes File | Open, File | Save, and Window which has Cascade, Tile, and Arrange All items.
- 3 Create the MDI child forms and set their *FormStyle* properties to *fsMDIChild*.

Setting IDE, project, and compilation options

Choose Project | Options to specify various options for your project. For more information, see the online Help.

Setting default project options

To change the default options that apply to all future projects, set the options in the Project Options dialog box and check the Default box at the bottom right of the window. All new projects will use the current options selected by default.

Programming templates

Programming templates are commonly used *skeleton* structures that you can add to your source code and then fill in. Some standard code templates such as those for array, class, and function declarations, and many statements, are included with C++Builder.

You can also write your own templates for coding structures that you often use. For example, if you want to use a **for** loop in your code, you could insert the following template:

```
for ( ; ; )
{

}
```

To insert a code template in the Code editor, press *Ctrl-J* and select the template you want to use. You can also add your own templates to this collection. To add a template:

- 1 Choose Tools | Editor Options.
- 2 Click the Code Insight tab.
- 3 In the Templates section, click Add.
- 4 Type a name for the template after Shortcut name, enter a brief description of the new template, and click OK.
- 5 Add the template code to the Code text box.
- 6 Click OK.

Console applications

Console applications are 32-bit programs that run without a graphical interface, usually in a console window. These applications typically don't require much user input and perform a limited set of functions.

To create a new console application:

- 1 Choose File | New | Other and double-click Console Wizard from the New Items dialog box.
- 2 In the Console Wizard dialog box, check the Console Application option, choose the source type (C or C++) for the main module of the project, or specify a pre-existing file that contains a main or winmain function, and click the OK button.

C++Builder then creates a project file for this type of source file and displays the Code editor.

Using the VCL and CLX in console applications

Note When you create a new console application, the IDE does not create a new form. Only the Code editor appears.

You can, however, use VCL and CLX objects in console applications. To do this, in the Console Wizard you must indicate that you will be using the VCL or CLX (check the Use VCL or Use CLX option). If you do not indicate in the wizard that you want to use the VCL or CLX, you will not be able use any of the VCL or CLX classes in this application later. Trying to do so will cause linker errors.

Console applications should handle all exceptions to prevent windows from displaying a dialog during its execution.

Service applications

Service applications take requests from client applications, process those requests, and return information to the client applications. They typically run in the background, without much user input. A Web, FTP, or e-mail server is an example of a service application.

To create an application that implements a Win32 service:

- 1 Choose File | New | Other, and double-click Service Application in the New Items dialog box. This adds a global variable named *Application* to your project, which is of type *TServiceApplication*.
- 2 A Service window appears that corresponds to a service (*TService*). Implement the service by setting its properties and event handlers in the Object Inspector.
- 3 You can add additional services to your service application by choosing File | New | Other, and double-click Service in the New Items dialog box. Do not add services to an application that is not a service application. While a *TService* object can be added, the application will not generate the requisite events or make the appropriate Windows calls on behalf of the service.

- 4 Once your service application is built, you can install its services with the Service Control Manager (SCM). Other applications can then launch your services by sending requests to the SCM.

To install your application's services, run it using the /INSTALL option. The application installs its services and exits, giving a confirmation message if the services are successfully installed. You can suppress the confirmation message by running the service application using the /SILENT option.

To uninstall the services, run it from the command line using the /UNINSTALL option. (You can also use the /SILENT option to suppress the confirmation message when uninstalling).

Example This service has a *TServerSocket* whose port is set to 80. This is the default port for Web browsers to make requests to Web servers and for Web servers to make responses to Web browsers. This particular example produces a text document in the C:\Temp directory called WebLogxxx.log (where xxx is the ThreadID). There should be only one server listening on any given port, so if you have a Web server, you should make sure that it is not listening (the service is stopped).

To see the results: open up a Web browser on the local machine and for the address, type 'localhost' (with no quotes). The browser will time out eventually, but you should now have a file called Weblogxxx.log in the C:\Temp directory.

- 1 To create the example, choose File | New | Other and select Service Application from the New Items dialog box. The Service1 window appears.
- 2 From the Internet page of the Component palette, add a ServerSocket component to the service window (Service1).
- 3 Add a private data member of type TMemoryStream to the TService1 class. The header for your unit should now look like this:

```
//-----
#ifndef Unit1H
#define Unit1H
//-----
#include <SysUtils.hpp>
#include <Classes.hpp>
#include <SvcMgr.hpp>
#include <ScktComp.hpp>
//-----
class TService1 : public TService
{
__published:// IDE-managed Components
    TServerSocket *ServerSocket1;
private:// User declarations
    TMemoryStream *Stream; // add this line here
public:// User declarations
    __fastcall TService1(TComponent* Owner);
    PServiceController __fastcall GetServiceController(void);

    friend void __stdcall ServiceController(unsigned CtrlCode);
};
```

```
//-----
extern PACKAGE TService1 *Service1;
//-----
#endif
```

- 4 Select `ServerSocket1`, the component you added in step 1. In the Object Inspector, double-click the *OnClientRead* event and add the following event handler:

```
void __fastcall TService1::ServerSocket1ClientRead(TObject *Sender,
    TCustomWinSocket *Socket)
{
    char *Buffer = NULL;
    int len = Socket->ReceiveLength();
    while (len > 0)
    {
        try
        {
            Buffer = (char *)malloc(len);
            Socket->ReceiveBuf((void *)Buffer, len);
            Stream->Write(Buffer, len);
        }
        __finally
        {
            free(Buffer);
        }
        Stream->Seek(0, soFromBeginning);
        AnsiString LogFile = "C:\\Temp\\WebLog";
        LogFile = LogFile + IntToStr(ServiceThread->ThreadID) + ".log";
        Stream->SaveToFile(LogFile);
    }
}
```

- 5 Finally, select `Service1` by clicking in the window's client area (but not on the `ServiceSocket`). In the Object Inspector, double click the *OnExecute* event and add the following event handler:

```
void __fastcall TService1::Service1Execute(TService *Sender)
{
    Stream = new TMemoryStream();
    try
    {
        ServerSocket1->Port = 80; // WWW port
        ServerSocket1->Active = true;
        while (!Terminated)
            ServiceThread->ProcessRequests(true);
        ServerSocket1->Active = false;
    }
    __finally
    {
        delete Stream;
    }
}
```

When writing your service application, you should be aware of:

- Service threads
- Service name properties
- Debugging service applications

Note Service applications are for Windows only.

Service threads

Each service has its own thread (*TServiceThread*), so if your service application implements more than one service you must ensure that the implementation of your services is thread-safe. *TServiceThread* is designed so that you can implement the service in the *TService OnExecute* event handler. The service thread has its own *Execute* method which contains a loop that calls the service's *OnStart* and *OnExecute* handlers before processing new requests.

Because service requests can take a long time to process and the service application can receive simultaneous requests from more than one client, it is more efficient to spawn a new thread (derived from *TThread*, not *TServiceThread*) for each request and move the implementation of that service to the new thread's *Execute* method. This allows the service thread's *Execute* loop to process new requests continually without having to wait for the service's *OnExecute* handler to finish. The following example demonstrates.

Example This service beeps every 500 milliseconds from within the standard thread. It handles pausing, continuing, and stopping of the thread when the service is told to pause, continue, or stop.

- 1 Choose File | New | Other and double-click Service Application in the New Items dialog. The Service1 window appears.
- 2 In your unit's header file, declare a new descendant of *TThread* named *TSparkyThread*. This is the thread that does the work for your service. The declaration should appear as follows:

```
class TSparkyThread : public TThread
{
private:
protected:
    void __fastcall Execute();
public:
    __fastcall TSparkyThread(bool CreateSuspended);
};
```

- 3 In the .cpp file for your unit, create a global variable for a *TSparkyThread* instance:

```
TSparkyThread *SparkyThread;
```

- 4 Add the following code to the .cpp file for the *TSparkyThread* constructor:

```
__fastcall TSparkyThread::TSparkyThread(bool CreateSuspended)
    : TThread(CreateSuspended)
{
}
```

- 5 Add the following code to the .cpp file for the TSparkyThread Execute method (the thread function):

```
void __fastcall TSparkyThread::Execute()
{
    while (!Terminated)
    {
        Beep();
        Sleep(500);
    }
}
```

- 6 Select the Service window (Service1), and double-click the OnStart event in the Object Inspector. Add the following OnStart event handler:

```
void __fastcall TService1::Service1Start(TService *Sender, bool &Started)
{
    SparkyThread = new TSparkyThread(false);
    Started = true;
}
```

- 7 Double-click the *OnContinue* event in the Object Inspector. Add the following OnContinue event handler:

```
void __fastcall TService1::Service1Continue(TService *Sender, bool &Continued)
{
    SparkyThread->Resume();
    Continued = true;
}
```

- 8 Double-click the OnPause event in the Object Inspector. Add the following OnPause event handler:

```
void __fastcall TService1::Service1Pause(TService *Sender, bool &Paused)
{
    SparkyThread->Suspend();
    Paused = true;
}
```

- 9 Finally, double-click the OnStop event in the Object Inspector and add the following OnStop event handler:

```
void __fastcall TService1::Service1Stop(TService *Sender, bool &Stopped)
{
    SparkyThread->Terminate();
    Stopped = true;
}
```

When developing server applications, choosing to spawn a new thread depends on the nature of the service being provided, the anticipated number of connections, and the expected number of processors on the computer running the service.

Service name properties

The VCL provides classes for creating service applications on the Windows platform (not available for cross-platform applications). These include *TService* and

TDependency. When using these classes, the various name properties can be confusing. This section describes the differences.

Services have user names (called Service start names) that are associated with passwords, display names for display in manager and editor windows, and actual names (the name of the service). Dependencies can be services or they can be load ordering groups. They also have names and display names. And because service objects are derived from *TComponent*, they inherit the *Name* property. The following sections summarize the name properties:

TDependency properties

The *TDependency DisplayName* is both a display name and the actual name of the service. It is nearly always the same as the *TDependency Name* property.

TService name properties

The *TService Name* property is inherited from *TComponent*. It is the name of the component, and is also the name of the service. For dependencies that are services, this property is the same as the *TDependency Name* and *DisplayName* properties.

TService's DisplayName is the name displayed in the Service Manager window. This often differs from the actual service name (*TService::Name*, *TDependency::DisplayName*, *TDependency::Name*). Note that the *DisplayName* for the Dependency and the *DisplayName* for the Service usually differ.

Service start names are distinct from both the service display names and the actual service names. A *ServiceStartName* is the user name input on the Start dialog selected from the Service Control Manager.

Debugging service applications

You can debug service applications by attaching to the service application process when it is already running (that is, by starting the service first, and then attaching to the debugger). To attach to the service application process, choose Run | Attach To Process, and select the service application in the resulting dialog.

In some cases, this approach may fail, due to insufficient rights. If that happens, you can use the Service Control Manager to enable your service to work with the debugger:

- 1 First create a key called **Image File Execution Options** in the following registry location:
`HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Microsoft\Windows NT\CurrentVersion`
- 2 Create a subkey with the same name as your service (for example, MYSERV.EXE). To this subkey, add a value of type REG_SZ, named Debugger. Use the full path to BCB.exe as the string value.
- 3 In the Services control panel applet, select your service, click Startup and check Allow Service to Interact with Desktop.

On Windows NT systems, you can use another approach for debugging service applications. However, this approach can be tricky, because it requires short time intervals:

- 1 First, launch the application in the debugger. Wait a few seconds until it has finished loading.
- 2 Quickly start the service from the Control Panel or from the command line:

```
start MyServ
```

You must launch the service quickly (within 15-30 seconds of application startup) because the application will terminate if no service is launched.

Creating packages and DLLs

Dynamic link libraries (DLLs) are modules of compiled code that work in conjunction with an executable to provide functionality to an application. You can create DLLs in cross-platform programs. However, on Linux, DLLs (and packages) recompile as shared objects.

Packages are special DLLs used by C++Builder applications, the IDE, or both. There are two kinds of packages: runtime packages and design-time packages. Runtime packages provide functionality to a program while that program is running. Design-time packages extend the functionality of the IDE.

DLLs and libraries should handle all exceptions to prevent the display of errors and warnings through Windows dialogs.

The following compiler directives can be placed in library project files:

Table 7.1 Compiler directives for libraries

| Compiler Directive | Description |
|-------------------------|---|
| {\$LIBPREFIX 'string'} | Adds a specified prefix to the output file name. For example, you could specify {\$LIBPREFIX 'dcl'} for a design-time package, or use {\$LIBPREFIX ' '} to eliminate the prefix entirely. |
| {\$LIBSUFFIX 'string'} | Adds a specified suffix to the output file name before the extension. For example, use {\$LIBSUFFIX '-2.1.3'} in something.cpp to generate something-2.1.3.bpl. |
| {\$LIBVERSION 'string'} | Adds a second extension to the output file name after the .bpl extension. For example, use {\$LIBVERSION '2.1.3'} in something.cpp to generate something.bpl.2.1.3. |

For more information on packages, see Chapter 15, “Working with packages and components.”

When to use packages and DLLs

For most applications written in C++Builder, packages provide greater flexibility and are easier to create than DLLs. However, there are several situations where DLLs would be better suited to your projects than packages:

- Your code module will be called from non-C++Builder applications.
- You are extending the functionality of a Web server.
- You are creating a code module to be used by third-party developers.
- Your project is an OLE container.

You cannot pass runtime type information (RTTI) across DLLs or from a DLL to an executable. That's because DLLs all maintain their own symbol information. If you need to pass a *TStrings* object from a DLL then using an **is** or **as** operator, you need to create a package rather than a DLL. Packages share symbol information.

Using DLLs in C++Builder

A Windows DLL can be used in a C++Builder application just as it would be in any C++ application.

To statically load a DLL when your C++Builder application is loaded, link the import library file for that DLL into your C++Builder application at link time. To add an import library to a C++Builder application, choose Project | Add and select the .LIB file you want to add.

The exported functions of that DLL then become available for use by your application. Prototype the DLL functions your application uses with the **__declspec (dllimport)** modifier:

```
__declspec(dllimport) return_type imported_function_name(parameters);
```

To dynamically load a DLL during the run of a C++Builder application, include the import library, just as you would for static loading, and set the delay load linker option on the Project | Options | Advanced Linker tab. You can also use the Windows API function *LoadLibrary()* to load the DLL, then use the API function *GetProcAddress()* to obtain pointers to the individual functions you want to use.

Additional information on using DLLs can be found in the *Microsoft® Win32 SDK Reference*.

Creating DLLs in C++Builder

Creating DLLs in C++Builder is the same as in standard C++:

- 1 Choose File | New | Other to display the New Items dialog box.
- 2 Double-click the DLL Wizard icon.
- 3 Choose the Source type (C or C++) for the main module.

- 4 If you want the DLL entry point to be `DllMain`, MSVC++ style, check the VC++ style option, otherwise, `DllEntryPoint` is used for the entry point.
- 5 Click Use VCL or Use CLX to create a DLL containing VCL or CLX components, this option is only available for C++ source modules.
See “Creating DLLs containing VCL and CLX components” on page 7-12.
- 6 If you want the DLL to be multi-threaded, check the Multi-threaded option.
- 7 Click OK.

Exported functions in the code should be identified with the `__declspec(dllexport)` modifier as they must be in Borland C++ or Microsoft Visual C++. For example, the following code is legal in C++Builder and other Windows C++ compilers:

```
// MyDLL.cpp
double dblValue(double);
double halfValue(double);
extern "C" __declspec(dllexport) double changeValue(double, bool);

double dblValue(double value)
{
    return value * value;
};

double halfValue(double value)
{
    return value / 2.0;
}

double changeValue(double value, bool whichOp)
{
    return whichOp ? dblValue(value) : halfValue(value);
}
```

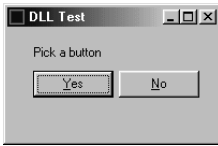
In the code above, the function *changeValue* is exported, and therefore made available to calling applications. The functions *dblValue* and *halfValue* are internal, and cannot be called from outside of the DLL.

Additional information on creating DLLs can be found in the *Microsoft® Win32 SDK Reference*.

Creating DLLs containing VCL and CLX components

One of the strengths of DLLs is that a DLL created with one development tool can often be used by application written using a different development tool. When your DLL contains VCL or CLX components (such as forms) that are to be used by the calling application, you need to provide exported interface routines that use standard calling conventions, avoid C++ name mangling, and do not require the calling application to support the VCL and CLX libraries in order to work. To create VCL or CLX components that can be exported, use runtime packages. For more information, see Chapter 15, “Working with packages and components.”

For example, suppose you want to create a DLL to display the following simple dialog box:



The code for the dialog box DLL is as follows:

```
// DLLMAIN.H
//-----
#ifndef dllMainH
#define dllMainH
//-----
#include <Classes.hpp>
#include <vcl\Controls.hpp>
#include <vcl\StdCtrls.hpp>
#include <vcl\Forms.hpp>
//-----
class TYesNoDialog : public TForm
{
__published:    // IDE-managed Components
    TLabel *LabelText;
    TButton *YesButton;
    TButton *NoButton;
    void __fastcall YesButtonClick(TObject *Sender);
    void __fastcall NoButtonClick(TObject *Sender);
private:        // User declarations
    bool returnValue;
public:         // User declarations
    virtual __fastcall TYesNoDialog(TComponent *Owner);
    bool __fastcall GetReturnValue();
};

// exported interface function
extern "C" __declspec(dllexport) bool InvokeYesNoDialog();

//-----
extern TYesNoDialog *YesNoDialog;
//-----
#endif

// DLLMAIN.CPP
//-----
#include <vcl\vcl.h>
#pragma hdrstop

#include "dllMain.h"
//-----
#pragma resource "*.dfm"
TYesNoDialog *YesNoDialog;
//-----
```

Creating DLLs containing VCL and CLX components

```
__fastcall TYesNoDialog::TYesNoDialog(TComponent *Owner)
: TForm(Owner)
{
    returnValue = false;
}
//-----
void __fastcall TYesNoDialog::YesButtonClick(TObject *Sender)
{
    returnValue = true;
    Close();
}
//-----
void __fastcall TYesNoDialog::NoButtonClick(TObject *Sender)
{
    returnValue = false;
    Close();
}
//-----
bool __fastcall TYesNoDialog::GetReturnValue()
{
    return returnValue;
}
//-----
// exported standard C++ interface function that calls into VCL
bool InvokeYesNoDialog()
{
    bool returnValue;
    TYesNoDialog *YesNoDialog = new TYesNoDialog(NULL);
    YesNoDialog->ShowModal();
    returnValue = YesNoDialog->GetReturnValue();
    delete YesNoDialog;
    return returnValue;
}
//-----
```

The code in this example displays the dialog and stores the value **true** in the private data member *returnValue* if the “Yes” button is pressed. Otherwise, *returnValue* is *false*. The public *GetReturnValue()* function retrieves the current value of *returnValue*.

To invoke the dialog and determine which button was pressed, the calling application calls the exported function *InvokeYesNoDialog()*. This function is declared in *DLLMAIN.H* as an exported function using C linkage (to avoid C++ name mangling) and the standard C calling convention. The function is defined in *DLLMAIN.CPP*.

By using a standard C function as the interface into the DLL, any calling application, whether or not it was created with C++Builder, can use the DLL. The VCL and CLX functionality required to support the dialog is linked into the DLL itself, and the calling application does not need to know anything about it.

Note that when creating a DLL that uses the VCL or CLX, the required VCL or CLX components are linked into the DLL resulting in a certain amount of overhead. The impact of this overhead on the overall size of the application can be minimized by combining several components into one DLL that only needs one copy of the VCL and CLX support components.

Linking DLLs

You can set the linker options for your DLL on the Linker page of the Project Options dialog. The default check box on this page also creates an import library for your DLL. If compiling from the command line, invoke the linker, `ILINK32.EXE`, with the `-Tpd` switch. For example:

```
ilink32 /c /aa /Tpd c0d32.obj mydll.obj, mydll.dll, mydll.map, import32.lib cw32mt.lib
```

If you need an import library, use the `-Gi` switch also, to generate an import library.

You can optionally create an import library with the command line utility `IMPLIB.EXE`. For example:

```
implib mydll.lib mydll.dll
```

For more information about the different options for linking DLLs and using them with other modules that are statically or dynamically linked to the runtime library, see the online Help.

Writing database applications

One of C++Builder's strengths is its support for creating advanced database applications. C++Builder supports tools that allow you to connect to SQL servers and databases such as Oracle, Sybase, InterBase, MySQL, MS-SQL, Informix, and DB2 while providing transparent data sharing between applications.

C++Builder includes many components for accessing databases and representing the information they contain. On the Component palette, the database components are grouped according to the data access mechanism and function.

Table 7.2 Database pages on the Component palette

| Palette page | Contents |
|--------------|--|
| BDE | Components that use the Borland Database Engine (BDE), a large API for interacting with databases. The BDE supports the broadest range of functions and comes with the most supporting utilities including Database Desktop, Database Explorer, SQL Monitor, and BDE Administrator. See Chapter 24, "Using the Borland Database Engine" for details. |
| ADO | Components that use ActiveX Data Objects (ADO), developed by Microsoft, to access database information. Many ADO drivers are available for connecting to different database servers. ADO-based components let you integrate your application into an ADO-based environment. See Chapter 25, "Working with ADO components" for details. |
| dbExpress | Cross-platform components that use dbExpress to access database information. dbExpress drivers provide fast access to databases but need to be used with <i>TClientDataSet</i> and <i>TDataSetProvider</i> to perform updates. See Chapter 26, "Using unidirectional datasets" for details. |
| InterBase | Components that access InterBase databases directly, without going through a separate engine layer. For more information about using the InterBase components, see the online Help. |

Table 7.2 Database pages on the Component palette (continued)

| Palette page | Contents |
|---------------|--|
| Data Access | Components that can be used with any data access mechanism such as <i>TClientDataSet</i> and <i>TDataSetProvider</i> . See Chapter 27, “Using client datasets” for information about client datasets. See Chapter 28, “Using provider components” for information about providers. |
| Data Controls | Data-aware controls that can access information from a data source. See Chapter 19, “Using data controls” for details. |

When designing a database application, you must decide which data access mechanism to use. Each data access mechanism differs in its range of functional support, the ease of deployment, and the availability of drivers to support different database servers.

See Part II, “Developing database applications” in this manual for details on how to use C++Builder to create both database client applications and application servers. Refer to “Deploying database applications” on page 17-6 for deployment information.

Note Not all editions of C++Builder include database support.

Distributing database applications

C++Builder provides support for creating distributed database applications using a coordinated set of components. Distributed database applications can be built on a variety of communications protocols, including DCOM, TCP/IP, and SOAP.

For more information about building distributed database applications, see Chapter 29, “Creating multi-tiered applications.”

Distributing database applications often requires you to distribute the Borland Database Engine (BDE) in addition to the application files. For information on deploying the BDE, see “Deploying database applications” on page 17-6.

Creating Web server applications

Web server applications are applications that run on servers that deliver Web content such as HTML Web pages or XML documents over the Internet. Examples of Web server applications include those which control access to a Web site, generate purchase orders, or respond to information requests.

You can create several different types of Web server applications using the following C++Builder technologies:

- Web Broker
- WebSnap
- InternetExpress
- Web Services

Using Web Broker

You can use Web Broker (also called NetCLX architecture) to create Web server applications such as CGI applications or dynamic-link libraries (DLLs). These Web server applications can contain any nonvisual component. Components on the Internet page of the Component palette enable you to create event handlers, programmatically construct HTML or XML documents, and transfer them to the client.

To create a new Web server application using the Web Broker architecture, choose File | New | Other and double-click the Web Server Application in the New Items dialog box. Then select the Web server application type:

Table 7.3 Web server applications

| Web server application type | Description |
|---|---|
| ISAPI and NSAPI Dynamic Link Library | ISAPI and NSAPI Web server applications are DLLs that are loaded by the Web server. Client request information is passed to the DLL as a structure and evaluated by TISAPIApplication. Each request message is handled in a separate execution thread. Selecting this type of application adds the library header of the project files and required entries to the uses list and exports clause of the project file. |
| CGI Stand-alone executable | CGI Web server applications are console applications that receive requests from clients on standard input, process those requests, and sends back the results to the server on standard output to be sent to the client. |
| Win-CGI Stand-alone executable | Win-CGI Web server applications are Windows applications that receive requests from clients from a configuration settings (INI) file written by the server and writes the results to a file that the server passes back to the client. The INI file is evaluated by TCGIApplication. Each request message is handled by a separate instance of the application. |
| Apache Shared Module (DLL) | Selecting this type of application sets up your project as a DLL. Apache Web server applications are DLLs loaded by the Web server. Information is passed to the DLL, processed, and returned to the client by the Web server. |
| Web App Debugger Stand-alone executable | Selecting this type of application sets up an environment for developing and testing Web server applications. Web App Debugger applications are executable files loaded by the Web server. This type of application is not intended for deployment. |

CGI and Win-CGI applications use more system resources on the server, so complex applications are better created as ISAPI, NSAPI, or Apache DLL applications. If writing cross-platform applications, you should select CGI stand-alone or Apache Shared Module (DLL) for Web server development. These are also the same options you see when creating WebSnap and Web Service applications.

For more information on building Web server applications, see Chapter 32, “Creating Internet server applications.”

Creating WebSnap applications

WebSnap provides a set of components and wizards for building advanced Web servers that interact with Web browsers. WebSnap components generate HTML or other MIME content for Web pages. WebSnap is for server-side development. WebSnap cannot be used in cross-platform applications at this time.

To create a new WebSnap application, select File | New | Other and select the WebSnap tab in the New Items dialog box. Choose WebSnap Application. Then select the Web server application type (ISAPI/NSAPI, CGI, Win-CGI, Apache). See Table 7.3, “Web server applications” for details.

For more information on WebSnap, see Chapter 34, “Creating Web Server applications using WebSnap.”

Using InternetExpress

InternetExpress is a set of components that extends the basic Web server application architecture to act as the client of an application server. You use InternetExpress for applications wherein browser-based clients can fetch data from a provider, resolve updates to the provider, while executing on a client.

InternetExpress applications generate HTML pages that contain a mixture of HTML, XML, and javascript. The HTML determines the layout and appearance of the pages displayed in end-user browsers. The XML encodes the data packets and delta packets that represent database information. The javascript allows the HTML controls to interpret and manipulate the data in the XML data packets on the client machine.

For more information on InternetExpress, see “Building Web applications using InternetExpress” on page 29-31.

Creating Web Services applications

Web Services are self-contained modular applications that can be published and invoked over a network (such as the World Wide Web). Web Services provide well-defined interfaces that describe the services provided. You use Web Services to produce or consume programmable services over the Internet using emerging standards such as XML, XML Schema, SOAP (Simple Object Access Protocol), and WSDL (Web Service Definition Language).

Web Services use SOAP, a standard lightweight protocol for exchanging information in a distributed environment. It uses HTTP as a communications protocol and XML to encode remote procedure calls.

You can use C++Builder to build servers to implement Web Services and clients that call on those services. You can write clients for arbitrary servers to implement Web Services that respond to SOAP messages, and C++Builder servers to publish Web Services for use by arbitrary clients.

Refer to Chapter 36, “Using Web Services” for more information on Web Services.

Writing applications using COM

COM is the Component Object Model, a Windows-based distributed object architecture designed to provide object interoperability using predefined routines called interfaces. COM applications use objects that are implemented by a different process or, if you use DCOM, on a separate machine. You can also use COM+, ActiveX and Active Server Pages.

COM is a language-independent software component model that enables interaction between software components and applications running on a Windows platform. The key aspect of COM is that it enables communication between components, between applications, and between clients and servers through clearly defined interfaces. Interfaces provide a way for clients to ask a COM component which features it supports at runtime. To provide additional features for your component, you simply add an additional interface for those features.

Using COM and DCOM

C++Builder has classes and wizards that make it easy to create COM, OLE, or ActiveX applications. You can create COM clients or servers that implement COM objects, Automation servers (including Active Server Objects), ActiveX controls, or ActiveForms. COM also serves as the basis for other technologies such as Automation, ActiveX controls, Active Documents, and Active Directories.

Using C++Builder to create COM-based applications offers a wide range of possibilities, from improving software design by using interfaces internally in an application, to creating objects that can interact with other COM-based API objects on the system, such as the Win9x Shell extensions and DirectX multimedia support. Applications can access the interfaces of COM components that exist on the same computer as the application or that exist on another computer on the network using a mechanism called Distributed COM (DCOM).

For more information on COM and Active X controls, see Chapter 38, “Overview of COM technologies,” Chapter 43, “Creating an ActiveX control,” and “Distributing a client application as an ActiveX control” on page 29-30.

For more information on DCOM, see “Using DCOM connections” on page 29-9.

Using MTS and COM+

COM applications can be augmented with special services for managing objects in a large distributed environment. These services include transaction services, security, and resource management supplied by Microsoft Transaction Server (MTS) on versions of Windows prior to Windows 2000) or COM+ (for Windows 2000 and later).

For more information on MTS and COM+, see Chapter 44, “Creating MTS or COM+ objects” and “Using transactional data modules” on page 29-6.

Using data modules

A data module is like a special form that contains nonvisual components. All the components in a data module *could* be placed on ordinary forms alongside visual controls. But if you plan on reusing groups of database and system objects, or if you want to isolate the parts of your application that handle database connectivity and business rules, then data modules provide a convenient organizational tool.

There are several types of data modules, including standard, remote, Web modules, applet modules, and services, depending on which edition of C++Builder you have. Each type of data module serves a special purpose.

- Standard data modules are particularly useful for single- and two-tiered database applications, but can be used to organize the nonvisual components in any application. For more information, see “Creating and editing standard data modules” on page 7-20.
- Remote data modules form the basis of an application server in a multi-tiered database application. They are not available in all editions. In addition to holding the nonvisual components in the application server, remote data modules expose the interface that clients use to communicate with the application server. For more information about using them, see “Adding a remote data module to an application server project” on page 7-23.
- Web modules form the basis of Web server applications. In addition to holding the components that create the content of HTTP response messages, they handle the dispatching of HTTP messages from client applications. See Chapter 32, “Creating Internet server applications” for more information about using Web modules.
- Applet modules form the basis of control panel applets. In addition to holding the nonvisual controls that implement the control panel applet, they define the properties that determine how the applet’s icon appears in the control panel and include the events that are called when users execute the applet. For more information about applet modules, see the online Help.
- Services encapsulate individual services in an NT service application. In addition to holding any nonvisual controls used to implement a service, services include the events that are called when the service is started or stopped. For more information about services, see “Service applications” on page 7-4.

Creating and editing standard data modules

To create a standard data module for a project, choose File | New | Data Module. C++Builder opens a data module container on the desktop, displays the unit file for the new module in the Code editor, and adds the module to the current project.

At design time, a data module looks like a standard C++Builder form with a white background and no alignment grid. As with forms, you can place nonvisual components from the Component palette onto a module, and edit their properties in the Object Inspector. You can resize a data module to accommodate the components you add to it.

You can also right-click a module to display a context menu for it. The following table summarizes the context menu options for a data module.

Table 7.4 Context menu options for data modules

| Menu item | Purpose |
|----------------------------|---|
| <i>Edit</i> | Displays a context menu with which you can cut, copy, paste, delete, and select the components in the data module. |
| <i>Position</i> | Aligns nonvisual components to the module's invisible grid (<i>Align To Grid</i>) or according to criteria you supply in the Alignment dialog box (<i>Align</i>). |
| <i>Tab Order</i> | Enables you to change the order that the focus jumps from component to component when you press the tab key. |
| <i>Creation Order</i> | Enables you to change the order that data access components are created at start-up. |
| <i>Revert to Inherited</i> | Discards changes made to a module inherited from another module in the Object Repository, and reverts to the originally inherited module. |
| <i>Add to Repository</i> | Stores a link to the data module in the Object Repository. |
| <i>View as Text</i> | Displays the text representation of the data module's properties. |
| <i>Text DFM</i> | Toggles between the formats (binary or text) in which this particular form file is saved. |

For more information about data modules, see the online Help.

Naming a data module and its unit file

The title bar of a data module displays the module's name. The default name for a data module is "DataModuleN" where *N* is a number representing the lowest unused unit number in a project. For example, if you start a new project, and add a module to it before doing any other application building, the name of the module defaults to "DataModule2." The corresponding unit file for *DataModule2* defaults to "Unit2."

You should rename your data modules and their corresponding unit files at design time to make them more descriptive. You should especially rename data modules you add to the Object Repository to avoid name conflicts with other data modules in the Repository or in applications that use your modules.

To rename a data module:

- 1 Select the module.
- 2 Edit the *Name* property for the module in the Object Inspector.

The new name for the module appears in the title bar when the *Name* property in the Object Inspector no longer has focus.

Changing the name of a data module at design time changes its variable name in the interface section of code. It also changes any use of the type name in procedure declarations. You must manually change any references to the data module in code you write.

To rename a unit file for a data module:

- 1 Select the unit file.

Placing and naming components

You place nonvisual components in a data module just as you place visual components on a form. Click the desired component on the appropriate page of the Component palette, then click in the data module to place the component. You cannot place visual controls, such as grids, on a data module. If you attempt it, you receive an error message.

For ease of use, components are displayed with their names in a data module. When you first place a component, C++Builder assigns it a generic name that identifies what kind of component it is, followed by a 1. For example, the *TDataSource* component adopts the name *DataSource1*. This makes it easy to select specific components whose properties and methods you want to work with.

You may still want to name a component a different name that reflects the type of component and what it is used for.

To change the name of a component in a data module:

- 1 Select the component.
- 2 Edit the component's *Name* property in the Object Inspector.

The new name for the component appears under its icon in the data module as soon as the *Name* property in the Object Inspector no longer has focus.

For example, suppose your database application uses the CUSTOMER table. To access the table, you need a minimum of two data access components: a data source component (*TDataSource*) and a table component (*TClientDataSet*). When you place these components in your data module, C++Builder assigns them the names *DataSource1* and *ClientDataSet1*. To reflect the type of component and the database they access, CUSTOMER, you could change these names to *CustomerSource* and *CustomerTable*.

Using component properties and events in a data module

Placing components in a data module centralizes their behavior for your entire application. For example, you can use the properties of dataset components, such as *TClientDataSet*, to control the data available to the data source components that use those datasets. Setting the *ReadOnly* property to *true* for a dataset prevents users from editing the data they see in a data-aware visual control on a form. You can also invoke the Fields editor for a dataset, by double-clicking on *ClientDataSet1*, to restrict the fields within a table or query that are available to a data source and therefore to the data-aware controls on forms. The properties you set for components in a data module apply consistently to all forms in your application that use the module.

In addition to properties, you can write event handlers for components. For example, a *TDataSource* component has three possible events: *OnDataChange*, *OnStateChange*, and *OnUpdateData*. A *TClientDataSet* component has over 20 potential events. You can use these events to create a consistent set of business rules that govern data manipulation throughout your application.

Creating business rules in a data module

Besides writing event handlers for the components in a data module, you can code methods directly in the unit file for a data module. These methods can be applied to the forms that use the data module as business rules. For example, you might write a procedure to perform month-, quarter-, or year-end bookkeeping. You might call the procedure from an event handler for a component in the data module.

Accessing a data module from a form

To associate visual controls on a form with a data module, you must first add the data module's header file to the form's cpp file. You can do this in several ways:

- In the Code editor, open the form's unit file and include the data module's header file using the *#include* directive.
- Click the form's unit file, choose File | Include Unit Hdr, and enter the name of the module or pick it from the list box in the Use Unit dialog.
- For database components, in the data module click a dataset or query component to open the Fields editor and drag any existing fields from the editor onto the form. C++Builder prompts you to confirm that you want to add the module to the form, then creates controls (such as edit boxes) for the fields.

For example, if you've added the *TClientDataSet* component to your data module, double-click it to open the Fields editor. Select a field and drag it to the form. An edit box component appears.

Because the data source is not yet defined, C++Builder adds a new data source component, *DataSource1*, to the form and sets the edit box's *DataSource* property to *DataSource1*. The data source automatically sets its *DataSet* property to the dataset component, *ClientDataSet1*, in the data module.

You can define the data source *before* you drag a field to the form by adding a *TDataSource* component to the data module. Set the data source's *DataSet* property to *ClientDataSet1*. After you drag a field to the form, the edit box appears with its *TDataSource* property already set to *DataSource1*. This method keeps your data access model cleaner.

Adding a remote data module to an application server project

Some editions of C++Builder allow you to add *remote data modules* to application server projects. A remote data module has an interface that clients in a multi-tiered application can access across networks.

To add a remote data module to a project:

- 1 Choose File | New | Other.
- 2 Select the Multitier page in the New Items dialog box.
- 3 Double-click the Remote Data Module icon to open the Remote Data Module wizard.

Once you add a remote data module to a project, use it just like a standard data module.

For more information about multi-tiered database applications, see Chapter 29, “Creating multi-tiered applications.”

Using the Object Repository

The Object Repository (Tools | Repository) makes it easy share forms, dialog boxes, frames, and data modules. It also provides templates for new projects and wizards that guide the user through the creation of forms and projects. The repository is maintained in BCB.DRO (by default in the BIN directory), a text file that contains references to the items that appear in the Repository and New Items dialogs.

Sharing items within a project

You can share items *within* a project without adding them to the Object Repository. When you open the New Items dialog box (File | New | Other), you'll see a page tab with the name of the current project. This page lists all the forms, dialog boxes, and data modules in the project. You can derive a new item from an existing item and customize it as needed.

Adding items to the Object Repository

You can add your own projects, forms, frames, and data modules to those already available in the Object Repository. To add an item to the Object Repository,

- 1 If the item is a project or is in a project, open the project.
- 2 For a project, choose Project | Add To Repository. For a form or data module, right-click the item and choose Add To Repository.
- 3 Type a description, title, and author.
- 4 Decide which page you want the item to appear on in the New Items dialog box, then type the name of the page or select it from the Page combo box. If you type the name of a page that doesn't exist, C++Builder creates a new page.
- 5 Choose Browse to select an icon to represent the object in the Object Repository.
- 6 Choose OK.

Sharing objects in a team environment

You can share objects with your workgroup or development team by making a repository available over a network. To use a shared repository, all team members must select the same Shared Repository directory in the Environment Options dialog:

- 1 Choose Tools | Environment Options.

- 2 On the Preferences page, locate the Shared Repository panel. In the Directory edit box, enter the directory where you want to locate the shared repository. Be sure to specify a directory that's accessible to all team members.

The first time an item is added to the repository, C++Builder creates a BCB.DRO file in the Shared Repository directory if one doesn't exist already.

Using an Object Repository item in a project

To access items in the Object Repository, choose File | New | Other. The New Items dialog appears, showing all the items available. Depending on the type of item you want to use, you have up to three options for adding the item to your project:

- Copy
- Inherit
- Use

Copying an item

Choose Copy to make an exact copy of the selected item and add the copy to your project. Future changes made to the item in the Object Repository will not be reflected in your copy, and alterations made to your copy will not affect the original Object Repository item.

Copy is the only option available for project templates.

Inheriting an item

Choose Inherit to derive a new class from the selected item in the Object Repository and add the new class to your project. When you recompile your project, any changes that have been made to the item in the Object Repository will be reflected in your derived class, in addition to changes you make to the item in your project. Changes made to your derived class do not affect the shared item in the Object Repository.

Inherit is available for forms, dialog boxes, and data modules, but not for project templates. It is the *only* option available for reusing items within the same project.

Using an item

Choose Use when you want the selected item itself to become part of your project. Changes made to the item in your project will appear in all other projects that have added the item with the Inherit or Use option. Select this option with caution.

The Use option is available for forms, dialog boxes, and data modules.

Using project templates

Templates are predesigned projects that you can use as starting points for your own work. To create a new project from a template:

- 1 Choose File | New | Other to display the New Items dialog box.

- 2 Choose the Projects tab.
- 3 Select the project template you want and choose OK.
- 4 In the Select Directory dialog, specify a directory for the new project's files.

C++Builder copies the template files to the specified directory, where you can modify them. The original project template is unaffected by your changes.

Modifying shared items

If you modify an item in the Object Repository, your changes will affect all future projects that use the item as well as existing projects that have added the item with the Use or Inherit option. To avoid propagating changes to other projects, you have several alternatives:

- Copy the item and modify it in your current project only.
- Copy the item to the current project, modify it, then add it to the Repository under a different name.
- Create a component, DLL, component template, or frame from the item. If you create a component or DLL, you can share it with other developers.

Specifying a default project, new form, and main form

By default, when you choose File | New | Application or File | New | Form, C++Builder displays a blank form. You can change this behavior by reconfiguring the Repository:

- 1 Choose Tools | Repository.
- 2 If you want to specify a default project, select the Projects page and choose an item under Objects. Then select the New Project check box.
- 3 If you want to specify a default form, select a Repository page (such as Forms), then choose a form under Objects. To specify the default new form (File | New | Form), select the New Form check box. To specify the default main form for new projects, select the Main Form check box.
- 4 Click OK.

Enabling Help in applications

Both the VCL and CLX support displaying Help from applications using an object-based mechanism that allows Help requests to be passed on to one of multiple external Help viewers. To support this, an application must include a class that implements the *ICustomHelpViewer* interface (and, optionally, one of several interfaces descended from it), and registers itself with the global Help Manager.

The VCL provides to all applications an instance of *TWinHelpViewer*, which implements all of these interfaces and provides a link between applications and WinHelp. CLX requires that you provide your own implementation. On Windows,

CLX applications can use the WinHelpViewer unit provided as part of the VCL if they bind to it statically—that is, by including that unit as part of your project instead of linking it to the VCL package.

The Help Manager maintains a list of registered viewers and passes requests to them in a two-phase process: it first asks each viewer if it can provide support for a particular Help keyword or context, and then it passes the Help request on to the viewer which says it can provide such support.

If more than one viewer supports the keyword, as would be the case in an application that had registered viewers for both WinHelp and HyperHelp on Windows or Man and Info on Linux, the Help Manager can display a selection box through which the user of the application can determine which Help viewer to invoke. Otherwise, it displays the first responding Help system encountered.

Help system interfaces

The Help system allows communication between your application and Help viewers through a series of interfaces. These interfaces are all defined in HelpIntfs, which also contains the implementation of the Help Manager.

ICustomHelpViewer provides support for displaying Help based upon a provided keyword and for displaying a table of contents listing all Help available in a particular viewer.

IExtendedHelpViewer provides support for displaying Help based upon a numeric Help context and for displaying topics; in most Help systems, topics function as high-level keywords (for example, “IntToStr” might be a keyword in the Help system, but “String manipulation routines” could be the name of a topic).

ISpecialWinHelpViewer provides support for responding to specialized WinHelp messages that an application running under Windows may receive and which are not easily generalizable. In general, only applications operating in the Windows environment need to implement this interface, and even then it is only required for applications that make extensive use of non-standard WinHelp messages.

IHelpManager provides a mechanism for the Help viewer to communicate back to the application’s Help Manager and request additional information. *IHelpManager* is obtained at the time the Help viewer registers itself.

IHelpSystem provides a mechanism through which *TApplication* passes Help requests on to the Help system. *TApplication* obtains an instance of an object which implements both *IHelpSystem* and *IHelpManager* at application load time and exports that instance as a property; this allows other code within the application to file Help requests directly when appropriate.

IHelpSelector provides a mechanism through which the Help system can invoke the user interface to ask which Help viewer should be used in cases where more than one viewer is capable of handling a Help request, and to display a Table of Contents. This display capability is not built into the Help Manager directly to allow the Help Manager code to be identical regardless of which widget set or class library is in use.

Implementing ICustomHelpViewer

The *ICustomHelpViewer* interface contains three types of methods: methods used to communicate system-level information (for example, information not related to a particular Help request) with the Help Manager; methods related to showing Help based upon a keyword provided by the Help Manager; and methods for displaying a table of contents.

Communicating with the Help Manager

ICustomHelpViewer provides four functions that can be used to communicate system information with the Help Manager:

- *GetViewerName*
- *NotifyID*
- *ShutDown*
- *SoftShutDown*

The Help Manager calls through these functions in the following circumstances:

- `AnsiString ICustomHelpViewer::GetViewerName()` is called when the Help Manager wants to know the name of the viewer (for example, if the application is asked to display a list of all registered viewers). This information is returned via a string, and is required to be logically static (that is, it cannot change during the operation of the application). Multibyte character sets are not supported.
- `void ICustomHelpViewer::NotifyID(const int ViewerID)` is called **immediately** following registration to provide the viewer with a unique cookie that identifies it. This information must be stored off for later use; if the viewer shuts down on its own (as opposed to in response to a notification from the Help Manager), it must provide the Help Manager with the identifying cookie so that the Help Manager can release all references to the viewer. (Failing to provide the cookie, or providing the wrong one, causes the Help Manager to potentially release references to the wrong viewer.)
- `void ICustomHelpViewer::ShutDown()` is called by the Help Manager to notify the Help viewer that the Manager is shutting down and that any resources the Help viewer has allocated should be freed. It is recommended that all resource freeing be delegated to this method.
- `void ICustomHelpViewer::SoftShutDown()` is called by the Help Manager to ask the Help viewer to close any externally visible manifestations of the Help system (for example, windows displaying Help information) without unloading the viewer.

Asking the Help Manager for information

Help viewers communicate with the Help Manager through the *IHelpManager* interface, an instance of which is returned to them when they register with the Help Manager. *IHelpManager* allows the Help viewer to communicate four things:

- A request for the window handle of the currently active control.

- A request for the name of the Help file which the Help Manager believes should contain help for the currently active control.
- A request for the path to that Help file.
- A notification that the Help viewer is shutting itself down in response to something other than a request from the Help Manager that it do so.

int *IHelpManager::GetHandle()* is called by the Help viewer if it needs to know the handle of the currently active control; the result is a window handle.

AnsiString *IHelpManager::GetHandle()* is called by the Help viewer if it wishes to know the name of the Help file which the currently active control believes contains its help.

void *IHelpManager::Release()* is called to notify the Help Manager when a Help viewer is disconnecting. It should never be called in response to a request through *IHelpManager::ShutDown()*; it is only used to notify the Help Manager of unexpected disconnects.

Displaying keyword-based Help

Help requests typically come through to the Help viewer as either *keyword-based* Help, in which case the viewer is asked to provide help based upon a particular string, or as *context-based* Help, in which case the viewer is asked to provide help based upon a particular numeric identifier.

CLX Numeric help contexts are the default form of Help requests in applications running under Windows, which use the WinHelp system; while CLX supports them, they are not recommended for use in CLX applications because most Linux Help systems do not understand them.

ICustomHelpViewer implementations are required to provide support for keyword-based Help requests, while *IExtendedHelpViewer* implementations are required to support context-based Help requests.

ICustomHelpViewer provides three methods for handling keyword-based Help:

- *UnderstandsKeyword*
- *GetHelpStrings*
- *ShowHelp*

```
int__fastcall ICustomHelpViewer::UnderstandsKeyword(const AnsiString HelpString)
```

is the first of the three methods called by the Help Manager, which will call *each* registered Help viewer with the same string to ask if the viewer provides help for that string; the viewer is expected to respond with an integer indicating how many different Help pages it can display in response to that Help request. The viewer can use any method it wants to determine this — inside the IDE, the HyperHelp viewer maintains its own index and searches it. If the viewer does not support help on this keyword, it should return zero. Negative numbers are currently interpreted as meaning zero, but this behavior is not guaranteed in future releases.

```
Classes::TStringList*__fastcall ICustomHelpViewer::GetHelpStrings(const AnsiString  
HelpString)
```

is called by the Help Manager if more than one viewer can provide Help on a topic. The viewer is expected to return a *TStringList*, which is freed by the Help Manager. The strings in the returned list should map to the pages available for that keyword, but the characteristics of that mapping can be determined by the viewer. In the case of the WinHelp viewer on Windows and the HyperHelp viewer on Linux, the string list always contains exactly one entry. HyperHelp provides its own indexing, and duplicating that elsewhere would be pointless duplication. In the case of the Man page viewer (Linux), the string list consists of multiple strings, one for each section of the manual which contains a page for that keyword.

```
void __fastcall ICustomHelpViewer::ShowHelp(const AnsiString HelpString)
```

is called by the Help Manager if it needs the Help viewer to display help for a particular keyword. This is the last method call in the operation; it is guaranteed to never be called unless *UnderstandsKeyword* is invoked first.

Displaying tables of contents

ICustomHelpViewer provides two methods relating to displaying tables of contents:

- *CanShowTableOfContents*
- *ShowTableOfContents*

The theory behind their operation is similar to the operation of the keyword Help request functions: the Help Manager first queries all Help viewers by calling *ICustomHelpViewer::CanShowTableOfContents()* and then invokes a particular Help viewer by calling *ICustomHelpViewer::ShowTableOfContents()*.

It is reasonable for a particular viewer to refuse to allow requests to support a table of contents. The Man page viewer does this, for example, because the concept of a table of contents does not map well to the way Man pages work; the HyperHelp viewer supports a table of contents, on the other hand, by passing the request to display a table of contents directly to HyperHelp on Linux and WinHelp on Windows. It is *not* reasonable, however, for an implementation of *ICustomHelpViewer* to respond to queries through *CanShowTableOfContents* with the answer *true*, and then ignore requests through *ShowTableOfContents*.

Implementing IExtendedHelpViewer

ICustomHelpViewer only provides direct support for keyword-based Help. Some Help systems (especially WinHelp) work by associating numbers (known as *context IDs*) with keywords in a fashion which is internal to the Help system and therefore not visible to the application. Such systems require that the application support context-based Help in which the application invokes the Help system with that context, rather than with a string, and the Help system translates the number itself.

Applications written in the VCL or CLX can talk to systems requiring context-based Help by extending the object that implements *ICustomHelpViewer* to also implement *IExtendedHelpViewer*. *IExtendedHelpViewer* also provides support for talking to Help systems that allow you to jump directly to high-level topics instead of using keyword searches. The built-in WinHelp viewer does this for you automatically.

IExtendedHelpViewer exposes four functions. Two of them—*UnderstandsContext* and *DisplayHelpByContext*—are used to support context-based Help; the other two—*UnderstandsTopic* and *DisplayTopic*—are used to support topics.

When an application user presses F1, the Help Manager calls

```
int__fastcall IExtendedHelpViewer::UnderstandsContext(const int ContextID, AnsiString
HelpFileName)
```

and the currently activated control supports context-based, rather than keyword-based Help. As with *ICustomHelpViewer::UnderstandsKeyword()*, the Help Manager queries all registered Help viewers iteratively. Unlike the case with *ICustomHelpViewer::UnderstandsKeyword()*, however, if more than one viewer supports a specified context, the *first* registered viewer with support for a given context is invoked.

The Help Manager calls

```
void__fastcall IExtendedHelpViewer::DisplayHelpByContext(const int ContextID, AnsiString
HelpFileName)
```

after it has polled the registered Help viewers.

The topic support functions work the same way:

```
bool__fastcall IExtendedHelpViewer::UnderstandsTopic(const AnsiString Topic)
```

is used to poll the Help viewers asking if they support a topic;

```
void__fastcall IExtendedHelpViewer::DisplayTopic(const AnsiString Topic)
```

is used to invoke the first registered viewer which reports that it is able to provide help for that topic.

Implementing IHelpSelector

IHelpSelector is a companion to *ICustomHelpViewer*. When more than one registered viewer claims to provide support for a given keyword, context, or topic, or provides a table of contents, the Help Manager must choose between them. In the case of contexts or topics, the Help Manager *always* selects the first Help viewer that claims to provide support. In the case of keywords or the table of context, the Help Manager will, by default, select the first Help viewer. This behavior can be overridden by an application.

To override the decision of the Help Manager in such cases, an application must register a class that provides an implementation of the *IHelpSelector* interface. *IHelpSelector* exports two functions: *SelectKeyword*, and *TableOfContents*. Both take as arguments a *TStrings* containing, one by one, either the possible keyword matches or the names of the viewers claiming to provide a table of contents. The implementor is required to return the index (in the *TStringList*) that represents the selected string; the *TStringList* is then freed by the Help Manager.

Note The Help Manager may get confused if the strings are rearranged; it is recommended that implementors of *IHelpSelector* refrain from doing this. The Help system only supports *one* HelpSelector; when new selectors are registered, any previously existing selectors are disconnected.

Registering Help system objects

For the Help Manager to communicate with them, objects that implement *ICustomHelpViewer*, *IExtendedHelpViewer*, *ISpecialWinHelpViewer*, and *IHelpSelector* must register with the Help Manager.

To register Help system objects with the Help Manager, you need to:

- Register the Help viewer.
- Register the Help Selector.

Registering Help viewers

The unit that contains the object implementation must use *HelpIntfs*. An instance of the object must be declared in the header file of the implementing unit.

The implementing unit must include a pragma startup directive that calls a method that assigns the instance variable and passes it to the function *RegisterViewer*. *RegisterViewer* is a flat function exported by *HelpIntfs.pas*, which takes as an argument an *ICustomHelpViewer* and returns an *IHelpManager*. The *IHelpManager* should be stored for future use.

The corresponding .cpp file contains the code to register the interface. For the interface described above, this registration code looks like the following:

```
void InitServices()
{
    THelpImplementor GlobalClass;
    Global = dynamic_cast<ICustomHelpViewer*>(GlobalClass);
    Global->AddRef;
    HelpIntfs::RegisterViewer(Global, GlobalClass->Manager);
}
#pragma startup InitServices
```

Note The Help Manager object must be freed in the destructor for the GlobalClass object if it has not already been freed.

Registering Help selectors

The unit that contains the object implementation must use either Forms in the VCL or QForms in CLX. An instance of the object must be declared in the .cpp file of the implementing unit.

The implementing unit must register the Help selector through the *HelpSystem* property of the global Application object:

```
Application->HelpSystem->AssignHelpSelector(myHelpSelectorInstance)
```

This procedure does not return a value.

Using Help in a VCL Application

The following sections explain how to use Help within a VCL application.

- How TApplication processes VCL Help
- How VCL controls process Help
- Calling a Help system directly
- Using IHelpSystem

How TApplication processes VCL Help

TApplication in the VCL provides four methods that are accessible from application code:

Table 7.5 Help methods in TApplication

| | |
|-------------|---|
| HelpCommand | Takes a Windows Help style HELP_COMMAND and passes it off to WinHelp. Help requests forwarded through this mechanism are passed only to implementations of ISpecialWinHelpViewer. |
| HelpContext | Invokes the Help System with a request for context-based Help. |
| HelpKeyword | Invokes the HelpSystem with a request for keyword-based Help. |
| HelpJump | Requests the display of a particular topic. |

All four functions take the data passed to them and forward it through a data member of *TApplication* which represents the Help System. That data member is directly accessible through the property *HelpSystem*.

How VCL controls process Help

All VCL controls that derive from *TControl* expose several properties that are used by the Help system: *HelpType*, *HelpContext*, and *HelpKeyword*.

The *HelpType* property contains an instance of an enumerated type that determines if the control's designer expects help to be provided via keyword-based Help or context-based Help. If the *HelpType* is set to *htKeyword*, then the Help system expects the control to use keyword-based Help, and the Help system only looks at the contents of the *HelpKeyword* property. Conversely, if the *HelpType* is set to *htContext*, the Help system expects the control to use context-based Help and only looks at the contents of the *HelpContext* property.

In addition to the properties, controls expose a single method, *InvokeHelp*, that can be called to pass a request to the Help system. It takes no parameters and calls the methods in the global Application object, which correspond to the type of Help the control supports.

Help messages are automatically invoked when F1 is pressed because the *KeyDown* method of *TWinControl* calls *InvokeHelp*.

Using Help in a CLX Application

The following sections explain how to use Help within a CLX application.

- How TApplication processes CLX Help
- How CLX controls process Help
- Calling a Help system directly
- Using IHelpSystem

How TApplication processes CLX Help

TApplication in CLX provides two methods that are accessible from application code:

- *ContextHelp*, which invokes the Help system with a request for context-based Help
- *KeywordHelp*, which invokes the Help system with a request for keyword-based Help

Both functions take as an argument the context or keyword being passed and forward the request on through a data member of *TApplication*, which represents the Help system. That data member is directly accessible through the read-only property *HelpSystem*.

How CLX controls process Help

All controls that derive from *TControl* expose four properties which are used by the Help system: *HelpType*, *HelpFile*, *HelpContext*, and *HelpKeyword*. *HelpFile* is supposed to contain the name of the file in which the control's help is located; if the help is located in an external Help system that does not care about file names (say, for example, the Man page system), then the property should be left blank.

The *HelpType* property contains an instance of an enumerated type which determines if the control's designer expects help to be provided via keyword-based Help or context-based Help; the other two properties are linked to it. If the *HelpType* is set to *htKeyword*, then the Help system expects the control to use keyword-based Help, and the Help system only looks at the contents of the *HelpKeyword* property. Conversely, if the *HelpType* is set to *htContext*, the Help system expects the control to use context-based Help and only looks at the contents of the *HelpContext* property.

In addition to the properties, controls expose a single method, *InvokeHelp*, which can be called to pass a request to the Help system. It takes no parameters and calls the methods in the global Application object, which correspond to the type of help the control supports.

Help messages are automatically invoked when F1 is pressed because the *KeyDown* method of *TWidgetControl* calls *InvokeHelp*.

Calling a Help system directly

For additional Help system functionality not provided by the VCL or CLX, *TApplication* provides a read-only property that allows direct access to the Help system. This property is an instance of an implementation of the interface *IHelpSystem*. *IHelpSystem* and *IHelpManager* are implemented by the same object, but one interface is used to allow the application to talk to the Help Manager, and one is used to allow the Help viewers to talk to the Help Manager.

Using IHelpSystem

IHelpSystem allows a VCL or CLX application to do three things:

- Provides path information to the Help Manager.
- Provides a new Help selector.
- Asks the Help Manager to display help.

Assigning a Help selector allows the Help Manager to delegate decision-making in cases where multiple external Help systems can provide help for the same keyword. For more information, see the section “Implementing *IHelpSelector*” on page 7-31.

IHelpSystem exports four procedures and one function to request the Help Manager to display help:

- *ShowHelp*
- *ShowContextHelp*
- *ShowTopicHelp*
- *ShowTableOfContents*
- *Hook*

Hook is intended entirely for WinHelp compatibility and should not be used in a CLX application; it allows processing of WM_HELP messages that cannot be mapped directly onto requests for keyword-based, context-based, or topic-based Help. The other methods each take two arguments: the keyword, context ID, or topic for which help is being requested, and the Help file in which it is expected that help can be found.

In general, unless you are asking for topic-based help, it is equally effective and more clear to pass help requests to the Help Manager through the *InvokeHelp* method of your control.

Customizing the IDE Help system

The C++Builder IDE supports multiple Help viewers in exactly the same way that a VCL or CLX application does: it delegates Help requests to the Help Manager, which forwards them to registered Help viewers. The IDE makes use of the same *WinHelpViewer* that the VCL uses.

To install a new Help viewer in the IDE, you do exactly what you would do in a VCL or CLX application, with one difference. You write an object that implements *ICustomHelpViewer* (and, if desired, *IExtendedHelpViewer*) to forward Help requests to the external viewer of your choice, and you register the *ICustomHelpViewer* with the IDE.

To register a custom Help viewer with the IDE:

- 1** Make sure that the unit implementing the Help viewer contains `HelpIntfs.cpp`.
- 2** Build the unit into a design-time package registered with the IDE, and build the package with runtime packages turned on. (This is necessary to ensure that the Help Manager instance used by the unit is the same as the Help Manager instance used by the IDE.)
- 3** Make sure that the Help viewer exists as a global instance within the unit.
- 4** In the initialization function blocked by `#pragma startup`, make sure that the instance is passed to the *RegisterHelpViewer* function.

Developing the application user interface

When you open C++Builder or create a new project, a blank form is displayed on the screen. You design your application's user interface (UI) by placing and arranging visual components, such as windows, menus, and dialog boxes, from the Component palette onto the form.

Once a visual component is on the form, you can adjust its position, size, and other design-time properties, and code its event handlers. C++Builder takes care of the underlying programming details.

The following sections describe some of the major interface tasks, such as working with forms, creating component templates, adding dialog boxes, and organizing actions for menus and toolbars.

Controlling application behavior

TApplication, *TScreen*, and *TForm* are the classes that form the backbone of all C++Builder applications by controlling the behavior of your project. The *TApplication* class forms the foundation of an application by providing properties and methods that encapsulate the behavior of a standard program. *TScreen* is used at runtime to keep track of forms and data modules that have been loaded as well as maintaining system-specific information such as screen resolution and available display fonts. Instances of the *TForm* class are the building blocks of your application's user interface. The windows and dialog boxes in your application are based on *TForm*.

Working at the application level

The global variable *Application*, of type *TApplication*, is in every VCL- or CLX-based application. *Application* encapsulates your application as well as providing many functions that occur in the background of the program. For instance, *Application* handles how you call a Help file from the menu of your program. Understanding how *TApplication* works is more important to a component writer than to developers of stand-alone applications, but you should set the options that *Application* handles in the Project | Options Application page when you create a project.

In addition, *Application* receives many events that apply to the application as a whole. For example, the *OnActivate* event lets you perform actions when the application first starts up, the *OnIdle* event lets you perform background processes when the application is not busy, the *OnMessage* event lets you intercept Windows messages (on Windows only), the *OnEvent* event lets you intercept events, and so on. Although you can't use the IDE to examine the properties and events of the global *Application* variable, another component, *TApplicationEvents*, intercepts the events and lets you supply event-handlers using the IDE.

Handling the screen

A global variable of type *TScreen* called *Screen* is created when you create a project. *Screen* encapsulates the state of the screen on which your application is running. Common tasks performed by *Screen* include specifying:

- The look of the cursor.
- The size of the window in which your application is running.
- A list of fonts available to the screen device.
- Multiple screen behavior (Windows only).

If your Windows application runs on multiple monitors, *Screen* maintains a list of monitors and their dimensions so that you can effectively manage the layout of your user interface.

If using CLX for cross-platform programming, the default behavior is that applications create a screen component based on information about the current screen device and assign it to *Screen*.

Setting up forms

TForm is the key class for creating GUI applications. When you open C++Builder displaying a default project or when you create a new project, a form appears on which you can begin your UI design.

Using the main form

The first form you create and save in a project becomes, by default, the project's main form, which is the first form created at runtime. As you add forms to your projects,

you might decide to designate a different form as your application's main form. Also, specifying a form as the main form is an easy way to test it at runtime, because unless you change the form creation order, the main form is the first form displayed in the running application.

To change the project main form:

- 1 Choose Project | Options and select the Forms page.
- 2 In the Main Form combo box, select the form you want to use as the project's main form and choose OK.

Now if you run the application, the form you selected as the main form is displayed.

Hiding the main form

You can prevent the main form from displaying when your application first starts up. To do so, you must use the global *Application* variable (described in "Working at the application level," on page 8-2).

To hide the main form at startup:

- 1 Choose Project | View Source to display the main project file.
- 2 Add the following line after the call to `Application->CreateForm()` and before the call to `Application->Run()`.

```
Application->ShowMainForm = false;
```

- 3 Using the Object Inspector, set the *Visible* property of your main form to **false**.

Adding forms

To add a form to your project, select File | New | Form. You can see all your project's forms and their associated units listed in the Project Manager (View | Project Manager) and you can display a list of the forms alone by choosing View | Forms.

Linking forms

Adding a form to a project adds a reference to it in the project file, but not to any other units in the project. Before you can write code that references the new form, you need to add a reference to it in the referencing forms' unit files. This is called *form linking*.

A common reason to link forms is to provide access to the components in that form. For example, you'll often use form linking to enable a form that contains data-aware components to connect to the data-access components in a data module.

To link a form to another form,

- 1 Select the form that needs to refer to another.
- 2 Choose File | Include Unit Hdr.
- 3 Select the name of the form unit for the form to be referenced.
- 4 Choose OK.

Linking a form to another just means that one form unit contains the header for the other's form unit, meaning that the linked form and its components are now in scope for the linking form.

Managing layout

At its simplest, you control the layout of your user interface by where you place controls in your forms. The placement choices you make are reflected in the control's *Top*, *Left*, *Width*, and *Height* properties. You can change these values at runtime to change the position and size of the controls in your forms.

Controls have a number of other properties, however, that allow them to automatically adjust to their contents or containers. This allows you to lay out your forms so that the pieces fit together into a unified whole.

Two properties affect how a control is positioned and sized in relation to its parent. The *Align* property lets you force a control to fit perfectly within its parent along a specific edge or filling up the entire client area after any other controls have been aligned. When the parent is resized, the controls aligned to it are automatically resized and remain positioned so that they fit against a particular edge.

If you want to keep a control positioned relative to a particular edge of its parent, but don't want it to necessarily touch that edge or be resized so that it always runs along the entire edge, you can use the *Anchors* property.

If you want to ensure that a control does not grow too big or too small, you can use the *Constraints* property. *Constraints* lets you specify the control's maximum height, minimum height, maximum width, and minimum width. Set these to limit the size (in pixels) of the control's height and width. For example, by setting the *MinWidth* and *MinHeight* of the constraints on a container object, you can ensure that child objects are always visible.

The value of *Constraints* propagates through the parent/child hierarchy so that an object's size can be constrained because it contains aligned children that have size constraints. *Constraints* can also prevent a control from being scaled in a particular dimension when its *ChangeScale* method is called.

TControl introduces a protected event, *OnConstrainedResize*, of type *TConstrainedResizeEvent*:

```
void __fastcall (__closure *TConstrainedResizeEvent)(System::TObject* Sender, int &MinWidth,
int &MinHeight, int &MaxWidth, int &MaxHeight);
```

This event allows you to override the size constraints when an attempt is made to resize the control. The values of the constraints are passed as *var* parameters which can be changed inside the event handler. *OnConstrainedResize* is published for container objects (*TForm*, *TScrollBar*, *TControlBar*, and *TPanel*). In addition, component writers can use or publish this event for any descendant of *TControl*.

Controls that have contents that can change in size have an *AutoSize* property that causes the control to adjust its size to its font or contained objects.

Using forms

When you create a form in C++Builder from the IDE, C++Builder automatically creates the form in memory by including code in the main entry point of your application function. Usually, this is the desired behavior and you don't have to do anything to change it. That is, the main window persists through the duration of your program, so you would likely not change the default C++Builder behavior when creating the form for your main window.

However, you may not want all your application's forms in memory for the duration of the program execution. That is, if you do not want all your application's dialogs in memory at once, you can create the dialogs dynamically when you want them to appear.

Forms can be modal or modeless. Modal forms are forms with which the user must interact before switching to another form (for example, a dialog box requiring user input). Modeless forms are windows that are displayed until they are either obscured by another window or until they are closed or minimized by the user.

Controlling when forms reside in memory

By default, C++Builder automatically creates the application's main form in memory by including the following code in the application's main entry point:

```
Application ->CreateForm(__classid(TForm1), &Form1);
```

This function creates a global variable with the same name as the form. So, every form in an application has an associated global variable. This variable is a pointer to an instance of the form's class and is used to reference the form while the application is running. Any source code (.cpp) file that includes the form's header (.h) file can access the form via this variable.

Because the form is added to the application's main entry point, the form appears when the program is invoked and it exists in memory for the duration of the application.

Displaying an auto-created form

If you choose to create a form at startup, and do not want it displayed until sometime later during program execution, the form's event handler uses the *ShowModal* method to display the form that is already loaded in memory:

```
void __fastcall TMainMForm::FirstButtonClick(TObject *Sender)
{
    ResultsForm->ShowModal();
}
```

In this case, since the form is already in memory, there is no need to create another instance or destroy that instance.

Creating forms dynamically

You may not always want all your application's forms in memory at once. To reduce the amount of memory required at load time, you may want to create some forms only when you need to use them. For example, a dialog box needs to be in memory only during the time a user interacts with it.

To create a form at a different stage during execution using the IDE, you:

- 1 Select the File | New | Form from the main menu to display the new form.
- 2 Remove the form from the Auto-create forms list of the Project | Options | Forms page.

This removes the form's invocation. As an alternative, you can manually remove the following line from program's main entry point:

```
Application->CreateForm(__classid(TResultsForm), &ResultsForm);
```

- 3 Invoke the form when desired by using the form's *Show* method, if the form is modeless, or *ShowModal* method, if the form is modal.

An event handler for the main form must create an instance of the result form and destroy it. One way to invoke the result form is to use the global variable as follows. Note that *ResultsForm* is a modal form so the handler uses the *ShowModal* method.

```
void __fastcall TMainMForm::FirstButtonClick(TObject *Sender)
{
    ResultsForm = new TResultsForm(this);
    ResultsForm->ShowModal();
    delete ResultsForm;
}
```

The event handler in the example deletes the form after it is closed, so the form would need to be recreated using **new** if you needed to use *ResultsForm* elsewhere in the application. If the form were displayed using *Show* you could not delete the form within the event handler because *Show* returns while the form is still open.

Note If you create a form using the **new** operator, be sure to check that the form is not in the Auto-create forms list on the Project Options | Forms page. Specifically, if you create the new form without deleting the form of the same name from the list, C++Builder creates the form at startup and this event-handler creates a new instance of the form, overwriting the reference to the auto-created instance. The auto-created instance still exists, but the application can no longer access it. After the event-handler terminates, the global variable no longer points to a valid form. Any attempt to dereference the global variable will likely crash the application.

Creating modeless forms such as windows

You must guarantee that reference variables for modeless forms exist for as long as the form is in use. This means that these variables should have global scope. In most cases, you use the global reference variable that was created when you made the form (the variable name that matches the name property of the form). If your application requires additional instances of the form, declare separate global variables (of type pointer to the form class) for each instance.

Creating a form instance using a local variable

A safer way to create a unique instance of a *modal form* is to use a local variable in the event handler as a reference to a new instance. If a local variable is used, it does not matter whether *ResultsForm* is auto-created or not. The code in the event handler makes no reference to the global form variable. For example:

```
void __fastcall TMainMForm::FirstButtonClick(TObject *Sender)
{
    TResultsForm *rf = new TResultsForm(this); // rf is local form instance
    rf->ShowModal();
    delete rf; // form safely destroyed
}
```

Notice how the global instance of the form is never used in this version of the event handler.

Typically, applications use the global instances of forms. However, if you need a new instance of a modal form, and you use that form in a limited, discrete section of the application, such as a single function, a local instance is usually the safest and most efficient way of working with the form.

Of course, you cannot use local variables in event handlers for modeless forms because they must have global scope to ensure that the forms exist for as long as the form is in use. *Show* returns as soon as the form opens, so if you used a local variable, the local variable would go out of scope immediately.

Passing additional arguments to forms

Typically, you create forms for your application from within the IDE. When created this way, the forms have a constructor that takes one argument, *Owner*, which is a pointer to the owner of the form being created. (The owner is the calling application object or form object.) *Owner* can be NULL.

To pass additional arguments to a form, create a separate constructor and instantiate the form using the **new** operator. The example form class below shows an additional constructor, with the extra argument *whichButton*. This new constructor is added to the form class manually.

```
class TResultsForm : public TForm
{
    __published: // IDE-managed Components
        TLabel *ResultsLabel;
        TButton *OKButton;
        void __fastcall OKButtonClick(TObject *Sender);
private: // User declarations
public: // User declarations
    virtual __fastcall TResultsForm(TComponent* Owner);
    virtual __fastcall TResultsForm(int whichButton, TComponent* Owner);
};
```

Here's the manually coded constructor that passes the additional argument, *whichButton*. This constructor uses the *whichButton* parameter to set the *Caption* property of a *Label* control on the form.

```

void __fastcall TResultsForm::TResultsForm(int whichButton, TComponent* Owner)
: TForm(Owner)
{
    switch (whichButton) {
        case 1:
            ResultsLabel->Caption = "You picked the first button!";
            break;
        case 2:
            ResultsLabel->Caption = "You picked the second button!";
            break;
        case 3:
            ResultsLabel->Caption = "You picked the third button!";
    }
}

```

When creating an instance of a form with multiple constructors, you can select the constructor that best suits your purpose. For example, the following *OnClick* handler for a button on a form calls creates an instance of *TResultsForm* that uses the extra parameter:

```

void __fastcall TMainMForm::SecondButtonClick(TObject *Sender)
{
    TResultsForm *rf = new TResultsForm(2, this);
    rf->ShowModal();
    delete rf;
}

```

Retrieving data from forms

Most real-world applications consist of several forms. Often, information needs to be passed between these forms. Information can be passed to a form by means of parameters to the receiving form's constructor, or by assigning values to the form's properties. The way you get information from a form depends on whether the form is modal or modeless.

Retrieving data from modeless forms

You can easily extract information from modeless forms by calling public member functions of the form or by querying properties of the form. For example, assume an application contains a modeless form called *ColorForm* that contains a listbox called *ColorListBox* with a list of colors ("Red", "Green", "Blue", and so on). The selected color name string in *ColorListBox* is automatically stored in a property called *CurrentColor* each time a user selects a new color. The class declaration for the form is as follows:

```

class TColorForm : public TForm
{
    __published:    // IDE-managed Components
        TListBox *ColorListBox;
        void __fastcall ColorListBoxClick(TObject *Sender);
    private:        // User declarations
        String getColor();
        void setColor(String);
}

```

```

    String curColor;
public:    // User declarations
    virtual __fastcall TColorForm(TComponent* Owner);
    __property String CurrentColor = {read=getColor, write=setColor};
};

```

The *OnClick* event handler for the listbox, *ColorListBoxClick*, sets the value of the *CurrentColor* property each time a new item in the listbox is selected. The event handler gets the string from the listbox containing the color name and assigns it to *CurrentColor*. The *CurrentColor* property uses the setter function, *setColor*, to store the actual value for the property in the private data member *curColor*:

```

void __fastcall TColorForm::ColorListBoxClick(TObject *Sender)
{
    int index = ColorListBox->ItemIndex;
    if (index >= 0) { // make sure a color is selected
        CurrentColor = ColorListBox->Items->Strings[index];
    }
    else // no color selected
        CurrentColor = "";
}
//-----
void TColorForm::setColor(String s)
{
    curColor = s;
}

```

Now suppose that another form within the application, called *ResultsForm*, needs to find out which color is currently selected on *ColorForm* whenever a button (called *UpdateButton*) on *ResultsForm* is clicked. The *OnClick* event handler for *UpdateButton* might look like this:

```

void __fastcall TResultsForm::UpdateButtonClick(TObject *Sender)
{
    if (ColorForm) { // verify ColorForm exists
        String s = ColorForm->CurrentColor;
        // do something with the color name string
    }
}

```

The event handler first verifies that *ColorForm* exists by checking whether the point is NULL. It then gets the value of *ColorForm*'s *CurrentColor* property. The query of *CurrentColor* calls its getter function *getColor* which is shown here:

```

String TColorForm::getColor()
{
    return curColor;
}

```

Alternatively, if *ColorForm*'s *getColor* function were public, another form could get the current color without using the *CurrentColor* property (for example, `String s = ColorForm->getColor();`). In fact, there's nothing to prevent another form from getting the *ColorForm*'s currently selected color by checking the listbox selection directly:

```

String s = ColorListBox->Items->Strings[ColorListBox->ItemIndex];

```

However, using a property makes the interface to *ColorForm* very straightforward and simple. All a form needs to know about *ColorForm* is to check the value of *CurrentColor*.

Retrieving data from modal forms

Just like modeless forms, modal forms often contain information needed by other forms. The most common example is when form A launches modal form B. When form B is closed, form A needs to know what the user did with form B to decide how to proceed with the processing of form A. If form B is still in memory, it can be queried through properties or member functions just as in the modeless forms example above. But how do you handle situations where form B is deleted from memory upon closing? Since a form does not have an explicit return value, you must preserve important information from the form before it is destroyed.

To illustrate, consider a modified version of the *ColorForm* form that is designed to be a modal form. The class declaration is as follows:

```
class TColorForm : public TForm
{
    __published:    // IDE-managed Components
        TListBox *ColorListBox;
        TButton *SelectButton;
        TButton *CancelButton;
        void __fastcall CancelButtonClick(TObject *Sender);
        void __fastcall SelectButtonClick(TObject *Sender);
    private:        // User declarations
        String* curColor;
    public:         // User declarations
        virtual __fastcall TColorForm(TComponent* Owner);
        virtual __fastcall TColorForm(String* s, TComponent* Owner);
};
```

The form has a listbox called *ColorListBox* with a list of names of colors. When pressed, the button called *SelectButton* makes note of the currently selected color name in *ColorListBox* then closes the form. *CancelButton* is a button that simply closes the form.

Note that a user-defined constructor was added to the class that takes a *String** argument. Presumably, this *String** points to a string that the form launching *ColorForm* knows about. The implementation of this constructor is as follows:

```
void __fastcall TColorForm::TColorForm(String* s, TComponent* Owner)
: TForm(Owner)
{
    curColor = s;
    *curColor = "";
}
```

The constructor saves the pointer to a private data member *curColor* and initializes the string to an empty string.

Note To use the above user-defined constructor, the form must be explicitly created. It cannot be auto-created when the application is started. For details, see “Controlling when forms reside in memory” on page 8-5.

In the application, the user selects a color from the listbox and presses *SelectButton* to save the choice and close the form. The *OnClick* event handler for *SelectButton* might look like this:

```
void __fastcall TColorForm::SelectButtonClick(TObject *Sender)
{
    int index = ColorListBox->ItemIndex;
    if (index >= 0)
        *curColor = ColorListBox->Items->Strings[index];
    Close();
}
```

Notice that the event handler stores the selected color name in the string address that was passed to the constructor.

To use *ColorForm* effectively, the calling form must pass the constructor a pointer to an existing string. For example, assume *ColorForm* was instantiated by a form called *ResultsForm* in response to a button called *UpdateButton* on *ResultsForm* being clicked. The event handler would look as follows:

```
void __fastcall TResultsForm::UpdateButtonClick(TObject *Sender)
{
    String s;
    GetColor(&s);
    if (s != "") {
        // do something with the color name string
    }
    else {
        // do something else because no color was picked
    }
}

//-----
void TResultsForm::GetColor(String *s)
{
    ColorForm = new TColorForm(s, this);
    ColorForm->ShowModal();
    delete ColorForm;
    ColorForm = 0; // NULL the pointer
}
```

UpdateButtonClick creates a String called *s*. The address of *s* is passed to the *GetColor* function which creates *ColorForm*, passing the pointer to *s* as an argument to the constructor. As soon as *ColorForm* is closed it is deleted, but the color name that was selected is still preserved in *s*, assuming that a color was selected. Otherwise, *s* contains an empty string which is a clear indication that the user exited *ColorForm* without selecting a color.

This example uses one string variable to hold information from the modal form. Of course, more complex objects can be used depending on the need. Keep in mind that you should always provide a way to let the calling form know if the modal form was closed without making any changes or selections (such as having *s* default to an empty string).

Reusing components and groups of components

C++Builder offers several ways to save and reuse work you've done with components:

- *Component templates* provide a simple, quick way of configuring and saving groups of components. See "Creating and using component templates" on page 8-12.
- You can save forms, data modules, and projects in the *Repository*. This gives you a central database of reusable elements and lets you use form inheritance to propagate changes.
- You can save *frames* on the Component palette or in the repository. Frames use form inheritance and can be embedded into forms or other frames. See "Working with frames" on page 8-13.
- Creating a *custom component* is the most complicated way of reusing code, but it offers the greatest flexibility. See Chapter 45, "Overview of component creation."

Creating and using component templates

You can create templates that are made up of one or more components. After arranging components on a form, setting their properties, and writing code for them, save them as a *component template*. Later, by selecting the template from the Component palette, you can place the preconfigured components on a form in a single step; all associated properties and event-handling code are added to your project at the same time.

Once you place a template on a form, you can reposition the components independently, reset their properties, and create or modify event handlers for them just as if you had placed each component in a separate operation.

To create a component template,

- 1 Place and arrange components on a form. In the Object Inspector, set their properties and events as desired.
- 2 Select the components. The easiest way to select several components is to drag the mouse over all of them. Gray handles appear at the corners of each selected component.
- 3 Choose Component | Create Component Template.
- 4 Specify a name for the component template in the Component Template Information edit box. The default proposal is the component type of the first component selected in step 2 followed by the word "Template." For example, if you select a label and then an edit box, the proposed name will be "TLabelTemplate." You can change this name, but be careful not to duplicate existing component names.
- 5 In the Palette page edit box, specify the Component palette page where you want the template to reside. If you specify a page that does not exist, a new page is created when you save the template.

- 6 Next to Palette Icon, select a bitmap to represent the template on the palette. The default proposal will be the bitmap used by the component type of the first component selected in step 2. To browse for other bitmaps, click Change. The bitmap you choose must be no larger than 24 pixels by 24 pixels.
- 7 Click OK.

To remove templates from the Component palette, choose Component | Configure Palette.

Working with frames

A frame (*TFrame*), like a form, is a container for other components. It uses the same ownership mechanism as forms for automatic instantiation and destruction of the components on it, and the same parent-child relationships for synchronization of component properties.

In some ways, however, a frame is more like a customized component than a form. Frames can be saved on the Component palette for easy reuse, and they can be nested within forms, other frames, or other container objects. After a frame is created and saved, it continues to function as a unit and to inherit changes from the components (including other frames) it contains. When a frame is embedded in another frame or form, it continues to inherit changes made to the frame from which it derives.

Frames are useful to organize groups of controls that are used in multiple places in your application. For example, if you have a bitmap that is used on multiple forms, you can put it in a frame and only one copy of that bitmap is included in the resources of your application. You could also describe a set of edit fields that are intended to edit a table with a frame and use that whenever you want to enter data into the table.

Creating frames

To create an empty frame, choose File | New | Frame, or choose File | New | Other and double-click Frame. You can then drop components (including other frames) onto your new frame.

It is usually best—though not necessary—to save frames as part of a project. If you want to create a project that contains only frames and no forms, choose File | New | Application, close the new form and unit without saving them, then choose File | New | Frame and save the project.

Note When you save frames, avoid using the default names *Unit1*, *Project1*, and so forth, since these are likely to cause conflicts when you try to use the frames later.

At design time, you can display any frame included in the current project by choosing View | Forms and selecting a frame. As with forms and data modules, you can toggle between the Form Designer and the frame's form file by right-clicking and choosing View as Form or View as Text.

Adding frames to the Component palette

Frames are added to the Component palette as component templates. To add a frame to the Component palette, open the frame in the Form Designer (you cannot use a frame embedded in another component for this purpose), right-click the frame, and choose Add to Palette. When the Component Template Information dialog opens, select a name, palette page, and icon for the new template.

Using and modifying frames

To use a frame in an application, you must place it, directly or indirectly, on a form. You can add frames directly to forms, to other frames, or to other container objects such as panels and scroll boxes.

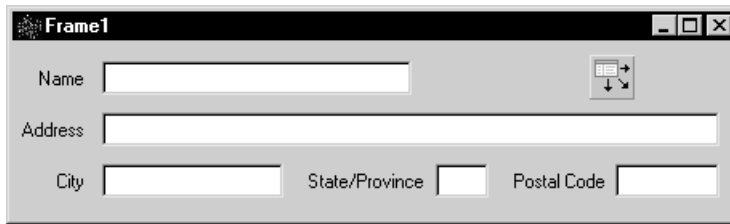
The Form Designer provides two ways to add a frame to an application:

- Select a frame from the Component palette and drop it onto a form, another frame, or another container object. If necessary, the Form Designer asks for permission to include the frame's unit file in your project.
- Select *Frames* from the Standard page of the Component palette and click on a form or another frame. A dialog appears with a list of frames that are already included in your project; select one and click OK.

When you drop a frame onto a form or other container, C++Builder declares a new class that descends from the frame you selected. (Similarly, when you add a new form to a project, C++Builder declares a new class that descends from *TForm*.) This means that changes made later to the original (ancestor) frame propagate to the embedded frame, but changes to the embedded frame do not propagate backward to the ancestor.

Suppose, for example, that you wanted to assemble a group of data-access components and data-aware controls for repeated use, perhaps in more than one application. One way to accomplish this would be to collect the components into a component template; but if you started to use the template and later changed your mind about the arrangement of the controls, you would have to go back and manually alter each project where the template was placed.

If, on the other hand, you put your database components into a frame, later changes would need to be made in only one place; changes to an original frame automatically propagate to its embedded descendants when your projects are recompiled. At the same time, you are free to modify any embedded frame without affecting the original frame or other embedded descendants of it. The only limitation on modifying embedded frames is that you cannot add components to them.

Figure 8.1 A frame with data-aware controls and a data source component

In addition to simplifying maintenance, frames can help you to use resources more efficiently. For example, to use a bitmap or other graphic in an application, you might load the graphic into the *Picture* property of a *TImage* control. If, however, you use the same graphic repeatedly in one application, each *Image* object you place on a form will result in another copy of the graphic being added to the form's resource file. (This is true even if you set *TImage::Picture* once and save the *Image* control as a component template.) A better solution is to drop the *Image* object onto a frame, load your graphic into it, then use the frame where you want the graphic to appear. This results in smaller form files and has the added advantage of letting you change the graphic everywhere it occurs simply by modifying the *Image* on the original frame.

Sharing frames

You can share a frame with other developers in two ways:

- Add the frame to the Object Repository.
- Distribute the frame's unit (.cpp and .h) and form (.dfm or .xfrm) files.

To add a frame to the Repository, open any project that includes the frame, right-click in the Form Designer, and choose Add to Repository. For more information, see "Using the Object Repository" on page 7-24.

If you send a frame's unit and form files to other developers, they can open them and add them to the Component palette. If the frame has other frames embedded in it, they will have to open it as part of a project.

Developing dialog boxes

The dialog box components on the Dialogs page of the Component palette make various dialog boxes available to your applications. These dialog boxes provide applications with a familiar, consistent interface that enables the user to perform common file operations such as opening, saving, and printing files. Dialog boxes display and/or obtain data.

Each dialog box opens when its *Execute* method is called. *Execute* returns a Boolean value: if the user chooses OK to accept any changes made in the dialog box, *Execute* returns **true**; if the user chooses Cancel to escape from the dialog box without making or saving changes, *Execute* returns **false**.

- CLX** If you are developing cross-platform applications, you can use the dialogs provided with CLX in the QDialogs unit. For operating systems that have native dialog box types for common tasks, such as for opening or saving a file or for changing font or color, you can use the *UseNativeDialog* property. Set *UseNativeDialog* to **true** if your application will run in such an environment, and if you want it to use the native dialogs instead of the Qt dialogs.

Using open dialog boxes

One of the commonly used dialog box components is *TOpenDialog*. This component is usually invoked by a New or Open menu item under the File option on the main menu bar of a form. The dialog box contains controls that let you select groups of files using a wildcard character and navigate through directories.

The *TOpenDialog* component makes an Open dialog box available to your application. The purpose of this dialog box is to let a user specify a file to open. You use the *Execute* method to display the dialog box.

When the user chooses OK in the dialog box, the user's file is stored in the *TOpenDialog FileName* property, which you can then process as you want.

The following code snippet can be placed in an *Action* and linked to the *Action* property of a *TMainMenu* subitem or be placed in the subitem's *OnClick* event:

```
if(OpenDialog1->Execute()){  
    filename = OpenDialog1->FileName;  
};
```

This code will show the dialog box and if the user presses the OK button, it will copy the name of the file into a previously declared *AnsiString* variable named `filename`.

Organizing actions for toolbars and menus

C++Builder provides several features that simplify the work of creating, customizing, and maintaining menus and toolbars. These features allow you to organize lists of actions that users of your application can initiate by pressing a button on a toolbar, choosing a command on a menu, or pointing and clicking on an icon.

Often a set of actions is used in more than one user interface element. For example, the Cut, Copy, and Paste commands often appear on both an Edit menu and on a toolbar. You only need to add the action once to use it in multiple UI elements in your application.

On the Windows platform, tools are provided to make it easy to define and group actions, create different layouts, and customize menus at design time or runtime. These tools are known collectively as ActionBand tools, and the menus and toolbars

you create with them are known as action bands. In general, you can create an ActionBand user interface as follows:

- Build the action list to create a set of actions that will be available for your application (use the Action Manager, *TActionManager*)
- Add the user interface elements to the application (use ActionBand components such as *TActionMainMenuBar* and *TActionToolBar*)
- Drag-and-drop actions from the Action Manager onto the user interface elements

The following table defines the terminology related to setting up menus and toolbars:

Table 8.1 Action setup terminology

| Term | Definition |
|-----------------|---|
| Action | A response to something a user does, such as clicking a menu item. Many standard actions that are frequently required are provided for you to use in your applications as is. For example, file operations such as File Open, File SaveAs, File Run, and File Exit are included along with many others for editing, formatting, searches, help, dialogs, and window actions. You can also program custom actions and access them using action lists and the Action Manager. |
| Action band | A container for a set of actions associated with a customizable menu or toolbar. The ActionBand components for main menus and toolbars (<i>TActionMainMenuBar</i> and <i>TActionToolBar</i>) are examples of action bands. |
| Action category | Lets you group actions and drop them as a group onto a menu or toolbar. For example, one of the standard action categories is Search which includes Find, FindFirst, FindNext, and Replace actions all at once. |
| Action classes | Classes that perform the actions used in your application. All of the standard actions are defined in action classes such as <i>TEditCopy</i> , <i>TEditCut</i> , and <i>TEditUndo</i> . You can use these classes by dragging and dropping them from the Customize dialog onto an action band. |
| Action client | Most often represents a menu item or a button that receives a notification to initiate an action. When the client receives a user command (such as a mouse click), it initiates an associated action. |
| Action list | Maintains a list of actions that your application can take in response to something a user does. |
| Action Manager | Groups and organizes logical sets of actions that can be reused on ActionBand components. See <i>TActionManager</i> . |
| Menu | Lists commands that the user of the application can execute by clicking on them. You can create menus by using the ActionBand menu class <i>TActionMainMenuBar</i> , or by using cross-platform components such as <i>TMainMenu</i> or <i>TPopupMenu</i> . |
| Target | Represents the item an action does something to. The target is usually a control, such as a memo or a data control. Not all actions require a target. For example, the standard help actions ignore the target and simply launch the help system. |
| Toolbar | Displays a visible row of button icons which, when clicked, cause the program to perform some action, such as printing the current document. You can create toolbars by using the ActionBand toolbar component <i>TActionToolBar</i> , or by using the cross-platform component <i>TToolBar</i> . |

If you are doing cross-platform development, refer to “Using action lists” on page 8-23.

What is an action?

As you are developing your application, you can create a set of actions that you can use on various UI elements. You can organize them into categories that can be dropped onto a menu as a set (for example, Cut, Copy, and Paste) or one at a time (for example, Tools | Customize).

An action corresponds to one or more elements of the user interface, such as menu commands or toolbar buttons. Actions serve two functions: (1) they represent properties common to the user interface elements, such as whether a control is enabled or checked, and (2) they respond when a control fires, for example, when the application user clicks a button or chooses a menu item. You can create a repertoire of actions that are available to your application through menus, through buttons, through toolbars, context menus, and so on.

Actions are associated with other components:

- **Clients:** One or more clients use the action. The client most often represents a menu item or a button (for example, *TToolButton*, *TSpeedButton*, *TMenuItem*, *TButton*, *TCheckBox*, *TRadioButton*, and so on). Actions also reside on *ActionBand* components such as *TActionMainMenuBar* and *TActionToolBar*. When the client receives a user command (such as a mouse click), it initiates an associated action. Typically, a client's *OnClick* event is associated with its action's *OnExecute* event.
- **Target:** The action acts on the target. The target is usually a control, such as a memo or a data control. Component writers can create actions specific to the needs of the controls they design and use, and then package those units to create more modular applications. Not all actions use a target. For example, the standard help actions ignore the target and simply launch the help system.

A target can also be a component. For example, data controls change the target to an associated dataset.

The client influences the action—the action responds when a client fires the action. The action also influences the client—action properties dynamically update the client properties. For example, if at runtime an action is disabled (by setting its *Enabled* property to **false**), every client of that action is disabled, appearing grayed.

You can add, delete, and rearrange actions using the Action Manager or the Action List editor (displayed by double-clicking an action list object, *TActionList*). These actions are later connected to client controls.

Setting up action bands

Because actions do not maintain any “layout” (either appearance or positional) information, C++Builder provides action bands which are capable of storing this data. Action bands provide a mechanism that allows you to specify layout

information and a set of controls. You can render actions as UI elements such as toolbars and menus.

You organize sets of actions using the Action Manager (*TActionManager*). You can use standard actions provided or create new actions of your own.

You then create the action bands:

- Use *TActionMainMenuBar* to create a main menu.
- Use *TActionToolBar* to create a toolbar.

The action bands act as containers that hold and render sets of actions. You can drag and drop items from the Action Manager editor onto the action band at design time. At runtime, application users can also customize the application's menus or toolbars using a dialog box similar to the Action Manager editor.

Creating toolbars and menus

Note This section describes the recommended method for creating menus and toolbars in Windows applications. For cross-platform development, you need to use *TToolBar* and the menu components, such as *TMainMenu*, organizing them using action lists (*TActionList*). See "Setting up action lists" on page 8-23.

You use the Action Manager to automatically generate toolbars and main menus based on the actions contained in your application. The Action Manager manages standard actions and any custom actions that you have written. You then create UI elements based on these actions and use action bands to render the actions items as either menu items or as buttons on a toolbar.

The general procedure for creating menus, toolbars, and other action bands involves these steps:

- Drop an Action Manager onto a form.
- Add actions to the Action Manager, which organizes them into appropriate action lists.
- Create the action bands (that is, the menu or the toolbar) for the user interface.
- Drag and drop the actions into the application interface.

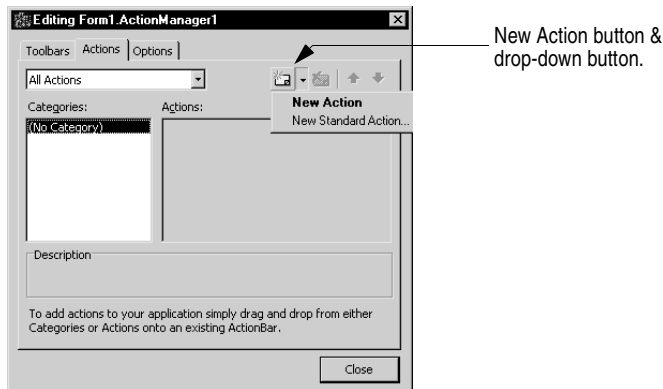
The following procedure explains these steps in more detail.

To create menus and toolbars using action bands:

- 1 From the Additional page of the Component palette, drop an Action Manager component (*TActionManager*) onto the form where you want to create the toolbar or menu.
- 2 If you want images on the menu or toolbar, drop an ImageList component from the Win32 page of the Component palette onto a form. (You need to add the images you want to use to the ImageList or use the one provided.)

- 3 From the Additional page of the Component palette, drop one or more of the following action bands onto the form:
 - *TActionMainMenuBar* (for designing main menus)
 - *TActionToolBar* (for designing toolbars)
- 4 Connect the ImageList to the Action Manager: with focus on the Action Manager and in the Object Inspector, select the name of the ImageList from the Images property.
- 5 Add actions to the Action Manager editor's action pane:
 - Double-click the Action Manager to display the Action Manager editor.
 - Click the drop-down arrow next to the New Action button (the leftmost button at the top right corner of the Actions tab, as shown in Figure 8.2) and select New Action or New Standard Action. A tree view is displayed. Add one or more actions or categories of actions to the Action Manager's actions pane. The Action Manager adds the actions to its action lists.

Figure 8.2 Action Manager editor



- 6 Drag and drop single actions or categories of actions from the Action Manager editor onto the menu or toolbar you are designing.

To add user-defined actions, create a new *TAction* by pressing the New Action button and writing an event handler that defines how it will respond when fired. See “What happens when an action fires” on page 8-24 for details. Once you’ve defined the actions, you can drag and drop them onto menus or toolbars like the standard actions.

Adding color, patterns, or pictures to menus, buttons, and toolbars

You can use the *Background* and *BackgroundLayout* properties to specify a color, pattern, or bitmap to use on a menu item or button. These properties also let you set up a banner the runs up the left or right side of a menu.

You assign backgrounds and layouts to subitems from their action client objects. If you want to set the background of the items in a menu, in the form designer click on the menu item that contains the items. For example, selecting File lets you change the

background of items appearing on the File menu. You can assign a color, pattern, or bitmap in the *Background* property in the Object Inspector.

Use the *BackgroundLayout* property to describe how to place the background on the element. Colors or images can be placed behind the caption normally, stretched to fit the item area, or tiled in small squares to cover the area.

Items with normal (blNormal), stretched (blStretch), or tiled (blTile) backgrounds are rendered with a transparent background. If you create a banner, the full image is placed on the left (blLeftBanner) or the right (blRightBanner) of the item. You need to make sure it is the correct size because it is not stretched or shrunk to fit.

To change the background of an action band (that is, on a main menu or toolbar), select the action band and choose the *TActionClientBar* through the action band collection editor. You can set *Background* and *BackgroundLayout* properties to specify a color, pattern, or bitmap to use on the entire toolbar or menu.

Adding icons to menus and toolbars

You can add icons next to menu items or replace captions on toolbars with icons. You organize bitmaps or icons using an *ImageList* component.

- 1 Drop an *ImageList* component from the Win32 page of the Component palette onto a form.
- 2 Add the images you want to use to the image list: Double-click the *ImageList* icon. Click Add and navigate to the images you want to use and click OK when done. Some sample images are included in Program Files\Common Files\Borland Shared\Images. (The buttons images include two views of each for active and inactive buttons.)
- 3 From the Additional page of the Component palette, drop one or more of the following action bands onto the form:
 - *TActionMainMenuBar* (for designing main menus)
 - *TActionToolBar* (for designing toolbars)
- 4 Connect the image list to the Action Manager. First, set the focus on the Action Manager. Next, in the Object Inspector, select the name of the image list from the *Images* property, such as *ImageList1*.
- 5 Use the Action Manager editor to add actions to the Action Manager. You can associate an image with an action by setting its *ImageIndex* property to its number in the image list.
- 6 Drag and drop single actions or categories of actions from the Action Manager editor onto the menu or toolbar.
- 7 For toolbars where you only want to display the icon and no caption: select the Toolbar action band and double-click its *Items* property. In the collection editor, you can select one or more items and set their *Caption* properties.
- 8 The images automatically appear on the menu or toolbar.

Creating toolbars and menus that users can customize

You can use action bands with the Action Manager to create customizable toolbars and menus. At runtime, users of your application can customize the toolbars and menus (action bands) in the application user interface using a customization dialog similar to the Action Manager editor.

To allow the user of your application to customize an action band in your application:

- 1 Drop an Action Manager component onto a form.
- 2 Drop your action band components (*TActionMainMenuBar*, *TActionToolBar*).
- 3 Double-click the Action Manager to display the Action Manager editor:
 - Add the actions you want to use in your application. Also add the Customize action, which appears at the bottom of the standard actions list.
 - Drop a *TCustomizeDlg* component from the Additional tab onto the form, and connect it to the Action Manager using its *ActionManager* property. You specify a filename for where to stream customizations made by users.
 - Drag and drop the actions onto the action band components. (Make sure you add the Customize action to the toolbar or menu.)
- 4 Complete your application.

When you compile and run the application, users can access a Customize command that displays a customization dialog box similar to the Action Manager editor. They can drag and drop menu items and create toolbars using the same actions you supplied in the Action Manager.

Hiding unused items and categories in action bands

One benefit of using ActionBands is that unused items and categories can be hidden from the user. Over time, the action bands become customized for the application users, showing only the items that they use and hiding the rest from view. Hidden items can become visible again when the user presses a drop-down button. Also, the user can restore the visibility of all action band items by resetting the usage statistics from the customization dialog. Item hiding is the default behavior of action bands, but that behavior can be changed to prevent hiding of individual items, all the items in a particular collection (like the File menu), or all of the items in a given action band.

The action manager keeps track of the number of times an action has been called by the user, which is stored in the associated *TActionClientItem*'s *UsageCount* field. The action manager also records the number of times the application has been run, which we shall call the session number, as well as the session number of the last time an action was used. The value of *UsageCount* is used to look up the maximum number of sessions the item can go unused before it becomes hidden, which is then compared with the difference between the current session number and the session number of the last use of the item. If that difference is greater than the number determined in

PrioritySchedule, the item is hidden. The default values of *PrioritySchedule* are shown in the table below:

Table 8.2 Default values of the action manager's *PrioritySchedule* property

| Number of sessions in which an action band item was used | Number of sessions an item will remain unhidden after its last use |
|--|--|
| 0, 1 | 3 |
| 2 | 6 |
| 3 | 9 |
| 4, 5 | 12 |
| 6-8 | 17 |
| 9-13 | 23 |
| 14-24 | 29 |
| 25 or more | 31 |

It is possible to disable item hiding at design time. To prevent a specific action (and all the collections containing it) from becoming hidden, find its *TActionClientItem* object and set its *UsageCount* to -1. To prevent hiding for an entire collection of items, such as the File menu or even the main menu bar, find the *TActionClients* object associated with the collection and set its *HideUnused* property to **false**.

Using action lists

Note The contents of this section apply to setting up toolbars and menus for cross-platform development. For Windows development you can also use the methods described here. However, using action bands instead is simpler and offers more options. The action lists will be handled automatically by the Action Manager. See “Organizing actions for toolbars and menus” on page 8-16 for information on using action bands and the Action Manager.

Action lists maintain a list of actions that your application can take in response to something a user does. By using action objects, you centralize the functions performed by your application from the user interface. This lets you share common code for performing actions (for example, when a toolbar button and menu item do the same thing), as well as providing a single, centralized way to enable and disable actions depending on the state of your application.

Setting up action lists

Setting up action lists is fairly easy once you understand the basic steps involved:

- Create the action list.
- Add actions to the action list.
- Set properties on the actions.
- Attach clients to the action.

Here are the steps in more detail:

- 1 Drop a *TActionList* object onto your form or data module. (ActionList is on the Standard page of the Component palette.)
- 2 Double-click the *TActionList* object to display the Action List editor.
 - 1 Use one of the predefined actions listed in the editor: right-click and choose New Standard Action.
 - 2 The predefined actions are organized into categories (such as Dataset, Edit, Help, and Window) in the Standard Action Classes dialog box. Select all the standard actions you want to add to the action list and click OK.or
 - 3 Create a new action of your own: right-click and choose New Action.
- 3 Set the properties of each action in the Object Inspector. (The properties you set affect every client of the action.)

The *Name* property identifies the action, and the other properties and events (*Caption*, *Checked*, *Enabled*, *HelpContext*, *Hint*, *ImageIndex*, *ShortCut*, *Visible*, and *Execute*) correspond to the properties and events of its client controls. The client's corresponding properties are typically, but not necessarily, the same name as the corresponding client property. For example, an action's *Enabled* property corresponds to a *TToolButton*'s *Enabled* property. However, an action's *Checked* property corresponds to a *TToolButton*'s *Down* property.

- 4 If you use the predefined actions, the action includes a standard response that occurs automatically. If creating your own action, you need to write an event handler that defines how the action responds when fired. See "What happens when an action fires" on page 8-24 for details.
- 5 Attach the actions in the action list to the clients that require them:
 - Click on the control (such as the button or menu item) on the form or data module. In the Object Inspector, the *Action* property lists the available actions.
 - Select the one you want.

The standard actions, such as *TEditDelete* or *TDataSetPost*, all perform the action you would expect. You can look at the online reference Help for details on how all of the standard actions work if you need to. If writing your own actions, you'll need to understand more about what happens when the action is fired.

What happens when an action fires

When an event fires, a series of events intended primarily for generic actions occurs. Then if the event doesn't handle the action, another sequence of events occurs.

Responding with events

When a client component or control is clicked or otherwise acted on, a series of events occurs to which you can respond. For example, the following code illustrates

the event handler for an action that toggles the visibility of a toolbar when the action is executed:

```
void __fastcall TForm1::Action1Execute(TObject *Sender)
{
    // Toggle Toolbar1's visibility
    Toolbar1->Visible = !Toolbar1->Visible;
}
```

You can supply an event handler that responds at one of three different levels: the action, the action list, or the application. This is only a concern if you are using a new generic action rather than a predefined standard action. You do not have to worry about this if using the standard actions because standard actions have built-in behavior that executes when these events occur.

The order in which the event handlers will respond to events is as follows:

- Action list
- Application
- Action

When the user clicks on a client control, C++Builder calls the action's *Execute* method which defers first to the action list, then the Application object, then the action itself if neither action list nor Application handles it. To explain this in more detail, C++Builder follows this dispatching sequence when looking for a way to respond to the user action:

- 1 If you supply an *OnExecute* event handler for the action list and it handles the action, the application proceeds.

The action list's event handler has a parameter called *Handled*, that returns **false** by default. If the handler is assigned and it handles the event, it returns **true**, and the processing sequence ends here. For example:

```
void __fastcall TForm1::ActionList1ExecuteAction(TBasicAction *Action, bool &Handled)
{
    Handled = true;
}
```

If you don't set *Handled* to **true** in the action list event handler, then processing continues.

- 2 If you did not write an *OnExecute* event handler for the action list or if the event handler doesn't handle the action, the application's *OnActionExecute* event handler fires. If it handles the action, the application proceeds.

The global *Application* object receives an *OnActionExecute* event if any action list in the application fails to handle an event. Like the action list's *OnExecute* event handler, the *OnActionExecute* handler has a parameter *Handled* that returns **false** by default. If an event handler is assigned and handles the event, it returns **true**, and the processing sequence ends here. For example:

```
void __fastcall TForm1::ApplicationExecuteAction(TBasicAction *Action, bool &Handled)
{
    // Prevent execution of all actions in Application
    Handled = true;
}
```

- 3 If the application's *OnExecute* event handler doesn't handle the action, the action's *OnExecute* event handler fires.

You can use built-in actions or create your own action classes that know how to operate on specific target classes (such as edit controls). When no event handler is found at any level, the application next tries to find a target on which to execute the action. When the application locates a target that the action knows how to address, it invokes the action. See the next section for details on how the application locates a target that can respond to a predefined action class.

How actions find their targets

"What happens when an action fires" on page 8-24 describes the execution cycle that occurs when a user invokes an action. If no event handler is assigned to respond to the action, either at the action list, application, or action level, then the application tries to identify a target object to which the action can apply itself.

The application looks for the target using the following sequence:

- 1 Active control: The application looks first for an active control as a potential target.
- 2 Active form: If the application does not find an active control or if the active control can't act as a target, it looks at the screen's *ActiveForm*.
- 3 Controls on the form: If the active form is not an appropriate target, the application looks at the other controls on the active form for a target.

If no target is located, nothing happens when the event is fired.

Some controls can expand the search to defer the target to an associated component; for example, data-aware controls defer to the associated dataset component. Also, some predefined actions do not use a target; for example, the File Open dialog.

Updating actions

When the application is idle, the *OnUpdate* event occurs for every action that is linked to a control or menu item that is showing. This provides an opportunity for applications to execute centralized code for enabling and disabling, checking and unchecking, and so on. For example, the following code illustrates the *OnUpdate* event handler for an action that is "checked" when the toolbar is visible:

```
void __fastcall TForm1::Action1Update(TObject *Sender)
{
    // Indicate whether ToolBar1 is currently visible
    ((TAction *)Sender)->Checked = ToolBar1->Visible;
}
```

Warning Do not add time-intensive code to the *OnUpdate* event handler. This executes whenever the application is idle. If the event handler takes too much time, it will adversely affect performance of the entire application.

Predefined action classes

You can add predefined actions to your application by right-clicking on the Action Manager and choosing New Standard Action. The New Standard Action Classes dialog box is displayed listing the predefined action classes and the associated standard actions. These are actions that are included with C++Builder and they are objects that automatically perform actions. The predefined actions are organized within the following classes:

Table 8.3 Action classes

| Class | Description |
|----------|---|
| Edit | Standard edit actions: Used with an edit control target. <i>TEditAction</i> is the base class for descendants that each override the <i>ExecuteTarget</i> method to implement copy, cut, and paste tasks by using the clipboard. |
| Format | Standard formatting actions: Used with rich text to apply text formatting options such as bold, italic, underline, strikeout, and so on. <i>TRichEditAction</i> is the base class for descendants that each override the <i>ExecuteTarget</i> and <i>UpdateTarget</i> methods to implement formatting of the target. |
| Help | Standard Help actions: Used with any target. <i>THelpAction</i> is the base class for descendants that each override the <i>ExecuteTarget</i> method to pass the command onto a Help system. |
| Window | Standard window actions: Used with forms as targets in an MDI application. <i>TWindowAction</i> is the base class for descendants that each override the <i>ExecuteTarget</i> method to implement arranging, cascading, closing, tiling, and minimizing MDI child forms. |
| File | File actions: Used with operations on files such as File Open, File Run, or File Exit. |
| Search | Search actions: Used with search options. <i>TSearchAction</i> implements the common behavior for actions that display a modeless dialog where the user can enter a search string for searching an edit control. |
| Tab | Tab control actions: Used to move between tabs on a tab control such as the Prev and Next buttons on a wizard. |
| List | List control actions: Used for managing items in a list view. |
| Dialog | Dialog actions: Used with dialog components. <i>TDialogAction</i> implements the common behavior for actions that display a dialog when executed. Each descendant class represents a specific dialog. |
| Internet | Internet actions: Used for functions such as Internet browsing, downloading, and sending mail. |
| DataSet | DataSet actions: Used with a dataset component target. <i>TDataSetAction</i> is the base class for descendants that each override the <i>ExecuteTarget</i> and <i>UpdateTarget</i> methods to implement navigation and editing of the target. <i>TDataSetAction</i> introduces a <i>DataSource</i> property that ensures actions are performed on that dataset. If <i>DataSource</i> is NULL, the currently focused data-aware control is used. |
| Tools | Tools: Additional tools such as <i>TCustomizeActionBars</i> for automatically displaying the customization dialog for action bands. |

All of the action objects are described under the action object names in the online reference Help. Refer to the Help for details on how they work.

Writing action components

You can also create your own predefined action classes. When you write your own action classes, you can build in the ability to execute on certain target classes of object. Then, you can use your custom actions in the same way you use pre-defined action classes. That is, when the action can recognize and apply itself to a target class, you can simply assign the action to a client control, and it acts on the target with no need to write an event handler.

Component writers can use the classes in the QStdActns and DBActns units as examples for deriving their own action classes to implement behaviors specific to certain controls or components. The base classes for these specialized actions (*TEditAction*, *TWindowAction*, and so on) generally override *HandlesTarget*, *UpdateTarget*, and other methods to limit the target for the action to a specific class of objects. The descendant classes typically override *ExecuteTarget* to perform a specialized task. These methods are described here:

| Method | Description |
|----------------------|--|
| <i>HandlesTarget</i> | Called automatically when the user invokes an object (such as a tool button or menu item) that is linked to the action. The <i>HandlesTarget</i> method lets the action object indicate whether it is appropriate to execute at this time with the object specified by the <i>Target</i> parameter as a “target”. See “How actions find their targets” on page 8-26 for details. |
| <i>UpdateTarget</i> | Called automatically when the application is idle so that actions can update themselves according to current conditions. Use in place of <i>OnUpdateAction</i> . See “Updating actions” on page 8-26 for details. |
| <i>ExecuteTarget</i> | Called automatically when the action fires in response to a user action in place of <i>OnExecute</i> (for example, when the user selects a menu item or presses a tool button that is linked to this action). See “What happens when an action fires” on page 8-24 for details. |

Registering actions

When you write your own actions, you can register actions to enable them to appear in the Action List editor. You register and unregister actions by using the global routines in the Actnlist unit:

```
extern PACKAGE void __fastcall RegisterActions(const AnsiString CategoryName, TMetaClass*
const * AClasses, const int AClasses_Size, TMetaClass* Resource);

extern PACKAGE void __fastcall UnRegisterActions(TMetaClass* const * AClasses, const int
AClasses_Size);
```

When you call *RegisterActions*, the actions you register appear in the Action List editor for use by your applications. You can supply a category name to organize your actions, as well as a *Resource* parameter that lets you supply default property values.

For example, the following code registers actions with the IDE in the *MyAction* unit:

```
namespace MyAction
{
    void __fastcall PACKAGE Register()
    {
        // code goes here to register any components and editors
        TMetaClass classes[2] = {__classid(TMyAction1), __classid(TMyAction2)};
        RegisterActions("MySpecialActions", classes, 1, NULL);
    }
}
```

When you call *UnRegisterActions*, the actions no longer appear in the Action List editor.

Creating and managing menus

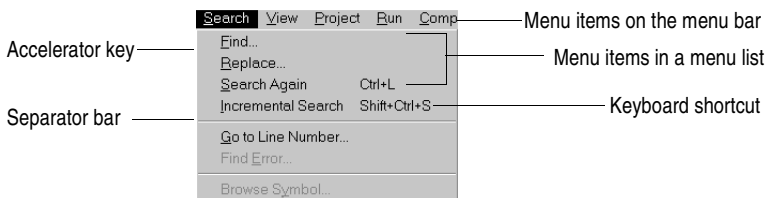
Menus provide an easy way for your users to execute logically grouped commands. The Menu Designer enables you to easily add a menu—either predesigned or custom tailored—to your form. You add a menu component to the form, open the Menu Designer, and type menu items directly into the Menu Designer window. You can add or delete menu items, or drag and drop them to rearrange them during design time.

You don't even need to run your program to see the results—your design is immediately visible in the form, appearing just as it will during runtime. Your code can also change menus at runtime, to provide more information or options to the user.

This chapter explains how to use the Menu Designer to design menu bars and pop-up (local) menus. It discusses the following ways to work with menus at design time and runtime:

- Opening the Menu Designer.
- Building menus.
- Editing menu items in the Object Inspector.
- Using the Menu Designer context menu.
- Using menu templates.
- Saving a menu as a template.
- Adding images to menu items.

Figure 8.3 Menu terminology



Opening the Menu Designer

You design menus for your application using the Menu Designer. Before you can start using the Menu Designer, first add either a *MainMenu* or *PopupMenu* component to your form. Both menu components are located on the Standard page of the Component palette.

Figure 8.4 MainMenu and PopupMenu components



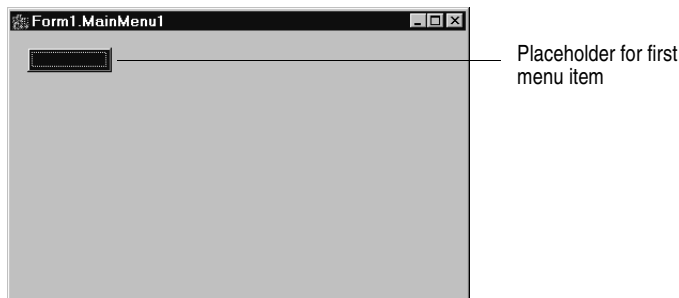
A *MainMenu* component creates a menu that's attached to the form's title bar. A *PopupMenu* component creates a menu that appears when the user right-clicks in the form. Pop-up menus do not have a menu bar.

To open the Menu Designer, select a menu component on the form, and then either:

- Double-click the menu component.
- or
- From the Properties page of the Object Inspector, select the *Items* property, and then either double-click [Menu] in the Value column, or click the ellipsis (...) button.

The Menu Designer appears, with the first (blank) menu item highlighted in the Designer, and the *Caption* property selected in the Object Inspector.

Figure 8.5 Menu Designer for a main menu



Building menus

You add a menu component to your form, or forms, for every menu you want to include in your application. You can build each menu structure entirely from scratch, or you can start from one of the predesigned menu templates.

This section discusses the basics of creating a menu at design time. For more information about menu templates, see “Using menu templates” on page 8-38.

Naming menus

As with all components, when you add a menu component to the form, C++Builder gives it a default name; for example, *MainMenu1*. You can give the menu a more meaningful name.

C++Builder adds the menu name to the form's type declaration, and the menu name then appears in the Component list.

Naming the menu items

In contrast to the menu component itself, you need to explicitly name menu items as you add them to the form. You can do this in one of two ways:

- Directly type the value for the *Name* property.
- Type the value for the *Caption* property first, and let C++Builder derive the *Name* property from the caption.

For example, if you give a menu item a *Caption* property value of *File*, C++Builder assigns the menu item a *Name* property of *File1*. If you fill in the *Name* property before filling in the *Caption* property, C++Builder leaves the *Caption* property blank until you type a value.

Note

If you enter characters in the *Caption* property that are not valid for C++ identifiers, C++Builder modifies the *Name* property accordingly. For example, if you want the caption to start with a number, C++Builder precedes the number with a character to derive the *Name* property.

The following table demonstrates some examples of this, assuming all menu items shown appear in the same menu bar.

Table 8.4 Sample captions and their derived names

| Component caption | Derived name | Explanation |
|------------------------|--------------|--|
| &File | File1 | Removes ampersand |
| &File (2nd occurrence) | File2 | Numerically orders duplicate items |
| 1234 | N12341 | Adds a preceding letter and numerical order |
| 1234 (2nd occurrence) | N12342 | Adds a number to disambiguate the derived name |
| \$@@@# | N1 | Removes all non-standard characters, adding preceding letter and numerical order |
| - (hyphen) | N2 | Numerical ordering of second occurrence of caption with no standard characters |

As with the menu component, C++Builder adds any menu item names to the form's type declaration, and those names then appear in the Component list.

Adding, inserting, and deleting menu items

The following procedures describe how to perform the basic tasks involved in building your menu structure. Each procedure assumes you have the Menu Designer window open.

To add menu items at design time,

- 1 Select the position where you want to create the menu item.

If you've just opened the Menu Designer, the first position on the menu bar is already selected.

- 2 Begin typing to enter the caption. Or enter the *Name* property first by specifically placing your cursor in the Object Inspector and entering a value. In this case, you then need to reselect the *Caption* property and enter a value.
- 3 Press *Enter*.

The next placeholder for a menu item is selected.

If you entered the *Caption* property first, use the arrow keys to return to the menu item you just entered. You'll see that C++Builder has filled in the *Name* property based on the value you entered for the caption. (See "Naming the menu items" on page 8-31.)

- 4 Continue entering values for the *Name* and *Caption* properties for each new item you want to create, or press *Esc* to return to the menu bar.

Use the arrow keys to move from the menu bar into the menu, and to then move between items in the list; press *Enter* to complete an action. To return to the menu bar, press *Esc*.

To insert a new, blank menu item,

- 1 Place the cursor on a menu item.
- 2 Press *Ins*.

Menu items are inserted to the left of the selected item on the menu bar, and above the selected item in the menu list.

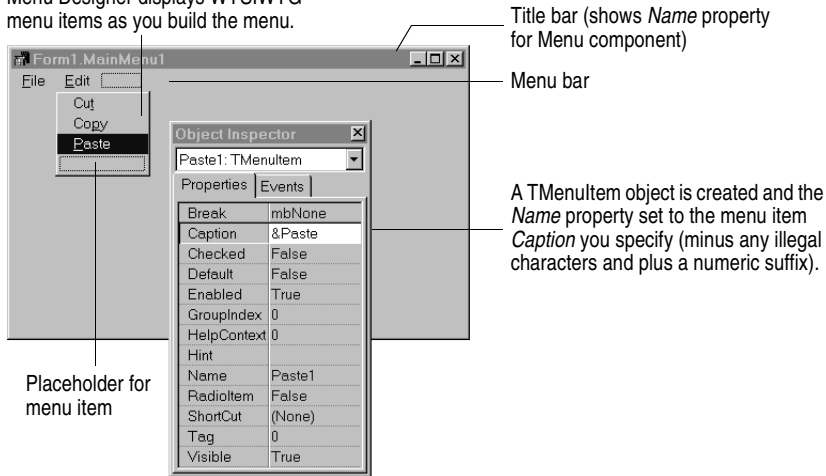
To delete a menu item or command,

- 1 Place the cursor on the menu item you want to delete.
- 2 Press *Del*.

Note You cannot delete the default placeholder that appears below the item last entered in a menu list, or next to the last item on the menu bar. This placeholder does not appear in your menu at runtime.

Figure 8.6 Adding menu items to a main menu

Menu Designer displays WYSIWYG menu items as you build the menu.



Adding separator bars

Separator bars insert a line between menu items. You can use separator bars to indicate groupings within the menu list, or simply to provide a visual break in a list.

To make the menu item a separator bar, type a hyphen (-) for the caption.

Specifying accelerator keys and keyboard shortcuts

Accelerator keys enable the user to access a menu command from the keyboard by pressing *Alt+* the appropriate letter, indicated in your code by the preceding ampersand. The letter after the ampersand appears underlined in the menu.

C++Builder automatically checks for duplicate accelerators and adjusts them at runtime. This ensures that menus built dynamically at runtime contain no duplicate accelerators and that all menu items have an accelerator. You can turn off this automatic checking by setting the *AutoHotkeys* property of a menu item to *maManual*.

To specify an accelerator,

- Add an ampersand in front of the appropriate letter.

For example, to add a Save menu command with the *S* as an accelerator key, type *&Save*.

Keyboard shortcuts enable the user to perform the action without using the menu directly, by typing in the shortcut key combination.

To specify a keyboard shortcut,

- Use the Object Inspector to enter a value for the *ShortCut* property, or select a key combination from the drop-down list.

This list is only a subset of the valid combinations you can type in.

When you add a shortcut, it appears next to the menu item caption.

Caution Keyboard shortcuts, unlike accelerator keys, are not checked automatically for duplicates. You must ensure uniqueness yourself.

Creating submenus

Many application menus contain drop-down lists that appear next to a menu item to provide additional, related commands. Such lists are indicated by an arrow to the right of the menu item. C++Builder supports as many levels of such submenus as you want to build into your menu.

Organizing your menu structure this way can save vertical screen space. However, for optimal design purposes you probably want to use no more than two or three menu levels in your interface design. (For pop-up menus, you might want to use only one submenu, if any.)

Figure 8.7 Nested menu structures



To create a submenu,

- 1 Select the menu item under which you want to create a submenu.
- 2 Press *Ctrl*+*→* to create the first placeholder, or right-click and choose Create Submenu.
- 3 Type a name for the submenu item, or drag an existing menu item into this placeholder.
- 4 Press *Enter*, or *↓* to create the next placeholder.
- 5 Repeat steps 3 and 4 for each item you want to create in the submenu.
- 6 Press *Esc* to return to the previous menu level.

Creating submenus by demoting existing menus

You can create a submenu by inserting a menu item from the menu bar (or a menu template) between menu items in a list. When you move a menu into an existing menu structure, all its associated items move with it, creating a fully intact submenu. This pertains to submenus as well. Moving a menu item into an existing submenu just creates one more level of nesting.

Moving menu items

During design time, you can move menu items simply by dragging and dropping. You can move menu items along the menu bar, or to a different place in the menu list, or into a different menu entirely.

The only exception to this is hierarchical: you cannot demote a menu item from the menu bar into its own menu; nor can you move a menu item into its own submenu. However, you can move any item into a *different* menu, no matter what its original position is.

While you are dragging, the cursor changes shape to indicate whether you can release the menu item at the new location. When you move a menu item, any items beneath it move as well.

To move a menu item along the menu bar,

- 1 Drag the menu item along the menu bar until the arrow tip of the drag cursor points to the new location.
- 2 Release the mouse button to drop the menu item at the new location.

To move a menu item into a menu list,

- 1 Drag the menu item along the menu bar until the arrow tip of the drag cursor points to the new menu.

This causes the menu to open, enabling you to drag the item to its new location.

- 2 Drag the menu item into the list, releasing the mouse button to drop the menu item at the new location.

Adding images to menu items

Images can help users navigate in menus by matching glyphs and images to menu item action, similar to toolbar images. You can add single bitmaps to menu items, or you can organize images for your application into an image list and add them to a menu from the image list. If you're using several bitmaps of the same size in your application, it's useful to put them into an image list.

To add a single image to a menu or menu item, set its *Bitmap* property to reference the name of the bitmap to use on the menu or menu item.

To add an image to a menu item using an image list:

- 1 Drop a *TMainMenu* or *TPopupMenu* object on a form.
- 2 Drop a *TImageList* object on the form.
- 3 Open the ImageList editor by double clicking on the *TImageList* object.
- 4 Click Add to select the bitmap or bitmap group you want to use in the menu. Click OK.
- 5 Set the *TMainMenu* or *TPopupMenu* object's *Images* property to the ImageList you just created.
- 6 Create your menu items and submenu items as described previously.

- 7 Select the menu item you want to have an image in the Object Inspector and set the *ImageIndex* property to the corresponding number of the image in the *ImageList* (the default value for *ImageIndex* is -1, which doesn't display an image).

Note Use images that are 16 by 16 pixels for proper display in the menu. Although you can use other sizes for the menu images, alignment and consistency problems may result when using images greater than or smaller than 16 by 16 pixels.

Viewing the menu

You can view your menu in the form at design time without first running your program code. (Pop-up menu components are visible in the form at design time, but the pop-up menus themselves are not. Use the Menu Designer to view a pop-up menu at design time.)

To view the menu,

- 1 If the form is visible, click the form, or from the View menu, choose the form whose menu you want to view.
- 2 If the form has more than one menu, select the menu you want to view from the form's *Menu* property drop-down list.

The menu appears in the form exactly as it will when you run the program.

Editing menu items in the Object Inspector

This section has discussed how to set several properties for menu items—for example, the *Name* and *Caption* properties—by using the Menu Designer.

The section has also described how to set menu item properties, such as the *Shortcut* property, directly in the Object Inspector, just as you would for any component selected in the form.

When you edit a menu item by using the Menu Designer, its properties are still displayed in the Object Inspector. You can switch focus to the Object Inspector and continue editing the menu item properties there. Or you can select the menu item from the Component list in the Object Inspector and edit its properties without ever opening the Menu Designer.

To close the Menu Designer window and continue editing menu items,

- 1 Switch focus from the Menu Designer window to the Object Inspector by clicking the properties page of the Object Inspector.
- 2 Close the Menu Designer as you normally would.

The focus remains in the Object Inspector, where you can continue editing properties for the selected menu item. To edit another menu item, select it from the Component list.

Using the Menu Designer context menu

The Menu Designer context menu provides quick access to the most common Menu Designer commands, and to the menu template options. (For more information about menu templates, refer to “Using menu templates” on page 8-38.)

To display the context menu, right-click the Menu Designer window, or press *Alt+F10* when the cursor is in the Menu Designer window.

Commands on the context menu

The following table summarizes the commands on the Menu Designer context menu.

Table 8.5 Menu Designer context menu commands

| Menu command | Action |
|----------------------|---|
| Insert | Inserts a placeholder above or to the left of the cursor. |
| Delete | Deletes the selected menu item (and all its sub-items, if any). |
| Create Submenu | Creates a placeholder at a nested level and adds an arrow to the right of the selected menu item. |
| Select Menu | Opens a list of menus in the current form. Double-clicking a menu name opens the designer window for the menu. |
| Save As Template | Opens the Save Template dialog box, where you can save a menu for future reuse. |
| Insert From Template | Opens the Insert Template dialog box, where you can select a template to reuse. |
| Delete Templates | Opens the Delete Templates dialog box, where you can choose to delete any existing templates. |
| Insert From Resource | Opens the Insert Menu from Resource file dialog box, where you can choose a .rc or .mnu file to open in the current form. |

Switching between menus at design time

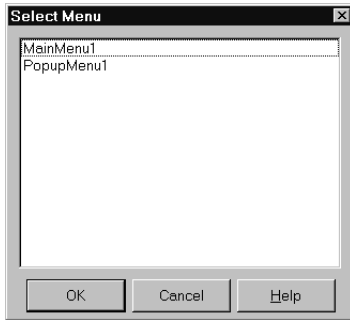
If you’re designing several menus for your form, you can use the Menu Designer context menu or the Object Inspector to easily select and move among them.

To use the context menu to switch between menus in a form,

- 1 Right-click in the Menu Designer and choose Select Menu.

The Select Menu dialog box appears.

Figure 8.8 Select Menu dialog box



This dialog box lists all the menus associated with the form whose menu is currently open in the Menu Designer.

- 2 From the list in the Select Menu dialog box, choose the menu you want to view or edit.

To use the Object Inspector to switch between menus in a form,

- 1 Give focus to the form whose menus you want to choose from.
- 2 From the Component list, select the menu you want to edit.
- 3 On the Properties page of the Object Inspector, select the *Items* property for this menu, and then either click the ellipsis button, or double-click [Menu].

Using menu templates

C++Builder provides several predesigned menus, or menu templates, that contain frequently used commands. You can use these menus in your applications without modifying them (except to write code), or you can use them as a starting point, customizing them as you would a menu you originally designed yourself. Menu templates do not contain any event handler code.

The menu templates shipped with C++Builder are stored in the BIN subdirectory in a default installation. These files have a .dmt (C++Builder menu template) extension.

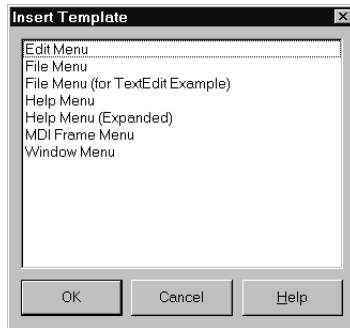
You can also save as a template any menu that you design using the Menu Designer. After saving a menu as a template, you can use it as you would any predesigned menu. If you decide you no longer want a particular menu template, you can delete it from the list.

To add a menu template to your application,

- 1 Right-click the Menu Designer and choose Insert From Template.
(If there are no templates, the Insert From Template option appears dimmed in the context menu.)

The Insert Template dialog box opens, displaying a list of available menu templates.

Figure 8.9 Sample Insert Template dialog box for menus



- 2 Select the menu template you want to insert, then press *Enter* or choose OK.

This inserts the menu into your form at the cursor's location. For example, if your cursor is on a menu item in a list, the menu template is inserted above the selected item. If your cursor is on the menu bar, the menu template is inserted to the left of the cursor.

To delete a menu template,

- 1 Right-click the Menu Designer and choose Delete Templates.

(If there are no templates, the Delete Templates option appears dimmed in the context menu.)

The Delete Templates dialog box opens, displaying a list of available templates.

- 2 Select the menu template you want to delete, and press *Del*.

C++Builder deletes the template from the templates list and from your hard disk.

Saving a menu as a template

Any menu you design can be saved as a template so you can use it again. You can use menu templates to provide a consistent look to your applications, or use them as a starting point which you then further customize.

The menu templates you save are stored in your BIN subdirectory as .dmt files.

To save a menu as a template,

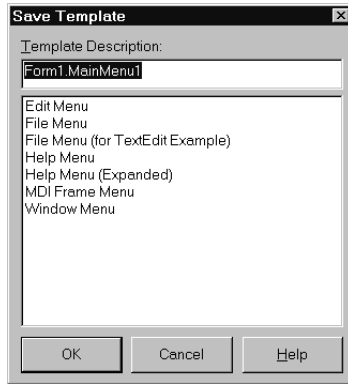
- 1 Design the menu you want to be able to reuse.

This menu can contain as many items, commands, and submenus as you like; everything in the active Menu Designer window will be saved as one reusable menu.

- 2 Right-click in the Menu Designer and choose Save As Template.

The Save Template dialog box appears.

Figure 8.10 Save Template dialog box for menus



- 3 In the Template Description edit box, type a brief description for this menu, and then choose OK.

The Save Template dialog box closes, saving your menu design and returning you to the Menu Designer window.

Note The description you enter is displayed only in the Save Template, Insert Template, and Delete Templates dialog boxes. It is not related to the *Name* or *Caption* property for the menu.

Naming conventions for template menu items and event handlers

When you save a menu as a template, C++Builder does not save its *Name* property, since every menu must have a unique name within the scope of its owner (the form). However, when you insert the menu as a template into a new form by using the Menu Designer, C++Builder then generates new names for it and all of its items.

For example, suppose you save a File menu as a template. In the original menu, you name it *MyFile*. If you insert it as a template into a new menu, C++Builder names it *File1*. If you insert it into a menu with an existing menu item named *File1*, C++Builder names it *File2*.

C++Builder also does not save any *OnClick* event handlers associated with a menu saved as a template, since there is no way to test whether the code would be applicable in the new form. When you generate a new event handler for the menu template item, C++Builder still generates the event handler name.

You can easily associate items in the menu template with existing *OnClick* event handlers in the form.

Manipulating menu items at runtime

Sometimes you want to add menu items to an existing menu structure while the application is running, to provide more information or options to the user. You can insert a menu item by using the menu item's *Add* or *Insert* method, or you can

alternately hide and show the items in a menu by changing their *Visible* property. The *Visible* property determines whether the menu item is displayed in the menu. To dim a menu item without hiding it, use the *Enabled* property.

For examples that use the menu item's *Visible* and *Enabled* properties, see "Disabling menu items" on page 6-9.

In multiple document interface (MDI) and Object Linking and Embedding (OLE) applications, you can also merge menu items into an existing menu bar. The following section discusses this in more detail.

Merging menus

For MDI applications, such as the text editor sample application, and for OLE client applications, your application's main menu needs to be able to receive menu items either from another form or from the OLE server object. This is often called *merging menus*. Note that OLE technology is limited to Windows applications only and is not available for use in cross-platform programming.

You prepare menus for merging by specifying values for two properties:

- *Menu*, a property of the form
- *GroupIndex*, a property of menu items in the menu

Specifying the active menu: Menu property

The *Menu* property specifies the active menu for the form. Menu-merging operations apply only to the active menu. If the form contains more than one menu component, you can change the active menu at runtime by setting the *Menu* property in code. For example,

```
Form1->Menu = SecondMenu;
```

Determining the order of merged menu items: GroupIndex property

The *GroupIndex* property determines the order in which the merging menu items appear in the shared menu bar. Merging menu items can replace those on the main menu bar, or can be inserted.

The default value for *GroupIndex* is 0. Several rules apply when specifying a value for *GroupIndex*:

- Lower numbers appear first (farther left) in the menu.

For instance, set the *GroupIndex* property to 0 (zero) for a menu that you always want to appear leftmost, such as a File menu. Similarly, specify a high number (it needn't be in sequence) for a menu that you always want to appear rightmost, such as a Help menu.

- To replace items in the main menu, give items on the child menu the same *GroupIndex* value.

This can apply to groupings or to single items. For example, if your main form has an Edit menu item with a *GroupIndex* value of 1, you can replace it with one or

more items from the child form's menu by giving them a *GroupIndex* value of 1 as well.

Giving multiple items in the child menu the same *GroupIndex* value keeps their order intact when they merge into the main menu.

- To insert items without replacing items in the main menu, leave room in the numeric range of the main menu's items and "plug in" numbers from the child form.

For example, number the items in the main menu 0 and 5, and insert items from the child menu by numbering them 1, 2, 3, and 4.

Importing resource files

C++Builder supports use of menus built with other applications, so long as they are in the standard Windows resource (.RC) file format. You can import such menus directly into your C++Builder project, saving you the time and effort of rebuilding menus that you created elsewhere.

To load existing .RC menu files,

- 1 In the Menu Designer, place your cursor where you want the menu to appear.

The imported menu can be part of a menu you are designing, or an entire menu in itself.

- 2 Right-click and choose Insert From Resource.

The Insert Menu From Resource dialog box appears.

- 3 In the dialog box, select the resource file you want to load, and choose OK.

The menu appears in the Menu Designer window.

Note If your resource file contains more than one menu, you first need to save each menu as a separate resource file before importing it.

Designing toolbars and cool bars

A *toolbar* is a panel, usually across the top of a form (under the menu bar), that holds buttons and other controls. A *cool bar* (also called a rebar) is a kind of toolbar that displays controls on movable, resizable bands. If you have multiple panels aligned to the top of the form, they stack vertically in the order added.

Note Cool bars are not available in CLX for cross-platform applications.

You can put controls of any sort on a toolbar. In addition to buttons, you may want to put use color grids, scroll bars, labels, and so on.

You can add a toolbar to a form in several ways:

- Place a panel (*TPanel*) on the form and add controls (typically speed buttons) to it.

- Use a toolbar component (*TToolBar*) instead of *TPanel*, and add controls to it. *TToolBar* manages buttons and other controls, arranging them in rows and automatically adjusting their sizes and positions. If you use tool button (*TToolButton*) controls on the toolbar, *TToolBar* makes it easy to group the buttons functionally and provides other display options.
- Use a cool bar (*TCoolBar*) component and add controls to it. The cool bar displays controls on independently movable and resizable bands.

How you implement your toolbar depends on your application. The advantage of using the Panel component is that you have total control over the look and feel of the toolbar.

By using the toolbar and cool bar components, you are ensuring that your application has the look and feel of a Windows application because you are using the native Windows controls. If these operating system controls change in the future, your application could change as well. Also, since the toolbar and cool bar rely on common components in Windows, your application requires the COMCTL32.DLL. Toolbars and cool bars are not supported in WinNT 3.51 applications.

The following sections describe how to:

- Add a toolbar and corresponding speed button controls using the panel component.
- Add a toolbar and corresponding tool button controls using the Toolbar component.
- Add a cool bar using the cool bar component.
- Respond to clicks.
- Add hidden toolbars and cool bars.
- Hide and show toolbars and cool bars.

Adding a toolbar using a panel component

To add a toolbar to a form using the panel component,

- 1 Add a panel component to the form (from the Standard page of the Component palette).
- 2 Set the panel's *Align* property to *alTop*. When aligned to the top of the form, the panel maintains its height, but matches its width to the full width of the form's client area, even if the window changes size.
- 3 Add speed buttons or other controls to the panel.

Speed buttons are designed to work on toolbar panels. A speed button usually has no caption, only a small graphic (called a *glyph*), which represents the button's function.

Speed buttons have three possible modes of operation. They can

- Act like regular pushbuttons
- Toggle on and off when clicked
- Act like a set of radio buttons

To implement speed buttons on toolbars, do the following:

- Add a speed button to a toolbar panel.
- Assign a speed button's glyph.
- Set the initial condition of a speed button.
- Create a group of speed buttons.
- Allow toggle buttons.

Adding a speed button to a panel

To add a speed button to a toolbar panel, place the speed button component (from the Additional page of the Component palette) on the panel.

The panel, rather than the form, “owns” the speed button, so moving or hiding the panel also moves or hides the speed button.

The default height of the panel is 41, and the default height of speed buttons is 25. If you set the *Top* property of each button to 8, they'll be vertically centered. The default grid setting snaps the speed button to that vertical position for you.

Assigning a speed button's glyph

Each speed button needs a graphic image called a *glyph* to indicate to the user what the button does. If you supply the speed button only one image, the button manipulates that image to indicate whether the button is pressed, unpressed, selected, or disabled. You can also supply separate, specific images for each state if you prefer.

You normally assign glyphs to speed buttons at design time, although you can assign different glyphs at runtime.

To assign a glyph to a speed button at design time,

- 1 Select the speed button.
- 2 In the Object Inspector, select the *Glyph* property.
- 3 Double-click the Value column beside *Glyph* to open the Picture Editor and select the desired bitmap.

Setting the initial condition of a speed button

Speed buttons use their appearance to give the user clues as to their state and purpose. Because they have no caption, it's important that you use the right visual cues to assist users.

Table 8.6 lists some actions you can set to change a speed button's appearance:

Table 8.6 Setting speed buttons' appearance

| To make a speed button: | Set the toolbar's: |
|-------------------------|---|
| Appear pressed | <i>GroupIndex</i> property to a value other than zero and its <i>Down</i> property to true . |
| Appear disabled | <i>Enabled</i> property to false . |
| Have a left margin | <i>Indent</i> property to a value greater than 0. |

If your application has a default drawing tool, ensure that its button on the toolbar is pressed when the application starts. To do so, set its *GroupIndex* property to a value other than zero and its *Down* property to **true**.

Creating a group of speed buttons

A series of speed buttons often represents a set of mutually exclusive choices. In that case, you need to associate the buttons into a group, so that clicking any button in the group causes the others in the group to pop up.

To associate any number of speed buttons into a group, assign the same number to each speed button's *GroupIndex* property.

The easiest way to do this is to select all the buttons you want in the group, and, with the whole group selected, set *GroupIndex* to a unique value.

Allowing toggle buttons

Sometimes you want to be able to click a button in a group that's already pressed and have it pop up, leaving no button in the group pressed. Such a button is called a *toggle*. Use *AllowAllUp* to create a grouped button that acts as a toggle: click it once, it's down; click it again, it pops up.

To make a grouped speed button a toggle, set its *AllowAllUp* property to **true**.

Setting *AllowAllUp* to **true** for any speed button in a group automatically sets the same property value for all buttons in the group. This enables the group to act as a normal group, with only one button pressed at a time, but also allows every button to be up at the same time.

Adding a toolbar using the toolbar component

The toolbar component (*TToolBar*) offers button management and display features that panel components do not. To add a toolbar to a form using the toolbar component,

- 1 Add a toolbar component to the form (from the Win32 page of the Component palette). The toolbar automatically aligns to the top of the form.
- 2 Add tool buttons or other controls to the bar.

Tool buttons are designed to work on toolbar components. Like speed buttons, tool buttons can:

- Act like regular pushbuttons.
- Toggle on and off when clicked.
- Act like a set of radio buttons.

To implement tool buttons on a toolbar, do the following:

- Add a tool button
- Assign images to tool buttons
- Set the tool buttons' appearance
- Create a group of tool buttons
- Allow toggled tool buttons

Adding a tool button

To add a tool button to a toolbar, right-click on the toolbar and choose New Button.

The toolbar “owns” the tool button, so moving or hiding the toolbar also moves or hides the button. In addition, all tool buttons on the toolbar automatically maintain the same height and width. You can drop other controls from the Component palette onto the toolbar, and they will automatically maintain a uniform height. Controls will also wrap around and start a new row when they do not fit horizontally on the toolbar.

Assigning images to tool buttons

Each tool button has an *ImageIndex* property that determines what image appears on it at runtime. If you supply the tool button only one image, the button manipulates that image to indicate whether the button is disabled. To assign images to tool buttons at design time,

- 1 Select the toolbar on which the buttons appear.
- 2 In the Object Inspector, assign a *TImageList* object to the toolbar’s *Images* property. An image list is a collection of same-sized icons or bitmaps.
- 3 Select a tool button.
- 4 In the Object Inspector, assign an integer to the tool button’s *ImageIndex* property that corresponds to the image in the image list that you want to assign to the button.

You can also specify separate images to appear on the tool buttons when they are disabled and when they are under the mouse pointer. To do so, assign separate image lists to the toolbar’s *DisabledImages* and *HotImages* properties.

Setting tool button appearance and initial conditions

Table 8.7 lists some actions you can set to change a tool button’s appearance:

Table 8.7 Setting tool buttons’ appearance

| To make a tool button: | Set the toolbar’s: |
|---|---|
| Appear pressed | (on tool button) <i>Style</i> property to <i>tbsCheck</i> and <i>Down</i> property to true . |
| Appear disabled | <i>Enabled</i> property to false . |
| Have a left margin | <i>Indent</i> property to a value greater than 0. |
| Appear to have “pop-up” borders, thus making the toolbar appear transparent | <i>Flat</i> property to true . |

Note Using the *Flat* property of *TToolBar* requires version 4.70 or later of COMCTL32.DLL.

To force a new row of controls after a specific tool button, Select the tool button that you want to appear last in the row and set its *Wrap* property to **true**.

To turn off the auto-wrap feature of the toolbar, set the toolbar’s *Wrapable* property to **false**.

Creating groups of tool buttons

To create a group of tool buttons, select the buttons you want to associate and set their *Style* property to *tbsCheck*; then set their *Grouped* property to **true**. Selecting a grouped tool button causes other buttons in the group to pop up, which is helpful to represent a set of mutually exclusive choices.

Any unbroken sequence of adjacent tool buttons with *Style* set to *tbsCheck* and *Grouped* set to **true** forms a single group. To break up a group of tool buttons, separate the buttons with any of the following:

- A tool button whose *Grouped* property is **false**.
- A tool button whose *Style* property is not set to *tbsCheck*. To create spaces or dividers on the toolbar, add a tool button whose *Style* is *tbsSeparator* or *tbsDivider*.
- Another control besides a tool button.

Allowing toggled tool buttons

Use *AllowAllUp* to create a grouped tool button that acts as a toggle: click it once, it is down; click it again, it pops up. To make a grouped tool button a toggle, set its *AllowAllUp* property to **true**.

As with speed buttons, setting *AllowAllUp* to **true** for any tool button in a group automatically sets the same property value for all buttons in the group.

Adding a cool bar component

Note The *TCoolBar* component requires version 4.70 or later of COMCTL32.DLL and is not available in CLX.

The cool bar component (*TCoolBar*)—also called a *rebar*—displays windowed controls on independently movable, resizable bands. The user can position the bands by dragging the resizing grips on the left side of each band.

To add a cool bar to a form in a Windows application:

- 1 Add a cool bar component to the form (from the Win32 page of the Component palette). The cool bar automatically aligns to the top of the form.
- 2 Add windowed controls from the Component palette to the bar.

Only VCL components that descend from *TWinControl* are windowed controls. You can add graphic controls—such as labels or speed buttons—to a cool bar, but they will not appear on separate bands.

Setting the appearance of the cool bar

The cool bar component offers several useful configuration options. Table 8.8 lists some actions you can set to change a tool button's appearance:

Table 8.8 Setting a cool button's appearance

| To make the cool bar: | Set the toolbar's: |
|---|--|
| Resize automatically to accommodate the bands it contains | <i>AutoSize</i> property to true . |
| Bands maintain a uniform height | <i>FixedSize</i> property to true . |
| Reorient to vertical rather than horizontal | <i>Vertical</i> property to true . This changes the effect of the <i>FixedSize</i> property. |
| Prevent the <i>Text</i> properties of the bands from displaying at runtime | <i>ShowText</i> property to false . Each band in a cool bar has its own <i>Text</i> property. |
| Remove the border around the bar | <i>BandBorderStyle</i> to <i>bsNone</i> . |
| Keep users from changing the bands' order at runtime. (The user can still move and resize the bands.) | <i>FixedOrder</i> to true . |
| Create a background image for the cool bar | <i>Bitmap</i> property to <i>TBitmap</i> object. |
| Choose a list of images to appear on the left of any band | <i>Images</i> property to <i>TImageList</i> object. |

To assign images to individual bands, select the cool bar and double-click on the *Bands* property in the Object Inspector. Then select a band and assign a value to its *ImageIndex* property.

Responding to clicks

When the user clicks a control, such as a button on a toolbar, the application generates an *OnClick* event which you can respond to with an event handler. Since *OnClick* is the default event for buttons, you can generate a skeleton handler for the event by double-clicking the button at design time.

Assigning a menu to a tool button

If you are using a toolbar (*TToolBar*) with tool buttons (*TToolButton*), you can associate menu with a specific button:

- 1 Select the tool button.
- 2 In the Object Inspector, assign a pop-up menu (*TPopupMenu*) to the tool button's *DropDownMenu* property.

If the menu's *AutoPopup* property is set to **true**, it will appear automatically when the button is pressed.

Adding hidden toolbars

Toolbars do not have to be visible all the time. In fact, it is often convenient to have a number of toolbars available, but show them only when the user wants to use them. Often you create a form that has several toolbars, but hide some or all of them.

To create a hidden toolbar:

- 1 Add a toolbar, cool bar, or panel component to the form.
- 2 Set the component's *Visible* property to **false**.

Although the toolbar remains visible at design time so you can modify it, it remains hidden at runtime until the application specifically makes it visible.

Hiding and showing toolbars

Often, you want an application to have multiple toolbars, but you do not want to clutter the form with them all at once. Or you may want to let users decide whether to display toolbars. As with all components, toolbars can be shown or hidden at runtime as needed.

To hide or show a toolbar at runtime, set its *Visible* property to **false** or **true**, respectively. Usually you do this in response to particular user events or changes in the operating mode of the application. To do this, you typically have a close button on each toolbar. When the user clicks that button, the application hides the corresponding toolbar.

You can also provide a means of toggling the toolbar. In the following example, a toolbar of pens is toggled from a button on the main toolbar. Since each click presses or releases the button, an *OnClick* event handler can show or hide the Pen toolbar depending on whether the button is up or down.

```
void __fastcall TForm1::PenButtonClick(TObject *Sender)
{
    PenBar->Visible = PenButton->Down;
}
```


Types of controls

Controls are visual components that help you design your user interface.

This chapter describes the different controls you can use, including text controls, input controls, buttons, list controls, grouping controls, display controls, grids, value list editors, and graphics controls.

To create a graphic control, see Chapter 54, “Creating a graphic control.” To learn how to implement these controls, see Chapter 6, “Working with controls.”

Text controls

Many applications use text controls to display text to the user. You can use:

- Edit controls, which allow the user to add text.

| Use this component: | When you want users to do this: |
|---------------------|---|
| <i>TEdit</i> | Edit a single line of text. |
| <i>TMemo</i> | Edit multiple lines of text. |
| <i>TMaskEdit</i> | Adhere to a particular format, such as a postal code or phone number. |
| <i>TRichEdit</i> | Edit multiple lines of text using rich text format (VCL only). |

- Text viewing controls and labels, which do not allow user to add text:

| Use this component: | When you want users to do this: |
|---------------------|---|
| <i>TTextBrowser</i> | Display a text file or simple HTML page that users can scroll through. |
| <i>TTextViewer</i> | Display a text file or simple HTML page. Users can scroll through the page or click links to view other pages and images. |
| <i>TLCDNumber</i> | Display numeric information in a digital display form. |
| <i>TLabel</i> | Display text on a nonwindowed control. |
| <i>TStaticText</i> | Display text on a windowed control. |

Edit controls

Edit controls display text to the user and allow the user to enter text. The type of control used for this purpose depends on the size and format of the information.

TEdit and *TMaskEdit* are simple edit controls that include a single line text edit box in which you can type information. When the edit box has focus, a blinking insertion point appears.

You can include text in the edit box by assigning a string value to its *Text* property. You control the appearance of the text in the edit box by assigning values to its *Font* property. You can specify the typeface, size, color, and attributes of the font. The attributes affect all of the text in the edit box and cannot be applied to individual characters.

An edit box can be designed to change its size depending on the size of the font it contains. You do this by setting the *AutoSize* property to true. You can limit the number of characters an edit box can contain by assigning a value to the *MaxLength* property.

TMaskEdit is a special edit control that validates the text entered against a mask that encodes the valid forms the text can take. The mask can also format the text that is displayed to the user.

TMemo and *TRichEdit* allows the user to add several lines of text.

Edit control properties

Following are some of the important properties of edit controls:

Table 9.1 Edit control properties

| Property | Description |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| <i>Text</i> | Determines the text that appears in the edit box or memo control. |
| <i>Font</i> | Controls the attributes of text written in the edit box or memo control. |
| <i>AutoSize</i> | Enables the edit box to dynamically change its height depending on the currently selected font. |
| <i>ReadOnly</i> | Specifies whether the user is allowed to change the text. |
| <i>MaxLength</i> | Limits the number of characters in simple edit controls. |
| <i>SelText</i> | Contains the currently selected (highlighted) part of the text. |
| <i>SelStart</i> , <i>SelLength</i> | Indicate the position and length of the selected part of the text. |

Memo and rich edit controls

Both the *TMemo* and *TRichEdit* controls handle multiple lines of text.

VCL The rich edit controls are in the VCL only.

TMemo is another type of edit box that handles multiple lines of text. The lines in a memo control can extend beyond the right boundary of the edit box, or they can

wrap onto the next line. You control whether the lines wrap using the *WordWrap* property.

TRichEdit is a memo control that supports rich text formatting, printing, searching, and drag-and-drop of text. It allows you to specify font properties, alignment, tabs, indentation, and numbering.

In addition to the properties that all edit controls have, memo and rich edit controls include other properties, such as the following:

- *Alignment* specifies how text is aligned (left, right, or center) in the component.
- The *Text* property contains the text in the control. Your application can tell if the text changes by checking the *Modified* property.
- *Lines* contains the text as a list of strings.
- *OEMConvert* determines whether the text is temporarily converted from ANSI to OEM as it is entered. This is useful for validating file names (VCL only).
- *WordWrap* determines whether the text will wrap at the right margin.
- *WantReturns* determines whether the user can insert hard returns in the text.
- *WantTabs* determines whether the user can insert tabs in the text.
- *AutoSelect* determines whether the text is automatically selected (highlighted) when the control becomes active.

At runtime, you can select all the text in the memo with the *SelectAll* method.

Text viewing controls (CLX only)

The text viewing controls display text but are read-only. *TTextViewer* acts as a simple viewer so that users can read and scroll through documents. With *TTextBrowser*, users can also click links to navigate to other documents and other parts of the same document. Documents visited are stored in a history list, which can be navigated using the *Backward*, *Forward*, and *Home* methods. *TTextViewer* and *TTextBrowser* are best used to display HTML-based text or to implement an HTML-based Help system.

TTextBrowser has the same properties as *TTextViewer* plus *Factory*. *Factory* determines the MIME factory object used to determine file types for embedded images. For example, you can associate filename extensions—such as .txt, .html, and .xml—with MIME types and have the factory load this data into the control.

Use the *FileName* property to add a text file, such as .html, to appear in the control at runtime.

Labels

Labels (*TLabel* and *TStaticText* (VCL only)) display text and are usually placed next to other controls. You place a label on a form when you need to identify or annotate another component such as an edit box or when you want to include text on a form. The standard label component, *TLabel*, is a non-windowed control (widget-based in CLX), so it cannot receive focus; when you need a label with a window handle, use *TStaticText* instead.

Label properties include the following:

- *Caption* contains the text string for the label.
- *Font*, *Color*, and other properties determine the appearance of the label. Each label can use only one typeface, size, and color.
- *FocusControl* links the label to another control on the form. If *Caption* includes an accelerator key, the control specified by *FocusControl* receives focus when the user presses the accelerator key.
- *ShowAccelChar* determines whether the label can display an underlined accelerator character. If *ShowAccelChar* is *true*, any character preceded by an ampersand (&) appears underlined and enables an accelerator key.
- *Transparent* determines whether items under the label (such as graphics) are visible.

Labels usually display read-only static text that cannot be changed by the application user. The application can change the text while it is executing by assigning a new value to the *Caption* property. To add a text object to a form that a user can scroll or edit, use *TEdit*.

Specialized input controls

The following components provide additional ways of capturing input.

| Use this component: | When you want users to do this: |
|---------------------|---|
| <i>TScrollBar</i> | Select values on a continuous range |
| <i>TTrackBar</i> | Select values on a continuous range (more visually effective than a scroll bar) |
| <i>TUpDown</i> | Select a value from a spinner attached to an edit component (VCL only) |
| <i>THotKey</i> | Enter <i>Ctrl/Shift/Alt</i> keyboard sequences (VCL only) |
| <i>TSpinEdit</i> | Select a value from a spinner widget (CLX only) |

Scroll bars

The scroll bar component creates a scroll bar that you can use to scroll the contents of a window, form, or other control. In the *OnScroll* event handler, you write code that determines how the control behaves when the user moves the scroll bar.

The scroll bar component is not used very often, because many visual components include scroll bars of their own and thus don't require additional coding. For example, *TForm* has *VertScrollBar* and *HorzScrollBar* properties that automatically configure scroll bars on the form. To create a scrollable region within a form, use *TScrollBox*.

Track bars

A track bar can set integer values on a continuous range. It is useful for adjusting properties like color, volume and brightness. The user moves the slide indicator by dragging it to a particular location or clicking within the bar.

- Use the *Max* and *Min* properties to set the upper and lower range of the track bar.
- Use *SelEnd* and *SelStart* to highlight a selection range. See Figure 9.1.
- The *Orientation* property determines whether the track bar is vertical or horizontal.
- By default, a track bar has one row of ticks along the bottom. Use the *TickMarks* property to change their location. To control the intervals between ticks, use the *TickStyle* property and *SetTick* method.

Figure 9.1 Three views of the track bar component



- *Position* sets a default position for the track bar and tracks the position at runtime.
- By default, users can move one tick up or down by pressing the up and down arrow keys. Set *LineSize* to change that increment.
- Set *PageSize* to determine the number of ticks moved when the user presses *Page Up* and *Page Down*.

Up-down controls (VCL only)

An up-down control (*TUpDown*) consists of a pair of arrow buttons that allow users to change an integer value in fixed increments. The current value is given by the *Position* property; the increment, which defaults to 1, is specified by the *Increment* property. Use the *Associate* property to attach another component (such as an edit control) to the up-down control.

Spin edit controls (CLX only)

A spin edit control (*TSpinEdit*) is also called an up-down widget, little arrows widget, or spin button. This control lets the application user change an integer value in fixed increments, either by clicking the up or down arrow buttons to increase or decrease the value currently displayed, or by typing the value directly into the spin box.

The current value is given by the *Value* property; the increment, which defaults to 1, is specified by the *Increment* property.

Hot key controls (VCL only)

Use the hot key component (*THotKey*) to assign a keyboard shortcut that transfers focus to any control. The *HotKey* property contains the current key combination and the *Modifiers* property determines which keys are available for *HotKey*.

The hot key component can be assigned as the *Shortcut* property of a menu item. Then, when a user enters the key combination specified by the *HotKey* and *Modifiers* properties, Windows activates the menu item.

Splitter controls

A splitter (*TSplitter*) placed between aligned controls allows users to resize the controls. Used with components like panels and group boxes, splitters let you divide a form into several panes with multiple controls on each pane.

After placing a panel or other control on a form, add a splitter with the same alignment as the control. The last control should be client-aligned, so that it fills up the remaining space when the others are resized. For example, you can place a panel at the left edge of a form, set its *Alignment* to *allLeft*, then place a splitter (also aligned to *allLeft*) to the right of the panel, and finally place another panel (aligned to *allLeft* or *allClient*) to the right of the splitter.

Set *MinSize* to specify a minimum size the splitter must leave when resizing its neighboring control. Set *Beveled* to *true* to give the splitter's edge a 3D look.

Buttons and similar controls

Aside from menus, buttons provide the most common way to invoke a command in an application. C++Builder offers several button-like controls:

| Use this component: | To do this: |
|---------------------|--|
| <i>TButton</i> | Present command choices on buttons with text |
| <i>TBitBtn</i> | Present command choices on buttons with text and glyphs |
| <i>TSpeedButton</i> | Create grouped toolbar buttons |
| <i>TCheckBox</i> | Present on/off options |
| <i>TRadioButton</i> | Present a set of mutually exclusive choices |
| <i>TToolBar</i> | Arrange tool buttons and other controls in rows and automatically adjust their sizes and positions |
| <i>TCoolBar</i> | Display a collection of windowed controls within movable, resizable bands (VCL only) |

Button controls

Users click button controls with the mouse to initiate actions. Buttons are labeled with text that represent the action. The text is specified by assigning a string value to the *Caption* property. Most buttons can also be selected by pressing a key on the keyboard as a keyboard shortcut. The shortcut is shown as an underlined letter on the button.

Users click button controls to initiate actions. You can assign an action to a *TButton* component by creating an *OnClick* event handler for it. Double-clicking a button at design time takes you to the button's *OnClick* event handler in the Code editor.

- Set *Cancel* to *true* if you want the button to trigger its *OnClick* event when the user presses *Esc*.
- Set *Default* to *true* if you want the *Enter* key to trigger the button's *OnClick* event.

Bitmap buttons

A bitmap button (*BitBtn*) is a button control that presents a bitmap image on its face.

- To choose a bitmap for your button, set the *Glyph* property.
- Use *Kind* to automatically configure a button with a glyph and default behavior.
- By default, the glyph is to the left of any text. To move it, use the *Layout* property.
- The glyph and text are automatically centered in the button. To move their position, use the *Margin* property. *Margin* determines the number of pixels between the edge of the image and the edge of the button.
- By default, the image and the text are separated by 4 pixels. Use *Spacing* to increase or decrease the distance.
- Bitmap buttons can have 3 states: up, down, and held down. Set the *NumGlyphs* property to 3 to show a different bitmap for each state.

Speed buttons

Speed buttons, which usually have images on their faces, can function in groups. They are commonly used with panels to create toolbars.

- To make speed buttons act as a group, give the *GroupIndex* property of all the buttons the same nonzero value.
- By default, speed buttons appear in an up (unselected) state. To initially display a speed button as selected, set the *Down* property to *true*.
- If *AllowAllUp* is *true*, all of the speed buttons in a group can be unselected. Set *AllowAllUp* to *false* if you want a group of buttons to act like a radio group.

For more information on speed buttons, refer to the section “Adding a toolbar using a panel component” on page 8-43 and “Organizing actions for toolbars and menus” on page 8-16.

Check boxes

A check box is a toggle that lets the user select an on or off state. When the choice is turned on, the check box is checked. Otherwise, the check box is blank. You create check boxes using *TCheckBox*.

- Set *Checked* to *true* to make the box appear checked by default.
- Set *AllowGrayed* to *true* to give the check box three possible states: checked, unchecked, and grayed.
- The *State* property indicates whether the check box is checked (*cbChecked*), unchecked (*cbUnchecked*), or grayed (*cbGrayed*).

Note Check box controls display one of two binary states. The indeterminate state is used when other settings make it impossible to determine the current value for the check box.

Radio buttons

Radio buttons present a set of mutually exclusive choices. You can create individual radio buttons using *TRadioButton* or use the *radio group* component (*TRadioGroup*) to arrange radio buttons into groups automatically. You can group radio buttons to let the user select one from a limited set of choices. See “Grouping controls” on page 9-11 for more information.

A selected radio button is displayed as a circle filled in the middle. When not selected, the radio button shows an empty circle. Assign the value *true* or *false* to the *Checked* property to change the radio button’s visual state.

Toolbars

Toolbars provide an easy way to arrange and manage visual controls. You can create a toolbar out of a panel component and speed buttons, or you can use the *ToolBar* component, then right-click and choose *New Button* to add buttons to the toolbar.

The *TToolBar* component has several advantages: buttons on a toolbar automatically maintain uniform dimensions and spacing; other controls maintain their relative position and height; controls can automatically wrap around to start a new row when they do not fit horizontally; and *TToolBar* offers display options like transparency, pop-up borders, and spaces and dividers to group controls.

You can use a centralized set of actions on toolbars and menus, by using *action lists* or *action bands*. See “Using action lists” on page 8-23 for details on how to use action lists with buttons and toolbars.

Toolbars can also parent other controls such as edit boxes, combo boxes, and so on.

Cool bars (VCL only)

A cool bar contains child controls that can be moved and resized independently. Each control resides on an individual band. The user positions the controls by dragging the sizing grip to the left of each band.

The cool bar requires version 4.70 or later of COMCTL32.DLL (usually located in the Windows\System or Windows\System32 directory) at both design time and runtime. Cool bars cannot be used in cross-platform applications.

- The *Bands* property holds a collection of *TCoolBand* objects. At design time, you can add, remove, or modify bands with the Bands editor. To open the Bands editor, select the *Bands* property in the Object Inspector, then double-click in the Value column to the right, or click the ellipsis (...) button. You can also create bands by adding new windowed controls from the palette.
- The *FixedOrder* property determines whether users can reorder the bands.
- The *FixedSize* property determines whether the bands maintain a uniform height.

List controls

Lists present the user with a collection of items to select from. Several components display lists:

| Use this component: | To display: |
|-----------------------------|--|
| <i>TListBox</i> | A list of text strings |
| <i>TCheckBoxList</i> | A list with a check box in front of each item |
| <i>TComboBox</i> | An edit box with a scrollable drop-down list |
| <i>TTreeView</i> | A hierarchical list |
| <i>TListView</i> | A list of (draggable) items with optional icons, columns, and headings |
| <i>TIconView (CLX only)</i> | A list of items or data in rows and columns displayed as either small or large icons |
| <i>TDateTimePicker</i> | A list box for entering dates or times (VCL only) |
| <i>TMonthCalendar</i> | A calendar for selecting dates (VCL only) |

Use the nonvisual *TStringList* and *TImageList* components to manage sets of strings and images. For more information about string lists, see “Working with string lists” on page 4-15.

List boxes and check-list boxes

List boxes (*TListBox*) and check-list boxes display lists from which users can select items.

- *Items* uses a *TStrings* object to fill the control with values.
- *ItemIndex* indicates which item in the list is selected.
- *MultiSelect* specifies whether a user can select more than one item at a time.
- *Sorted* determines whether the list is arranged alphabetically.
- *Columns* specifies the number of columns in the list control.
- *IntegralHeight* specifies whether the list box shows only entries that fit completely in the vertical space (VCL only).
- *ItemHeight* specifies the height of each item in pixels. The *Style* property can cause *ItemHeight* to be ignored.
- The *Style* property determines how a list control displays its items. By default, items are displayed as strings. By changing the value of *Style*, you can create *owner-draw* list boxes that display items graphically or in varying heights. For information on owner-draw controls, see “Adding graphics to controls” on page 6-11.

To create a simple list box,

- 1 Within your project, drop a list box component from the Component palette onto a form.
- 2 Size the list box and set its alignment as needed.

- 3 Double-click the right side of the *Items* property or choose the ellipsis button to display the String List Editor.
- 4 Use the editor to enter free form text arranged in lines for the contents of the list box.
- 5 Then choose OK.

To let users select multiple items in the list box, you can use the *ExtendedSelect* and *MultiSelect* properties.

Combo boxes

A combo box (*TComboBox*) combines an edit box with a scrollable list. When users enter data into the control—by typing or selecting from the list—the value of the *Text* property changes. If *AutoComplete* is enabled, the application looks for and displays the closest match in the list as the user types the data.

Three types of combo boxes are: standard, drop-down (the default), and drop-down list.

- Use the *Style* property to select the type of combo box you need.
- Use *csDropDown* if you want an edit box with a drop-down list. Use *csDropDownList* to make the edit box read-only (forcing users to choose from the list). Set the *DropDownCount* property to change the number of items displayed in the list.
- Use *csSimple* to create a combo box with a fixed list that does not close. Be sure to resize the combo box so that the list items are displayed.
- Use *csOwnerDrawFixed* or *csOwnerDrawVariable* to create *owner-draw* combo boxes that display items graphically or in varying heights. For information on owner-draw controls, see “Adding graphics to controls” on page 6-11.

At runtime, CLX combo boxes work differently than VCL combo boxes. In CLX (but not in the VCL combo box), you can add a item to a drop down by entering text and pressing Enter in the edit field of a combo box. You can turn this feature off by setting *InsertMode* to *ciNone*. It is also possible to add empty (no string) items to the list in the combo box. Also, if you keep pressing the down arrow key, it does not stop at the last item of the combo box list. It cycles around to the top again.

Tree views

A tree view (*TTreeView*) displays items in an indented outline. The control provides buttons that allow nodes to be expanded and collapsed. You can include icons with items’ text labels and display different icons to indicate whether a node is expanded or collapsed. You can also include graphics, such as check boxes, that reflect state information about the items.

- *Indent* sets the number of pixels horizontally separating items from their parents.
- *ShowButtons* enables the display of '+' and '-' buttons to indicate whether an item can be expanded.

- *ShowLines* enables display of connecting lines to show hierarchical relationships (VCL only).
- *ShowRoot* determines whether lines connecting the top-level items are displayed (VCL only).

To add items to a tree view control at design time, double-click on the control to display the TreeView Items editor. The items you add become the value of the *Items* property. You can change the items at runtime by using the methods of the *Items* property, which is an object of type *TTreeNode*. *TTreeNode* has methods for adding, deleting, and navigating the items in the tree view.

Tree views can display columns and subitems similar to list views in vsReport mode.

List views

List views, created using *TListView*, display lists in various formats. Use the *ViewStyle* property to choose the kind of list you want:

- *vsIcon* and *vsSmallIcon* display each item as an icon with a label. Users can drag items within the list view window (VCL only).
- *vsList* displays items as labeled icons that cannot be dragged.
- *vsReport* displays items on separate lines with information arranged in columns. The leftmost column contains a small icon and label, and subsequent columns contain subitems specified by the application. Use the *ShowColumnHeaders* property to display headers for the columns.

Date-time pickers and month calendars (VCL only)

The *DateTimePicker* component displays a list box for entering dates or times, while the *MonthCalendar* component presents a calendar for entering dates or ranges of dates. To use these components, you must have version 4.70 or later of COMCTL32.DLL (usually located in the Windows\System or Windows\System32 directory) at both design time and runtime. They are not available for use in cross-platform applications.

Grouping controls

A graphical interface is easier to use when related controls and information are presented in groups. C++Builder provides several components for grouping components:

| Use this component: | When you want this: |
|---------------------|--|
| <i>TGroupBox</i> | A standard group box with a title |
| <i>TRadioGroup</i> | A simple group of radio buttons |
| <i>TPanel</i> | A more visually flexible group of controls |
| <i>TScrollBox</i> | A scrollable region containing controls |

| Use this component: | When you want this: |
|-----------------------|--|
| <i>TTabControl</i> | A set of mutually exclusive notebook-style tabs |
| <i>TPageControl</i> | A set of mutually exclusive notebook-style tabs with corresponding pages, each of which may contain other controls |
| <i>THeaderControl</i> | Resizable column headers |

Group boxes and radio groups

A group box (*TGroupBox*) arranges related controls on a form. The most commonly grouped controls are radio buttons. After placing a group box on a form, select components from the Component palette and place them in the group box. The *Caption* property contains text that labels the group box at runtime.

The radio group component (*TRadioGroup*) simplifies the task of assembling radio buttons and making them work together. To add radio buttons to a radio group, edit the *Items* property in the Object Inspector; each string in *Items* makes a radio button appear in the group box with the string as its caption. The value of the *ItemIndex* property determines which radio button is currently selected. Display the radio buttons in a single column or in multiple columns by setting the value of the *Columns* property. To respace the buttons, resize the radio group component.

Panels

The *TPanel* component provides a generic container for other controls. Panels are typically used to visually group components together on a form. Panels can be aligned with the form to maintain the same relative position when the form is resized. The *BorderWidth* property determines the width, in pixels, of the border around a panel.

You can also place other controls onto a panel and use the *Align* property to ensure proper positioning of all the controls in the group on the form. You can make a panel *alTop* aligned so that its position will remain in place even if the form is resized.

The look of the panel can be changed to a raised or lowered look by using the *BevelOuter* and *BevelInner* properties. You can vary the values of these properties to create different visual 3-D effects. Note that if you merely want a raised or lowered bevel, you can use the less resource intensive *TBevel* control instead.

You can also use one or more panels to build various status bars or information display areas.

Scroll boxes

Scroll boxes (*TScrollBar*) create scrolling areas within a form. Applications often need to display more information than will fit in a particular area. Some controls—such as list boxes, memos, and forms themselves—can automatically scroll their contents.

Another use of scroll boxes is to create multiple scrolling areas (views) in a window. Views are common in commercial word-processor, spreadsheet, and project management applications. Scroll boxes give you the additional flexibility to define arbitrary scrolling subregions of a form.

Like panels and group boxes, scroll boxes contain other controls, such as *TButton* and *TCheckBox* objects. But a scroll box is normally invisible. If the controls in the scroll box cannot fit in its visible area, the scroll box automatically displays scroll bars.

Another use of a scroll box is to restrict scrolling in areas of a window, such as a toolbar or status bar (*TPanel* components). To prevent a toolbar and status bar from scrolling, hide the scroll bars, and then position a scroll box in the client area of the window between the toolbar and status bar. The scroll bars associated with the scroll box will appear to belong to the window, but will scroll only the area inside the scroll box.

Tab controls

The tab control component (*TTabControl*) creates a set of tabs that look like notebook dividers. You can create tabs by editing the *Tabs* property in the Object Inspector; each string in *Tabs* represents a tab. The tab control is a single panel with one set of components on it. To change the appearance of the control when the tabs are clicked, you need to write an *OnChange* event handler. To create a multipage dialog box, use a page control instead.

Page controls

The page control component (*TPageControl*) is a page set suitable for multipage dialog boxes. A page control displays multiple overlapping pages that are *TTabSheet* objects. A page is selected in the user interface by clicking a tab on top of the control.

To create a new page in a page control at design time, right-click the control and choose New Page. At runtime, you add new pages by creating the object for the page and setting its *PageControl* property:

```
TTabSheet *pTabSheet = new TTabSheet(PageControl1);
pTabSheet->PageControl = PageControl1;
```

To access the active page, use the *ActivePage* property. To change the active page, you can set either the *ActivePage* or the *ActivePageIndex* property.

Header controls

A header control (*THeaderControl*) is a set of column headers that the user can select or resize at runtime. Edit the control's *Sections* property to add or modify headers. You can place the header sections above columns or fields. For example, header sections might be placed over a list box (*TListBox*).

Display controls

There are many ways to provide users with information about the state of an application. For example, some components—including *TForm*—have a *Caption* property that can be set at runtime. You can also create dialog boxes to display messages. In addition, the following components are especially useful for providing visual feedback at runtime.

| Use this component or property: | To do this: |
|--|---|
| <i>TStatusBar</i> | Display a status region (usually at the bottom of a window) |
| <i>TProgressBar</i> | Show the amount of work completed for a particular task |
| <i>Hint</i> and <i>ShowHint</i> | Activate fly-by or “tooltip” help |
| <i>HelpContext</i> and <i>HelpFile</i> | Link context-sensitive online Help |

Status bars

Although you can use a panel to make a status bar, it is simpler to use the status bar component. By default, the status bar’s *Align* property is set to *alBottom*, which takes care of both position and size.

If you only want to display one text string at a time in the status bar, set its *SimplePanel* property to *true* and use the *SimpleText* property to control the text displayed in the status bar.

You can also divide a status bar into several text areas, called panels. To create panels, edit the *Panels* property in the Object Inspector, setting each panel’s *Width*, *Alignment*, and *Text* properties from the Panels editor. Each panel’s *Text* property contains the text displayed in the panel.

Progress bars

When your application performs a time-consuming operation, you can use a progress bar to show how much of the task is completed. A progress bar displays a dotted line that grows from left to right.

Figure 9.2 A progress bar



The *Position* property tracks the length of the dotted line. *Max* and *Min* determine the range of *Position*. To make the line grow, increment *Position* by calling the *StepBy* or *StepIt* method. The *Step* property determines the increment used by *StepIt*.

Help and hint properties

Most visual controls can display context-sensitive Help as well as fly-by hints at runtime. The *HelpContext* and *HelpFile* properties establish a Help context number and Help file for the control.

The *Hint* property contains the text string that appears when the user moves the mouse pointer over a control or menu item. To enable hints, set *ShowHint* to *true*; setting *ParentShowHint* to *true* causes the control's *ShowHint* property to have the same value as its parent's.

Grids

Grids display information in rows and columns. If you're writing a database application, use the *TDBGrid* or *TDBCtrGrid* component described in Chapter 19, "Using data controls." Otherwise, use a standard draw grid or string grid.

Draw grids

A draw grid (*TDrawGrid*) displays arbitrary data in tabular format. Write an *OnDrawCell* event handler to fill in the cells of the grid.

- The *CellRect* method returns the screen coordinates of a specified cell, while the *MouseToCell* method returns the column and row of the cell at specified screen coordinates. The *Selection* property indicates the boundaries of the currently selected cells.
- The *TopRow* property determines which row is currently at the top of the grid. The *LeftCol* property determines the first visible column on the left. *VisibleColCount* and *VisibleRowCount* are the number of columns and rows visible in the grid.
- You can change the width or height of a column or row with the *ColWidths* and *RowHeights* properties. Set the width of the grid lines with the *GridLineWidth* property. Add scroll bars to the grid with the *ScrollBars* property.
- You can choose to have fixed or non-scrolling columns and rows with the *FixedCols* and *FixedRows* properties. Assign a color to the fixed columns and rows with the *FixedColor* property.
- The *Options*, *DefaultColWidth*, and *DefaultRowHeight* properties also affect the appearance and behavior of the grid.

String grids

The string grid component is a descendant of *TDrawGrid* that adds specialized functionality to simplify the display of strings. The *Cells* property lists the strings for each cell in the grid; the *Objects* property lists objects associated with each string. All the strings and associated objects for a particular column or row can be accessed through the *Cols* or *Rows* property.

Value list editors (VCL only)

TValueListEditor is a specialized grid for editing string lists that contain name/value pairs in the form Name=Value. The names and values are stored as a *TStrings* descendant that is the value of the *Strings* property. You can look up the value for any name using the *Values* property. *TValueListEditor* is not available for cross-platform programming.

The grid contains two columns, one for the names and one for the values. By default, the Name column is named “Key” and the Value column is named “Value”. You can change these defaults by setting the *TitleCaptions* property. You can omit these titles using the *DisplayOptions* property (which also controls resize when you resize the control.)

You can control whether users can edit the Name column using the *KeyOptions* property. *KeyOptions* contains separate options to allow editing, adding new names, deleting names, and controlling whether new names must be unique.

You can control how users edit the entries in the Value column using the *ItemProps* property. Each item has a separate *TItemProp* object that lets you

- Supply an edit mask to limit the valid input.
- Specify a maximum length for values.
- Mark the value as read-only.
- Specify that the value list editor displays a drop-down arrow that opens a pick list of values from which the user can choose or an ellipsis button that triggers an event you can use for displaying a dialog in which users enter values.

If you specify that there is a drop-down arrow, you must supply the list of values from which the user chooses. These can be a static list (the *PickList* property of the *TItemProp* object) or they can be dynamically added at runtime using the value list editor’s *OnGetPickList* event. You can also combine these approaches and have a static list that the *OnGetPickList* event handler modifies.

If you specify that there is an ellipsis button, you must supply the response that occurs when the user clicks that button (including the setting of a value, if appropriate). You provide this response by writing an *OnEditButtonClick* event handler.

Graphic controls

The following components make it easy to incorporate graphics into an application.

| Use this component: | To display: |
|---------------------|---|
| <i>TImage</i> | Graphics files |
| <i>TShape</i> | Geometric shapes |
| <i>TBevel</i> | 3-D lines and frames |
| <i>TPaintBox</i> | Graphics drawn by your program at runtime |
| <i>TAnimate</i> | AVI files (VCL only) |

Notice that these include common paint routines (*Repaint*, *Invalidate*, and so on) that never need to receive focus.

Images

The image component displays a graphical image, like a bitmap, icon, or metafile. The *Picture* property determines the graphic to be displayed. Use *Center*, *AutoSize*, *Stretch*, and *Transparent* to set display options. For more information, see “Overview of graphics programming” on page 10-1.

Shapes

The shape component displays a geometric shape. It is a nonwindowed control (not widget-based in CLX) and therefore, cannot receive user input. The *Shape* property determines which shape the control assumes. To change the shape’s color or add a pattern, use the *Brush* property, which holds a *TBrush* object. How the shape is painted depends on the *Color* and *Style* properties of *TBrush*.

Bevels

The bevel component (*TBevel*) is a line that can appear raised or lowered. Some components, such as *TPanel*, have built-in properties to create beveled borders. When such properties are unavailable, use *TBevel* to create beveled outlines, boxes, or frames.

Paint boxes

The paint box (*TPaintBox*) allows your application to draw on a form. Write an *OnPaint* event handler to render an image directly on the paint box’s *Canvas*. Drawing outside the boundaries of the paint box is prevented. For more information, see “Overview of graphics programming” on page 10-1.

Animation control (VCL only)

The animation component is a window that silently displays an Audio Video Interleaved (AVI) clip. An AVI clip is a series of bitmap frames, like a movie. Although AVI clips can have sound, animation controls work only with silent AVI clips. The files you use must be either uncompressed AVI files or AVI clips compressed using run-length encoding (RLE). Animation control cannot be used in cross-platform programming.

Following are some of the properties of an animation component:

- *ResHandle* is the Windows handle for the module that contains the AVI clip as a resource. Set *ResHandle* at runtime to the instance handle or module handle of the module that includes the animation resource. After setting *ResHandle*, set the

ResID or *ResName* property to specify which resource in the indicated module is the AVI clip that should be displayed by the animation control.

- Set *AutoSize* to **true** to have the animation control adjust its size to the size of the frames in the AVI clip.
- *StartFrame* and *StopFrame* specify in which frames to start and stop the clip.
- Set *CommonAVI* to display one of the common Windows AVI clips provided in Shell32.DLL.
- Specify when to start and interrupt the animation by setting the *Active* property to **true** and **false**, respectively, and how many repetitions to play by setting the *Repetitions* property.
- The *Timers* property lets you display the frames using a timer. This is useful for synchronizing the animation sequence with other actions, such as playing a sound track.

Working with graphics and multimedia

Graphics and multimedia elements can add polish to your applications. C++Builder offers a variety of ways to introduce these features into your application. To add graphical elements, you can insert pre-drawn pictures at design time, create them using graphical controls at design time, or draw them dynamically at runtime. To add multimedia capabilities, C++Builder includes special components that can play audio and video clips.

CLX Multimedia components are available in the VCL only.

Overview of graphics programming

The VCL graphics components defined in the Graphics unit encapsulate the Windows Graphics Device Interface (GDI), making it easy to add graphics to your Windows applications. CLX graphics components defined in the QGraphics unit encapsulate the Qt graphics widgets for adding graphics to cross-platform applications.

To draw graphics in a C++Builder application, you draw on an object's *canvas*, rather than directly on the object. The canvas is a property of the object, and is itself an object. A main advantage of the canvas object is that it handles resources effectively and it takes care of device context, so your programs can use the same methods regardless of whether you are drawing on the screen, to a printer, or on bitmaps or metafiles (drawings in CLX). Canvases are available only at runtime, so you do all your work with canvases by writing code.

VCL Since *TCanvas* is a wrapper resource manager around the Windows device context, you can also use all Windows GDI functions on the canvas. The *Handle* property of the canvas is the device context Handle.

CLX *TCanvas* is a wrapper resource manager around a Qt painter. The *Handle* property of the canvas is a typed pointer to an instance of a Qt painter object. Having this exposed allows you to use low-level Qt graphics library functions that require *QPainterH*.

How graphic images appear in your application depends on the type of object whose canvas you draw on. If you are drawing directly onto the canvas of a control, the picture is displayed immediately. However, if you draw on an offscreen image such as a *TBitmap* canvas, the image is not displayed until a control copies from the bitmap onto the control's canvas. That is, when drawing bitmaps and assigning them to an image control, the image appears only when the control has an opportunity to process its *OnPaint* message (VCL) or event (CLX).

When working with graphics, you often encounter the terms *drawing* and *painting*:

- Drawing is the creation of a single, specific graphic element, such as a line or a shape, with code. In your code, you tell an object to draw a specific graphic in a specific place on its canvas by calling a drawing method of the canvas.
- Painting is the creation of the entire appearance of an object. Painting usually involves drawing. That is, in response to *OnPaint* events, an object generally draws some graphics. An edit box, for example, paints itself by drawing a rectangle and then drawing some text inside. A shape control, on the other hand, paints itself by drawing a single graphic.

The examples in the beginning of this chapter demonstrate how to draw various graphics, but they do so in response to *OnPaint* events. Later sections show how to do the same kind of drawing in response to other events.

Refreshing the screen

At certain times, the operating system determines that objects onscreen need to refresh their appearance, so it generates *WM_PAINT* messages on Windows, which the VCL routes to *OnPaint* events. (If you are using CLX for cross-platform development, a paint event is generated, which CLX routes to *OnPaint* events.) If you have written an *OnPaint* event handler for that object, it is called when you use the *Refresh* method. The default name generated for the *OnPaint* event handler in a form is *FormPaint*. You may want to use the *Refresh* method at times to refresh a component or form. For example, you might call *Refresh* in the form's *OnResize* event handler to redisplay any graphics or if using the VCL, you want to paint a background on a form.

While some operating systems automatically handle the redrawing of the client area of a window that has been invalidated, Windows does not. In the Windows operating system anything drawn on the screen is permanent. When a form or control is temporarily obscured, for example during window dragging, the form or control must repaint the obscured area when it is re-exposed. For more information about the *WM_PAINT* message, see the Windows online Help.

If you use the *TImage* control to display a graphical image on a form, the painting and refreshing of the graphic contained in the *TImage* is handled automatically. The *Picture* property specifies the actual bitmap, drawing, or other graphic object that

TImage displays. You can also set the *Proportional* property to ensure that the image can be fully displayed in the image control without any distortion. Drawing on a *TImage* creates a persistent image. Consequently, you do not need to do anything to redraw the contained image. In contrast, *TPaintBox*'s canvas maps directly onto the screen device (VCL) or the painter (CLX), so that anything drawn to the *PaintBox*'s canvas is transitory. This is true of nearly all controls, including the form itself. Therefore, if you draw or paint on a *TPaintBox* in its constructor, you will need to add that code to your *OnPaint* event handler in order for the image to be repainted each time the client area is invalidated.

Types of graphic objects

The VCL/CLX provides the graphic objects shown in Table 10.1. These objects have methods to draw on the canvas, which are described in “Using Canvas methods to draw graphic objects” on page 10-10 and to load and save to graphics files, as described in “Loading and saving graphics files” on page 10-19.

Table 10.1 Graphic object types

| Object | Description |
|---------------------|--|
| Picture | Used to hold any graphic image. To add additional graphic file formats, use the <i>Picture Register</i> method. Use this to handle arbitrary files such as displaying images in an image control. |
| Bitmap | A powerful graphics object used to create, manipulate (scale, scroll, rotate, and paint), and store images as files on a disk. Creating copies of a bitmap is fast since the <i>handle</i> is copied, not the image. |
| Clipboard | Represents the container for any text or graphics that are cut, copied, or pasted from or to an application. With the clipboard, you can get and retrieve data according to the appropriate format; handle reference counting, and opening and closing the clipboard; manage and manipulate formats for objects in the clipboard. |
| Icon | Represents the value loaded from an icon file (::ICO file). |
| Metafile (VCL only) | Contains a file that records the operations required to construct an image, rather than contain the actual bitmap pixels of the image. Metafiles or drawings are extremely scalable without the loss of image detail and often require much less memory than bitmaps, particularly for high-resolution devices, such as printers. However, metafiles and drawings do not display as fast as bitmaps. Use a metafile or drawing when versatility or precision is more important than performance. |
| Drawing (CLX only) | |

Common properties and methods of Canvas

Table 10.2 lists the commonly used properties of the Canvas object. For a complete list of properties and methods, see the *TCanvas* component in online Help.

Table 10.2 Common properties of the Canvas object

| Properties | Descriptions |
|------------|--|
| Font | Specifies the font to use when writing text on the image. Set the properties of the TFont object to specify the font face, color, size, and style of the font. |
| Brush | Determines the color and pattern the canvas uses for filling graphical shapes and backgrounds. Set the properties of the TBrush object to specify the color and pattern or bitmap to use when filling in spaces on the canvas. |
| Pen | Specifies the kind of pen the canvas uses for drawing lines and outlining shapes. Set the properties of the TPen object to specify the color, style, width, and mode of the pen. |
| PenPos | Specifies the current drawing position of the pen. |
| Pixels | Specifies the color of the area of pixels within the current ClipRect. |

These properties are described in more detail in “Using the properties of the Canvas object” on page 10-5.

Table 10.3 is a list of several methods you can use:

Table 10.3 Common methods of the Canvas object

| Method | Descriptions |
|----------------------|---|
| Arc | Draws an arc on the image along the perimeter of the ellipse bounded by the specified rectangle. |
| Chord | Draws a closed figure represented by the intersection of a line and an ellipse. |
| CopyRect | Copies part of an image from another canvas into the canvas. |
| Draw | Renders the graphic object specified by the Graphic parameter on the canvas at the location given by the coordinates (X, Y). |
| Ellipse | Draws the ellipse defined by a bounding rectangle on the canvas. |
| FillRect | Fills the specified rectangle on the canvas using the current brush. |
| FloodFill (VCL only) | Fills an area of the canvas using the current brush. |
| FrameRect | Draws a rectangle using the Brush of the canvas to draw the border. |
| LineTo | Draws a line on the canvas from PenPos to the point specified by X and Y, and sets the pen position to (X, Y). |
| MoveTo | Changes the current drawing position to the point (X,Y). |
| Pie | Draws a pie-shaped section of the ellipse bounded by the rectangle (X1, Y1) and (X2, Y2) on the canvas. |
| Polygon | Draws a series of lines on the canvas connecting the points passed in and closing the shape by drawing a line from the last point to the first point. |
| Polyline | Draws a series of lines on the canvas with the current pen, connecting each of the points passed to it in Points. |

Table 10.3 Common methods of the Canvas object (continued)

| Method | Descriptions |
|--------------------------|--|
| Rectangle | Draws a rectangle on the canvas with its upper left corner at the point (X1, Y1) and its lower right corner at the point (X2, Y2). Use <i>Rectangle</i> to draw a box using Pen and fill it using Brush. |
| RoundRect | Draws a rectangle with rounded corners on the canvas. |
| StretchDraw | Draws a graphic on the canvas so that the image fits in the specified rectangle. The graphic image may need to change its magnitude or aspect ratio to fit. |
| TextHeight, TextWidth | Returns the height and width, respectively, of a string in the current font. Height includes leading between lines. |
| TextOut | Writes a string on the canvas, starting at the point (X,Y), and then updates the PenPos to the end of the string. |
| TextRect | Writes a string inside a region; any portions of the string that fall outside the region do not appear. |

These methods are described in more detail in “Using Canvas methods to draw graphic objects” on page 10-10.

Using the properties of the Canvas object

With the Canvas object, you can set the properties of a pen for drawing lines, a brush for filling shapes, a font for writing text, and an array of pixels to represent the image.

This section describes:

- Using pens.
- Using brushes.
- Reading and setting pixels.

Using pens

The *Pen* property of a canvas controls the way lines appear, including lines drawn as the outlines of shapes. Drawing a straight line is really just changing a group of pixels that lie between two points.

The pen itself has four properties you can change: *Color*, *Width*, *Style*, and *Mode*.

- *Color* property changes the pen color.
- *Width* property changes the pen width.
- *Style* property changes the pen style.
- *Mode* property changes the pen mode.

The values of these properties determine how the pen changes the pixels in the line. By default, every pen starts out black, with a width of 1 pixel, a solid style, and a mode called copy that overwrites anything already on the canvas.

You can use *TPenRecall* for quick saving off and restoring the properties of pens.

Changing the pen color

You can set the color of a pen as you would any other *Color* property at runtime. A pen's color determines the color of the lines the pen draws, including lines drawn as the boundaries of shapes, as well as other lines and polylines. To change the pen color, assign a value to the *Color* property of the pen.

To let the user choose a new color for the pen, put a color grid on the pen's toolbar. A color grid can set both foreground and background colors. For a non-grid pen style, you must consider the background color, which is drawn in the gaps between line segments. Background color comes from the Brush color property.

Since the user chooses a new color by clicking the grid, this code changes the pen's color in response to the *OnClick* event:

```
void __fastcall TForm1::PenColorClick(TObject *Sender)
{
    Canvas->Pen->Color = PenColor->ForegroundColor;
}
```

Changing the pen width

A pen's width determines the thickness, in pixels, of the lines it draws.

Note When the thickness is greater than 1, Windows always draw solid lines, regardless of the value of the pen's *Style* property.

To change the pen width, assign a numeric value to the pen's *Width* property.

Suppose you have a scroll bar on the pen's toolbar to set width values for the pen. And suppose you want to update the label next to the scroll bar to provide feedback to the user. Using the scroll bar's position to determine the pen width, you update the pen width every time the position changes.

This is how to handle the scroll bar's *OnChange* event:

```
void __fastcall TForm1::PenWidthChange(TObject *Sender)
{
    Canvas->Pen->Width = PenWidth->Position;           // set the pen width directly
    PenSize->Caption = IntToStr(PenWidth->Position); // convert to string
}
```

Changing the pen style

A pen's *Style* property allows you to set solid lines, dashed lines, dotted lines, and so on.

VCL Note For cross-platform applications deployed under Windows, Windows does not support dashed or dotted line styles for pens wider than one pixel and makes all larger pens solid, no matter what style you specify.

The task of setting the properties of pen is an ideal case for having different controls share same event handler to handle events. To determine which control actually got the event, you check the *Sender* parameter.

To create one click-event handler for six pen-style buttons on a pen's toolbar, do the following:

- 1 Select all six pen-style buttons and select the Object Inspector | Events | *OnClick* event and in the Handler column, type *SetPenStyle*.

C++Builder generates an empty click-event handler called *SetPenStyle* and attaches it to the *OnClick* events of all six buttons.

- 2 Fill in the click-event handler by setting the pen's style depending on the value of *Sender*, which is the control that sent the click event:

```
void __fastcall TForm1::SetPenStyle(TObject *Sender)
{
    if (Sender == SolidPen)
        Canvas->Pen->Style = psSolid;
    else if (Sender == DashPen)
        Canvas->Pen->Style = psDash;
    else if (Sender == DotPen)
        Canvas->Pen->Style = psDot;
    else if (Sender == DashDotPen)
        Canvas->Pen->Style = psDashDot;
    else if (Sender == DashDotDotPen)
        Canvas->Pen->Style = psDashDotDot;
    else if (Sender == ClearPen)
        Canvas->Pen->Style = psClear;
}
```

The above event handler code could be further reduced by putting the pen style constants into the *Tag* properties of the pen style buttons. Then this event code would be something like:

```
void __fastcall TForm1::SetPenStyle(TObject *Sender)
{
    if (Sender->InheritsFrom (__classid(TSpeedButton))
        Canvas->Pen->Style = (TPenStyle) ((TSpeedButton *)Sender)->Tag;
}
```

Changing the pen mode

A pen's *Mode* property lets you specify various ways to combine the pen's color with the color on the canvas. For example, the pen could always be black, be an inverse of the canvas background color, inverse of the pen color, and so on. See *TPen* in online Help for details.

Getting the pen position

The current drawing position—the position from which the pen begins drawing its next line—is called the pen position. The canvas stores its pen position in its *PenPos* property. Pen position affects the drawing of lines only; for shapes and text, you specify all the coordinates you need.

To set the pen position, call the *MoveTo* method of the canvas. For example, the following code moves the pen position to the upper left corner of the canvas:

```
Canvas->MoveTo(0, 0);
```

Note Drawing a line with the *LineTo* method also moves the current position to the endpoint of the line.

Using brushes

The *Brush* property of a canvas controls the way you fill areas, including the interior of shapes. Filling an area with a brush is a way of changing a large number of adjacent pixels in a specified way.

The brush has three properties you can manipulate:

- *Color* property changes the fill color.
- *Style* property changes the brush style.
- *Bitmap* property uses a bitmap as a brush pattern.

The values of these properties determine the way the canvas fills shapes or other areas. By default, every brush starts out white, with a solid style and no pattern bitmap.

You can use *TBrushRecall* for quick saving off and restoring the properties of brushes.

Changing the brush color

A brush's color determines what color the canvas uses to fill shapes. To change the fill color, assign a value to the brush's *Color* property. Brush is used for background color in text and line drawing so you typically set the background color property.

You can set the brush color just as you do the pen color, in response to a click on a color grid on the brush's toolbar (see "Changing the pen color" on page 10-6):

```
void __fastcall TForm1::BrushColorClick(TObject *Sender)
{
    Canvas->Brush->Color = BrushColor->BackgroundColor;
}
```

Changing the brush style

A brush style determines what pattern the canvas uses to fill shapes. It lets you specify various ways to combine the brush's color with any colors already on the canvas. The predefined styles include solid color, no color, and various line and hatch patterns.

To change the style of a brush, set its *Style* property to one of the predefined values: *bsSolid*, *bsClear*, *bsHorizontal*, *bsVertical*, *bsFDiagonal*, *bsBDiagonal*, *bsCross*, or *bsDiagCross*.

This example sets brush styles by sharing a click-event handler for a set of eight brush-style buttons. All eight buttons are selected, the Object Inspector | Events | *OnClick* is set, and the *OnClick* handler is named *SetBrushStyle*. Here is the handler code:

```
void __fastcall TForm1::SetBrushStyle(TObject *Sender)
{
    if (Sender == SolidBrush)
        Canvas->Brush->Style = bsSolid;
```

```

else if (Sender == ClearBrush)
    Canvas->Brush->Style = bsClear;
else if (Sender == HorizontalBrush)
    Canvas->Brush->Style = bsHorizontal;
else if (Sender == VerticalBrush)
    Canvas->Brush->Style = bsVertical;
else if (Sender == FDiagonalBrush)
    Canvas->Brush->Style = bsFDiagonal;
else if (Sender == BDiagonalBrush)
    Canvas->Brush->Style = bsBDiagonal;
else if (Sender == CrossBrush)
    Canvas->Brush->Style = bsCross;
else if (Sender == DiagCrossBrush)
    Canvas->Brush->Style = bsDiagCross;
}

```

The above event handler code could be further reduced by putting the brush style constants into the *Tag* properties of the brush style buttons. Then this event code would be something like:

```

void __fastcall TForm1::SetBrushStyle(TObject *Sender)
{
    if (Sender->InheritsFrom (__classid(TSpeedButton))
        Canvas->Brush->Style = (TBrushStyle) ((TSpeedButton *)Sender)->Tag;
}

```

Setting the Brush Bitmap property

A brush's *Bitmap* property lets you specify a bitmap image for the brush to use as a pattern for filling shapes and other areas.

The following example loads a bitmap from a file and assigns it to the Brush of the Canvas of Form1:

```

BrushBmp->LoadFromFile("MyBitmap.bmp");
Form1->Canvas->Brush->Bitmap = BrushBmp;
Form1->Canvas->FillRect(Rect(0,0,100,100));

```

Note The brush does not assume ownership of a bitmap object assigned to its *Bitmap* property. You must ensure that the Bitmap object remains valid for the lifetime of the Brush, and you must free the Bitmap object yourself afterwards.

Reading and setting pixels

You will notice that every canvas has an indexed *Pixels* property that represents the individual colored points that make up the image on the canvas. You rarely need to access *Pixels* directly, it is available only for convenience to perform small actions such as finding or setting a pixel's color.

Note Setting and getting individual pixels is thousands of times slower than performing graphics operations on regions. Do not use the Pixel array property to access the image pixels of a general array. For high-performance access to image pixels, see the *TBitmap::ScanLine* property.

Using Canvas methods to draw graphic objects

This section shows how to use some common methods to draw graphic objects. It covers:

- Drawing lines and polylines.
- Drawing shapes.
- Drawing rounded rectangles.
- Drawing polygons.

Drawing lines and polylines

A canvas can draw straight lines and polylines. A straight line is just a line of pixels connecting two points. A polyline is a series of straight lines, connected end-to-end. The canvas draws all lines using its pen.

Drawing lines

To draw a straight line on a canvas, use the *LineTo* method of the canvas.

LineTo draws a line from the current pen position to the point you specify and makes the endpoint of the line the current position. The canvas draws the line using its pen.

For example, the following method draws crossed diagonal lines across a form whenever the form is painted:

```
void __fastcall TForm1::FormPaint(TObject *Sender)
{
    Canvas->MoveTo(0,0);
    Canvas->LineTo(ClientWidth, ClientHeight);
    Canvas->MoveTo(0, ClientHeight);
    Canvas->LineTo(ClientWidth, 0);
}
```

Drawing polylines

In addition to individual lines, the canvas can also draw polylines, which are groups of any number of connected line segments.

To draw a polyline on a canvas, call the *Polyline* method of the canvas.

The parameter passed to the *Polyline* method is an array of points. You can think of a polyline as performing a *MoveTo* on the first point and *LineTo* on each successive point. For drawing multiple lines, *Polyline* is faster than using the *MoveTo* method and the *LineTo* method because it eliminates a lot of call overhead.

The following method, for example, draws a rhombus in a form:

```
void __fastcall TForm1::FormPaint(TObject *Sender)
{
    TPoint vertices[5];
    vertices[0] = Point(0, 0);
    vertices[1] = Point(50, 0);
    vertices[2] = Point(75, 50);
```



```

vertices[3] = Point(25, 50);
vertices[4] = Point(0, 0);
Canvas->Polyline(vertices, 4);
}

```

Note that the last parameter to *Polyline* is the index of the last point, not the number of points.

Drawing shapes

Canvases have methods for drawing different kinds of shapes. The canvas draws the outline of a shape with its pen, then fills the interior with its brush. The line that forms the border for the shape is controlled by the current *Pen* object.

This section covers:

- Drawing rectangles and ellipses.
- Drawing rounded rectangles.
- Drawing polygons.

Drawing rectangles and ellipses

To draw a rectangle or ellipse on a canvas, call the canvas's *Rectangle* method or *Ellipse* method, passing the coordinates of a bounding rectangle.

The *Rectangle* method draws the bounding rectangle; *Ellipse* draws an ellipse that touches all sides of the rectangle.

The following method draws a rectangle filling a form's upper left quadrant, then draws an ellipse in the same area:

```

void __fastcall TForm1::FormPaint(TObject *Sender)
{
    Canvas->Rectangle(0, 0, ClientWidth/2, ClientHeight/2);
    Canvas->Ellipse(0, 0, ClientWidth/2, ClientHeight/2);
}

```

Drawing rounded rectangles

To draw a rounded rectangle on a canvas, call the canvas's *RoundRect* method.

The first four parameters passed to *RoundRect* are a bounding rectangle, just as for the *Rectangle* method or the *Ellipse* method. *RoundRect* takes two more parameters that indicate how to draw the rounded corners.

The following method, for example, draws a rounded rectangle in a form's upper left quadrant, rounding the corners as sections of a circle with a diameter of 10 pixels:

```

void __fastcall TForm1::FormPaint(TObject *Sender)
{
    Canvas->RoundRect(0, 0, ClientWidth/2, ClientHeight/2, 10, 10);
}

```

Drawing polygons

To draw a polygon with any number of sides on a canvas, call the *Polygon* method of the canvas.

Polygon takes an array of points as its only parameter and connects the points with the pen, then connects the last point to the first to close the polygon. After drawing the lines, *Polygon* uses the brush to fill the area inside the polygon.

For example, the following code draws a right triangle in the lower left half of a form:

```
void __fastcall TForm1::FormPaint(TObject *Sender)
{
    TPoint vertices[3];
    vertices[0] = Point(0, 0);
    vertices[1] = Point(0, ClientHeight);
    vertices[2] = Point(ClientWidth, ClientHeight);
    Canvas->Polygon(vertices, 2);
}
```

Handling multiple drawing objects in your application

Various drawing methods (rectangle, shape, line, and so on) are typically available on the toolbar and button panel. Applications can respond to clicks on speed buttons to set the desired drawing objects. This section describes how to:

- Keep track of which drawing tool to use.
- Change the tool with speed buttons.
- Use drawing tools.

Keeping track of which drawing tool to use

A graphics program needs to keep track of what kind of drawing tool (such as a line, rectangle, ellipse, or rounded rectangle) a user might want to use at any given time. Typically, you would use the C++ enumerated type to list the available tools. Since an enumerated type is also a type declaration, you can use C++'s type-checking to ensure that you assign *only* those specific values.

For example, the following code declares an enumerated type for each drawing tool available in a graphics application:

```
typedef enum {dtLine, dtRectangle, dtEllipse, dtRoundRect} TDrawingTool;
```

A variable of type *TDrawingTool* can be assigned only one of the constants *dtLine*, *dtRectangle*, *dtEllipse*, or *dtRoundRect*.

By convention, type identifiers begin with the letter *T*, and groups of similar constants (such as those making up an enumerated type) begin with a 2-letter prefix (such as *dt* for “drawing tool”).

In the following code, a field added to a form keeps track of the form's drawing tool:

```
enum TDrawingTool {dtLine, dtRectangle, dtEllipse, dtRoundRect};

class TForm1 : public TForm
{
    __published: // IDE-managed Components
    void __fastcall FormMouseDown(TObject *Sender, TMouseButton Button,
        TShiftState Shift, int X, int Y);
};
```

```

void __fastcall TForm1::FormMouseMove(TObject *Sender, TShiftState Shift, int X,
int Y);
void __fastcall TForm1::FormMouseUp(TObject *Sender, TMouseButton Button,
TShiftState Shift, int X, int Y);
private:// User declarations
public:// User declarations
__fastcall TForm1(TComponent* Owner);
bool Drawing; //field to track whether button was pressed
TPoint Origin, MovePt; // fields to store points
TDrawingTool DrawingTool; // field to hold current tool
};

```

Changing the tool with speed buttons

Each drawing tool needs an associated *OnClick* event handler. Suppose your application had a toolbar button for each of four drawing tools: line, rectangle, ellipse, and rounded rectangle. You would attach the following event handlers to the *OnClick* events of the four drawing-tool buttons, setting *DrawingTool* to the appropriate value for each:

```

void __fastcall TForm1::LineButtonClick(TObject *Sender) // LineButton
{
    DrawingTool = dtLine;
}

void __fastcall TForm1::RectangleButtonClick(TObject *Sender) // RectangleButton
{
    DrawingTool = dtRectangle;
}

void __fastcall TForm1::EllipseButtonClick(TObject *Sender) // EllipseButton
{
    DrawingTool = dtEllipse;
}

void __fastcall TForm1::RoundedRectButtonClick(TObject *Sender) // RoundRectBtn
{
    DrawingTool = dtRoundRect;
}

```

Using drawing tools

Now that you can tell what tool to use, you must indicate how to draw the different shapes. The only methods that perform any drawing are the mouse-move and mouse-up handlers, and the only drawing code draws lines, no matter what tool is selected.

To use different drawing tools, your code needs to specify how to draw, based on the selected tool. You add this instruction to each tool's event handler.

This section describes:

- Drawing shapes.
- Sharing code among event handlers.

Drawing shapes

Drawing shapes is just as easy as drawing lines. Each one takes a single statement; you just need the coordinates.

Here's a rewrite of the *OnMouseDown* event handler that draws shapes for all four tools:

```
void __fastcall TForm1::FormMouseDown(TObject *Sender, TMouseButton Button,
                                     TShiftState Shift, int X, int Y){
    switch (DrawingTool)
    {
        case dtLine:
            Canvas->MoveTo(Origin.x, Origin.y);
            Canvas->LineTo(X, Y);
            break;
        case dtRectangle:
            Canvas->Rectangle(Origin.x, Origin.y, X, Y);
            break;
        case dtEllipse:
            Canvas->Ellipse(Origin.x, Origin.y, X, Y);
            break;
        case dtRoundRect:
            Canvas->Rectangle(Origin.x, Origin.y, X, Y, (Origin.x - X)/2,
                           (Origin.y - Y)/2);
            break;
    }
    Drawing = false;
}
```

Of course, you also need to update the *OnMouseMove* handler to draw shapes:

```
void __fastcall TForm1::FormMouseMove(TObject *Sender, TMouseButton Button,
                                     TShiftState Shift, int X, int Y)
{
    if (Drawing)
    {
        Canvas->Pen->Mode = pmNotXor;           // use XOR mode to draw/erase
        switch (DrawingTool)
        {
            case dtLine:
                Canvas->MoveTo(Origin.x, Origin.y);
                Canvas->LineTo(MovePt.x, MovePt.y);
                Canvas->MoveTo(Origin.x, Origin.y);
                Canvas->LineTo(X, Y);
                break;
            case dtRectangle:
                Canvas->Rectangle(Origin.x, Origin.y, MovePt.x, MovePt.y);
                Canvas->Rectangle(Origin.x, Origin.y, X, Y);
                break;
            case dtEllipse:
                Canvas->Ellipse(Origin.x, Origin.y, MovePt.x, MovePt.y);
                Canvas->Ellipse(Origin.x, Origin.y, X, Y);
                break;
            case dtRoundRect:
                Canvas->Rectangle(Origin.x, Origin.y, MovePt.x, MovePt.y,
                               (Origin.x - MovePt.x)/2, (Origin.y - MovePt.y)/2);
        }
    }
}
```

```

        Canvas->Rectangle(Origin.x, Origin.y, X, Y,
                        (Origin.x - X)/2, (Origin.y - Y)/2);
        break;
    }
    MovePt = Point(X, Y);
}
Canvas->Pen->Mode = pmCopy;
}

```

Typically, all the repetitious code that is in the above example would be in a separate routine. The next section shows all the shape-drawing code in a single routine that all mouse-event handlers can call.

Sharing code among event handlers

Any time you find that many your event handlers use the same code, you can make your application more efficient by moving the repeated code into a routine that all event handlers can share.

To add a method to a form:

- 1 Add the method declaration to the form object.

You can add the declaration in either the **public** or **private** parts at the end of the form object's declaration. If the code is just sharing the details of handling some events, it's probably safest to make the shared method **private**.

- 2 Write the method implementation in the .cpp file for the form's unit.

The header for the method implementation must match the declaration exactly, with the same parameters in the same order.

The following code adds a method to the form called *DrawShape* and calls it from each of the handlers. First, the declaration of *DrawShape* is added to the form object's declaration:

```

enum TDrawingTool {dtLine, dtRectangle, dtEllipse, dtRoundRect};

class TForm1 : public TForm
{
__published: // IDE-managed Components
    void __fastcall FormMouseDown(TObject *Sender, TMouseButton Button,
        TShiftState Shift, int X, int Y);
    void __fastcall FormMouseMove(TObject *Sender, TShiftState Shift, int X,
        int Y);
    void __fastcall FormMouseUp(TObject *Sender, TMouseButton Button,
        TShiftState Shift, int X, int Y);
private: // User declarations
    void __fastcall DrawShape(TPoint TopLeft, TPoint BottomRight, TPenMode AMode);
public: // User declarations
    __fastcall TForm1(TComponent* Owner);
    bool Drawing; //field to track whether button was pressed
    TPoint Origin, MovePt; // fields to store points
    TDrawingTool DrawingTool; // field to hold current tool
};

```

Then, the implementation of *DrawShape* is written in the .cpp file for the unit

```
void __fastcall TForm1::DrawShape(TPoint TopLeft, TPoint BottomRight,
    TPenMode AMode)
{
    Canvas->Pen->Mode = AMode;
    switch (DrawingTool)
    {
        case dtLine:
            Canvas->MoveTo(TopLeft.x, TopLeft.y);
            Canvas->LineTo(BottomRight.x, BottomRight.y);
            break;
        case dtRectangle:
            Canvas->Rectangle(TopLeft.x, TopLeft.y, BottomRight.x, BottomRight.y);
            break;
        case dtEllipse:
            Canvas->Ellipse(TopLeft.x, TopLeft.y, BottomRight.x, BottomRight.y);
            break;
        case dtRoundRect:
            Canvas->Rectangle(TopLeft.x, TopLeft.y, BottomRight.x, BottomRight.y,
                (TopLeft.x - BottomRight.x)/2, (TopLeft.y - BottomRight.y)/2);
            break;
    }
}
```

The other event handlers are modified to call *DrawShape*.

```
void __fastcall TForm1::FormMouseUp(TObject *Sender)
{
    DrawShape(Origin, Point(X,Y), pmCopy); // draw the final shape
    Drawing = false;
}

void __fastcall TForm1::FormMouseMove(TObject *Sender, TMouseButton Button,
    TShiftState Shift, int X, int Y)
{
    if (Drawing)
    {
        DrawShape(Origin, MovePt, pmNotXor); // erase previous shape
        MovePt = Point(X, Y);
        DrawShape(Origin, MovePt, pmNotXor); // draw current shape
    }
}
```

Drawing on a graphic

You don't need any components to manipulate your application's graphic objects. You can construct, draw on, save, and destroy graphic objects without ever drawing anything on screen. In fact, your applications rarely draw directly on a form. More often, an application operates on graphics and then uses an image control component to display the graphic on a form.

Once you move the application's drawing to the graphic in the image control, it is easy to add printing, clipboard, and loading and saving operations for any graphic

objects. graphic objects can be bitmap files, drawings, icons or whatever other graphics classes that have been installed such as jpeg graphics.

Note Because you are drawing on an offscreen image such as a *TBitmap* canvas, the image is not displayed until a control copies from a bitmap onto the control's canvas. That is, when drawing bitmaps and assigning them to an image control, the image appears only when the control has an opportunity to process its paint message. But if you are drawing directly onto the canvas property of a control, the picture object is displayed immediately.

Making scrollable graphics

The graphic need not be the same size as the form: it can be either smaller or larger. By adding a scroll box control to the form and placing the graphic image inside it, you can display graphics that are much larger than the form or even larger than the screen. To add a scrollable graphic first you add a *TScrollBox* component and then you add the image control.

Adding an image control

An image control is a container component that allows you to display your bitmap objects. You use an image control to hold a bitmap that is not necessarily displayed all the time, or which an application needs to use to generate other pictures.

Note "Adding graphics to controls" on page 6-11 shows how to use graphics in controls.

Placing the control

You can place an image control anywhere on a form. If you take advantage of the image control's ability to size itself to its picture, you need to set the top left corner only. If the image control is a nonvisible holder for a bitmap, you can place it anywhere, just as you would a nonvisual component.

If you drop the image control on a scroll box already aligned to the form's client area, this assures that the scroll box adds any scroll bars necessary to access offscreen portions of the image's picture. Then set the image control's properties.

Setting the initial bitmap size

When you place an image control, it is simply a container. However, you can set the image control's *Picture* property at design time to contain a static graphic. The control can also load its picture from a file at runtime, as described in "Loading and saving graphics files" on page 10-19.

To create a blank bitmap when the application starts,

- 1 Attach a handler to the *OnCreate* event for the form that contains the image.
- 2 Create a bitmap object, and assign it to the image control's *Picture->Graphic* property.

In this example, the image is in the application's main form, *Form1*, so the code attaches a handler to *Form1*'s *OnCreate* event:

```
void __fastcall TForm1::FormCreate(TObject *Sender)
{
    Graphics::TBitmap *Bitmap = new Graphics::TBitmap(); // create the bitmap object
    Bitmap->Width = 200; // assign the initial width...
    Bitmap->Height = 200; // ...and the initial height
    Image->Picture->Graphic = Bitmap; // assign the bitmap to the image control
    delete Bitmap; // free the bitmap object
}
```

Assigning the bitmap to the picture's *Graphic* property copies the bitmap to the picture object. However, the picture object does not take ownership of the bitmap, so after making the assignment, you must free it.

If you run the application now, you see that client area of the form has a white region, representing the bitmap. If you size the window so that the client area cannot display the entire image, you'll see that the scroll box automatically shows scroll bars to allow display of the rest of the image. But if you try to draw on the image, you don't get any graphics, because the application is still drawing on the form, which is now behind the image and the scroll box.

Drawing on the bitmap

To draw on a bitmap, use the image control's canvas and attach the mouse-event handlers to the appropriate events in the image control. Typically, you would use region operations (fills, rectangles, polylines, and so on). These are fast and efficient methods of drawing.

An efficient way to draw images when you need to access individual pixels is to use the bitmap *ScanLine* property. For general-purpose usage, you can set up the bitmap pixel format to 24 bits and then treat the pointer returned from *ScanLine* as an array of RGB. Otherwise, you will need to know the native format of the *ScanLine* property. This example shows how to use *ScanLine* to get pixels one line at a time.

```
void __fastcall TForm1::Button1Click(TObject *Sender)
{
    Graphics::TBitmap *pBitmap = new Graphics::TBitmap();
    // This example shows drawing directly to the Bitmap
    Byte *ptr;
    try
    {
        pBitmap->LoadFromFile("C:\\Program Files\\Borland\\CBuilder\\Images\\Splash\\256color\\
factory.bmp ");
        for (int y = 0; y < pBitmap->Height; y++)
        {
            ptr = pBitmap->ScanLine[y];
            for (int x = 0; x < pBitmap->Width; x++)
                ptr[x] = (Byte)y;
        }
        Canvas->Draw(0,0,pBitmap);
    }
}
```



```

catch (...)
{
    ShowMessage("Could not load or alter bitmap");
}
delete pBitmap;
}

```

CLX For cross-platform applications, change Windows- and VCL-specific code so that your application can run on Linux. For example, the pathnames in Linux use a forward slash / as a delimiter. For more information on CLX and cross-platform applications, see Chapter 14, “Developing cross-platform applications.”

Loading and saving graphics files

Graphic images that exist only for the duration of one running of an application are of very limited value. Often, you either want to use the same picture every time, or you want to save a created picture for later use. The image component makes it easy to load pictures from a file and save them again.

The components you use to load, save, and replace graphic images support many graphic formats including bitmap files, metafiles, glyphs, and so on. They also support installable graphic classes.

The way to load and save graphics files is the similar to any other files and is described in the following sections:

- Loading a picture from a file.
- Saving a picture to a file.
- Replacing the picture.

Loading a picture from a file

Your application should provide the ability to load a picture from a file if your application needs to modify the picture or if you want to store the picture outside the application so a person or another application can modify the picture.

To load a graphics file into an image control, call the *LoadFromFile* method of the image control's *Picture* object.

The following code gets a file name from an open picture file dialog box, and then loads that file into an image control named *Image*:

```

void __fastcall TForm1::Open1Click(TObject *Sender)
{
    if (OpenPictureDialog1->Execute())
    {
        CurrentFile = OpenPictureDialog1->FileName;
        Image->Picture->LoadFromFile(CurrentFile);
    }
}

```

Saving a picture to a file

The picture object can load and save graphics in several formats, and you can create and register your own graphic-file formats so that picture objects can load and store them as well.

To save the contents of an image control in a file, call the *SaveToFile* method of the image control's *Picture* object.

The *SaveToFile* method requires the name of a file in which to save. If the picture is newly created, it might not have a file name, or a user might want to save an existing picture in a different file. In either case, the application needs to get a file name from the user before saving, as shown in the next section.

The following pair of event handlers, attached to the File | Save and File | Save As menu items, respectively, handle the resaving of named files, saving of unnamed files, and saving existing files under new names.

```
void __fastcall TForm1::Save1Click(TObject *Sender)
{
    if (!CurrentFile.IsEmpty())
        Image->Picture->SaveToFile(CurrentFile);    // save if already named
    else SaveAs1Click(Sender);                      // otherwise get a name
}

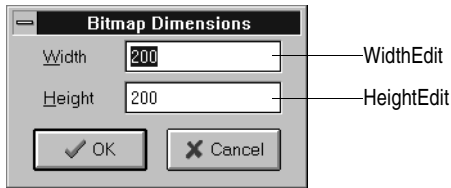
void __fastcall TForm1::SaveAs1Click(TObject *Sender)
{
    if (SaveDialog1->Execute())                    // get a file name
    {
        CurrentFile = SaveDialog1->FileName;    // save user-specified name
        Save1Click(Sender);                    // then save normally
    }
}
```

Replacing the picture

You can replace the picture in an image control at any time. If you assign a new graphic to a picture that already has a graphic, the new graphic replaces the existing one.

To replace the picture in an image control, assign a new graphic to the image control's *Picture* object.

Creating the new graphic is the same process you used to create the initial graphic (see “Setting the initial bitmap size” on page 10-17), but you should also provide a way for the user to choose a size other than the default size used for the initial graphic. An easy way to provide that option is to present a dialog box, such as the one in Figure 10.1.

Figure 10.1 Bitmap-dimension dialog box from the BMPDlg unit

This particular dialog box is created in the *BMPDlg* unit included with the *GraphEx* project (in the `EXAMPLES\DOC\GRAPHEX` directory).

With such a dialog box in your project, add an include statement for *BMPDlg.hpp* in the .cpp file for your main form. You can then attach an event handler to the File | New menu item's *OnClick* event. Here's an example:

```
void __fastcall TForm1::New1Click(TObject *Sender)
{
    Graphics::TBitmap *Bitmap;
    // make sure focus is on width field
    NewBMPForm->ActiveControl = NewBMPForm->WidthEdit;
    // initialize to current dimensions as default ...
    NewBMPForm->WidthEdit->Text = IntToStr(Image->Picture->Graphic->Width);
    NewBMPForm->HeightEdit->Text = IntToStr(Image->Picture->Graphic->Height);
    if (NewBMPForm->ShowModal() != IDCANCEL){        // if user does not cancel dialog...
        Bitmap = new Graphics::TBitmap();          // create a new bitmap object
        // use specified dimensions
        Bitmap->Width = StrToInt(NewBMPForm->WidthEdit->Text);
        Bitmap->Height = StrToInt(NewBMPForm->HeightEdit->Text);
        Image->Picture->Graphic = Bitmap;           // replace graphic with new bitmap
        CurrentFile = EmptyStr;                    // indicate unnamed file
        delete Bitmap;
    }
}
```

Note Assigning a new bitmap to the picture object's *Graphic* property causes the picture object to copy the new graphic, but it does not take ownership of it. The picture object maintains its own internal graphic object. Because of this, the previous code frees the bitmap object after making the assignment.

Using the clipboard with graphics

You can use the Windows clipboard to copy and paste graphics within your applications or to exchange graphics with other applications. The VCL's clipboard object makes it easy to handle different kinds of information, including graphics.

Before you can use the clipboard object in your application, you must add an include statement for *Clipbrd.hpp* to any .cpp file that needs to access clipboard data.

For cross-platform applications, data that is stored on the clipboard when using CLX is stored as a MIME type with an associated *TStream* object. CLX provides predefined constants for the following MIME types.

Table 10.4 CLX MIME types and constants

| MIME type | CLX constant |
|--------------------------|------------------|
| 'image/delphi.bitmap' | SDelphiBitmap |
| 'image/delphi.component' | SDelphiComponent |
| 'image/delphi.picture' | SDelphiPicture |
| 'image/delphi.drawing' | SDelphiDrawing |

Copying graphics to the clipboard

You can copy any picture, including the contents of image controls, to the clipboard. Once on the clipboard, the picture is available to all applications.

To copy a picture to the clipboard, assign the picture to the clipboard object using the *Assign* method.

This code shows how to copy the picture from an image control named *Image* to the clipboard in response to a click on an Edit | Copy menu item:

```
void __fastcall TForm1::Copy1Click(TObject *Sender)
{
    Clipboard()->Assign(Image->Picture);
}
```

Cutting graphics to the clipboard

Cutting a graphic to the clipboard is exactly like copying it, but you also erase the graphic from the source.

To cut a graphic from a picture to the clipboard, first copy it to the clipboard, then erase the original.

In most cases, the only issue with cutting is how to show that the original image is erased. Setting the area to white is a common solution, as shown in the following code that attaches an event handler to the *OnClick* event of the Edit | Cut menu item:

```
void __fastcall TForm1::Cut1Click(TObject *Sender)
{
    TRect ARect;
    Copy1Click(Sender);           // copy picture to clipboard
    Image->Canvas->CopyMode = cmWhiteness; // copy everything as white
    ARect = Rect(0, 0, Image->Width, Image->Height); // get dimensions of image
    Image->Canvas->CopyRect(ARect, Image->Canvas, ARect); // copy bitmap over self
    Image->Canvas->CopyMode = cmSrcCopy; // restore default mode
}
```

Pasting graphics from the clipboard

If the clipboard contains a bitmapped graphic, you can paste it into any image object, including image controls and the surface of a form.

To paste a graphic from the clipboard:

- 1 Call the clipboard's *HasFormat* method (if using the VCL) or *Provides* method (if using CLX) to see whether the clipboard contains a graphic.

HasFormat (or *Provides* in CLX) is a Boolean function. It returns **true** if the clipboard contains an item of the type specified in the parameter. To test for graphics on the Windows platform, you pass *CF_BITMAP*. In cross-platform applications, you pass *SDelphiBitmap*.

- 2 Assign the clipboard to the destination.

VCL This VCL code shows how to paste a picture from the clipboard into an image control in response to a click on an Edit | Paste menu item:

```
void __fastcall TForm1::Paste1Click(TObject *Sender)
{
    Graphics::TBitmap *Bitmap;
    if (Clipboard()->HasFormat(CF_BITMAP)){
        Image1->Picture->Bitmap->Assign(Clipboard());
    }
}
```

CLX The same example in CLX for cross-platform development would look as follows:

```
void __fastcall TForm1::Paste1Click(TObject *Sender)
{
    QGraphics::TBitmap *Bitmap;
    if (Clipboard()->Provides(SDelphiBitmap)){
        Image1->Picture->Bitmap->Assign(Clipboard());
    }
}
```

The graphic on the clipboard could come from this application, or it could have been copied from another application, such as Microsoft Paint. You do not need to check the clipboard format in this case because the paste menu should be disabled when the clipboard does not contain a supported format.

Rubber banding example

This example describes the details of implementing the “rubber banding” effect in an graphics application that tracks mouse movements as the user draws a graphic at runtime. The example code in this section is taken from a sample application located in the Examples\Doc\GraphEx directory. The application draws lines and shapes on a window's canvas in response to clicks and drags: pressing a mouse button starts drawing, and releasing the button ends the drawing.

To start with, the example code shows how to draw on the surface of the main form. Later examples demonstrate drawing on a bitmap.

The following topics describe the example:

- Responding to the mouse.
- Adding a field to a form object to track mouse actions.
- Refining line drawing.

Responding to the mouse

Your application can respond to the mouse actions: mouse-button down, mouse moved, and mouse-button up. It can also respond to a click (a complete press-and-release, all in one place) that can be generated by some kinds of keystrokes (such as pressing *Enter* in a modal dialog box).

This section covers:

- What's in a mouse event.
- Responding to a mouse-down action.
- Responding to a mouse-up action.
- Responding to a mouse move.

What's in a mouse event?

C++Builder has three mouse events: *OnMouseDown* event, *OnMouseMove* event, and *OnMouseUp* event.

When an application detects a mouse action, it calls whatever event handler you've defined for the corresponding event, passing five parameters. Use the information in those parameters to customize your responses to the events. The five parameters are as follows:

Table 10.5 Mouse-event parameters

| Parameter | Meaning |
|---------------|---|
| <i>Sender</i> | The object that detected the mouse action |
| <i>Button</i> | Indicates which mouse button was involved: <i>mbLeft</i> , <i>mbMiddle</i> , or <i>mbRight</i> |
| <i>Shift</i> | Indicates the state of the <i>Alt</i> , <i>Ctrl</i> , and <i>Shift</i> keys at the time of the mouse action |
| <i>X, Y</i> | The coordinates where the event occurred |

Most of the time, you need the coordinates returned in a mouse-event handler, but sometimes you also need to check *Button* to determine which mouse button caused the event.

Note C++Builder uses the same criteria as Microsoft Windows in determining which mouse button has been pressed. Thus, if you have switched the default “primary” and “secondary” mouse buttons (so that the right mouse button is now the primary button), clicking the primary (right) button will record *mbLeft* as the value of the *Button* parameter.

Responding to a mouse-down action

Whenever the user presses a button on the mouse, an *OnMouseDown* event goes to the object the pointer is over. The object can then respond to the event.

To respond to a mouse-down action, attach an event handler to the *OnMouseDown* event.

C++Builder generates an empty handler for a mouse-down event on the form:

```
void __fastcall TForm1::FormMouseDown(TObject *Sender, TMouseButton Button,
    TShiftState Shift, int X, int Y)
{
}

```

Responding to a mouse-down action

The following code displays the string 'Here!' at the location on a form clicked with the mouse:

```
void __fastcall TForm1::FormMouseDown(TObject *Sender, TMouseButton Button,
    TShiftState Shift, int X, int Y)
{
    Canvas->TextOut(X, Y, "Here!"); // write text at (X, Y)
}

```

When the application runs, you can press the mouse button down with the mouse cursor on the form and have the string, "Here!" appear at the point clicked. This code sets the current drawing position to the coordinates where the user presses the button:

```
void __fastcall TForm1::FormMouseDown(TObject *Sender, TMouseButton Button,
    TShiftState Shift, int X, int Y)
{
    Canvas->MoveTo(X, Y); // set pen position
}

```

Pressing the mouse button now sets the pen position, setting the line's starting point. To draw a line to the point where the user releases the button, you need to respond to a mouse-up event.

Responding to a mouse-up action

An *OnMouseUp* event occurs whenever the user releases a mouse button. The event usually goes to the object the mouse cursor is over when the user presses the button, which is not necessarily the same object the cursor is over when the button is released. This enables you, for example, to draw a line as if it extended beyond the border of the form.

To respond to mouse-up actions, define a handler for the *OnMouseUp* event.

Here's a simple *OnMouseUp* event handler that draws a line to the point of the mouse-button release:

```
void __fastcall TForm1::FormMouseUp(TObject *Sender, TMouseButton Button,
    TShiftState Shift, int X, int Y)
{
    Canvas->LineTo(X, Y); // draw line from PenPos to (X, Y)
}

```

This code lets a user draw lines by clicking, dragging, and releasing. In this case, the user cannot see the line until the mouse button is released.

Responding to a mouse move

An *OnMouseMove* event occurs periodically when the user moves the mouse. The event goes to the object that was under the mouse pointer when the user pressed the button. This allows you to give the user some intermediate feedback by drawing temporary lines while the mouse moves.

To respond to mouse movements, define an event handler for the *OnMouseMove* event. This example uses mouse-move events to draw intermediate shapes on a form while the user holds down the mouse button, thus providing some feedback to the user. The *OnMouseMove* event handler draws a line on a form to the location of the *OnMouseMove* event:

```
void __fastcall TForm1::FormMouseMove(TObject *Sender, TMouseButton Button,
    TShiftState Shift, int X, int Y)
{
    Canvas->LineTo(X, Y); // draw line to current position
}
```

With this code, moving the mouse over the form causes drawing to follow the mouse, even before the mouse button is pressed.

Mouse-move events occur even when you haven't pressed the mouse button.

If you want to track whether there is a mouse button pressed, you need to add an object field to the form object.

Adding a field to a form object to track mouse actions

To track whether a mouse button was pressed, you must add an object field to the form object. When you add a component to a form, C++Builder adds a field that represents that component to the form object, so that you can refer to the component by the name of its field. You can also add your own fields to forms by editing the type declaration in the form unit's header file.

In the following example, the form needs to track whether the user has pressed a mouse button. To do that, it adds a Boolean field and sets its value when the user presses the mouse button.

To add a field to an object, edit the object's type definition, specifying the field identifier and type after the **public** directive at the bottom of the declaration.

C++Builder "owns" any declarations before the **public** directive: that's where it puts the fields that represent controls and the methods that respond to events.

The following code gives a form a field called *Drawing* of type *bool*, in the form object's declaration. It also adds two fields to store points *Origin* and *MovePt* of type *TPoint*.

```
class TForm1 : public TForm
{
    __published: // IDE-managed Components
        void __fastcall FormMouseDown(TObject *Sender, TMouseButton Button,
            TShiftState Shift, int X, int Y);
        void __fastcall FormMouseMove(TObject *Sender, TShiftState Shift, int X,
            int Y);
        void __fastcall FormMouseUp(TObject *Sender, TMouseButton Button,
```



```

    TShiftState Shift, int X, int Y);
private:// User declarations
public:// User declarations
    __fastcall TForm1(TComponent* Owner);
    bool Drawing; //field to track whether button was pressed
    TPoint Origin, MovePt; // fields to store points
};

```

When you have a *Drawing* field to track whether to draw, set it to **true** when the user presses the mouse button, and **false** when the user releases it:

```

void __fastcall TForm1::FormMouseDown(TObject *Sender, TMouseButton Button,
    TShiftState Shift, int X, int Y)
{
    Drawing = true;           // set the Drawing flag
    Canvas->MoveTo(X, Y);     // set pen position
}

void __fastcall TForm1::FormMouseUp(TObject *Sender, TMouseButton Button,
    TShiftState Shift, int X, int Y)
{
    Canvas->LineTo(X, Y);     // draw line from PenPos to (X, Y)
    Drawing = false;         // clear the Drawing flag
}

```

Then you can modify the *OnMouseMove* event handler to draw only when *Drawing* is **true**:

```

void __fastcall TForm1::FormMouseMove(TObject *Sender, TMouseButton Button,
    TShiftState Shift, int X, int Y)
{
    if (Drawing)
        Canvas->LineTo(X, Y); // only draw if mouse is down
}

```

This results in drawing only between the mouse-down and mouse-up events, but you still get a scribbled line that tracks the mouse movements instead of a straight line.

The problem is that each time you move the mouse, the mouse-move event handler calls *LineTo*, which moves the pen position, so by the time you release the button, you've lost the point where the straight line was supposed to start.

Refining line drawing

With fields in place to track various points, you can refine an application's line drawing.

Tracking the origin point

When drawing lines, track the point where the line starts with the *Origin* field.

Origin must be set to the point where the mouse-down event occurs, so the mouse-up event handler can use *Origin* to place the beginning of the line, as in this code:

```
void __fastcall TForm1::FormMouseDown(TObject *Sender, TMouseButton Button,
    TShiftState Shift, int X, int Y)
{
    Drawing = true;           // set the Drawing flag
    Canvas->MoveTo(X, Y);     // set pen position
    Origin = Point(X, Y);     // record where the line starts
}

void __fastcall TForm1::FormMouseUp(TObject *Sender, TMouseButton Button,
    TShiftState Shift, int X, int Y)
{
    Canvas->MoveTo(Origin.x, Origin.y); // move pen to starting point
    Canvas->LineTo(X, Y);               // draw line from PenPos to (X, Y)
    Drawing = false;                   // clear the Drawing flag
}
```

Those changes get the application to draw the final line again, but they do not draw any intermediate actions--the application does not yet support “rubber banding.”

Tracking movement

The problem with this example as the *OnMouseMove* event handler is currently written is that it draws the line to the current mouse position from the last *mouse position*, not from the original position. You can correct this by moving the drawing position to the origin point, then drawing to the current point:

```
void __fastcall TForm1::FormMouseMove(TObject *Sender, TMouseButton Button,
    TShiftState Shift, int X, int Y)
{
    if (Drawing)
    {
        Canvas->MoveTo(Origin.x, Origin.y); // move pen to starting point
        Canvas->LineTo(X, Y);
    }
}
```

The above tracks the current mouse position, but the intermediate lines do not go away, so you can hardly see the final line. The example needs to erase each line before drawing the next one, by keeping track of where the previous one was. The *MovePt* field allows you to do this.

MovePt must be set to the endpoint of each intermediate line, so you can use *MovePt* and *Origin* to erase that line the next time a line is drawn:

```
void __fastcall TForm1::FormMouseDown(TObject *Sender, TMouseButton Button,
    TShiftState Shift, int X, int Y)
{
    Drawing = true;           // set the Drawing flag
    Canvas->MoveTo(X, Y);     // set pen position
    Origin = Point(X, Y);     // record where the line starts
    MovePt = Point(X, Y);     // record last endpoint
}

void __fastcall TForm1::FormMouseMove(TObject *Sender, TMouseButton Button,
```

```

TShiftState Shift, int X, int Y)
{
    if (Drawing)
    {
        Canvas->Pen->Mode = pmNotXor;           // use XOR mode to draw/erase
        Canvas->MoveTo(Origin.x, Origin.y);     // move pen to starting point
        Canvas->LineTo(MovePt.x, MovePt.y);     // erase old line
        Canvas->MoveTo(Origin.x, Origin.y);     // move pen to starting point again
        Canvas->LineTo(X, Y);                   // draw new line
    }
    MovePt = Point(X, Y);                       // record new endpoint
    Canvas->Pen->Mode = pmCopy;
}

```

Now you get a “rubber band” effect when you draw the line. By changing the pen’s mode to *pmNotXor*, you have it combine your line with the background pixels. When you go to erase the line, you’re actually setting the pixels back to the way they were. By changing the pen mode back to *pmCopy* (its default value) after drawing the lines, you ensure that the pen is ready to do its final drawing when you release the mouse button.

Working with multimedia

C++Builder allows you to add multimedia components to your Windows (not CLX or Linux) applications. To do this, you can use either the *TAnimate* component on the Win32 page or the *TMediaPlayer* component on the System page of the Component palette. Use the animate component when you want to add silent video clips to your application. Use the media player component when you want to add audio and/or video clips to an application.

For more information on the *TAnimate* and *TMediaPlayer* components, see the VCL online help.

The following topics are discussed in this section:

- Adding silent video clips to an application
- Adding audio and/or video clips to an application

Adding silent video clips to an application

The animation control in C++ Builder allows you to add silent video clips to your application.

To add a silent video clip to an application:

- 1 Double-click the animate icon on the Win32 page of the Component palette. This automatically puts an animation control on the form window in which you want to display the video clip.
- 2 Using the Object Inspector, select the *Name* property and enter a new *name* for your animation control. You will use this name when you call the animation control. (Follow the standard rules for naming C++ identifiers).

Always work directly with the Object Inspector when setting design time properties and creating event handlers.

3 Do one of the following:

- Select the *Common AVI* property and choose one of the AVIs available from the drop down list; or
- Select the *FileName* property and click the ellipsis (...) button, choose an AVI file from any available local or network directories and click Open in the Open AVI dialog; or
- Select the resource of an AVI using the *ResName* or *ResID* properties. Use *ResHandle* to indicate the module that contains the resource identified by *ResName* or *ResID*.

This loads the AVI file into memory. If you want to display the first frame of the AVI clip on-screen until it is played using the *Active* property or the *Play* method, then set the *Open* property to **true**.

- 4** Set the *Repetitions* property to the number of times you want to the AVI clip to play. If this value is 0, then the sequence is repeated until the *Stop* method is called.
- 5** Make any other changes to the animation control settings. For example, if you want to change the first frame displayed when animation control opens, then set the *StartFrame* property to the desired frame value.
- 6** Set the *Active* property to **true** using the drop down list or write an event handler to run the AVI clip when a specific event takes place at runtime. For example, to activate the AVI clip when a button object is clicked, write the button's *OnClick* event specifying that. You may also call the *Play* method to specify when to play the AVI.

Note If you make any changes to the form or any of the components on the form after setting *Active* to **true**, the *Active* property becomes **false** and you have to reset it to **true**. Do this either just before runtime or at runtime.

Example of adding silent video clips

Suppose you want to display an animated logo as the first screen that appears when your application starts. After the logo finishes playing the screen disappears.

To run this example, create a new project and save the Unit1.cpp file as Frmlogo.cpp and save the Project1.bpr file as Logo.bpr. Then:

- 1** Double-click the animate icon from the Win32 page of the Component palette.
- 2** Using the Object Inspector, set its Name property to *Logo1*.
- 3** Select its *FileName* property, click the ellipsis (...) button, choose the dillo.avi file from your ..\Examples\MFC\General\Cmnctrls directory. Then click Open in the Open AVI dialog.

This loads the dillo.avi file into memory.

- 4** Position the animation control box on the form by clicking and dragging it to the top right hand side of the form.

- 5 Set its Repetitions property to 5.
- 6 Click the form to bring focus to it and set its Name property to *LogoForm1* and its Caption property to *Logo Window*. Now decrease the height of the form to right-center the animation control on it.
- 7 Double-click the form's *OnActivate* event and write the following code to run the AVI clip when the form is in focus at runtime:


```
Logo1->Active = true;
```
- 8 Double-click the Label icon on the Standard page of the Component palette. Select its Caption property and enter *Welcome to Armadillo Enterprises 4.0*. Now select its Font property, click the ellipsis (...) button and choose Font Style: Bold, Size: 18, Color: Navy from the Font dialog and click OK. Click and drag the label control to center it on the form.
- 9 Click the animation control to bring focus back to it. Double-click its *OnStop* event and write the following code to close the form when the AVI file stops:


```
LogoForm1->Close();
```
- 10 Select Run | Run to execute the animated logo window.

Adding audio and/or video clips to an application

The media player component in C++ Builder allows you to add audio and/or video clips to your application. It opens a media device and plays, stops, pauses, records, etc., the audio and/or video clips used by the media device. The media device may be hardware or software.

Note Audio and video clip support is not provided for cross-platform programming.

To add an audio and/or video clip to an application:

- 1 Double-click the media player icon on the System page of the Component palette. This automatically put a media player control on the form window in which you want the media feature.
- 2 Using the Object Inspector, select the *Name* property and enter a new name for your media player control. You will use this when you call the media player control. (Follow the standard rules for naming C++ identifiers.)

Always work directly with the Object Inspector when setting design time properties and creating event handlers.
- 3 Select the *DeviceType* property and choose the appropriate device type to open using the *AutoOpen* property or the *Open* method. (If *DeviceType* is *dtAutoSelect* the device type is selected based on the file extension of the media file specified by the *FileName* property.) For more information on device types and their functions, see Table 10.6.
- 4 If the device stores its media in a file, specify the name of the media file using the *FileName* property. Select the *FileName* property, click the ellipsis (...) button, and choose a media file from any available local or network directories and click Open in the Open dialog. Otherwise, insert the hardware the media is stored in (disk, cassette, and so on) for the selected media device, at runtime.

- 5 Set the *AutoOpen* property to **true**. This way the media player automatically opens the specified device when the form containing the media player control is created at runtime. If *AutoOpen* is **false**, the device must be opened with a call to the *Open* method.
- 6 Set the *AutoEnable* property to **true** to automatically enable or disable the media player buttons as required at runtime; or, double-click the *EnabledButtons* property to set each button to **true** or **false** depending on which ones you want to enable or disable.

The multimedia device is played, paused, stopped, and so on when the user clicks the corresponding button on the media player component. The device can also be controlled by the methods that correspond to the buttons (Play, Pause, Stop, Next, Previous, and so on).

- 7 Position the media player control bar on the form by either clicking and dragging it to the appropriate place on the form or by selecting the *Align* property and choosing the appropriate align position from the drop down list.

If you want the media player to be invisible at runtime, set the *Visible* property to **false** and control the device by calling the appropriate methods (*Play*, *Pause*, *Stop*, *Next*, *Previous*, *Step*, *Back*, *Start Recording*, *Eject*).

- 8 Make any other changes to the media player control settings. For example, if the media requires a display window, set the *Display* property to the control that displays the media. If the device uses multiple tracks, set the *Tracks* property to the desired track.

Table 10.6 Multimedia device types and their functions

| Device Type | Software/Hardware used | Plays | Uses Tracks | Uses a Display Window |
|----------------|--|---------------------------------------|-------------|-----------------------|
| dtAVIVideo | AVI Video Player for Windows | AVI Video files | No | Yes |
| dtCDAudio | CD Audio Player for Windows or a CD Audio Player | CD Audio Disks | Yes | No |
| dtDAT | Digital Audio Tape Player | Digital Audio Tapes | Yes | No |
| dtDigitalVideo | Digital Video Player for Windows | AVI, MPG, MOV files | No | Yes |
| dtMMMovie | MM Movie Player | MM film | No | Yes |
| dtOverlay | Overlay device | Analog Video | No | Yes |
| dtScanner | Image Scanner | N/A for Play (scans images on Record) | No | No |
| dtSequencer | MIDI Sequencer for Windows | MIDI files | Yes | No |
| dtVCR | Video Cassette Recorder | Video Cassettes | No | Yes |
| dtWaveAudio | Wave Audio Player for Windows | WAV files | No | No |

Example of adding audio and/or video clips (VCL only)

This example runs an AVI video clip of a multimedia advertisement for C++Builder. To run this example, create a new project and save the Unit1.cpp file to FrmAd.cpp and save the Project1.bpr file to MmediaAd.bpr. Then:

- 1 Double-click the media player icon on the System page of the Component palette.
- 2 Using the Object Inspector, set the Name property of the media player to *VideoPlayer1*.
- 3 Select its DeviceType property and choose dtAVIVideo from the drop down list.
- 4 Select its FileName property, click the ellipsis (...) button, choose the file from your ..\Examples\Coolstuff directory. Click Open in the Open dialog.
- 5 Set its AutoOpen property to **true** and its Visible property to **false**.
- 6 Double-click the Animate icon from the Win32 page of the Component palette. Set its AutoSize property to **false**, its Height property to 175 and Width property to 200. Click and drag the animation control to the top left corner of the form.
- 7 Click the media player to bring back focus to it. Select its Display property and choose Animate1 from the drop down list.
- 8 Click the form to bring focus to it and select its Name property and enter *C++_Ad*. Now resize the form to the size of the animation control.
- 9 Double-click the form's *OnActivate* event and write the following code to run the AVI video when the form is in focus:


```
VideoPlayer1->Play();
```
- 10 Choose Run | Run to execute the AVI video.

Writing multi-threaded applications

C++Builder provides several objects that make writing multi-threaded applications easier. Multi-threaded applications are applications that include several simultaneous paths of execution. While using multiple threads requires careful thought, it can enhance your programs by:

- **Avoiding bottlenecks.** With only one thread, a program must stop all execution when waiting for slow processes such as accessing files on disk, communicating with other machines, or displaying multimedia content. The CPU sits idle until the process completes. With multiple threads, your application can continue execution in separate threads while one thread waits for the results of a slow process.
- **Organizing program behavior.** Often, a program's behavior can be organized into several parallel processes that function independently. Use threads to launch a single section of code simultaneously for each of these parallel cases. Use threads to assign priorities to various program tasks so that you can give more CPU time to more critical tasks.
- **Multiprocessing.** If the system running your program has multiple processors, you can improve performance by dividing the work into several threads and letting them run simultaneously on separate processors.

Note Not all operating systems implement true multi-processing, even when it is supported by the underlying hardware. For example, Windows 9x only simulates multiprocessing, even if the underlying hardware supports it.

Defining thread objects

For most applications, you can use a thread object to represent an execution thread in your application. Thread objects simplify writing multi-threaded applications by encapsulating the most commonly needed uses of threads.

Note Thread objects do not allow you to control the security attributes or stack size of your threads. If you need to control these, you must use the Windows API *CreateThread* or the *BeginThread* function. Even when using Windows Thread API calls or *BeginThread*, you can still benefit from some of the thread synchronization objects and methods described in “Coordinating threads” on page 11-7. For more information on using *CreateThread* or *BeginThread*, see the Windows online Help.

To use a thread object in your application, you must create a new descendant of *TThread*. To create a descendant of *TThread*, choose File | New | Other from the main menu. In the New Items dialog box, double-click Thread Object and enter a class name, such as *TMyThread*. To name this new thread, check the Named Thread check box and enter a thread name. Naming your thread makes it easier to track the thread while debugging. After you click OK, C++Builder creates a new .cpp and header file to implement the thread. For more information on naming threads, see “Naming a thread” on page 11-12.

Note Unlike most dialog boxes in the IDE that require a class name, the New Thread Object dialog box does not automatically prepend a ‘T’ to the front of the class name you provide.

The automatically generated .cpp file contains the skeleton code for your new thread class. If you named your thread *TMyThread*, it would look like the following:

```
//-----
#include <vcl.h>
#pragma hdrstop

#include "Unit2.h"
#pragma package(smart_init)
//-----
__fastcall TMyThread::TMyThread(bool CreateSuspended): TThread(CreateSuspended)
{
}
//-----
void __fastcall TMyThread::Execute()
{
    // ---- Place thread code here ----
}
//-----
```

You must fill in the code for the constructor and the *Execute* method. These steps are described in the following sections.

Initializing the thread

Use the constructor to initialize your new thread class. This is where you can assign a default priority for your thread and indicate whether it should be freed automatically when it finishes executing.

Assigning a default priority

Priority indicates how much preference the thread gets when the operating system schedules CPU time among all the threads in your application. Use a high priority

thread to handle time critical tasks, and a low priority thread to perform other tasks. To indicate the priority of your thread object, set the *Priority* property.

If writing a Windows application, *Priority* values fall along a scale, as described in Table 11.1:

Table 11.1 Thread priorities

| Value | Priority |
|----------------|--|
| tpIdle | The thread executes only when the system is idle. Windows won't interrupt other threads to execute a thread with <i>tpIdle</i> priority. |
| tpLowest | The thread's priority is two points below normal. |
| tpLower | The thread's priority is one point below normal. |
| tpNormal | The thread has normal priority. |
| tpHigher | The thread's priority is one point above normal. |
| tpHighest | The thread's priority is two points above normal. |
| tpTimeCritical | The thread gets highest priority. |

Note If writing a cross-platform application, you must use separate code for assigning priorities on Windows and Linux. On Linux, *Priority* is a numeric value that depends on the threading policy which can only be changed by root. See the CLX version of *TThread* and *Priority* online Help for details.

Warning Boosting the thread priority of a CPU intensive operation may “starve” other threads in the application. Only apply priority boosts to threads that spend most of their time waiting for external events.

The following code shows the constructor of a low-priority thread that performs background tasks which should not interfere with the rest of the application's performance:

```
//-----
__fastcall TMyThread::TMyThread(bool CreateSuspended): TThread(CreateSuspended)
{
    Priority = tpIdle;
}
//-----
```

Indicating when threads are freed

Usually, when threads finish their operation, they can simply be freed. In this case, it is easiest to let the thread object free itself. To do this, set the *FreeOnTerminate* property to **true**.

There are times, however, when the termination of a thread must be coordinated with other threads. For example, you may be waiting for one thread to return a value before performing an action in another thread. To do this, you do not want to free the first thread until the second has received the return value. You can handle this situation by setting *FreeOnTerminate* to **false** and then explicitly freeing the first thread from the second.

Writing the thread function

The *Execute* method is your thread function. You can think of it as a program that is launched by your application, except that it shares the same process space. Writing the thread function is a little trickier than writing a separate program because you must make sure that you don't overwrite memory that is used by other threads in your application. On the other hand, because the thread shares the same process space with other threads, you can use the shared memory to communicate between threads.

Using the main VCL/CLX thread

When you use objects from the VCL or CLX object hierarchies, their properties and methods are not guaranteed to be thread-safe. That is, accessing properties or executing methods may perform some actions that use memory which is not protected from the actions of other threads. Because of this, a main thread is set aside to access VCL and CLX objects. This is the thread that handles all Windows messages received by components in your application.

If all objects access their properties and execute their methods within this single thread, you need not worry about your objects interfering with each other. To use the main thread, create a separate routine that performs the required actions. Call this separate routine from within your thread's *Synchronize* method. For example:

```
void __fastcall TMyThread::PushTheButton(void)
{
    Button1->Click();
}
:
void __fastcall TMyThread::Execute()
{
    :
    Synchronize((TThreadMethod) PushTheButton);
    :
}
```

Synchronize waits for the main thread to enter the message loop and then executes the passed method.

Note Because *Synchronize* uses the message loop, it does not work in console applications. You must use other mechanisms, such as critical sections, to protect access to VCL or CLX objects in console applications.

You do not always need to use the main thread. Some objects are thread-aware. Omitting the use of the *Synchronize* method when you know an object's methods are thread-safe will improve performance because you don't need to wait for the VCL or CLX thread to enter its message loop. You do not need to use the *Synchronize* method for the following objects:

- Data access components are thread-safe as follows: For BDE-enabled datasets, each thread must have its own database session component. The one exception to this is when you are using Microsoft Access drivers, which are built using a Microsoft library that is not thread-safe. For dbDirect, as long as the vendor client

library is thread-safe, the dbDirect components will be thread-safe. ADO and InterbaseExpress components are thread-safe.

When using data access components, you must still wrap all calls that involve data-aware controls in the *Synchronize* method. Thus, for example, you need to synchronize calls that link a data control to a dataset by setting the *DataSet* property of the data source object, but you don't need to synchronize to access the data in a field of the dataset.

For more information about using database sessions with threads in BDE-enabled applications, see "Managing multiple sessions" on page 24-28.

- DataCLX objects are thread-safe although VisualCLX objects are not.
- Graphics objects are thread-safe. You do not need to use the main VCL or CLX thread to access *TFont*, *TPen*, *TBrush*, *TBitmap*, *TMetafile* (VCL only), *TDrawing* (CLX only), or *TIcon*. Canvas objects can be used outside the *Synchronize* method by locking them (see "Locking objects" on page 11-7).
- While list objects are not thread-safe, you can use a thread-safe version, *TThreadList*, instead of *TList*.

Call the *CheckSynchronize* routine periodically within the main thread of your application so that background threads can synchronize their execution with the main thread. The best place to call *CheckSynchronize* is when the application is idle (for example, from an *OnIdle* event handler). This ensures that it is safe to make method calls in the background thread.

Using thread-local variables

Your *Execute* method and any of the routines it calls have their own local variables, just like any other C++ routines. These routines also can access any global variables. In fact, global variables provide a powerful mechanism for communicating between threads.

Sometimes, however, you may want to use variables that are global to all the routines running in your thread, but not shared with other instances of the same thread class. You can do this by declaring thread-local variables. Make a variable thread-local by adding the **__thread** modifier to the variable declaration. For example,

```
int __thread x;
```

declares an integer type variable that is private to each thread in the application, but global within each thread.

The **__thread** modifier can only be used for global (file-scope) and static variables. Pointer and Function variables can't be thread variables. Types that use copy-on-write semantics, such as *AnsiStrings* don't work as thread variables either. A program element that requires runtime initialization or runtime finalization cannot be declared to be a **__thread** type.

The following declarations require runtime initialization and are therefore illegal.

```
int f( );
int __thread x = f( );    // illegal
```

Instantiation of a class with a user-defined constructor or destructor requires runtime initialization and is therefore illegal:

```
class X {
    X( );
    ~X( );
};
X __thread myclass;    // illegal
```

Checking for termination by other threads

Your thread begins running when the *Execute* method is called (see “Executing thread objects” on page 11-11) and continues until *Execute* finishes. This reflects the model that the thread performs a specific task, and then stops when it is finished. Sometimes, however, an application needs a thread to execute until some external criterion is satisfied.

You can allow other threads to signal that it is time for your thread to finish executing by checking the *Terminated* property. When another thread tries to terminate your thread, it calls the *Terminate* method. *Terminate* sets your thread’s *Terminated* property to **true**. It is up to your *Execute* method to implement the *Terminate* method by checking and responding to the *Terminated* property. The following example shows one way to do this:

```
void __fastcall TMyThread::Execute()
{
    while (!Terminated)
        PerformSomeTask();
}
```

Handling exceptions in the thread function

The *Execute* method must catch all exceptions that occur in the thread. If you fail to catch an exception in your thread function, your application can cause access violations. This may not be obvious when you are developing your application, because the IDE catches the exception, but when you run your application outside of the debugger, the exception will cause a runtime error and the application will stop running.

To catch the exceptions that occur inside your thread function, add a **try...catch** block to the implementation of the *Execute* method:

```
void __fastcall TMyThread::Execute()
{
    try
    {
        while (!Terminated)
            PerformSomeTask();
    }
    catch (...)
    {
        // do something with exceptions
    }
}
```

Writing clean-up code

You can centralize the code that cleans up when your thread finishes executing. Just before a thread shuts down, an *OnTerminate* event occurs. Put any clean-up code in the *OnTerminate* event handler to ensure that it is always executed, no matter what execution path the *Execute* method follows.

The *OnTerminate* event handler is not run as part of your thread. Instead, it is run in the context of the main VCL or CLX thread of your application. This has two implications:

- You can't use any thread-local variables in an *OnTerminate* event handler (unless you want the main VCL or CLX thread values).
- You can safely access any components and VCL or CLX objects from the *OnTerminate* event handler without worrying about clashing with other threads.

For more information about the main VCL or CLX thread, see “Using the main VCL/CLX thread” on page 11-4.

Coordinating threads

When writing the code that runs when your thread is executed, you must consider the behavior of other threads that may be executing simultaneously. In particular, care must be taken to avoid two threads trying to use the same global object or variable at the same time. In addition, the code in one thread can depend on the results of tasks performed by other threads.

Avoiding simultaneous access

To avoid clashing with other threads when accessing global objects or variables, you may need to block the execution of other threads until your thread code has finished an operation. Be careful not to block other execution threads unnecessarily. Doing so can cause performance to degrade seriously and negate most of the advantages of using multiple threads.

Locking objects

Some objects have built-in locking that prevents the execution of other threads from using that object instance.

For example, canvas objects (*TCanvas* and descendants) have a *Lock* method that prevents other threads from accessing the canvas until the *Unlock* method is called.

The VCL and CLX also both include a thread-safe list object, *TThreadList*. Calling *TThreadList::LockList* returns the list object while also blocking other execution threads from using the list until the *UnlockList* method is called. Calls to *TCanvas::Lock* or *TThreadList::LockList* can be safely nested. The lock is not released until the last locking call is matched with a corresponding unlock call in the same thread.

Using critical sections

If objects do not provide built-in locking, you can use a critical section. Critical sections work like gates that allow only a single thread to enter at a time. To use a critical section, create a global instance of *TCriticalSection*. *TCriticalSection* has two methods, *Acquire* (which blocks other threads from executing the section) and *Release* (which removes the block).

Each critical section is associated with the global memory you want to protect. Every thread that accesses that global memory should first use the *Acquire* method to ensure that no other thread is using it. When finished, threads call the *Release* method so that other threads can access the global memory by calling *Acquire*.

Warning Critical sections only work if every thread uses them to access the associated global memory. Threads that ignore the critical section and access the global memory without calling *Acquire* can introduce problems of simultaneous access.

For example, consider an application that has a global critical section variable, *pLockXY*, that blocks access to global variables X and Y. Any thread that uses X or Y must surround that use with calls to the critical section such as the following:

```
pLockXY->Acquire(); // lock out other threads
try
{
    Y = sin(X);
}
__finally
{
    pLockXY->Release();
}
```

Using the multi-read exclusive-write synchronizer

When you use critical sections to protect global memory, only one thread can use the memory at a time. This can be more protection than you need, especially if you have an object or variable that must be read often but to which you very seldom write. There is no danger in multiple threads reading the same memory simultaneously, as long as no thread is writing to it.

When you have some global memory that is read often, but to which threads occasionally write, you can protect it using *TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer*. This object acts like a critical section, but allows multiple threads to read the memory it protects as long as no thread is writing to it. Threads must have exclusive access to write to memory protected by *TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer*.

To use a multi-read exclusive-write synchronizer, create a global instance of *TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSynchronizer* that is associated with the global memory you want to protect. Every thread that reads from this memory must first call the *BeginRead* method. *BeginRead* ensures that no other thread is currently writing to the memory. When a thread finishes reading the protected memory, it calls the *EndRead* method. Any thread that writes to the protected memory must call *BeginWrite* first. *BeginWrite* ensures that no other thread is currently reading or writing to the memory. When a thread finishes writing to the protected memory, it calls the *EndWrite* method, so that threads waiting to read the memory can begin.

Warning Like critical sections, the multi-read exclusive-write synchronizer only works if every thread uses it to access the associated global memory. Threads that ignore the synchronizer and access the global memory without calling *BeginRead* or *BeginWrite* introduce problems of simultaneous access.

Other techniques for sharing memory

When using objects in the VCL or CLX, use the main thread to execute your code. Using the main thread ensures that the object does not indirectly access any memory that is also used by VCL or CLX objects in other threads. See “Using the main VCL/CLX thread” on page 11-4 for more information on the main thread.

If the global memory does not need to be shared by multiple threads, consider using thread-local variables instead of global variables. By using thread-local variables, your thread does not need to wait for or lock out any other threads. See “Using thread-local variables” on page 11-5 for more information about thread-local variables.

Waiting for other threads

If your thread must wait for another thread to finish some task, you can tell your thread to temporarily suspend execution. You can either wait for another thread to completely finish executing, or you can wait for another thread to signal that it has completed a task.

Waiting for a thread to finish executing

To wait for another thread to finish executing, use the *WaitFor* method of that other thread. *WaitFor* doesn't return until the other thread terminates, either by finishing its own *Execute* method or by terminating due to an exception. For example, the following code waits until another thread fills a thread list object before accessing the objects in the list:

```
if (pListFillingThread->WaitFor())
{
    TList *pList = ThreadList1->LockList();
    for (int i = 0; i < pList->Count; i++)
        ProcessItem(pList->Items[i]);
    ThreadList1->UnlockList();
}
```

In the previous example, the list items were only accessed when the *WaitFor* method indicated that the list was successfully filled. This return value must be assigned by the *Execute* method of the thread that was waited for. However, because threads that call *WaitFor* want to know the result of thread execution, not code that calls *Execute*, the *Execute* method does not return any value. Instead, the *Execute* method sets the *ReturnValue* property. *ReturnValue* is then returned by the *WaitFor* method when it is called by other threads. Return values are integers. Your application determines their meaning.

Waiting for a task to be completed

Sometimes, you need to wait for a thread to finish some operation rather than waiting for a particular thread to complete execution. To do this, use an event object. Event objects (*TEvent*) should be created with global scope so that they can act like signals that are visible to all threads.

When a thread completes an operation that other threads depend on, it calls *TEvent::SetEvent*. *SetEvent* turns on the signal, so any other thread that checks will know that the operation has completed. To turn off the signal, use the *ResetEvent* method.

For example, consider a situation where you must wait for several threads to complete their execution rather than a single thread. Because you don't know which thread will finish last, you can't simply use the *WaitFor* method of one of the threads. Instead, you can have each thread increment a counter when it is finished, and have the last thread signal that they are all done by setting an event.

The following code shows the end of the *OnTerminate* event handler for all of the threads that must complete. *CounterGuard* is a global critical section object that prevents multiple threads from using the counter at the same time. *Counter* is a global variable that counts the number of threads that have completed.

```
void __fastcall TDataModule::TaskThreadTerminate(TObject *Sender)
{
    :
    CounterGuard->Acquire(); // lock the counter
    if (--Counter == 0)      // decrement the global counter
        Event1->SetEvent(); // signal if this is the last thread
    CounterGuard->Release(); // release the lock on the counter
}
```

The main thread initializes the *Counter* variable, launches the task threads, and waits for the signal that they are all done by calling the *WaitFor* method. *WaitFor* waits for a specified time period for the signal to be set, and returns one of the values from Table 11.2.

Table 11.2 WaitFor return values

| Value | Meaning |
|-------------|--|
| wrSignaled | The signal of the event was set. |
| wrTimeout | The specified time elapsed without the signal being set. |
| wrAbandoned | The event object was destroyed before the time-out period elapsed. |
| wrError | An error occurred while waiting. |

The following shows how the main thread launches the task threads and then resumes when they have all completed:

```
Event1->ResetEvent(); // clear the event before launching the threads
for (int i = 0; i < Counter; i++)
    new TaskThread(false); // create and launch task threads
if (Event1->WaitFor(20000) != wrSignaled)
    throw Exception;
// now continue with the main thread, all task threads have finished
```

Note If you do not want to stop waiting for an event after a specified time period, pass the *WaitFor* method a parameter value of INFINITE. Be careful when using INFINITE, because your thread will hang if the anticipated signal is never received.

Executing thread objects

Once you have implemented a thread class by giving it an *Execute* method, you can use it in your application to launch the code in the *Execute* method. To use a thread, first create an instance of the thread class. You can create a thread instance that starts running immediately, or you can create your thread in a suspended state so that it only begins when you call the *Resume* method. To create a thread so that it starts up immediately, set the constructor's *CreateSuspended* parameter to **false**. For example, the following line creates a thread and starts its execution:

```
TMyThread *SecondThread = new TMyThread(false); // create and run the thread
```

Warning Do not create too many threads in your application. The overhead in managing multiple threads can impact performance. The recommended limit is 16 threads per process on single processor systems. This limit assumes that most of those threads are waiting for external events. If all threads are active, you will want to use fewer.

You can create multiple instances of the same thread type to execute parallel code. For example, you can launch a new instance of a thread in response to some user action, allowing each thread to perform the expected response.

Overriding the default priority

When the amount of CPU time the thread should receive is implicit in the thread's task, its priority is set in the constructor. This is described in "Initializing the thread" on page 11-2. However, if the thread priority varies depending on when the thread is executed, create the thread in a suspended state, set the priority, and then start the thread running:

```
TMyThread *SecondThread = new TMyThread(true); // create but don't run
SecondThread->Priority = tpLower; // set the priority lower than normal
SecondThread->Resume(); // now run the thread
```

Note If writing a cross-platform application, you must use separate code for assigning priorities on Windows and Linux. On Linux, *Priority* is a numeric value that depends on the threading policy which can only be changed by root. See the CLX version of *TThread* and *Priority* online Help for details.

Starting and stopping threads

A thread can be started and stopped any number of times before it finishes executing. To stop a thread temporarily, call its *Suspend* method. When it is safe for the thread to resume, call its *Resume* method. *Suspend* increases an internal counter, so you can nest calls to *Suspend* and *Resume*. The thread does not resume execution until all suspensions have been matched by a call to *Resume*.

You can request that a thread end execution prematurely by calling the *Terminate* method. *Terminate* sets the thread's *Terminated* property to **true**. If you have implemented the *Execute* method properly, it checks the *Terminated* property periodically, and stops execution when *Terminated* is **true**.

Debugging multi-threaded applications

When debugging multi-threaded applications, it can be confusing trying to keep track of the status of all the threads that are executing simultaneously, or even to determine which thread is executing when you stop at a breakpoint. You can use the Thread Status box to help you keep track of and manipulate all the threads in your application. To display the Thread status box, choose View | Debug Windows | Threads from the main menu.

When a debug event occurs (breakpoint, exception, paused), the thread status view indicates the status of each thread. Right-click the Thread Status box to access commands that locate the corresponding source location or make a different thread current. When a thread is marked as current, the next step or run operation is relative to that thread.

The Thread Status box lists all your application's execution threads by their thread ID. If you are using thread objects, the thread ID is the value of the *ThreadID* property. If you are not using thread objects, the thread ID for each thread is returned by the call to *CreateThread* or *BeginThread*.

For additional details on the Thread Status box, see online Help.

Naming a thread

Because it is difficult to tell which thread ID refers to which thread in the Thread Status box, you can name your thread classes. When you are creating a thread class in the Thread Object dialog box, besides entering a class name, also check the Named Thread check box, enter a thread name, and click OK.

Naming the thread class adds a method to your thread class called *SetName*. When the thread starts running, it calls the *SetName* method first.

CLX You can name threads in VCL applications only.

Converting an unnamed thread to a named thread

You can convert an unnamed thread to a named thread. For example, if you have a thread class that was created using C++Builder 5 or earlier, convert it into a named thread using the following steps.

- 1 Add the *SetName* method to your thread class:

```
//-----
void TMyThread::SetName()
{
    THREADNAME_INFO info;
```

```

        info.dwType = 0x1000;
        info.szName = "MyThreadName";
        info.dwThreadID = -1;
        info.dwFlags = 0;

        __try
        {
            RaiseException( 0x406D1388, 0, sizeof(info)/sizeof(DWORD), (DWORD*)&info );
        }
        __except (EXCEPTION_CONTINUE_EXECUTION)
        {
        }
    }
    //-----

```

Note Set `info.szName` to the name of your thread class.

The debugger sees the exception and looks up the thread name in the structure you pass in. When debugging, the debugger displays the name of the thread in the Thread Status box's thread ID field.

- 2 Add a call to the new *SetName* method at the beginning of your thread's *Execute* method:

```

//-----
void __fastcall TMyThread::Execute()
{
    SetName();
    //---- Place existing Execute method code here ----
}
//-----

```

Assigning separate names to similar threads

All thread instances from the same thread class have the same name. However, you can assign a different name for each thread instance at runtime using the following steps.

- 1 Add a *ThreadName* property to the thread class by adding the following in the class definition:

```
__property AnsiString ThreadName = {read=FName, write=FName};
```

- 2 In the *SetName* method, change where it says:

```
info.szName = "MyThreadName";
```

to:

```
info.szName = ThreadName;
```

- 3 When you create the thread object:

- 1 Create it suspended. See "Executing thread objects" on page 11-11.
- 2 Assign a name, such as `MyThread.ThreadName="SearchForFiles";`
- 3 Resume the thread. See "Starting and stopping threads" on page 11-11.

Exception handling

C++Builder supports C++ exception handling, C-based structured exception handling, and VCL and CLX exception handling.

You can throw Ansi Standard C++ exceptions as well as VCL-type exceptions, which include built-in error handling routines.

Support is also provided for C-based Win32 structured exceptions, so your code can properly react to exceptions thrown by the Windows operating system.

C++ exception handling

Exceptions are exceptional conditions that require special handling and can include errors that occur at runtime, such as divide by zero, and the exhaustion of free store. *Exception handling* provides a standard way of dealing with errors, discovering both anticipated and unanticipated problems, and enables developers to recognize, track down, and fix bugs.

When an error occurs, the program *throws* an exception. The exception usually contains information about what happened. This allows another part of the program to diagnose the cause of the exception.

Programs prepare for exceptions by placing statements that might throw them in a *try block*. If one of these statements does throw an exception, control is transferred to an *exception handler* that handles that type of exception. The exception handler is said to *catch* the exception and specifies the actions to take before terminating the program.

Exception handling syntax

Exception handling requires the use of three keywords: **try**, **throw**, and **catch**. The **throw** keyword is used to generate an exception. The **try** block contains statements

that might throw exceptions and is followed by one or more catch statements. Each catch statement handles a specific type of exception.

Note The **try**, **catch**, and **throw** keywords are not allowed in C programs.

The try block

The try block contains a statement or statements that can throw an exception. A program throws an exception by executing a **throw** statement. The **throw** statement generally occurs within a function. For example:

```
void SetFieldValue(DF *dataField, int userValue)
{
    if ((userValue < 0) || userValue > 10)
        throw EIntegerRange(0, 10, userValue);
    . . .
}
```

Another part of the program can catch the thrown exception object and handle it accordingly. For example:

```
try
{
    SetFieldValue(dataField, userValue);
}
catch (EIntegerRange &rangeErr)
{
    printf("Expected value between %d and %d, but got %d\n",
        rangeErr.min, rangeErr.max, rangeErr.value);
}
```

In the previous example, if the function *SetFieldValue* finds that its input parameters are invalid, it can throw an exception to indicate this. The try/catch block wrapping *SetFieldValue* to catch the exception that *SetFieldValue* throws, and executes the printf statement. If no exception is thrown, the printf statement will not be executed.

A try block specified by **try** must be followed immediately by the *handler* specified by **catch**. The try block is a statement that specifies the flow of control as the program executes. If an exception is thrown in the try block, program control is transferred to the appropriate exception handler.

The *handler* is a block of code designed to handle the exception. The C++ language requires at least one handler immediately after a try block. The program should include a handler for each exception that the program can generate.

The throw statement

The throw statement can throw various types of objects. Objects in C++ may generally be thrown by value, reference, or pointer. For example:

```
// throw an object, to be caught by value or reference
throw EIntegerRange(0, 10, userValue);

// throw an object to be caught by pointer
throw new EIntegerRange(0, 10, userValue);
```


The next two examples show features that are provided largely for completeness in the standard. It is better to throw more descriptive exceptions. There are special cases for throwing built-in types, such as integers. Also, it is preferable not to throw exceptions by pointer.

```
// throw an integer
throw 1;

// throw a char *
throw "foo";
```

For most cases, you want to catch exceptions by reference, and especially by **const** reference. There are some cases where you want to be careful about catching objects by value. Objects that are caught by value must be copied before they are assigned to the catch parameter. If a user supplies a copy constructor, this is called, and this can add inefficiency.

The catch statement

The **catch** statement has several forms. Objects may be caught by value, reference, or pointer. In addition **const** modifiers can be applied to the catch parameter. There can be multiple **catch** statements for a single **try** block to allow a block to catch multiple different kinds of exceptions, and there should be a **catch** statement for each exception that might be thrown. For example:

```
try
    CommitChange(dataBase, recordMods);
catch (const EIntegerRange &rangeErr)
    printf("Got an integer range exception");
catch (const EFileError &fileErr)
    printf("Got a file I/O error");
```

If the function *CommitChange* uses multiple subsystems, and these subsystems can throw different types of exceptions, you may want to handle each type of exception separately. With multiple **catch** statements for a single **try** statement, you can have handlers for each type of exception.

If an exception object is derived from some base class, you may want to add specialized handlers for some derived exceptions, but also include a generic handler for the base class. You do this by placing the catch statements in the order that you want them to be searched when an exception is thrown. For example, the following code handles *EIntegerRange* first and then *ERange*, from which *EIntegerRange* is derived.

```
try
    SetFieldValue(dataField, userValue);
catch (const EIntegerRange &rangeErr)
    printf("Got an integer range exception");
catch (const ERange &rangeErr)
    printf("Got a range exception");
```

Lastly, if you want your handler to catch all exceptions that might be thrown past the try block, you use the special form **catch(...)**. This tells the exception handling system that the handler should be invoked for any exception. For example:

```
try
    SetFieldValue(dataField, userValue);
catch (...)
    printf("Got an exception of some kind");
```

Rethrowing exceptions

In some cases, an exception handler may process an exception, then either rethrow the same exception or throw a different exception.

If the handler wants to rethrow the current exception, it can just use the **throw** statement with no parameters. This instructs the compiler/RTL to take the current exception object and throw it again. For example:

```
catch (EIntegerRange &rangeErr)
{
    // Code here to do local handling for the exception
    throw; // rethrow the exception
}
```

If the handler wants to throw a different exception, it just uses the **throw** statement in the normal way.

Exception specifications

It is possible to specify which exceptions a function may throw. It is a runtime error to throw an exception of the wrong type past a function. The syntax for an *exception specification* is:

```
exception-specification:
    throw (type-id-list)    //type-id-list is optional
type-id-list:
    type-id
    type-id-list, type-id
```

The following examples are functions with exception specifications.

```
void f1();                // The function can throw any exception
void f2() throw();        // Should not throw any exceptions
void f3() throw( A, B* ); // Can throw exceptions publicly derived from A,
                          // or a pointer to publicly derived B
```

The definition and all declarations of such a function must have an exception specification containing the same set of *type-ids*. If a function throws an exception not listed in its specification, the program calls *unexpected*.

You may not want to specify an exception for the following reasons:

First, there is a runtime performance hit on Windows for providing an exception specification for a function.

Second, you can get unexpected errors at runtime. For example, suppose your system uses exception specifications and uses another subsystem in its implementation. Now suppose the subsystem is changed so that it throws new exception types. When you use the new subsystem code, you could get runtime errors without ever getting an indication from the compiler that this might happen.

Third, if you use virtual functions, you can violate the program design. This is because the exception specification is not considered part of the function type. For example, in the following code, the derived class *BETA::vfunc* is defined so that it does not throw any exceptions—a departure from the original function declaration.

```
class ALPHA {
public:
    struct ALPHA_ERR {};
    virtual void vfunc(void) throw (ALPHA_ERR) {} // Exception specification
};

class BETA : public ALPHA {
    void vfunc(void) throw() {} // Exception specification is changed
};
```

Unwinding exceptions

When an exception is thrown, the runtime library takes the thrown object, gets the type of the object, and looks upward in the call stack for a handler whose type matches the type of the thrown object. Once a handler is found, the RTL unwinds the stack to the point of the handler, and executes the handler.

In the unwind process, the RTL calls destructors for all local objects in the stack frames between where the exception was thrown and where it is caught. If a destructor causes an exception to be raised during stack unwinding and does not handle it, *terminate* is called. Destructors are called by default, but you can switch off the default by using the **-xd** compiler option.

Safe pointers

If you have local variables that are pointers to objects and an exception is thrown, these pointers are not automatically deleted. This is because there is no good way for the compiler to distinguish between a pointer to data that was allocated for this function only and any other pointer. The class that you can use to ensure that objects allocated for local use are destroyed in the even of an exception is *auto_ptr*. There is a special case in which memory is freed for a pointer allocated in a function:

```
TMyObject *pMyObject = new TMyObject;
```

In this example, if the constructor for *TMyObject* throws an exception, then the pointer to the object allocated for *TMyObject* will be deleted by the RTL when it unwinds the exception. This is the only time that the compiler automatically deletes a pointer value for you.

Constructors in exception handling

Class constructors can throw exceptions if they cannot successfully construct an object. If a constructor throws an exception, that object's destructor is not necessarily called. Destructors are called only for the base classes and for those objects that were fully constructed inside the classes since entering the **try** block.

Handling uncaught and unexpected exceptions

If an exception is thrown and no exception handler is found—that is, the exception is not caught—the program calls a termination function. You can specify your own termination function with *set_terminate*. If you do not specify a termination function, the *terminate* function is called. For example, the following code uses the *my_terminate* function to handle exceptions not caught by any handler.

```
void SetFieldValue(DF *dataField, int userValue)
{
    if ((userValue < 0) || (userValue > 10));
        throw EIntegerRange(0, 10, userValue);
    . . .
}

void my_terminate()
{
    printf("Exception not caught");
    abort();
}

// Set my_terminate() as the termination function
set_terminate(my_terminate);
// Call SetFieldValue. This generates an exception because the user value is greater
// than 10. Because the call is not in a try block, my_terminate is called.
SetFieldValue(DF, 11);
```

If a function specifies which exceptions it throws and it throws an unspecified exception, an unexpected function is called. You can specify your own unexpected function with *set_unexpected*. If you do not specify an unexpected function, the *unexpected* function is called.

Structured exceptions under Win32

Win32 supports C-based structured exception handling that is similar to C++ exceptions. There are some key differences, however, that require careful use when they are mixed with C++ code that is exception-aware.

Keep the following in mind when using structured exception handling in C++Builder applications:

- C-structured exceptions can be used in C++ programs.

- C++ exceptions cannot be used in a C program because C++ exceptions require that their handler be specified by the **catch** keyword, and **catch** is not allowed in a C program.
- An exception generated by a call to the *RaiseException* function is handled by a **try/__except** (C++) or **__try/__except** (C) block. (You can also use **try/__finally** or **__try/__finally** blocks. See “Syntax of structured exceptions” on page 12-7.) All handlers of **try/catch** blocks are ignored when *RaiseException* is called.
- Exceptions that are not handled by the application don't result in a call to *terminate()*, but are instead passed to the operating system (in general, the end result is termination of the process).
- Exception handlers do not receive a copy of the exception object, unless they request it.

You can use the following C exception helper functions in C or C++ programs:

- *GetExceptionCode*
- *GetExceptionInformation*
- *SetUnhandledExceptionFilter*
- *UnhandledExceptionFilter*

C++Builder does not restrict the use of *UnhandledExceptionFilter* function to the except filter of **__try/__except** or **try/__except** blocks. However, program behavior is undefined when this function is called outside of a **__try/__except** or **try/__except** block.

CLX CLX applications running on Linux do not support C/C++ structured exceptions.

Syntax of structured exceptions

In a C program, the ANSI-compatible keywords used to implement structured exceptions are **__except**, **__finally**, and **__try**.

Note The **__try** keyword can only appear in C programs. If you want to write portable code, do not use structured exception handling in your C++ programs.

try-except exception handling syntax

For *try-except* exception handling, the syntax is as follows:

```
try-block:
    __try compound-statement (in a C module)
    try compound-statement (in a C++ module)
handler:
    __except (expression) compound-statement
```

try-finally termination syntax

For *try-finally* termination, the syntax is as follows:

```
try-block:
    __try compound-statement (in a C module)
    try compound-statement (in a C++ module)
termination:
    __finally compound-statement
```

Handling structured exceptions

Structured exceptions can be handled using an extension of C++ exception handling:

```
try {
    foo();
}
__except(__expr__) {
    // handler here
}
```

`__expr__` is an expression that evaluates to one of three values:

| Value | Description |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| EXCEPTION_CONTINUE_SEARCH (0) | The handler is not entered, and the OS continues searching for an exception handler. |
| EXCEPTION_CONTINUE_EXECUTION (-1) | Continue execution at the point of the exception. |
| EXCEPTION_EXECUTE_HANDLER (1) | Enter the exception handler. If the code was compiled with destructor cleanup enabled (-xd, on by default), all destructors for local objects created between the point of the exception and the exception handler are called when the stack is unwound. Stack unwinding is completed before entering the handler. |

Win32 provides two functions that can be used to query information about the active exception: *GetExceptionCode()* and *GetExceptionInformation()*. If you want to call a function as part of the “filter” expression above, these functions must be called from within the context of the `__except()` directly:

```
#include <Windows.h>
#include <except.h>

int filter_func(EXCEPTION_POINTERS *);

...
EXCEPTION_POINTERS *xp = 0;
try {
    foo();
}
__except(filter_func(xp = GetExceptionInformation())) {
    //...
}
```

Or, if you prefer using the comma operator to assignments nested in function calls, see the following example:

```
__except((xp = GetExceptionInformation()), filter_func(xp))
```

Exception filters

A filter expression can invoke a filter function but the filter function cannot call *GetExceptionInformation*. You can pass the return value of *GetExceptionInformation* as a parameter to a filter function.

To pass the EXCEPTION_POINTERS information to an exception handler, the filter expression or filter function must copy the pointer or data from *GetExceptionInformation* to a location where the handler can later access it.

In the case of nested **try-except** statements, each statement's filter expression is evaluated until it locates EXCEPTION_EXECUTE_HANDLER or EXCEPTION_CONTINUE_EXECUTION. A filter expression can invoke *GetExceptionInformation* to get exception information.

As long as *GetExceptionInformation* or *GetExceptionCode* is called directly in the expression provided to **__except**, you can use a function to determine what to do with an exception rather than trying to create a complex C++ expression. Almost all of the information needed to handle an exception can be extracted from the result of *GetExceptionInformation()*. *GetExceptionInformation()* returns a pointer to an EXCEPTION_POINTERS structure:

```
struct EXCEPTION_POINTERS {
    EXCEPTION_RECORD *ExceptionRecord;
    CONTEXT *Context;
};
```

EXCEPTION_RECORD contains the machine-independent state:

```
struct EXCEPTION_RECORD {
    DWORD ExceptionCode;
    DWORD ExceptionFlags;
    struct EXCEPTION_RECORD *ExceptionRecord;
    void *ExceptionAddress;
    DWORD NumberParameters;
    DWORD ExceptionInformation[EXCEPTION_MAXIMUM_PARAMETERS];
};
```

Typically, the filter function looks at the information in the ExceptionRecord to decide how to respond. Sometimes more specific information is needed (especially if the action to take is EXCEPTION_CONTINUE_EXECUTION: if nothing is done, the code that caused the exception would be executed again). For this situation, the other field of the EXCEPTION_POINTERS structure provides the processor state at the time of the exception. If this structure is modified and the filter returns EXCEPTION_CONTINUE_EXCEPTION, it is used to set the state of the thread before continuing with execution. For example:

```
static int xfilter(EXCEPTION_POINTERS *xp)
{
    int rc;

    EXCEPTION_RECORD *xr = xp->ExceptionRecord;
    CONTEXT *xc = xp->Context;

    switch (xr->ExceptionCode) {
        case EXCEPTION_BREAKPOINT:
            // whoops, someone left an embedded breakpoint.
            // just step over it (1 byte on x86)
            ++xc->Eip;
            rc = EXCEPTION_CONTINUE_EXECUTION;
            break;
```

```

        case EXCEPTION_ACCESS_VIOLATION:
            rc = EXCEPTION_EXECUTE_HANDLER;
            break;

        default:
            // give up
            rc = EXCEPTION_CONTINUE_SEARCH;
            break;
    };

    return rc;
}
...

EXCEPTION_POINTERS *xp;

try {
    func();
}
__except(xfilter(xp = GetExceptionInformation())) {
    abort();
}

```

Mixing C++ with structured exceptions

You need to be aware of a few issues when using structured exceptions in C++ programs. First, although C++Builder implements C++ exceptions with Win32 structured exceptions, C++ exceptions are transparent to an **__except** block.

A **try** block can be followed by either exactly one **except** block or at least one catch block. Attempting to mix the two causes a compiler error. Code that needs to handle both types of exceptions should simply be nested inside two **try** blocks:

```

try {
    EXCEPTION_POINTERS *xp;

    try {
        func();
    }
    __except(xfilter(xp = GetExceptionInformation())) {
        //...
    }
}
catch (...) {
    //...
}

```

A function's *throw()* specification does not affect the behavior of a program with regard to a Win32 exception. Also, an unhandled exception is eventually handled by the operating system (if a debugger doesn't handle it first), unlike a C++ program that calls *terminate()*.

Any module compiled with the **-xd** compiler option (on by default) will invoke destructors for all objects with **auto** storage. Stack unwinding occurs from the point where the exception is thrown to the point where the exception is caught.

C-based exceptions in C++ program example

```

/* Program results:
Another exception:
Caught a C-based exception.
Caught C++ exception[Hardware error: Divide by 0]
C++ allows __finally too!
*/
#include <stdio.h>
#include <string.h>
#include <windows.h>

class Exception
{
public:
    Exception(char* s = "Unknown"){ what = strdup(s); }
    Exception(const Exception& e){ what = strdup(e.what); }
    ~Exception() { delete[] what; }
    char* msg() const { return what; }
private:
    char* what;
};

int main()
{
    float e, f, g;
    try
    {
        try
        {
            f = 1.0;
            g = 0.0;
            try
            {
                puts("Another exception.");
                e = f / g;
            }
            __except(EXCEPTION_EXECUTE_HANDLER)
            {
                puts("Caught a C-based exception.");
                throw(Exception("Hardware error: Divide by 0"));
            }
        }
        catch(const Exception& e)
        {
            printf("Caught C++ Exception: %s :\n", e.msg());
        }
    }
    __finally
    {

```

```
    puts("C++ allows __finally too!");
}
return e;
}
```

Defining exceptions

Raising a Win32 exception that is handled within the same program does not generally make much sense: C++ exceptions can do the job better, remain significantly more portable, and use a simpler syntax. Win32 exceptions do have the advantage, however, that they can be handled by components that may not have been compiled with the same C++ compiler.

The first step is to define the exception. An exception is a 32-bit integer with the following format (starting at bit 0):

| Bit | Meaning |
|-------|--|
| 31-30 | 11 = error (normal) 00 = success, 01 = informational 10 = warning |
| 29 | 1 = user-defined |
| 28 | Reserved |
| 27-0 | User-defined |

In addition to defining the exception code, you need to decide whether or not to include additional information with the exception (accessible to the filter/handler from the exception record). There is no conventional method for encoding additional parameters in the exception code. Refer to Win32 documentation (available in C++Builder online Help) for more information.

Raising exceptions

A Win32 exception is raised with a call to *RaiseException()*, which is declared as follows

```
void RaiseException(DWORD ec, DWORD ef, DWORD na, const DWORD *a);
```

where:

- ec Exception code
- ef Exception flags, either 0 or EXCEPTION_NONCONTINUABLE
(If the exception is marked as not continuable and a filter tries to continue it, EXCEPTION_NONCONTINUABLE_EXCEPTION is raised.)
- na Number of elements in the arguments array
- a Pointer to first element in the argument array—the meaning of these arguments depends on the particular exception

Termination blocks

The structured exception handling model supports a “termination block” which is executed whether a guarded block is exited normally or via an exception. The C++Builder compiler supports this in C with the following syntax:

```
__try {
    func();
}
__finally {
    // this happens whether func() raises an exception or not
}
```

Termination blocks are supported by a C++ extension where you can handle cleanup in the **__finally** block:

```
try {
    func();
}
__finally {
    // this happens whether func() raises an exception or not
}
```

The following example illustrates termination blocks:

```
/* Program results:
An exception:
Caught an exception.
The __finally is executed too!
No exception:
No exception happened, but __finally still executes!
*/
#include <stdio.h>
#include <windows.h>

int main()
{
    float e, f, g;

    try
    {
        f = 1.0;
        g = 0.0;
        try
        {
            puts("An exception:");
            e = f / g;
        }
        __except(EXCEPTION_EXECUTE_HANDLER)
        {
            puts("Caught an exception.");
        }
    }
    __finally
    {
```

C++Builder exception handling options

```
    puts("The __finally is executed too!");
}
try
{
    f = 1.0;
    g = 2.0;
    try
    {
        puts("No exception:");
        e = f / g;
    }
    __except(EXCEPTION_EXECUTE_HANDLER)
    {
        puts("Caught an exception.");
    }
}
__finally
{
    puts("No exception happened, but __finally still executes!");
}
return e;
}
```

C++ code can also handle a “termination block” by creating local objects with destructors that are called when the scope is exited. Since C++Builder structured exceptions support destructor cleanup, this will work regardless of the type of exception raised.

Note One special case concerns what happens when an exception is raised and never handled by the program. For a C++ exception, the C++Builder compiler calls destructors for local objects (not required by the language definition), whereas with an unhandled Win32 exception, destructor cleanup does not happen.

C++Builder exception handling options

Following are the exception handling options in the C++Builder compiler.

Table 12.1 Exception handling compiler options

| Command-line switch | Description |
|---------------------|--|
| -x | Enable C++ exception handling (On by default) |
| -xd | Enable destructor cleanup. Calls destructors for all automatically declared objects between the scope of the catch and throw statements when an exception is thrown. (Advanced option—on by default) |
| -xp | Enable exception location information. Makes available runtime identification of exceptions by providing line numbers in the source code at the exception location. This lets the program query the file and line number where a C++ exception occurred using the <code>__ThrowFileName</code> and <code>__ThrowLineNumber</code> globals. (Advanced option) |

VCL/CLX exception handling

If you use VCL and CLX components in your applications, you need to understand the VCL/CLX exception handling mechanism. That is because exceptions are built into many classes and they are thrown automatically when something unexpected occurs. If you do not handle the exception, the VCL and CLX handle it in a default manner. Typically, a message displays describing the type of error that occurred.

When you encounter an exception that displays a message indicating the type of exception that was thrown, you can look up the exception class in online Help. The information provided will often help you to determine where the error occurred and its cause.

In addition, Chapter 13, “C++ language support for the VCL and CLX” describes subtle language differences that can cause exceptions. The section “Exceptions thrown from constructors” on page 13-13 provides an example to show what happens if an exception is thrown during object construction.

Differences between C++ and VCL/CLX exception handling

Following are some noteworthy differences between C++ and VCL/CLX exception handling.

Exceptions thrown from constructors:

- C++ destructors are called for members and base classes that are fully constructed.
- VCL and CLX base class destructors are called even if the object or base class isn’t fully constructed.

Catching and throwing exceptions:

- C++ exceptions can be caught by reference, pointer, or value. VCL and CLX exceptions, which are exceptions derived from *TObject*, can only be caught by reference or pointer. An attempt to catch *TObject* exceptions by value results in a compile-time error. Hardware or operating system exceptions, such as *EAccessViolation*, should be caught by reference.
- VCL and CLX exceptions are caught by reference.
- You cannot use **throw** to reraise an exception that was caught within VCL or CLX code.

Handling operating system exceptions

C++Builder allows you to handle exceptions thrown by the operating system. Operating system exceptions include access violations, integer math errors, floating-point math errors, stack overflow, and *Ctrl+C* interrupts. These are handled in the C++

RTL and converted to VCL and CLX exception class objects before being dispatched to your application. You can then write C++ code that looks like this:

```
try
{
    char * p = 0;
    *p = 0;
}
// You should always catch by reference.
catch (const EAccessViolation &e)
{
    printf("You can't do that!\n");
}
```

The classes C++Builder uses are the same as those that Delphi uses and are only available to C++Builder VCL and CLX applications. They are derived from *TObject* and require the VCL and CLX underpinnings.

Here are some characteristics of C++Builder exception handling:

- You are **not** responsible for freeing the exception object.
- Operating system exceptions should be caught by reference.
- You cannot rethrow an operating system exception once the catch frame has been exited and have it be caught by intervening VCL and CLX catch frames.
- You cannot rethrow an operating system exception once the catch frame has been exited and have it be caught by intervening operating system catch frames.

The last two points can be stated roughly as this: Once an operating system exception is caught as a C++ exception, it cannot be rethrown as if it were an operating system exception or a VCL or CLX exception unless you are in the catching stack frame.

Handling VCL and CLX exceptions

C++Builder broadens the semantics for handling software exceptions thrown from the VCL and CLX or, equivalently, exceptions thrown from C++ where the exception class being thrown is derived from *TObject*. In such a case, a couple of rules are derived from the fact that VCL-style classes can only be allocated on the heap.

- VCL-style exception classes may only be caught by pointer, if it is a software exception, or by reference (reference is preferred).
- VCL-style exceptions should be thrown with “by value” syntax.

VCL and CLX exception classes

C++Builder includes a large set of built-in exception classes for automatically handling divide-by-zero errors, file I/O errors, invalid typecasts, and many other exception conditions. All VCL and CLX exception classes descend from one root object called *Exception*. *Exception* encapsulates the fundamental properties and

methods for all VCL-type exceptions and provides a consistent interface for applications to handle exceptions.

You can pass exceptions to a **catch** block that takes a parameter of type *Exception*. Use the following syntax to catch VCL and CLX exceptions:

```
catch (exception_class &exception_variable)
```

You specify the exception class that you want to catch and provide a variable by which to refer to the exception.

Following is an example of how to throw a VCL or CLX exception:

```
void __fastcall TForm1::ThrowException(TObject *Sender)
{
    try
    {
        throw Exception("An error has occurred");
    }
    catch(const Exception &E)
    {
        ShowMessage(AnsiString(E.ClassName())+ E.Message);
    }
}
```

The **throw** statement in the previous example creates an instance of the *Exception* class and calls its constructor. All exceptions descended from *Exception* have a message that can be displayed, passed through constructors, and retrieved through the *Message* property.

Selected VCL/CLX exception classes are described in Table 12.2.

Table 12.2 Selected exception classes

| Exception class | Description |
|---------------------------|--|
| <i>EAbort</i> | Stops a sequence of events without displaying an error message dialog box. |
| <i>EAccessViolation</i> | Checks for invalid memory access errors. |
| <i>EBitsError</i> | Prevents invalid attempts to access a Boolean array. |
| <i>EComponentError</i> | Signals an invalid attempt to register or rename a component. |
| <i>EConvertError</i> | Indicates string or object conversion errors. |
| <i>EDatabaseError</i> | Specifies a database access error. |
| <i>EDBEditError</i> | Catches data incompatible with a specified mask. |
| <i>EDivByZero</i> | Catches integer divide-by-zero errors. |
| <i>EExternalException</i> | Signifies an unrecognized exception code. |
| <i>EInOutError</i> | Represents a file I/O error. |
| <i>EIntOverflow</i> | Specifies integer calculations whose results are too large for the allocated register. |
| <i>EInvalidCast</i> | Checks for illegal typecasting. |
| <i>EInvalidGraphic</i> | Indicates an attempt to work with an unrecognized graphic file format. |
| <i>EInvalidOperation</i> | Occurs when invalid operations are attempted on a component. |
| <i>EInvalidPointer</i> | Results from invalid pointer operations. |
| <i>EMenuError</i> | Involves a problem with menu item. |

Table 12.2 Selected exception classes (continued)

| Exception class | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| <i>EOleCtrlError</i> | Detects problems with linking to ActiveX controls. |
| <i>EOleError</i> | Specifies OLE automation errors. |
| <i>EPrinterError</i> | Signals a printing error. |
| <i>EPropertyError</i> | Occurs on unsuccessful attempts to set the value of a property. |
| <i>ERangeError</i> | Indicates an integer value that is too large for the declared type to which it is assigned. |
| <i>ERegistryException</i> | Specifies registry errors. |
| <i>EZeroDivide</i> | Catches floating-point divide-by-zero errors. |

As you can see from the selected list above, the built-in VCL and CLX exception classes handle much of the exception handling for you and can simplify your code. There are other times when you will need to create your own exception classes to handle unique situations. You can declare a new exception class by making it a descendant of type *Exception* and creating as many constructors as you need (or copy the constructors from an existing class in *Sysutils.hpp*).

Portability considerations

Several runtime libraries (RTLs) are delivered with C++Builder. Most of them pertain to C++Builder applications, but one of them, *cw32mt.lib*, is the normal multi-threaded RTL that does not make any references to the VCL or CLX. This RTL is provided for support of legacy applications that may be part of a project but do not depend on the VCL or CLX. This RTL does not have support for catching operating system exceptions because those exception objects are derived from *TObject* and would require parts of the VCL and CLX to be linked into your application.

You can use the *cp32mt.lib* library, a multi-threaded runtime library, which provides memory management and exception handling with the VCL and CLX.

You can use two import libraries, *cw32mti.lib* and *cp32mti.lib*, for using the RTL DLL. Use *cp32mti.lib* for VCL and CLX exception support.

C++ language support for the VCL and CLX

C++Builder leverages the Rapid Application Development (RAD) capabilities of the Visual Component Library (VCL) and Component Library for Cross-Platform (CLX) written in Object Pascal. This chapter explains how Object Pascal language features, constructs, and concepts were implemented in C++Builder to support the VCL and CLX. It is written for programmers using VCL and CLX objects in their applications and for developers creating new classes descended from VCL and CLX classes.

The first half of this chapter compares C++ and Object Pascal object models, describing how C++Builder combines these two approaches. The second half of the chapter describes how Object Pascal language constructs were translated into C++ counterparts in C++Builder. It includes details on keyword extensions that were added to support the VCL and CLX. Some of these extensions, like closures and properties, are useful features independent of their support for VCL- and CLX-based code.

Note References to C++ classes derived from *TObject* refer to classes for which *TObject* is the ultimate, but not necessarily immediate, ancestor. For consistency with the compiler diagnostics, such classes are also referred to as “VCL-style classes.”

C++ and Object Pascal object models

The C++ and Object Pascal class models are different in both obvious and subtle ways. One of the most obvious differences is that C++ allows multiple inheritance while Object Pascal is restricted to a single inheritance model. In addition, C++ and Object Pascal are subtly different in the way they create, initialize, reference, copy, and destroy objects. These differences and their impact on C++Builder VCL-style classes are described in this section.

Inheritance and interfaces

Unlike C++, the Object Pascal language does not support multiple inheritance. Any classes that you create that have VCL or CLX ancestors inherit this restriction. That is, you can't use multiple base classes for a VCL-style C++ class, even if the VCL or CLX class is not the immediate ancestor.

Using interfaces instead of multiple inheritance

For many of the situations where you would use multiple inheritance in C++, Object Pascal code makes use of interfaces instead. There is no C++ construct that maps directly to the Object Pascal concept of interface. An Object Pascal interface acts like a class with no implementation. That is, an interface is like a class where all the methods are pure virtual and there are no data members. While an Object Pascal class can have only a single parent class, it can support any number of interfaces. Object Pascal code can assign a class instance to variables of any of those interface types, just as it can assign the class instance to a variable of any ancestor class type. This allows polymorphic behavior for classes that share the same interface, even if they do not have a common ancestor.

In C++Builder, the compiler recognizes classes that have only pure virtual methods and no data members as corresponding to Object Pascal interfaces. Thus, when you create a VCL-style class, you are permitted to use multiple inheritance, but only if all of the base classes except the one that is a VCL, CLX, or VCL-style class have no data members and only pure virtual methods.

Note The interface classes do not need to be VCL-style classes, the only requirement is that they have no data members and only pure virtual methods.

Declaring interface classes

You can declare a class that represents an interface just like any other C++ class. However, by using certain conventions, you can make it clearer that the class is intended to act as an interface. These conventions are as follows:

- Instead of using the class keyword, interfaces are declared using `__interface`. `__interface` is a macro that maps to the class keyword. It is not necessary, but makes it clearer that the class is intended to act as an interface.
- Interfaces typically have names that begin with the letter 'I'. Examples are *IComponentEditor* or *IDesigner*. By following this convention, you do not need to look back at the class declaration to realize when a class is acting as an interface.
- Interfaces typically have an associated GUID. This is not an absolute requirement, but most of the code that supports interfaces expects to find a GUID. You can use the `__declspec` modifier with the `uuid` argument to associate an interface with a GUID. For interfaces, the `INTERFACE_UUID` macro maps to the same thing.

The following interface declaration illustrates these conventions:

```
__interface INTERFACE_UUID("{C527B88F-3F8E-1134-80e0-01A04F57B270}") IHelloWorld :
    public IInterface
{
```

```
public:
    virtual void __stdcall SayHelloWorld(void) = 0 ;
};
```

Typically, when declaring an interface class, C++Builder code also declares a corresponding *DelphiInterface* class that makes working with the interface more convenient:

```
typedef System::DelphiInterface< IHelloWorld > _di_IHelloWorld;
```

For information about the *DelphiInterface* class, see “Delphi interfaces” on page 13-20.

Unknown and Interface

All Object Pascal interfaces descend from a single common ancestor, *IInterface*. It is not necessary for C++ interface classes to use *IInterface* as a base class, in the sense that a VCL-style class can use them as additional base classes, but VCL and CLX code that deals with interfaces assume that the *IInterface* methods are present.

In COM programming, all interfaces descend from *IUnknown*. COM support in the VCL is based on a definition of *IUnknown* that maps directly to *IInterface*. That is, in Object Pascal, *IUnknown* and *IInterface* are identical.

The Object Pascal definition of *IUnknown*, however, does not correspond to the definition of *IUnknown* that is used in C++Builder. The file *unknwn.h* defines *IUnknown* to include the following three methods:

```
virtual HRESULT STDMETHODCALLTYPE QueryInterface( const GUID &guid, void ** ppv ) = 0;
virtual ULONG STDMETHODCALLTYPE AddRef() = 0;
virtual ULONG STDMETHODCALLTYPE Release() = 0;
```

This corresponds to the definition of *IUnknown* that is defined by Microsoft as part of the COM specification.

Note For information on *IUnknown* and its use, see Chapter 38, “Overview of COM technologies” or the Microsoft documentation.

Unlike the case in Object Pascal, the C++Builder definition of *IInterface* is not equivalent to its definition of *IUnknown*. Instead, *IInterface* is a descendant of *IUnknown* that includes an additional method, *Supports*:

```
template <typename T>
HRESULT __stdcall Supports(DelphiInterface<T>& smartIntf)
{
    return QueryInterface(_uuidof(T),
        reinterpret_cast<void*>(&static_cast<T*>(&smartIntf)));
}
```

Supports lets you obtain a *DelphiInterface* for another supported interface from the object that implements *IInterface*. Thus, for example, if you have a *DelphiInterface* for an interface *IMyFirstInterface*, and the implementing object also implements *IMySecondInterface* (whose *DelphiInterface* type is *_di_IMySecondInterface*), you can obtain the *DelphiInterface* for the second interface as follows:

```
_di_IMySecondInterface MySecondIntf;
MyFirstIntf->Supports(MySecondIntf);
```

The VCL and CLX use a mapping of *IUnknown* into Object Pascal. This mapping converts the types used in the *IUnknown* methods to Object Pascal types, and renames the *AddRef* and *Release* methods to *_AddRef* and *_Release* in order to indicate that they should never be called directly. (In Object Pascal, the compiler automatically generates the necessary calls to *IUnknown* methods.) When the *IUnknown* (or *IInterface*) methods that VCL and CLX objects support are mapped back into C++, this results in the following method signatures:

```
virtual HRESULT __stdcall QueryInterface(const GUID &IID, void *Obj);
int __stdcall _AddRef(void);
int __stdcall _Release(void);
```

This means that VCL and CLX objects that support *IUnknown* or *IInterface* in Object Pascal do not support the versions of *IUnknown* and *IInterface* that appear in C++Builder.

Creating classes that support IUnknown

Many classes in the VCL and CLX include interface support. In fact, the base class for all VCL-style classes, *TObject*, has a *GetInterface* method that lets you obtain a *DelphiInterface* class for any interface that an object instance supports. *TComponent* and *TInterfacedObject* both implement the *IInterface* (*IUnknown*) methods. Thus, any descendant of *TComponent* or *TInterfacedObject* that you create automatically inherits support for the common methods of all Object Pascal interfaces. In Object Pascal, when you create a descendant of either of these classes, you can support a new interface by implementing only those methods introduced by the new interface, relying on a default implementation for the inherited *IInterface* methods.

Unfortunately, because the signatures of the *IUnknown* and *IInterface* methods differ between C++Builder and the versions used in VCL and CLX classes, VCL-style classes that you create do not automatically include *IInterface* or *IUnknown* support, even if they are derived (directly or indirectly) from *TComponent* or *TInterfacedObject*. That is, to support any interfaces you define in C++ that descend from *IUnknown* or *IInterface*, you must still add an implementation of the *IUnknown* methods.

The easiest way to implement the *IUnknown* methods in a class that descends from *TComponent* or *TInterfacedObject* is to take advantage of the built-in *IUnknown* support, in spite of the differences in function signatures. Simply add implementations for the C++ versions of the *IUnknown* methods, delegating to the inherited Object Pascal-based versions. For example:

```
virtual HRESULT __stdcall QueryInterface(const GUID& IID, void **Obj)
{
    return TInterfacedObject::QueryInterface(IID, (void *)Obj);
}

virtual ULONG __stdcall AddRef()
{
    return TInterfacedObject::_AddRef();
}

virtual ULONG __stdcall Release()
{
    return TInterfacedObject::_Release();
}
```

By adding the previous three method implementations to a descendant of *TInterfacedObject*, your class obtains full *IUnknown* or *IInterface* support.

Interfaced classes and lifetime management

The *IUnknown* methods of interface classes have implications for the way you allocate and free the objects that implement the interface. When *IUnknown* is implemented by a COM object, the object uses the *IUnknown* methods to keep track of how many references to its interface are in use. When that reference count drops to zero, the object automatically frees itself. *TInterfacedObject* implements the *IUnknown* methods to perform this same type of lifetime management.

This interpretation of the *IUnknown* methods, however, is not strictly necessary. The default implementation of the *IUnknown* methods provided by *TComponent*, for example, ignores the reference count on the interface, so that the component does not free itself when its reference count drops to zero. This is because *TComponent* relies on the object specified by its *Owner* property to free it.

Some components use a hybrid of these two models. If their *Owner* property is NULL, they use the reference count on their interface for lifetime management, and free themselves when that reference count drops to zero. If they have an owner, they ignore the reference counting and allow the owner to free them. Note that for such hybrid objects, as well as for any other objects that use reference counting for lifetime management, the objects are not automatically freed if the application creates the object but never obtains an interface from it.

Object identity and instantiation

In C++, an instance of a class is an actual object. That object can be directly manipulated, or it can be accessed indirectly through either a reference or a pointer to it. For example, given a C++ class *CPP_class* with a constructor that takes no arguments, the following are all valid instance variables of that class:

```
CPP_class by_value; // an object of type CPP_class
CPP_class& ref = by_value; // a reference to the object by_value, above
CPP_class* ptr = new CPP_class(); // a pointer to an object of type CPP_class
```

By contrast, in Object Pascal a variable of type *object* always refers to the object indirectly. The memory for all objects is dynamically allocated. For example, given an Object Pascal class *OP_class*

```
ref: OP_class;
ref := OP_class.Create;
```

ref is a “reference” to an object of type *OP_class*. Translated to C++Builder code, it would be

```
OP_class* ref = new OP_class;
```

Distinguishing C++ and Object Pascal references

Documentation frequently refers to an Object Pascal class instance variable as a reference, but describes its behavior as that of a pointer. This is because it has

properties of both. An Object Pascal object reference is like a C++ pointer with the following exceptions:

- An Object Pascal reference is implicitly dereferenced (in which case it acts more like a C++ reference).
- An Object Pascal reference does not have pointer arithmetic as a defined operation.

When comparing an Object Pascal reference with a C++ reference, there are also similarities and differences. References in both languages are implicitly dereferenced, however,

- An Object Pascal reference can be rebound, whereas a C++ reference cannot.
- An Object Pascal reference can be **nil**, whereas a C++ reference must refer to a valid object.

Some of the design decisions underlying the VCL and CLX framework are based upon the use of this type of instance variable. A pointer is the closest C++ language construct to an Object Pascal reference. Consequently, nearly all VCL and CLX object identifiers are translated into C++ pointers in C++Builder.

Note The Object Pascal **var** parameter type is a close match to a C++ reference. For more information about **var** parameters, see “Var parameters” on page 13-16.

Copying objects

Unlike C++, Object Pascal does not have built-in compiler support for making a copy of an object. This section describes the impact of this difference on assignment operators and copy constructors for VCL-style classes.

Assignment operators

The Object Pascal assignment operator (**:=**) is not a class assignment operator (operator=**()**). The assignment operator copies the reference, not the object. In the following code, *B* and *C* both refer to the same object:

```
B, C: TButton;
B:= TButton.Create(ownerCtrl);
C:= B;
```

This example translates to the following code in C++Builder:

```
TButton *B = NULL;
TButton *C = NULL;
B = new TButton(ownerCtrl);
C = B; // makes a copy of the pointer, not the object
```

VCL-style classes in C++Builder follow the Object Pascal language rules for assignment operators. This means that, in the following code, assignments between dereferenced pointers are not valid because they attempt to copy the object, not the pointer:

```
TVCLStyleClass *p = new TVCLStyleClass;
TVCLStyleClass *q = new TVCLStyleClass;
*p = *q; // not allowed for VCL style class objects
```

Note For VCL-style classes, it is still valid to use C++ syntax to bind a reference. For example, the following code is valid:

```
TVCLStyleClass *ptr = new TVCLStyleClass;
TVCLStyleClass &ref = *ptr; // OK for VCL style classes
```

Although this is not the same as using an assignment operator, the syntax is similar enough that it is mentioned here for clarification and comparison.

Copy constructors

Object Pascal does not have built-in copy constructors. Consequently, VCL-style classes in C++Builder do not have built-in copy constructors. The following example code attempts to create a *TButton* pointer by using a copy constructor:

```
TButton *B = new TButton(ownerCtrl);
TButton *C = new TButton(*B); // not allowed for VCL style class objects
```

Do not write code that depends upon a built-in copy constructor for VCL and CLX classes. To create a copy of a VCL-style class object in C++Builder, you can write code for a member function that copies the object. Alternatively, descendants of the VCL and CLX *TPersistent* class can override the *Assign* method to copy data from one object to another. This is typically done, for example, in graphics classes such as *TBitmap* and *TIcon* that contain resource images. Ultimately, the manner of copying an object can be determined by the programmer (component writer); but be aware that some of the copy methods used in standard C++ are not available for VCL-style classes.

Objects as function arguments

As discussed previously, instance variables in C++ and in Object Pascal are not identical. You should be aware of this when passing objects as arguments to functions. In C++, objects can be passed to functions either by value, by reference, or by pointer. In Object Pascal, when an object is passed by value to a function, remember that the object argument is already a reference to an object. So, it is, in fact, the reference that is passed by value, not the actual object. There is no Object Pascal equivalent to passing an actual object by value as in C++. VCL-style objects passed to functions follow the Object Pascal rules.

Object construction for C++Builder VCL/CLX classes

C++ and Object Pascal construct objects differently. This section is an overview of this topic and a description of how C++Builder combines these two approaches.

C++ object construction

In standard C++, the order of construction is virtual base classes, followed by base classes, and finally the derived class. The C++ syntax uses the constructor initialization list to call base class constructors. The runtime type of the object is that of the class of the current constructor being called. Virtual method dispatching follows the runtime type of the object and changes accordingly during construction.

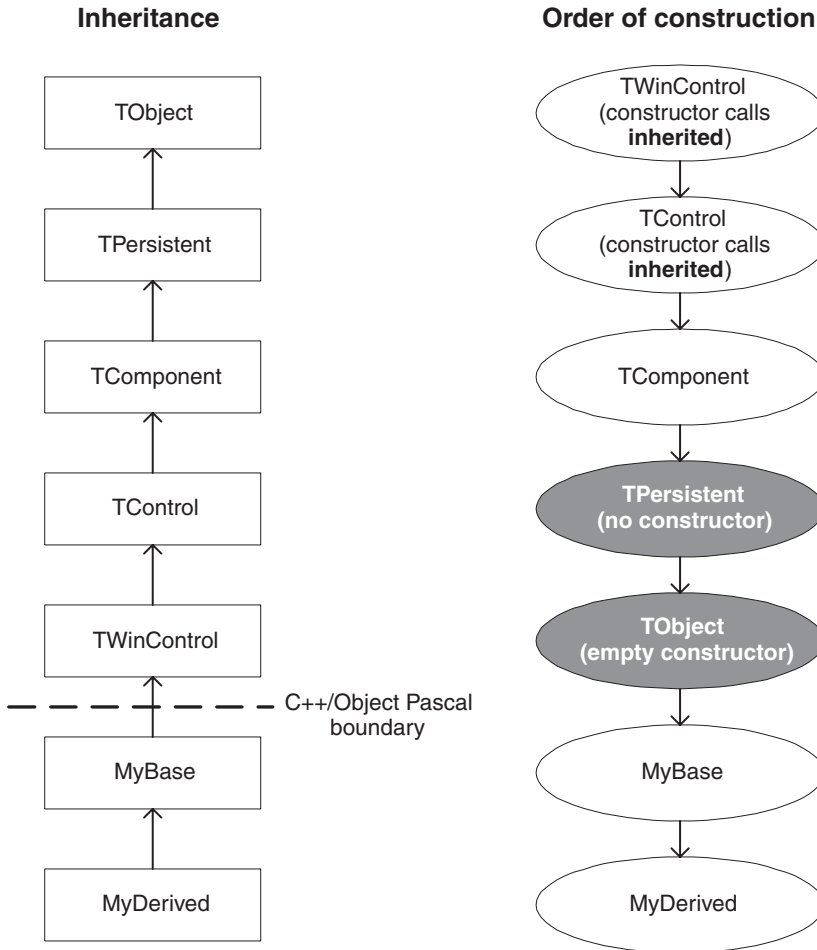
Object Pascal object construction

In Object Pascal, only the constructor for the instantiated class is guaranteed to be called; however, the memory for base classes is allocated. Constructing each immediate base class is done by calling **inherited** in the corresponding derived class's constructor. By convention, VCL and CLX classes use **inherited** to call (non-empty) base class constructors. Be aware, however, that this is not a requirement of the language. The runtime type of the object is established immediately as that of the instantiated class and does not change as base class constructors are called. Virtual method dispatching follows the runtime type of the object and, therefore, does not change during construction.

C++Builder object construction

VCL-style objects are constructed like Object Pascal objects, but using C++ syntax. This means that the method and order of calling base class constructors follows C++ syntax using the initialization list for all non-VCL and CLX base classes and the first immediate VCL or CLX ancestor. This VCL or CLX base class is the first class to be constructed. It constructs its own base class, optionally, using **inherited**, following the Object Pascal method. Therefore, the VCL and CLX base classes are constructed in the opposite order from which you might expect in C++. Then the C++ base classes are all constructed, from the most distant ancestor to the derived class. The runtime type of the object and virtual method dispatching are Object Pascal-based.

Figure 13.1 illustrates the construction of an instance of a VCL-style class, *MyDerived*, descended from *MyBase*, which is a direct descendant of *TWinControl*. *MyDerived* and *MyBase* are implemented in C++. *TWinControl* is a VCL class implemented in Object Pascal.

Figure 13.1 Order of VCL-style object construction

Note that the order of construction might seem backwards to a C++ programmer because it starts from the leaf-most ancestor to *TObject* for true VCL and CLX classes, then constructs *MyBase*, and finally constructs the derived class.

Note *TComponent* does not call **inherited** because *TPersistent* does not have a constructor. *TObject* has an empty constructor, so it is not called. If these class constructors were called, the order would follow the diagram in which these classes appear in gray.

The object construction models in C++, Object Pascal, and C++Builder are summarized in Table 13.1:

Table 13.1 Object model comparison

| C++ | Object Pascal | C++Builder |
|--|--|--|
| Order of construction | | |
| Virtual base classes, then base classes, finally the derived class. | Instantiated class constructor is the first and only constructor to be called automatically. If subsequent classes are constructed, they are constructed from leaf-most to root. | Most immediate VCL or CLX base class, then construction follows the Object Pascal model, then construction follows the C++ model (except that no virtual base classes are allowed). |
| Method of calling base class constructors | | |
| Automatically, from the constructor initialization list. | Optionally, explicitly, and at any time during the body of the derived class constructor, by using the inherited keyword. | Automatically from the constructor initialization list through the most immediate ancestor that is a VCL or CLX base class constructor. Then according to the Object Pascal method, calling constructors with inherited . |
| Runtime type of the object as it is being constructed | | |
| Changes, reflecting the type of the current constructor class. | Established immediately as that of the instantiated class. | Established immediately as that of the instantiated class. |
| Virtual method dispatching | | |
| Changes according to the runtime type of the object as base class constructors are called. | Follows the runtime type of the object, which remains the same throughout calls to all class constructors. | Follows the runtime type of the object, which remains the same throughout calls to all class constructors. |

The following section describes the significance of these differences.

Calling virtual methods in base class constructors

Virtual methods invoked from the body of VCL or CLX base class constructors, that is, classes implemented in Object Pascal, are dispatched as in C++, according to the runtime type of the object. Because C++Builder combines the Object Pascal model of setting the runtime type of an object immediately, with the C++ model of constructing base classes before the derived class is constructed, calling virtual methods from base class constructors for VCL-style classes can have subtle side-effects. The impact of this is described below, then illustrated in an example of an instantiated class that is derived from at least one base. In this discussion, the instantiated class is referred to as the derived class.

Object Pascal model

In Object Pascal, programmers can use the **inherited** keyword, which provides flexibility for calling base class constructors anywhere in the body of a derived class

constructor. Consequently, if the derived class overrides any virtual methods that depend upon setting up the object or initializing data members, this can happen before the base class constructor is called and the virtual methods are invoked.

C++ model

The C++ syntax does not have the **inherited** keyword to call the base class constructor at any time during the construction of the derived class. For the C++ model, the use of **inherited** is not necessary because the runtime type of the object is that of the current class being constructed, not the derived class. Therefore, the virtual methods invoked are those of the current class, not the derived class. Consequently, it is not necessary to initialize data members or set up the derived class object before these methods are called.

C++Builder model

In C++Builder, the VCL-style objects have the runtime type of the derived class throughout calls to base class constructors. Therefore, if the base class constructor calls a virtual method, the derived class method is invoked if the derived class overrides it. If this virtual method depends upon anything in the initialization list or body of the derived class constructor, the method is called before this happens. For example, *CreateParams* is a virtual member function that is called indirectly in the constructor of *TWinControl*. If you derive a class from *TWinControl* and override *CreateParams* so that it depends on anything in your constructor, this code is processed after *CreateParams* is called. This situation applies to any derived classes of a base. Consider a class *C* derived from *B*, which is derived from *A*. Creating an instance of *C*, *A* would also call the overridden method of *B*, if *B* overrides the method but *C* does not.

Note Be aware of virtual methods like *CreateParams* that are not obviously called in constructors, but are invoked indirectly.

Example: calling virtual methods

The following example compares C++ and VCL-style classes that have overridden virtual methods. This example illustrates how calls to those virtual methods from base class constructors are resolved in both cases. *MyBase* and *MyDerived* are standard C++ classes. *MyVCLBase* and *MyVCLDerived* are VCL-style classes descended from *TObject*. The virtual method *what_am_I()* is overridden in both derived classes, but is called *only* in the base class constructors, not in derived class constructors.

```
#include <sysutils.hpp>
#include <iostream.h>
// non-VCL style classes
class MyBase {
public:
    MyBase() { what_am_I(); }
    virtual void what_am_I() { cout << "I am a base" << endl; }
};
class MyDerived : public MyBase {
public:
    virtual void what_am_I() { cout << "I am a derived" << endl; }
```

```

};
// VCL style classes
class MyVCLBase : public TObject {
public:
    __fastcall MyVCLBase() { what_am_I(); }
    virtual void __fastcall what_am_I() { cout << "I am a base" << endl; }
};
class MyVCLDerived : public MyVCLBase {
public:
    virtual void __fastcall what_am_I() { cout << "I am a derived" << endl; }
};
int main(void)
{
    MyDerived d; // instantiation of the C++ class
    MyVCLDerived *pvd = new MyVCLDerived; // instantiation of the VCL style class
    return 0;
}

```

The output of this example is

```

I am a base
I am a derived

```

because of the difference in the runtime types of *MyDerived* and *MyVCLDerived* during the calls to their respective base class constructors.

Constructor initialization of data members for virtual functions

Because data members may be used in virtual functions, it is important to understand when and how they are initialized. In Object Pascal, all uninitialized data is zero-initialized. This applies, for example, to base classes whose constructors are not called with **inherited**. In standard C++, there is no guarantee of the value of uninitialized data members. The following types of class data members must be initialized in the initialization list of the class's constructor:

- References
- Data members with no default constructor

Nevertheless, the value of these data members, or those initialized in the body of the constructor, is undefined when the base class constructors are called. In C++Builder, the memory for VCL-style classes is zero-initialized.

Note Technically, it is the memory of the VCL or CLX class that is zero, that is the bits are zero, the values are actually undefined. For example, a reference is zero.

A virtual function which relies upon the value of member variables initialized in the body of the constructor or in the initialization list may behave as if the variables were initialized to zero. This is because the base class constructor is called before the initialization list is processed or the constructor body is entered. The following example illustrates this:

```

#include <sysutils.hpp>

class Base : public TObject {
public:
    __fastcall Base() { init(); }
    virtual void __fastcall init() { }
}

```

```

};

class Derived : public Base {
public:
    Derived(int nz) : not_zero(nz) { }
    virtual void __fastcall init()
    {
        if (not_zero == 0)
            throw Exception("not_zero is zero!");
    }
private:
    int not_zero;
};

int main(void)
{
    Derived *d42 = new Derived(42);
    return 0;
}

```

This example throws an exception in the constructor of *Base*. Because *Base* is constructed before *Derived*, *not_zero*, has not yet been initialized with the value of 42 passed to the constructor. Be aware that you cannot initialize data members of your VCL-style class before its base class constructors are called.

Object destruction

Two mechanisms concerning object destruction work differently in C++ from the way they do in Object Pascal. These are:

- Destructors called because of exceptions thrown from constructors
- Virtual methods called from destructors

VCL-style classes combine the methods of these two languages. The issues are discussed below.

Exceptions thrown from constructors

Destructors are called differently in C++ than in Object Pascal if an exception is thrown during object construction. Take as an example, class *C*, derived from class *B*, which is derived from class *A*:

```

class A
{
    // body
};

class B: public A
{
    // body
};

class C: public B
{
    // body
};

```

Consider the case where an exception is raised in the constructor of class *B* when constructing an instance of *C*. What results in C++, Object Pascal, and VCL-style classes is described here:

- In C++, first the destructors for all completely constructed object data members of *B* are called, then *A*'s destructor is called, then the destructors for all completely constructed data members of *A* are called. However, the destructors for *B* and *C* are not called.
- In Object Pascal, only the instantiated class destructor is called automatically. This is the destructor for *C*. As with constructors, it is entirely the programmer's responsibility to call **inherited** in destructors. In this example, if we assume all of the destructors call **inherited**, then the destructors for *C*, *B*, and *A* are called in that order. Moreover, whether or not **inherited** was already called in *B*'s constructor before the exception occurred, *A*'s destructor is called because **inherited** was called in *B*'s destructor. Calling the destructor for *A* is independent of whether its constructor was actually called. More importantly, because it is common for constructors to call **inherited** immediately, the destructor for *C* is called whether or not the body of its constructor was completely executed.
- In VCL-style classes, the VCL or CLX bases (implemented in Object Pascal) follow the Object Pascal method of calling destructors. The derived classes (implemented in C++) do not follow either language method exactly. What happens is that all the destructors are called; but the bodies of those that would not have been called, according to C++ language rules, are not entered.

Classes implemented in Object Pascal thereby provide an opportunity to process any cleanup code you write in the body of the destructor. This includes code that frees memory for sub-objects (data members that are objects) that are constructed before a constructor exception occurs. Be aware that, for VCL-style classes, the clean-up code may not be processed for the instantiated class or for its C++-implemented bases, even though the destructors are called.

For more information on handling exceptions in C++Builder, refer to "VCL/CLX exception handling" on page 12-15.

Virtual methods called from destructors

Virtual method dispatching in destructors follows the same pattern that it did for constructors. This means that for VCL-style classes, the derived class is destroyed first, but the runtime type of the object remains that of the derived class throughout subsequent calls to base class destructors. Therefore, if virtual methods are called in VCL or CLX base class destructors, you are potentially dispatching to a class that has already destroyed itself.

AfterConstruction and BeforeDestruction

TObject introduces two virtual methods, *BeforeDestruction* and *AfterConstruction*, that allow programmers to write code that is processed before and after objects are destroyed and created, respectively. *AfterConstruction* is called after the last

constructor is called. *BeforeDestruction* is called before the first destructor is called. These methods are public and are called automatically.

Class virtual functions

Object Pascal has the concept of a class virtual function. The C++ analogy would be a static virtual function, if it were possible; but C++ has no exact counterpart to this type of function. These functions are safely called internally from the VCL and CLX. However, you should never call a function of this type in C++Builder. You can identify these functions in the header files because they are preceded by the following comment:

```
/* virtual class method */
```

Support for Object Pascal data types and language concepts

To support the VCL and CLX, C++Builder implements, translates, or otherwise maps most Object Pascal data types, constructs, and language concepts to the C++ language. This is done in the following ways:

- Typedefs to native C++ types
- Classes, structs, and class templates
- C++ language counterparts
- Macros
- Keywords that are ANSI-conforming language extensions

Not all aspects of the Object Pascal language map cleanly to C++. Occasionally, using these parts of the language can lead to unexpected behavior in your application. For example:

- Some types exist in both Object Pascal and in C++, but are defined differently. These can require caution when sharing code between these two languages.
- Some extensions were added to Object Pascal for the purpose of supporting C++Builder. Occasionally these can have subtle interoperability impact.
- Object Pascal types and language constructs that have no mapping to the C++ language should be avoided in C++Builder when sharing code between these languages.

This section summarizes how C++Builder implements the Object Pascal language, and suggests when to use caution.

Typedefs

Most Object Pascal intrinsic data types are implemented in C++Builder using a **typedef** to a native C++ type. These are found in `sysmac.h`. Whenever possible you should use the native C++ type, rather than the Object Pascal type.

Classes that support the Object Pascal language

Some Object Pascal data types and language constructs that do not have a built-in C++ counterpart are implemented as classes or structs. Class templates are also used to implement data types as well as Object Pascal language constructs, like **set**, from which a specific type can be declared. The declarations for these are found in the following header files:

- dstring.h
- wstring.h
- sysclass.h
- syscomp.h
- syscurr.h
- sysdyn.h
- sysopen.h
- sysset.h
- systdate.h
- systobj.h
- systvar.h
- sysvari.h

The classes implemented in these header files were created to support native types used in Object Pascal routines. They are intended to be used when calling these routines in VCL or CLX-based code.

C++ language counterparts to the Object Pascal language

Object Pascal **var** and untyped parameters are not native to C++. Both have C++ language counterparts that are used in C++Builder.

Var parameters

Both C++ and Object Pascal have the concept of “pass by reference.” These are modifiable arguments. In Object Pascal they are called **var** parameters. The syntax for functions that take a **var** parameter is

```
procedure myFunc(var x : Integer);
```

In C++, you should pass these types of parameters by reference:

```
void myFunc(int& x);
```

Both C++ references and pointers can be used to modify the object. However, a reference is a closer match to a **var** parameter because, unlike a pointer, a reference cannot be rebound and a **var** parameter cannot be reassigned; although, either can change the *value* of what it references.

Untyped parameters

Object Pascal allows parameters of an unspecified type. These parameters are passed to functions with no type defined. The receiving function must cast the parameter to a known type before using it. C++Builder interprets untyped parameters as pointers-

to-void (*void **). The receiving function must cast the void pointer to a pointer of the desired type. Following is an example:

```
int myfunc(void* MyName)
{
    // Cast the pointer to the correct type; then dereference it.
    int* pi = static_cast<int*>(MyName);
    return 1 + *pi;
}
```

Open arrays

Object Pascal has an “open array” construct that permits an array of unspecified size to be passed to a function. While there is no direct support in C++ for this type, an Object Pascal function that has an open array parameter can be called by explicitly passing both pointer to the first element of an array, and the value of the last index (number of array elements, minus one). For example, the *Mean* function in *math.hpp* has this declaration in Object Pascal:

```
function Mean(Data: array of Double): Extended;
```

The C++ declaration is

```
Extended __fastcall Mean(const double * Data, const int Data_Size);
```

The following code illustrates calling the *Mean* function from C++:

```
double d[] = { 3.1, 4.4, 5.6 };
// explicitly specifying last index
long double x = Mean(d, 2);

// better: use sizeof to ensure that the correct value is passed
long double y = Mean(d, (sizeof(d) / sizeof(d[0])) - 1);

// use macro in sysopen.h
long double z = Mean(d, ARRAYSIZE(d) - 1);
```

Note In cases similar to the above example, but where the Object Pascal function takes a **var** parameter, the C++ function declaration parameters will not be **const**.

Calculating the number of elements

When using *sizeof()*, the *ARRAYSIZE* macro, or the *EXISTINGARRAY* macro to calculate the number of elements in an array, be careful not to use a pointer to the array. Instead, pass the name of the array itself:

```
double d[] = { 3.1, 4.4, 5.6 };
int n = ARRAYSIZE(d); // sizeof(d)/sizeof(d[0]) => 24/8 => 3

double *pd = d;
int m = ARRAYSIZE(pd); // sizeof(pd)/sizeof(pd[0]) => 4/8 => 0 => Error!
```

Taking the “sizeof” an array is not the same as taking the “sizeof” a pointer. For example, given the following declarations,

```
double d[3];
double *p = d;
```

taking the size of the array as shown here

```
sizeof(d)/sizeof d[0]
```

does not evaluate the same way as taking the size of the pointer:

```
sizeof(p)/sizeof(p[0])
```

This example and those following use the `ARRAYSIZE` macro instead of the `sizeof()` operator. For more information about the `ARRAYSIZE` macro, see the online Help.

Temporaries

Object Pascal provides support for passing unnamed temporary open arrays to functions. There is no syntax for doing this in C++. However, since variable definitions can be intermingled with other statements, one approach is to simply provide the variable with a name.

Object Pascal:

```
Result := Mean([3.1, 4.4, 5.6]);
```

C++, using a named “temporary”:

```
double d[] = { 3.1, 4.4, 5.6 };
return Mean(d, ARRAYSIZE(d) - 1);
```

To restrict the scope of the named “temporary” to avoid clashing with other local variables, open a new scope in place:

```
long double x;
{
    double d[] = { 4.4, 333.1, 0.0 };
    x = Mean(d, ARRAYSIZE(d) - 1);
}
```

For another solution, see “`OPENARRAY` macro” on page 13-19.

array of const

Object Pascal supports a language construct called an **array of const**. This argument type is the same as taking an open array of *TVarRec* by value.

The following is an Object Pascal code segment declared to accept an **array of const**:

```
function Format(const Format: string; Args: array of const): string;
```

In C++, the prototype is

```
AnsiString __fastcall Format(const AnsiString Format,
    TVarRec const *Args, const int Args_Size);
```

The function is called just like any other function that takes an open array:

```
void show_error(int error_code, AnsiString const &error_msg)
{
    TVarRec v[] = { error_code, error_msg };
    ShowMessage(Format("%d: %s", v, ARRAYSIZE(v) - 1));
}
```

OPENARRAY macro

The OPENARRAY macro defined in `sysopen.h` can be used as an alternative to using a named variable for passing a temporary open array to a function that takes an open array by value. The use of the macro looks like

```
OPENARRAY(T, (value1, value2, value3)) // up to 19 values
```

where *T* is the type of open array to construct, and the *value* parameters will be used to fill the array. The parentheses around the *value* arguments are required. For example:

```
void show_error(int error_code, AnsiString const &error_msg)
{
    ShowMessage(Format("%d: %s", OPENARRAY(TVarRec, (error_code, error_msg))));
}
```

Up to 19 values can be passed when using the OPENARRAY macro. If a larger array is needed, an explicit variable must be defined. Additionally, using the OPENARRAY macro incurs an additional (but small) runtime cost, due both to the cost of allocating the underlying array, and to an additional copy of each value.

EXISTINGARRAY macro

The EXISTINGARRAY macro defined in `sysopen.h` can be used to pass an existing array where an open array is expected. The use of the macro looks like

```
long double Mean(const double *Data, const int Data_Size);
double d[] = { 3.1, 3.14159, 2.17128 };
Mean(EXISTINGARRAY (d));
```

Note The section “Calculating the number of elements” on page 13-17 also applies to the EXISTINGARRAY macro.

C++ functions that take open array arguments

When writing a C++ function that will be passed an open array from Object Pascal, it is important to explicitly maintain “pass by value” semantics. In particular, if the declaration for the function corresponds to “pass by value”, be sure to explicitly copy any elements before modifying them. In Object Pascal, an open array is a built-in type and can be passed by value. In C++, the open array type is implemented using a pointer, which will modify the original array unless you make a local copy of it.

Types defined differently

Types that are defined differently in Object Pascal and C++ are not normally cause for concern. The rare cases in which they are problematic may be subtle. For this reason, these types are mentioned in this section.

Boolean data types

The *True* value for the Object Pascal *ByteBool*, *WordBool*, and *LongBool* data types is represented in Object Pascal as `-1`. *False* is represented as `0`.

Note The Boolean data type remains unchanged (`True = 1`, `False = 0`).

While the C++ `bool` type converts these Object Pascal types correctly, there is a problem when sharing a WinAPI function or any other function that uses a Window's `BOOL` type, which is represented as 1. If a value is passed to a parameter of type `BOOL`, it evaluates to -1 in Object Pascal and to 1 in C++. Therefore, if you are sharing code between these two languages, any comparison of the two identifiers may fail unless they are both 0 (*False*, *false*). As a workaround, you can use the following method of comparison:

```
!A == !B;
```

Table 13.2 shows the results of using this method of equality comparison:

Table 13.2 Equality comparison `!A == !B` of `BOOL` variables

| Object Pascal | C++ | <code>!A == !B</code> |
|---------------|-----------|--------------------------------|
| 0 (False) | 0 (false) | <code>!0 == !0</code> (TRUE) |
| 0 (False) | 1 (true) | <code>!0 == !1</code> (FALSE) |
| -1 (True) | 0 (false) | <code>!-1 == !0</code> (FALSE) |
| -1 (True) | 1 (true) | <code>!-1 == !1</code> (TRUE) |

With this method of comparison, any set of values will evaluate correctly.

Char data types

The `char` type in C++ is a signed type, whereas it is an unsigned type in Object Pascal. It is extremely rare that a situation would occur in which this difference would be a problem when sharing code.

Delphi interfaces

The Object Pascal compiler handles many of the details in working with interfaces automatically. It automatically augments the reference count on an interface when application code acquires an interface pointer and decrements that reference count when the interface goes out of scope.

In C++Builder, the *DelphiInterface* template class provides some of that convenience for C++ interface classes. For properties and methods in the VCL and CLX that use interface types in Object Pascal, the C++ wrappers use a *DelphiInterface* that is built using the underlying interface class.

The *DelphiInterface* constructor, copy constructor, assignment operator, and destructor all increment or decrement reference counts as needed. However, *DelphiInterface* is not quite as convenient as the compiler support for interfaces in Object Pascal. Other operators that provide access to the underlying interface pointer do not handle reference counting because the class can't always tell where that is appropriate. You may need to explicitly call `AddRef` or `Release` to ensure proper reference counting.

Resource strings

If you have code in a Pascal unit that uses resource strings, the Pascal compiler (DCC32) generates a global variable and a corresponding preprocessor macro for each resource string when it generates the header file. The macros are used to automatically load the resource strings, and are intended to be used in your C++ code in all places where the resource string is referenced. For example, the **resourcestring** section in the Object Pascal code could contain

```
unit borrowed;
interface
resourcestring
    Warning = 'Be careful when accessing string resources.';
implementation
begin
end.
```

The corresponding code generated by the Pascal compiler for C++Builder would be

```
extern PACKAGE System::Resource ResourceString _Warning;
#define Borrowed_Warning System::LoadResourceString(&Borrowed::_Warning)
```

This enables you to use the exported Object Pascal resource string without having to explicitly call *LoadResourceString*.

Default parameters

The Pascal compiler now accepts default parameters for compatibility with C++ regarding constructors. Unlike C++, Object Pascal constructors can have the same number and types of parameters, since they are uniquely named. In such cases, dummy parameters are used in the Object Pascal constructors to distinguish them when the C++ header files are generated. For example, for a class named *TInCompatible*, the Object Pascal constructors could be

```
constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent);
constructor CreateNew(AOwner: TComponent);
```

which would translate, without default parameters, to the following ambiguous code in C++ for both constructors:

```
__fastcall TInCompatible(Classess::TComponent* Owner); // C++ version of the Pascal Create
constructor

__fastcall TInCompatible(Classess::TComponent* Owner); // C++ version of the Pascal CreateNew
constructor
```

However, using default parameters, for a class named *TCompatible*, the Object Pascal constructors are

```
constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent);
constructor CreateNew(AOwner: TComponent; Dummy: Integer = 0);
```

They translate to the following unambiguous code in C++Builder:

```
__fastcall TCompatible(Classes::TComponent* Owner); // C++ version of the Pascal Create
constructor

__fastcall TCompatible(Classes::TComponent* Owner, int Dummy); // C++ version of the Pascal
CreateNew constructor
```

Note The main issue regarding default parameters is that DCC32 strips out the default value of the default parameter. Failure to remove the default value would lead to the ambiguity that would occur if there were not defaults at all. You should be aware of this when using VCL or CLX classes or when using third-party components.

Runtime type information

Object Pascal has language constructs dealing with RTTI. Some have C++ counterparts. These are listed in Table 13.3:

Table 13.3 Examples of RTTI mappings from Object Pascal to C++

| Object Pascal RTTI | C++ RTTI |
|---|--|
| if Sender is TButton... | if (dynamic_cast <TButton*> (Sender) // dynamic_cast returns NULL on failure. |
| b := Sender as TButton; (* raises an exception on failure *) | TButton& ref_b = dynamic_cast <TButton&> (*Sender) // throws an exception on failure. |
| ShowMessage(Sender.ClassName); | ShowMessage(typeid(*Sender).name()); |

In Table 13.3, *ClassName* is a *TObject* method that returns a string containing the name of the actual type of the object, regardless of the type of the declared variable. Other RTTI methods introduced in *TObject* do not have C++ counterparts. These are all public and are listed here:

- *ClassInfo* returns a pointer to the runtime type information (RTTI) table of the object type.
- *ClassNameIs* determines whether an object is of a specific type.
- *ClassParent* returns the type of the immediate ancestor of the class. In the case of *TObject*, *ClassParent* returns nil because *TObject* has no parent. It is used by the **is** and **as** operators, and by the *InheritsFrom* method.
- *ClassType* dynamically determines the actual type of an object. It is used internally by the Object Pascal **is** and **as** operators.
- *FieldAddress* uses RTTI to obtain the address of a published field. It is used internally by the steaming system.
- *InheritsFrom* determines the relationship of two objects. It is used internally by the Object Pascal **is** and **as** operators.
- *MethodAddress* uses RTTI to find the address of a method. It is used internally by the steaming system.

Some of these methods of *TObject* are primarily for internal use by the compiler or the streaming system. For more information about these methods, see the online Help.

Unmapped types

6-byte Real types

The old Object Pascal 6-byte floating-point format is now called *Real48*. The old *Real* type is now a double. C++ does not have a counterpart for the *Real48* type. Consequently, you should not use Object Pascal code that includes this type with C++ code. If you do, the header file generator will generate a warning.

Arrays as return types of functions

In Object Pascal a function can take as an argument, or return as a type, an array. For example, the syntax for a function *GetLine* returning an array of 80 characters is

```
type
  Line_Data = array[0..79] of char;
function GetLine: Line_Data;
```

C++ has no counterpart to this concept. In C++, arrays are not allowed as return types of functions. Nor does C++ accept arrays as the type of a function argument.

Be aware that, although the VCL and CLX do not have any properties that are arrays, the Object Pascal language does allow this. Because properties can use Get and Set read and write methods that take and return values of the property's type, you cannot have a property of type array in C++Builder.

Note Array properties, which are also valid in Object Pascal, are not a problem in C++ because the Get method takes an index value as a parameter, and the Set method returns an object of the type contained by the array. For more information about array properties, see "Creating array properties" on page 47-8.

Keyword extensions

This section describes ANSI-conforming keyword extensions implemented in C++Builder to support the VCL and CLX. For a complete list of keywords and keyword extensions in C++Builder, see the online Help.

__classid

The **__classid** operator is used by the compiler to generate a pointer to the vtable for the specified *classname*. This operator is used to obtain the meta class from a class.

Syntax **__classid**(classname)

For example, `__classid` is used when registering property editors, components, and classes, and with the *InheritsFrom* method of *TObject*. The following code illustrates the use of `__classid` for creating a new component derived from *TWinControl*:

```
namespace Ywndctrl
{
    void __fastcall PACKAGE Register()
    {
        TComponentClass classes[1] = {__classid(MyWndCtrl)};
        RegisterComponents("Additional", classes, 0);
    }
}
```

`__closure`

The `__closure` keyword is used to declare a special type of pointer to a member function. In standard C++, the only way to get a pointer to a member function is to use the fully qualified member name, as shown in the following example:

```
class base
{
    public:
        void func(int x) { };
};

typedef void (base::* pBaseMember)(int);

int main(int argc, char* argv[])
{
    base          baseObject;
    pBaseMember m = &base::func; // Get pointer to member 'func'

    // Call 'func' through the pointer to member
    (baseObject.*m)(17);
    return 0;
}
```

However, you cannot assign a pointer to a member of a derived class to a pointer to a member of a base class. This rule (called *contravariance*) is illustrated in the following example:

```
class derived: public base
{
    public:
        void new_func(int i) { };
};

int main(int argc, char* argv[])
{
    derived          derivedObject;
    pBaseMember m = &derived::new_func; // ILLEGAL

    return 0;
}
```


The **__closure** keyword extension allows you to skirt this limitation, and more. Using a closure, you can get a pointer to member function for an object (i.e. a particular instance of a class). The object can be *any* object, regardless of its inheritance hierarchy. The object's **this** pointer is automatically used when calling the member function through the closure. The following example shows how to declare and use a closure. The *base* and *derived* classes provided earlier are assumed to be defined.

```
int main(int argc, char* argv[])
{
    derived      derivedObject;
    void (__closure *derivedClosure)(int);

    derivedClosure = derivedObject.new_func; // Get a pointer to the 'new_func' member.
                                           // Note the closure is associated with the
                                           // particular object, 'derivedObject'.

    derivedClosure(3); // Call 'new_func' through the closure.
    return 0;
}
```

Closures also work with pointers to objects, as illustrated in this example:

```
void func1(base *pObj)
{
    // A closure taking an int argument and returning void.
    void (__closure *myClosure)(int);

    // Initialize the closure.
    myClosure = pObj->func;

    // Use the closure to call the member function.
    myClosure(1);
    return;
}

int main(int argc, char* argv[])
{
    derived      derivedObject;
    void (__closure *derivedClosure)(int);

    derivedClosure = derivedObject.new_func; // Same as before...
    derivedClosure(3);

    // We can use pointers to initialize a closure, too.
    // We can also get a pointer to the 'func' member function
    // in the base class.
    func1(&derivedObject);
    return 0;
}
```

Notice that we are passing a pointer to an instance of the *derived* class, and we are using it to get a pointer to a member function in the *base* class - something standard C++ does not allow us to do.

Closures are a key part of the C++ Builder RAD environment. They give us the ability to assign an event handler in the Object Inspector. For example, a *TButton* object has an event called *OnClick*. In the *TButton* class, the *OnClick* event is a

property that uses the `__closure` keyword extension in its declaration. The `__closure` keyword allows us to assign a member function of another class (typically a member function in a *TForm* object) to the property. When you place a *TButton* object on a form, and then create a handler for the button's *OnClick* event, C++ Builder creates a member function in the button's *TForm* parent, and assigns that member function to the *OnClick* event of *TButton*. This way, the event handler is associated with that particular instance of *TButton*, and no other.

For more information about events and closures, see Chapter 48, "Creating events."

`__property`

The `__property` keyword declares an attribute of a class. Properties appear to the programmer just like any other attribute (field) of a class. However, like its Object Pascal counterpart, C++ Builder's `__property` keyword adds significantly more functionality beyond just examining and changing the value of the attribute. Since property attributes completely control access to the property, there are no restrictions on how you implement the property within the class itself.

Syntax

```
__property type propertyName[index1Type index1][indexNType indexN] = { attributes };
```

where

- *type* is an intrinsic or previously declared data type.
- *propertyName* is any valid identifier.
- *indexNType* is an intrinsic or previously declared data type.
- *indexN* is the name of an index parameter that will be passed to the property's **read** and **write** functions.
- *attributes* is a comma separated sequence of **read**, **write**, **stored**, **default** (or **nodefault**), or **index**.

The *indexN* parameters in square brackets are optional. If present, they declare an array property. The index parameters are passed to the **read** and **write** methods of the array property.

The following example shows some simple property declarations:

```
class PropertyExample {
private:
    int Fx,Fy;
    float Fcells[100][100];

protected:
    int readX() { return(Fx); }
    void writeX(int newFx) { Fx = newFx; }

    double computeZ() {
        // Do some computation and return a floating point value...
        return(0.0);
    }
}
```

```

float cellValue(int row, int col) { return(Fcells[row][col]); }

public:
__property int    X = { read=readX, write=writeX };
__property int    Y = { read=Fy };
__property double Z = { read=computeZ };
__property float  Cells[int row][int col] = { read=cellValue };
};

```

This example shows several property declarations. Property X has read-write access, through the member functions *readX* and *writeX*, respectively. Property Y corresponds directly to the member variable *Fy*, and is read-only. Property Z is a read-only value that is computed; it is not stored as a data member in the class. Finally, the *Cells* property demonstrates an array property with two indices. The next example shows how you would access these properties in your code:

```

PropertyExample myPropertyExample;
myPropertyExample.X = 42;           // Evaluates to: myPropertyExample.WriteX(42);
int   myVal1 = myPropertyExample.Y; // Evaluates to: myVal1 = myPropertyExample.Fy;
double myVal2 = myPropertyExample.Z; // Evaluates to: myVal2 = myPropertyExample.ComputeZ();
float  cellVal = myPropertyExample[3][7]; // Evaluates to:
                                           // cellVal = myPropertyExample.cellValue(3,7);

```

Properties have many other variations and features not shown in this example. Properties can also:

- Associate the same read or write method with more than one property, by using the **index** attribute
- Have default values
- Be stored in a form file
- Extend a property defined in a base class

For more information about properties, see Chapter 47, “Creating properties.”

__published

The **__published** keyword specifies that properties in that section are displayed in the Object Inspector, if the class is on the Component palette. Only classes derived from *TObject* can have **__published** sections.

The visibility rules for published members are identical to those of public members. The only difference between published and public members is that Object Pascal-style runtime type information (RTTI) is generated for data members and properties declared in a **__published** section. RTTI enables an application to dynamically query the data members, member functions, and properties of an otherwise unknown class type.

Note No constructors or destructors are allowed in a **__published** section. Properties, Pascal intrinsic or VCL or CLX derived data-members, member functions, and closures are allowed in a **__published** section. Fields defined in a **__published** section must be of a class type. Properties defined in a **__published** section cannot be array properties. The type of a property defined in a **__published** section must be an ordinal type, a real type, a string type, a small set type, a class type, or a method pointer type.

The `__declspec` keyword extension

Some arguments to the `__declspec` keyword extension provide language support for the VCL and CLX. These arguments are listed below. Macros for the `declspec` arguments and combinations of them are defined in `sysmac.h`. In most cases you do not need to specify these. When you do need to add them, you should use the macros.

`__declspec(delphiclass)`

The **delphiclass** argument is used for declarations for classes derived from *TObject*. These classes will be created with the following compatibility:

- Object Pascal-compatible RTTI
- VCL (CLX)-compatible constructor/destructor behavior
- VCL (CLX)-compatible exception handling

A VCL or CLX-compatible class has the following restrictions:

- No virtual base classes are allowed.
- No multiple inheritance is allowed except for the case described in “Inheritance and interfaces” on page 13-2.
- Must be dynamically allocated by using the global `new` operator.
- Must have a destructor.
- Copy constructors and assignment operators are not compiler-generated for VCL- or CLX- derived classes.

A class declaration that is translated from Object Pascal will need this modifier if the compiler needs to know that the class is derived from *TObject*.

`__declspec(delphireturn)`

The **delphireturn** argument is for internal use only by the VCL and CLX in C++Builder. It is used for declarations of classes that were created in C++Builder to support Object Pascal’s built-in data types and language constructs because they do not have a native C++ type. These include *Currency*, *AnsiString*, *Variant*, *TDateTime*, and *Set*. The **delphireturn** argument marks C++ classes for VCL- or CLX-compatible handling in function calls as parameters and return values. This modifier is needed when passing a structure by value to a function between Object Pascal and C++.

`__declspec(delphirtti)`

The **delphirtti** argument causes the compiler to include runtime type information in a class when it is compiled. When this modifier is used, the compiler generates runtime type information for all fields, methods, and properties that are declared in a published section. For interfaces, the compiler generates runtime type information for all methods of the interface. If a class is compiled with runtime type information, all of its descendants also include runtime type information. Because the class *TPersistent* is compiled with runtime type information, this means that there is no need to use this modifier with any classes you create that have *TPersistent* as an

ancestor. This modifier is primarily used for interfaces in applications that implement or use Web Services.

__declspec(dynamic)

The **dynamic** argument is used for declarations for dynamic functions. Dynamic functions are similar to virtual functions except that they are stored only in the vtables for the objects that define them, not in descendant vtables. If you call a dynamic function, and that function is not defined in your object, the vtables of its ancestors are searched until the function is found. Dynamic functions are only valid for classes derived from *TObject*.

__declspec(hidesbase)

The **hidesbase** argument preserves Object Pascal program semantics when porting Object Pascal virtual and override functions to C++Builder. In Object Pascal, virtual functions in base classes can appear in the derived class as a function of the same name, but which is intended to be a completely new function with no explicit relation to the earlier one.

The compilers use the HIDESBASE macro, defined in sysmac.h, to specify that these types of function declarations are completely separate. For example, if a base class T1 declares a virtual function, *func*, taking no arguments, and its derived class T2 declared a function with the same name and signature, DCC32 -jphn would produce an HPP file with the following prototype:

```
virtual void T1::func(void);
HIDESBASE void T2::func(void);
```

Without the HIDESBASE declaration, the C++ program semantics indicate that virtual function *T1::func()* is being overridden by *T2::func()*.

__declspec(package)

The **package** argument indicates that the code defining the class can be compiled in a package. This modifier is auto-generated by the compiler when creating packages in the IDE. See Chapter 15, “Working with packages and components” for more information about packages.

__declspec(pascalimplementation)

The **pascalimplementation** argument indicates that the code defining the class was implemented in Object Pascal. This modifier appears in an Object Pascal portability header file with an .hpp extension.

__declspec(uuid)

The **uuid** argument associates a class with a globally unique identifier (GUID). This can be used with any class, but is typically used with classes that represent Object Pascal interfaces (or COM interfaces). You can retrieve the GUID of a class that was declared using this modifier by calling the **__uuidof** directive.

Developing cross-platform applications

You can use C++Builder to develop cross-platform 32-bit applications that run on both the Windows and Linux operating systems. Cross-platform applications use CLX components and don't make any operating system-specific API calls. To develop a cross-platform application, either create a new CLX application or modify an existing Windows application. Then compile and deploy it on the platform you are running it on. For Windows, use C++Builder. For Linux, a Borland C++ solution is not yet available, but you can prepare ahead of time by developing the application with C++Builder today.

This chapter describes how to change C++Builder applications so they can compile on Linux and how to write code that is platform-independent and portable between the two environments. It also includes information on the differences between developing applications on Windows and Linux.

Creating cross-platform applications

You create cross-platform applications in the same way as you create any C++Builder application. You need to use CLX visual and nonvisual components, and you should not use operating system specific APIs if you want the application to be completely cross-platform. (See "Writing portable code" on page 14-15 for tips on writing cross-platform applications.)

To create a cross-platform application:

- 1 In the IDE, choose File | New | CLX application.
The Component palette shows the pages and components that can be used in CLX applications.
- 2 Develop your application within the IDE.

- 3 Compile and test the application. Review any error messages to see where additional changes need to be made.

Note When a C++Builder solution is available for Linux, you can compile and test your application on Linux.

Once you port your application to Linux, you will need to reset your project options. That's because the .dof file which stores the project options is recreated on Linux with a different extension (with the default options set).

The form file in cross-platform applications has an extension of .xfm instead of .dfm. This is to distinguish cross-platform forms that use CLX components from forms that use VCL components. An .xfm form file works on both Windows or Linux but a .dfm form only works on Windows.

For information on writing platform-independent database or Internet applications, see "Cross-platform database applications" on page 14-19 and "Cross-platform Internet applications" on page 14-25.

Porting Windows applications to Linux

If you have C++Builder applications that were written for the Windows environment, you can prepare them for the Linux environment. How easy it will be depends on the nature and complexity of the application and how many explicit Windows dependencies there are.

The following sections describe some of the major differences between the Windows and Linux environments and provide guidelines on how to get started porting an application.

Porting techniques

The following are different approaches you can take to port an application from one platform to another:

Table 14.1 Porting techniques

| Technique | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| Platform-specific port | Targets an operating system and underlying APIs |
| Cross-platform port | Targets a cross-platform API |
| Windows emulation | Leaves the code alone and ports the API it uses |

Platform-specific ports

Platform-specific ports tend to be time-consuming, expensive, and only produce a single targeted result. They create different code bases, which makes them particularly difficult to maintain. However, each port is designed for a specific operating system and can take advantage of platform-specific functionality. Thus, the application typically runs faster.

Cross-platform ports

Cross-platform ports tend to be time-saving because the ported applications target multiple platforms. However, the amount of work involved in developing cross-platform applications is highly dependent on the existing code. If code has been developed without regard for platform independence, you may run into scenarios where platform-independent logic and platform-dependent implementation are mixed together.

The cross-platform approach is the preferable approach because business logic is expressed in platform-independent terms. Some services are abstracted behind an internal interface that looks the same on all platforms, but has a specific implementation on each. C++Builder's runtime library is an example of this. The interface is very similar on both platforms, although the implementation may be vastly different. You should separate cross-platform parts, then implement specific services on top. In the end, this approach is the least expensive solution, because of reduced maintenance costs due to a largely shared source base and an improved application architecture.

Windows emulation ports

Windows emulation is the most complex method and it can be very costly, but the resulting Linux application will look most similar to an existing Windows application. This approach involves implementing Windows functionality on Linux. From an engineering point of view, this solution is very hard to maintain.

Where you want to emulate Windows APIs, you can include two distinct sections using **#ifdefs** to indicate sections of the code that apply specifically to Windows or Linux.

Porting your application

If you are porting an application that you want to run on both Windows and Linux, you need to modify your code or use **#ifdefs** to indicate sections of the code that apply specifically to Windows or Linux.

Follow these general steps to port your VCL application to CLX:

- 1 Open the project containing the application you want to change in C++Builder.
- 2 Copy .dfm files to .xfm files of the same name (for example, rename unit1.dfm to unit1.xfm). Rename (or **#ifdef**) the reference to the .dfm file in the header file(s) from `#pragma resource "*.dfm"` to `#pragma resource "*.xfm"`. (The .xfm file will work in both C++Builder and a Linux application.)
- 3 Change (or **#ifdef**) all header files in your source file so they refer to the correct units in CLX. (See "CLX and VCL unit comparison" on page 14-8 for information.)

For example, change the following **#include** statements in the header file in a Windows application:

```
#include <vcl.h>
#include <Controls.hpp>
#include <StdCtrls.hpp>
#include <Forms.hpp>
```

to the following for a CLX application:

```
#include <clx.h>
#include <QControls.hpp>
#include <QStdCtrls.hpp>
#include <QForms.hpp>
```

- 4 Save the project and reopen it. Now the Component palette shows components that can be used in CLX applications.

Note

Some Windows-only nonvisual components can be used in CLX applications but they contain functionality that will only work in Windows CLX applications. If you plan to compile your application on Linux as well, do not use the nonvisual VCL components in your applications or use **#ifdefs** to mark these sections of the code as Windows only. You cannot use the visual part of VCL with VisualCLX in the same application.

- 5 Rewrite any code that requires Windows dependencies by making the code more platform-independent. Do this using the runtime library routines and constants. (See “Writing portable code” on page 14-15 for information.)
- 6 Find equivalent functionality for features that are different on Linux. Use **#ifdefs** (sparingly) to delimit Windows-specific information. (See “Using conditional directives” on page 14-16 for information.)

For example, you can **#ifdef** platform-specific code in your source files:

```
#ifdef WINDOWS //If using the C++Builder compiler, use __WIN32__
IniFile->LoadFromFile("c:\\x.txt");
#endif

#ifdef __linux__
IniFile->LoadFromFile("/home/name/x.txt");
#endif
```

- 7 Search for references to pathnames in all the project files.
 - Pathnames in Linux use a forward slash / as a delimiter (for example, /usr/lib) and files may be located in different directories on the Linux system. Use the PathDelim constant (in SysUtils) to specify the path delimiter that is appropriate for the system. Determine the correct location for any files on Linux.
 - Change references to drive letters (for example, C:\) and code that looks for drive letters by looking for a colon at position 2 in the string. Use the DriveDelim constant (in SysUtils) to specify the location in terms that are appropriate for the system.
 - In places where you specify multiple paths, change the path separator from semicolon (;) to colon (:). Use the PathSep constant (in SysUtils) to specify the path separator that is appropriate for the system.
 - Because file names are case-sensitive in Linux, make sure that your application doesn't change the case of file names or assume a certain case.
- 8 Compile, test, and debug your application.

CLX versus VCL

CLX applications use the Borland Component Library for Cross Platform (CLX) in place of the Visual Component Library (VCL). Within the VCL, many controls provide an easy way to access Windows controls by making calls into the Windows API libraries. Similarly, CLX provides access to Qt widgets (from window + gadget) by making calls into the Qt shared libraries. C++Builder includes both CLX and the VCL.

CLX looks much like the VCL. Most of the components and properties have the same names. In addition, CLX, as well as the VCL, is available on Windows (depending on your edition of C++Builder).

CLX components can be grouped into the following parts:

Table 14.2 CLX parts

| Part | Description |
|-----------|--|
| VisualCLX | Native cross-platform GUI components and graphics. |
| DataCLX | Client data-access components. The components in this area are a subset of the local, client/server, and n-tier based on client datasets. The code is the same on Linux and Windows. |
| NetCLX | Internet components including Apache DSO and CGI Web Broker. These are the same on Linux and Windows. |
| BaseCLX | Runtime Library up to and including the Classes unit. The code is the same for Linux and Windows. |

Widgets in VisualCLX replace Windows controls. For example, *TWidgetControl* in CLX replaces *TWinControl* in the VCL. Other VCL components (such as *TScrollingWinControl*) have corresponding names in CLX (such as *TScrollingWidget*). However, you do not need to change occurrences of *TWinControl* to *TWidgetControl*. Type declarations, such as the following:

```
TWinControl = TWidgetControl;
```

appear in the QControls unit file to simplify sharing of source code. *TWidgetControl* and all its descendants have a *Handle* property that references the Qt object and a *Hooks* property that references the hook object that handles the event mechanism.

Unit names and locations of some classes are different for CLX. You will need to modify the header file you include in your source files to eliminate references to units that don't exist in CLX and to change the names to CLX units.

What CLX does differently

Although much of CLX is implemented so that it is consistent with the VCL, some features are implemented differently. This section provides an overview of some of the differences between CLX and VCL implementations to be aware of when writing cross-platform applications.

Look and feel

The visual environment in Linux looks somewhat different than it does in Windows. The look of dialogs may differ depending on which window manager you are using, such as KDE or Gnome.

Styles

Application-wide styles can be used in addition to the *OwnerDraw* properties. You can use the *TApplication::Style* property to specify the look and feel of an application's graphical elements. Using styles, a widget or an application can take on a whole new look. You can still use owner draw on Linux but using styles is recommended.

Variants

All of the variant/safe array code that was in the System unit is in two new units:

- Variants
- VarUtils

The operating system dependent code is now isolated in the VarUtils unit, and it also contains generic versions of everything needed by the Variants unit. If you are converting a VCL application that included Windows calls to a CLX application, you need to replace these calls to calls into the VarUtils unit.

If you want to use variants, you must include the Variants unit to your the header file in your source file.

VarIsEmpty does a simple test against *varEmpty* to see if a variant is clear, and on Linux you can use the *VarIsClear* function see whether the value of the variant is undefined.

Registry

Linux does not use a registry to store configuration information. Instead, you use text configuration files and environment variables instead of using the registry. System configuration files on Linux are often located in /etc, for example, /etc/hosts. Other user profiles are located in hidden files (preceded with a dot), such as .bashrc, which holds bash shell settings or .XDefaults, which is used to set defaults for X programs.

Registry-dependent code may be changed to using a local configuration text file instead. Settings that users can change must be saved in their home directory so that they have permission to write to it. Configuration options that need to be set by the root should go in /etc. Writing a unit containing all the registry functions but diverting all output to a local configuration file is one way you could handle a former dependency on the registry.

To place information in a global location on Linux, you can store a global configuration file in the /etc directory or the user's home directory as a hidden file. Therefore, all of your applications can access the same configuration file. However, you must be sure that the file permissions and access rights are set up correctly.

You can also use .ini files in cross-platform applications. However, in CLX, you need to use *TMemIniFile* instead of *TRegIniFile*.

Other differences

CLX implementation also has some other differences from the VCL that affect the way your components work. This section describes some of those differences.

- You can select a CLX component from the Component palette and click either the left or right mouse button to add it to a form. For a VCL component, you can click the left mouse button only.
- The CLX *TButton* control has a *ToggleButton* property that the equivalent VCL control doesn't have.
- In CLX, *TColorDialog* does not have a *TColorDialog::Options* property to set. Therefore, you cannot customize the appearance and functionality of the color selection dialog. Also, depending on which window manager you are using in Linux, *TColorDialog* is not always modal or nonresizable. On Windows, *TColorDialog* is always modal and nonresizable.
- At runtime, combo boxes work differently in CLX than they do in the VCL. In CLX (but not in the VCL), you can add an item to a drop-down list by entering text and pressing *Enter* in the edit field of a combo box. You can turn this feature off by setting *InsertMode* to *ciNone*. It is also possible to add empty (no string) items to the list in the combo box. Also, if you keep pressing the down arrow key when the edit box is closed, it does not stop at the last item of the combo box list. It cycles around to the top again.
- *TCustomEdit* does not implement *Undo*, *ClearUndo*, or *CanUndo*. So there is no way to programmatically undo edits. But application users can undo their edits in an edit box (*TEdit*) at runtime by right-clicking the edit box and choosing the Undo command.
- The key values used in events can be different between the VCL and CLX. For example, the Enter key has a value of 13 on the VCL and a value of 4100 on CLX. If you hard code key values in your CLX applications, you need to change these values when porting from Windows to Linux or vice versa.

Additional differences exist. Refer to the CLX online documentation for details on all of the CLX objects or in editions of C++Builder that include the source code, located in {install directory}\C++Builder6\Source\CLX.

Missing in CLX

When using CLX instead of the VCL, many of the objects are the same. However, the objects may be missing some features (such as properties, methods, or events). The following general features are missing in CLX:

- Bi-directional properties (*BidiMode*) for right-to-left text output or input.
- Generic bevel properties on common controls (note that some objects still have bevel properties).
- Docking properties and methods.
- Backward compatibility features such as components on the Win3.1 tab and *Ch3D*.
- *DragCursor* and *DragKind* (but drag and drop is included).

Features that will not port directly

Some Windows-specific features supported on C++Builder will not transport directly to Linux environments. For example, COM, ActiveX, OLE, BDE, and ADO are dependent on Windows technology and not available for Linux. The following table lists features that are different on the two platforms and lists the equivalent Linux or CLX feature, if one is available.

Table 14.3 Changed or different features

| Windows/VCL feature | Linux/CLX feature |
|--|---|
| ADO components | Regular database components |
| Automation Servers | Not available |
| BDE | dbExpress and regular database components |
| COM+ components (including ActiveX) | Not available |
| DataSnap | Not available |
| FastNet | Not available |
| Legacy components (such as items on the Win 3.1 Component palette tab) | Not available |
| Messaging Application Programming Interface (MAPI) includes a standard library of Windows messaging functions. | SMTP and POP3 let you send, receive, and save e-mail messages |
| Quick Reports | Not available |
| Web Services (SOAP) | Not available |
| WebSnap | Not available |
| Windows API calls | CLX methods, Qt calls, libc calls, or calls to other system libraries |
| Windows messaging | Qt events |
| Winsock | BSD sockets |

The Linux equivalent of Windows dlls are shared object libraries (.so files), which contain position-independent code (PIC). Thus, global memory references and calls to external functions are made relative to the EBX register, which must be preserved across calls.

You only need to worry about global memory references and calls to external functions if using assembler—C++Builder generates the correct code. (For information, see “Including inline assembler code” on page 14-18.)

CLX and VCL unit comparison

All of the objects in the VCL or CLX are defined in header files. For example, you can find the implementation of *TObject* in the System unit, and the Classes unit defines the base *TComponent* class. When you drop an object onto a form or use an object

within your application, the name of the unit is added to the header file included in your source file which tells the compiler which units to link into the project.

This section provides three tables that list the VCL and equivalent CLX units; CLX-only units; and VCL-only units.

The following table lists the VCL and equivalent CLX unit. Units that are either the same in both the VCL and CLX or are third-party units are not listed.

Table 14.4 VCL and equivalent CLX units

| VCL units | CLX units |
|------------|--------------------------------|
| ActnList | QActnList |
| Buttons | QButtons |
| CheckLst | QCheckLst |
| Clipbrd | QClipbrd |
| ComCtrls | QComCtrls |
| Consts | Consts, QConsts, and RTLConsts |
| Controls | QControls |
| DBActns | QDBActns |
| DBCtrls | QDBCtrls |
| DBGrids | QDBGrids |
| Dialogs | QDialogs |
| ExtCtrls | QExtCtrls |
| Forms | QForms |
| Graphics | QGraphics |
| Grids | QGrids |
| ImgList | QImgList |
| Mask | QMask |
| Menus | QMenus |
| Printers | QPrinters |
| Search | QSearch |
| StdActns | QStdActns |
| StdCtrls | QStdCtrls |
| Types | Types and QTypes |
| VclEditors | ClxEditors |

The following units are in CLX but not VCL:

Table 14.5 CLX-only units

| Unit | Description |
|--------|-------------------------|
| DirSel | Directory selection |
| QStyle | GUI look and feel |
| Qt | Interface to Qt library |

The following Windows VCL units are not included in CLX mostly because they concern Windows-specific features that are not available on Linux such as ADO, BDE, and COM.

Table 14.6 VCL-only units

| Unit | Reason for exclusion |
|--------------|-----------------------------|
| ADOCnst | No ADO feature |
| ADODB | No ADO feature |
| AppEvnts | No TApplicationEvent object |
| AxCtrls | No COM feature |
| BdeConst | No BDE feature |
| Calendar | Not currently supported |
| Chart | Not currently supported |
| CmAdmCtl | No COM feature |
| ColorGrd | Not currently supported |
| ComStrs | No COM feature |
| ConvUtils | Not available |
| CorbaCon | No Corba feature |
| CorbaStd | No Corba feature |
| CorbaVCL | No Corba feature |
| CtlPanel | No Windows Control Panel |
| CustomizeDlg | Not currently supported |
| DataBkr | Not currently supported |
| DBCGrids | No BDE feature |
| DBExcept | No BDE feature |
| DBInpReq | No BDE feature |
| DBLookup | Obsolete |
| DbOleCtl | No COM feature |
| DBPWDlg | No BDE feature |
| DBTables | No BDE feature |
| DdeMan | No DDE feature |
| DRTTable | No BDE feature |
| ExtActns | Not currently supported |
| ExtDlgs | No picture dialogs feature |
| FileCtrl | Obsolete |
| ListActns | Not currently supported |
| MConnect | No COM feature |
| Messages | No Windows messaging |
| MidasCon | Obsolete |
| MPlayer | No Windows media player |
| Mtsobj | No COM feature |
| MtsRdm | No COM feature |

Table 14.6 VCL-only units (continued)

| Unit | Reason for exclusion |
|-------------|-----------------------------------|
| Mtx | No COM feature |
| mxConsts | No COM feature |
| ObjBrkr | Not currently supported |
| OleConstMay | No COM feature |
| OleCtnrs | No COM feature |
| OleCtrls | No COM feature |
| OLEDB | No COM feature |
| OleServer | No COM feature |
| Outline | Obsolete |
| Registry | No Windows registry feature |
| ScktCnst | Replaced by Sockets |
| ScktComp | Replaced by Sockets |
| SConnect | No supported connection protocols |
| SHDocVw_ocx | No ActiveX feature |
| StdConvs | Not currently supported |
| SvcMgr | No Windows NT Services feature |
| TabNotbk | Obsolete |
| Tabs | Obsolete |
| ToolWin | No docking feature |
| ValEdit | Not currently supported |
| VarCmplx | Not currently supported |
| VarConv | Not currently supported |
| VCLCom | No COM feature |
| WebConst | No Windows constants |
| Windows | No Windows API calls |

Differences in CLX object constructors

When a CLX object is created, either implicitly by placing that object on the form or explicitly in code by using the object's constructor, an instance of the underlying associated widget is created also. The CLX object owns this instance of the widget. When the CLX object is deleted, the underlying widget is also deleted. This is the same type of functionality that you see in the VCL in Windows applications.

When you explicitly create a CLX object in your code, by calling into the Qt interface library such as `QWidget_Create()`, you are creating an instance of a Qt widget that is not owned by a CLX object. This passes the instance of an existing Qt widget to the CLX object to use during its construction. This CLX object does not own the Qt widget that is passed to it. Therefore, after creating the object in this manner, only the CLX object is destroyed and not the underlying Qt widget instance. This is different from the VCL.

A few CLX graphics objects, such as *TBrush* and *TPen*, let you assume ownership of the underlying widget using the *OwnHandle* method. After calling *OwnHandle*, if you delete the CLX object, the underlying widget is destroyed as well.

Some property assignments in CLX have moved from the constructor to *InitWidget*. This allows delayed construction of the Qt object until it's really needed. For example, say you have a property named *Color*. In *SetColor*, you can check with *HandleAllocated* to see if you have a Qt handle. If the handle is allocated, you can make the proper call to Qt to set the color. If not, you can store the value in a private field variable, and, in *InitWidget*, you set the property.

For more information about object construction, see “Object construction for C++Builder VCL/CLX classes” on page 13-7.

Handling system and widget events

System and widget events, which are mainly of concern when writing components, are handled differently by the VCL and CLX. The most important difference is that CLX controls do not respond directly to Windows messages, even when running on Windows (see Chapter 51, “Handling messages and system notifications”). Instead, they respond to notifications from the underlying widget layer. Because the notifications use a different system, the order and timing of events can sometimes differ between corresponding CLX and VCL objects. This difference occurs even if your CLX application is running on Windows rather than Linux. If you are porting a VCL application to CLX, you may need to change the way your event handlers respond to accommodate these differences.

For information on writing components that respond to system and widget events (other than those that are reflected in the published events of CLX components), see “Responding to system notifications using CLX” on page 51-10.

Sharing source files between Windows and Linux

If you want your application to run on both Windows and Linux, you can share the source files making them accessible to both operating systems. You can do this in several ways, such as placing the source files on a server that is accessible to both computers or by using Samba on the Linux machine to provide access to files through Microsoft network file sharing for both Linux and Windows. You can choose to keep the source on Linux and create a shared drive on Linux. Or you can keep the source on Windows and create a share on Windows for the Linux machine to access.

You can continue to develop and compile the file on C++Builder using objects that are supported by both VCL and CLX. When you are finished, you can compile on Windows. When a Linux C++ solution is available, you can compile on Linux.

If you create a new CLX application, C++Builder creates an .xfm form file instead of a .dfm file.

Environmental differences between Windows and Linux

Currently, cross-platform means an application that can compile virtually unchanged on both the Windows and Linux operating systems. The following table lists some of the differences between Linux and the Windows operating environments.

Table 14.7 Differences in the Linux and Windows operating environments

| Difference | Description |
|----------------------------|--|
| File name case sensitivity | In Linux, file names are case sensitive. The file Test.txt is <i>not</i> the same file as test.txt. You need to pay close attention to capitalization of file names on Linux. |
| Line ending characters | On Windows, lines of text are terminated by CR/LF (that is, ASCII 13 + ASCII 10), but on Linux it is LF. While the Code editor can handle the difference, you should be aware of this when importing code from Windows. |
| End of file character | In MS-DOS and Windows, the character value #26 (Ctrl-Z) is treated as the end of the text file, even if there is data in the file after that character. Linux uses Ctrl+D as the end-of-file character. |
| Batch files/shell scripts | The Linux equivalent of .bat files are shell scripts. A script is a text file containing instructions, saved and made executable with the command, <code>chmod +x <scriptfile></code> . The scripting language depends on the shell you are using on Linux. Bash is commonly used. |
| Command confirmation | In MS-DOS or Windows, if you try to delete a file or folder, it asks for confirmation ("Are you sure you want to do that?"). Generally, Linux won't ask; it will just do it. This makes it easy to accidentally destroy a file or the entire file system. There is no way to undo a deletion on Linux unless a file is backed up on another media. |
| Command feedback | If a command succeeds on Linux, it redisplay the command prompt without a status message. |
| Command switches | Linux uses a dash (-) to indicate command switches or a double dash (--) for multiple character options where DOS uses a slash (/) or dash (-). |
| Configuration files | <p>On Windows, configuration is done in the registry or in files such as autoexec.bat.</p> <p>On Linux, configuration files are created as hidden files in the user's home directory. Configuration files in the /etc directory are usually not hidden files.</p> <p>Linux also uses environment variables such as LD_LIBRARY_PATH (search path for libraries). Other important environment variables:</p> <p>HOME Your home directory (/home/sam)</p> <p>TERM Terminal type (xterm, vt100, console)</p> <p>SHELL Path to your shell (/bin/bash)</p> <p>USER Your login name (sfuller)</p> <p>PATH List to search for programs</p> <p>They are specified in the shell or in files such as .bashrc.</p> |
| DLLs | On Linux, you use shared object files (.so). In Windows, these are dynamic link libraries (DLLs). |

Table 14.7 Differences in the Linux and Windows operating environments (continued)

| Difference | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| Drive letters | Linux doesn't have drive letters. An example Linux pathname is <code>/lib/security</code> . See <code>DriveDelim</code> in the runtime library. |
| Exceptions | Operating system exceptions are called signals on Linux. |
| Executable files | On Linux, executable files require no extension. On Windows, executable files have an <code>exe</code> extension. |
| File name extensions | Linux does not use file name extensions to identify file types or to associate files with applications. |
| File permissions | <p>On Linux, files (and directories) are assigned read, write, and execute permissions for the file owner, group, and others. For example, <code>-rwxr-xr-x</code> means, from left to right:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - is the file type (- = ordinary file, <code>d</code> = directory, <code>l</code> = link); <code>rwx</code> are the permissions for the file owner (read, write, execute); <code>r-x</code> are the permissions for the group of the file owner (read, execute); and <code>r-x</code> are the permissions for all other users (read, execute). The root user (superuser) can override these permissions. <p>You need to make sure that your application runs under the correct user and has proper access to required files.</p> |
| Make utility | Borland's make utility is not available on the Linux platform. Instead, you can use Linux's GNU make utility. |
| Multitasking | Linux fully supports multitasking. You can run several programs (in Linux, called processes) at the same time. You can launch processes in the background (using <code>&</code> after the command) and continue working straight away. Linux also lets you have several sessions. |
| Pathnames | Linux uses a forward slash (<code>/</code>) wherever DOS uses a backslash (<code>\</code>). A <code>PathDelim</code> constant can be used to specify the appropriate character for the platform. See <code>PathDelim</code> in the runtime library. |
| Search path | <p>When executing programs, Windows always checks the current directory first, then looks at the <code>PATH</code> environment variable. Linux never looks in the current directory but searches only the directories listed in <code>PATH</code>. To run a program in the current directory, you usually have to type <code>./</code> before it.</p> <p>You can also modify your <code>PATH</code> to include <code>./</code> as the first path to search.</p> |
| Search path separator | Windows uses the semicolon as a search path separator. Linux uses a colon. See <code>PathDelim</code> in the runtime library. |
| Symbolic links | <p>On Linux, a symbolic link is a special file that points to another file on disk. Place symbolic links in the global <code>bin</code> directory that points to your application's main files and you don't have to modify the system search path. A symbolic link is created with the <code>ln (link)</code> command.</p> <p>Windows has shortcuts for the GUI desktop. To make a program available at the command line, Windows install programs typically modify the system search path.</p> |

Directory structure on Linux

Directories are different in Linux. Any file or device can be mounted anywhere on the file system.

Note Linux pathnames use forward slashes whereas Windows pathnames use backslashes. The initial slash stands for the root directory.

Following are some of the commonly used directories in Linux.

Table 14.8 Common Linux directories

| Directory | Contents |
|----------------|--|
| / | The root or top directory of the entire Linux file system |
| /root | The root file system; the Superuser's home directory |
| /bin | Commands, utilities |
| /sbin | System utilities |
| /dev | Devices shown as files |
| /lib | Libraries |
| /home/username | Files owned by the user where username is the user's login name. |
| /opt | Optional |
| /boot | Kernel that gets called when the system starts up |
| /etc | Configuration files |
| /usr | Applications, programs. Usually includes directories like /usr/spool, /usr/man, /usr/include, /usr/local |
| /mnt | Other media mounted on the system such as a CD or a floppy disk drive |
| /var | Logs, messages, spool files |
| /proc | Virtual file system and reporting system statistics |
| /tmp | Temporary files |

Note Different distributions of Linux sometimes place files in different locations. A utility program may be placed in /bin in a Red Hat distribution but in /usr/local/bin in a Debian distribution.

Refer to www.pathname.com for additional details on the organization of the UNIX/Linux hierarchical file system and to read the *Filesystem Hierarchy Standard*.

Writing portable code

If you are writing cross-platform applications that are meant to run on Windows and Linux, you can write code that compiles under different conditions. Using conditional compilation, you can maintain your Windows coding, yet also make allowances for Linux operating system differences.

To create applications that are easily portable between Windows and Linux, remember to:

- Reduce or isolate calls to platform-specific (Win32 or Linux) APIs; use CLX methods or calls to the Qt library.

- Eliminate Windows messaging (`PostMessage`, `SendMessage`) constructs within an application. In CLX, call the `QApplication_postEvent` and `QApplication_sendEvent` methods instead. For information on writing components that respond to system and widget events, see “Responding to system notifications using CLX” on page 51-10.
- Use `TMemIniFile` instead of `TRegIniFile`.
- Observe and preserve case-sensitivity in file and directory names.
- Port any external assembler TASM code. The GNU assembler, “as,” does not support the TASM syntax. (See “Including inline assembler code” on page 14-18.)

Try to write the code to use platform-independent runtime library routines and use constants found in `System`, `SysUtils`, and other runtime library units. For example, use the `PathDelim` constant to insulate your code from ‘/’ versus ‘\’ platform differences.

Another example involves the use of multibyte characters on both platforms. Windows code traditionally expects only two bytes per multibyte character. In Linux, multibyte character encoding can have many more bytes per char (up to six bytes for UTF-8). Both platforms can be accommodated using the `StrNextChar` function in `SysUtils`. Existing Windows code such as the following

```
while(*p != 0)
{
    if(LeadBytes.Contains(*p))
        p++;
    p++;
}
```

can be replaced with platform-independent code like this:

```
while(*p != 0)
{
    if(LeadBytes.Contains(*p))
        p = StrNextchar(p);
    else
        p++;
}
```

This example is platform-portable but still avoids the performance cost of a procedure call for non-multibyte locales.

If using runtime library functions is not a workable solution, try to isolate the platform-specific code in your routine into one chunk or into a subroutine. Try to limit the number of `#ifdef` blocks to maintain source code readability and portability. The conditional symbol `WIN32` is not defined on Linux. The conditional symbol `LINUX` is defined, indicating the source code is being compiled for the Linux platform.

Using conditional directives

Using `#ifdef` compiler directives is a reasonable way to conditionalize your code for the Windows and Linux platforms. However, because `#ifdefs` make source code harder to understand and maintain, you need to understand when it is reasonable to

use **#ifdefs**. When considering the use of **#ifdefs**, the top questions should be “Why does this code require an **#ifdef**?” and “Can this be written without an **#ifdef**?”

Follow these guidelines for using **#ifdefs** within cross-platform applications:

- Try not to use **#ifdefs** unless absolutely necessary. **#ifdefs** in a source file are only evaluated when source code is compiled. C/C++ requires unit sources (header files) to compile a project. Full rebuilds of all source code is an uncommon event for most C++Builder projects.
- Do not use **#ifdefs** in package (.bpc) files. Limit their use to source files. Component writers need to create two design-time packages when doing cross-platform development, not one package using **#ifdefs**.
- In general, use **#ifdef WINDOWS** to test for any Windows platform including WIN32. Reserve the use of **#ifdef WIN32** for distinguishing between specific Windows platforms, such as 32-bit versus 64-bit Windows. Don’t limit your code to WIN32 unless you know for sure that it will not work in WIN64.
- Avoid negative tests like **#ifndef** unless absolutely required. **#ifndef __linux__** is *not* equivalent to **#ifdef WINDOWS**.
- Avoid **#ifndef/#else** combinations. Use a positive test instead (**#ifdef**) for better readability.
- Avoid **#else** clauses on platform-sensitive **#ifdefs**. Use separate **#ifdef** blocks for Linux- and Windows-specific code instead of **#ifdef __linux__/#else** or **#ifdef WINDOWS/#else**.

For example, old code may contain

```
#ifdef WIN32
    (32-bit Windows code)
#else
    (16-bit Windows code)    /// By mistake, Linux could fall into this code.
#endif
```

For any non-portable code in **#ifdefs**, it is better for the source code to fail to compile than to have the platform fall into an **#else** clause and fail mysteriously at runtime. Compile failures are easier to find than runtime failures.

- Use the **#if** syntax for complicated tests. Replace nested **#ifdefs** with a boolean expression in an **#if** directive. You should terminate the **#if** directive using **#endif**. This allows you to place **#if** expressions within **#ifdefs** to hide the new **#if** syntax from previous compilers.

All of the conditional directives are documented in the online Help. Also, see the topic “Conditional Compilation” in Help for more information.

Emitting messages

The **#pragma message** compiler directive allows source code to emit warnings and errors just as the compiler does. Use **#pragma message** to specify a user-defined message within your program code, using one of the following formats.

If you have a variable number of string constants, use:

```
#pragma message( "hi there" )
#pragma message( "hi " " there" )
```

To write text following a message, use:

```
#pragma message text
```

To expand a previously defined value, use:

```
#pragma message (text)

#define text "a test string"
#pragma message (text)
```

For example, to display these messages on a button:

```
void __fastcall TForm1::Button1Click(TObject *Sender)
{
    #pragma message( "hi there 1" )
    #pragma message( "hi " "there 2" )

    #pragma message hi there 3

    #define text "a test string"
    #pragma message (text)
}
```

To display the messages in the IDE, choose Projects | Options | Compiler, click the Compiler tab, and check the Show general messages check box.

Including inline assembler code

If you include inline assembler code in your Windows applications, you may not be able to use the same code on Linux because of position-independent code (PIC) requirements on Linux. Linux shared object libraries (DLL equivalents) require that all code be relocatable in memory without modification. This primarily affects inline assembler routines that use global variables or other absolute addresses, or that call external functions.

For units that contain only C++ code, the compiler automatically generates PIC when required. It's a good idea to compile every source file into both PIC and non-PIC formats; use the -VP compiler switch to generate PIC.

You may want to code assembler routines differently depending on whether you'll be compiling to an executable or a shared library; use `#ifndef __PIC__` to branch the two versions of your assembler code. Or you can consider rewriting the routine in C++ to avoid the issue.

Following are the PIC rules for inline assembler code:

- PIC requires all memory references be made relative to the EBX register, which contains the current module's base address pointer (in Linux called the Global Offset Table or GOT). So, instead of

```
MOV EAX,GlobalVar
```


use

```
MOV EAX, [EBX].GlobalVar
```

- PIC requires that you preserve the EBX register across calls into your assembly code (same as on Win32), and also that you restore the EBX register *before* making calls to external functions (different from Win32).
- While PIC code will work in base executables, it may slow the performance and generate more code. You don't have any choice in shared objects, but in executables you probably still want to get the highest level of performance that you can.

Programming differences on Linux

The Linux `wchar_t` widechar is 32 bits per character. The 16-bit Unicode standard that the VCL and CLX support is a subset of the 32-bit UCS standard supported by Linux and the GNU libraries. `WideString` types must be widened to 32 bits per character before it can be passed to an OS function as `wchar_t`.

In Linux, `WideStrings` are reference counted like long strings (in Windows, they're not).

In Windows, multibyte characters (MBCS) are represented as one- and two-byte char codes. In Linux, they are represented in one to six bytes.

`AnsiStrings` can carry multibyte character sequences, depending upon the user's locale settings. The Linux encoding for multibyte characters such as Japanese, Chinese, Hebrew, and Arabic may not be compatible with the Windows encoding for the same locale. Unicode is portable, whereas multibyte is not. See "Enabling application code" on page 16-2 for details on handling strings for various locales in international applications.

Cross-platform database applications

On Windows, C++Builder provides several choices for how to access database information. These include using ADO, the Borland Database Engine (BDE), and InterBase Express. On Windows and Linux, you can use *dbExpress*, a cross-platform data access technology, depending on which edition of C++Builder you have.

Before you port a database application to *dbExpress* so that it will run on Linux, you should understand the differences between using *dbExpress* and the data access mechanism you were using. These differences occur at different levels.

- At the lowest level, there is a layer that communicates between your application and the database server. This could be ADO, the BDE, or the InterBase client software. This layer is replaced by *dbExpress*, which is a set of lightweight drivers for dynamic SQL processing.
- The low-level data access is wrapped in a set of components that you add to data modules or forms. These components include database connection components, which represent the connection to a database server, and datasets, which represent

the data fetched from the server. Although there are some very important differences, due to the unidirectional nature of *dbExpress* cursors, the differences are less pronounced at this level, because datasets all share a common ancestor, as do database connection components.

- At the user-interface level, there are the fewest differences. CLX data-aware controls are designed to be as similar as possible to the corresponding Windows controls. The major differences at the user interface level arise from changes needed to accommodate the use of cached updates.

For information on porting existing database applications to *dbExpress*, see “Porting database applications to Linux” on page 14-22. For information on designing new *dbExpress* applications, see Chapter 18, “Designing database applications.”

dbExpress differences

On Linux, *dbExpress* manages the communication with database servers. *dbExpress* consists of a set of lightweight drivers that implement a set of common interfaces. Each driver is a shared object (.so file) that must be linked to your application. Because *dbExpress* is designed to be cross-platform, it is also available on Windows as a set of dynamic-link libraries (.dlls).

As with any data-access layer, *dbExpress* requires the client-side software provided by the database vendor. In addition, it uses a database-specific driver, plus two configuration files, *dbxconnections* and *dbxdrivers*. This is markedly less than you need for, say, the BDE, which requires the main Borland Database Engine library (*Idapi32.dll*) plus a database-specific driver and a number of other supporting libraries.

Furthermore, *dbExpress*:

- Allows for a simpler and faster path to remote databases. As a result, you can expect a noticeable performance increase for simple, straight-through data access.
- Processes queries and stored procedures, but does not support the concept of opening tables.
- Returns only unidirectional cursors.
- Has no built-in update support other than the ability to execute an INSERT, DELETE, or UPDATE query.
- Does no metadata caching; the design time metadata access interface is implemented using the core data-access interface.
- Executes only queries requested by the user, thereby optimizing database access by not introducing any extra queries.
- Manages a record buffer or a block of record buffers internally. This differs from the BDE, where clients are required to allocate the memory used to buffer records.
- Supports only local tables that are SQL-based, such as InterBase and Oracle.
- Uses drivers for DB2, Informix, InterBase, MySQL, and Oracle. If you are using a different database server, you must either convert your data to one of these

databases, write a *dbExpress* driver for the database server you are using, or obtain a third-party *dbExpress* driver for your database server.

Component-level differences

When you write a *dbExpress* application, it requires a different set of data access components than those used in your existing database applications. The *dbExpress* components share the same base classes as other data access components (*TDataSet* and *TCustomConnection*), which means that many of the properties, methods, and events are the same as the components used in your existing applications.

Table 14.9 lists some of the important database components used in InterBase Express, BDE, and ADO in the Windows environment and shows the comparable *dbExpress* components for use on Linux and in cross-platform applications.

Table 14.9 Comparable data-access components

| InterBase Express components | BDE components | ADO components | dbExpress components |
|------------------------------|--------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>TIBDatabase</i> | <i>TDatabase</i> | <i>TADOConnection</i> | <i>TSQLConnection</i> |
| <i>TIBTable</i> | <i>TTable</i> | <i>TADOTable</i> | <i>TSQLTable</i> |
| <i>TIBQuery</i> | <i>TQuery</i> | <i>TADOQuery</i> | <i>TSQLQuery</i> |
| <i>TIBStoredProc</i> | <i>TStoredProc</i> | <i>TADOStoredProc</i> | <i>TSQLStoredProc</i> |
| <i>TIBDataSet</i> | | <i>TADODataSet</i> | <i>TSQLDataSet</i> |

The *dbExpress* datasets (*TSQLTable*, *TSQLQuery*, *TSQLStoredProc*, and *TSQLDataSet*) are more limited than their counterparts, however, because they do not support editing and only allow forward navigation. For details on the differences between the *dbExpress* datasets and the other datasets that are available on Windows, see Chapter 26, “Using unidirectional datasets.”

Because of the lack of support for editing and navigation, most *dbExpress* applications do not work directly with the *dbExpress* datasets. Rather, they connect the *dbExpress* dataset to a client dataset, which buffers records in memory and provides support for editing and navigation. For more information about this architecture, see “Database architecture” on page 18-5.

Note For very simple applications, you can use *TSQLClientDataSet* instead of a *dbExpress* dataset connected to a client dataset. This has the benefit of simplicity, because there is a 1:1 correspondence between the dataset in the application you are porting and the dataset in the ported application, but it is less flexible than explicitly connecting a *dbExpress* dataset to a client dataset. For most applications, it is recommended that you use a *dbExpress* dataset connected to a *TClientDataSet* component.

User interface-level differences

CLX data-aware controls are designed to be as similar as possible to the corresponding Windows controls. As a result, porting the user interface portion of your database applications introduces few additional considerations beyond those involved in porting any Windows application to CLX.

The major differences at the user interface level arise from differences in the way *dbExpress* datasets or client datasets supply data.

If you are using only *dbExpress* datasets, then you must adjust your user interface to accommodate the fact that the datasets do not support editing and only support forward navigation. Thus, for example, you may need to remove controls that allow users to move to a previous record. Because *dbExpress* datasets do not buffer data, you can't display data in a data-aware grid: only one record can be displayed at a time.

If you have connected the *dbExpress* dataset to a client dataset, then the user interface elements associated with editing and navigation should still work. You need only reconnect them to the client dataset. The main consideration in this case is handling how updates are written to the database. By default, most datasets on Windows write updates to the database server automatically when they are posted (for example, when the user moves to a new record). Client datasets, on the other hand, always cache updates in memory. For information on how to accommodate this difference, see "Updating data in *dbExpress* applications" on page 14-24.

Porting database applications to Linux

Porting your database application to *dbExpress* allows you to create a cross-platform application that runs on both Windows and Linux. The porting process involves making changes to your application because the technology is different. How difficult it is to port depends on the type of application it is, how complex it is, and what it needs to accomplish. An application that heavily uses Windows-specific technologies such as ADO will be more difficult to port than one that uses C++Builder database technology.

Follow these general steps to port your Windows/VCL database application to Linux/CLX:

- 1 Make sure your data is stored in a database that is supported by *dbExpress*, such as DB2, Informix, InterBase, MySQL, and Oracle. The data needs to reside on one of these SQL servers. If your data is not already stored in one of these databases, find a utility to transfer it.

For example, you can use C++Builder's Data Pump utility (not available in all editions) to convert certain databases (such as dBase, FoxPro, and Paradox) to a *dbExpress*-supported database. (See the `datapump.hlp` file in Program Files\Common Files\Borland\Shared\BDE for information on using the utility.)

- 2 Create data modules containing the datasets and connection components so they are separate from your user interface forms and components. That way, you isolate the portions of your application that require a completely new set of components into data modules. Forms that represent the user interface can then be ported like any other application. For details, see "Porting your application" on page 14-3.

The remaining steps assume that your datasets and connection components are isolated in their own data modules.

- 3 Create a new data module to hold the CLX versions of your datasets and connection components.
- 4 For each dataset in the original application, add a *dbExpress* dataset, *TDataSetProvider* component, and *TClientDataSet* component. Use the correspondences in Table 14.9 to decide which *dbExpress* dataset to use. Give these components meaningful names.
 - Set the *ProviderName* property of the *TClientDataSet* component to the name of the *TDataSetProvider* component.
 - Set the *DataSet* property of the *TDataSetProvider* component to the *dbExpress* dataset.
 - Change the *DataSet* property of any data source components that referred to the original dataset so that it now refers to the client dataset.
- 5 Set properties on the new dataset to match the original dataset:
 - If the original dataset was a *TTable*, *TADOTable*, or *TIBTable* component, set the new *TSQLTable*'s *TableName* property to the original dataset's *TableName*. Also copy any properties used to set up master/detail relationships or specify indexes. Properties specifying ranges and filters should be set on the client dataset rather than the new *TSQLTable* component.
 - If the original dataset was a *TQuery*, *TADOQuery*, or *TIBQuery* component, set the new *TSQLQuery* component's *SQL* property to the original dataset's *SQL* property. Set the *Params* property of the new *TSQLQuery* to match the value of the original dataset's *Params* or *Parameters* property. If you have set the *DataSource* property to establish a master/detail relationship, copy this as well.
 - If the original dataset was a *TStoredProc*, *TADOStoredProc*, or *TIBStoredProc* component, set the new *TSQLStoredProc* component's *StoredProcName* to the *StoredProcName* or *ProcedureName* property of the original dataset. Set the *Params* property of the new *TSQLStoredProc* to match the value of the original dataset's *Params* or *Parameters* property.
- 6 For any database connection components in the original application (*TDatabase*, *TIBDatabase*, or *TADOConnection*), add a *TSQLConnection* component to the new data module. You must also add a *TSQLConnection* component for every database server to which you connected without a connection component (for example, by using the *ConnectionString* property on an ADO dataset or by setting the *DatabaseName* property of a BDE dataset to a BDE alias).
- 7 For each *dbExpress* dataset placed in step 4, set its *SQLConnection* property to the *TSQLConnection* component that corresponds to the appropriate database connection.
- 8 On each *TSQLConnection* component, specify the information needed to establish a database connection. To do so, double-click the *TSQLConnection* component to display the Connection Editor and set parameter values to indicate the appropriate settings. If you had to transfer data to a new database server in step 1, then specify settings appropriate to the new server. If you are using the same

server as before, you can look up some of this information on the original connection component:

- If the original application used *TDatabase*, you must transfer the information that appears in the *Params* and *TransIsolation* properties.
- If the original application used *TADOConnection*, you must transfer the information that appears in the *ConnectionString* and *IsolationLevel* properties.
- If the original application used *TIBDatabase*, you must transfer the information that appears in the *DatabaseName* and *Params* properties.
- If there was no original connection component, you must transfer the information associated with the BDE alias or that appeared in the dataset's *ConnectionString* property.

You may want to save this set of parameters under a new connection name. For more details on this process, see "Controlling connections" on page 21-2.

Updating data in dbExpress applications

dbExpress applications use client datasets to support editing. When you post edits to a client dataset, the changes are written to the client dataset's in-memory snapshot of the data, but are not automatically written to the database server. If your original application used a client dataset for caching updates, then you do not need to change anything to support editing on Linux. However, if you relied on the default behavior of most datasets on Windows, which is to write edits to the database server when you post records, you must make changes to accommodate the use of a client dataset.

There are two ways to convert an application that did not previously cache updates:

- You can mimic the behavior of the dataset on Windows by writing code to apply each updated record to the database server as soon as it is posted. To do this, supply the client dataset with an *AfterPost* event handler that applies update to the database server:

```
void __fastcall TForm1::ClientDataSet1AfterPost(TDataSet *DataSet)
{
    TClientDataSet *pCDS = dynamic_cast<TClientDataSet *>(DataSet);
    if (pCDS)
        pCDS->ApplyUpdates(1);
}
```

- You can adjust your user interface to deal with cached updates. This approach has certain advantages, such as reducing the amount of network traffic and minimizing transaction times. However, if you switch to using cached updates, you must decide when to apply those updates back to the database server, and probably make user interface changes to let users initiate the application of updates or inform them about whether their edits have been written to the database. Further, because update errors are not detected when the user posts a record, you will need to change the way you report such errors to the user, so that they can see which update caused a problem as well as what type of problem occurred.

If your original application used the support provided by the BDE or ADO for caching updates, you will need to make some adjustments in your code to switch to using a client dataset. The following table lists the properties, events, and methods that support cached updates on BDE and ADO datasets, and the corresponding properties, methods and events on *TClientDataSet*:

Table 14.10 Properties, methods, and events for cached updates

| On BDE datasets (or TDatabase) | On ADO datasets | On TClientDataSet | Purpose |
|---|---|---|---|
| <i>CachedUpdates</i> | <i>LockType</i> | Not needed, client datasets always cache updates. | Determines whether cached updates are in effect. |
| Not supported | <i>CursorType</i> | Not supported | Specifies how isolated the dataset is from changes on the server. |
| <i>UpdatesPending</i> | Not supported | <i>ChangeCount</i> | Indicates whether the local cache contains updated records that need to be applied to the database. |
| <i>UpdateRecordTypes</i> | <i>FilterGroup</i> | <i>StatusFilter</i> | Indicates the kind of updated records to make visible when applying cached updates. |
| <i>UpdateStatus</i> | <i>RecordStatus</i> | <i>UpdateStatus</i> | Indicates if a record is unchanged, modified, inserted, or deleted. |
| <i>OnUpdateError</i> | Not supported | <i>OnReconcileError</i> | An event for handling update errors on a record-by-record basis. |
| <i>ApplyUpdates</i> (on dataset or database) | <i>UpdateBatch</i> | <i>ApplyUpdates</i> | Applies records in the local cache to the database. |
| <i>CancelUpdates</i> | <i>CancelUpdates</i> or <i>CancelBatch</i> | <i>CancelUpdates</i> | Removes pending updates from the local cache without applying them. |
| <i>CommitUpdates</i> | Handled automatically | <i>Reconcile</i> | Clears the update cache following successful application of updates. |
| <i>FetchAll</i> | Not supported | <i>GetNextPacket</i> (and <i>PacketRecords</i>) | Copies database records to the local cache for editing and updating. |
| <i>RevertRecord</i> | <i>CancelBatch</i> | <i>RevertRecord</i> | Undoes updates to the current record if updates are not yet applied. |

Cross-platform Internet applications

An Internet application is a client/server application that uses standard Internet protocols for connecting the client to the server. Because your applications use standard Internet protocols for client/server communications, you can make your applications cross-platform. For example, a server-side program for an Internet application communicates with the client through the Web server software for the

machine. The server application is typically written for Linux or Windows, but can also be cross-platform. The clients can be on either platform.

You can use C++Builder to create Web server applications as CGI or Apache applications for future deployment on Linux. On Windows, you can create other types of Web servers such as Microsoft Server DLLs (ISAPI), Netscape Server DLLs (NSAPI), and Windows CGI applications. Only straight CGI applications and some applications that use Web Broker will run on both Windows and Linux.

Porting Internet applications to Linux

If you have existing Internet applications that you want to make cross-platform, you can either port your Web server application to Linux or create a new application on Linux when a Borland C++ solution is available. See Chapter 32, “Creating Internet server applications” for information on writing Web servers. If your application uses Web Broker, writes to the Web Broker interface, and does not use native API calls, it is not as difficult to port it to Linux.

If your application writes to ISAPI, NSAPI, Windows CGI, or other Web APIs, it will be more difficult to port. You will need to search through your source files and translate these API calls into Apache (see `..\Include\Vcl\httpd.hpp` for function prototypes for Apache APIs) or CGI calls. You also need to make all other suggested changes described in “Porting Windows applications to Linux” on page 14-2.

Working with packages and components

A *package* is a special dynamic-link library used by C++Builder applications, the IDE, or both. *Runtime packages* provide functionality when a user runs an application. *Design-time packages* are used to install components in the IDE and to create special property editors for custom components. A single package can function at both design time and runtime, and design-time packages frequently work by calling runtime packages. To distinguish them from other DLLs, package libraries are stored in files that end with the .bpl (Borland package library) extension.

Like other runtime libraries, packages contain code that can be shared among applications. For example, the most frequently used C++Builder components reside in a package called vcl. Each time you create a new default application, it automatically uses vcl. When you build an application created this way, the application's executable image contains only the code and data unique to it; the common code is in the runtime package called vcl60.bpl. A computer with several package-enabled applications installed on it needs only a single copy of vcl60.bpl, which is shared by all the applications and the C++Builder IDE itself.

C++Builder ships with several runtime packages that encapsulate VCL and CLX components. C++Builder also uses design-time packages to manipulate components in the IDE.

You can build applications with or without packages. However, if you want to add custom components to the IDE, you must install them as design-time packages.

You can create your own runtime packages to share among applications. If you write C++Builder components, you can build your components into design-time packages before installing them.

Why use packages?

Design-time packages simplify the tasks of distributing and installing custom components. Runtime packages, which are optional, offer several advantages over conventional programming. By building reused code into a runtime library, you can share it among applications. For example, all of your applications—including C++Builder itself—can access standard components through packages. Since the applications don't have separate copies of the component library bound into their executables, the executables are much smaller, saving both system resources and hard disk storage. Moreover, packages allow faster compilation because only code unique to the application is compiled with each build.

Packages and standard DLLs

Create a package when you want to make a custom component that's available through the IDE. Create a standard DLL when you want to build a library that can be called from any application, regardless of the development tool used to build the application.

The following table lists the file types associated with packages:

Table 15.1 Package files

| File extension | Contents |
|----------------|--|
| bpk | The project options source file. This file is the XML portion of the package project. The <i>ProjectName.bpk</i> and <i>ProjectName.cpp</i> combined are used to manage settings, options, and files used by the package project. |
| bpl | The runtime package. This file is a Windows .dll with special C++Builder-specific features. The base name for the .bpl is the base name of the bpk source file. |
| cpp | <i>ProjectName.cpp</i> contains the entry point for the package. Additionally, each component contained within the package generally resides within a .cpp file. |
| h | The header file or interface for the component. <i>ComponentName.h</i> is the companion to <i>ComponentName.cpp</i> . |
| lib | A static library, or collection of .objs, used in place of a .bpi when the application does not use runtime packages. Generated only if -GI (Generate .LIB File) is selected. |
| obj | A binary image for a unit file contained in a package. One obj is created, when necessary, for each .cpp file. |
| bpi | A Borland package import library. A .bpi is created for each package. The bpi for bpls is analogous to import libraries for dlls. This file is passed to the linker by applications using the package to resolve references to functions in the package. The base name for the bpi is the base name for the package source file. |

You can include VCL or CLX or both types of components in a package. Packages meant to be cross-platform should include CLX components only.

Note Packages share their global data with other modules in an application.

Runtime packages

Runtime packages are deployed with C++Builder applications. They provide functionality when a user runs the application.

To run an application that uses packages, a computer must have both the application's executable file and all the packages (.bpl files) that the application uses. The .bpl files must be on the system path for an application to use them. When you deploy an application, you must make sure that users have correct versions of any required .bpls.

Using packages in an application

To use packages in an application:

- 1 Load or create a project in the IDE.
- 2 Choose Project | Options.
- 3 Choose the Packages tab.
- 4 Select the Build with Runtime Packages check box, and enter one or more package names in the edit box underneath. (Runtime packages associated with installed design-time packages are already listed in the edit box.)
- 5 To add a package to an existing list, click the Add button and enter the name of the new package in the Add Runtime Package dialog. To browse from a list of available packages, click the Add button, then click the Browse button next to the Package Name edit box in the Add Runtime Package dialog.

If you edit the Search Path edit box in the Add Runtime Package dialog, you will be changing C++Builder's global Library Path.

You do not need to include file extensions with package names (or the version number representing the C++Builder release); that is, `vc160.bpl` is written as `vc1`. If you type directly into the Runtime Packages edit box, be sure to separate multiple names with semicolons. For example:

```
rtl;vc1;vcldb;vcldao;vc1x;vc1bde;
```

Packages listed in the Runtime Packages edit box are automatically linked to your application. Duplicate package names are ignored, and if the Build with runtime packages check box is unchecked, the application is linked without packages.

Runtime packages are selected for the current project only. To make the current choices into automatic defaults for new projects, select the Defaults check box at the bottom of the dialog.

An application built with packages still must include header files for the packaged units that it uses. For example, an application that uses database controls needs the

```
#include "vcldb.h"
```

statement, even if it uses the `vcldb` package. In generated source files, C++Builder creates these **#include** statements automatically.

Dynamically loading packages

To load a package at runtime, call the *LoadPackage* function. *LoadPackage* loads the package, checks for duplicate units, and calls the initialization blocks of all units contained in the package. For example, the following code could be executed when a file is chosen in a file-selection dialog.

```
if (OpenDialog1->Execute())
    PackageList->Items->AddObject(OpenDialog1->FileName, (TObject *)LoadPackage(OpenDialog1-
    >FileName));
```

To unload a package dynamically, call *UnloadPackage*. Be careful to destroy any instances of classes defined in the package and to unregister classes that were registered by it.

Deciding which runtime packages to use

C++Builder ships with several runtime packages, including rtl and vcl, which supply basic language and component support.

The vcl package contains the most commonly used components; the rtl package includes all the non-component system functions and Windows interface elements. It does not include database or other special components, which are available in separate packages.

To create a client/server database application that uses packages, you need several runtime packages, including vcl, vcldb, rtl, and dbrtl. If you want to use Outline Components in your application, you also need vclx. To use these packages, choose Project | Options, select the Packages tab, and enter the following list in the Runtime Packages edit box.

```
rtl;vcl;vcldb;vclx;
```

Actually, you don't have to include vcl and rtl, because they are referenced in the Requires list of vcldb. (See "Requires list" on page 15-9.) Your application compiles can be built just the same whether or not vcl and rtl are included in the Runtime Packages edit box.

Custom packages

A custom package is either a bpl you code and build yourself or an existing package from a third-party vendor. To use a custom runtime package with an application, choose Project | Options and add the name of the package to the Runtime Packages edit box on the Packages page. For example, suppose you have a statistical package called stats.bpl. To use it in an application, the line you enter in the Runtime Packages edit box might look like this:

```
rtl;vcl;vcldb;stats
```

If you create your own packages, you can add them to the list as needed.

Design-time packages

Design-time packages are used to install components on the IDE's Component palette and to create special property editors for custom components.

C++Builder ships with many design-time component packages preinstalled in the IDE. Which ones are installed depends on which version of C++Builder you are using and whether or not you have customized it. You can view a list of what packages are installed on your system by choosing Component | Install Packages.

The design-time packages work by calling runtime packages, which they reference in their Requires lists. (See "Requires list" on page 15-9.) For example, dclstd references vcl. Dclstd itself contains additional functionality that makes most of the standard components available on the Component palette.

Note By convention, IDE design packages start with a dcl and reside in the bin directory. For design packages such as `..\bin\Dclstd`, there are counterparts for the linker, including `..\lib\vcl.lib`, `..\lib\vcl.bpi`, and the runtime package itself, `Windows\System\vcl60.bpl`.

In addition to preinstalled packages, you can install your own component packages, or component packages from third-party developers, in the IDE. The dclusr design-time package is provided as a default container for new components.

Installing component packages

All components are installed in the IDE as packages. If you've written your own components, create and build a package that contains them. (See "Creating and editing packages" on page 15-6.) Your component source code must follow the model described in Part V, "Creating custom components." If you are adding multiple units to a single package, each with components in them, you must make a single Register function for all components in a namespace that has the name of the package.

To install or uninstall your own components, or components from a third-party vendor, follow these steps:

- 1 If you are installing a new package, copy or move the package files to a local directory. If the package is shipped with `.bpl`, `.bpi`, `.lib`, and `.obj` files, be sure to copy all of them. (For information about these files, see "Packages and standard DLLs.")

The directory where you store the `.bpi` and header files—and the `.lib` or `.obj` files, if they are included with the distribution—must be in the C++Builder Library Path.

- 2 Choose Component | Install Packages from the IDE menu, or choose Project | Options and click the Packages tab.
- 3 A list of available packages appears under "Design packages."
 - To install a package in the IDE, select the check box next to it.
 - To uninstall a package, uncheck its check box.

- To see a list of components included in an installed package, select the package and click Components.
- To add a package to the list, click Add and browse in the Add Design Package dialog for the directory where the .bpl file resides (see step 1). Select a .bpl file and click Open.
- To remove a package from the list, select the package and click Remove.

4 Click OK.

The components in the package are installed on the Component palette pages specified in the components' *RegisterComponents* procedure, with the names they were assigned in the same procedure.

New projects are created with all available packages installed, unless you change the default settings. To make the current installation choices into the automatic default for new projects, check the Default check box at the bottom of the Packages tab of the Project Options dialog box.

To remove components from the Component palette without uninstalling a package, select Component | Configure Palette, or select Tools | Environment Options and click the Palette tab. The Palette options tab lists each installed component along with the name of the Component palette page where it appears. Selecting any component and clicking Hide removes the component from the palette.

Creating and editing packages

Creating a package involves specifying:

- A *name* for the package.
- A list of other packages to be *required* by, or linked to, the new package.
- A list of unit files to be *contained* by, or bound into, the package when it is built. The package is essentially a wrapper for these source-code units. The Contains list is where you put the source-code units for custom components that you want to build into a package.

A package is defined by a C++ source (.cpp) file and a project options file whose name ends with the .bpk extension. These files are generated by the Package editor.

Creating a package

To create a package, follow the procedure below. Refer to “Understanding the structure of a package” on page 15-9 for more information about the steps outlined here.

Note Do not use `ifdefs` in a package file (.bpk) such as when doing cross-platform development. You can use them in the source code, however.

- 1 Choose File | New | Other, select the Package icon, and click OK.

- 2 The generated package is displayed in the Package editor.
- 3 The Package editor shows a *Requires* node and a *Contains* node for the new package.
- 4 To add a unit to the Contains list, click the Add to package speed button. In the Add unit page, type a .cpp file name in the Unit file name edit box, or click Browse to browse for the file, and then click OK. The unit you've selected appears under the Contains node in the Package editor. You can add additional units by repeating this step.
- 5 To add a package to the Requires list, click the Add to package speed button. In the Requires page, type a .bpi file name in the Package name edit box, or click Browse to browse for the file, and then click OK. The package you've selected appears under the Requires node in the Package editor. You can add additional packages by repeating this step.
- 6 Click the Options speed button, and decide what kind of package you want to build.
 - To create a design-time only package (a package that cannot be used at runtime), select the Designtime only radio button. (Or add the **-Gpd** linker switch to your bpk file: `LFLAGS = ... -Gpd ...`)
 - To create a runtime-only package (a package that cannot be installed), select the Runtime only radio button. (Or add the **-Gpr** linker switch to your bpk file: `LFLAGS = ... -Gpr ...`)
 - To create a package that is available at both design time and runtime, select the Designtime and runtime radio button.
- 7 In the Package editor, click the Compile package speed button to compile your package.

Note You can also click the Install button to force a make.

Editing an existing package

You can open an existing package for editing in several ways:

- Choose File | Open (or File | Reopen) and select a cpp or bpk file.
- Choose Component | Install Packages, select a package from the Design Packages list, and click the Edit button.
- When the Package editor is open, select one of the packages in the Requires node, right-click, and choose Open.

To edit a package's description or set usage options, click the Options speed button in the Package editor and select the Description tab.

The Project Options dialog has a Default check box in the lower left corner. If you click OK when this box is checked, the options you've chosen are saved as default settings for new package projects. To restore the original defaults, delete or rename the default.bpk file.

Package source files and project options files

Package source files have the .cpp extension. Package project options files are created using XML format and have the .bpk (Borland package) extension. Display the package project option file from the Package editor by right-clicking on the Contains or Requires clause and choosing Edit Option Source.

Note C++Builder maintains the .bpk file. You do not normally need to edit it manually. You should make changes using the Packages tab of the Project Options dialog box.

The project options file for a package called MyPack might look, in part, like this:

```
<MACROS>
  <VERSION value="BCB.05.02"/>
  <PROJECT value="MyPack.bpl"/>
  <OBJFILES value="MyPack.obj Unit2.obj Unit3.obj"/>
  <RESFILES value="MyPack.res"/>
  <IDLFILES value=""/>
  <IDLGFILES value=""/>
  <DEFFILE value=""/>
  <RESDEPEN value="$ (RESFILES)"/>
  <LIBFILES value=""/>
  <LIBRARIES value=""/>
  <SPARELIBS value="Vcl60.lib"/>
  <PACKAGES value="Vcl60.bpi vcldbx60.bpi"/>
  .
  .
  .
```

In this case, MYPACK.cpp would include the following code:

```
USERES("MyPack.res");
USEPACKAGE("vcl60.bpi");
USEPACKAGE("vcldbx60.bpi");
USEUNIT("Unit2.cpp");
USEUNIT("Unit3.cpp");
```

MyPack's Contains list includes three units: MyPack itself, Unit2, and Unit3. MyPack's Requires list includes VCL and VCLDBX.

Packaging components

If you use the New Component wizard to create components (by choosing Component | New Component), C++Builder inserts the PACKAGE macro where it is needed. But if you have custom components from an older version of C++Builder, you'll have to add PACKAGE manually in two places.

The header-file declaration for a C++Builder component must include the predefined PACKAGE macro after the word **class**:

```
class PACKAGE MyComponent : ...
```

And in the cpp file where the component is defined, include the PACKAGE macro in the declaration of the *Register* function:

```
void __fastcall PACKAGE Register()
```


The `PACKAGE` macro expands to a statement that allows classes to be imported and exported from the resulting `bpl` file.

Understanding the structure of a package

Packages include the following parts:

- Package name
- Requires list
- Contains list

Naming packages

Package names must be unique within a project. If you name a package `Stats`, the Package editor generates a source file and project options file for it called `Stats.cpp` and `Stats.bpk`, respectively; the compiler and linker generate an executable, a binary image, and (optionally) a static library called `Stats.bpl`, `Stats.bpi`, and `Stats.lib`, respectively. To use the package in an application, add `Stats` to the Runtime Packages edit box (after choosing Project | Options and clicking the Packages tab).

You can also add a prefix, suffix, and version number to your package name. While the Package editor is open, click the Options button. On the Description page of the Project Options dialog box, enter text or a value for LIB Suffix, LIB Prefix, or LIB Version. For example, to add a version number to your package project, enter 6 after LIB Version so that *Package1* generates *Package1.bpl.6*.

Requires list

The Requires list specifies other, external packages that are used by the current package. An external package included in the Requires list is automatically linked at compile time into any application that uses both the current package and one of the units contained in the external package.

If the unit files contained in your package make references to other packaged units, the other packages should appear in your package's Requires list or you should add them. If the other packages are omitted from the Requires list, the compiler will import them into your package 'implicitly contained units.'

Note Most packages that you create require `rtl`. If using VCL components, you'll also need to include the `vcl` package. If using CLX components for cross-platform programming, you need to include `VisualCLX`.

Avoiding circular package references

Packages cannot contain circular references in their Requires list. This means that

- A package cannot reference itself in its own Requires list.
- A chain of references must terminate without rereferencing any package in the chain. If package A requires package B, then package B cannot require package A; if package A requires package B and package B requires package C, then package C cannot require package A.

Handling duplicate package references

Duplicate references in a package's Requires list—or in the Runtime Packages edit box—are ignored by the linker. For programming clarity and readability, however, you should catch and remove duplicate package references.

Contains list

The Contains list identifies the unit files to be bound into the package. If you are writing your own package, put your source code in cpp files and include them in the Contains list.

Avoiding redundant source code uses

A package cannot appear in the Contains list of another package.

All units included directly in a package's Contains list, or included indirectly in any of those units, are bound into the package at link time.

A unit cannot be contained (directly or indirectly) in more than one package used by the same application, *including the C++Builder IDE*. This means that if you create a package that contains one of the units in vcl you won't be able to install your package in the IDE. To use an already-packaged unit file in another package, put the first package in the second package's Requires list.

Building packages

You can build a package from the IDE or from the command line. To rebuild a package by itself from the IDE:

- 1 Choose File | Open, select a package source file or project option file, and click Open.
- 2 When the editor opens, choose Project | Make or Project | Build.

Note You can also choose File | New | Other and double-click the Package editor. Click the Install button to make the package project. Right-click the package project nodes for options to install, make, or build.

If you are adding a nongenerated .cpp file, add one of the compiler directives into your package source code. For more information, see "Package-specific compiler directives" below.

When linking at the command line, you can use several package-specific linker switches. For more information, see "Using the command-line compiler and linker" on page 15-12.

Package-specific compiler directives

The following table lists package-specific compiler directives that you can insert into your source code.

Table 15.2 Package-specific compiler directives

| Directive | Purpose |
|--|--|
| <code>#pragma package(smart_init)</code> | Assures that packaged units are initialized in the order determined by their dependencies. (Included by default in package source file.) |
| <code>#pragma package(smart_init, weak)</code> | Packages unit “weakly.” See “Weak packaging” below. (Put directive in unit source file.) |

Refer to “Creating packages and DLLs” on page 7-10 for additional directives that can be used in all libraries.

Weak packaging

The **`#pragma package(smart_init, weak)`** directive affects the way an .obj file is stored in a package’s .bpi and .bpl files. (For information about files generated by the compiler and linker, see “Package files created by building” on page 15-12.) If **`#pragma package(smart_init, weak)`** appears in a unit file, the linker omits the unit from bpls when possible, and creates a non-packaged local copy of the unit when it is required by another application or package. A unit compiled with this directive is said to be *weakly packaged*.

For example, suppose you’ve created a package called PACK that contains only one unit, UNIT1. Suppose UNIT1 does not use any additional units, but it makes calls to RARE.dll. If you put **`#pragma package(smart_init, weak)`** in UNIT1.cpp when you build your package, UNIT1 will not be included in PACK.bpl; you will not have to distribute copies of RARE.dll with PACK. However, UNIT1 will still be included in PACK.bpi. If UNIT1 is referenced by another package or application that uses PACK, it will be copied from PACK.bpi and linked directly into the project.

Now suppose you add a second unit, UNIT2, to PACK. Suppose that UNIT2 uses UNIT1. This time, even if you compile PACK with **`#pragma package(smart_init, weak)`** in UNIT1.cpp, the linker will include UNIT1 in PACK.bpl. But other packages or applications that reference UNIT1 will use the (non-packaged) copy taken from PACK.bpi.

Note Unit files containing the **`#pragma package(smart_init, weak)`** directive must not have global variables.

`#pragma package(smart_init, weak)` is an advanced feature intended for developers who distribute their bpls to other C++Builder programmers. It can help you to avoid distribution of infrequently used DLLs, and to eliminate conflicts among packages that may depend on the same external library.

For example, C++Builder’s PenWin unit references PenWin.dll. Most projects don’t use PenWin, and most computers don’t have PenWin.dll installed on them. For this reason, the PenWin unit is weakly packaged in vcl. When you link a project that uses PenWin and the vcl package, PenWin is copied from vcl60.bpi and bound directly into your project; the resulting executable is statically linked to PenWin.dll.

If PenWin were not weakly packaged, two problems would arise. First, vcl itself would be statically linked to PenWin.dll, and so you could not load it on any computer which didn't have PenWin.dll installed. Second, if you tried to create a package that contained PenWin, a build error would result because the PenWin unit would be contained in both vcl and your package. Thus, without weak packaging, PenWin could not be included in standard distributions of vcl.

Using the command-line compiler and linker

When you link from the command line, use the **-Tpp** linker switch to ensure that the project is built as a package. Other package-specific switches are listed in the following table.

Table 15.3 Package-specific command-line linker switches

| Switch | Purpose |
|---------------------------|--|
| -Tpp | Builds the project as a package. Included by default in package project files. |
| -Gi | Saves the generated bpi file. Included by default in package project files. |
| -Gpr | Generates a runtime-only package. |
| -God | Generates a design-time-only package. |
| -Gl | Generates a .lib file. |
| -D " <i>description</i> " | Saves the specified description with the package. |

The **-Gpr** and **-Gpd** switches correspond to the Runtime Package and Design Package check boxes on the Description page of the Project Options dialog (available for package projects only); if neither **-Gpr** nor **-Gpd** is used, the resulting package works at both design time and runtime. The **-D** switch corresponds to the Description edit box on the same page. The **-Gl** switch corresponds to the Generate .lib File check box on the Linker page of the Project Options dialog.

Note You can generate a makefile to use on the command line by choosing Project | Export Makefile.

Package files created by building

To create a package, you compile a source (.cpp) file using a project options file with the .bpk extension. The base name of the source file should match the base name of the files generated by the compiler; that is, if the source file is called TRAYPAK.cpp, the project options file—TRAYPAK.bpk—should include

```
<PROJECT value="Traypak.bpl"/>
```

In this case, compiling and linking the project creates a package called TRAYPAK.bpl.

When you compile and link a package, you create a bpi, bpl, obj, and lib file. The bpi, bpl, and lib files are generated by default in the directories specified in Library page of the Tools | Environment Options dialog. You can override the default settings by clicking the Options speed button in the Package editor to display the Project Options dialog; make any changes on the Directories/Conditionals page.

Deploying packages

You deploy packages much like you deploy other applications. The files you distribute with a deployed package may vary. The bpl and any packages or dlls required by the bpl must be distributed.

The following table lists the files that may be necessary, depending on the intended use of the package.

Table 15.4 Files deployed with a package

| File | Description |
|--------------------------|--|
| <i>ComponentName.h</i> | Allows end users access to the class interfaces. |
| <i>ComponentName.cpp</i> | Allows end users access to the component source. |
| bpi, obj, and lib | Allows end users to link applications. |

For general deployment information, refer to Chapter 17, “Deploying applications.”

Deploying applications that use packages

When distributing an application that uses runtime packages, make sure that your users have the application’s .exe file as well as all the library (.bpl or .dll) files that the application calls. If the library files are in a different directory from the .exe file, they must be accessible through the user’s Path. You may want to follow the convention of putting library files in the Windows\System directory. If you use InstallShield Express, your installation script can check the user’s system for any packages it requires before blindly reinstalling them.

Distributing packages to other developers

If you distribute runtime or design-time packages to other C++Builder developers, be sure to supply both .bpi and .bpl files as well as any required header files. To link components statically into their applications—that is, to build applications that don’t use runtime packages—developers will also need .lib (or .obj) files for any packages you supply.

Package collection files

Package collections (.dpc files) offer a convenient way to distribute packages to other developers. Each package collection contains one or more packages, including bpls and any additional files you want to distribute with them. When a package collection is selected for IDE installation, its constituent files are automatically extracted from their .pce container; the Installation dialog box offers a choice of installing all packages in the collection or installing packages selectively.

To create a package collection:

- 1 Choose Tools | Package Collection Editor to open the Package Collection editor.
- 2 Click the Add a Package speed button, then select a bpl in the Select Package dialog and click Open. To add more bpls to the collection, click the Add a Package speed button again. A tree diagram on the left side of the Package editor displays the bpls as you add them. To remove a package, select it and click the Remove Package speed button.
- 3 Select the Collection node at the top of the tree diagram. On the right side of the Package Collection editor, two fields will appear:
 - In the Author/Vendor Name edit box, you can enter optional information about your package collection that will appear in the Installation dialog when users install packages.
 - Under Directory List, list the default directories where you want the files in your package collection to be installed. Use the Add, Edit, and Delete buttons to edit this list. For example, suppose you want all source code files to be copied to the same directory. In this case, you might enter `Source` as a Directory Name with `C:\MyPackage\Source` as the Suggested Path. The Installation dialog box will display `C:\MyPackage\Source` as the suggested path for the directory.
- 4 In addition to bpls, your package collection can contain .bpi, .obj, and .cpp (unit) files, documentation, and any other files you want to include with the distribution. Ancillary files are placed in file groups associated with specific packages (bpls); the files in a group are installed only when their associated bpl is installed. To place ancillary files in your package collection, select a bpl in the tree diagram and click the Add File Group speed button; type a name for the file group. Add more file groups, if desired, in the same way. When you select a file group, new fields will appear on the right in the Package Collection editor.
 - In the Install Directory list box, select the directory where you want files in this group to be installed. The drop-down list includes the directories you entered under Directory List in step 3, above.
 - Check the Optional Group check box if you want installation of the files in this group to be optional.
 - Under Include Files, list the files you want to include in this group. Use the Add, Delete, and Auto buttons to edit the list. The Auto button allows you to select all files with specified extensions that are listed in the Contains list of the package; the Package Collection editor uses C++Builder's global Library Path to search for these files.
- 5 You can select installation directories for the packages listed in the Requires list of any package in your collection. When you select a bpl in the tree diagram, four new fields appear on the right side of the Package Collection editor:
 - In the Required Executables list box, select the directory where you want the .bpl files for packages listed in the Requires list to be installed. (The drop-down list includes the directories you entered under Directory List in step 3, above.) The Package Collection Editor searches for these files using C++Builder's global Library Path and lists them under Required Executable Files.

- In the Required Libraries list box, select the directory where you want the .obj and .bpi files for packages listed in the Requires list to be installed. (The drop-down list includes the directories you entered under Directory List in step 3, above.) The Package Collection Editor searches for these files using C++Builder's global Library Path and lists them under Required Library Files.
- 6 To save your package collection source file, choose File | Save. Package collection source files should be saved with the .pce extension.
 - 7 To build your package collection, click the Compile speed button. The Package Collection editor generates a .dpc file with the same name as your source (.pce) file. If you have not yet saved the source file, the editor queries you for a file name before building.

To edit or rebuild an existing .pce file, select File | Open in the Package Collection editor and locate the file you want to work with.

Creating international applications

This chapter discusses guidelines for writing applications that you plan to distribute to an international market. By planning ahead, you can reduce the amount of time and code necessary to make your application function in its foreign market as well as in its domestic market.

Internationalization and localization

To create an application that you can distribute to foreign markets, there are two major steps that need to be performed:

- Internationalization
- Localization

If your edition of C++Builder includes the Translation Tools, you can use them to manage localization. For more information, see the online Help for the Translation Tools (ETM.hlp).

Internationalization

Internationalization is the process of enabling your program to work in multiple locales. A locale is the user's environment, which includes the cultural conventions of the target country as well as the language. Windows supports a large set of locales, each of which is described by a language and country pair.

Localization

Localization is the process of translating an application so that it functions in a specific locale. In addition to translating the user interface, localization may include functionality customization. For example, a financial application may be modified for the tax laws in different countries.

Internationalizing applications

You need to complete the following steps to create internationalized applications:

- Enable your code to handle strings from international character sets.
- Design your user interface to accommodate the changes that result from localization.
- Isolate all resources that need to be localized.

Enabling application code

You must make sure that the code in your application can handle the strings it will encounter in the various target locales.

Character sets

The Western editions (including English, French, and German) of Windows use the ANSI Latin-1 (1252) character set. However, other editions of Windows use different character sets. For example, the Japanese version of Windows uses the Shift-JIS character set (code page 932), which represents Japanese characters as multibyte character codes.

There are generally three types of characters sets:

- Single-byte
- Multibyte
- Wide characters

Windows and Linux both support single-byte and multibyte character sets as well as Unicode. With a single-byte character set, each byte in a string represents one character. The ANSI character set used by many western operating systems is a single-byte character set.

In a multibyte character set, some characters are represented by one byte and others by more than one byte. The first byte of a multibyte character is called the lead byte. In general, the lower 128 characters of a multibyte character set map to the 7-bit ASCII characters, and any byte whose ordinal value is greater than 127 is the lead byte of a multibyte character. Only single-byte characters can contain the null value (#0). Multibyte character sets—especially double-byte character sets (DBCS)—are widely used for Asian languages.

OEM and ANSI character sets

It is sometimes necessary to convert between the Windows character set (ANSI) and the character set specified by the code page of the user's machine (called the OEM character set).

Multibyte character sets

The ideographic character sets used in Asia cannot use the simple 1:1 mapping between characters in the language and the one byte (8-bit) *char* type. These languages have too many characters to be represented using the single-byte *char*. Instead, a multibyte string can contain one or more bytes per character. *AnsiStrings* can contain a mix of single-byte and multibyte characters.

The lead byte of every multibyte character code is taken from a reserved range that depends on the specific character set. The second and subsequent bytes can sometimes be the same as the character code for a separate one-byte character, or it can fall in the range reserved for the first byte of multibyte characters. Thus, the only way to tell whether a particular byte in a string represents a single character or is part of a multibyte character is to read the string, starting at the beginning, parsing it into two or more byte characters when a lead byte from the reserved range is encountered.

When writing code for Asian locales, you must be sure to handle all string manipulation using functions that are enabled to parse strings into multibyte characters. See “International API” and “MBCS utilities” in the online Help for a list of the RTL functions that are enabled to work with multibyte characters.

Remember that the length of the strings in bytes does not necessarily correspond to the length of the string in characters. Be careful not to truncate strings by cutting a multibyte character in half. Do not pass characters as a parameter to a function or procedure, since the size of a character can’t be known up front. Instead, always pass a pointer to a character or a string.

Wide characters

Another approach to working with ideographic character sets is to convert all characters to a wide character encoding scheme such as Unicode. Unicode characters and strings are also called wide characters and wide character strings. In the Unicode character set, each character is represented by two bytes. Thus a Unicode string is a sequence not of individual bytes but of two-byte words.

The first 256 Unicode characters map to the ANSI character set. The Windows operating system supports Unicode (UCS-2). The Linux operating system supports UCS-4, a superset of UCS-2. C++Builder supports UCS-2 on both platforms. Because wide characters are two bytes instead of one, the character set can represent many more different characters.

Using a wide character encoding scheme has the advantage that you can make many of the usual assumptions about strings that do not work for MBCS systems. There is a direct relationship between the number of bytes in the string and the number of characters in the string. You do not need to worry about cutting characters in half or mistaking the second half of a character for the start of a different character.

The biggest disadvantage of working with wide characters is that Windows supports a few wide character API function calls. Because of this, the VCL components represent all string values as single byte or MBCS strings. Translating between the wide character system and the MBCS system every time you set a string property or read its value would require additional code and slow your application down.

However, you may want to translate into wide characters for some special string processing algorithms that need to take advantage of the 1:1 mapping between characters and *WideChars*.

See “International API” in the online help for a list of the RTL functions that are enabled to work with Unicode characters.

Including bi-directional functionality in applications

Some languages do not follow the left to right reading order commonly found in western languages, but rather read words right to left and numbers left to right. These languages are termed bi-directional (BiDi) because of this separation. The most common bi-directional languages are Arabic and Hebrew, although other Middle East languages are also bi-directional.

TApplication has two properties, *BiDiKeyboard* and *NonBiDiKeyboard*, that allow you to specify the keyboard layout. In addition, the VCL supports bi-directional localization through the *BiDiMode* and *ParentBiDiMode* properties. The following table lists VCL objects that have these properties:

Table 16.1 VCL objects that support BiDi

| Component palette page | VCL object |
|------------------------|--------------------|
| Standard | TButton |
| | TCheckBox |
| | TComboBox |
| | TEdit |
| | TGroupBox |
| | TLabel |
| | TListBox |
| | TMainMenu |
| | TMemo |
| | TPanel |
| | TPopupMenu |
| | TRadioButton |
| | TRadioGroup |
| | TScrollBar |
| Additional | TActionMainMenuBar |
| | TActionToolBar |
| | TBitBtn |
| | TCheckListBox |
| | TColorBox |
| | TDrawGrid |
| | TLabeledEdit |
| | TMaskEdit |
| | TScrollBar |
| | TSpeedButton |
| | TStaticLabel |

Table 16.1 VCL objects that support BiDi (continued)

| Component palette page | VCL object |
|------------------------|--|
| Win32 | TStaticText |
| | TStringGrid |
| | TValueListEditor |
| | TComboBoxEx |
| | TDateTimePicker |
| | THeaderControl |
| | THotKey |
| | TListView |
| | TMonthCalendar |
| | TPageControl |
| | TRichEdit |
| | TStatusBar |
| Data Controls | TTabControl |
| | TTreeView |
| | TDBCheckBox |
| | TDBComboBox |
| | TDBEdit |
| | TDBGrid |
| | TDBListBox |
| | TDBLookupComboBox |
| | TDBLookupListBox |
| | TDBMemo |
| QReport | TDBRadioGroup |
| | TDBRichEdit |
| | TDBText |
| | TQRDBText |
| | TQRExpr |
| | TQRLabel |
| | TQRMemo |
| Other classes | TQRPreview |
| | TQRSysData |
| | TApplication (has no <i>ParentBiDiMode</i>) |
| | TBoundLabel |
| | TControl (has no <i>ParentBiDiMode</i>) |
| | TCustomHeaderControl (has no <i>ParentBiDiMode</i>) |
| | TForm |
| | TFrame |
| | THeaderSection |
| | THintWindow (has no <i>ParentBiDiMode</i>) |
| | TMenu |
| | TStatusPanel |

Note *THintWindow* picks up the *BiDiMode* of the control that activated the hint.

Bi-directional properties

The objects listed in Table 16.1, “VCL objects that support BiDi,” on page 16-4 have the properties *BiDiMode* and *ParentBiDiMode*. These properties, along with *TApplication's BiDiKeyboard* and *NonBiDiKeyboard*, support bi-directional localization.

Note Bi-directional properties are not available in CLX for cross-platform programming.

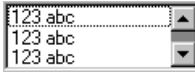
BiDiMode property

The property *BiDiMode* is a new enumerated type, *TBiDiMode*, with four states: *bdLeftToRight*, *bdRightToLeft*, *bdRightToLeftNoAlign*, and *bdRightToLeftReadingOnly*.

bdLeftToRight

bdLeftToRight draws text using left to right reading order. The alignment and scroll bars are not changed. For instance, when entering right to left text, such as Arabic or Hebrew, the cursor goes into push mode and the text is entered right to left. Latin text, such as English or French, is entered left to right. *bdLeftToRight* is the default value.

Figure 16.1 TListBox set to *bdLeftToRight*



bdRightToLeft

bdRightToLeft draws text using right to left reading order, the alignment is changed and the scroll bar is moved. Text is entered as normal for right-to-left languages such as Arabic or Hebrew. When the keyboard is changed to a Latin language, the cursor goes into push mode and the text is entered left to right.

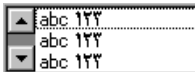
Figure 16.2 TListBox set to *bdRightToLeft*



bdRightToLeftNoAlign

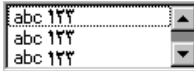
bdRightToLeftNoAlign draws text using right to left reading order, the alignment is not changed, and the scroll bar is moved.

Figure 16.3 TListBox set to *bdRightToLeftNoAlign*



bdRightToLeftReadingOnly

bdRightToLeftReadingOnly draws text using right to left reading order, and the alignment and scroll bars are not changed.

Figure 16.4 TListBox set to bdRightToLeftReadingOnly

ParentBiDiMode property

ParentBiDiMode is a Boolean property. When **true** (the default) the control looks to its parent to determine what *BiDiMode* to use. If the control is a *TForm* object, the form uses the *BiDiMode* setting from *Application*. If all the *ParentBiDiMode* properties are **true**, when you change *Application's* *BiDiMode* property, all forms and controls in the project are updated with the new setting.

FlipChildren method

The *FlipChildren* method allows you to flip the position of a container control's children. Container controls are controls that can accept other controls, such as *TForm*, *TPanel*, and *TGroupBox*. *FlipChildren* has a single boolean parameter, *AllLevels*. When **false**, only the immediate children of the container control are flipped. When **true**, all the levels of children in the container control are flipped.

C++Builder flips the controls by changing the Left property and the alignment of the control. If a control's left side is five pixels from the left edge of its parent control, after it is flipped the edit control's right side is five pixels from the right edge of the parent control. If the edit control is left aligned, calling *FlipChildren* will make the control right aligned.

To flip a control at design-time select Edit | Flip Children and select either All or Selected, depending on whether you want to flip all the controls, or just the children of the selected control. You can also flip a control by selecting the control on the form, right-clicking, and selecting Flip Children from the context menu.

Note Selecting an edit control and issuing a Flip Children | Selected command does nothing. This is because edit controls are not containers.

Additional methods

There are several other methods useful for developing applications for bi-directional users.

Table 16.2 VCL methods that support BiDi

| Method | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| OkToChangeFieldAlignment | Used with database controls. Checks to see if the alignment of a control can be changed. |
| DBUseRightToLeftAlignment | A wrapper for database controls for checking alignment. |
| ChangeBiDiModeAlignment | Changes the alignment parameter passed to it. No check is done for <i>BiDiMode</i> setting, it just converts left alignment into right alignment and vice versa, leaving center-aligned controls alone. |
| IsRightToLeft | Returns true if any of the right to left options are selected. If it returns false the control is in left to right mode. |

Table 16.2 VCL methods that support BiDi (continued)

| Method | Description |
|----------------------------------|---|
| UseRightToLeftReading | Returns true if the control is using right to left reading. |
| UseRightToLeftAlignment | Returns true if the control is using right to left alignment. It can be overridden for customization. |
| UseRightToLeftScrollBar | Returns true if the control is using a left scroll bar. |
| DrawTextBiDiModeFlags | Returns the correct draw text flags for the <i>BiDiMode</i> of the control. |
| DrawTextBiDiModeFlagsReadingOnly | Returns the correct draw text flags for the <i>BiDiMode</i> of the control, limiting the flag to its reading order. |
| AddBiDiModeExStyle | Adds the appropriate <i>ExStyle</i> flags to the control that is being created. |

Locale-specific features

You can add extra features to your application for specific locales. In particular, for Asian language environments, you may want your application to control the input method editor (IME) that is used to convert the keystrokes typed by the user into character strings.

VCL and CLX components offer support in programming the IME. Most windowed controls that work directly with text input have an *ImeName* property that allows you to specify a particular IME that should be used when the control has input focus. They also provide an *ImeMode* property that specifies how the IME should convert keyboard input. *TWinControl* introduces several protected methods that you can use to control the IME from classes you define. In addition, the global *Screen* variable provides information about the IMEs available on the user's system.

The global *Screen* variable (available in VCL and CLX) also provides information about the keyboard mapping installed on the user's system. You can use this to obtain locale-specific information about the environment in which your application is running.

Designing the user interface

When creating an application for several foreign markets, it is important to design your user interface so that it can accommodate the changes that occur during translation.

Text

All text that appears in the user interface must be translated. English text is almost always shorter than its translations. Design the elements of your user interface that display text so that there is room for the text strings to grow. Create dialogs, menus, status bars, and other user interface elements that display text so that they can easily display longer strings. Avoid abbreviations—they do not exist in languages that use ideographic characters.

Short strings tend to grow in translation more than long phrases. Table 16.3 provides a rough estimate of how much expansion you should plan for given the length of your English strings:

Table 16.3 Estimating string lengths

| Length of English string (in characters) | Expected increase |
|--|-------------------|
| 1-5 | 100% |
| 6-12 | 80% |
| 13-20 | 60% |
| 21-30 | 40% |
| 31-50 | 20% |
| over 50 | 10% |

Graphic images

Ideally, you will want to use images that do not require translation. Most obviously, this means that graphic images should not include text, which will always require translation. If you must include text in your images, it is a good idea to use a label object with a transparent background over an image rather than including the text as part of the image.

There are other considerations when creating graphic images. Try to avoid images that are specific to a particular culture. For example, mailboxes in different countries look very different from each other. Religious symbols are not appropriate if your application is intended for countries that have different dominant religions. Even color can have different symbolic connotations in different cultures.

Formats and sort order

The date, time, number, and currency formats used in your application should be localized for the target locale. If you use only the Windows formats, there is no need to translate formats, as these are taken from the user's Windows Registry. However, if you specify any of your own format strings, be sure to declare them as resourced constants so that they can be localized.

The order in which strings are sorted also varies from country to country. Many European languages include diacritical marks that are sorted differently, depending on the locale. In addition, in some countries, two-character combinations are treated as a single character in the sort order. For example, in Spanish, the combination *ch* is sorted like a single unique letter between *c* and *d*. Sometimes a single character is sorted as if it were two separate characters, such as the German *eszett*.

Keyboard mappings

Be careful with key-combinations shortcut assignments. Not all the characters available on the US keyboard are easily reproduced on all international keyboards. Where possible, use number keys and function keys for shortcuts, as these are available on virtually all keyboards.

Isolating resources

The most obvious task in localizing an application is translating the strings that appear in the user interface. To create an application that can be translated without altering code everywhere, the strings in the user interface should be isolated into a single module. C++Builder automatically creates a .dfm (.xfrm in CLX applications) file that contains the resources for your menus, dialogs, and bitmaps.

In addition to these obvious user interface elements, you will need to isolate any strings, such as error messages, that you present to the user. String resources are not included in the form file but you can isolate them into an .RC file.

Creating resource DLLs

Isolating resources simplifies the translation process. The next level of resource separation is the creation of a resource DLL. A resource DLL contains all the resources and only the resources for a program. Resource DLLs allow you to create a program that supports many translations simply by swapping the resource DLL.

Use the Resource DLL wizard to create a resource DLL for your program. The Resource DLL wizard requires an open, saved, compiled project. It will create an RC file that contains the string tables from used RC files and **resourcestring** strings of the project, and generate a project for a resource only DLL that contains the relevant forms and the created RES file. The RES file is compiled from the new RC file.

You should create a resource DLL for each translation you want to support. Each resource DLL should have a file name extension specific to the target locale. The first two characters indicate the target language, and the third character indicates the country of the locale. If you use the Resource DLL wizard, this is handled for you. Otherwise, use the following code to obtain the locale code for the target translation:

```
/* This callback fills a listbox with the strings and their associated languages and
countries*/
BOOL __stdcall EnumLocalesProc(char* lpLocaleString)
{
    AnsiString LocaleName, LanguageName, CountryName;
    LCID lcid;
    lcid = StrToInt("$" + AnsiString(lpLocaleString));
    LocaleName = GetLocaleStr(lcid, LOCALE_SABBREVLANGNAME, "");
    LanguageName = GetLocaleStr(lcid, LOCALE_SNATIVELANGNAME, "");
    CountryName = GetLocaleStr(lcid, LOCALE_SNATIVECTRYNAME, "");
    if (lstrlen(LocaleName.c_str()) > 0)
        Form1->ListBox1->Items->Add(LocaleName + ":" + LanguageName + "-" + CountryName);
    return TRUE;
}
/* This call causes the callback to execute for every locale */
EnumSystemLocales((LOCALE_ENUMPROC)EnumLocalesProc, LCID_SUPPORTED);
```

Using resource DLLs

The executable, DLLs, and packages (bpls) that make up your application contain all the necessary resources. However, to replace those resources by localized versions, you need only ship your application with localized resource DLLs that have the same name as your executable, DLL, or package files.

When your application starts up, it checks the locale of the local system. If it finds any resource DLLs with the same name as the EXE, DLL, or BPL files it is using, it checks the extension on those DLLs. If the extension of the resource module matches the language and country of the system locale, your application will use the resources in that resource module instead of the resources in the executable, DLL, or package. If there is not a resource module that matches both the language and the country, your application will try to locate a resource module that matches just the language. If there is no resource module that matches the language, your application will use the resources compiled with the executable, DLL, or package.

If you want your application to use a different resource module than the one that matches the locale of the local system, you can set a locale override entry in the Windows registry. Under the HKEY_CURRENT_USER\Software\Borland\Locales key, add your application's path and file name as a string value and set the data value to the extension of your resource DLLs. At startup, the application will look for resource DLLs with this extension before trying the system locale. Setting this registry entry allows you to test localized versions of your application without changing the locale on your system.

For example, the following procedure can be used in an install or setup program to set the registry key value that indicates the locale to use when loading C++Builder applications:

```
void SetLocalOverrides(char* FileName, char* LocaleOverride)
{
    HKEY Key;
    const char* LocaleOverrideKey = "Software\\Borland\\Locales";
    if (RegOpenKeyEx(HKEY_CURRENT_USER, LocaleOverrideKey, 0, KEY_ALL_ACCESS, &Key)
        == ERROR_SUCCESS) {
        if (lstrlen(LocaleOverride) == 3)
            RegSetValueEx(Key, FileName, 0, REG_SZ, (const BYTE*)LocaleOverride, 4);
        RegCloseKey(Key);
    }
}
```

Within your application, use the global *FindResourceHInstance* function to obtain the handle of the current resource module. For example:

```
LoadString(FindResourceHInstance(HInstance), IDS_AmountDueName, szQuery, sizeof(szQuery));
```

You can ship a single application that adapts itself automatically to the locale of the system it is running on, simply by providing the appropriate resource DLLs.

Dynamic switching of resource DLLs

In addition to locating a resource DLL at application startup, it is possible to switch resource DLLs dynamically at runtime. To add this functionality to your own applications, you need to include the ReInit unit in your project. (ReInit is located in the Richedit sample in the Examples directory.) To switch languages, you should call *LoadResourceModule*, passing the LCID for the new language, and then call *ReinitializeForms*.

For example, the following code switches the interface language to French:

```
const FRENCH = (SUBLANG_FRENCH << 10) | LANG_FRENCH;
if (LoadNewResourceModule(FRENCH))
    ReinitializeForms();
```

The advantage of this technique is that the current instance of the application and all of its forms are used. It is not necessary to update the registry settings and restart the application or re-acquire resources required by the application, such as logging in to database servers.

When you switch resource DLLs the properties specified in the new DLL overwrite the properties in the running instances of the forms.

Note Any changes made to the form properties at runtime will be lost. Once the new DLL is loaded, default values are not reset. Avoid code that assumes that the form objects are reinitialized to the their startup state, apart from differences due to localization.

Localizing applications

Once your application is internationalized, you can create localized versions for the different foreign markets in which you want to distribute it.

Localizing resources

Ideally, your resources have been isolated into a resource DLL that contains form files (.dfm in VCL or .xfm in CLX) and a resource file. You can open your forms in the IDE and translate the relevant properties.

Note In a resource DLL project, you cannot add or delete components. It is possible, however, to change properties in ways that could cause runtime errors, so be careful to modify only those properties that require translation. To avoid mistakes, you can configure the Object Inspector to display only Localizable properties; to do so, right-click in the Object Inspector and use the View menu to filter out unwanted property categories.

You can open the RC file and translate relevant strings. Use the StringTable editor by opening the RC file from the Project Manager.

Deploying applications

Once your C++Builder application is up and running, you can deploy it. That is, you can make it available for others to run. A number of steps must be taken to deploy an application to another computer so that the application is completely functional. What is required by a given application varies, depending on the type of application. The following sections describe considerations when deploying different types of applications:

- Deploying general applications
- Deploying CLX applications
- Deploying database applications
- Deploying Web applications
- Programming for varying host environments
- Software license requirements

Note Information included in these sections is for deploying applications on Windows.

Deploying general applications

Beyond the executable file, an application may require a number of supporting files, such as DLLs, package files, and helper applications. In addition, the Windows registry may need to contain entries for an application, from specifying the location of supporting files to simple program settings. The process of copying an application's files to a computer and making any needed registry settings can be automated by an installation program, such as InstallShield Express. These are the main deployment concerns common to nearly all types of applications:

- Using installation programs
- Identifying application files

C++Builder applications that access databases and those that run across the Web require additional installation steps beyond those that apply to general applications. For additional information on installing database applications, see “Deploying database applications” on page 17-6. For more information on installing Web applications, see “Deploying Web applications” on page 17-10. For more information on installing ActiveX controls, see “Deploying an ActiveX control on the Web” on page 43-16. For information on deploying CORBA applications, see the *VisiBroker Installation and Administration Guide*.

Using installation programs

Simple C++Builder applications that consist of only an executable file are easy to install on a target computer. Just copy the executable file onto the computer. However, more complex applications that comprise multiple files require more extensive installation procedures. These applications require dedicated installation programs.

Setup toolkits automate the process of creating installation programs, often without needing to write any code. Installation programs created with Setup toolkits perform various tasks inherent to installing C++Builder applications, including: copying the executable and supporting files to the host computer, making Windows registry entries, and installing the Borland Database Engine for BDE database applications.

InstallShield Express is a setup toolkit that is bundled with C++Builder. InstallShield Express is certified for use with C++Builder and the Borland Database Engine. It is based on Windows Installer (MSI) technology.

InstallShield Express is not automatically installed when C++Builder is installed, so it must be manually installed if you want to use it to create installation programs. Run the installation program from the C++Builder CD to install InstallShield Express. For more information on using InstallShield Express to create installation programs, see the InstallShield Express online help.

Other setup toolkits are available. However, if deploying BDE database applications, you should only use toolkits based on MSI technology and those which are certified to deploy the Borland Database Engine.

Identifying application files

Besides the executable file, a number of other files may need to be distributed with an application.

- Application files
- Package files
- Merge modules
- ActiveX controls

Application files

The following types of files may need to be distributed with an application.

Table 17.1 Application files

| Type | File name extension |
|-------------------|--|
| Program files | .exe and .dll |
| Package files | .bpl, .bpi, and .lib |
| Help files | .hlp, .cnt, and .toc (if used) or any other Help files your application supports |
| ActiveX files | .ocx (sometimes supported by a DLL) |
| Local table files | .dbf, .mdx, .dbt, .ndx, .db, .px, .y*, .x*, .mb, .val, .qbe, .gd* |

Package files

If the application uses runtime packages, those package files need to be distributed with the application. InstallShield Express handles the installation of package files the same as DLLs, copying the files and making necessary entries in the Windows registry. You can also use merge modules for deploying runtime packages with MSI-based setup tools including InstallShield Express. See the next section for details.

Borland recommends installing the runtime package files supplied by Borland in the Windows\System directory. This serves as a common location so that multiple applications would have access to a single instance of the files. For packages you created, it is recommended that you install them in the same directory as the application. Only the .bpl files need to be distributed.

Note If deploying packages with CLX applications, you need to include clx60.bpl rather than vcl60.bpl.

If you are distributing packages to other developers, supply the .bpl, .bpi, and .lib (if allowing static linking to your packages) files.

Merge modules

InstallShield Express 3.0 is based on Windows Installer (MSI) technology. That is why C++Builder includes merge modules. Merge modules provide a standard method that you can use to deliver shared code, files, resources, Registry entries, and setup logic to applications as a single compound file. You can use merge modules for deploying runtime packages with MSI-based setup tools including InstallShield Express.

The runtime libraries have some interdependencies because of the way they are grouped together. The result of this is that when one package is added to an install project, the install tool automatically adds or reports a dependency on one or more other packages. For example, if you add the VCLInternet merge module to an install project, the install tool should also automatically add or report a dependency on the VCLDatabase and StandardVCL modules.

The dependencies for each merge module are listed in the table below. The various install tools may react to these dependencies differently. The InstallShield for Windows Installer automatically adds the required modules if it can find them.

Other tools may simply report a dependency or may generate a build failure if all required modules are not included in the project.

Table 17.2 Merge modules and their dependencies

| Merge module | BPLs included | Dependencies |
|------------------------|--|--|
| ADO | adortl60.bpl | DatabaseRTL, BaseRTL |
| BaseClientDataSet | cds60.bpl | DatabaseRTL, BaseRTL, DataSnap, dbExpress |
| BaseRTL | rtl60.bpl | No dependencies |
| BaseVCL | vcl60.bpl, vclx60.bpl | BaseRTL |
| BDEClientDataSet | bdecds60.bpl | BaseClientDataSet, DataBaseRTL, BaseRTL, DataSnap, dbExpress, BDERTL |
| BDEInternet | inetdbbde60.bpl | Internet, DatabaseRTL, BaseRTL, BDERTL |
| BDERTL | bdertl60.bpl | DatabaseRTL, BaseRTL |
| DatabaseRTL | dbrtl60.bpl | BaseRTL |
| DatabaseVCL | vcldb60.bpl | BaseVCL, DatabaseRTL, BaseRTL |
| DataSnap | dsn60.bpl | DatabaseRTL, BaseRTL |
| DataSnapConnection | dsncon60.bpl | DataSnap, DatabaseRTL, BaseRTL |
| DataSnapCorba | dsnacrba60.bpl | DataSnapConnection, DataSnap, DatabaseRTL, BaseRTL, BaseVCL |
| DataSnapEntera | dsnapent60.bpl | DataSnap, DatabaseRTL, BaseRTL, BaseVCL |
| DBCompatVCL | vcldbx60.bpl | DatabaseVCL, BaseVCL, BaseRTL, DatabaseRTL |
| dbExpress | dbexpress60.bpl | DatabaseRTL, BaseRTL |
| dbExpressClientDataSet | dbxcds60.bpl | BaseClientDataSet, DataBaseRTL, BaseRTL, DataSnap, dbExpress |
| DBXInternet | inetdbxpress60.bpl | Internet, DatabaseRTL, BaseRTL, dbExpress, DatabaseVCL, BaseVCL |
| DecisionCube | dss60.bpl | TeeChart, BaseVCL, BaseRTL, DatabaseVCL, DatabaseRTL, BDERTL |
| FastNet | nmfast60.bpl | BaseVCL, BaseRTL |
| InterbaseVCL | ibxpress60.bpl | BaseClientDataSet, BaseRTL, BaseVCL, DatabaseRTL, DatabaseVCL, DataSnap, dbExpress |
| Internet | inet60.bpl, inetdb60.bpl | DatabaseRTL, BaseRTL |
| InternetDirect | indy60.bpl | BaseVCL, BaseRTL |
| Office2000Components | dclooffice2k60.bpl | DatabaseVCL, BaseVCL, DatabaseRTL, BaseRTL |
| QuickReport | qrpt60.bpl | BaseVCL, BaseRTL, BDERTL, DatabaseRTL |
| SampleVCL | vclsmp60.bpl | BaseVCL, BaseRTL |
| TeeChart | tee60.bpl, teedb60.bpl, teeqr60.bpl, teeui60.bpl | BaseVCL, BaseRTL |
| VCLIE | vclie60.bpl | BaseVCL, BaseRTL |
| VisualCLX | visualclx60.bpl | BaseRTL |

Table 17.2 Merge modules and their dependencies (continued)

| Merge module | BPLs included | Dependencies |
|--------------|--------------------------------|--|
| VisualDBCLX | visualdbclx60.bpl | BaseRTL, DatabaseRTL, VisualCLX |
| WebDataSnap | webdsnap60.bpl | XMLRTL, Internet, DataSnapConnection, DataSnap, DatabaseRTL, BaseRTL |
| WebSnap | websnap60.bpl, vcljpg60.bpl | WebDataSnap, XMLRTL, Internet, DataSnapConnection, DataSnap, DatabaseRTL, BaseRTL, BaseVCL |
| XMLRTL | xmrltl60.bpl | Internet, DatabaseRTL, BaseRTL |

ActiveX controls

Certain components bundled with C++Builder are ActiveX controls. The component wrapper is linked into the application's executable file (or a runtime package), but the .ocx file for the component also needs to be deployed with the application. These components include:

- Chart FX, copyright SoftwareFX Inc.
- VisualSpeller Control, copyright Visual Components, Inc.
- Formula One (spreadsheet), copyright Visual Components, Inc.
- First Impression (VtChart), copyright Visual Components, Inc.
- Graph Custom Control, copyright Bits Per Second Ltd.

ActiveX controls that you create need to be registered on the deployment computer before use. Installation programs such as InstallShield Express automate this registration process. To manually register an ActiveX control, choose Run | ActiveX Server in the IDE, use the TRegSvr demo application or use the Microsoft utility REGSRV32.EXE (not included with Windows 9x versions).

DLLs that support an ActiveX control also need to be distributed with an application.

Helper applications

Helper applications are separate programs without which your C++Builder application would be partially or completely unable to function. Helper applications may be those supplied with the operating system, by Borland, or they might be third-party products. An example of a helper application is the InterBase utility program Server Manager, which administers InterBase databases, users, and security.

If an application depends on a helper program, be sure to deploy it with your application, where possible. Distribution of helper programs may be governed by redistribution license agreements. Consult the documentation for the helper for specific information.

DLL locations

You can install DLL files used only by a single application in the same directory as the application. DLLs that will be used by a number of applications should be installed in a location accessible to all of those applications. A common convention for locating such community DLLs is to place them either in the Windows or the Windows\System directory. A better way is to create a dedicated directory for the common .DLL files, similar to the way the Borland Database Engine is installed.

Deploying CLX applications

To deploy a CLX application on Windows, follow the same steps as those for general applications. For information on deploying general applications, see “Deploying general applications” on page 17-1. For information on installing database CLX applications, see “Deploying database applications” on page 17-6.

you need to include `qntntf.dll` with the application to include the CLX runtime. If deploying packages with CLX applications, you need to include `clx60.bpl` rather than `vcl60.bpl`.

See Chapter 14, “Developing cross-platform applications” for information on writing CLX applications.

Deploying database applications

Applications that access databases involve special installation considerations beyond copying the application’s executable file onto the host computer. Database access is most often handled by a separate database engine, the files of which cannot be linked into the application’s executable file. The data files, when not created beforehand, must be made available to the application. Multi-tier database applications require even more specialized handling on installation, because the files that make up the application are typically located on multiple computers.

Since several different database technologies (ADO, BDE, dbExpress, and InterBase Express) are supported, deployment requirements differ for each. Regardless of which you are using, you need to make sure that the client-side software is installed on the system where you plan to run the database application. ADO, BDE, dbExpress, and InterBase Express also require drivers to interact with the client-side software of the database.

Specific information on how to deploy dbExpress, BDE, and multi-tiered database applications is described in the following sections:

- Deploying dbExpress database applications.
- Deploying BDE applications.
- Deploying multi-tiered database applications (DataSnap).

Database applications that use client datasets such as *TClientDataSet* or dataset providers require you to include `midaslib.dcu` and `crtl.dcu` (for static linking when providing a stand-alone executable); if you are packaging your application (with the executable and any needed DLLs), you need to include `Midas.dll`.

If deploying database applications that use ADO, you need to be sure that MDAC version 2.1 or later is installed on the system where you plan to run the application. MDAC is automatically installed with software such as Windows 2000 and Internet Explorer version 5 or later. You also need to be sure the drivers for the database server you want to connect to are installed on the client. No other deployment steps are required.

If deploying database applications that use InterBase Express, you need to be sure that the InterBase client is installed on the system where you plan to run the application. InterBase requires `gd32.dll` and `interbase.msg` to be located in an accessible directory. No other deployment steps are required. InterBase Express components communicate directly with the InterBase Client API and do not require additional drivers. For more information, refer to the Embedded Installation Guide posted on the Borland Web site.

In addition to the technologies described here, you can also use third-party database engines to provide database access for C++Builder applications. Consult the documentation or vendor for the database engine regarding redistribution rights, installation, and configuration.

Deploying dbExpress database applications

dbExpress is a set of thin, native drivers that provide fast access to database information. dbExpress support cross-platform development because they are also available on Linux. Refer to Chapter 26, “Using unidirectional datasets” for more information about using the dbExpress components.

You can deploy dbExpress applications either as a stand-alone executable file or as an executable file that includes associated dbExpress driver DLLs.

To deploy dbExpress applications as stand-alone executable files, the dbExpress object files must be statically linked into your executable. You do this by including the following DCUs, located in the `lib` directory:

Table 17.3 dbExpress deployment as stand-alone executable

| Database unit | When to include |
|---------------|--|
| dbExpINT | Applications connecting to InterBase databases |
| dbExpORA | Applications connecting to Oracle databases |
| dbExpDB2 | Applications connecting to DB2 databases |
| dbExpMYS | Applications connecting to MySQL 3.22.x databases |
| dbExpMYSQL | Applications connecting to MySQL 3.23.x databases |
| crtl | Required by all executables that use dbExpress |
| MidasLib | Required by dbExpress executables that use client datasets such as <i>TClientDataSet</i> |

Note For database applications using Informix, you cannot deploy a stand-alone executable. Instead, deploy an executable file with the driver DLL `dbexpinf.dll` (listed in the table following).

If you are not deploying a stand-alone executable, you can deploy associated dbExpress drivers and DataSnap DLLs with your executable. The following table lists the appropriate DLLs and when to include them:

Table 17.4 dbExpress deployment with driver DLLs

| Database DLL | When to deploy |
|----------------|--|
| dbexpinf.dll | Applications connecting to Informix databases |
| dbexpint.dll | Applications connecting to InterBase databases |
| dbexpora.dll | Applications connecting to Oracle databases |
| dbexpdb2.dll | Applications connecting to DB2 databases |
| dbexpmys.dll | Applications connecting to MySQL 3.22.x databases |
| dbexpmysql.dll | Applications connecting to MySQL 3.23.x databases |
| Midas.dll | Required by database applications that use client datasets |

Deploying BDE applications

The Borland Database Engine (BDE) defines a large API for interacting with databases. Of all the data access mechanisms, the BDE supports the broadest range of functions and comes with the most supporting utilities. It is the best way to work with data in Paradox or dBASE tables.

Database access for an application is provided by various database engines. An application can use the BDE or a third-party database engine. SQL Links is provided (not available in all editions) to enable native access to SQL database systems. The following sections describe installation of the database access elements of an application:

- Borland Database Engine
- SQL Links

Borland Database Engine

For standard C++Builder data components to have database access, the Borland Database Engine (BDE) must be present and accessible. See the BDEDEPLOY document for specific rights and limitations on redistributing the BDE.

Borland recommends use of InstallShield Express (or other certified installation program) for installing the BDE. InstallShield Express will create the necessary registry entries and define any aliases the application may require. Using a certified installation program to deploy the BDE files and subsets is important because:

- Improper installation of the BDE or BDE subsets can cause other applications using the BDE to fail. Such applications include not only Borland products, but many third-party programs that use the BDE.
- Under 32-bit Windows 95/NT and later, BDE configuration information is stored in the Windows registry instead of .ini files, as was the case under 16-bit Windows. Making the correct entries and deletions for install and uninstall is a complex task.

It is possible to install only as much of the BDE as an application actually needs. For instance, if an application only uses Paradox tables, it is only necessary to install that portion of the BDE required to access Paradox tables. This reduces the disk space needed for an application. Certified installation programs, like InstallShield Express, are capable of performing partial BDE installations. Be sure to leave BDE system files that are not used by the deployed application, but that are needed by other programs.

SQL Links

SQL Links provides the drivers that connect an application (through the Borland Database Engine) with the client software for an SQL database. See the DEPLOY document for specific rights and limitations on redistributing SQL Links. As is the case with the Borland Database Engine (BDE), SQL Links must be deployed using InstallShield Express (or other certified installation program).

Note SQL Links only connects the BDE to the client software, not to the SQL database itself. It is still necessary to install the client software for the SQL database system used. See the documentation for the SQL database system or consult the vendor that supplies it for more information on installing and configuring client software.

Table 17.5 shows the names of the driver and configuration files SQL Links uses to connect to the different SQL database systems. These files come with SQL Links and are redistributable in accordance with the C++Builder license agreement.

Table 17.5 SQL database client software files

| Vendor | Redistributable files |
|----------------------|--------------------------------|
| Oracle 7 | SQLORA32.DLL and SQL_ORA.CNF |
| Oracle 8 | SQLORA8.DLL and SQL_ORA8.CNF |
| Sybase Db-Lib | SQLSYB32.DLL and SQL_SYB.CNF |
| Sybase Ct-Lib | SQLSSC32.DLL and SQL_SSC.CNF |
| Microsoft SQL Server | SQLMSS32.DLL and SQL_MSS.CNF |
| Informix 7 | SQLINF32.DLL and SQL_INF.CNF |
| Informix 9 | SQLINF9.DLL and SQL_INF9.CNF |
| DB/2 2 | SQLDB232.DLL and SQL_DB2.CNF |
| DB/2 5 | SQLDB2V5.DLL and SQL_DB2V5.CNF |
| InterBase | SQLINT32.DLL and SQL_INT.CNF |

Install SQL Links using InstallShield Express or other certified installation program. For specific information concerning the installation and configuration of SQL Links, see the help file SQLLNK32.HLP, by default installed into the main BDE directory.

Deploying multi-tiered database applications (DataSnap)

DataSnap provides multi-tier database capability to C++Builder applications by allowing client applications to connect to providers in an application server.

Install DataSnap along with a multi-tier application using InstallShield Express (or other Borland-certified installation scripting utility). See the DEPLOY document (found in the main C++Builder directory) for details on the files that need to be redistributed with an application. Also see the REMOTE document for related information on what DataSnap files can be redistributed and how.

Deploying Web applications

Some C++Builder applications are designed to be run over the World Wide Web, such as those in the form of Server-side Extension DLLs (ISAPI and Apache), CGI applications, and ActiveForms.

The steps for deploying Web applications are the same as those for general applications, except the application's files are deployed on the Web server. For information on installing general applications, see "Deploying general applications" on page 17-1. For information on deploying database Web applications, see "Deploying database applications" on page 17-6.

Here are some special considerations for deploying Web applications:

- For BDE database applications, the Borland Database Engine (or alternate database engine) is installed with the application files on the Web server.
- For dbExpress applications, the dbExpress DLLs must be included in the path. If included, the dbExpress driver is installed with the application files on the Web server.
- Security for the directories should be set so that the application can access all needed database files.
- The directory containing an application must have read and execute attributes.
- The application should not use hard-coded paths for accessing database or other files.
- The location of an ActiveX control is indicated by the CODEBASE parameter of the <OBJECT> HTML tag.

Deployment on Apache is described in the next section.

Deploying to Apache servers

WebBroker supports Apache version 1.3.9 and later for DLLs and CGI applications. Apache is configured by files in the conf directory.

If creating Apache DLLs, you need to be sure to set appropriate directives in the Apache server configuration file, called `httpd.conf`. The recommended place to put the `.dll` is in the `Modules` subdirectory of the Apache software.

If creating CGI applications, the physical directory (specified in the `Directory` directive of the `httpd.conf` file) must have the `ExecCGI` option set to allow execution of programs so the CGI script can be executed. To ensure that permissions are set up properly, you need to either use the `ScriptAlias` directive or set `Options ExecCGI` to on.

The `ScriptAlias` directive creates a virtual directory on your server and marks the target directory as containing CGI scripts. For example, you could add the following line to your `httpd.conf` file:

```
ScriptAlias /cgi-bin "c:\inetpub\cgi-bin"
```

This would cause requests such as `/cgi-bin/mycgi` to be satisfied by running the script `c:\inetpub\cgi-bin\mycgi`.

You can also set `Options` to `All` or to `ExecCGI` using the `Directory` directive in `httpd.conf`. The `Options` directive controls which server features are available in a particular directory. `Directory` directives are used to enclose a set of directives that apply to the named directory and its subdirectories. An example of the `Directory` directive is shown below:

```
<Directory <apache-root-dir>\cgi-bin>
    AllowOverride None
    Options ExecCGI
    Order allow,deny
    Allow from all
</Directory>
```

In this example, `Options` is set to `ExecCGI` permitting execution of CGI scripts in the directory `cgi-bin`.

Note Apache executes locally on the server within the account specified in the `User` directive in the `httpd.conf` file. Make sure that the user has the appropriate rights to access the resources needed by the application.

Information concerning the deployment of Apache software can be found in the Apache `LICENSE` file, which is included in the Apache distribution. You can also find configuration information on the Apache Web site at www.apache.org.

Programming for varying host environments

Due to the nature of various operating system environments, there are a number of factors that vary with user preference or configuration. The following factors can affect an application deployed to another computer:

- Screen resolutions and color depths
- Fonts
- Operating systems versions
- Helper applications
- DLL locations

Screen resolutions and color depths

The size of the desktop and number of available colors on a computer is configurable and dependent on the hardware installed. These attributes are also likely to differ on the deployment computer compared to those on the development computer.

An application's appearance (window, object, and font sizes) on computers configured for different screen resolutions can be handled in various ways:

- Design the application for the lowest resolution users will have (typically, 640x480). Take no special actions to dynamically resize objects to make them proportional to the host computer's screen display. Visually, objects will appear smaller the higher the resolution is set.
- Design using any screen resolution on the development computer and, at runtime, dynamically resize all forms and objects proportional to the difference between the screen resolutions for the development and deployment computers (a screen resolution difference ratio).
- Design using any screen resolution on the development computer and, at runtime, dynamically resize only the application's forms. Depending on the location of visual controls on the forms, this may require the forms be scrollable for the user to be able to access all controls on the forms.

Considerations when not dynamically resizing

If the forms and visual controls that make up an application are not dynamically resized at runtime, design the application's elements for the lowest resolution. Otherwise, the forms of an application run on a computer configured for a lower screen resolution than the development computer may overlap the boundaries of the screen.

For example, if the development computer is set up for a screen resolution of 1024x768 and a form is designed with a width of 700 pixels, not all of that form will be visible within the desktop on a computer configured for a 640x480 screen resolution.

Considerations when dynamically resizing forms and controls

If the forms and visual controls for an application are dynamically resized, accommodate all aspects of the resizing process to ensure optimal appearance of the application under all possible screen resolutions. Here are some factors to consider when dynamically resizing the visual elements of an application:

- The resizing of forms and visual controls is done at a ratio calculated by comparing the screen resolution of the development computer to that of the computer onto which the application installed. Use a constant to represent one dimension of the screen resolution on the development computer: either the height or the width, in pixels. Retrieve the same dimension for the user's computer at runtime using the `TScreen::Height` or the `TScreen::Width` property. Divide the value for the development computer by the value for the user's computer to derive the difference ratio between the two computers' screen resolutions.

- Resize the visual elements of the application (forms and controls) by reducing or increasing the size of the elements and their positions on forms. This resizing is proportional to the difference between the screen resolutions on the development and user computers. Resize and reposition visual controls on forms automatically by setting the *TCustomForm::Scaled* property to **true** and calling the *TWinControl::ScaleBy* method (*TWidgetControl.ScaleBy* for cross-platform applications). The *ScaleBy* method does not change the form's height and width, though. Do this manually by multiplying the current values for the *Height* and *Width* properties by the screen resolution difference ratio.
- The controls on a form can be resized manually, instead of automatically with the *TWinControl::ScaleBy* method (*TWidgetControl.ScaleBy* for cross-platform applications), by referencing each visual control in a loop and setting its dimensions and position. The *Height* and *Width* property values for visual controls are multiplied by the screen resolution difference ratio. Reposition visual controls proportional to screen resolution differences by multiplying the *Top* and *Left* property values by the same ratio.
- If an application is designed on a computer configured for a higher screen resolution than that on the user's computer, font sizes will be reduced in the process of proportionally resizing visual controls. If the size of the font at design time is too small, the font as resized at runtime may be unreadable. For example, the default font size for a form is 8. If the development computer has a screen resolution of 1024x768 and the user's computer 640x480, visual control dimensions will be reduced by a factor of 0.625 ($640 / 1024 = 0.625$). The original font size of 8 is reduced to 5 ($8 * 0.625 = 5$). Text in the application appears jagged and unreadable as it is displayed in the reduced font size.
- Some visual controls, such as *TLabel* and *TEdit*, dynamically resize when the size of the font for the control changes. This can affect deployed applications when forms and controls are dynamically resized. The resizing of the control due to font size changes are in addition to size changes due to proportional resizing for screen resolutions. This effect is offset by setting the *AutoSize* property of these controls to **false**.
- Avoid making use of explicit pixel coordinates, such as when drawing directly to a canvas. Instead, modify the coordinates by a ratio proportionate to the screen resolution difference ratio between the development and user computers. For example, if the application draws a rectangle to a canvas ten pixels high by twenty wide, instead multiply the ten and twenty by the screen resolution difference ratio. This ensures that the rectangle visually appears the same size under different screen resolutions.

Accommodating varying color depths

To account for all deployment computers not being configured with the same color availability, the safest way is to use graphics with the least possible number of colors. This is especially true for control glyphs, which should typically use 16-color graphics. For displaying pictures, either provide multiple copies of the images in different resolutions and color depths or explain in the application the minimum resolution and color requirements for the application.

Fonts

Windows comes with a standard set of TrueType and raster fonts. Linux comes with a standard set of fonts, depending on the distribution. When designing an application to be deployed on other computers, realize that not all computers have fonts outside the standard sets.

Text components used in the application should all use fonts that are likely to be available on all deployment computers.

When use of a nonstandard font is absolutely necessary in an application, you need to distribute that font with the application. Either the installation program or the application itself must install the font on the deployment computer. Distribution of third-party fonts may be subject to limitations imposed by the font creator.

Windows has a safety measure to account for attempts to use a font that does not exist on the computer. It substitutes another, existing font that it considers the closest match. While this may circumvent errors concerning missing fonts, the end result may be a degradation of the visual appearance of the application. It is better to prepare for this eventuality at design time.

To make a nonstandard font available to a Windows application, use the Windows API functions *AddFontResource* and *DeleteFontResource*. Deploy the .fot file for the nonstandard font with the application.

Operating systems versions

When using operating system APIs or accessing areas of the operating system from an application, there is the possibility that the function, operation, or area may not be available on computers with different operating system versions.

To account for this possibility, you have a few options:

- Specify in the application's system requirements the versions of the operating system on which the application can run. It is the user's responsibility to install and use the application only under compatible operating system versions.
- Check the version of the operating system as the application is installed. If an incompatible version of the operating system is present, either halt the installation process or at least warn the installer of the problem.
- Check the operating system version at runtime, just prior to executing an operation not applicable to all versions. If an incompatible version of the operating system is present, abort the process and alert the user. Alternately, provide different code to run dependent on different operating system versions.

Note Some operations are performed differently on Windows 95/98 than on Windows NT/2000/XP. Use the Windows API function *GetVersionEx* to determine the Windows version.

Software license requirements

The distribution of some files associated with C++Builder applications is subject to limitations or cannot be redistributed at all. The following documents describe the legal stipulations regarding the distribution of these files:

DEPLOY

The DEPLOY document covers the some of the legal aspects of distributing of various components and utilities, and other product areas that can be part of or associated with a C++Builder application. The DEPLOY document is installed in the main C++Builder directory. The topics covered include:

- .exe, .dll, and .bpl files.
- Components and design-time packages.
- Borland Database Engine (BDE).
- ActiveX controls.
- Sample Images.
- SQL Links.

README

The README document contains last minute information about C++Builder, possibly including information that could affect the redistribution rights for components, or utilities, or other product areas. The README document is installed into the main C++Builder directory.

No-nonsense license agreement

The C++Builder no-nonsense license agreement, a printed document, covers other legal rights and obligations concerning C++Builder.

Third-party product documentation

Redistribution rights for third-party components, utilities, helper applications, database engines, and other products are governed by the vendor supplying the product. Consult the documentation for the product or the vendor for information regarding the redistribution of the product with C++Builder applications prior to distribution.

Developing database applications

The chapters in “Developing Database Applications” present concepts and skills necessary for creating C++Builder database applications.

Note The level of support for building database applications varies depending on your edition of C++Builder. In particular, you must have at least the Professional edition to use client datasets and the Enterprise edition to develop multi-tier database applications.

Designing database applications

Database applications let users interact with information that is stored in databases. Databases provide structure for the information, and allow it to be shared among different applications.

C++Builder provides support for relational database applications. Relational databases organize information into tables, which contain rows (records) and columns (fields). These tables can be manipulated by simple operations known as the relational calculus.

When designing a database application, you must understand how the data is structured. Based on that structure, you can then design a user interface to display data to the user and allow the user to enter new information or modify existing data.

This chapter introduces some common considerations for designing a database application and the decisions involved in designing a user interface.

Using databases

C++Builder includes many components for accessing databases and representing the information they contain. They are grouped according to the data access mechanism:

- The BDE page of the component palette contains components that use the Borland Database Engine (BDE). The BDE defines a large API for interacting with databases. Of all the data access mechanisms, the BDE supports the broadest range of functions and comes with the most supporting utilities. It is the best way to work with data in Paradox or dBASE tables. However, it is also the most complicated mechanism to deploy. For more information about using the BDE components, see Chapter 24, “Using the Borland Database Engine.”
- The ADO page of the component palette contains components that use ActiveX Data Objects (ADO) to access database information through OLEDB. ADO is a Microsoft Standard. There is a broad range of ADO drivers available for connecting to different database servers. Using ADO-based components lets you

integrate your application into an ADO-based environment (for example, making use of ADO-based application servers). For more information about using the ADO components, see Chapter 25, “Working with ADO components.”

- The dbExpress page of the component palette contains components that use dbExpress to access database information. dbExpress is a lightweight set of drivers that provide the fastest access to database information. In addition, dbExpress components support cross-platform development because they are also available on Linux. However, dbExpress database components also support the narrowest range of data manipulation functions. For more information about using the dbExpress components, see Chapter 26, “Using unidirectional datasets.”
- The InterBase page of the Component palette contains components that access InterBase databases directly, without going through a separate engine layer.
- The Data Access page of the component palette contains components that can be used with any data access mechanism. This page includes *TClientDataset*, which can work with data stored on disk or, using the *TDataSetProvider* component also on this page, with components from one of the other groups. For more information about using client datasets, see Chapter 27, “Using client datasets.” For more information about *TDataSetProvider*, see Chapter 28, “Using provider components.”

Note Different versions of C++Builder include different drivers for accessing database servers using the BDE, ADO, or dbExpress.

When designing a database application, you must decide which set of components to use. Each data access mechanism differs in its range of functional support, the ease of deployment, and the availability of drivers to support different database servers.

In addition to choosing a data access mechanism, you must choose a database server. There are different types of databases and you will want to consider the advantages and disadvantages of each type before settling on a particular database server.

All types of databases contain tables which store information. In addition, most (but not all) servers support additional features such as

- Database security
- Transactions
- Referential integrity, stored procedures, and triggers

Types of databases

Relational database servers vary in the way they store information and in the way they allow multiple users to access that information simultaneously. C++Builder provides support for two types of relational database server:

- **Remote database servers** reside on a separate machine. Sometimes, the data from a remote database server does not even reside on a single machine, but is distributed over several servers. Although remote database servers vary in the way they store information, they provide a common logical interface to clients. This common interface is Structured Query Language (SQL). Because you access them using SQL, they are sometimes called SQL servers. (Another name is Remote

Database Management system, or RDBMS.) In addition to the common commands that make up SQL, most remote database servers support a unique “dialect” of SQL. Examples of SQL servers include InterBase, Oracle, Sybase, Informix, Microsoft SQL server, and DB2.

- **Local databases** reside on your local drive or on a local area network. They often have proprietary APIs for accessing the data. When they are shared by several users, they use file-based locking mechanisms. Because of this, they are sometimes called file-based databases. Examples of local databases include Paradox, dBASE, FoxPro, and Access.

Applications that use local databases are called **single-tiered applications** because the application and the database share a single file system. Applications that use remote database servers are called **two-tiered applications** or **multi-tiered applications** because the application and the database operate on independent systems (or tiers).

Choosing the type of database to use depends on several factors. For example, your data may already be stored in an existing database. If you are creating the database tables your application uses, you may want to consider the following questions:

- How many users will be sharing these tables? Remote database servers are designed for access by several users at the same time. They provide support for multiple users through a mechanism called transactions. Some local databases (such as Local InterBase) also provide transaction support, but many only provide file-based locking mechanisms, and some (such as client dataset files) provide no multi-user support at all.
- How much data will the tables hold? Remote database servers can hold more data than local databases. Some remote database servers are designed for warehousing large quantities of data while others are optimized for other criteria (such as fast updates).
- What type of performance (speed) do you require from the database? Local databases are usually faster than remote database servers because they reside on the same system as the database application. Different remote database servers are optimized to support different types of operations, so you may want to consider performance when choosing a remote database server.
- What type of support will be available for database administration? Local databases require less support than remote database servers. Typically, they are less expensive to operate because they do not require separately installed servers or expensive site licenses.

Database security

Databases often contain sensitive information. Different databases provide security schemes for protecting that information. Some databases, such as Paradox and dBASE, only provide security at the table or field level. When users try to access protected tables, they are required to provide a password. Once users have been authenticated, they can see only those fields (columns) for which they have permission.

Most SQL servers require a password and user name to use the database server at all. Once the user has logged in to the database, that username and password determine which tables can be used. For information on providing passwords to SQL servers, see “Controlling server login” on page 21-4.

When designing database applications, you must consider what type of authentication is required by your database server. Often, applications are designed to hide the explicit database login from users, who need only log in to the application itself. If you do not want to require your users to provide a database password, you must either use a database that does not require one or you must provide the password and username to the server programmatically. When providing the password programmatically, care must be taken that security can’t be breached by reading the password from the application.

If you require your user to supply a password, you must consider when the password is required. If you are using a local database but intend to scale up to a larger SQL server later, you may want to prompt for the password at the point when you will eventually log in to the SQL database, rather than when opening individual tables.

If your application requires multiple passwords because you must log in to several protected systems or databases, you can have your users provide a single master password that is used to access a table of passwords required by the protected systems. The application then supplies passwords programmatically, without requiring the user to provide multiple passwords.

In multi-tiered applications, you may want to use a different security model altogether. You can use HTTPs or COM+ to control access to middle tiers, and let the middle tiers handle all details of logging into database servers.

Transactions

A transaction is a group of actions that must all be carried out successfully on one or more tables in a database before they are committed (made permanent). If any of the actions in the group fails, then all actions are rolled back (undone).

Transactions ensure that

- All updates in a single transaction are either committed or aborted and rolled back to their previous state. This is referred to as **atomicity**.
- A transaction is a correct transformation of the system state, preserving the state invariants. This is referred to as **consistency**.
- Concurrent transactions do not see each other's partial or uncommitted results, which might create inconsistencies in the application state. This is referred to as **isolation**.
- Committed updates to records survive failures, including communication failures, process failures, and server system failures. This is referred to as **durability**.

Thus, transactions protect against hardware failures that occur in the middle of a database command or set of commands. Transactional logging allows you to recover

the durable state after disk media failures. Transactions also form the basis of multi-user concurrency control on SQL servers. When each user interacts with the database only through transactions, one user's commands can't disrupt the unity of another user's transaction. Instead, the SQL server schedules incoming transactions, which either succeed as a whole or fail as a whole.

Transaction support is not part of most local databases, although it is provided by local InterBase. In addition, the BDE drivers provide limited transaction support for some local databases. Database transaction support is provided by the component that represents the database connection. For details on managing transactions using a database connection component, see "Managing transactions" on page 21-6.

In multi-tiered applications, you can create transactions that include actions other than database operations or that span multiple databases. For details on using transactions in multi-tiered applications, see "Managing transactions in multi-tiered applications" on page 29-17.

Referential integrity, stored procedures, and triggers

All relational databases have certain features in common that allow applications to store and manipulate data. In addition, databases often provide other, database-specific, features that can prove useful for ensuring consistent relationships between the tables in a database. These include

- **Referential integrity.** Referential integrity provides a mechanism to prevent master/detail relationships between tables from being broken. When the user attempts to delete a field in a master table which would result in orphaned detail records, referential integrity rules prevent the deletion or automatically delete the orphaned detail records.
- **Stored procedures.** Stored procedures are sets of SQL statements that are named and stored on an SQL server. Stored procedures usually perform common database-related tasks on the server, and sometimes return sets of records (datasets).
- **Triggers.** Triggers are sets of SQL statements that are automatically executed in response to a particular command.

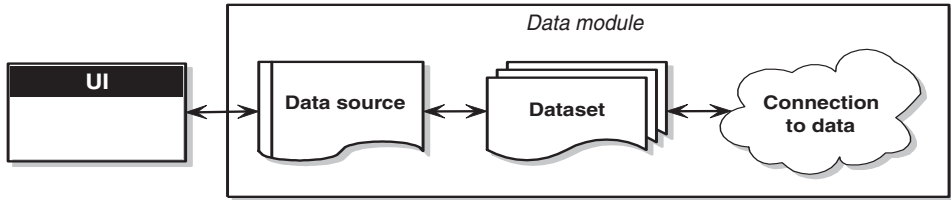
Database architecture

Database applications are built from user interface elements, components that represent database information (datasets), and components that connect these to each other and to the source of the database information. How you organize these pieces is the architecture of your database application.

General structure

While there are many distinct ways to organize the components in a database application, most follow the general scheme illustrated in Figure 18.1:

Figure 18.1 Generic Database Architecture



The user interface form

It is a good idea to isolate the user interface on a form that is completely separate from the rest of the application. This has several advantages. By isolating the user interface from the components that represent the database information itself, you introduce a greater flexibility into your design: Changes to the way you manage the database information do not require you to rewrite your user interface, and changes to the user interface do not require you to change the portion of your application that works with the database. In addition, this type of isolation lets you develop common forms that you can share between multiple applications, thereby providing a consistent user interface. By storing links to well-designed forms in the Object Repository, you and other developers can build on existing foundations rather than starting over from scratch for each new project. Sharing forms also makes it possible for you to develop corporate standards for application interfaces. For more information about creating the user interface for a database application, see “Designing the user interface” on page 18-15.

The data module

If you have isolated your user interface into its own form, you can use a data module to house the components that represent database information (datasets), and the components that connect these datasets to the other parts of your application. Like the user interface forms, you can share data modules in the Object Repository so that they can be reused or shared between applications.

The data source

The first item in the data module is a data source. The data source acts as a conduit between the user interface and a dataset that represents information from a database. Several data-aware controls on a form can share a single data source, in which case the display in each control is synchronized so that as the user scrolls through records, the corresponding value in the fields for the current record is displayed in each control.

The dataset

The heart of your database application is the dataset. This component represents a set of records from the underlying database. These records can be the data from a single database table, a subset of the fields or records in a table, or information from more than one table joined into a single view. By using datasets, your application logic is buffered from restructuring of the physical tables in your databases. When the underlying database changes, you might need to alter the way the dataset component specifies the data it contains, but the rest of your application can continue to work without alteration. For more information on the common properties and methods of datasets, see Chapter 22, “Understanding datasets.”

The data connection

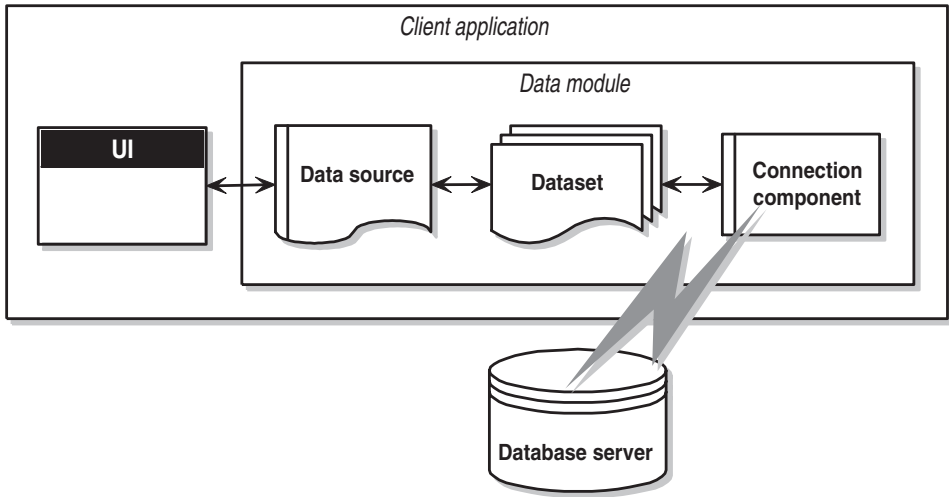
Different types of datasets use different mechanisms for connecting to the underlying database information. These different mechanisms, in turn, make up the major differences in the architecture of the database applications you can build. There are four basic mechanisms for connecting to the data:

- Connecting directly to a database server. Most datasets use a descendant of *TCustomConnection* to represent the connection to a database server.
- Using a dedicated file on disk. Client datasets support the ability to work with a dedicated file on disk. No separate connection component is needed when working with a dedicated file because the client dataset itself knows how to read from and write to the file.
- Connecting to another dataset. Client datasets can work with data provided by another dataset. A *TDataSetProvider* component serves as an intermediary between the client dataset and its source dataset. This dataset provider can reside in the same data module as the client dataset, or it can be part of an application server running on another machine. If the provider is part of an application server, you also need a special descendant of *TCustomConnection* to represent the connection to the application server.
- Obtaining data from an RDS DataSpace object. ADO datasets can use a *TRDSCONNECTION* component to marshal data in multi-tier database applications that are built using ADO-based application servers.

Sometimes, these mechanisms can be combined in a single application.

Connecting directly to a database server

The most common database architecture is the one where the dataset uses a connection component to establish a connection to a database server. The dataset then fetches data directly from the server and posts edits directly to the server. This is illustrated in Figure 18.2.

Figure 18.2 Connecting directly to the database server

Each type of dataset uses its own type of connection component, which represents a single data access mechanism:

- If the dataset is a BDE dataset such as *TTable*, *TQuery*, or *TStoredProc*, the connection component is a *TDataBase* object. You connect the dataset to the database component by setting its *Database* property. You do not need to explicitly add a database component when using BDE dataset. If you set the dataset's *DatabaseName* property, a database component is created for you automatically at runtime.
- If the dataset is an ADO dataset such as *TADODataSet*, *TADOTable*, *TADOQuery*, or *TADOStoredProc*, the connection component is a *TADOConnection* object. You connect the dataset to the ADO connection component by setting its *ADOConnection* property. As with BDE datasets, you do not need to explicitly add the connection component: instead you can set the dataset's *ConnectionString* property.
- If the dataset is a dbExpress dataset such as *TSQLDataSet*, *TSQLTable*, *TSQLQuery*, or *TSQLStoredProc*, the connection component is a *TSQLConnection* object. You connect the dataset to the SQL connection component by setting its *SQLConnection* property. When using dbExpress datasets, you must explicitly add the connection component. Another difference between dbExpress datasets and the other datasets is that dbExpress datasets are always read-only and unidirectional: This means you can only navigate by iterating through the records in order, and you can't use the dataset methods that support editing.
- If the dataset is an InterBase Express dataset such as *TIBDataSet*, *TIBTable*, *TIBQuery*, or *TIBStoredProc*, the connection component is a *TIBDatabase* object. You connect the dataset to the IB database component by setting its *Database* property. As with dbExpress datasets, you must explicitly add the connection component.

In addition to the components listed above, you can use a specialized client dataset such as *TBDEClientDataSet*, *TSQLClientDataSet*, or *TIBClientDataSet* with a database connection component. When using one of these client datasets, specify the appropriate type of connection component as the value of the *DBConnection* property.

Although each type of dataset uses a different connection component, they all perform many of the same tasks and surface many of the same properties, methods, and events. For more information on the commonalities among the various database connection components, see Chapter 21, “Connecting to databases.”

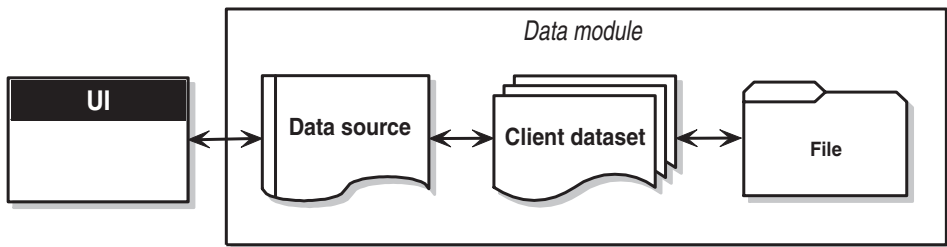
This architecture represents either a single-tiered or two-tiered application, depending on whether the database server is a local database such or a remote database server. The logic that manipulates database information is in the same application that implements the user interface, although isolated into a data module.

Note The connection components or drivers needed to create two-tiered applications are not available in all version of C++Builder.

Using a dedicated file on disk

The simplest form of database application you can write does not use a database server at all. Instead, it uses MyBase, the ability of client datasets to save themselves to a file and to load the data from a file. This architecture is illustrated in Figure 18.3:

Figure 18.3 A file-based database application



When using this file-based approach, your application writes changes to disk using the client dataset’s *SaveToFile* method. *SaveToFile* takes one parameter, the name of the file which is created (or overwritten) containing the table. When you want to read a table previously written using the *SaveToFile* method, use the *LoadFromFile* method. *LoadFromFile* also takes one parameter, the name of the file containing the table.

If you always load to and save from the same file, you can use the *FileName* property instead of the *SaveToFile* and *LoadFromFile* methods. When *FileName* is set to a valid file name, the data is automatically loaded from the file when the client dataset is opened and saved to the file when the client dataset is closed.

This simple file-based architecture is a single-tiered application. The logic that manipulates database information is in the same application that implements the user interface, although isolated into a data module.

The file-based approach has the benefit of simplicity. There is no database server to install, configure, or deploy (although the client dataset does require *midas.dll*). There is no need for site licenses or database administration.

In addition, some versions of C++Builder let you convert between arbitrary XML documents and the data packets that are used by a client dataset. Thus, the file-based approach can be used to work with XML documents as well as dedicated datasets. For information about converting between XML documents and client dataset data packets, see Chapter 30, “Using XML in database applications.”

The file-based approach offers no support for multiple users. The dataset should be dedicated entirely to the application. Data is saved to files on disk, and loaded at a later time, but there is no built-in protection to prevent multiple users from overwriting each other’s data files.

For more information about using a client dataset with data stored on disk, see “Using a client dataset with file-based data” on page 27-32.

Connecting to another dataset

There are specialized client datasets that use the BDE or *dbExpress* to connect to a database server. These specialized client datasets are, in fact, composite components that include another dataset internally to access the data and an internal provider component to package the data from the source dataset and to apply updates back to the database server. These composite components require some additional overhead, but provide certain benefits:

- Client datasets provide the most robust way to work with cached updates. By default, other types of datasets post edits directly to the database server. You can reduce network traffic by using a dataset that caches updates locally and applies them all later in a single transaction. For information on the advantages of using client datasets to cache updates, see “Using a client dataset to cache updates” on page 27-15.
- Client datasets can apply edits directly to a database server when the dataset is read-only. When using *dbExpress*, this is the only way to edit the data in the dataset (it is also the only way to navigate freely in the data when using *dbExpress*). Even when not using *dbExpress*, the results of some queries and all stored procedures are read-only. Using a client dataset provides a standard way to make such data editable.
- Because client datasets can work directly with dedicated files on disk, using a client dataset can be combined with a file-based model to allow for a flexible “briefcase” application. For information on the briefcase model, see “Combining approaches” on page 18-14.

In addition to these specialized client datasets, there is a generic client dataset (*TClientDataSet*), which does not include an internal dataset and dataset provider. Although *TClientDataSet* has no built-in database access mechanism, you can connect it to another, external, dataset from which it fetches data and to which it sends

updates. Although this approach is a bit more complicated, there are times when it is preferable:

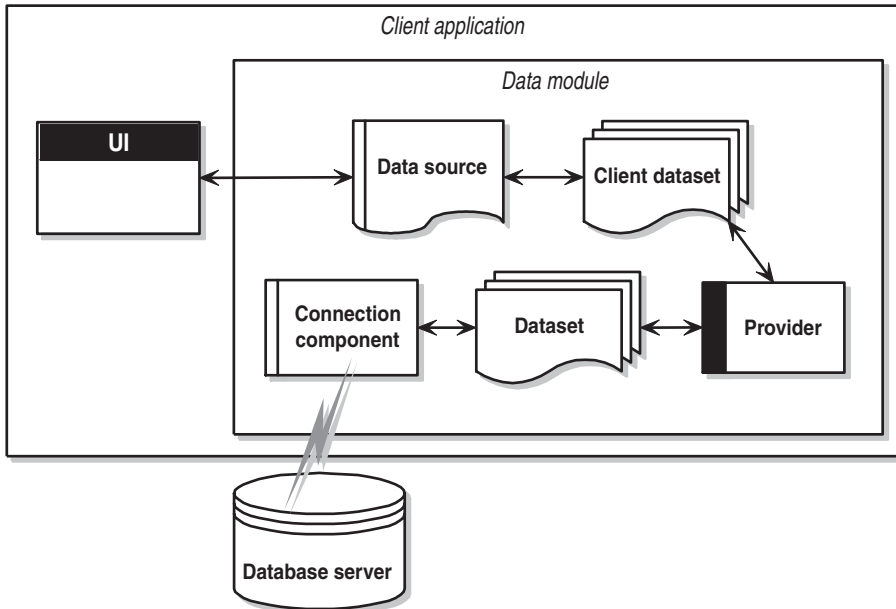
- Because the source dataset and dataset provider are external, you have more control over how they fetch data and apply updates. For example, the provider component surfaces a number of events that are not available when using a specialized client dataset to access data.
- When the source dataset is external, you can link it in a master/detail relationship with another dataset. An external provider automatically converts this arrangement into a single dataset with nested details. When the source dataset is internal, you can't create nested detail sets this way.
- Connecting a client dataset to an external dataset is an architecture that easily scales up to multiple tiers. Because the development process can get more involved and expensive as the number of tiers increases, you may want to start developing your application as a single-tiered or two-tiered application. As the amount of data, the number of users, and the number of different applications accessing the data grows, you may later need to scale up to a multi-tiered architecture. If you think you may eventually use a multi-tiered architecture, it can be worthwhile to start by using a client dataset with an external source dataset. This way, when you move the data access and manipulation logic to a middle tier, you protect your development investment because the code can be reused as your application grows.
- *TClientDataSet* can link to any source dataset. This means you can use custom datasets (third-party components) for which there is no corresponding specialized client dataset. Some versions of C++Builder even include special provider components that connect a client dataset to an XML document rather than another dataset. (This works the same way as connecting a client dataset to another (source) dataset, except that the XML provider uses an XML document rather than a dataset. For information about these XML providers, see "Using an XML document as the source for a provider" on page 30-8.)

There are two versions of the architecture that connects a client dataset to an external dataset:

- Connecting a client dataset to another dataset in the same application.
- Using a multi-tiered architecture.

Connecting a client dataset to another dataset in the same application

By using a provider component, you can connect *TClientDataSet* to another (source) dataset. The provider packages database information into transportable data packets (which can be used by client datasets) and applies updates received in delta packets (which client datasets create) back to a database server. The architecture for this is illustrated in Figure 18.4.

Figure 18.4 Architecture combining a client dataset and another dataset

This architecture represents either a single-tiered or two-tiered application, depending on whether the database server is a local database or a remote database server. The logic that manipulates database information is in the same application that implements the user interface, although isolated into a data module.

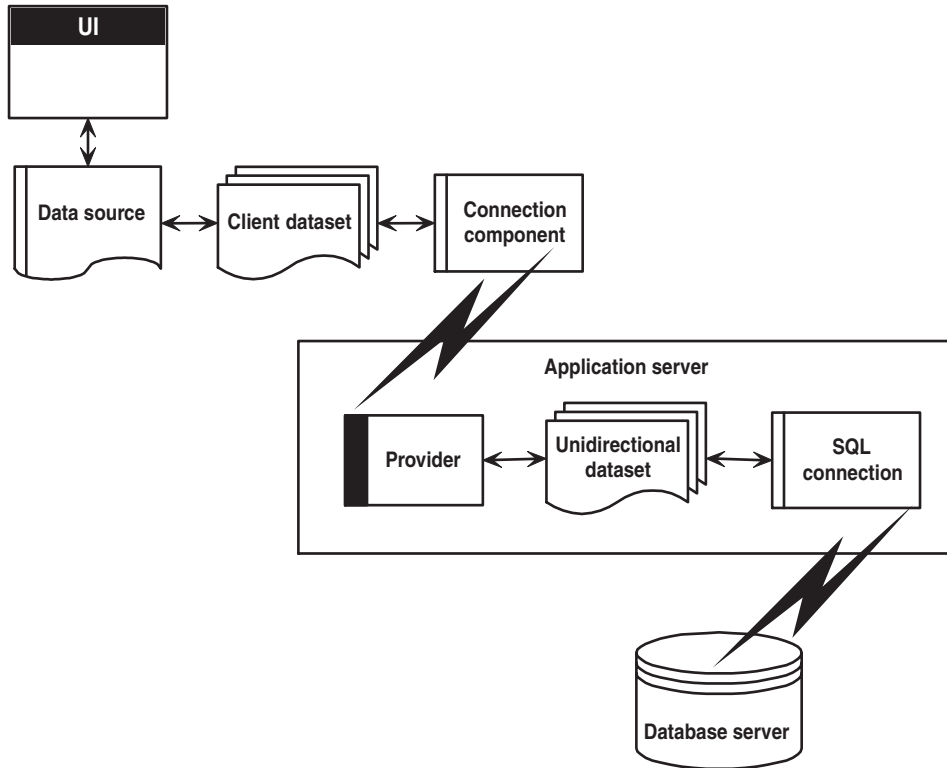
To link the client dataset to the provider, set its *ProviderName* property to the name of the provider component. The provider must be in the same data module as the client dataset. To link the provider to the source dataset, set its *DataSet* property.

Once the client dataset is linked to the provider and the provider is linked to the source dataset, these components automatically handle all the details necessary for fetching, displaying, and navigating through the database records (assuming the source dataset is connected to a database). To apply user edits back to the database, you need only call the client dataset's *ApplyUpdates* method.

For more information on using a client dataset with a provider, see “Using a client dataset with a provider” on page 27-24.

Using a multi-tiered architecture

When the database information includes complicated relationships between several tables, or when the number of clients grows, you may want to use a multi-tiered application. Multi-tiered applications have middle tiers between the client application and database server. The architecture for this is illustrated in Figure 18.5.

Figure 18.5 Multi-tiered database architecture

The preceding figure represents three-tiered application. The logic that manipulates database information is on a separate system, or tier. This middle tier centralizes the logic that governs your database interactions so there is centralized control over data relationships. This allows different client applications to use the same data, while ensuring consistent data logic. It also allows for smaller client applications because much of the processing is off-loaded onto the middle tier. These smaller client applications are easier to install, configure, and maintain. Multi-tiered applications can also improve performance by spreading data-processing over several systems.

The multi-tiered architecture is very similar to the previous model. It differs mainly in that source dataset that connects to the database server and the provider that acts as an intermediary between that source dataset and the client dataset have both moved to a separate application. That separate application is called the application server (or sometimes the “remote data broker”).

Because the provider has moved to a separate application, the client dataset can no longer connect to the source dataset by simply setting its *ProviderName* property. In addition, it must use some type of connection component to locate and connect to the application server.

There are several types of connection components that can connect a client dataset to an application server. They are all descendants of *TCustomRemoteServer*, and differ primarily in the communication protocol they use (TCP/IP, HTTP, DCOM, or SOAP). Link the client dataset to its connection component by setting the *RemoteServer* property.

The connection component establishes a connection to the application server and returns an interface that the client dataset uses to call the provider specified by its *ProviderName* property. Each time the client dataset calls the application server, it passes the value of *ProviderName*, and the application server forwards the call to the provider.

For more information about connecting a client dataset to an application server, see Chapter 29, “Creating multi-tiered applications.”

Combining approaches

The previous sections describe several architectures you can use when writing database applications. There is no reason, however, why you can't combine two or more of the available architectures in a single application. In fact, some combinations can be extremely powerful.

For example, you can combine the disk-based architecture described in “Using a dedicated file on disk” on page 18-9 with another approach such as those described in “Connecting a client dataset to another dataset in the same application” on page 18-11 or “Using a multi-tiered architecture” on page 18-12. These combinations are easy because all models use a client dataset to represent the data that appears in the user interface. The result is called the briefcase model (or sometimes the disconnected model, or mobile computing).

The briefcase model is useful in a situation such as the following: An onsite company database contains customer contact data that sales representatives can use and update in the field. While onsite, sales representatives download information from the database. Later, they work with it on their laptops as they fly across the country, and even update records at existing or new customer sites. When the sales representatives return onsite, they upload their data changes to the company database for everyone to use.

When operating on site, the client dataset in a briefcase model application fetches its data from a provider. The client dataset is therefore connected to the database server and can, through the provider, fetch server data and send updates back to the server. Before disconnecting from the provider, the client dataset saves its snapshot of the information to a file on disk. While offsite, the client dataset loads its data from the file, and saves any changes back to that file. Finally, back onsite, the client dataset reconnects to the provider so that it can apply its updates to the database server or refresh its snapshot of the data.

Designing the user interface

The Data Controls page of the Component palette provides a set of data-aware controls that represent data from fields in a database record, and can permit users to edit that data and post changes back to the database. Using data-aware controls, you can build your database application's user interface (UI) so that information is visible and accessible to users. For more information on data-aware controls see Chapter 19, "Using data controls."

In addition to the basic data controls, you may also want to introduce other elements into your user interface:

- You may want your application to analyze the data contained in a database. Applications that analyze data do more than just display the data in a database, they also summarize the information in useful formats to help users grasp the impact of that data.
- You may want to print reports that provide a hard copy of the information displayed in your user interface.
- You may want to create a user interface that can be viewed from Web browsers. The simplest Web-based database applications are described in "Using database information in responses" on page 33-17. In addition, you can combine the Web-based approach with the multi-tiered architecture, as described in "Writing Web-based client applications."

Analyzing data

Some database applications do not present database information directly to the user. Instead, they analyze and summarize information from databases so that users can draw conclusions from the data.

The *TDBChart* component on the Data Controls page of the Component palette lets you present database information in a graphical format that enables users to quickly grasp the import of database information.

In addition, some versions of C++Builder include a Decision Cube page on the Component palette. It contains six components that let you perform data analysis and cross-tabulations on data when building decision support applications. For more information about using the Decision Cube components, see Chapter 20, "Using decision support components."

If you want to build your own components that display data summaries based on various grouping criteria, you can use maintained aggregates with a client dataset. For more information about using maintained aggregates, see "Using maintained aggregates" on page 27-11.

Writing reports

If you want to let your users print database information from the datasets in your application, you can use the report components on the QReport page of the Component palette. Using these components you can visually build banded reports to present and summarize the information in your database tables. You can add summaries to group headers or footers to analyze the data based on grouping criteria.

Start a report for your application by selecting the QuickReport icon from the New Items dialog. Select File | New | Other from the main menu, and go to the page labeled Business. Double-click the QuickReport Wizard icon to launch the wizard.

Note See the QuickReport demo that ships with C++Builder for an example of how to use the components on the QReport page.

Using data controls

The Data Controls page of the Component palette provides a set of data-aware controls that represent data from fields in a database record, and, if the dataset allows it, enable users to edit that data and post changes back to the database. By placing data controls onto the forms in your database application, you can build your database application's user interface (UI) so that information is visible and accessible to users.

The data-aware controls you add to your user interface depend on several factors, including the following:

- The type of data you are displaying. You can choose between controls that are designed to display and edit plain text, controls that work with formatted text, controls for graphics, multimedia elements, and so on. Controls that display different types of information are described in “Displaying a single record” on page 19-7.
- How you want to organize the information. You may choose to display information from a single record on the screen, or list the information from multiple records using a grid. “Choosing how to organize the data” on page 19-7 describes some of the possibilities.
- The type of dataset that supplies data to the controls. You want to use controls that reflect the limitations of the underlying dataset. For example, you would not use a grid with a unidirectional dataset because unidirectional datasets can only supply a single record at a time.
- How (or if) you want to let users navigate through the records of datasets and add or edit data. You may want to add your own controls or mechanisms to navigate and edit, or you may want to use a built-in control such as a data navigator. For more information about using a data navigator, see “Navigating and manipulating records” on page 19-28.

Note More complex data-aware controls for decision support are discussed in Chapter 20, “Using decision support components.”

Regardless of the data-aware controls you choose to add to your interface, certain common features apply. These are described below.

Using common data control features

The following tasks are common to most data controls:

- Associating a data control with a dataset
- Editing and updating data
- Disabling and enabling data display
- Refreshing data display
- Enabling mouse, keyboard, and timer events

Data controls let you display and edit fields of data associated with the current record in a dataset. Table 19.1 summarizes the data controls that appear on the Data Controls page of the Component palette.

Table 19.1 Data controls

| Data control | Description |
|--------------------------|--|
| <i>TDBGrid</i> | Displays information from a data source in a tabular format. Columns in the grid correspond to columns in the underlying table or query's dataset. Rows in the grid correspond to records. |
| <i>TDBNavigator</i> | Navigates through data records in a dataset. updating records, posting records, deleting records, canceling edits to records, and refreshing data display. |
| <i>TDBText</i> | Displays data from a field as a label. |
| <i>TDBEdit</i> | Displays data from a field in an edit box. |
| <i>TDBMemo</i> | Displays data from a memo or BLOB field in a scrollable, multi-line edit box. |
| <i>TDBImage</i> | Displays graphics from a data field in a graphics box. |
| <i>TDBListBox</i> | Displays a list of items from which to update a field in the current data record. |
| <i>TDBComboBox</i> | Displays a list of items from which to update a field, and also permits direct text entry like a standard data-aware edit box. |
| <i>TDBCheckBox</i> | Displays a check box that indicates the value of a Boolean field. |
| <i>TDBRadioGroup</i> | Displays a set of mutually exclusive options for a field. |
| <i>TDBLookupListBox</i> | Displays a list of items looked up from another dataset based on the value of a field. |
| <i>TDBLookupComboBox</i> | Displays a list of items looked up from another dataset based on the value of a field, and also permits direct text entry like a standard data-aware edit box. |
| <i>TDBCtrlGrid</i> | Displays a configurable, repeating set of data-aware controls within a grid. |
| <i>TDBRichEdit</i> | Displays formatted data from a field in an edit box. |

Data controls are data-aware at design time. When you associate the data control with an active dataset while building an application, you can immediately see live

data in the control. You can use the Fields editor to scroll through a dataset at design time to verify that your application displays data correctly without having to compile and run the application. For more information about the Fields editor, see “Creating persistent fields” on page 23-4.

At runtime, data controls display data and, if your application, the control, and the dataset all permit it, a user can edit data through the control.

Associating a data control with a dataset

Data controls connect to datasets by using a data source. A data source component (*TDataSource*) acts as a conduit between the control and a dataset containing data. Each data-aware control must be associated with a data source component to have data to display and manipulate. Similarly, all datasets must be associated with a data source component in order for their data to be displayed and manipulated in data-aware controls on a form.

Note Data source components are also required for linking unnested datasets in master-detail relationships.

To associate a data control with a dataset,

- 1 Place a dataset in a data module (or on a form), and set its properties as appropriate.
- 2 Place a data source in the same data module (or form). Using the Object Inspector, set its *DataSet* property to the dataset you placed in step 1.
- 3 Place a data control from the Data Access page of the Component palette onto a form.
- 4 Using the Object Inspector, set the *DataSource* property of the control to the data source component you placed in step 2.
- 5 Set the *DataField* property of the control to the name of a field to display, or select a field name from the drop-down list for the property. This step does not apply to *TDBGrid*, *TDBCtrlGrid*, and *TDBNavigator* because they access all available fields in the dataset.
- 6 Set the *Active* property of the dataset to **true** to display data in the control.

Changing the associated dataset at runtime

In the preceding example, the datasource was associated with its dataset by setting the *DataSet* property at design time. At runtime, you can switch the dataset for a data source component as needed. For example, the following code swaps the dataset for the *CustSource* data source component between the dataset components named *Customers* and *Orders*:

```
if (CustSource->DataSet == Customers)
    CustSource->DataSet = Orders;
else
    CustSource->DataSet = Customers;
```

You can also set the *DataSet* property to a dataset on another form to synchronize the data controls on two forms. For example:

```
void __fastcall TForm2::FormCreate(TObject *Sender)
{
    DataSource1->DataSet = Form1->Table1;
}
```

Enabling and disabling the data source

The data source has an *Enabled* property that determines if it is connected to its dataset. When *Enabled* is **true**, the data source is connected to a dataset.

You can temporarily disconnect a single data source from its dataset by setting *Enabled* to **false**. When *Enabled* is **false**, all data controls attached to the data source component go blank and become inactive until *Enabled* is set to **true**. It is recommended, however, to control access to a dataset through a dataset component's *DisableControls* and *EnableControls* methods because they affect all attached data sources.

Responding to changes mediated by the data source

Because the data source provides the link between the data control and its dataset, it mediates all of the communication that occurs between the two. Typically, the data-aware control automatically responds to changes in the dataset. However, if your user interface is using controls that are not data-aware, you can use the events of a data source component to manually provide the same sort of response.

The *OnDataChange* event occurs whenever the data in a record may have changed, including field edits or when the cursor moves to a new record. This event is useful for making sure the control reflects the current field values in the dataset, because it is triggered by all changes. Typically, an *OnDataChange* event handler refreshes the value of a non-data-aware control that displays field data.

The *OnUpdateData* event occurs when the data in the current record is about to be posted. For instance, an *OnUpdateData* event occurs after *Post* is called, but before the data is actually posted to the underlying database server or local cache.

The *OnStateChange* event occurs when the state of the dataset changes. When this event occurs, you can examine the dataset's *State* property to determine its current state.

For example, the following *OnStateChange* event handler enables or disables buttons or menu items based on the current state:

```
void __fastcall TForm1::DataSource1StateChange(TObject *Sender)
{
    CustTableActivateBtn->Enabled = (CustTable->State == dsInactive);
    CustTableEditBtn->Enabled = (CustTable->State == dsBrowse);
    CustTableCancelBtn->Enabled = (CustTable->State == dsInsert ||
                                   CustTable->State == dsEdit ||
                                   CustTable->State == dsSetKey);
    :
}
```

Note For more information about dataset states, see “Determining dataset states” on page 22-3.

Editing and updating data

All data controls except the navigator display data from a database field. In addition, you can use them to edit and update data as long as the underlying dataset allows it.

Note Unidirectional datasets never permit users to edit and update data.

Enabling editing in controls on user entry

A dataset must be in *dsEdit* state to permit editing to its data. If the data source’s *AutoEdit* property is **true** (the default), the data control handles the task of putting the dataset into *dsEdit* mode as soon as the user tries to edit its data.

If *AutoEdit* is **false**, you must provide an alternate mechanism for putting the dataset into edit mode. One such mechanism is to use a *TDBNavigator* control with an *Edit* button, which lets users explicitly put the dataset into edit mode. For more information about *TDBNavigator*, see “Navigating and manipulating records” on page 19-28. Alternately, you can write code that calls the dataset’s *Edit* method when you want to put the dataset into edit mode.

Editing data in a control

A data control can only post edits to its associated dataset if the dataset’s *CanModify* property is **true**. *CanModify* is always **false** for unidirectional datasets. Some datasets have a *ReadOnly* property that lets you specify whether *CanModify* is **true**.

Note Whether a dataset can update data depends on whether the underlying database table permits updates.

Even if the dataset’s *CanModify* property is **true**, the *Enabled* property of the data source that connects the dataset to the control must be **true** as well before the control can post updates back to the database table. The *Enabled* property of the data source determines whether the control can display field values from the dataset, and therefore also whether a user can edit and post values. If *Enabled* is **true** (the default), controls can display field values.

Finally, you can control whether the user can even enter edits to the data that is displayed in the control. The *ReadOnly* property of the data control determines if a user can edit the data displayed by the control. If **false** (the default), users can edit data. Clearly, you will want to ensure that the control’s *ReadOnly* property is **true** when the dataset’s *CanModify* property is **false**. Otherwise, you give users the false impression that they can affect the data in the underlying database table.

In all data controls except *TDBGrid*, when you modify a field, the modification is copied to the underlying dataset when you *Tab* from the control. If you press *Esc* before you *Tab* from a field, the data control abandons the modifications, and the value of the field reverts to the value it held before any modifications were made.

In *TDBGrid*, modifications are posted when you move to a different record; you can press *Esc* in any record of a field before moving to another record to cancel all changes to the record.

When a record is posted, C++Builder checks all data-aware controls associated with the dataset for a change in status. If there is a problem updating any fields that contain modified data, C++Builder raises an exception, and no modifications are made to the record.

Note If your application caches updates (for example, using a client dataset), all modifications are posted to an internal cache. These modifications are not applied to the underlying database table until you call the dataset's *ApplyUpdates* method.

Disabling and enabling data display

When your application iterates through a dataset or performs a search, you should temporarily prevent refreshing of the values displayed in data-aware controls each time the current record changes. Preventing refreshing of values speeds the iteration or search and prevents annoying screen-flicker.

DisableControls is a dataset method that disables display for all data-aware controls linked to a dataset. As soon as the iteration or search is over, your application should immediately call the dataset's *EnableControls* method to re-enable display for the controls.

Usually you disable controls before entering an iterative process. The iterative process itself should take place inside a **try...__finally** statement so that you can re-enable controls even if an exception occurs during processing. The **__finally** clause should call *EnableControls*. The following code illustrates how you might use *DisableControls* and *EnableControls* in this manner:

```
CustTable->DisableControls();
try
{
    // cycle through all records of the dataset
    for (CustTable->First(); !CustTable->EOF; CustTable->Next())
    {
        // Process each record here
        :
    }
}
__finally
{
    CustTable->EnableControls();
}
```

Refreshing data display

The *Refresh* method for a dataset flushes local buffers and re-fetches data for an open dataset. You can use this method to update the display in data-aware controls if you think that the underlying data has changed because other applications have

simultaneous access to the data used in your application. If you are using cached updates, before you refresh the dataset you must apply any updates the dataset has currently cached.

Refreshing can sometimes lead to unexpected results. For example, if a user is viewing a record deleted by another application, then the record disappears the moment your application calls *Refresh*. Data can also appear to change if another user changes a record after you originally fetched the data and before you call *Refresh*.

Enabling mouse, keyboard, and timer events

The *Enabled* property of a data control determines whether it responds to mouse, keyboard, or timer events, and passes information to its data source. The default setting for this property is **true**.

To prevent mouse, keyboard, or timer events from reaching a data control, set its *Enabled* property to **false**. When *Enabled* is **false**, the data source that connects the control to its dataset does not receive information from the data control. The data control continues to display data, but the text displayed in the control is dimmed.

Choosing how to organize the data

When you build the user interface for your database application, you have choices to make about how you want to organize the display of information and the controls that manipulate that information.

One of the first decisions to make is whether you want to display a single record at a time, or multiple records.

In addition, you will want to add controls to navigate and manipulate records. The *TDBNavigator* control provides built-in support for many of the functions you may want to perform.

Displaying a single record

In many applications, you may only want to provide information about a single record of data at a time. For example, an order-entry application may display the information about a single order without indicating what other orders are currently logged. This information probably comes from a single record in an orders dataset.

Applications that display a single record are usually easy to read and understand, because all database information is about the same thing (in the previous case, the same order). The data-aware controls in these user interfaces represent a single field from a database record. The Data Controls page of the Component palette provides a wide selection of controls to represent different kinds of fields. These controls are typically data-aware versions of other controls that are available on the component palette. For example, the *TDBEdit* control is a data-aware version of the standard *TEdit* control which enables users to see and edit a text string.

Which control you use depends on the type of data (text, formatted text, graphics, boolean information, and so on) contained in the field.

Displaying data as labels

TDBText is a read-only control similar to the *TLabel* component on the Standard page of the Component palette. A *TDBText* control is useful when you want to provide display-only data on a form that allows user input in other controls. For example, suppose a form is created around the fields in a customer list table, and that once the user enters a street address, city, and state or province information in the form, you use a dynamic lookup to automatically determine the zip code field from a separate table. A *TDBText* component tied to the zip code table could be used to display the zip code field that matches the address entered by the user.

TDBText gets the text it displays from a specified field in the current record of a dataset. Because *TDBText* gets its text from a dataset, the text it displays is dynamic—the text changes as the user navigates the database table. Therefore you cannot specify the display text of *TDBText* at design time as you can with *TLabel*.

Note When you place a *TDBText* component on a form, make sure its *AutoSize* property is **true** (the default) to ensure that the control resizes itself as necessary to display data of varying widths. If *AutoSize* is **false**, and the control is too small, data display is clipped.

Displaying and editing fields in an edit box

TDBEdit is a data-aware version of an edit box component. *TDBEdit* displays the current value of a data field to which it is linked and permits it to be edited using standard edit box techniques.

For example, suppose *CustomersSource* is a *TDataSource* component that is active and linked to an open *TClientDataSet* called *CustomersTable*. You can then place a *TDBEdit* component on a form and set its properties as follows:

- *DataSource*: CustomersSource
- *DataField*: CustNo

The data-aware edit box component immediately displays the value of the current row of the *CustNo* column of the *CustomersTable* dataset, both at design time and at runtime.

Displaying and editing text in a memo control

TDBMemo is a data-aware component—similar to the standard *TMemo* component—that can display lengthy text data. *TDBMemo* displays multi-line text, and permits a user to enter multi-line text as well. You can use *TDBMemo* controls to display large text fields or text data contained in binary large object (BLOB) fields.

By default, *TDBMemo* permits a user to edit memo text. To prevent editing, set the *ReadOnly* property of the memo control to **true**. To display tabs and permit users to enter them in a memo, set the *WantTabs* property to **true**. To limit the number of characters users can enter into the database memo, use the *MaxLength* property. The

default value for *MaxLength* is 0, meaning that there is no character limit other than that imposed by the operating system.

Several properties affect how the database memo appears and how text is entered. You can supply scroll bars in the memo with the *ScrollBars* property. To prevent word wrap, set the *WordWrap* property to **false**. The *Alignment* property determines how the text is aligned within the control. Possible choices are *taLeftJustify* (the default), *taCenter*, and *taRightJustify*. To change the font of the text, use the *Font* property.

At runtime, users can cut, copy, and paste text to and from a database memo control. You can accomplish the same task programmatically by using the *CutToClipboard*, *CopyToClipboard*, and *PasteFromClipboard* methods.

Because the *TDBMemo* can display large amounts of data, it can take time to populate the display at runtime. To reduce the time it takes to scroll through data records, *TDBMemo* has an *AutoDisplay* property that controls whether the accessed data should be displayed automatically. If you set *AutoDisplay* to **false**, *TDBMemo* displays the field name rather than actual data. Double-click inside the control to view the actual data.

Displaying and editing text in a rich edit memo control

TDBRichEdit is a data-aware component—similar to the standard *TRichEdit* component—that can display formatted text stored in a binary large object (BLOB) field. *TDBRichEdit* displays formatted, multi-line text, and permits a user to enter formatted multi-line text as well.

Note While *TDBRichEdit* provides properties and methods to enter and work with rich text, it does not provide any user interface components to make these formatting options available to the user. Your application must implement the user interface to surface rich text capabilities.

By default, *TDBRichEdit* permits a user to edit memo text. To prevent editing, set the *ReadOnly* property of the rich edit control to **true**. To display tabs and permit users to enter them in a memo, set the *WantTabs* property to **true**. To limit the number of characters users can enter into the database memo, use the *MaxLength* property. The default value for *MaxLength* is 0, meaning that there is no character limit other than that imposed by the operating system.

Because the *TDBRichEdit* can display large amounts of data, it can take time to populate the display at runtime. To reduce the time it takes to scroll through data records, *TDBRichEdit* has an *AutoDisplay* property that controls whether the accessed data should be displayed automatically. If you set *AutoDisplay* to **false**, *TDBRichEdit* displays the field name rather than actual data. Double-click inside the control to view the actual data.

Displaying and editing graphics fields in an image control

TDBImage is a data-aware control that displays graphics contained in BLOB fields.

By default, *TDBImage* permits a user to edit a graphics image by cutting and pasting to and from the Clipboard using the *CutToClipboard*, *CopyToClipboard*, and

PasteFromClipboard methods. You can, instead, supply your own editing methods attached to the event handlers for the control.

By default, an image control displays as much of a graphic as fits in the control, cropping the image if it is too big. You can set the *Stretch* property to **true** to resize the graphic to fit within an image control as it is resized.

Because the *TDBImage* can display large amounts of data, it can take time to populate the display at runtime. To reduce the time it takes scroll through data records, *TDBImage* has an *AutoDisplay* property that controls whether the accessed data should automatically displayed. If you set *AutoDisplay* to **false**, *TDBImage* displays the field name rather than actual data. Double-click inside the control to view the actual data.

Displaying and editing data in list and combo boxes

There are four data controls that provide the user with a set of default data values to choose from at runtime. These are data-aware versions of standard list and combo box controls:

- *TDBListBox*, which displays a scrollable list of items from which a user can choose to enter in a data field. A data-aware list box displays a default value for a field in the current record and highlights its corresponding entry in the list. If the current row's field value is not in the list, no value is highlighted in the list box. When a user selects a list item, the corresponding field value is changed in the underlying dataset.
- *TDBComboBox*, which combines the functionality of a data-aware edit control and a drop-down list. At runtime it can display a drop-down list from which a user can pick from a predefined set of values, and it can permit a user to enter an entirely different value.
- *TDBLookupListBox*, which behaves like *TDBListBox* except the list of display items is looked up in another dataset.
- *TDBLookupComboBox*, which behaves like *TDBComboBox* except the list of display items is looked up in another dataset.

Note At runtime, users can use an incremental search to find list box items. When the control has focus, for example, typing 'ROB' selects the first item in the list box beginning with the letters 'ROB'. Typing an additional 'E' selects the first item starting with 'ROBE', such as 'Robert Johnson'. The search is case-insensitive. *Backspace* and *Esc* cancel the current search string (but leave the selection intact), as does a two second pause between keystrokes.

Using TDBListBox and TDBComboBox

When using *TDBListBox* or *TDBComboBox*, you must use the String List editor at design time to create the list of items to display. To bring up the String List editor, click the ellipsis button for the *Items* property in the Object Inspector. Then type in the items that you want to have appear in the list. At runtime, use the methods of the *Items* property to manipulate its string list.

When a *TDBListBox* or *TDBComboBox* control is linked to a field through its *DataField* property, the field value appears selected in the list. If the current value is not in the list, no item appears selected. However, *TDBComboBox* displays the current value for the field in its edit box, regardless of whether it appears in the *Items* list.

For *TDBListBox*, the *Height* property determines how many items are visible in the list box at one time. The *IntegralHeight* property controls how the last item can appear. If *IntegralHeight* is **false** (the default), the bottom of the list box is determined by the *ItemHeight* property, and the bottom item may not be completely displayed. If *IntegralHeight* is **true**, the visible bottom item in the list box is fully displayed.

For *TDBComboBox*, the *Style* property determines user interaction with the control. By default, *Style* is *csDropDown*, meaning a user can enter values from the keyboard, or choose an item from the drop-down list. The following properties determine how the *Items* list is displayed at runtime:

- *Style* determines the display style of the component:
 - *csDropDown* (default): Displays a drop-down list with an edit box in which the user can enter text. All items are strings and have the same height.
 - *csSimple*: Combines an edit control with a fixed size list of items that is always displayed. When setting *Style* to *csSimple*, be sure to increase the *Height* property so that the list is displayed.
 - *csDropDownList*: Displays a drop-down list and edit box, but the user cannot enter or change values that are not in the drop-down list at runtime.
 - *csOwnerDrawFixed* and *csOwnerDrawVariable*: Allows the items list to display values other than strings (for example, bitmaps) or to use different fonts for individual items in the list.
- *DropDownCount*: the maximum number of items displayed in the list. If the number of *Items* is greater than *DropDownCount*, the user can scroll the list. If the number of *Items* is less than *DropDownCount*, the list will be just large enough to display all the *Items*.
- *ItemHeight*: The height of each item when style is *csOwnerDrawFixed*.
- *Sorted*: If **true**, then the *Items* list is displayed in alphabetical order.

Displaying and editing data in lookup list and combo boxes

Lookup list boxes and lookup combo boxes (*TDBLookupListBox* and *TDBLookupComboBox*) present the user with a restricted list of choices from which to set a valid field value. When a user selects a list item, the corresponding field value is changed in the underlying dataset.

For example, consider an order form whose fields are tied to the *OrdersTable*. *OrdersTable* contains a *CustNo* field corresponding to a customer ID, but *OrdersTable* does not have any other customer information. The *CustomersTable*, on the other hand, contains a *CustNo* field corresponding to a customer ID, and also contains additional information, such as the customer's company and mailing address. It would be convenient if the order form enabled a clerk to select a customer by company name instead of customer ID when creating an invoice. A

TDBLookupListBox that displays all company names in *CustomersTable* enables a user to select the company name from the list, and set the *CustNo* on the order form appropriately.

These lookup controls derive the list of display items from one of two sources:

- **A lookup field defined for a dataset.**

To specify list box items using a lookup field, the dataset to which you link the control must already define a lookup field. (This process is described in “Defining a lookup field” on page 23-8). To specify the lookup field for the list box items,

- 1 Set the *DataSource* property of the list box to the data source for the dataset containing the lookup field to use.
- 2 Choose the lookup field to use from the drop-down list for the *DataField* property.

When you activate a table associated with a lookup control, the control recognizes that its data field is a lookup field, and displays the appropriate values from the lookup.

- **A secondary data source, data field, and key.**

If you have not defined a lookup field for a dataset, you can establish a similar relationship using a secondary data source, a field value to search on in the secondary data source, and a field value to return as a list item. To specify a secondary data source for list box items,

- 1 Set the *DataSource* property of the list box to the data source for the control.
- 2 Choose a field into which to insert looked-up values from the drop-down list for the *DataField* property. The field you choose cannot be a lookup field.
- 3 Set the *ListSource* property of the list box to the data source for the dataset that contain the field whose values you want to look up.
- 4 Choose a field to use as a lookup key from the drop-down list for the *KeyField* property. The drop-down list displays fields for the dataset associated with data source you specified in Step 3. The field you choose need not be part of an index, but if it is, lookup performance is even faster.
- 5 Choose a field whose values to return from the drop-down list for the *ListField* property. The drop-down list displays fields for the dataset associated with the data source you specified in Step 3.

When you activate a table associated with a lookup control, the control recognizes that its list items are derived from a secondary source, and displays the appropriate values from that source.

To specify the number of items that appear at one time in a *TDBLookupListBox* control, use the *RowCount* property. The height of the list box is adjusted to fit this row count exactly.

To specify the number of items that appear in the drop-down list of *TDBLookupComboBox*, use the *DropDownRows* property instead.

Note You can also set up a column in a data grid to act as a lookup combo box. For information on how to do this, see “Defining a lookup list column” on page 19-20.

Handling Boolean field values with check boxes

TDBCheckBox is a data-aware check box control. It can be used to set the values of Boolean fields in a dataset. For example, a customer invoice form might have a check box control that when checked indicates the customer is tax-exempt, and when unchecked indicates that the customer is not tax-exempt.

The data-aware check box control manages its checked or unchecked state by comparing the value of the current field to the contents of *ValueChecked* and *ValueUnchecked* properties. If the field value matches the *ValueChecked* property, the control is checked. Otherwise, if the field matches the *ValueUnchecked* property, the control is unchecked.

Note The values in *ValueChecked* and *ValueUnchecked* cannot be identical.

Set the *ValueChecked* property to a value the control should post to the database if the control is checked when the user moves to another record. By default, this value is set to "true," but you can make it any alphanumeric value appropriate to your needs. You can also enter a semicolon-delimited list of items as the value of *ValueChecked*. If any of the items matches the contents of that field in the current record, the check box is checked. For example, you can specify a *ValueChecked* string like:

```
DBCheckBox1->ValueChecked = "true;Yes;On";
```

If the field for the current record contains values of "true," "Yes," or "On," then the check box is checked. Comparison of the field to *ValueChecked* strings is case-insensitive. If a user checks a box for which there are multiple *ValueChecked* strings, the first string is the value that is posted to the database.

Set the *ValueUnchecked* property to a value the control should post to the database if the control is not checked when the user moves to another record. By default, this value is set to "false," but you can make it any alphanumeric value appropriate to your needs. You can also enter a semicolon-delimited list of items as the value of *ValueUnchecked*. If any of the items matches the contents of that field in the current record, the check box is unchecked.

A data-aware check box is disabled whenever the field for the current record does not contain one of the values listed in the *ValueChecked* or *ValueUnchecked* properties.

If the field with which a check box is associated is a logical field, the check box is always checked if the contents of the field is **true**, and it is unchecked if the contents of the field is **false**. In this case, strings entered in the *ValueChecked* and *ValueUnchecked* properties have no effect on logical fields.

Restricting field values with radio controls

TDBRadioGroup is a data-aware version of a radio group control. It enables you to set the value of a data field with a radio button control where there is a limited number of possible values for the field. The radio group includes one button for each value a field can accept. Users can set the value for a data field by selecting the desired radio button.

The *Items* property determines the radio buttons that appear in the group. *Items* is a string list. One radio button is displayed for each string in *Items*, and each string appears to the right of a radio button as the button's label.

If the current value of a field associated with a radio group matches one of the strings in the *Items* property, that radio button is selected. For example, if three strings, “Red,” “Yellow,” and “Blue,” are listed for *Items*, and the field for the current record contains the value “Blue,” then the third button in the group appears selected.

Note If the field does not match any strings in *Items*, a radio button may still be selected if the field matches a string in the *Values* property. If the field for the current record does not match any strings in *Items* or *Values*, no radio button is selected.

The *Values* property can contain an optional list of strings that can be returned to the dataset when a user selects a radio button and posts a record. Strings are associated with buttons in numeric sequence. The first string is associated with the first button, the second string with the second button, and so on. For example, suppose *Items* contains “Red,” “Yellow,” and “Blue,” and *Values* contains “Magenta,” “Yellow,” and “Cyan.” If a user selects the button labeled “Red,” “Magenta” is posted to the database.

If strings for *Values* are not provided, the *Item* string for a selected radio button is returned to the database when a record is posted.

Displaying multiple records

Sometimes you want to display many records in the same form. For example, an invoicing application might show all the orders made by a single customer on the same form.

To display multiple records, use a grid control. Grid controls provide a multi-field, multi-record view of data that can make your application’s user interface more compelling and effective. They are discussed in “Viewing and editing data with TDBGrid” on page 19-15 and “Creating a grid that contains other data-aware controls” on page 19-27.

Note You can’t display multiple records when using a unidirectional dataset.

You may want to design a user interface that displays both fields from a single record and grids that represent multiple records. There are two models that combine these two approaches:

- **Master-detail forms:** You can represent information from both a master table and a detail table by including both controls that display a single field and grid controls. For example, you could display information about a single customer with a detail grid that displays the orders for that customer. For information about linking the underlying tables in a master-detail form, see “Creating master/detail relationships” on page 22-34 and “Establishing master/detail relationships using parameters” on page 22-46.
- **Drill-down forms:** In a form that displays multiple records, you can include single field controls that display detailed information from the current record only. This approach is particularly useful when the records include long memos or graphic information. As the user scrolls through the records of the grid, the memo or graphic updates to represent the value of the current record. Setting this up is very

easy. The synchronization between the two displays is automatic if the grid and the memo or image control share a common data source.

Tip It is generally not a good idea to combine these two approaches on a single form. It is usually confusing for users to understand the data relationships in such forms.

Viewing and editing data with TDBGrid

A *TDBGrid* control lets you view and edit records in a dataset in a tabular grid format.

Figure 19.1 TDBGrid control

Current field

Column titles

Record indicator

| VendorName | Address1 | City | State | |
|---------------------|--------------------|------------------|-------|--|
| Cacor Corporation | 161 Southfield Rd | Southfield | OH | |
| Underwater | 50 N 3rd Street | Indianapolis | IN | |
| J.W. Luscher Mfg. | 65 Addams Street | Berkely | MA | |
| Scuba Professionals | 3105 East Brace | Rancho Dominguez | CA | |
| Divers' Supply Shop | 5208 University Dr | Macon | GA | |
| Techniques | 52 Dolphin Drive | Redwood City | CA | |
| Perry Scuba | 3443 James Ave | Hapeville | GA | |

Three factors affect the appearance of records displayed in a grid control:

- Existence of persistent column objects defined for the grid using the Columns editor. Persistent column objects provide great flexibility setting grid and data appearance. For information on using persistent columns, see “Creating a customized grid” on page 19-16.
- Creation of persistent field components for the dataset displayed in the grid. For more information about creating persistent field components using the Fields editor, see Chapter 23, “Working with field components.”
- The dataset’s *ObjectView* property setting for grids displaying ADT and array fields. See “Displaying ADT and array fields” on page 19-22.

A grid control has a *Columns* property that is itself a wrapper on a *TDBGridColumnns* object. *TDBGridColumnns* is a collection of *TColumn* objects representing all of the columns in a grid control. You can use the Columns editor to set up column attributes at design time, or use the *Columns* property of the grid to access the properties, events, and methods of *TDBGridColumnns* at runtime.

Using a grid control in its default state

The *State* property of the grid’s *Columns* property indicates whether persistent column objects exist for the grid. *Columns->State* is a runtime-only property that is automatically set for a grid. The default state is *csDefault*, meaning that persistent column objects do not exist for the grid. In that case, the display of data in the grid is

determined primarily by the properties of the fields in the grid's dataset, or, if there are no persistent field components, by a default set of display characteristics.

When the grid's *Columns->State* property is *csDefault*, grid columns are dynamically generated from the visible fields of the dataset and the order of columns in the grid matches the order of fields in the dataset. Every column in the grid is associated with a field component. Property changes to field components immediately show up in the grid.

Using a grid control with dynamically-generated columns is useful for viewing and editing the contents of arbitrary tables selected at runtime. Because the grid's structure is not set, it can change dynamically to accommodate different datasets. A single grid with dynamically-generated columns can display a Paradox table at one moment, then switch to display the results of an SQL query when the grid's *DataSource* property changes or when the *DataSet* property of the data source itself is changed.

You can change the appearance of a dynamic column at design time or runtime, but what you are actually modifying are the corresponding properties of the field component displayed in the column. Properties of dynamic columns exist only so long as a column is associated with a particular field in a single dataset. For example, changing the *Width* property of a column changes the *DisplayWidth* property of the field associated with that column. Changes made to column properties that are not based on field properties, such as *Font*, exist only for the lifetime of the column.

If a grid's dataset consists of dynamic field components, the fields are destroyed each time the dataset is closed. When the field components are destroyed, all dynamic columns associated with them are destroyed as well. If a grid's dataset consists of persistent field components, the field components exist even when the dataset is closed, so the columns associated with those fields also retain their properties when the dataset is closed.

Note Changing a grid's *Columns->State* property to *csDefault* at runtime deletes all column objects in the grid (even persistent columns), and rebuilds dynamic columns based on the visible fields of the grid's dataset.

Creating a customized grid

A customized grid is one for which you define persistent column objects that describe how a column appears and how the data in the column is displayed. A customized grid lets you configure multiple grids to present different views of the same dataset (different column orders, different field choices, and different column colors and fonts, for example). A customized grid also enables you to let users modify the appearance of the grid at runtime without affecting the fields used by the grid or the field order of the dataset.

Customized grids are best used with datasets whose structure is known at design time. Because they expect field names established at design time to exist in the dataset, customized grids are not well suited to browsing arbitrary tables selected at runtime.

Understanding persistent columns

When you create persistent column objects for a grid, they are only loosely associated with underlying fields in a grid's dataset. Default property values for persistent columns are dynamically fetched from a default source (the associated field or the grid itself) until a value is assigned to the column property. Until you assign a column property a value, its value changes as its default source changes. Once you assign a value to a column property, it no longer changes when its default source changes.

For example, the default source for a column title caption is an associated field's *DisplayLabel* property. If you modify the *DisplayLabel* property, the column title reflects that change immediately. If you then assign a string to the column title's caption, the tile caption becomes independent of the associated field's *DisplayLabel* property. Subsequent changes to the field's *DisplayLabel* property no longer affect the column's title.

Persistent columns exist independently from field components with which they are associated. In fact, persistent columns do not have to be associated with field objects at all. If a persistent column's *FieldName* property is blank, or if the field name does not match the name of any field in the grid's current dataset, the column's *Field* property is NULL and the column is drawn with blank cells. If you override the cell's default drawing method, you can display your own custom information in the blank cells. For example, you can use a blank column to display aggregated values on the last record of a group of records that the aggregate summarizes. Another possibility is to display a bitmap or bar chart that graphically depicts some aspect of the record's data.

Two or more persistent columns can be associated with the same field in a dataset. For example, you might display a part number field at the left and right extremes of a wide grid to make it easier to find the part number without having to scroll the grid.

Note Because persistent columns do not have to be associated with a field in a dataset, and because multiple columns can reference the same field, a customized grid's *FieldCount* property can be less than or equal to the grid's column count. Also note that if the currently selected column in a customized grid is not associated with a field, the grid's *SelectedField* property is NULL and the *SelectedIndex* property is -1.

Persistent columns can be configured to display grid cells as a combo box drop-down list of lookup values from another dataset or from a static pick list, or as an ellipsis button (...) in a cell that can be clicked upon to launch special data viewers or dialogs related to the current cell.

Creating persistent columns

To customize the appearance of grid at design time, you invoke the Columns editor to create a set of persistent column objects for the grid. At runtime, the *State* property for a grid with persistent column objects is automatically set to *csCustomized*.

To create persistent columns for a grid control,

- 1 Select the grid component in the form.
- 2 Invoke the Columns editor by double clicking on the grid's *Columns* property in the Object Inspector.

The Columns list box displays the persistent columns that have been defined for the selected grid. When you first bring up the Columns editor, this list is empty because the grid is in its default state, containing only dynamic columns.

You can create persistent columns for all fields in a dataset at once, or you can create persistent columns on an individual basis. To create persistent columns for all fields:

- 1 Right-click the grid to invoke the context menu and choose Add All Fields. Note that if the grid is not already associated with a data source, Add All Fields is disabled. Associate the grid with a data source that has an active dataset before choosing Add All Fields.
- 2 If the grid already contains persistent columns, a dialog box asks if you want to delete the existing columns, or append to the column set. If you choose Yes, any existing persistent column information is removed, and all fields in the current dataset are inserted by field name according to their order in the dataset. If you choose No, any existing persistent column information is retained, and new column information, based on any additional fields in the dataset, are appended to the dataset.
- 3 Click Close to apply the persistent columns to the grid and close the dialog box.

To create persistent columns individually:

- 1 Choose the Add button in the Columns editor. The new column will be selected in the list box. The new column is given a sequential number and default name (for example, 0 - TColumn).
- 2 To associate a field with this new column, set the *FieldName* property in the Object Inspector.
- 3 To set the title for the new column, expand the *Title* property in the Object Inspector and set its *Caption* property.
- 4 Close the Columns editor to apply the persistent columns to the grid and close the dialog box.

At runtime, you can switch to persistent columns by assigning *csCustomized* to the *Columns::State* property. Any existing columns in the grid are destroyed and new persistent columns are built for each field in the grid's dataset. You can then add a persistent column at runtime by calling the *Add* method for the column list:

```
DBGrid1->Columns->Add();
```

Deleting persistent columns

Deleting a persistent column from a grid is useful for eliminating fields that you do not want to display. To remove a persistent column from a grid,

- 1 Double-click the grid to display the Columns editor.

- 2 Select the field to remove in the Columns list box.
- 3 Click Delete (you can also use the context menu or *Del* key, to remove a column).

Note If you delete all the columns from a grid, the *Columns->State* property reverts to its *csDefault* state and automatically build dynamic columns for each field in the dataset.

You can delete a persistent column at runtime by simply freeing the column object:

```
delete DBGrid1->Columns->Items[5];
```

Arranging the order of persistent columns

The order in which columns appear in the Columns editor is the same as the order the columns appear in the grid. You can change the column order by dragging and dropping columns within the Columns list box.

To change the order of a column,

- 1 Select the column in the Columns list box.
- 2 Drag it to a new location in the list box.

You can also change the column order at runtime by clicking on the column title and dragging the column to a new position.

Note Reordering persistent fields in the Fields editor also reorders columns in a default grid, but not a custom grid.

Important You cannot reorder columns in grids containing both dynamic columns and dynamic fields at design time, since there is nothing persistent to record the altered field or column order.

At runtime, a user can use the mouse to drag a column to a new location in the grid if its *DragMode* property is set to *dmManual*. Reordering the columns of a grid with a *State* property of *csDefault* state also reorders field components in the dataset underlying the grid. The order of fields in the physical table is not affected. To prevent a user from rearranging columns at runtime, set the grid's *DragMode* property to *dmAutomatic*.

At runtime, the grid's *OnColumnMoved* event fires after a column has been moved.

Setting column properties at design time

Column properties determine how data is displayed in the cells of that column. Most column properties obtain their default values from properties associated with another component (called the *default source*) such as a grid or an associated field component.

To set a column's properties, select the column in The Columns editor and set its properties in the Object Inspector. The following table summarizes key column properties you can set.

Table 19.2 Column properties

| Property | Purpose |
|--------------|---|
| Alignment | Left justifies, right justifies, or centers the field data in the column. Default source: <i>TField::Alignment</i> . |
| ButtonStyle | <i>cbsAuto</i> : (default) Displays a drop-down list if the associated field is a lookup field, or if the column's <i>PickList</i> property contains data. <i>cbsEllipsis</i> : Displays an ellipsis (...) button to the right of the cell. Clicking on the button fires the grid's <i>OnEditButtonClick</i> event. <i>cbsNone</i> : The column uses only the normal edit control to edit data in the column. |
| Color | Specifies the background color of the cells of the column. Default source: <i>TDBGrid::Color</i> . (For text foreground color, see the <i>Font</i> property.) |
| DropDownRows | The number of lines of text displayed by the drop-down list. Default: 7. |
| Expanded | Specifies whether the column is expanded. Only applies to columns representing ADT or array fields. |
| FieldName | Specifies the field name associated with this column. This can be blank. |
| ReadOnly | true : The data in the column cannot be edited by the user. false : (default) The data in the column can be edited. |
| Width | Specifies the width of the column in screen pixels. Default source: <i>TField::DisplayWidth</i> . |
| Font | Specifies the font type, size, and color used to draw text in the column. Default source: <i>TDBGrid::Font</i> . |
| PickList | Contains a list of values to display in a drop-down list in the column. |
| Title | Sets properties for the title of the selected column. |

The following table summarizes the options you can specify for the *Title* property.

Table 19.3 Expanded TColumn Title properties

| Property | Purpose |
|-----------|---|
| Alignment | Left justifies (default), right justifies, or centers the caption text in the column title. |
| Caption | Specifies the text to display in the column title. Default source: <i>TField::DisplayLabel</i> . |
| Color | Specifies the background color used to draw the column title cell. Default source: <i>TDBGrid::FixedColor</i> . |
| Font | Specifies the font type, size, and color used to draw text in the column title. Default source: <i>TDBGrid::TitleFont</i> . |

Defining a lookup list column

You can create a column that displays a drop-down list of values, similar to a lookup combo box control. To specify that the column acts like a combo box, set the column's *ButtonStyle* property to *cbsAuto*. Once you populate the list with values, the grid automatically displays a combo box-like drop-down button when a cell of that column is in edit mode.

There are two ways to populate that list with the values for users to select:

- You can fetch the values from a lookup table. To make a column display a drop-down list of values drawn from a separate lookup table, you must define a lookup field in the dataset. For information about creating lookup fields, see “Defining a lookup field” on page 23-8. Once the lookup field is defined, set the column’s *FieldName* to the lookup field name. The drop-down list is automatically populated with lookup values defined by the lookup field.
- You can specify a list of values explicitly at design time. To enter the list values at design time, double-click the *PickList* property for the column in the Object Inspector. This brings up the String List editor, where you can enter the values that populate the pick list for the column.

By default, the drop-down list displays 7 values. You can change the length of this list by setting the *DropDownRows* property.

Note To restore a column with an explicit pick list to its normal behavior, delete all the text from the pick list using the String List editor.

Putting a button in a column

A column can display an ellipsis button (...) to the right of the normal cell editor. *Ctrl+Enter* or a mouse click fires the grid’s *OnEditButtonClick* event. You can use the ellipsis button to bring up forms containing more detailed views of the data in the column. For example, in a table that displays summaries of invoices, you could set up an ellipsis button in the invoice total column to bring up a form that displays the items in that invoice, or the tax calculation method, and so on. For graphic fields, you could use the ellipsis button to bring up a form that displays an image.

To create an ellipsis button in a column:

- 1 Select the column in the *Columns* list box.
- 2 Set *ButtonStyle* to *cbsEllipsis*.
- 3 Write an *OnEditButtonClick* event handler.

Restoring default values to a column

At runtime you can test a column’s *AssignedValues* property to determine whether a column property has been explicitly assigned. Values that are not explicitly defined are dynamically based on the associated field or the grid’s defaults.

You can undo property changes made to one or more columns. In the Columns editor, select the column or columns to restore, and then select Restore Defaults from the context menu. Restore defaults discards assigned property settings and restores a column’s properties to those derived from its underlying field component

At runtime, you can reset all default properties for a single column by calling the column’s *RestoreDefaults* method. You can also reset default properties for all columns in a grid by calling the column list’s *RestoreDefaults* method:

```
DBGrid1->Columns->RestoreDefaults();
```

Displaying ADT and array fields

Sometimes the fields of the grid's dataset do not represent simple values such as text, graphics, numerical values, and so on. Some database servers allow fields that are a composite of simpler data types, such as ADT fields or array fields.

There are two ways a grid can display composite fields:

- It can “flatten out” the field so that each of the simpler types that make up the field appears as a separate field in the dataset. When a composite field is flattened out, its constituents appear as separate fields that reflect their common source only in that each field name is preceded by the name of the common parent field in the underlying database table.

To display composite fields as if they were flattened out, set the dataset's *ObjectView* property to **false**. The dataset stores composite fields as a set of separate fields, and the grid reflects this by assigning each constituent part a separate column.

- It can display composite fields in a single column, reflecting the fact that they are a single field. When displaying composite fields in a single column, the column can be expanded and collapsed by clicking on the arrow in the title bar of the field, or by setting the *Expanded* property of the column:
 - When a column is expanded, each child field appears in its own sub-column with a title bar that appears below the title bar of the parent field. That is, the title bar for the grid increases in height, with the first row giving the name of the composite field, and the second row subdividing that for the individual parts. Fields that are not composites appear with title bars that are extra high. This expansion continues for constituents that are in turn composite fields (for example, a detail table nested in a detail table), with the title bar growing in height accordingly.
 - When the field is collapsed, only one column appears with an uneditable comma delimited string containing the child fields.

To display a composite field in an expanding and collapsing column, set the dataset's *ObjectView* property to **true**. The dataset stores the composite field as a single field component that contains a set of nested sub-fields. The grid reflects this in a column that can expand or collapse

Figure 19.2 shows a grid with an ADT field and an array field. The dataset's *ObjectView* property is set to **false** so that each child field has a column.

Figure 19.2 TDBGrid control with ObjectView set to false

| ADT child fields | | | | Array child fields | | |
|------------------|----------------|-----------------|---------------|--------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| ID_KEY | NAME_ADT.FIRST | NAME_ADT.MIDDLE | NAME_ADT.LAST | TELNOS_ARRAY[0] | TELNOS_ARRAY[1] | TELNOS_ARRAY[2] |
| 1 | Stephan | | Wright | 415-908-9875 | 902-786-1245 | |
| 2 | Whitney | N | Long | | | |
| 3 | Chris | T | Scanlan | 234-232-1343 | | |

Figure 19.3 and 19.4 show the grid with an ADT field and an array field. Figure 19.3 shows the fields collapsed. In this state they cannot be edited. Figure 19.4 shows the fields expanded. The fields are expanded and collapsed by clicking on the arrow in the fields title bar.

Figure 19.3 TDBGrid control with Expanded set to false

| ID_KEY | NAME_ADT | TELNOS_ARRAY |
|--------|---------------------|--|
| 1 | (Stephan, Wright) | (415-908-9875, 902-786-1245, , , , , ,) |
| 2 | (Whitney, N. Long) | (, , 510-454-7234, , , , ,) |
| 3 | (Chris, T. Scanlan) | (234-232-1343, , , , , , ,) |

Figure 19.4 TDBGrid control with Expanded set to true

| ADT child field columns | | | | Array child field columns | | | |
|-------------------------|----------|--------|---------|---------------------------|-----------------|-----------------|--------------|
| ID_KEY | NAME_ADT | | | TELNOS_ARRAY | | | |
| | FIRST | MIDDLE | LAST | TELNOS_ARRAY[0] | TELNOS_ARRAY[1] | TELNOS_ARRAY[2] | TELNO |
| 1 | Stephan | | Wright | 415-908-9875 | 902-786-1245 | | |
| 2 | Whitney | N | Long | | | | 510-454-1234 |
| 3 | Chris | T | Scanlan | 234-232-1343 | | | |

The following table lists the properties that affect the way ADT and array fields appear in a *TDBGrid*:

Table 19.4 Properties that affect the way composite fields appear

| Property | Object | Purpose |
|--------------|----------|---|
| Expandable | TColumn | Indicates whether the column can be expanded to show child fields in separate, editable columns. (read-only) |
| Expanded | TColumn | Specifies whether the column is expanded. |
| MaxTitleRows | TDBGrid | Specifies the maximum number of title rows that can appear in the grid |
| ObjectView | TDataSet | Specifies whether fields are displayed flattened out, or in object mode, where each object field can be expanded and collapsed. |
| ParentColumn | TColumn | Refers to the TColumn object that owns the child field's column. |

Note In addition to ADT and array fields, some datasets include fields that refer to another dataset (dataset fields) or a record in another dataset (reference) fields. Data-aware grids display such fields as “(DataSet)” or “(Reference)”, respectively. At runtime an ellipsis button appears to the right. Clicking on the ellipsis brings up a new form with a grid displaying the contents of the field. For dataset fields, this grid displays the dataset that is the field’s value. For reference fields, this grid contains a single row that displays the record from another dataset.

Setting grid options

You can use the grid *Options* property at design time to control basic grid behavior and appearance at runtime. When a grid component is first placed on a form at design time, the *Options* property in the Object Inspector is displayed with a + (plus) sign to indicate that the *Options* property can be expanded to display a series of Boolean properties that you can set individually. To view and set these properties, click on the + sign. The list of options in the Object Inspector below the *Options* property. The + sign changes to a – (minus) sign, that collapses the list back when you click it.

The following table lists the *Options* properties that can be set, and describes how they affect the grid at runtime.

Table 19.5 Expanded TDBGrid Options properties

| Option | Purpose |
|--------------------|--|
| dgEditing | true: (Default). Enables editing, inserting, and deleting records in the grid. false: Disables editing, inserting, and deleting records in the grid. |
| dgAlwaysShowEditor | true: When a field is selected, it is in Edit state. false: (Default). A field is not automatically in Edit state when selected. |
| dgTitles | true: (Default). Displays field names across the top of the grid. false: Field name display is turned off. |
| dgIndicator | true: (Default). The indicator column is displayed at the left of the grid, and the current record indicator (an arrow at the left of the grid) is activated to show the current record. On insert, the arrow becomes an asterisk. On edit, the arrow becomes an I-beam. false: The indicator column is turned off. |
| dgColumnResize | true: (Default). Columns can be resized by dragging the column rulers in the title area. Resizing changes the corresponding width of the underlying <i>TField</i> component. false: Columns cannot be resized in the grid. |
| dgColLines | true: (Default). Displays vertical dividing lines between columns. false: Does not display dividing lines between columns. |
| dgRowLines | true: (Default). Displays horizontal dividing lines between records. false: Does not display dividing lines between records. |
| dgTabs | true: (Default). Enables tabbing between fields in records. false: Tabbing exits the grid control. |

Table 19.5 Expanded TDBGrid Options properties (continued)

| Option | Purpose |
|-----------------------|---|
| dgRowSelect | true: The selection bar spans the entire width of the grid. false: (Default). Selecting a field in a record selects only that field. |
| dgAlwaysShowSelection | true: (Default). The selection bar in the grid is always visible, even if another control has focus. false: The selection bar in the grid is only visible when the grid has focus. |
| dgConfirmDelete | true: (Default). Prompt for confirmation to delete records (<i>Ctrl+Del</i>). false: Delete records without confirmation. |
| dgCancelOnExit | true: (Default). Cancels a pending insert when focus leaves the grid. This option prevents inadvertent posting of partial or blank records. false: Permits pending inserts. |
| dgMultiSelect | true: Allows user to select noncontiguous rows in the grid using <i>Ctrl+Shift</i> or <i>Shift+ arrow</i> keys. false: (Default). Does not allow user to multi-select rows. |

Editing in the grid

At runtime, you can use a grid to modify existing data and enter new records, if the following default conditions are met:

- The *CanModify* property of the *Dataset* is **true**.
- The *ReadOnly* property of grid is *false*.

When a user edits a record in the grid, changes to each field are posted to an internal record buffer, but are not posted until the user moves to a different record in the grid. Even if focus is changed to another control on a form, the grid does not post changes until another the cursor for the dataset is moved to another record. When a record is posted, the dataset checks all associated data-aware components for a change in status. If there is a problem updating any fields that contain modified data, the grid raises an exception, and does not modify the record.

Note If your application caches updates, posting record changes only adds them to an internal cache. They are not posted back to the underlying database table until your application applies the updates.

You can cancel all edits for a record by pressing *Esc* in any field before moving to another record.

Controlling grid drawing

Your first level of control over how a grid control draws itself is setting column properties. The grid automatically uses the font, color, and alignment properties of a column to draw the cells of that column. The text of data fields is drawn using the *DisplayFormat* or *EditFormat* properties of the field component associated with the column.

You can augment the default grid display logic with code in a grid's *OnDrawColumnCell* event. If the grid's *DefaultDrawing* property is **true**, all the normal drawing is performed before your *OnDrawColumnCell* event handler is called. Your code can then draw on top of the default display. This is primarily useful when you have defined a blank persistent column and want to draw special graphics in that column's cells.

If you want to replace the drawing logic of the grid entirely, set *DefaultDrawing* to **false** and place your drawing code in the grid's *OnDrawColumnCell* event. If you want to replace the drawing logic only in certain columns or for certain field data types, you can call the *DefaultDrawColumnCell* inside your *OnDrawColumnCell* event handler to have the grid use its normal drawing code for selected columns. This reduces the amount of work you have to do if you only want to change the way Boolean field types are drawn, for example.

Responding to user actions at runtime

You can modify grid behavior by writing event handlers to respond to specific actions within the grid at runtime. Because a grid typically displays many fields and records at once, you may have very specific needs to respond to changes to individual columns. For example, you might want to activate and deactivate a button elsewhere on the form every time a user enters and exits a specific column.

The following table lists the grid events available in the Object Inspector.

Table 19.6 Grid control events

| Event | Purpose |
|-------------------|---|
| OnCellClick | Occurs when a user clicks on a cell in the grid. |
| OnColEnter | Occurs when a user moves into a column on the grid. |
| OnColExit | Occurs when a user leaves a column on the grid. |
| OnColumnMoved | Occurs when the user moves a column to a new location. |
| OnDblClick | Occurs when a user double clicks in the grid. |
| OnDragDrop | Occurs when a user drags and drops in the grid. |
| OnDragOver | Occurs when a user drags over the grid. |
| OnDrawColumnCell | Occurs when application needs to draw individual cells. |
| OnDrawDataCell | (obsolete) Occurs when application needs to draw individual cells if <i>State</i> is <i>csDefault</i> . |
| OnEditButtonClick | Occurs when the user clicks on an ellipsis button in a column. |
| OnEndDrag | Occurs when a user stops dragging on the grid. |
| OnEnter | Occurs when the grid gets focus. |
| OnExit | Occurs when the grid loses focus. |
| OnKeyDown | Occurs when a user presses any key or key combination on the keyboard when in the grid. |
| OnKeyPress | Occurs when a user presses a single alphanumeric key on the keyboard when in the grid. |
| OnKeyUp | Occurs when a user releases a key when in the grid. |
| OnStartDrag | Occurs when a user starts dragging on the grid. |
| OnTitleClick | Occurs when a user clicks the title for a column. |

There are many uses for these events. For example, you might write a handler for the *OnDbClick* event that pops up a list from which a user can choose a value to enter in a column. Such a handler would use the *SelectedField* property to determine to current row and column.

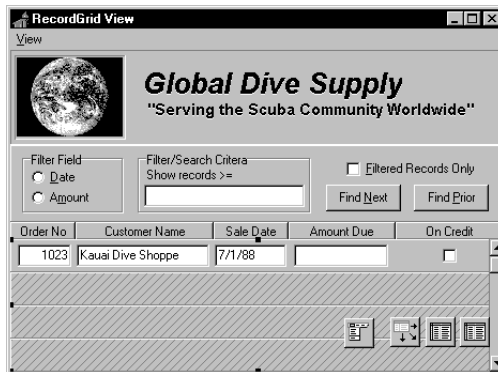
Creating a grid that contains other data-aware controls

A *TDBCtrlGrid* control displays multiple fields in multiple records in a tabular grid format. Each cell in a grid displays multiple fields from a single row. To use a database control grid:

- 1 Place a database control grid on a form.
- 2 Set the grid's *DataSource* property to the name of a data source.
- 3 Place individual data controls within the design cell for the grid. The design cell for the grid is the top or leftmost cell in the grid, and is the only cell into which you can place other controls.
- 4 Set the *DataField* property for each data control to the name of a field. The data source for these data controls is already set to the data source of the database control grid.
- 5 Arrange the controls within the cell as desired.

When you compile and run an application containing a database control grid, the arrangement of data controls you set in the design cell at runtime is replicated in each cell of the grid. Each cell displays a different record in a dataset.

Figure 19.5 TDBCtrlGrid at design time



The following table summarizes some of the unique properties for database control grids that you can set at design time:

Table 19.7 Selected database control grid properties

| Property | Purpose |
|-------------|---|
| AllowDelete | true (default): Permits record deletion. false : Prevents record deletion. |
| AllowInsert | true (default): Permits record insertion. false : Prevents record insertion. |
| ColCount | Sets the number of columns in the grid. Default = 1. |
| Orientation | <i>goVertical</i> (default): Display records from top to bottom. <i>goHorizontal</i> : Displays records from left to right. |
| PanelHeight | Sets the height for an individual panel. Default = 72. |
| PanelWidth | Sets the width for an individual panel. Default = 200. |
| RowCount | Sets the number of panels to display. Default = 3. |
| ShowFocus | true (default): Displays a focus rectangle around the current record's panel at runtime. false : Does not display a focus rectangle. |

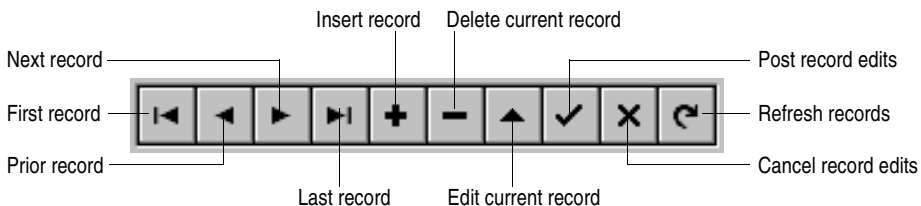
For more information about database control grid properties and methods, see the online *VCL Reference*.

Navigating and manipulating records

TDBNavigator provides users a simple control for navigating through records in a dataset, and for manipulating records. The navigator consists of a series of buttons that enable a user to scroll forward or backward through records one at a time, go to the first record, go to the last record, insert a new record, update an existing record, post data changes, cancel data changes, delete a record, and refresh record display.

Figure 19.6 shows the navigator that appears by default when you place it on a form at design time. The navigator consists of a series of buttons that let a user navigate from one record to another in a dataset, and edit, delete, insert, and post records. The *VisibleButtons* property of the navigator enables you to hide or show a subset of these buttons dynamically.

Figure 19.6 Buttons on the TDBNavigator control



The following table describes the buttons on the navigator.

Table 19.8 TDBNavigator buttons

| Button | Purpose |
|---------|---|
| First | Calls the dataset's <i>First</i> method to set the current record to the first record. |
| Prior | Calls the dataset's <i>Prior</i> method to set the current record to the previous record. |
| Next | Calls the dataset's <i>Next</i> method to set the current record to the next record. |
| Last | Calls the dataset's <i>Last</i> method to set the current record to the last record. |
| Insert | Calls the dataset's <i>Insert</i> method to insert a new record before the current record, and set the dataset in Insert state. |
| Delete | Deletes the current record. If the <i>ConfirmDelete</i> property is true it prompts for confirmation before deleting. |
| Edit | Puts the dataset in Edit state so that the current record can be modified. |
| Post | Writes changes in the current record to the database. |
| Cancel | Cancels edits to the current record, and returns the dataset to Browse state. |
| Refresh | Clears data control display buffers, then refreshes its buffers from the physical table or query. Useful if the underlying data may have been changed by another application. |

Choosing navigator buttons to display

When you first place a *TDBNavigator* on a form at design time, all its buttons are visible. You can use the *VisibleButtons* property to turn off buttons you do not want to use on a form. For example, when working with a unidirectional dataset, only the *First*, *Next*, and *Refresh* buttons are meaningful. On a form that is intended for browsing rather than editing, you might want to disable the *Edit*, *Insert*, *Delete*, *Post*, and *Cancel* buttons.

Hiding and showing navigator buttons at design time

The *VisibleButtons* property in the Object Inspector is displayed with a + sign to indicate that it can be expanded to display a Boolean value for each button on the navigator. To view and set these values, click on the + sign. The list of buttons that can be turned on or off appears in the Object Inspector below the *VisibleButtons* property. The + sign changes to a – (minus) sign, which you can click to collapse the list of properties.

Button visibility is indicated by the *Boolean* state of the button value. If a value is set to **true**, the button appears in the *TDBNavigator*. If **false**, the button is removed from the navigator at design time and runtime.

Note As button values are set to **false**, they are removed from the *TDBNavigator* on the form, and the remaining buttons are expanded in width to fill the control. You can drag the control's handles to resize the buttons.

Hiding and showing navigator buttons at runtime

At runtime you can hide or show navigator buttons in response to user actions or application states. For example, suppose you provide a single navigator for

navigating through two different datasets, one of which permits users to edit records, and the other of which is read-only. When you switch between datasets, you want to hide the navigator's *Insert*, *Delete*, *Edit*, *Post*, *Cancel*, and *Refresh* buttons for the read-only dataset, and show them for the other dataset.

For example, suppose you want to prevent edits to the *OrdersTable* by hiding the *Insert*, *Delete*, *Edit*, *Post*, *Cancel*, and *Refresh* buttons on the navigator, but that you also want to allow editing for the *CustomersTable*. The *VisibleButtons* property controls which buttons are displayed in the navigator. Here's one way you might code the event handler:

```
void __fastcall TForm1::CustomerCompanyEnter(TObject *Sender)
{
    if (Sender == (TObject *)CustomerCompany)
    {
        DBNavigatorAll->DataSource = CustomerCompany->DataSource;
        DBNavigatorAll->VisibleButtons = TButtonSet() << nbFirst << nbPrior << nbNext << nbLast;
    }
    else
    {
        DBNavigatorAll->DataSource = OrderNum->DataSource;
        DBNavigatorAll->VisibleButtons = TButtonSet() << nbInsert << nbDelete << nbEdit
            << nbPost << nbCancel << nbRefresh;
    }
}
```

Displaying fly-over help

To display fly-over help for each navigator button at runtime, set the navigator *ShowHint* property to **true**. When *ShowHint* is **true**, the navigator displays fly-by Help hints whenever you pass the mouse cursor over the navigator buttons. *ShowHint* is **false** by default.

The *Hints* property controls the fly-over help text for each button. By default *Hints* is an empty string list. When *Hints* is empty, each navigator button displays default help text. To provide customized fly-over help for the navigator buttons, use the String list editor to enter a separate line of hint text for each button in the *Hints* property. When present, the strings you provide override the default hints provided by the navigator control.

Using a single navigator for multiple datasets

As with other data-aware controls, a navigator's *DataSource* property specifies the data source that links the control to a dataset. By changing a navigator's *DataSource* property at runtime, a single navigator can provide record navigation and manipulation for multiple datasets.

Suppose a form contains two edit controls linked to the *CustomersTable* and *OrdersTable* datasets through the *CustomersSource* and *OrdersSource* data sources respectively. When a user enters the edit control connected to *CustomersSource*, the navigator should also use *CustomersSource*, and when the user enters the edit control

connected to *OrdersSource*, the navigator should switch to *OrdersSource* as well. You can code an *OnEnter* event handler for one of the edit controls, and then share that event with the other edit control. For example:

```
void __fastcall TForm1::CustomerCompanyEnter(TObject *Sender)
{
    if (Sender == (TObject *)CustomerCompany)
        DBNavigatorAll->DataSource = CustomerCompany->DataSource;
    else
        DBNavigatorAll->DataSource = OrderNum->DataSource;
}
```


Using decision support components

The decision support components help you create cross-tabulated—or, crosstab—tables and graphs. You can then use these tables and graphs to view and summarize data from different perspectives. For more information on cross-tabulated data, see “About crosstabs” on page 20-2.

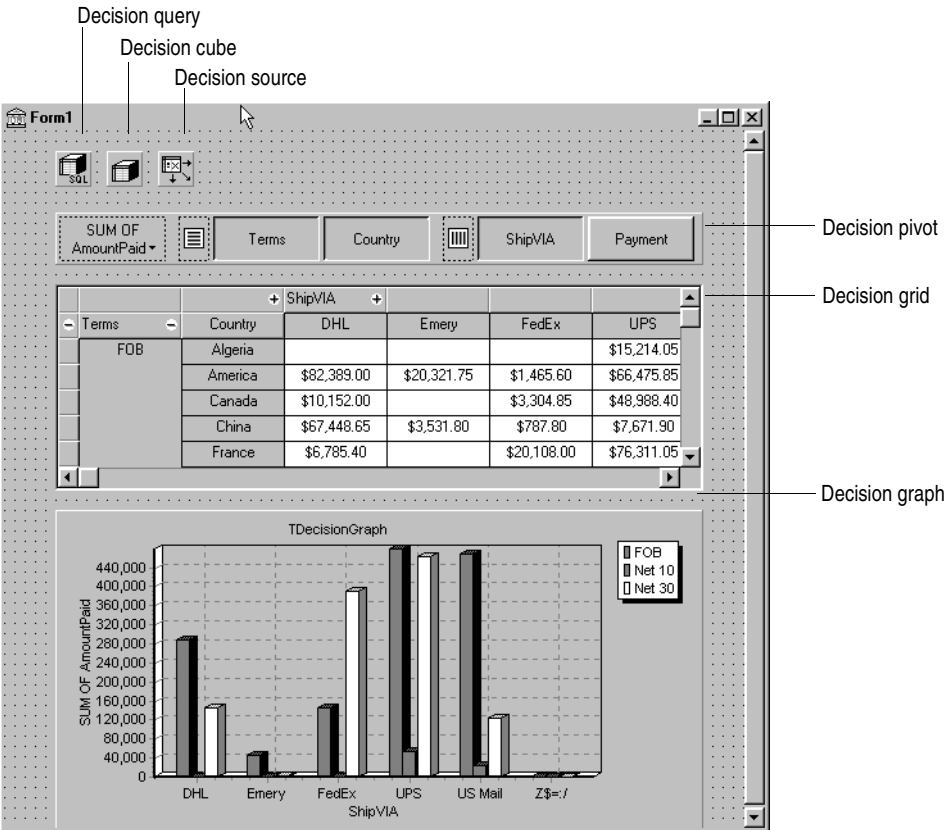
Overview

The decision support components appear on the Decision Cube page of the component palette:

- The decision cube, *TDecisionCube*, is a multidimensional data store.
- The decision source, *TDecisionSource*, defines the current pivot state of a decision grid or a decision graph.
- The decision query, *TDecisionQuery*, is a specialized form of *TQuery* used to define the data in a decision cube.
- The decision pivot, *TDecisionPivot*, lets you open or close decision cube dimensions, or fields, by pressing buttons.
- The decision grid, *TDecisionGrid*, displays single- and multidimensional data in table form.
- The decision graph, *TDecisionGraph*, displays fields from a decision grid as a dynamic graph that changes when data dimensions are modified.

Figure 20.1 shows all the decision support components placed on a form at design time.

Figure 20.1 Decision support components at design time



About crosstabs

Cross-tabulations, or crosstabs, are a way of presenting subsets of data so that relationships and trends are more visible. Table fields become the dimensions of the crosstab while field values define categories and summaries within a dimension.

You can use the decision support components to set up crosstabs in forms. *TDecisionGrid* shows data in a table, while *TDecisionGraph* charts it graphically. *TDecisionPivot* has buttons that make it easier to display and hide dimensions and move them between columns and rows.

Crosstabs can be one-dimensional or multidimensional.

One-dimensional crosstabs

One-dimensional crosstabs show a summary row (or column) for the categories of a single dimension. For example, if Payment is the chosen column dimension and

Amount Paid is the summary category, the crosstab in Figure 20.2 shows the amount paid using each method.

Figure 20.2 One-dimensional crosstab

| Payment | Country | AmountPaid |
|---------|---------|----------------|
| AmEx | | \$134,753.40 |
| Cash | | \$164,003.65 |
| Check | | \$270,492.15 |
| COD | | \$33,776.55 |
| Credit | | \$1,332,430.25 |
| MC | | \$250,163.25 |

Multidimensional crosstabs

Multidimensional crosstabs use additional dimensions for the rows and/or columns. For example, a two-dimensional crosstab could show amounts paid by payment method for each country.

A three-dimensional crosstab could show amounts paid by payment method and terms by country, as shown in Figure 20.3.

Figure 20.3 Three-dimensional crosstab

| Terms | Country | Check | COD | Credit | MC |
|-------|---------|-------------|-----|--------------|-------------|
| FOB | Algeria | \$2,577.85 | | \$1,400.00 | \$13,814.05 |
| | America | | | \$356,816.20 | \$20,881.35 |
| | Canada | | | \$24,485.00 | \$3,304.85 |
| | China | \$61,936.90 | | \$6,641.55 | |

Guidelines for using decision support components

The decision support components listed on page 20-1 can be used together to present multidimensional data as tables and graphs. More than one grid or graph can be attached to each dataset. More than one instance of *TDecisionPivot* can be used to display the data from different perspectives at runtime.

To create a form with tables and graphs of multidimensional data, follow these steps:

- 1 Create a form.
- 2 Add these components to the form and use the Object Inspector to bind them as indicated:
 - A dataset, usually *TDecisionQuery* (for details, see “Creating decision datasets with the Decision Query editor” on page 20-6) or *TQuery*

- A decision cube, *TDecisionCube*, bound to the dataset by setting its *DataSet* property to the dataset's name
 - A decision source, *TDecisionSource*, bound to the decision cube by setting its *DecisionCube* property to the decision cube's name
- 3 Add a decision pivot, *TDecisionPivot*, and bind it to the decision source with the Object Inspector by setting its *DecisionSource* property to the appropriate decision source name. The decision pivot is optional but useful; it lets the form developer and end users change the dimensions displayed in decision grids or decision graphs by pushing buttons.
- In its default orientation, horizontal, buttons on the left side of the decision pivot apply to fields on the left side of the decision grid (rows); buttons on the right side apply to fields at the top of the decision grid (columns).
- You can determine where the decision pivot's buttons appear by setting its *GroupLayout* property to *xtVertical*, *xtLeftTop*, or *xtHorizontal* (the default). For more information on decision pivot properties, see "Using decision pivots" on page 20-9.
- 4 Add one or more decision grids and graphs, bound to the decision source. For details, see "Creating and using decision grids" on page 20-10 and "Creating and using decision graphs" on page 20-13.
- 5 Use the Decision Query editor or *SQL* property of *TDecisionQuery* (or *TQuery*) to specify the tables, fields, and summaries to display in the grid or graph. The last field of the SQL SELECT should be the summary field. The other fields in the SELECT must be GROUP BY fields. For instructions, see "Creating decision datasets with the Decision Query editor" on page 20-6.
- 6 Set the *Active* property of the decision query (or alternate dataset component) to **true**.
- 7 Use the decision grid and graph to show and chart different data dimensions. See "Using decision grids" on page 20-11 and "Using decision graphs" on page 20-13 for instructions and suggestions.

For an illustration of all decision support components on a form, see Figure 20.1 on page 20-2.

Using datasets with decision support components

The only decision support component that binds directly to a dataset is the decision cube, *TDecisionCube*. *TDecisionCube* expects to receive data with groups and summaries defined by an SQL statement of an acceptable format. The GROUP BY phrase must contain the same non-summarized fields (and in the same order) as the SELECT phrase, and summary fields must be identified.

The decision query component, *TDecisionQuery*, is a specialized form of *TQuery*. You can use *TDecisionQuery* to more simply define the setup of dimensions (rows and columns) and summary values used to supply data to decision cubes (*TDecisionCube*). You can also use an ordinary *TQuery* or other BDE-enabled dataset

as a dataset for *TDecisionCube*, but the correct setup of the dataset and *TDecisionCube* are then the responsibility of the designer.

To work correctly with the decision cube, all projected fields in the dataset must either be dimensions or summaries. The summaries should be additive values (like sum or count), and should represent totals for each combination of dimension values. For maximum ease of setup, sums should be named "Sum..." in the dataset while counts should be named "Count...".

The Decision Cube can pivot, subtotal, and drill-in correctly only for summaries whose cells are additive. (SUM and COUNT are additive, while AVERAGE, MAX, and MIN are not.) Build pivoting crosstab displays only for grids that contain only additive aggregators. If you are using non-additive aggregators, use a static decision grid that does not pivot, drill, or subtotal.

Since averages can be calculated using SUM divided by COUNT, a pivoting average is added automatically when SUM and COUNT dimensions for a field are included in the dataset. Use this type of average in preference to an average calculated using an AVERAGE statement.

Averages can also be calculated using COUNT(*). To use COUNT(*) to calculate averages, include a "COUNT(*) COUNTALL" selector in the query. If you use COUNT(*) to calculate averages, the single aggregator can be used for all fields. Use COUNT(*) only in cases where none of the fields being summarized include blank values, or where a COUNT aggregator is not available for every field.

Creating decision datasets with TQuery or TTable

If you use an ordinary *TQuery* component as a decision dataset, you must manually set up the SQL statement, taking care to supply a GROUP BY phrase which contains the same fields (and in the same order) as the SELECT phrase.

The SQL should look similar to this:

```
SELECT ORDERS."Terms", ORDERS."ShipVIA",
       ORDERS."PaymentMethod", SUM( ORDERS."AmountPaid" )
FROM "ORDERS.DB" ORDERS
GROUP BY ORDERS."Terms", ORDERS."ShipVIA", ORDERS."PaymentMethod"
```

The ordering of the SELECT fields should match the ordering of the GROUP BY fields.

With *TTable*, you must supply information to the decision cube about which of the fields in the query are grouping fields, and which are summaries. To do this, Fill in the Dimension Type for each field in the *DimensionMap* of the Decision Cube. You must indicate whether each field is a dimension or a summary, and if a summary, you must provide the summary type. Since pivoting averages depend on SUM/COUNT calculations, you must also provide the base field name to allow the decision cube to match pairs of SUM and COUNT aggregators.

Creating decision datasets with the Decision Query editor

All data used by the decision support components passes through the decision cube, which accepts a specially formatted dataset most easily produced by an SQL query. See “Using datasets with decision support components” on page 20-4 for more information.

While both *TTable* and *TQuery* can be used as decision datasets, it is easier to use *TDecisionQuery*; the Decision Query editor supplied with it can be used to specify tables, fields, and summaries to appear in the decision cube and will help you set up the SELECT and GROUP BY portions of the SQL correctly.

To use the Decision Query editor:

- 1 Select the decision query component on the form, then right-click and choose Decision Query editor. The Decision Query editor dialog box appears.
- 2 Choose the database to use.
- 3 For single-table queries, click the Select Table button.
For more complex queries involving multi-table joins, click the Query Builder button to display the SQL Builder or type the SQL statement into the edit box on the SQL tab page.
- 4 Return to the Decision Query editor dialog box.
- 5 In the Decision Query editor dialog box, select fields in the Available Fields list box and assign them to be either Dimensions or Summaries by clicking the appropriate right arrow button. As you add fields to the Summaries list, select from the menu displayed the type of summary to use: sum, count, or average.
- 6 By default, all fields and summaries defined in the *SQL* property of the decision query appear in the Active Dimensions and Active Summaries list boxes. To remove a dimension or summary, select it in the list and click the left arrow beside the list, or double-click the item to remove. To add it back, select it in the Available Fields list box and click the appropriate right arrow.

Once you define the contents of the decision cube, you can further manipulate dimension display with its *DimensionMap* property and the buttons of *TDecisionPivot*. For more information, see the next section, “Using decision cubes,” “Using decision sources” on page 20-9, and “Using decision pivots” on page 20-9.

Note When you use the Decision Query editor, the query is initially handled in ANSI-92 SQL syntax, then translated (if necessary) into the dialect used by the server. The Decision Query editor reads and displays only ANSI standard SQL. The dialect translation is automatically assigned to the *TDecisionQuery*'s *SQL* property. To modify a query, edit the ANSI-92 version in the Decision Query rather than the *SQL* property.

Using decision cubes

The decision cube component, *TDecisionCube*, is a multidimensional data store that fetches its data from a dataset (typically a specially structured SQL statement entered through *TDecisionQuery* or *TQuery*). The data is stored in a form that makes its easy to pivot (that is, change the way in which the data is organized and summarized) without needing to run the query a second time.

Decision cube properties and events

The *DimensionMap* properties of *TDecisionCube* not only control which dimensions and summaries appear but also let you set date ranges and specify the maximum number of dimensions the decision cube may support. You can also indicate whether or not to display data during design. You can display names, (categories) values, subtotals, or data. Display of data at design time can be time consuming, depending on the data source.

When you click the ellipsis next to *DimensionMap* in the Object Inspector, the Decision Cube editor dialog box appears. You can use its pages and controls to set the *DimensionMap* properties.

The *OnRefresh* event fires whenever the decision cube cache is rebuilt. Developers can access the new dimension map and change it at that time to free up memory, change the maximum summaries or dimensions, and so on. *OnRefresh* is also useful if users access the Decision Cube editor; application code can respond to user changes at that time.

Using the Decision Cube editor

You can use the Decision Cube editor to set the *DimensionMap* properties of decision cubes. You can display the Decision Cube editor through the Object Inspector, as described in the previous section, or by right-clicking a decision cube on a form at design time and choosing Decision Cube editor.

The Decision Cube Editor dialog box has two tabs:

- Dimension Settings, used to activate or disable available dimensions, rename and reformat dimensions, put dimensions in a permanently drilled state, and set date ranges to display.
- Memory Control, used to set the maximum number of dimensions and summaries that can be active at one time, to display information about memory usage, and to determine the names and data that appear at design time.

Viewing and changing dimension settings

To view the dimension settings, display the Decision Cube editor and click the Dimension Settings tab. Then, select a dimension or summary in the Available Fields list. Its information appears in the boxes on the right side of the editor:

- To change the dimension or summary name that appears in the decision pivot, decision grid, or decision graph, enter a new name in the Display Name edit box.
- To determine whether the selected field is a dimension or summary, read the text in the Type edit box. If the dataset is a *TTable* component, you can use Type to specify whether the selected field is a dimension or summary.
- To disable or activate the selected dimension or summary, change the setting in the Active Type drop-down list box: Active, As Needed, or Inactive. Disabling a dimension or setting it to As Needed saves memory.
- To change the format of that dimension or summary, enter a format string in the Format edit box.
- To display that dimension or summary by Year, Quarter, or Month, change the setting in the Binning drop-down list box. Note that you can choose Set in the Binning list box to put the selected dimension or summary in a permanently “drilled down” state. This can be useful for saving memory when a dimension has many values. For more information, see “Decision support components and memory control” on page 20-19.
- To determine the starting value for ranges, or the drill-down value for a “Set” dimension, first choose the appropriate Grouping value in the Grouping drop-down, and then enter the starting range value or permanent drill-down value in the Initial Value drop-down list.

Setting the maximum available dimensions and summaries

To determine the maximum number of dimensions and summaries available for decision pivots, decision grids, and decision graphs bound to the selected decision cube, display the Decision Cube editor and click the Memory Control tab. Use the edit controls to adjust the current settings, if necessary. These settings help to control the amount of memory required by the decision cube. For more information, see “Decision support components and memory control” on page 20-19.

Viewing and changing design options

To determine how much information appears at design time, display the Decision Cube editor and click the Memory Control tab. Then, check the setting that indicates which names and data to display. Display of data or field names at design time can cause performance delays in some cases because of the time needed to fetch the data.

Using decision sources

The decision source component, *TDecisionSource*, defines the current pivot state of decision grids or decision graphs. Any two objects which use the same decision source also share pivot states.

Properties and events

The following are some special properties and events that control the appearance and behavior of decision sources:

- The *ControlType* property of *TDecisionSource* indicates whether the decision pivot buttons should act like check boxes (multiple selections) or radio buttons (mutually exclusive selections).
- The *SparseCols* and *SparseRows* properties of *TDecisionSource* indicate whether to display columns or rows with no values; if **true**, sparse columns or rows are displayed.
- *TDecisionSource* has the following events:
 - *OnLayoutChange* occurs when the user performs pivots or drill-downs that reorganize the data.
 - *OnNewDimensions* occurs when the data is completely altered, such as when the summary or dimension fields are altered.
 - *OnSummaryChange* occurs when the current summary is changed.
 - *OnStateChange* occurs when the Decision Cube activates or deactivates.
 - *OnBeforePivot* occurs when changes are committed but not yet reflected in the user interface. Developers have an opportunity to make changes, for example, in capacity or pivot state, before application users see the result of their previous action.
 - *OnAfterPivot* fires after a change in pivot state. Developers can capture information at that time.

Using decision pivots

The decision pivot component, *TDecisionPivot*, lets you open or close decision cube dimensions, or fields, by pressing buttons. When a row or column is opened by pressing a *TDecisionPivot* button, the corresponding dimension appears on the *TDecisionGrid* or *TDecisionGraph* component. When a dimension is closed, its detailed data doesn't appear; it collapses into the totals of other dimensions. A dimension may also be in a "drilled" state, where only the summaries for a particular value of the dimension field appear.

You can also use the decision pivot to reorganize dimensions displayed in the decision grid and decision graph. Just drag a button to the row or column area or reorder buttons within the same area.

For illustrations of decision pivots at design time, see Figures 20.1, 20.2, and 20.3.

Decision pivot properties

The following are some special properties that control the appearance and behavior of decision pivots:

- The first properties listed for *TDecisionPivot* define its overall behavior and appearance. You might want to set *ButtonAutoSize* to **false** for *TDecisionPivot* to keep buttons from expanding and contracting as you adjust the size of the component.
- The *Groups* property of *TDecisionPivot* defines which dimension buttons appear. You can display the row, column, and summary selection button groups in any combination. Note that if you want more flexibility over the placement of these groups, you can place one *TDecisionPivot* on your form which contains only rows in one location, and a second which contains only columns in another location.
- Typically, *TDecisionPivot* is added above *TDecisionGrid*. In its default orientation, horizontal, buttons on the left side of *TDecisionPivot* apply to fields on the left side of *TDecisionGrid* (rows); buttons on the right side apply to fields at the top of *TDecisionGrid* (columns).
- You can determine where *TDecisionPivot*'s buttons appear by setting its *GroupLayout* property to *xtVertical*, *xtLeftTop*, or *xtHorizontal* (the default, described in the previous paragraph).

Creating and using decision grids

Decision grid components, *TDecisionGrid*, present cross-tabulated data in table form. These tables are also called crosstabs, described on page 20-2. Figure 20.1 on page 20-2 shows a decision grid on a form at design time.

Creating decision grids

To create a form with one or more tables of cross-tabulated data,

- 1 Follow steps 1–3 listed under “Guidelines for using decision support components” on page 20-3.
- 2 Add one or more decision grid components (*TDecisionGrid*) and bind them to the decision source, *TDecisionSource*, with the Object Inspector by setting their *DecisionSource* property to the appropriate decision source component.
- 3 Continue with steps 5–7 listed under “Guidelines for using decision support components.”

For a description of what appears in the decision grid and how to use it, see “Using decision grids” on page 20-11.

To add a graph to the form, follow the instructions in “Creating decision graphs” on page 20-13.

Using decision grids

The decision grid component, *TDecisionGrid*, displays data from decision cubes (*TDecisionCube*) bound to decision sources (*TDecisionSource*).

By default, the grid appears with dimension fields at its left side and/or top, depending on the grouping instructions defined in the dataset. Categories, one for each data value, appear under each field. You can

- Open and close dimensions
- Reorganize, or pivot, rows and columns
- Drill down for detail
- Limit dimension selection to a single dimension for each axis

For more information about special properties and events of the decision grid, see “Decision grid properties” on page 20-12.

Opening and closing decision grid fields

If a plus sign (+) appears in a dimension or summary field, one or more fields to its right are closed (hidden). You can open additional fields and categories by clicking the sign. A minus sign (-) indicates a fully opened (expanded) field. When you click the sign, the field closes. This outlining feature can be disabled; see “Decision grid properties” on page 20-12 for details.

Reorganizing rows and columns in decision grids

You can drag row and column headings to new locations within the same axis or to the other axis. In this way, you can reorganize the grid and see the data from new perspectives as the data groupings change. This pivoting feature can be disabled; see “Decision grid properties” on page 20-12 for details.

If you included a decision pivot, you can push and drag its buttons to reorganize the display. See “Using decision pivots” on page 20-9 for instructions.

Drilling down for detail in decision grids

You can drill down to see more detail in a dimension.

For example, if you right-click a category label (row heading) for a dimension with others collapsed beneath it, you can choose to drill down and only see data for that category. When a dimension is drilled, you do not see the category labels for that dimension displayed on the grid, since only the records for a single category value are being displayed. If you have a decision pivot on the form, it displays category values and lets you change to other values if you want.

To drill down into a dimension,

- Right-click a category label and choose Drill In To This Value, or
- Right-click a pivot button and choose Drilled In.

To make the complete dimension active again,

- Right-click the corresponding pivot button, or right-click the decision grid in the upper-left corner and select the dimension.

Limiting dimension selection in decision grids

You can change the *ControlType* property of the decision source to determine whether more than one dimension can be selected for each axis of the grid. For more information, see “Using decision sources” on page 20-9.

Decision grid properties

The decision grid component, *TDecisionGrid*, displays data from the *TDecisionCube* component bound to *TDecisionSource*. By default, data appears in a grid with category fields on the left side and top of the grid.

The following are some special properties that control the appearance and behavior of decision grids:

- *TDecisionGrid* has unique properties for each dimension. To set these, choose *Dimensions* in the Object Inspector, then select a dimension. Its properties then appear in the Object Inspector: *Alignment* defines the alignment of category labels for that dimension, *Caption* can be used to override the default dimension name, *Color* defines the color of category labels, *FieldName* displays the name of the active dimension, *Format* can hold any standard format for that data type, and *Subtotals* indicates whether to display subtotals for that dimension. With summary fields, these same properties are used to changed the appearance of the data that appears in the summary area of the grid. When you’re through setting dimension properties, either click a component in the form or choose a component in the drop-down list box at the top of the Object Inspector.
- The *Options* property of *TDecisionGrid* lets you control display of grid lines (*cgGridLines* = **true**), enabling of outline features (collapse and expansion of dimensions with + and - indicators; *cgOutliner* = **true**), and enabling of drag-and-drop pivoting (*cgPivotable* = **true**).
- The *OnDecisionDrawCell* event of *TDecisionGrid* gives you a chance to change the appearance of each cell as it is drawn. The event passes the *String*, *Font*, and *Color* of the current cell as reference parameters. You are free to alter those parameters to achieve effects such as special colors for negative values. In addition to the *DrawState* which is passed by *TCustomGrid*, the event passes *TDecisionDrawState*, which can be used to determine what type of cell is being drawn. Further information about the cell can be fetched using the *Cells*, *CellValueArray*, or *CellDrawState* functions.

- The *OnDecisionExamineCell* event of *TDecisionGrid* lets you hook the right-click-on-event to data cells, and is intended to allow a program to display information (such as detail records) about that particular data cell. When the user right-clicks a data cell, the event is supplied with all the information which is used to compose the data value, including the currently active summary value and a *ValueArray* of all the dimension values which were used to create the summary value.

Creating and using decision graphs

Decision graph components, *TDecisionGraph*, present cross-tabulated data in graphic form. Each decision graph shows the value of a single summary, such as Sum, Count, or Avg, charted for one or more dimensions. For more information on crosstabs, see page 20-2. For illustrations of decision graphs at design time, see Figure 20.1 on page 20-2 and Figure 20.4 on page 20-14.

Creating decision graphs

To create a form with one or more decision graphs,

- 1 Follow steps 1–3 listed under “Guidelines for using decision support components” on page 20-3.
- 2 Add one or more decision graph components (*TDecisionGraph*) and bind them to the decision source, *TDecisionSource*, with the Object Inspector by setting their *DecisionSource* property to the appropriate decision source component.
- 3 Continue with steps 5–7 listed under “Guidelines for using decision support components.”
- 4 Finally, right-click the graph and choose Edit Chart to modify the appearance of the graph series. You can set template properties for each graph dimension, then set individual series properties to override these defaults. For details, see “Customizing decision graphs” on page 20-15.

For a description of what appears in the decision graph and how to use it, see the next section, “Using decision graphs.”

To add a decision grid—or crosstab table—to the form, follow the instructions in “Creating and using decision grids” on page 20-10.

Using decision graphs

The decision graph component, *TDecisionGraph*, displays fields from the decision source (*TDecisionSource*) as a dynamic graph that changes when data dimensions are opened, closed, dragged and dropped, or rearranged with the decision pivot (*TDecisionPivot*).

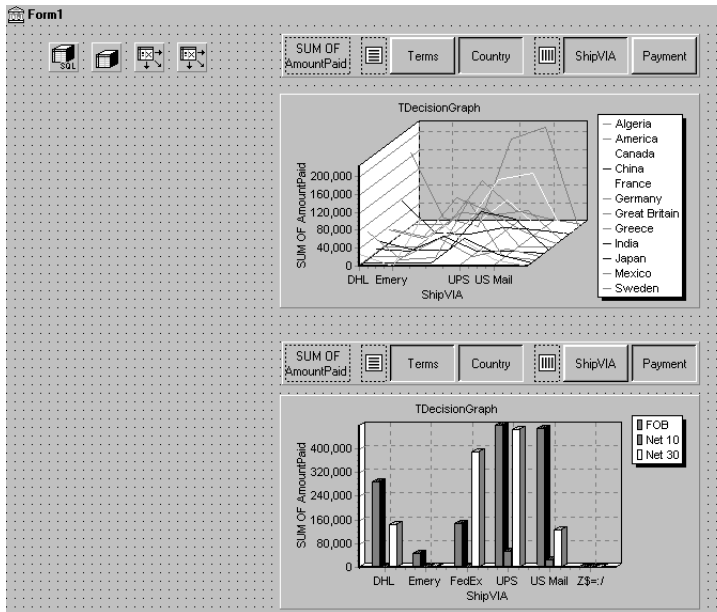
Graphed data comes from a specially formatted dataset such as *TDecisionQuery*. For an overview of how the decision support components handle and arrange this data, see page 20-1.

By default, the first row dimension appears as the x-axis and the first column dimension appears as the y-axis.

You can use decision graphs instead of or in addition to decision grids, which present cross-tabulated data in tabular form. Decision grids and decision graphs that are bound to the same decision source present the same data dimensions. To show different summary data for the same dimensions, you can bind more than one decision graph to the same decision source. To show different dimensions, bind decision graphs to different decision sources.

For example, in Figure 20.4 the first decision pivot and graph are bound to the first decision source and the second decision pivot and graph are bound to the second. So, each graph can show different dimensions.

Figure 20.4 Decision graphs bound to different decision sources



For more information about what appears in a decision graph, see the next section, “The decision graph display.”

To create a decision graph, see the previous section, “Creating decision graphs.”

For a discussion of decision graph properties and how to change the appearance and behavior of decision graphs, see “Customizing decision graphs” on page 20-15.

The decision graph display

By default, the decision graph plots summary values for categories in the first active row field (along the y-axis) against values in the first active column field (along the x-axis). Each graphed category appears as a separate series.

If only one dimension is selected—for example, by clicking only one *TDecisionPivot* button—only one series is graphed.

If you used a decision pivot, you can push its buttons to determine which decision cube fields (dimensions) are graphed. To exchange graph axes, drag the decision pivot dimension buttons from one side of the separator space to the other. If you have a one-dimensional graph with all buttons on one side of the separator space, you can use the Row or Column icon as a drop target for adding buttons to the other side of the separator and making the graph multidimensional.

If you only want one column and one row to be active at a time, you can set the *ControlType* property for *TDecisionSource* to *xtRadio*. Then, there can be only one active field at a time for each decision cube axis, and the decision pivot's functionality will correspond to the graph's behavior. *xtRadioEx* works the same as *xtRadio*, but does not allow the state where all row or all columns dimensions are closed.

When you have both a decision grid and graph connected to the same *TDecisionSource*, you'll probably want to set *ControlType* back to *xtCheck* to correspond to the more flexible behavior of *TDecisionGrid*.

Customizing decision graphs

The decision graph component, *TDecisionGraph*, displays fields from the decision source (*TDecisionSource*) as a dynamic graph that changes when data dimensions are opened, closed, dragged and dropped, or rearranged with the decision pivot (*TDecisionPivot*). You can change the type, colors, marker types for line graphs, and many other properties of decision graphs.

To customize a graph,

- 1 Right-click it and choose Edit Chart. The Chart Editing dialog box appears.
- 2 Use the Chart page of the Chart Editing dialog box to view a list of visible series, select the series definition to use when two or more are available for the same series, change graph types for a template or series, and set overall graph properties.

The Series list on the Chart page shows all decision cube dimensions (preceded by Template:) and currently visible categories. Each category, or series, is a separate object. You can:

- Add or delete series derived from existing decision-graph series. Derived series can provide annotations for existing series or represent values calculated from other series.

- Change the default graph type, and change the title of templates and series.

For a description of the other Chart page tabs, search for the following topic in online Help: “Chart page (Chart Editing dialog box).”

- 3 Use the Series page to establish dimension templates, then customize properties for each individual graph series.

By default, all series are graphed as bar graphs and up to 16 default colors are assigned. You can edit the template type and properties to create a new default. Then, as you pivot the decision source to different states, the template is used to dynamically create the series for each new state. For template details, see “Setting decision graph template defaults” on page 20-16.

To customize individual series, follow the instructions in “Customizing decision graph series” on page 20-17.

For a description of each Series page tab, search for the following topic in online Help: “Series page (Chart Editing dialog box).”

Setting decision graph template defaults

Decision graphs display the values from two dimensions of the decision cube: one dimension is displayed as an axis of the graph, and the other is used to create a set of series. The template for that dimension provides default properties for those series (such as whether the series are bar, line, area, and so on). As users pivot from one state to another, any required series for the dimension are created using the series type and other defaults specified in the template.

A separate template is provided for cases where users pivot to a state where only one dimension is active. A one-dimensional state is often represented with a pie chart, so a separate template is provided for this case.

You can

- Change the default graph type.
- Change other graph template properties.
- View and set overall graph properties.

Changing the default decision graph type

To change the default graph type,

- 1 Select a template in the Series list on the Chart page of the Chart Editing dialog box.
- 2 Click the Change button.
- 3 Select a new type and close the Gallery dialog box.

Changing other decision graph template properties

To change color or other properties of a template,

- 1 Select the Series page at the top of the Chart Editing dialog box.
- 2 Choose a template in the drop-down list at the top of the page.
- 3 Choose the appropriate property tab and select settings.

Viewing overall decision graph properties

To view and set decision graph properties other than type and series,

- 1 Select the Chart page at the top of the Chart Editing dialog box.
- 2 Choose the appropriate property tab and select settings.

Customizing decision graph series

The templates supply many defaults for each decision cube dimension, such as graph type and how series are displayed. Other defaults, such as series color, are defined by *TDecisionGraph*. If you want you can override the defaults for each series.

The templates are intended for use when you want the program to create the series for categories as they are needed, and discard them when they are no longer needed. If you want, you can set up custom series for specific category values. To do this, pivot the graph so its current display has a series for the category you want to customize. When the series is displayed on the graph, you can use the Chart editor to

- Change the graph type.
- Change other series properties.
- Save specific graph series that you have customized.

To define series templates and set overall graph defaults, see “Setting decision graph template defaults” on page 20-16.

Changing the series graph type

By default, each series has the same graph type, defined by the template for its dimension. To change all series to the same graph type, you can change the template type. See “Changing the default decision graph type” on page 20-16 for instructions.

To change the graph type for a single series,

- 1 Select a series in the Series list on the Chart page of the Chart editor.
- 2 Click the Change button.
- 3 Select a new type and close the Gallery dialog box.
- 4 Check the Save Series check box.

Changing other decision graph series properties

To change color or other properties of a decision graph series,

- 1 Select the Series page at the top of the Chart Editing dialog box.
- 2 Choose a series in the drop-down list at the top of the page.
- 3 Choose the appropriate property tab and select settings.
- 4 Check the Save Series check box.

Saving decision graph series settings

By default, only settings for templates are saved at design time. Changes made to specific series are only saved if the Save box is checked for that series in the Chart Editing dialog box.

Saving series can be memory intensive, so if you don't need to save them you can uncheck the Save box.

Decision support components at runtime

At runtime, users can perform many operations by left-clicking, right-clicking, and dragging visible decision support components. These operations, discussed earlier in this chapter, are summarized below.

Decision pivots at runtime

Users can:

- Left-click the summary button at the left end of the decision pivot to display a list of available summaries. They can use this list to change the summary data displayed in decision grids and decision graphs.
- Right-click a dimension button and choose to:
 - Move it from the row area to the column area or the reverse.
 - Drill In to display detail data.
- Left-click a dimension button following the Drill In command and choose:
 - Open Dimension to move back to the top level of that dimension.
 - All Values to toggle between displaying just summaries and summaries plus all other values in decision grids.
 - From a list of available categories for that dimension, a category to drill into for detail values.
- Left-click a dimension button to open or close that dimension.
- Drag and drop dimension buttons from the row area to the column area and the reverse; they can drop them next to existing buttons in that area or onto the row or column icon.

Decision grids at runtime

Users can:

- Right-click within the decision grid and choose to:
 - Toggle subtotals on and off for individual data groups, for all values of a dimension, or for the whole grid.

- Display the Decision Cube editor, described on page 20-7.
- Toggle dimensions and summaries open and closed.
- Click + and – within the row and column headings to open and close dimensions.
- Drag and drop dimensions from rows to columns and the reverse.

Decision graphs at runtime

Users can drag from side to side or up and down in the graph grid area to scroll through off-screen categories and values.

Decision support components and memory control

When a dimension or summary is loaded into the decision cube, it takes up memory. Adding a new summary increases memory consumption linearly: that is, a decision cube with two summaries uses twice as much memory as the same cube with only one summary, a decision cube with three summaries uses three times as much memory as the same cube with one summary, and so on. Memory consumption for dimensions increases more quickly. Adding a dimension with 10 values increases memory consumption by a factor of 10. Adding a dimension with 100 values increases memory consumption 100 times. Thus adding dimensions to a decision cube can have a dramatic effect on memory use, and can quickly lead to performance problems. This effect is especially pronounced when adding dimensions that have many values.

The decision support components have a number of settings to help you control how and when memory is used. For more information on the properties and techniques mentioned here, look up *TDecisionCube* in the online Help.

Setting maximum dimensions, summaries, and cells

The decision cube's *MaxDimensions* and *MaxSummaries* properties can be used with the *CubeDim->ActiveFlag* property to control how many dimensions and summaries can be loaded at a time. You can set the maximum values on the Cube Capacity page of the Decision Cube editor to place some overall control on how many dimensions or summaries can be brought into memory at the same time.

Limiting the number of dimensions or summaries provides a rough limit on the amount of memory used by the decision cube. However, it does not distinguish between dimensions with many values and those with only a few. For greater control of the absolute memory demands of the decision cube, you can also limit the number of cells in the cube. Set the maximum number of cells on the Cube Capacity page of the Decision Cube editor.

Setting dimension state

The *ActiveFlag* property controls which dimensions get loaded. You can set this property on the Dimension Settings tab of the Decision Cube editor using the Activity Type control. When this control is set to *Active*, the dimension is loaded unconditionally, and will always take up space. Note that the number of dimensions in this state must always be less than *MaxDimensions*, and the number of summaries set to *Active* must be less than *MaxSummaries*. You should set a dimension or summary to *Active* only when it is critical that it be available at all times. An *Active* setting decreases the ability of the cube to manage the available memory.

When *ActiveFlag* is set to *AsNeeded*, a dimension or summary is loaded only if it can be loaded without exceeding the *MaxDimensions*, *MaxSummaries*, or *MaxCells* limit. The decision cube will swap dimensions and summaries that are marked *AsNeeded* in and out of memory to keep within the limits imposed by *MaxCells*, *MaxDimensions*, and *MaxSummaries*. Thus, a dimension or summary may not be loaded in memory if it is not currently being used. Setting dimensions that are not used frequently to *AsNeeded* results in better loading and pivoting performance, although there will be a time delay to access dimensions which are not currently loaded.

Using paged dimensions

When Binning is set to Set on the Dimension Settings tab of the Decision cube editor and Start Value is not NULL, the dimension is said to be “paged,” or “permanently drilled down.” You can access data for just a single value of that dimension at a time, although you can programmatically access a series of values sequentially. Such a dimension may not be pivoted or opened.

It is extremely memory intensive to include dimensional data for dimensions that have very large numbers of values. By making such dimensions paged, you can display summary information for one value at a time. Information is usually easier to read when displayed this way, and memory consumption is much easier to manage.

Connecting to databases

Most dataset components can connect directly to a database server. Once connected, the dataset communicates with the server automatically. When you open the dataset, it populates itself with data from the server, and when you post records, they are sent back the server and applied. A single connection component can be shared by multiple datasets, or each dataset can use its own connection.

Each type of dataset connects to the database server using its own type of connection component, which is designed to work with a single data access mechanism. The following table lists these data access mechanisms and the associated connection components:

Table 21.1 Database connection components

| Data access mechanism | Connection component |
|-------------------------------|----------------------|
| Borland Database Engine (BDE) | TDatabase |
| ActiveX Data Objects (ADO) | TADOConnection |
| dbExpress | TSQLConnection |
| InterBase Express | TIBDatabase |

Note For a discussion of some pros and cons of each of these mechanisms, see “Using databases” on page 18-1.

The connection component provides all the information necessary to establish a database connection. This information is different for each type of connection component:

- For information about describing a BDE-based connection, see “Identifying the database” on page 24-13.
- For information about describing an ADO-based connection, see “Connecting to a data store using TADOConnection” on page 25-3.
- For information about describing a dbExpress connection, see “Setting up TSQLConnection” on page 26-3.

- For information about describing an InterBase Express connection, see the online help for *TIBDatabase*.

Although each type of dataset uses a different connection component, they are all descendants of *TCustomConnection*. They all perform many of the same tasks and surface many of the same properties, methods, and events. This chapter discusses many of these common tasks.

Using implicit connections

No matter what data access mechanism you are using, you can always create the connection component explicitly and use it to manage the connection to and communication with a database server. For BDE-enabled and ADO-based datasets, you also have the option of describing the database connection through properties of the dataset and letting the dataset generate an implicit connection. For BDE-enabled datasets, you specify an implicit connection using the *DatabaseName* property. For ADO-based datasets, you use the *ConnectionString* property.

When using an implicit connection, you do not need to explicitly create a connection component. This can simplify your application development, and the default connection you specify can cover a wide variety of situations. For complex, mission-critical client/server applications with many users and different requirements for database connections, however, you should create your own connection components to tune each database connection to your application's needs. Explicit connection components give you greater control. For example, you need to access the connection component to perform the following tasks:

- Customize database server login support. (Implicit connections display a default login dialog to prompt the user for a user name and password.)
- Control transactions and specify transaction isolation levels.
- Execute SQL commands on the server without using a dataset.
- Perform actions on all open datasets that are connected to the same database.

In addition, if you have multiple datasets that all use the same server, it can be easier to use an connection component, so that you only have to specify the server to use in one place. That way, if you later change the server, you do not need to update several dataset components: only the connection component.

Controlling connections

Before you can establish a connection to a database server, your application must provide certain key pieces of information that describe the desired server. Each type of connection component surfaces a different set of properties to let you identify the server. In general, however, they all provide a way for you to name the server you want and supply a set of connection parameters that control how the connection is formed. Connection parameters vary from server to server. They can include information such as user name and password, the maximum size of BLOB fields, SQL roles, and so on.

Once you have identified the desired server and any connection parameters, you can use the connection component to explicitly open or close a connection. The connection component generates events when it opens or closes a connection that you can use to customize the response of your application to changes in the database connection.

Connecting to a database server

There are two ways to connect to a database server using a connection component:

- Call the *Open* method.
- Set the *Connected* property to **true**.

Calling the *Open* method sets *Connected* to **true**.

Note When a connection component is not connected to a server and an application attempts to open one of its associated datasets, the dataset automatically calls the connection component's *Open* method.

When you set *Connected* to **true**, the connection component first generates a *BeforeConnect* event, where you can perform any initialization. For example, you can use this event to alter connection parameters.

After the *BeforeConnect* event, the connection component may display a default login dialog, depending on how you choose to control server login. It then passes the user name and password to the driver, opening a connection.

Once the connection is open, the connection component generates an *AfterConnect* event, where you can perform any tasks that require an open connection.

Note Some connection components generate additional events as well when establishing a connection.

Once a connection is established, it is maintained as long as there is at least one active dataset using it. When there are no more active datasets, the connection component drops the connection. Some connection components surface a *KeepConnection* property that allows the connection to remain open even if all the datasets that use it are closed. If *KeepConnection* is **true**, the connection is maintained. For connections to remote database servers, or for applications that frequently open and close datasets, setting *KeepConnection* to **true** reduces network traffic and speeds up the application. If *KeepConnection* is **false**, the connection is dropped when there are no active datasets using the database. If a dataset that uses the database is later opened, the connection must be reestablished and initialized.

Disconnecting from a database server

There are two ways to disconnect a server using a connection component:

- Set the *Connected* property to **false**.
- Call the *Close* method.

Calling *Close* sets *Connected* to **false**.

When *Connected* is set to **false**, the connection component generates a *BeforeDisconnect* event, where you can perform any cleanup before the connection closes. For example, you can use this event to cache information about all open datasets before they are closed.

After the *BeforeConnect* event, the connection component closes all open datasets and disconnects from the server.

Finally, the connection component generates an *AfterDisconnect* event, where you can respond to the change in connection status, such as enabling a Connect button in your user interface.

Note Calling *Close* or setting *Connected* to **false** disconnects from a database server even if the connection component has a *KeepConnection* property that is **true**.

Controlling server login

Most remote database servers include security features to prohibit unauthorized access. Usually, the server requires a user name and password login before permitting database access.

At design time, if a server requires a login, a standard login dialog box prompts for a user name and password when you first attempt to connect to the database.

At runtime, there are three ways you can handle a server's request for a login:

- Let the default login dialog and processes handle the login. This is the default approach. Set the *LoginPrompt* property of the connection component to **true** (the default) and include *DBLogDlg.hpp* in the unit that declares the connection component. Your application displays the standard login dialog box when the server requests a user name and password.
- Supply the login information before the login attempt. Each type of connection component uses a different mechanism for specifying the user name and password:
 - For BDE, dbExpress, and InterBase express datasets, the user name and password connection parameters can be accessed through the *Params* property. (For BDE datasets, the parameter values can also be associated with a BDE alias, while for dbExpress datasets, they can also be associated with a connection name).
 - For ADO datasets, the user name and password can be included in the *ConnectionString* property (or provided as parameters to the *Open* method).

If you specify the user name and password before the server requests them, be sure to set the *LoginPrompt* to **false**, so that the default login dialog does not appear. For example, the following code sets the user name and password on a

SQL connection component in the *BeforeConnect* event handler, decrypting an encrypted password that is associated with the current connection name:

```
void __fastcall TForm1::SQLConnectionBeforeConnect(TObject *Sender)
{
    if (SQLConnection1->LoginPrompt == false)
    {
        SQLConnection1->Params->Values["User_Name"] = "SYSDBA";
        SQLConnection1->Params->Values["Password"] =
            Decrypt(SQLConnection1->Params->Values["Password"]);
    }
}
```

Note that setting the user name and password at design-time or using hard-coded strings in code causes the values to be embedded in the application's executable file. This still leaves them easy to find, compromising server security.

- Provide your own custom handling for the login event. The connection component generates an event when it needs the user name and password.
 - For *TDatabase*, *TSQLConnection*, and *TIBDatabase*, this is an *OnLogin* event. The event handler has two parameters, the connection component, and a local copy of the user name and password parameters in a string list. (*TSQLConnection* includes the database parameter as well). You must set the *LoginPrompt* property to **true** for this event to occur. Having a *LoginPrompt* value of **false** and assigning a handler for the *OnLogin* event creates a situation where it is impossible to log in to the database because the default dialog does not appear and the *OnLogin* event handler never executes.
 - For *TADOConnection*, the event is an *OnWillConnect* event. The event handler has five parameters, the connection component and four parameters that return values to influence the connection (including two for user name and password). This event always occurs, regardless of the value of *LoginPrompt*.

Write an event handler for the event in which you set the login parameters. Here is an example where the values for the USER NAME and PASSWORD parameters are provided from a global variable (*UserName*) and a method that returns a password given a user name (*PasswordSearch*)

```
void __fastcall TForm1::Database1Login(TDatabase *Database, TStrings *LoginParams)
{
    LoginParams->Values["USER NAME"] = UserName;
    LoginParams->Values["PASSWORD"] = PasswordSearch(UserName);
}
```

As with the other methods of providing login parameters, when writing an *OnLogin* or *OnWillConnect* event handler, avoid hard coding the password in your application code. It should appear only as an encrypted value, an entry in a secure database your application uses to look up the value, or be dynamically obtained from the user.

Managing transactions

A *transaction* is a group of actions that must all be carried out successfully on one or more tables in a database before they are *committed* (made permanent). If one of the actions in the group fails, then all actions are *rolled back* (undone). By using transactions, you ensure that the database is not left in an inconsistent state when a problem occurs completing one of the actions that make up the transaction.

For example, in a banking application, transferring funds from one account to another is an operation you would want to protect with a transaction. If, after decrementing the balance in one account, an error occurred incrementing the balance in the other, you want to roll back the transaction so that the database still reflects the correct total balance.

It is always possible to manage transactions by sending SQL commands directly to the database. Most databases provide their own transaction management model, although some have no transaction support at all. For servers that support it, you may want to code your own transaction management directly, taking advantage of advanced transaction management capabilities on a particular database server, such as schema caching.

If you do not need to use any advanced transaction management capabilities, connection components provide a set of methods and properties you can use to manage transactions without explicitly sending any SQL commands. Using these properties and methods has the advantage that you do not need to customize your application for each type of database server you use, as long as the server supports transactions. (The BDE also provides limited transaction support for local tables with no server transaction support. When not using the BDE, trying to start transactions on a database that does not support them causes connection components to raise an exception.)

Warning When a dataset provider component applies updates, it implicitly generates transactions for any updates. Be careful that any transactions you explicitly start do not conflict with those generated by the provider.

Starting a transaction

When you start a transaction, all subsequent statements that read from or write to the database occur in the context of that transaction, until the transaction is explicitly terminated or (in the case of overlapping transactions) until another transaction is started. Each statement is considered part of a group. Changes must be successfully committed to the database, or every change made in the group must be undone.

While the transaction is in process, your view of the data in database tables is determined by your transaction isolation level. For information about transaction isolation levels, see “Specifying the transaction isolation level” on page 21-9.

For *TADOConnection*, start a transaction by calling the *BeginTrans* method:

```
Level = ADOConnection1->BeginTrans();
```


BeginTrans returns the level of nesting for the transaction that started. A nested transaction is one that is nested within another, parent, transaction. After the server starts the transaction, the ADO connection receives an *OnBeginTransComplete* event.

For *TDatabase*, use the *StartTransaction* method instead. *TDatabase* does not support nested or overlapped transactions: If you call a *TDatabase* component's *StartTransaction* method while another transaction is underway, it raises an exception. To avoid calling *StartTransaction*, you can check the *InTransaction* property:

```
if (!Database1->InTransaction)
    Database1->StartTransaction();
```

TSQLConnection also uses the *StartTransaction* method, but it uses a version that gives you a lot more control. Specifically, *StartTransaction* takes a transaction descriptor, which lets you manage multiple simultaneous transactions and specify the transaction isolation level on a per-transaction basis. (For more information on transaction levels, see “Specifying the transaction isolation level” on page 21-9.) In order to manage multiple simultaneous transactions, set the *TransactionID* field of the transaction descriptor to a unique value. *TransactionID* can be any value you choose, as long as it is unique (does not conflict with any other transaction currently underway). Depending on the server, transactions started by *TSQLConnection* can be nested (as they can be when using ADO) or they can be overlapped.

```
TTransactionDesc TD;
TD.TransactionID = 1;
TD.IsolationLevel = xilREADCOMMITTED;
SQLConnection1->StartTransaction(TD);
```

By default, with overlapped transactions, the first transaction becomes inactive when the second transaction starts, although you can postpone committing or rolling back the first transaction until later. If you are using *TSQLConnection* with an InterBase database, you can identify each dataset in your application with a particular active transaction, by setting its *TransactionLevel* property. That is, after starting a second transaction, you can continue to work with both transactions simultaneously, simply by associating a dataset with the transaction you want.

Note Unlike *TADOConnection*, *TSQLConnection* and *TDatabase* do not receive any events when the transactions starts.

InterBase express offers you even more control than *TSQLConnection* by using a separate transaction component rather than starting transactions using the connection component. You can, however, use *TIBDatabase* to start a default transaction:

```
if (!IBDatabase1->DefaultTransaction->InTransaction)
    IBDatabase1->DefaultTransaction->StartTransaction();
```

You can have overlapped transactions by using two separate transaction components. Each transaction component has a set of parameters that let you configure the transaction. These let you specify the transaction isolation level, as well as other properties of the transaction.

Ending a transaction

Ideally, a transaction should only last as long as necessary. The longer a transaction is active, the more simultaneous users that access the database, and the more concurrent, simultaneous transactions that start and end during the lifetime of your transaction, the greater the likelihood that your transaction will conflict with another when you attempt to commit any changes.

Ending a successful transaction

When the actions that make up the transaction have all succeeded, you can make the database changes permanent by committing the transaction. For *TDatabase*, you commit a transaction using the *Commit* method:

```
MyOracleConnection->Commit();
```

For *TSQLConnection*, you also use the *Commit* method, but you must specify which transaction you are committing by supplying the transaction descriptor you gave to the *StartTransaction* method:

```
MyOracleConnection->Commit(TD);
```

For *TIBDatabase*, you commit a transaction object using its *Commit* method:

```
IBDatabase1->DefaultTransaction->Commit();
```

For *TADOConnection*, you commit a transaction using the *CommitTrans* method:

```
ADOConnection1->CommitTrans();
```

Note It is possible for a nested transaction to be committed, only to have the changes rolled back later if the parent transaction is rolled back.

After the transaction is successfully committed, an ADO connection component receives an *OnCommitTransComplete* event. Other connection components do not receive any similar events.

A call to commit the current transaction is usually attempted in a **try...catch** statement. That way, if the transaction cannot commit successfully, you can use the **catch** block to handle the error and retry the operation or to roll back the transaction.

Ending an unsuccessful transaction

If an error occurs when making the changes that are part of the transaction or when trying to commit the transaction, you will want to discard all changes that make up the transaction. Discarding these changes is called rolling back the transaction.

For *TDatabase*, you roll back a transaction by calling the *Rollback* method:

```
MyOracleConnection->Rollback();
```

For *TSQLConnection*, you also use the *Rollback* method, but you must specify which transaction you are rolling back by supplying the transaction descriptor you gave to the *StartTransaction* method:

```
MyOracleConnection->Rollback(TD);
```

For *TIBDatabase*, you roll back a transaction object by calling its *Rollback* method:

```
IBDatabase1->DefaultTransaction->Rollback();
```

For *TADOConnection*, you roll back a transaction by calling the *RollbackTrans* method:

```
ADOConnection1->RollbackTrans();
```

After the transaction is successfully rolled back, an ADO connection component receives an *OnRollbackTransComplete* event. Other connection components do not receive any similar events.

A call to roll back the current transaction usually occurs in

- Exception handling code when you can't recover from a database error.
- Button or menu event code, such as when a user clicks a Cancel button.

Specifying the transaction isolation level

Transaction isolation level determines how a transaction interacts with other simultaneous transactions when they work with the same tables. In particular, it affects how much a transaction “sees” of other transactions’ changes to a table.

Each server type supports a different set of possible transaction isolation levels. There are three possible transaction isolation levels:

- *DirtyRead*: When the isolation level is *DirtyRead*, your transaction sees all changes made by other transactions, even if they have not been committed. Uncommitted changes are not permanent, and might be rolled back at any time. This value provides the least isolation, and is not available for many database servers (such as Oracle, Sybase, MS-SQL, and InterBase).
- *ReadCommitted*: When the isolation level is *ReadCommitted*, only committed changes made by other transactions are visible. Although this setting protects your transaction from seeing uncommitted changes that may be rolled back, you may still receive an inconsistent view of the database state if another transaction is committed while you are in the process of reading. This level is available for all transactions except local transactions managed by the BDE.
- *RepeatableRead*: When the isolation level is *RepeatableRead*, your transaction is guaranteed to see a consistent state of the database data. Your transaction sees a single snapshot of the data. It cannot see any subsequent changes to data by other simultaneous transactions, even if they are committed. This isolation level guarantees that once your transaction reads a record, its view of that record will not change. At this level your transaction is most isolated from changes made by other transactions. This level is not available on some servers, such as Sybase and MS-SQL and is unavailable on local transactions managed by the BDE.

In addition, *TSQLConnection* lets you specify database-specific custom isolation levels. Custom isolation levels are defined by the *dbExpress* driver. See your driver documentation for details.

Note For a detailed description of how each isolation level is implemented, see your server documentation.

TDatabase and *TADOConnection* let you specify the transaction isolation level by setting the *TransIsolation* property. When you set *TransIsolation* to a value that is not supported by the database server, you get the next highest level of isolation (if available). If there is no higher level available, the connection component raises an exception when you try to start a transaction.

When using *TSQLConnection*, transaction isolation level is controlled by the *IsolationLevel* field of the transaction descriptor.

When using InterBase express, transaction isolation level is controlled by a transaction parameter.

Sending commands to the server

All database connection components except *TIBDatabase* let you execute SQL statements on the associated server by calling the *Execute* method. Although *Execute* can return a cursor when the statement is a SELECT statement, this use is not recommended. The preferred method for executing statements that return data is to use a dataset.

The *Execute* method is very convenient for executing simple SQL statements that do not return any records. Such statements include Data Definition Language (DDL) statements, which operate on or create a database's metadata, such as CREATE INDEX, ALTER TABLE, and DROP DOMAIN. Some Data Manipulation Language (DML) SQL statements also do not return a result set. The DML statements that perform an action on data but do not return a result set are: INSERT, DELETE, and UPDATE.

The syntax for the *Execute* method varies with the connection type:

- For *TDatabase*, *Execute* takes four parameters: an *AnsiString* that specifies a single SQL statement that you want to execute, a *TParams* object that supplies any parameter values for that statement, a boolean that indicates whether the statement should be cached because you will call it again, and a pointer to a BDE cursor that can be returned (It is recommended that you pass NULL).
- For *TADOConnection*, there are two versions of *Execute*. The first takes a *WideString* that specifies the SQL statement and a second parameter that specifies a set of options that control whether the statement is executed asynchronously and whether it returns any records. This first syntax returns an interface for the returned records. The second syntax takes a *WideString* that specifies the SQL statement, a second parameter that returns the number of records affected when the statement executes, and a third that specifies options such as whether the statement executes asynchronously. Note that neither syntax provides for passing parameters.
- For *TSQLConnection*, *Execute* takes three parameters: an *AnsiString* that specifies a single SQL statement that you want to execute, a *TParams* object that supplies any parameter values for that statement, and a pointer that can receive a *TCustomSQLDataSet* that is created to return records NULL.

Note *Execute* can only execute one SQL statement at a time. It is not possible to execute multiple SQL statements with a single call to *Execute*, as you can with SQL scripting utilities. To execute more than one statement, call *Execute* repeatedly.

It is relatively easy to execute a statement that does not include any parameters. For example, the following code executes a CREATE TABLE statement (DDL) without any parameters on a *TSQLConnection* component:

```
void __fastcall TDataForm::CreateTableButtonClick(TObject *Sender)
{
    SQLConnection1->Connected = true;
    AnsiString SQLstmt = "CREATE TABLE NewCusts " +
        " ( " +
        "   CustNo INTEGER, " +
        "   Company CHAR(40), " +
        "   State CHAR(2), " +
        "   PRIMARY KEY (CustNo) " +
        " )";
    SQLConnection1->Execute(SQLstmt, NULL, NULL);
}
```

To use parameters, you must create a *TParams* object. For each parameter value, use the *TParams::CreateParam* method to add a *TParam* object. Then use properties of *TParam* to describe the parameter and set its value.

This process is illustrated in the following example, which uses *TDatabase* to execute an INSERT statement. The INSERT statement has a single parameter named *:StateParam*. A *TParams* object (called *stmtParams*) is created to supply a value of "CA" for that parameter.

```
void __fastcall TForm1::INSERT_WithParamsButtonClick(TObject *Sender)
{
    AnsiString SQLstmt;
    TParams *stmtParams = new TParams;
    try
    {
        Databasel->Connected = true;
        stmtParams->CreateParam(ftString, "StateParam", ptInput);
        stmtParams->ParamByName("StateParam")->AsString = "CA";
        SQLstmt = "INSERT INTO 'Custom.db' ";
        SQLstmt += "(CustNo, Company, State) ";
        SQLstmt += "VALUES (7777, 'Robin Dabank Consulting', :StateParam)";
        Databasel->Execute(SQLstmt, stmtParams, false, NULL);
    }
    __finally
    {
        delete stmtParams;
    }
}
```

If the SQL statement includes a parameter but you do not supply a *TParam* object to provide its value, the SQL statement may cause an error when executed (this depends on the particular database back-end used). If a *TParam* object is provided but there is no corresponding parameter in the SQL statement, an exception is thrown when the application attempts to use the *TParam*.

Working with associated datasets

All database connection components maintain a list of all datasets that use them to connect to a database. A connection component uses this list, for example, to close all of the datasets when it closes the database connection.

You can use this list as well, to perform actions on all the datasets that use a specific connection component to connect to a particular database.

Closing all datasets without disconnecting from the server

The connection component automatically closes all datasets when you close its connection. There may be times, however, when you want to close all datasets without disconnecting from the database server.

To close all open datasets without disconnecting from a server, you can use the *CloseDataSets* method.

For *TADOConnection* and *TIBDatabase*, calling *CloseDataSets* always leaves the connection open. For *TDatabase* and *TSQLConnection*, you must also set the *KeepConnection* property to **true**.

Iterating through the associated datasets

To perform any actions (other than closing them all) on all the datasets that use a connection component, use the *DataSets* and *DataSetCount* properties. *DataSets* is an indexed array of all datasets that are linked to the connection component. For all connection components except *TADOConnection*, this list includes only the active datasets. *TADOConnection* lists the inactive datasets as well. *DataSetCount* is the number of datasets in this array.

Note When you use a specialized client dataset to cache updates (as opposed to the generic client dataset, *TClientDataSet*), the *DataSets* property lists the internal dataset owned by the client dataset, not the client dataset itself.

You can use *DataSets* with *DataSetCount* to cycle through all currently active datasets in code. For example, the following code cycles through all active datasets and disables any controls that use the data they provide:

```
for (int i = 0; i < MyDBConnection->DataSetCount; i++)
    MyDBConnection->DataSets[i]->DisableControls();
```

Note *TADOConnection* supports command objects as well as datasets. You can iterate through these much like you iterate through the datasets, by using the *Commands* and *CommandCount* properties.

Obtaining metadata

All database connection components can retrieve lists of metadata on the database server, although they vary in the types of metadata they retrieve. The methods that retrieve metadata fill a string list with the names of various entities available on the server. You can then use this information, for example, to let your users dynamically select a table at runtime.

You can use a *TADOConnection* component to retrieve metadata about the tables and stored procedures available on the ADO data store. You can then use this information, for example, to let your users dynamically select a table or stored procedure at runtime.

Listing available tables

The *GetTableNames* method copies a list of table names to an already-existing string list object. This can be used, for example, to fill a list box with table names that the user can then use to choose a table to open. The following line fills a listbox with the names of all tables on the database:

```
MyDBConnection->GetTableNames(ListBox1->Items, false);
```

GetTableNames has two parameters: the string list to fill with table names, and a boolean that indicates whether the list should include system tables, or ordinary tables. Note that not all servers use system tables to store metadata, so asking for system tables may result in an empty list.

Note For most database connection components, *GetTableNames* returns a list of all available non-system tables when the second parameter is **false**. For *TSQLConnection*, however, you have more control over what type is added to the list when you are not fetching only the names of system tables. When using *TSQLConnection*, the types of names added to the list are controlled by the *TableScope* property. *TableScope* indicates whether the list should contain any or all of the following: ordinary tables, system tables, synonyms, and views.

Listing the fields in a table

The *GetFieldNames* method fills an existing string list with the names of all fields (columns) in a specified table. *GetFieldNames* takes two parameters, the name of the table for which you want to list the fields, and an existing string list to be filled with field names:

```
MyDBConnection->GetTableNames("Employee", ListBox1->Items);
```

Listing available stored procedures

To get a listing of all of the stored procedures contained in the database, use the *GetProcedureNames* method. This method takes a single parameter: an already-existing string list to fill:

```
MyDBConnection->GetProcedureNames(ListBox1->Items);
```

Note *GetProcedureNames* is only available for *TADOConnection* and *TSQLConnection*.

Listing available indexes

To get a listing of all indexes defined for a specific table, use the *GetIndexNames* method. This method takes two parameters: the table whose indexes you want, and an already-existing string list to fill:

```
MyDBConnection1->GetIndexNames("Employee", ListBox1->Items);
```

Note *GetIndexNames* is only available for *TSQLConnection*, although most table-type datasets have an equivalent method.

Listing stored procedure parameters

To get a list of all parameters defined for a specific stored procedure, use the *GetProcedureParams* method. *GetProcedureParams* fills a *TList* object with pointers to parameter description structures, where each structure describes a parameter of a specified stored procedure, including its name, index, parameter type, field type, and so on.

GetProcedureParams takes two parameters: the name of the stored procedure, and an already-existing *TList* object to fill:

```
MyDBConnection1->GetIndexNames("GetInterestRate", List1);
```

To convert the parameter descriptions that are added to the list into the more familiar *TParams* object, call the global *LoadParamListItems* procedure. Because *GetProcedureParams* dynamically allocates the individual structures, your application must free them when it is finished with the information. The global *FreeProcParams* routine can do this for you.

Note *GetProcedureParams* is only available for *TSQLConnection*.

Understanding datasets

The fundamental unit for accessing data is the dataset family of objects. Your application uses datasets for all database access. A dataset object represents a set of records from a database organized into a logical table. These records may be the records from a single database table, or they may represent the results of executing a query or stored procedure.

All dataset objects that you use in your database applications descend from *TDataSet*, and they inherit data fields, properties, events, and methods from this class. This chapter describes the functionality of *TDataSet* that is inherited by the dataset objects you use in your database applications. You need to understand this shared functionality to use any dataset object.

TDataSet is a virtualized dataset, meaning that many of its properties and methods are **virtual** or **pure virtual**. A *virtual method* is a function or procedure declaration where the implementation of that method can be (and usually is) overridden in descendant objects. A *pure virtual method* is a function or procedure declaration without an actual implementation. The declaration is a prototype that describes the method (and its parameters and return type, if any) that must be implemented in all descendant dataset objects, but that might be implemented differently by each of them.

Because *TDataSet* contains **pure virtual** methods, you cannot use it directly in an application without generating a runtime error. Instead, you either create instances of the built-in *TDataSet* descendants and use them in your application, or you derive your own dataset object from *TDataSet* or its descendants and write implementations for all its **pure virtual** methods.

TDataSet defines much that is common to all dataset objects. For example, *TDataSet* defines the basic structure of all datasets: an array of *TField* components that correspond to actual columns in one or more database tables, lookup fields provided by your application, or calculated fields provided by your application. For information about *TField* components, see Chapter 23, “Working with field components.”

This chapter describes how to use the common database functionality introduced by *TDataSet*. Bear in mind, however, that although *TDataSet* introduces the methods for this functionality, not all *TDataSet* dependants implement them. In particular, unidirectional datasets implement only a limited subset.

Using TDataSet descendants

TDataSet has several immediate descendants, each of which corresponds to a different data access mechanism. You do not work directly with any of these descendants. Rather, each descendant introduces the properties and methods for using a particular data access mechanism. These properties and methods are then exposed by descendant classes that are adapted to different types of server data. The immediate descendants of *TDataSet* include

- *TBDEDataSet*, which uses the Borland Database Engine (BDE) to communicate with the database server. The *TBDEDataSet* descendants you use are *TTable*, *TQuery*, *TStoredProc*, and *TNestedTable*. The unique features of BDE-enabled datasets are described in Chapter 24, “Using the Borland Database Engine.”
- *TCustomADODataset*, which uses ActiveX Data Objects (ADO) to communicate with an OLEDB data store. The *TCustomADODataset* descendants you use are *TADODataset*, *TADOTable*, *TADOQuery*, and *TADOStoredProc*. The unique features of ADO-based datasets are described in Chapter 25, “Working with ADO components.”
- *TCustomSQLDataSet*, which uses dbExpress to communicate with a database server. The *TCustomSQLDataSet* descendants you use are *TSQLDataSet*, *TSQLTable*, *TSQLQuery*, and *TSQLStoredProc*. The unique features of dbExpress datasets are described in Chapter 26, “Using unidirectional datasets.”
- *TIBCustomDataSet*, which communicates directly with an InterBase database server. The *TIBCustomDataSet* descendants you use are *TIBDataSet*, *TIBTable*, *TIBQuery*, and *TIBStoredProc*.
- *TCustomClientDataSet*, which represents the data from another dataset component or the data from a dedicated file on disk. The *TCustomClientDataSet* descendants you use are *TClientDataSet*, which can connect to an external (source) dataset, and the client datasets that are specialized to a particular data access mechanism (*TBDEClientDataSet*, *TSQLClientDataSet*, and *TIBClientDataSet*), which use an internal source dataset. The unique features of client datasets are described in Chapter 27, “Using client datasets.”

Some pros and cons of the various data access mechanisms employed by these *TDataSet* descendants are described in “Using databases” on page 18-1.

In addition to the built-in datasets, you can create your own custom *TDataSet* descendants — for example to supply data from a process other than a database server, such as a spreadsheet. Writing custom datasets allows you the flexibility of managing the data using any method you choose, while still letting you use the VCL data controls to build your user interface. For more information about creating custom components, see Chapter 45, “Overview of component creation.”

Although each *TDataSet* descendant has its own unique properties and methods, some of the properties and methods introduced by descendant classes are the same as those introduced by other descendant classes that use another data access mechanism. For example, there are similarities between the “table” components (*TTable*, *TADOTable*, *TSQLTable*, and *TIBTable*). For information about the commonalities introduced by *TDataSet* descendants, see “Types of datasets” on page 22-23.

Determining dataset states

The *state*—or *mode*—of a dataset determines what can be done to its data. For example, when a dataset is closed, its state is *dsInactive*, meaning that nothing can be done to its data. At runtime, you can examine a dataset’s read-only *State* property to determine its current state. The following table summarizes possible values for the *State* property and what they mean:

Table 22.1 Values for the dataset *State* property

| Value | State | Meaning |
|---------------------|------------|--|
| <i>dsInactive</i> | Inactive | DataSet closed. Its data is unavailable. |
| <i>dsBrowse</i> | Browse | DataSet open. Its data can be viewed, but not changed. This is the default state of an open dataset. |
| <i>dsEdit</i> | Edit | DataSet open. The current row can be modified. (not supported on unidirectional datasets) |
| <i>dsInsert</i> | Insert | DataSet open. A new row is inserted or appended. (not supported on unidirectional datasets) |
| <i>dsSetKey</i> | SetKey | DataSet open. Enables setting of ranges and key values used for ranges and <i>GotoKey</i> operations. (not supported by all datasets) |
| <i>dsCalcFields</i> | CalcFields | DataSet open. Indicates that an <i>OnCalcFields</i> event is under way. Prevents changes to fields that are not calculated. |
| <i>dsCurValue</i> | CurValue | DataSet open. Indicates that the <i>CurValue</i> property of fields is being fetched for an event handler that responds to errors in applying cached updates. |
| <i>dsNewValue</i> | NewValue | DataSet open. Indicates that the <i>NewValue</i> property of fields is being fetched for an event handler that responds to errors in applying cached updates. |
| <i>dsOldValue</i> | OldValue | DataSet open. Indicates that the <i>OldValue</i> property of fields is being fetched for an event handler that responds to errors in applying cached updates. |
| <i>dsFilter</i> | Filter | DataSet open. Indicates that a filter operation is under way. A restricted set of data can be viewed, and no data can be changed. (not supported on unidirectional datasets) |

Table 22.1 Values for the dataset State property (continued)

| Value | State | Meaning |
|-----------------------|---------------|--|
| <i>dsBlockRead</i> | Block Read | DataSet open. Data-aware controls are not updated and events are not triggered when the current record changes. |
| <i>dsInternalCalc</i> | Internal Calc | DataSet open. An <i>OnCalcFields</i> event is underway for calculated values that are stored with the record. (client datasets only) |
| <i>dsOpening</i> | Opening | DataSet is in the process of opening but has not finished. This state occurs when the dataset is opened for asynchronous fetching. |

Typically, an application checks the dataset state to determine when to perform certain tasks. For example, you might check for the *dsEdit* or *dsInsert* state to ascertain whether you need to post updates.

Note Whenever a dataset's state changes, the *OnStateChange* event is called for any data source components associated with the dataset. For more information about data source components and *OnStateChange*, see "Responding to changes mediated by the data source" on page 19-4.

Opening and closing datasets

To read or write data in a dataset, an application must first open it. You can open a dataset in two ways,

- Set the *Active* property of the dataset to **true**, either at design time in the Object Inspector, or in code at runtime:

```
CustTable->Active = true;
```

- Call the *Open* method for the dataset at runtime,

```
CustQuery->Open();
```

When you open the dataset, the dataset first receives a *BeforeOpen* event, then it opens a cursor, populating itself with data, and finally, it receives an *AfterOpen* event.

The newly-opened dataset is in browse mode, which means your application can read the data and navigate through it.

You can close a dataset in two ways,

- Set the *Active* property of the dataset to **false**, either at design time in the Object Inspector, or in code at runtime,

```
CustQuery->Active = false;
```

- Call the *Close* method for the dataset at runtime,

```
CustTable->Close();
```

Just as the dataset receives *BeforeOpen* and *AfterOpen* events when you open it, it receives a *BeforeClose* and *AfterClose* event when you close it. handlers that respond to the *Close* method for a dataset. You can use these events, for example, to prompt the

user to post pending changes or cancel them before closing the dataset. The following code illustrates such a handler:

```
void __fastcall TForm1::VerifyBeforeClose(TDataSet *DataSet)
{
    if (DataSet->State == dsEdit || DataSet->State == dsInsert)
    {
        TMsgDlgButtons btns;
        btns << mbYes << mbNo;
        if (MessageDlg("Post changes before closing?", mtConfirmation, btns, 0) == mrYes)
            DataSet->Post();
        else
            DataSet->Cancel();
    }
}
```

Note You may need to close a dataset when you want to change certain of its properties, such as *TableName* on a *TTable* component. When you reopen the dataset, the new property value takes effect.

Navigating datasets

Each active dataset has a *cursor*, or pointer, to the current row in the dataset. The *current row* in a dataset is the one whose field values currently show in single-field, data-aware controls on a form, such as *TDBEdit*, *TDBLabel*, and *TDBMemo*. If the dataset supports editing, the current record contains the values that can be manipulated by edit, insert, and delete methods.

You can change the current row by moving the cursor to point at a different row. The following table lists methods you can use in application code to move to different records:

Table 22.2 Navigational methods of datasets

| Method | Moves the cursor to |
|---------------|--|
| <i>First</i> | The first row in a dataset. |
| <i>Last</i> | The last row in a dataset. (not available for unidirectional datasets) |
| <i>Next</i> | The next row in a dataset. |
| <i>Prior</i> | The previous row in a dataset. (not available for unidirectional datasets) |
| <i>MoveBy</i> | A specified number of rows forward or back in a dataset. |

The data-aware, visual component *TDBNavigator* encapsulates these methods as buttons that users can click to move among records at runtime. For information about the navigator component, see “Navigating and manipulating records” on page 19-28.

Whenever you change the current record using one of these methods (or by other methods that navigate based on a search criterion), the dataset receives two events: *BeforeScroll* (before leaving the current record) and *AfterScroll* (after arriving at the

new record). You can use these events to update your user interface (for example, to update a status bar that indicates information about the current record).

TDataSet also defines two boolean properties that provide useful information when iterating through the records in a dataset.

Table 22.3 Navigational properties of datasets

| Property | Description |
|--------------------------------|--|
| <i>Bof</i> (Beginning-of-file) | true : the cursor is at the first row in the dataset. false : the cursor is not known to be at the first row in the dataset |
| <i>Eof</i> (End-of-file) | true : the cursor is at the last row in the dataset. false : the cursor is not known to be at the first row in the dataset |

Using the First and Last methods

The *First* method moves the cursor to the first row in a dataset and sets the *Bof* property to **true**. If the cursor is already at the first row in the dataset, *First* does nothing.

For example, the following code moves to the first record in *CustTable*:

```
CustTable->First();
```

The *Last* method moves the cursor to the last row in a dataset and sets the *Eof* property to **true**. If the cursor is already at the last row in the dataset, *Last* does nothing.

The following code moves to the last record in *CustTable*:

```
CustTable->Last();
```

Note The *Last* method raises an exception in unidirectional datasets.

Tip While there may be programmatic reasons to move to the first or last rows in a dataset without user intervention, you can also enable your users to navigate from record to record using the *TDBNavigator* component. The navigator component contains buttons that, when active and visible, enable a user to move to the first and last rows of an active dataset. The *OnClick* events for these buttons call the *First* and *Last* methods of the dataset. For more information about making effective use of the navigator component, see “Navigating and manipulating records” on page 19-28.

Using the Next and Prior methods

The *Next* method moves the cursor forward one row in the dataset and sets the *Bof* property to **false** if the dataset is not empty. If the cursor is already at the last row in the dataset when you call *Next*, nothing happens.

For example, the following code moves to the next record in *CustTable*:

```
CustTable->Next();
```

The *Prior* method moves the cursor back one row in the dataset, and sets *Eof* to **false** if the dataset is not empty. If the cursor is already at the first row in the dataset when you call *Prior*, *Prior* does nothing.

For example, the following code moves to the previous record in *CustTable*:

```
CustTable->Prior();
```

Note The *Prior* method raises an exception in unidirectional datasets.

Using the MoveBy method

MoveBy lets you specify how many rows forward or back to move the cursor in a dataset. Movement is relative to the current record at the time that *MoveBy* is called. *MoveBy* also sets the *Bof* and *Eof* properties for the dataset as appropriate.

This function takes an integer parameter, the number of records to move. Positive integers indicate a forward move and negative integers indicate a backward move.

Note *MoveBy* raises an exception in unidirectional datasets if you use a negative argument.

MoveBy returns the number of rows it moves. If you attempt to move past the beginning or end of the dataset, the number of rows returned by *MoveBy* differs from the number of rows you requested to move. This is because *MoveBy* stops when it reaches the first or last record in the dataset.

The following code moves two records backward in *CustTable*:

```
CustTable->MoveBy(-2);
```

Note If your application uses *MoveBy* in a multi-user database environment, keep in mind that datasets are fluid. A record that was five records back a moment ago may now be four, six, or even an unknown number of records back if several users are simultaneously accessing the database and changing its data.

Using the Eof and Bof properties

Two read-only, runtime properties, *Eof* (End-of-file) and *Bof* (Beginning-of-file), are useful when you want to iterate through all records in a dataset.

Eof

When *Eof* is **true**, it indicates that the cursor is unequivocally at the last row in a dataset. *Eof* is set to **true** when an application

- Opens an empty dataset.
- Calls a dataset's *Last* method.
- Calls a dataset's *Next* method, and the method fails (because the cursor is currently at the last row in the dataset).
- Calls *SetRange* on an empty range or dataset.

Eof is set to **false** in all other cases; you should assume *Eof* is **false** unless one of the conditions above is met *and* you test the property directly.

Eof is commonly tested in a loop condition to control iterative processing of all records in a dataset. If you open a dataset containing records (or you call *First*) *Eof* is **false**. To iterate through the dataset a record at a time, create a loop that steps through each record by calling *Next*, and terminates when *Eof* is **true**. *Eof* remains **false** until you call *Next* when the cursor is already on the last record.

The following code illustrates one way you might code a record-processing loop for a dataset called *CustTable*:

```
CustTable->DisableControls();
try
{
    for (CustTable->First(); !CustTable->Eof; CustTable->Next())
    {
        // Process each record here
        :
    }
}
__finally
{
    CustTable->EnableControls();
}
```

Tip This example also shows how to disable and enable data-aware visual controls tied to a dataset. If you disable visual controls during dataset iteration, it speeds processing because your application does not need to update the contents of the controls as the current record changes. After iteration is complete, controls should be enabled again to update them with values for the new current row. Note that enabling of the visual controls takes place in the **__finally** clause of a **try...__finally** statement. This guarantees that even if an exception terminates loop processing prematurely, controls are not left disabled.

Bof

When *Bof* is **true**, it indicates that the cursor is unequivocally at the first row in a dataset. *Bof* is set to **true** when an application

- Opens a dataset.
- Calls a dataset's *First* method.
- Calls a dataset's *Prior* method, and the method fails (because the cursor is currently at the first row in the dataset).
- Calls *SetRange* on an empty range or dataset.

Bof is set to **false** in all other cases; you should assume *Bof* is **false** unless one of the conditions above is met *and* you test the property directly.

Like *Eof*, *Bof* can be in a loop condition to control iterative processing of records in a dataset. The following code illustrates one way you might code a record-processing loop for a dataset called *CustTable*:

```
CustTable->DisableControls(); // Speed up processing; prevent screen flicker
try
{
    while (!CustTable->Bof) // Cycle until Bof is true
```



```

    (
        // Process each record here
        :
        CustTable->Prior();
        // Bof false on success; Bof true when Prior fails on first record
    )
}
__finally
{
    CustTable->EnableControls();
}

```

Marking and returning to records

In addition to moving from record to record in a dataset (or moving from one record to another by a specific number of records), it is often also useful to mark a particular location in a dataset so that you can return to it quickly when desired. *TDataSet* introduces a bookmarking feature that consists of a *Bookmark* property and five bookmark methods.

TDataSet implements **virtual** bookmark methods. While these methods ensure that any dataset object derived from *TDataSet* returns a value if a bookmark method is called, the return values are merely defaults that do not keep track of the current location. *TDataSet* descendants vary in the level of support they provide for bookmarks. None of the dbExpress datasets add any support for bookmarks. ADO datasets can support bookmarks, depending on the underlying database tables. BDE datasets, InterBase express datasets, and client datasets always support bookmarks.

The Bookmark property

The *Bookmark* property indicates which bookmark among any number of bookmarks in your application is current. *Bookmark* is a string that identifies the current bookmark. Each time you add another bookmark, it becomes the current bookmark.

The GetBookmark method

To create a bookmark, you must declare a variable of type *TBookmark* in your application, then call *GetBookmark* to allocate storage for the variable and set its value to a particular location in a dataset. The *TBookmark* type is a pointer (void *).

The GotoBookmark and BookmarkValid methods

When passed a bookmark, *GotoBookmark* moves the cursor for the dataset to the location specified in the bookmark. Before calling *GotoBookmark*, you can call *BookmarkValid* to determine if the bookmark points to a record. *BookmarkValid* returns **true** if a specified bookmark points to a record.

The CompareBookmarks method

You can also call *CompareBookmarks* to see if a bookmark you want to move to is different from another (or the current) bookmark. If the two bookmarks refer to the same record (or if both are NULL), *CompareBookmarks* returns 0.

The FreeBookmark method

FreeBookmark frees the memory allocated for a specified bookmark when you no longer need it. You should also call *FreeBookmark* before reusing an existing bookmark.

A bookmarking example

The following code illustrates one use of bookmarking:

```
void DoSomething (const TTable *Tbl)
{
    TBookmark Bookmark = Tbl->GetBookmark(); // Allocate memory and assign a value
    Tbl->DisableControls(); // Turn off display of records in data controls
    try
    {
        for (Tbl->First(); !Tbl->Eof; Tbl->Next()) // Iterate through each record in table
        {
            // Do your processing here
            :
        }
    }
    __finally
    {
        Tbl->GotoBookmark(Bookmark);
        Tbl->EnableControls(); // Turn on display of records in data controls
        Tbl->FreeBookmark(Bookmark); // Deallocate memory for the bookmark
    }
}
```

Before iterating through records, controls are disabled. Should an error occur during iteration through records, the **__finally** clause ensures that controls are always enabled and that the bookmark is always freed even if the loop terminates prematurely.

Searching datasets

If a dataset is not unidirectional, you can search against it using the *Locate* and *Lookup* methods. These methods enable you to search on any type of columns in any dataset.

Note Some *TDataSet* descendants introduce an additional family of methods for searching based on an index. For information about these additional methods, see “Using Indexes to search for records” on page 22-27.

Using Locate

Locate moves the cursor to the first row matching a specified set of search criteria. In its simplest form, you pass *Locate* the name of a column to search, a field value to match, and an options flag specifying whether the search is case-insensitive or if it can use partial-key matching. (Partial-key matching is when the criterion string need only be a prefix of the field value.) For example, the following code moves the cursor

to the first row in the *CustTable* where the value in the *Company* column is “Professional Divers, Ltd.”:

```
TLocateOptions SearchOptions;
SearchOptions.Clear();
SearchOptions << loPartialKey;
bool LocateSuccess = CustTable->Locate("Company", "Professional Divers, Ltd.",
    SearchOptions);
```

If *Locate* finds a match, the first record containing the match becomes the current record. *Locate* returns **true** if it finds a matching record, **false** if it does not. If a search fails, the current record does not change.

The real power of *Locate* comes into play when you want to search on multiple columns and specify multiple values to search for. Search values are Variants, which means you can specify different data types in your search criteria. To specify multiple columns in a search string, separate individual items in the string with semicolons.

Because search values are Variants, if you pass multiple values, you must either pass a Variant array as an argument (for example, the return values from the *Lookup* method), or you must construct the Variant array in code using the *VarArrayOf* function. The following code illustrates a search on multiple columns using multiple search values and partial-key matching:

```
TLocateOptions Opts;
Opts.Clear();
Opts << loPartialKey;
Variant locvalues[2];
locvalues[0] = Variant("Sight Diver");
locvalues[1] = Variant("P");
CustTable->Locate("Company;Contact", VarArrayOf(locvalues, 1), Opts);
```

Locate uses the fastest possible method to locate matching records. If the columns to search are indexed and the index is compatible with the search options you specify, *Locate* uses the index.

Using Lookup

Lookup searches for the first row that matches specified search criteria. If it finds a matching row, it forces the recalculation of any calculated fields and lookup fields associated with the dataset, then returns one or more fields from the matching row. *Lookup* does not move the cursor to the matching row; it only returns values from it.

In its simplest form, you pass *Lookup* the name of field to search, the field value to match, and the field or fields to return. For example, the following code looks for the first record in the *CustTable* where the value of the *Company* field is “Professional Divers, Ltd.”, and returns the company name, a contact person, and a phone number for the company:

```
Variant LookupResults = CustTable->Lookup("Company", "Professional Divers, Ltd",
    "Company;Contact;Phone");
```

Lookup returns values for the specified fields from the first matching record it finds. Values are returned as Variants. If more than one return value is requested, *Lookup* returns a Variant array. If there are no matching records, *Lookup* returns a Null Variant. For more information about Variant arrays, see the online help.

The real power of *Lookup* comes into play when you want to search on multiple columns and specify multiple values to search for. To specify strings containing multiple columns or result fields, separate individual fields in the string items with semicolons.

Because search values are Variants, if you pass multiple values, you must either pass a Variant array as an argument (for example, the return values from the *Lookup* method), or you must construct the Variant array in code using the *VarArrayOf* function. The following code illustrates a lookup search on multiple columns:

```
Variant LookupResults;
Variant locvalues[2];
Variant v;

locvalues[0] = Variant("Sight Diver");
locvalues[1] = Variant("Kato Paphos");
LookupResults = CustTable->Lookup("Company;City", VarArrayOf(locvalues, 1),
    "Company;Addr1;Addr2;State;Zip");
// now put the results in a global stringlist (created elsewhere)
pFieldValues->Clear();
for (int i = 0; i < 5; i++) // Lookup call requested 5 fields
{
    v = LookupResults.GetElement(i);
    if (v.IsNull())
        pFieldValues->Add("");
    else
        pFieldValues->Add(v);
}
```

Like *Locate*, *Lookup* uses the fastest possible method to locate matching records. If the columns to search are indexed, *Lookup* uses the index.

Displaying and editing a subset of data using filters

An application is frequently interested in only a subset of records from a dataset. For example, you may be interested in retrieving or viewing only those records for companies based in California in your customer database, or you may want to find a record that contains a particular set of field values. In each case, you can use filters to restrict an application's access to a subset of all records in the dataset.

With unidirectional datasets, you can only limit the records in the dataset by using a query that restricts the records in the dataset. With other *TDataSet* descendants, however, you can define a subset of the data that has already been fetched. To restrict an application's access to a subset of all records in the dataset, you can use filters.

A filter specifies conditions a record must meet to be displayed. Filter conditions can be stipulated in a dataset's *Filter* property or coded into its *OnFilterRecord* event handler. Filter conditions are based on the values in any specified number of fields in

a dataset, regardless of whether those fields are indexed. For example, to view only those records for companies based in California, a simple filter might require that records contain a value in the State field of “CA”.

Note Filters are applied to every record retrieved in a dataset. When you want to filter large volumes of data, it may be more efficient to use a query to restrict record retrieval, or to set a range on an indexed table rather than using filters.

Enabling and disabling filtering

Enabling filters on a dataset is a three step process:

- 1 Create a filter.
- 2 Set filter options for string-based filter tests, if necessary.
- 3 Set the *Filtered* property to **true**.

When filtering is enabled, only those records that meet the filter criteria are available to an application. Filtering is always a temporary condition. You can turn off filtering by setting the *Filtered* property to *false*.

Creating filters

There are two ways to create a filter for a dataset:

- Specify simple filter conditions in the *Filter* property. *Filter* is especially useful for creating and applying filters at runtime.
- Write an *OnFilterRecord* event handler for simple or complex filter conditions. With *OnFilterRecord*, you specify filter conditions at design time. Unlike the *Filter* property, which is restricted to a single string containing filter logic, an *OnFilterRecord* event can take advantage of branching and looping logic to create complex, multi-level filter conditions.

The main advantage to creating filters using the *Filter* property is that your application can create, change, and apply filters dynamically, (for example, in response to user input). Its main disadvantages are that filter conditions must be expressible in a single text string, cannot make use of branching and looping constructs, and cannot test or compare its values against values not already in the dataset.

The strengths of the *OnFilterRecord* event are that a filter can be complex and variable, can be based on multiple lines of code that use branching and looping constructs, and can test dataset values against values outside the dataset, such as the text in an edit box. The main weakness of using *OnFilterRecord* is that you set the filter at design time and it cannot be modified in response to user input. (You can, however, create several filter handlers and switch among them in response to general application conditions.)

The following sections describe how to create filters using the *Filter* property and the *OnFilterRecord* event handler.

Setting the Filter property

To create a filter using the *Filter* property, set the value of the property to a string that contains the filter's test condition. For example, the following statement creates a filter that tests a dataset's *State* field to see if it contains a value for the state of California:

```
Dataset1->Filter = "State = 'CA'";
```

You can also supply a value for *Filter* based on text supplied by the user. For example, the following statement assigns the text in from edit box to *Filter*:

```
Dataset1->Filter = Edit1->Text;
```

You can, of course, create a string based on both hard-coded text and user-supplied data:

```
Dataset1->Filter = AnsiString("State = '" + Edit1->Text + "'");
```

Blank field values do not appear unless they are explicitly included in the filter:

```
Dataset1->Filter = "State <> 'CA' or State = BLANK";
```

Note After you specify a value for *Filter*, to apply the filter to the dataset, set the *Filtered* property to **true**.

Filters can compare field values to literals and to constants using the following comparison and logical operators:

Table 22.4 Comparison and logical operators that can appear in a filter

| Operator | Meaning |
|----------|---|
| < | Less than |
| > | Greater than |
| >= | Greater than or equal to |
| <= | Less than or equal to |
| = | Equal to |
| <> | Not equal to |
| AND | Tests two statements are both true |
| NOT | Tests that the following statement is not true |
| OR | Tests that at least one of two statements is true |
| + | Adds numbers, concatenates strings, adds numbers to date/time values (only available for some drivers) |
| - | Subtracts numbers, subtracts dates, or subtracts a number from a date (only available for some drivers) |
| * | Multiplies two numbers (only available for some drivers) |
| / | Divides two numbers (only available for some drivers) |
| * | wildcard for partial comparisons (<i>FilterOptions</i> must include <i>foPartialCompare</i>) |

By using combinations of these operators, you can create fairly sophisticated filters. For example, the following statement checks to make sure that two test conditions are met before accepting a record for display:

```
(Custno > 1400) AND (Custno < 1500);
```

Note When filtering is on, user edits to a record may mean that the record no longer meets a filter's test conditions. The next time the record is retrieved from the dataset, it may therefore "disappear." If that happens, the next record that passes the filter condition becomes the current record.

Writing an *OnFilterRecord* event handler

You can write code to filter records using the *OnFilterRecord* events generated by the dataset for each record it retrieves. This event handler implements a test that determines if a record should be included in those that are visible to the application.

To indicate whether a record passes the filter condition, your *OnFilterRecord* handler sets its *Accept* parameter to **true** to include a record, or **false** to exclude it. For example, the following filter displays only those records with the State field set to "CA":

```
void __fastcall TForm1::Table1FilterRecord(TDataSet *DataSet; bool &Accept)
{
    Accept = DataSet->FieldByName["State"]->AsString == "CA";
}
```

When filtering is enabled, an *OnFilterRecord* event is generated for each record retrieved. The event handler tests each record, and only those that meet the filter's conditions are displayed. Because the *OnFilterRecord* event is generated for every record in a dataset, you should keep the event handler as tightly coded as possible to avoid adversely affecting the performance.

Switching filter event handlers at runtime

You can code any number of *OnFilterRecord* event handlers and switch among them at runtime. For example, the following statements switch to an *OnFilterRecord* event handler called *NewYorkFilter*:

```
DataSet1->OnFilterRecord = NewYorkFilter;
Refresh();
```

Setting filter options

The *FilterOptions* property lets you specify whether a filter that compares string-based fields accepts records based on partial comparisons and whether string comparisons are case-sensitive. *FilterOptions* is a set property that can be an empty set (the default), or that can contain either or both of the following values:

Table 22.5 FilterOptions values

| Value | Meaning |
|---------------------------|--|
| <i>foCaseInsensitive</i> | Ignore case when comparing strings. |
| <i>foNoPartialCompare</i> | Disable partial string matching; that is, don't match strings that end with an asterisk (*). |

For example, the following statements set up a filter that ignores case when comparing values in the *State* field:

```
TFilterOptions FilterOptions;
FilterOptions->Clear();
FilterOptions << foCaseInsensitive;
Table1->FilterOptions = FilterOptions;
Table1->Filter = "State = 'CA'";
```

Navigating records in a filtered dataset

There are four dataset methods that navigate among records in a filtered dataset. The following table lists these methods and describes what they do:

Table 22.6 Filtered dataset navigational methods

| Method | Purpose |
|------------------|--|
| <i>FindFirst</i> | Move to the first record that matches the current filter criteria. The search for the first matching record always begins at the first record in the unfiltered dataset. |
| <i>FindLast</i> | Move to the last record that matches the current filter criteria. |
| <i>FindNext</i> | Moves from the current record in the filtered dataset to the next one. |
| <i>FindPrior</i> | Move from the current record in the filtered dataset to the previous one. |

For example, the following statement finds the first filtered record in a dataset:

```
DataSet1->FindFirst();
```

Provided that you set the *Filter* property or create an *OnFilterRecord* event handler for your application, these methods position the cursor on the specified record regardless of whether filtering is currently enabled. If you call these methods when filtering is not enabled, then they

- Temporarily enable filtering.
- Position the cursor on a matching record if one is found.
- Disable filtering.

Note If filtering is disabled and you do not set the *Filter* property or create an *OnFilterRecord* event handler, these methods do the same thing as *First()*, *Last()*, *Next()*, and *Prior()*.

All navigational filter methods position the cursor on a matching record (if one is found), make that record the current one, and return **true**. If a matching record is not found, the cursor position is unchanged, and these methods return **false**. You can check the status of the *Found* property to wrap these calls, and only take action when *Found* is **true**. For example, if the cursor is already on the last matching record in the dataset and you call *FindNext*, the method returns **false**, and the current record is unchanged.

Modifying data

You can use the following dataset methods to insert, update, and delete data if the read-only *CanModify* property is **true**. *CanModify* is **true** unless the dataset is unidirectional, the database underlying the dataset does not permit read and write privileges, or some other factor intervenes. (Intervening factors include the *ReadOnly* property on some datasets or the *RequestLive* property on *TQuery* components.)

Table 22.7 Dataset methods for inserting, updating, and deleting data

| Method | Description |
|---------------|--|
| <i>Edit</i> | Puts the dataset into <i>dsEdit</i> state if it is not already in <i>dsEdit</i> or <i>dsInsert</i> states. |
| <i>Append</i> | Posts any pending data, moves current record to the end of the dataset, and puts the dataset in <i>dsInsert</i> state. |
| <i>Insert</i> | Posts any pending data, and puts the dataset in <i>dsInsert</i> state. |
| <i>Post</i> | Attempts to post the new or altered record to the database. If successful, the dataset is put in <i>dsBrowse</i> state; if unsuccessful, the dataset remains in its current state. |
| <i>Cancel</i> | Cancels the current operation and puts the dataset in <i>dsBrowse</i> state. |
| <i>Delete</i> | Deletes the current record and puts the dataset in <i>dsBrowse</i> state. |

Editing records

A dataset must be in *dsEdit* mode before an application can modify records. In your code you can use the *Edit* method to put a dataset into *dsEdit* mode if the read-only *CanModify* property for the dataset is **true**.

When a dataset transitions to *dsEdit* mode, it first receives a *BeforeEdit* event. After the transition to edit mode is successfully completed, the dataset receives an *AfterEdit* event. Typically, these events are used for updating the user interface to indicate the current state of the dataset. If the dataset can't be put into edit mode for some reason, an *OnEditError* event occurs, where you can inform the user of the problem or try to correct the situation that prevented the dataset from entering edit mode.

On forms in your application, some data-aware controls can automatically put a dataset into *dsEdit* state if

- The control's *ReadOnly* property is **false** (the default),
- The *AutoEdit* property of the data source for the control is **true**, and
- *CanModify* is **true** for the dataset.

Note Even if a dataset is in *dsEdit* state, editing records may not succeed for SQL-based databases if your application's user does not have proper SQL access privileges.

Once a dataset is in *dsEdit* mode, a user can modify the field values for the current record that appears in any data-aware controls on a form. Data-aware controls for which editing is enabled automatically call *Post* when a user executes any action that changes the current record (such as moving to a different record in a grid).

If you have a navigator component on your form, users can cancel edits by clicking the navigator's Cancel button. Canceling edits returns a dataset to *dsBrowse* state.

In code, you must write or cancel edits by calling the appropriate methods. You write changes by calling *Post*. You cancel them by calling *Cancel*. In code, *Edit* and *Post* are often used together. For example,

```
Table1->Edit();
Table1->FieldValues["CustNo"] = 1234;
Table1->Post();
```

In the previous example, the first line of code places the dataset in *dsEdit* mode. The next line of code assigns the number 1234 to the *CustNo* field of the current record. Finally, the last line writes, or posts, the modified record. If you are not caching updates, posting writes the change back to the database. If you are caching updates, the change is written to a temporary buffer, where it stays until the dataset's *ApplyUpdates* method is called.

Adding new records

A dataset must be in *dsInsert* mode before an application can add new records. In code, you can use the *Insert* or *Append* methods to put a dataset into *dsInsert* mode if the read-only *CanModify* property for the dataset is **true**.

When a dataset transitions to *dsInsert* mode, it first receives a *BeforeInsert* event. After the transition to insert mode is successfully completed, the dataset receives first an *OnNewRecord* event and then an *AfterInsert* event. You can use these events, for example, to provide initial values to newly inserted records:

```
void __fastcall TForm1::OrdersTableNewRecord(TDataSet *DataSet)
{
    DataSet->FieldByName("OrderDate")->AsDateTime = Date();
}
```

On forms in your application, the data-aware grid and navigator controls can put a dataset into *dsInsert* state if

- The control's *ReadOnly* property is **false** (the default), and
- *CanModify* is **true** for the dataset.

Note Even if a dataset is in *dsInsert* state, adding records may not succeed for SQL-based databases if your application's user does not have proper SQL access privileges.

Once a dataset is in *dsInsert* mode, a user or application can enter values into the fields associated with the new record. Except for the grid and navigational controls, there is no visible difference to a user between *Insert* and *Append*. On a call to *Insert*, an empty row appears in a grid above what was the current record. On a call to *Append*, the grid is scrolled to the last record in the dataset, an empty row appears at the bottom of the grid, and the *Next* and *Last* buttons are dimmed on any navigator component associated with the dataset.

Data-aware controls for which inserting is enabled automatically call *Post* when a user executes any action that changes which record is current (such as moving to a different record in a grid). Otherwise you must call *Post* in your code.

Post writes the new record to the database, or, if you are caching updates, *Post* writes the record to an in-memory cache. To write cached inserts and appends to the database, call the dataset's *ApplyUpdates* method.

Inserting records

Insert opens a new, empty record before the current record, and makes the empty record the current record so that field values for the record can be entered either by a user or by your application code.

When an application calls *Post* (or *ApplyUpdates* when using cached updates), a newly inserted record is written to a database in one of three ways:

- For indexed Paradox and dBASE tables, the record is inserted into the dataset in a position based on its index.
- For unindexed Paradox and dBASE tables, the record is inserted into the dataset at its current position.
- For SQL databases, the physical location of the insertion is implementation-specific. If the table is indexed, the index is updated with the new record information.

Appending records

Append opens a new, empty record at the end of the dataset, and makes the empty record the current one so that field values for the record can be entered either by a user or by your application code.

When an application calls *Post* (or *ApplyUpdates* when using cached updates), a newly appended record is written to a database in one of three ways:

- For indexed Paradox and dBASE tables, the record is inserted into the dataset in a position based on its index.
- For unindexed Paradox and dBASE tables, the record is added to the end of the dataset.
- For SQL databases, the physical location of the append is implementation-specific. If the table is indexed, the index is updated with the new record information.

Deleting records

Use the *Delete* method to delete the current record in an active dataset. When the *Delete* method is called,

- The dataset receives a *BeforeDelete* event.
- The dataset attempts to delete the current record.
- The dataset returns to the *dsBrowse* state.
- The dataset receives an *AfterDelete* event.

If you want to prevent the deletion in the *BeforeDelete* event handler, you can call the global *Abort* procedure:

```
void __fastcall TForm1::TableBeforeDelete (TDataSet *Dataset)
{
    if (MessageBox(0, "Delete This Record?", "CONFIRM", MB_YESNO) != IDYES)
        Abort();
}
```

If *Delete* fails, it generates an *OnDeleteError* event. If the *OnDeleteError* event handler can't correct the problem, the dataset remains in *dsEdit* state. If *Delete* succeeds, the dataset reverts to the *dsBrowse* state and the record that followed the deleted record becomes the current record.

If you are caching updates, the deleted record is not removed from the underlying database table until you call *ApplyUpdates*.

If you provide a navigator component on your forms, users can delete the current record by clicking the navigator's Delete button. In code, you must call *Delete* explicitly to remove the current record.

Posting data

After you finish editing a record, you must call the *Post* method to write out your changes. The *Post* method behaves differently, depending on the dataset's state and on whether you are caching updates.

- If you are not caching updates, and the dataset is in the *dsEdit* or *dsInsert* state, *Post* writes the current record to the database and returns the dataset to the *dsBrowse* state.
- If you are caching updates, and the dataset is in the *dsEdit* or *dsInsert* state, *Post* writes the current record to an internal cache and returns the dataset to the *dsBrowse* state. The edits are not written to the database until you call *ApplyUpdates*.
- If the dataset is in the *dsSetKey* state, *Post* returns the dataset to the *dsBrowse* state.

Regardless of the initial state of the dataset, *Post* generates *BeforePost* and *AfterPost* events, before and after writing the current changes. You can use these events to update the user interface, or prevent the dataset from posting changes by calling the *Abort* procedure. If the call to *Post* fails, the dataset receives an *OnPostError* event, where you can inform the user of the problem or attempt to correct it.

Posting can be done explicitly, or implicitly as part of another procedure. When an application moves off the current record, *Post* is called implicitly. Calls to the *First*, *Next*, *Prior*, and *Last* methods perform a *Post* if the table is in *dsEdit* or *dsInsert* modes. The *Append* and *Insert* methods also implicitly post any pending data.

Warning The *Close* method does not call *Post* implicitly. Use the *BeforeClose* event to post any pending edits explicitly.

Canceling changes

An application can undo changes made to the current record at any time, if it has not yet directly or indirectly called *Post*. For example, if a dataset is in *dsEdit* mode, and a user has changed the data in one or more fields, the application can return the record back to its original values by calling the *Cancel* method for the dataset. A call to *Cancel* always returns a dataset to *dsBrowse* state.

If the dataset was in *dsEdit* or *dsInsert* mode when your application called *Cancel*, it receives *BeforeCancel* and *AfterCancel* events before and after the current record is restored to its original values.

On forms, you can allow users to cancel edit, insert, or append operations by including the Cancel button on a navigator component associated with the dataset, or you can provide code for your own Cancel button on the form.

Modifying entire records

On forms, all data-aware controls except for grids and the navigator provide access to a single field in a record.

In code, however, you can use the following methods that work with entire record structures provided that the structure of the database tables underlying the dataset is stable and does not change. The following table summarizes the methods available for working with entire records rather than individual fields in those records:

Table 22.8 Methods that work with entire records

| Method | Description |
|---|---|
| <i>AppendRecord</i> ([array of values]) | Appends a record with the specified column values at the end of a table; analogous to <i>Append</i> . Performs an implicit <i>Post</i> . |
| <i>InsertRecord</i> ([array of values]) | Inserts the specified values as a record before the current cursor position of a table; analogous to <i>Insert</i> . Performs an implicit <i>Post</i> . |
| <i>SetFields</i> ([array of values]) | Sets the values of the corresponding fields; analogous to assigning values to <i>TFields</i> . The application must perform an explicit <i>Post</i> . |

These methods take an array of values as an argument, where each value corresponds to a column in the underlying dataset. Use the `ARRAYOFCONST` macro to create these arrays. The values can be literals, variables, or `NULL`. If the number of values in an argument is less than the number of columns in a dataset, then the remaining values are assumed to be `NULL`.

For unindexed datasets, *AppendRecord* adds a record to the end of the dataset and *InsertRecord* inserts a record after the current cursor position. For indexed datasets, both methods place the record in the correct position in the table, based on the index. In both cases, the methods move the cursor to the record's position.

SetFields assigns the values specified in the array of parameters to fields in the dataset. To use *SetFields*, an application must first call *Edit* to put the dataset in *dsEdit* mode. To apply the changes to the current record, it must perform a *Post*.

If you use *SetFields* to modify some, but not all fields in an existing record, you can pass NULL values for fields you do not want to change. If you do not supply enough values for all fields in a record, *SetFields* assigns NULL values to them. NULL values overwrite any existing values already in those fields.

For example, suppose a database has a COUNTRY table with columns for Name, Capital, Continent, Area, and Population. If a *TTable* component called *CountryTable* were linked to the COUNTRY table, the following statement would insert a record into the COUNTRY table:

```
CountryTable->InsertRecord(ARRAYOFCONST(("Japan", "Tokyo", "Asia")));
```

This statement does not specify values for Area and Population, so NULL values are inserted for them. The table is indexed on Name, so the statement would insert the record based on the alphabetic collation of "Japan".

To update the record, an application could use the following code:

```
TLocateOptions SearchOptions;
SearchOptions->Clear();
SearchOptions << loCaseInsensitive;
if (CountryTable->Locate("Name", "Japan", SearchOptions))
{
    CountryTable->Edit();
    CountryTable->SetFields(ARRAYOFCONST(((void *)NULL, (void *)NULL, (void *)NULL,
        344567, 164700000)));
    CountryTable->Post();
}
```

This code assigns values to the Area and Population fields and then posts them to the database. The three NULL pointers act as place holders for the first three columns to preserve their current contents.

Warning When using NULL pointers with *SetFields* to leave some field values untouched, be sure to cast the NULL to a void *. If you use NULL as a parameter without the cast, you will set the field to a blank value.

Calculating fields

Using the Fields editor, you can define calculated fields for your datasets. When a dataset contains calculated fields, you provide the code to calculate those field's values in an *OnCalcFields* event handler. For details on how to define calculated fields using the Fields editor, see "Defining a calculated field" on page 23-7.

The *AutoCalcFields* property determines when *OnCalcFields* is called. If *AutoCalcFields* is **true**, *OnCalcFields* is called when

- A dataset is opened.
- The dataset enters edit mode.

- A record is retrieved from the database.
- Focus moves from one visual component to another, or from one column to another in a data-aware grid control and the current record has been modified.

If *AutoCalcFields* is **false**, then *OnCalcFields* is not called when individual fields within a record are edited (the fourth condition above).

Caution *OnCalcFields* is called frequently, so the code you write for it should be kept short. Also, if *AutoCalcFields* is **true**, *OnCalcFields* should not perform any actions that modify the dataset (or a linked dataset if it is part of a master-detail relationship), because this leads to recursion. For example, if *OnCalcFields* performs a *Post*, and *AutoCalcFields* is **true**, then *OnCalcFields* is called again, causing another *Post*, and so on.

When *OnCalcFields* executes, a dataset enters *dsCalcFields* mode. This state prevents modifications or additions to the records except for the calculated fields the handler is designed to modify. The reason for preventing other modifications is because *OnCalcFields* uses the values in other fields to derive calculated field values. Changes to those other fields might otherwise invalidate the values assigned to calculated fields. After *OnCalcFields* is completed, the dataset returns to *dsBrowse* state.

Types of datasets

“Using TDataSet descendants” on page 22-2 classifies *TDataSet* descendants by the method they use to access their data. Another useful way to classify *TDataSet* descendants is to consider the type of server data they represent. Viewed this way, there are three basic classes of datasets:

- **Table type datasets:** Table type datasets represent a single table from the database server, including all of its rows and columns. Table type datasets include *TTable*, *TADOTable*, *TSQLTable*, and *TIBTable*.

Table type datasets let you take advantage of indexes defined on the server. Because there is a one-to-one correspondence between database table and dataset, you can use server indexes that are defined for the database table. Indexes allow your application to sort the records in the table, speed searches and lookups, and can form the basis of a master/detail relationship. Some table type datasets also take advantage of the one-to-one relationship between dataset and database table to let you perform table-level operations such as creating and deleting database tables.

- **Query-type datasets:** Query-type datasets represent a single SQL command, or query. Queries can represent the result set from executing a command (typically a *SELECT* statement), or they can execute a command that does not return any records (for example, an *UPDATE* statement). Query-type datasets include *TQuery*, *TADOQuery*, *TSQLQuery*, and *TIBQuery*.

To use a query-type dataset effectively, you must be familiar with SQL and your server’s SQL implementation, including limitations and extensions to the SQL-92 standard. If you are new to SQL, you may want to purchase a third party book that covers SQL in-depth. One of the best is *Understanding the New SQL: A Complete Guide*, by Jim Melton and Alan R. Simpson, Morgan Kaufmann Publishers.

- **Stored procedure-type datasets:** Stored procedure-type datasets represent a stored procedure on the database server. Stored procedure-type datasets include *TStoredProc*, *TADOStoredProc*, *TSQLStoredProc*, and *TIBStoredProc*.

A stored procedure is a self-contained program written in the procedure and trigger language specific to the database system used. They typically handle frequently repeated database-related tasks, and are especially useful for operations that act on large numbers of records or that use aggregate or mathematical functions. Using stored procedures typically improves the performance of a database application by:

- Taking advantage of the server's usually greater processing power and speed.
- Reducing network traffic by moving processing to the server.

Stored procedures may or may not return data. Those that return data may return it as a cursor (similar to the results of a *SELECT* query), as multiple cursors (effectively returning multiple datasets), or they may return data in output parameters. These differences depend in part on the server: Some servers do not allow stored procedures to return data, or only allow output parameters. Some servers do not support stored procedures at all. See your server documentation to determine what is available.

Note You can usually use a query-type dataset to execute stored procedures because most servers provide extensions to SQL for working with stored procedures. Each server, however, uses its own syntax for this. If you choose to use a query-type dataset instead of a stored procedure-type dataset, see your server documentation for the necessary syntax.

In addition to the datasets that fall neatly into these three categories, *TDataSet* has some descendants that fit into more than one category:

- *TADODataSet* and *TSQLDataSet* have a *CommandType* property that lets you specify whether they represent a table, query, or stored procedure. Property and method names are most similar to query-type datasets, although *TADODataSet* lets you specify an index like a table type dataset.
- *TClientDataSet* represents the data from another dataset. As such, it can represent a table, query, or stored procedure. *TClientDataSet* behaves most like a table type dataset, because of its index support. However, it also has some of the features of queries and stored procedures: the management of parameters and the ability to execute without retrieving a result set.
- Some other client datasets (*TBDEClientDataSet* and *TSQLClientDataSet*) have a *CommandType* property that lets you specify whether they represent a table, query, or stored procedure. Property and method names are like *TClientDataSet*, including parameter support, indexes, and the ability to execute without retrieving a result set.
- *TIBDataSet* can represent both queries and stored procedures. In fact, it can represent multiple queries and stored procedures simultaneously, with separate properties for each.

Using table type datasets

To use a table type dataset,

- 1 Place the appropriate dataset component in a data module or on a form, and set its *Name* property to a unique value appropriate to your application.
- 2 Identify the database server that contains the table you want to use. Each table type dataset does this differently, but typically you specify a database connection component:
 - For *TTable*, specify a *TDatabase* component or a BDE alias using the *DatabaseName* property.
 - For *TADOTable*, specify a *TADOConnection* component using the *Connection* property.
 - For *TSQLTable*, specify a *TSQLConnection* component using the *SQLConnection* property.
 - For *TIBTable*, specify a *TIBConnection* component using the *Database* property.

For information about using database connection components, see Chapter 21, "Connecting to databases."

- 3 Set the *TableName* property to the name of the table in the database. You can select tables from a drop-down list if you have already identified a database connection component.
- 4 Place a data source component in the data module or on the form, and set its *DataSet* property to the name of the dataset. The data source component is used to pass a result set from the dataset to data-aware components for display.

Advantages of using table type datasets

The main advantage of using table type datasets is the availability of indexes. Indexes enable your application to

- Sort the records in the dataset.
- Locate records quickly.
- Limit the records that are visible.
- Establish master/detail relationships.

In addition, the one-to-one relationship between table type datasets and database tables enables many of them to be used for

- Controlling Read/write access to tables
- Creating and deleting tables
- Emptying tables
- Synchronizing tables

Sorting records with indexes

An index determines the display order of records in a table. Typically, records appear in ascending order based on a primary, or default, index. This default behavior does not require application intervention. If you want a different sort order, however, you must specify either

- An alternate index.
- A list of columns on which to sort (not available on servers that aren't SQL-based).

Indexes let you present the data from a table in different orders. On SQL-based tables, this sort order is implemented by using the index to generate an ORDER BY clause in a query that fetches the table's records. On other tables (such as Paradox and dBASE tables), the index is used by the data access mechanism to present records in the desired order.

Obtaining information about indexes

Your application can obtain information about server-defined indexes from all table type datasets. To obtain a list of available indexes for the dataset, call the *GetIndexNames* method. *GetIndexNames* fills a string list with valid index names. For example, the following code fills a listbox with the names of all indexes defined for the *CustomersTable* dataset:

```
CustomersTable->GetIndexNames(ListBox1->Items);
```

Note For Paradox tables, the primary index is unnamed, and is therefore not returned by *GetIndexNames*. You can still change the index back to a primary index on a Paradox table after using an alternative index, however, by setting the *IndexName* property to a blank string.

To obtain information about the fields of the current index, use the

- *IndexFieldCount* property, to determine the number of columns in the index.
- *IndexFields* property, to examine a list of the field components for the columns that comprise the index.

The following code illustrates how you might use *IndexFieldCount* and *IndexFields* to iterate through a list of column names in an application:

```
AnsiString ListOfIndexFields[20];
for (int i = 0; i < CustomersTable->IndexFieldCount; i++)
    ListOfIndexFields[i] = CustomersTable->IndexFields[i]->FieldName;
```

Note *IndexFieldCount* is not valid for a dBASE table opened on an expression index.

Specifying an index with IndexName

Use the *IndexName* property to cause an index to be active. Once active, an index determines the order of records in the dataset. (It can also be used as the basis for a master-detail link, an index-based search, or index-based filtering.)

To activate an index, set the *IndexName* property to the name of the index. In some database systems, primary indexes do not have names. To activate one of these indexes, set *IndexName* to a blank string.

At design-time, you can select an index from a list of available indexes by clicking the property's ellipsis button in the Object Inspector. At runtime set *IndexName* using a *AnsiString* literal or variable. You can obtain a list of available indexes by calling the *GetIndexNames* method.

The following code sets the index for *CustomersTable* to *CustDescending*:

```
CustomersTable->IndexName = "CustDescending";
```

Creating an index with *IndexFieldNames*

If there is no defined index that implements the sort order you want, you can create a pseudo-index using the *IndexFieldNames* property.

Note *IndexName* and *IndexFieldNames* are mutually exclusive. Setting one property clears values set for the other.

The value of *IndexFieldNames* is an *AnsiString*. To specify a sort order, list each column name to use in the order it should be used, and delimit the names with semicolons. Sorting is by ascending order only. Case-sensitivity of the sort depends on the capabilities of your server. See your server documentation for more information.

The following code sets the sort order for *PhoneTable* based on *LastName*, then *FirstName*:

```
PhoneTable->IndexFieldNames = "LastName;FirstName";
```

Note If you use *IndexFieldNames* on Paradox and dBASE tables, the dataset attempts to find an index that uses the columns you specify. If it cannot find such an index, it raises an exception.

Using Indexes to search for records

You can search against any dataset using the *Locate* and *Lookup* methods of *TDataSet*. However, by explicitly using indexes, some table type datasets can improve over the searching performance provided by the *Locate* and *Lookup* methods.

ADO datasets all support the *Seek* method, which moves to a record based on a set of field values for fields in the current index. *Seek* lets you specify where to move the cursor relative to the first or last matching record.

TTable and all types of client dataset support similar indexed-based searches, but use a combination of related methods. The following table summarizes the six related methods provided by *TTable* and client datasets to support index-based searches:

Table 22.9 Index-based search methods

| Method | Purpose |
|--------------------|--|
| <i>EditKey</i> | Preserves the current contents of the search key buffer and puts the dataset into <i>dsSetKey</i> state so your application can modify existing search criteria prior to executing a search. |
| <i>FindKey</i> | Combines the <i>SetKey</i> and <i>GotoKey</i> methods in a single method. |
| <i>FindNearest</i> | Combines the <i>SetKey</i> and <i>GotoNearest</i> methods in a single method. |

Table 22.9 Index-based search methods (continued)

| Method | Purpose |
|--------------------|---|
| <i>GotoKey</i> | Searches for the first record in a dataset that exactly matches the search criteria, and moves the cursor to that record if one is found. |
| <i>GotoNearest</i> | Searches on string-based fields for the closest match to a record based on partial key values, and moves the cursor to that record. |
| <i>SetKey</i> | Clears the search key buffer and puts the table into <i>dsSetKey</i> state so your application can specify new search criteria prior to executing a search. |

GotoKey and *FindKey* are boolean functions that, if successful, move the cursor to a matching record and return **true**. If the search is unsuccessful, the cursor is not moved, and these functions return **false**.

GotoNearest and *FindNearest* always reposition the cursor either on the first exact match found or, if no match is found, on the first record that is greater than the specified search criteria.

Executing a search with Goto methods

To execute a search using *Goto* methods, follow these general steps:

- 1 Specify the index to use for the search. This is the same index that sorts the records in the dataset (see “Sorting records with indexes” on page 22-26). To specify the index, use the *IndexName* or *IndexFieldNames* property.
- 2 Open the dataset.
- 3 Put the dataset in *dsSetKey* state by calling the *SetKey* method.
- 4 Specify the value(s) to search on in the *Fields* property. *Fields* is a *TFields* object, which maintains an indexed list of field components you can access by specifying ordinal numbers corresponding to columns. The first column number in a dataset is 0.
- 5 Search for and move to the first matching record found with *GotoKey* or *GotoNearest*.

For example, the following code, attached to a button’s *OnClick* event, uses the *GotoKey* method to move to the first record where the first field in the index has a value that exactly matches the text in an edit box:

```
void __fastcall TSearchDemo::SearchExactClick(TObject *Sender)
{
    ClientDataSet1->SetKey();
    ClientDataSet1->Fields->Fields[0]->AsString = Edit1->Text;
    if (!ClientDataSet1->GotoKey())
        ShowMessage("Record not found");
}
```

GotoNearest is similar. It searches for the nearest match to a partial field value. It can be used only for string fields. For example,

```
Table1->SetKey();
Table1->Fields->Fields[0]->AsString = "Sm";
Table1->GotoNearest();
```

If a record exists with “Sm” as the first two characters of the first indexed field’s value, the cursor is positioned on that record. Otherwise, the position of the cursor does not change and *GotoNearest* returns **false**.

Executing a search with Find methods

The *Find* methods do the same thing as the *Goto* methods, except that you do not need to explicitly put the dataset in *dsSetKey* state to specify the key field values on which to search. To execute a search using *Find* methods, follow these general steps:

- 1 Specify the index to use for the search. This is the same index that sorts the records in the dataset (see “Sorting records with indexes” on page 22-26). To specify the index, use the *IndexName* or *IndexFieldNames* property.
- 2 Open the dataset.
- 3 Search for and move to the first or nearest record with *FindKey* or *FindNearest*. Both methods take a single parameter, a comma-delimited list of field values, where each value corresponds to an indexed column in the underlying table.

Note *FindNearest* can only be used for string fields.

Specifying the current record after a successful search

By default, a successful search positions the cursor on the first record that matches the search criteria. If you prefer, you can set the *KeyExclusive* property to **true** to position the cursor on the next record after the first matching record.

By default, *KeyExclusive* is **false**, meaning that successful searches position the cursor on the first matching record.

Searching on partial keys

If the dataset has more than one key column, and you want to search for values in a subset of that key, set *KeyFieldCount* to the number of columns on which you are searching. For example, if the dataset’s current index has three columns, and you want to search for values using just the first column, set *KeyFieldCount* to 1.

For table type datasets with multiple-column keys, you can search only for values in contiguous columns, beginning with the first. For example, for a three-column key you can search for values in the first column, the first and second, or the first, second, and third, but not just the first and third.

Repeating or extending a search

Each time you call *SetKey* or *FindKey*, the method clears any previous values in the *Fields* property. If you want to repeat a search using previously set fields, or you want to add to the fields used in a search, call *EditKey* in place of *SetKey* and *FindKey*.

For example, suppose you have already executed a search of the Employee table based on the City field of the “CityIndex” index. Suppose further that “CityIndex”

includes both the *City* and *Company* fields. To find a record with a specified company name in a specified city, use the following code:

```
Employee->KeyFieldCount = 2;
Employee->EditKey();
Employee->FieldValues["Company"] = Variant(Edit2->Text);
Employee->GotoNearest();
```

Limiting records with ranges

You can temporarily view and edit a subset of data for any dataset by using filters (see “Displaying and editing a subset of data using filters” on page 22-12). Some table type datasets support an additional way to access a subset of available records, called ranges.

Ranges only apply to *TTable* and to client datasets. Despite their similarities, ranges and filters have different uses. The following topics discuss the differences between ranges and filters and how to use ranges.

Understanding the differences between ranges and filters

Both ranges and filters restrict visible records to a subset of all available records, but the way they do so differs. A range is a set of contiguously indexed records that fall between specified boundary values. For example, in an employee database indexed on last name, you might apply a range to display all employees whose last names are greater than “Jones” and less than “Smith”. Because ranges depend on indexes, you must set the current index to one that can be used to define the range. As with specifying an index to sort records, you can assign the index on which to define a range using either the *IndexName* or the *IndexFieldNames* property.

A filter, on the other hand, is any set of records that share specified data points, regardless of indexing. For example, you might filter an employee database to display all employees who live in California and who have worked for the company for five or more years. While filters can make use of indexes if they apply, filters are not dependent on them. Filters are applied record-by-record as an application scrolls through a dataset.

In general, filters are more flexible than ranges. Ranges, however, can be more efficient when datasets are large and the records of interest to an application are already blocked in contiguously indexed groups. For very large datasets, it may be still more efficient to use the WHERE clause of a query-type dataset to select data. For details on specifying a query, see “Using query-type datasets” on page 22-41.

Specifying ranges

There are two mutually exclusive ways to specify a range:

- Specify the beginning and ending separately using *SetRangeStart* and *SetRangeEnd*.
- Specify both endpoints at once using *SetRange*.

Setting the beginning of a range

Call the *SetRangeStart* procedure to put the dataset into *dsSetKey* state and begin creating a list of starting values for the range. Once you call *SetRangeStart*, subsequent assignments to the *Fields* property are treated as starting index values to use when applying the range. Fields specified must apply to the current index.

For example, suppose your application uses a *TSQClientDataSet* component named *Customers*, linked to the CUSTOMER table, and that you have created persistent field components for each field in the *Customers* dataset. CUSTOMER is indexed on its first column (*CustNo*). A form in the application has two edit components named *StartVal* and *EndVal*, used to specify start and ending values for a range. The following code can be used to create and apply a range:

```
Customers->SetRangeStart();
Customers->FieldValues["CustNo"] = StrToInt(StartVal->Text);
Customers->SetRangeEnd();
if (!EndVal->Text.IsEmpty())
    Customers->FieldValues["CustNo"] = StrToInt(EndVal->Text);
Customers->ApplyRange();
```

This code checks that the text entered in *EndVal* is not null before assigning any values to *Fields*. If the text entered for *StartVal* is null, then all records from the beginning of the dataset are included, since all values are greater than null. However, if the text entered for *EndVal* is null, then no records are included, since none are less than null.

For a multi-column index, you can specify a starting value for all or some fields in the index. If you do not supply a value for a field used in the index, a null value is assumed when you apply the range. If you try to set a value for a field that is not in the index, the dataset raises an exception.

Tip To start at the beginning of the dataset, omit the call to *SetRangeStart*.

To finish specifying the start of a range, call *SetRangeEnd* or apply or cancel the range. For information about applying and canceling ranges, see “Applying or canceling a range” on page 22-34.

Setting the end of a range

Call the *SetRangeEnd* procedure to put the dataset into *dsSetKey* state and start creating a list of ending values for the range. Once you call *SetRangeEnd*, subsequent assignments to the *Fields* property are treated as ending index values to use when applying the range. Fields specified must apply to the current index.

Warning Always specify the ending values for a range, even if you want a range to end on the last record in the dataset. If you do not provide ending values, C++Builder assumes the ending value of the range is a null value. A range with null ending values is always empty.

The easiest way to assign ending values is to call the *FieldByName* method. For example,

```
Contacts->SetRangeStart();
Contacts->FieldByName("LastName")->Value = Edit1->Text;
Contacts->SetRangeEnd();
```

```
Contacts->FieldByName("LastName")->Value = Edit2->Text;
Contacts->ApplyRange();
```

As with specifying start of range values, if you try to set a value for a field that is not in the index, the dataset raises an exception.

To finish specifying the end of a range, apply or cancel the range. For information about applying and canceling ranges, see “Applying or canceling a range” on page 22-34.

Setting start- and end-range values

Instead of using separate calls to *SetRangeStart* and *SetRangeEnd* to specify range boundaries, you can call the *SetRange* procedure to put the dataset into *dsSetKey* state and set the starting and ending values for a range with a single call.

SetRange takes two constant array parameters: a set of starting values, and a set of ending values. For example, the following statements establish a range based on a two-column index:

```
TVarRec StartVals[2];
TVarRec EndVals[2];
StartVals[0] = Edit1->Text;
StartVals[1] = Edit2->Text;
EndVals[0] = Edit3->Text;
EndVals[1] = Edit4->Text;

Table1->SetRange(StartVals, 1, EndVals, 1);
```

For a multi-column index, you can specify starting and ending values for all or some fields in the index. If you do not supply a value for a field used in the index, a null value is assumed when you apply the range. To omit a value for the first field in an index, and specify values for successive fields, pass a null value for the omitted field.

Always specify the ending values for a range, even if you want a range to end on the last record in the dataset. If you do not provide ending values, the dataset assumes the ending value of the range is a null value. A range with null ending values is always empty because the starting range is greater than or equal to the ending range.

Specifying a range based on partial keys

If a key is composed of one or more string fields, the *SetRange* methods support partial keys. For example, if an index is based on the *LastName* and *FirstName* columns, the following range specifications are valid:

```
Contacts->SetRangeStart();
Contacts->FieldValues["LastName"] = "Smith";
Contacts->SetRangeEnd();
Contacts->FieldValues["LastName"] = "Zzzzzz";
Contacts->ApplyRange();
```

This code includes all records in a range where *LastName* is greater than or equal to “Smith.” The value specification could also be:

```
Contacts->FieldValues["LastName"] = "Sm";
```

This statement includes records that have *LastName* greater than or equal to “Sm.”

Including or excluding records that match boundary values

By default, a range includes all records that are greater than or equal to the specified starting range, and less than or equal to the specified ending range. This behavior is controlled by the *KeyExclusive* property. *KeyExclusive* is **false** by default.

If you prefer, you can set the *KeyExclusive* property for a dataset to **true** to exclude records equal to ending range. For example,

```
Contacts->SetRangeStart();
Contacts->KeyExclusive = true;
Contacts->FieldValues["LastName"] = "Smith";
Contacts->SetRangeEnd();
Contacts->FieldValues["LastName"] = "Tyler";
Contacts->ApplyRange();
```

This code includes all records in a range where *LastName* is greater than or equal to "Smith" and less than "Tyler".

Modifying a range

Two functions enable you to modify the existing boundary conditions for a range: *EditRangeStart*, for changing the starting values for a range; and *EditRangeEnd*, for changing the ending values for the range.

The process for editing and applying a range involves these general steps:

- 1 Putting the dataset into *dsSetKey* state and modifying the starting index value for the range.
- 2 Modifying the ending index value for the range.
- 3 Applying the range to the dataset.

You can modify either the starting or ending values of the range, or you can modify both boundary conditions. If you modify the boundary conditions for a range that is currently applied to the dataset, the changes you make are not applied until you call *ApplyRange* again.

Editing the start of a range

Call the *EditRangeStart* procedure to put the dataset into *dsSetKey* state and begin modifying the current list of starting values for the range. Once you call *EditRangeStart*, subsequent assignments to the *Fields* property overwrite the current index values to use when applying the range.

Tip If you initially created a start range based on a partial key, you can use *EditRangeStart* to extend the starting value for a range. For more information about ranges based on partial keys, see "Specifying a range based on partial keys" on page 22-32.

Editing the end of a range

Call the *EditRangeEnd* procedure to put the dataset into *dsSetKey* state and start creating a list of ending values for the range. Once you call *EditRangeEnd*, subsequent assignments to the *Fields* property are treated as ending index values to use when applying the range.

Applying or canceling a range

When you call *SetRangeStart* or *EditRangeStart* to specify the start of a range, or *SetRangeEnd* or *EditRangeEnd* to specify the end of a range, the dataset enters the *dsSetKey* state. It stays in that state until you apply or cancel the range.

Applying a range

When you specify a range, the boundary conditions you define are not put into effect until you apply the range. To make a range take effect, call the *ApplyRange* method. *ApplyRange* immediately restricts a user's view of and access to data in the specified subset of the dataset.

Canceling a range

The *CancelRange* method ends application of a range and restores access to the full dataset. Even though canceling a range restores access to all records in the dataset, the boundary conditions for that range are still available so that you can reapply the range at a later time. Range boundaries are preserved until you provide new range boundaries or modify the existing boundaries. For example, the following code is valid:

```

:
MyTable->CancelRange();
:
// later on, use the same range again. No need to call SetRangeStart, etc.
MyTable->ApplyRange();
:

```

Creating master/detail relationships

Table type datasets can be linked into master/detail relationships. When you set up a master/detail relationship, you link two datasets so that all the records of one (the detail) always correspond to the single current record in the other (the master).

Table type datasets support master/detail relationships in two very distinct ways:

- All table type datasets can act as the detail of another dataset by linking cursors. This process is described in “Making the table a detail of another dataset” below.
- *TTable*, *TSQLTable*, and all client datasets can act as the master in a master/detail relationship that uses nested detail tables. This process is described in “Using nested detail tables” on page 22-36.

Each of these approaches has its unique advantages. Linking cursors lets you create master/detail relationships where the master table is any type of dataset. With nested details, the type of dataset that can act as the detail table is limited, but they provide for more options in how to display the data. If the master is a client dataset, nested details provide a more robust mechanism for applying cached updates.

Making the table a detail of another dataset

A table type dataset's *MasterSource* and *MasterFields* properties can be used to establish one-to-many relationships between two datasets.

The *MasterSource* property is used to specify a data source from which the table gets data from the master table. This data source can be linked to any type of dataset. For instance, by specifying a query's data source in this property, you can link a client dataset as the detail of the query, so that the client dataset tracks events occurring in the query.

The dataset is linked to the master table based on its current index. Before you specify the fields in the master dataset that are tracked by the detail dataset, first specify the index in the detail dataset that starts with the corresponding fields. You can use either the *IndexName* or the *IndexFieldNames* property.

Once you specify the index to use, use the *MasterFields* property to indicate the column(s) in the master dataset that correspond to the index fields in the detail table. To link datasets on multiple column names, separate field names with semicolons:

```
Parts->MasterFields = "OrderNo;ItemNo";
```

To help create meaningful links between two datasets, you can use the Field Link designer. To use the Field Link designer, double click on the *MasterFields* property in the Object Inspector after you have assigned a *MasterSource* and an index.

The following steps create a simple form in which a user can scroll through customer records and display all orders for the current customer. The master table is the *CustomersTable* table, and the detail table is *OrdersTable*. The example uses the BDE-based *TTable* component, but you can use the same methods to link any table type datasets.

- 1 Place two *TTable* components and two *TDataSource* components in a data module.
- 2 Set the properties of the first *TTable* component as follows:
 - *DatabaseName*: BCDEMOS
 - *TableName*: CUSTOMER
 - *Name*: CustomersTable
- 3 Set the properties of the second *TTable* component as follows:
 - *DatabaseName*: BCDEMOS
 - *TableName*: ORDERS
 - *Name*: OrdersTable
- 4 Set the properties of the first *TDataSource* component as follows:
 - *Name*: CustSource
 - *DataSet*: CustomersTable
- 5 Set the properties of the second *TDataSource* component as follows:
 - *Name*: OrdersSource
 - *DataSet*: OrdersTable
- 6 Place two *TDBGrid* components on a form.
- 7 Choose File | Include Unit Hdr to specify that the form should use the data module.

- 8 Set the *DataSource* property of the first grid component to “CustSource”, and set the *DataSource* property of the second grid to “OrdersSource”.
- 9 Set the *MasterSource* property of *OrdersTable* to “CustSource”. This links the CUSTOMER table (the master table) to the ORDERS table (the detail table).
- 10 Double-click the *MasterFields* property value box in the Object Inspector to invoke the Field Link Designer to set the following properties:
 - In the Available Indexes field, choose *CustNo* to link the two tables by the *CustNo* field.
 - Select *CustNo* in both the Detail Fields and Master Fields field lists.
 - Click the Add button to add this join condition. In the Joined Fields list, “CustNo -> CustNo” appears.
 - Choose OK to commit your selections and exit the Field Link Designer.
- 11 Set the *Active* properties of *CustomersTable* and *OrdersTable* to **true** to display data in the grids on the form.
- 12 Compile and run the application.

If you run the application now, you will see that the tables are linked together, and that when you move to a new record in the CUSTOMER table, you see only those records in the ORDERS table that belong to the current customer.

Using nested detail tables

A nested table is a detail dataset that is the value of a single dataset field in another (master) dataset. For datasets that represent server data, a nested detail dataset can only be used for a dataset field on the server. *TClientDataSet* components do not represent server data, but they can also contain dataset fields if you create a dataset for them that contains nested details, or if they receive data from a provider that is linked to the master table of a master/detail relationship.

Note For *TClientDataSet*, using nested detail sets is necessary if you want to apply updates from master and detail tables to a database server.

To use nested detail sets, the *ObjectView* property of the master dataset must be **true**. When your table type dataset contains nested detail datasets, *TDBGrid* provides support for displaying the nested details in a popup window. For more information on how this works, see “Displaying dataset fields” on page 23-26.

Alternately, you can display and edit detail datasets in data-aware controls by using a separate dataset component for the detail set. At design time, create persistent fields for the fields in your (master) dataset, using the Fields Editor: right click the master dataset and choose Fields Editor. Add a new persistent field to your dataset by right-clicking and choosing Add Fields. Define your new field with type DataSet Field. In the Fields Editor, define the structure of the detail table. You must also add persistent fields for any other fields used in your master dataset.

The dataset component for the detail table is a dataset descendant of a type allowed by the master table. *TTable* components only allow *TNestedDataSet* components as

nested datasets. *TSQLTable* components allow other *TSQLTable* components. *TClientDataSet* components allow other client datasets. Choose a dataset of the appropriate type from the Component palette and add it to your form or data module. Set this detail dataset's *DataSetField* property to the persistent *DataSet* field in the master dataset. Finally, place a data source component on the form or data module and set its *DataSet* property to the detail dataset. Data-aware controls can use this data source to access the data in the detail set.

Controlling Read/write access to tables

By default when a table type dataset is opened, it requests read and write access for the underlying database table. Depending on the characteristics of the underlying database table, the requested write privilege may not be granted (for example, when you request write access to an SQL table on a remote server and the server restricts the table's access to read only).

Note This is not true for *TClientDataSet*, which determines whether users can edit data from information that the dataset provider supplies with data packets. It is also not true for *TSQLTable*, which is a unidirectional dataset, and hence always read-only.

When the table opens, you can check the *CanModify* property to ascertain whether the underlying database (or the dataset provider) allows users to edit the data in the table. If *CanModify* is **false**, the application cannot write to the database. If *CanModify* is **true**, your application can write to the database provided the table's *ReadOnly* property is **false**.

ReadOnly determines whether a user can both view and edit data. When *ReadOnly* is **false** (the default), a user can both view and edit data. To restrict a user to viewing data, set *ReadOnly* to **true** before opening the table.

Note *ReadOnly* is implemented on all table type datasets except *TSQLTable*, which is always read-only.

Creating and deleting tables

Some table type datasets let you create and delete the underlying tables at design time or at runtime. Typically, database tables are created and deleted by a database administrator. However, it can be handy during application development and testing to create and destroy database tables that your application can use.

Creating tables

TTable and *TIBTable* both let you create the underlying database table without using SQL. Similarly, *TClientDataSet* lets you create a dataset when you are not working with a dataset provider. Using *TTable* and *TClientDataSet*, you can create the table at design time or runtime. *TIBTable* only lets you create tables at runtime.

Before you can create the table, you must be set properties to specify the structure of the table you are creating. In particular, you must specify

- The database that will host the new table. For *TTable*, you specify the database using the *DatabaseName* property. For *TIBTable*, you must use a *TIBDatabase* component, which is assigned to the *Database* property. (Client datasets do not use a database.)
- The type of database (*TTable* only). Set the *TableType* property to the desired type of table. For Paradox, dBASE, or ASCII tables, set *TableType* to *ttParadox*, *ttDBase*, or *ttASCII*, respectively. For all other table types, set *TableType* to *ttDefault*.
- The name of the table you want to create. Both *TTable* and *TIBTable* have a *TableName* property for the name of the new table. Client datasets do not use a table name, but you should specify the *FileName* property before you save the new table. If you create a table that duplicates the name of an existing table, the existing table and all its data are overwritten by the newly created table. The old table and its data cannot be recovered. To avoid overwriting an existing table, you can check the *Exists* property at runtime. *Exists* is only available on *TTable* and *TIBTable*.
- The fields for the new table. There are two ways to do this:
 - You can add field definitions to the *FieldDefs* property. At design time, double-click the *FieldDefs* property in the Object Inspector to bring up the collection editor. Use the collection editor to add, remove, or change the properties of the field definitions. At runtime, clear any existing field definitions and then use the *AddFieldDef* method to add each new field definition. For each new field definition, set the properties of the *TFieldDef* object to specify the desired attributes of the field.
 - You can use persistent field components instead. At design time, double-click on the dataset to bring up the *Fields* editor. In the *Fields* editor, right-click and choose the New Field command. Describe the basic properties of your field. Once the field is created, you can alter its properties in the Object Inspector by selecting the field in the *Fields* editor.
- Indexes for the new table (optional). At design time, double-click the *IndexDefs* property in the Object Inspector to bring up the collection editor. Use the collection editor to add, remove, or change the properties of index definitions. At runtime, clear any existing index definitions, and then use the *AddIndexDef* method to add each new index definition. For each new index definition, set the properties of the *TIndexDef* object to specify the desired attributes of the index.

Note You can't define indexes for the new table if you are using persistent field components instead of field definition objects.

To create the table at design time, right-click the dataset and choose Create Table (*TTable*) or Create Data Set (*TClientDataSet*). This command does not appear on the context menu until you have specified all the necessary information.

To create the table at runtime, call the *CreateTable* method (*TTable* and *TIBTable*) or the *CreateDataSet* method (*TClientDataSet*).

- Note** You can set up the definitions at design time and then call the *CreateTable* (or *CreateDataSet*) method at runtime to create the table. However, to do so you must indicate that the definitions specified at runtime should be saved with the dataset component. (by default, field and index definitions are generated dynamically at runtime). Specify that the definitions should be saved with the dataset by setting its *StoreDefs* property to **true**.
- Tip** If you are using *TTable*, you can preload the field definitions and index definitions of an existing table at design time. Set the *DatabaseName* and *TableName* properties to specify the existing table. Right click the table component and choose Update Table Definition. This automatically sets the values of the *FieldDefs* and *IndexDefs* properties to describe the fields and indexes of the existing table. Next, reset the *DatabaseName* and *TableName* to specify the table you want to create, canceling any prompts to rename the existing table.
- Note** When creating Oracle8 tables, you can't create object fields (ADT fields, array fields, and dataset fields).

The following code creates a new table at runtime and associates it with the BCDemos alias. Before it creates the new table, it verifies that the table name provided does not match the name of an existing table:

```
TTable *NewTable = new TTable(Form1);
NewTable->Active = false;
NewTable->DatabaseName = "BCDEMOS";
NewTable->TableName = Edit1->Text;
NewTable->TableType = ttDefault;
NewTable->FieldDefs->Clear();
TFieldDef *NewField = NewTable->FieldDefs->AddFieldDef(); // define first field
NewField->DataType = ftInteger;
NewField->Name = Edit2->Text;
NewField = NewTable->FieldDefs->AddFieldDef(); // define second field
NewField->DataType = ftString;
NewField->Size = StrToInt(Edit3->Text);
NewField->Name = Edit4->Text;
NewTable->IndexDefs->Clear();
TIndexDef *NewIndex = NewTable->IndexDefs->AddIndexDef(); // add an index
NewIndex->Name = "PrimaryIndex";
NewIndex->Fields = Edit2->Text;
NewIndex->Options << ixPrimary << ixUnique;
// Now check for prior existence of this table
bool CreateIt = (!NewTable->Exists);
if (!CreateIt)
    if (Application->MessageBox((AnsiString("Overwrite table ") + Edit1->Text +
        AnsiString("?")).c_str(),
        "Table Exists", MB_YESNO) == IDYES)
        CreateIt = true;
if (CreateIt)
    NewTable->CreateTable(); // create the table
```

Deleting tables

TTable and *TIBTable* let you delete tables from the underlying database table without using SQL. To delete a table at runtime, call the dataset's *DeleteTable* method. For example, the following statement removes the table underlying a dataset:

```
CustomersTable->DeleteTable();
```

Caution When you delete a table with *DeleteTable*, the table and all its data are gone forever.

If you are using *TTable*, you can also delete tables at design time: Right-click the table component and select Delete Table from the context menu. The Delete Table menu pick is only present if the table component represents an existing database table (the *DatabaseName* and *TableName* properties specify an existing table).

Emptying tables

Many table type datasets supply a single method that lets you delete all rows of data in the table.

- For *TTable* and *TIBTable*, you can delete all the records by calling the *EmptyTable* method at runtime:

```
PhoneTable->EmptyTable();
```

- For *TADOTable*, you can use the *DeleteRecords* method.

```
PhoneTable->DeleteRecords(arAll);
```

- For *TSQLTable*, you can use the *DeleteRecords* method as well. Note, however, that the *TSQLTable* version of *DeleteRecords* does not take any parameters.

```
PhoneTable->DeleteRecords();
```

- For client datasets, you can use the *EmptyDataSet* method.

```
PhoneTable->EmptyDataSet();
```

Note For tables on SQL servers, these methods only succeed if you have DELETE privilege for the table.

Caution When you empty a dataset, the data you delete is gone forever.

Synchronizing tables

If you have two or more datasets that represent the same database table but do not share a data source component, then each dataset has its own view on the data and its own current record. As users access records through each datasets, the components' current records will differ.

If the datasets are all instances of *TTable*, or all instances of *TIBTable*, or all client datasets, you can force the current record for each of these datasets to be the same by calling the *GotoCurrent* method. *GotoCurrent* sets its own dataset's current record to the current record of a matching dataset. For example, the following code sets the

current record of *CustomerTableOne* to be the same as the current record of *CustomerTableTwo*:

```
CustomerTableOne->GotoCurrent (CustomerTableTwo);
```

Tip If your application needs to synchronize datasets in this manner, put the datasets in a data module and include the header for the data module in each unit that accesses the tables.

To synchronize datasets from separate forms, you must include one form's header file in the source unit of the other form, and you must qualify at least one of the dataset names with its form name. For example:

```
CustomerTableOne->GotoCurrent (Form2->CustomerTableTwo);
```

Using query-type datasets

To use a query-type dataset,

- 1 Place the appropriate dataset component in a data module or on a form, and set its *Name* property to a unique value appropriate to your application.
- 2 Identify the database server to query. Each query-type dataset does this differently, but typically you specify a database connection component:
 - For *TQuery*, specify a *TDatabase* component or a BDE alias using the *DatabaseName* property.
 - For *TADOQuery*, specify a *TADOConnection* component using the *Connection* property.
 - For *TSQLQuery*, specify a *TSQLConnection* component using the *SQLConnection* property.
 - For *TIBQuery*, specify a *TIBConnection* component using the *Database* property.

For information about using database connection components, see Chapter 21, "Connecting to databases."

- 3 Specify an SQL statement in the *SQL* property of the dataset, and optionally specify any parameters for the statement. For more information, see "Specifying the query" on page 22-42 and "Using parameters in queries" on page 22-43.
- 4 If the query data is to be used with visual data controls, add a data source component to the data module, and set its *DataSet* property to the query-type dataset. The data source component forwards the results of the query (called a *result set*) to data-aware components for display. Connect data-aware components to the data source using their *DataSource* and *DataField* properties.
- 5 Activate the query component. For queries that return a result set, use the *Active* property or the *Open* method. To execute queries that only perform an action on a table and return no result set, use the *ExecSQL* method at runtime. If you plan to execute the query more than once, you may want to call *Prepare* to initialize the data access layer and bind parameter values into the query. For information about preparing a query, see "Preparing queries" on page 22-47.

Specifying the query

For true query-type datasets, you use the *SQL* property to specify the SQL statement for the dataset to execute. Some datasets, such as *TADODataSet*, *TSQLDataSet*, and client datasets, use a *CommandText* property to accomplish the same thing.

Most queries that return records are SELECT commands. Typically, they define the fields to include, the tables from which to select those fields, conditions that limit what records to include, and the order of the resulting dataset. For example:

```
SELECT CustNo, OrderNo, SaleDate
FROM Orders
WHERE CustNo = 1225
ORDER BY SaleDate
```

Queries that do not return records include statements that use Data Definition Language (DDL) or Data Manipulation Language (DML) statements other than SELECT statements (For example, INSERT, DELETE, UPDATE, CREATE INDEX, and ALTER TABLE commands do not return any records). The language used in commands is server-specific, but usually compliant with the SQL-92 standard for the SQL language.

The SQL command you execute must be acceptable to the server you are using. Datasets neither evaluate the SQL nor execute it. They merely pass the command to the server for execution. In most cases, the SQL command must be only one complete SQL statement, although that statement can be as complex as necessary (for example, a SELECT statement with a WHERE clause that uses several nested logical operators such as AND and OR). Some servers also support “batch” syntax that permits multiple statements; if your server supports such syntax, you can enter multiple statements when you specify the query.

The SQL statements used by queries can be verbatim, or they can contain replaceable parameters. Queries that use parameters are called *parameterized queries*. When you use parameterized queries, the actual values assigned to the parameters are inserted into the query before you execute, or run, the query. Using parameterized queries is very flexible, because you can change a user’s view of and access to data on the fly at runtime without having to alter the SQL statement. For more information about parameterized queries, see “Using parameters in queries” on page 22-43.

Specifying a query using the SQL property

When using a true query-type dataset (*TQuery*, *TADOQuery*, *TSQLQuery*, or *TIBQuery*), assign the query to the *SQL* property. The *SQL* property is a *TStrings* object. Each separate string in this *TStrings* object is a separate line of the query. Using multiple lines does not affect the way the query executes on the server, but can make it easier to modify and debug the query if you divide the statement into logical units:

```
MyQuery->Close();
MyQuery->SQL->Clear();
MyQuery->SQL->Add("SELECT CustNo, OrderNO, SaleDate");
MyQuery->SQL->Add("FROM Orders");
MyQuery->SQL->Add("ORDER BY SaleDate");
MyQuery->Open();
```

The code below demonstrates modifying only a single line in an existing SQL statement. In this case, the ORDER BY clause already exists on the third line of the statement. It is referenced via the *SQL* property using an index of 2.

```
MyQuery->SQL->Strings[2] = "ORDER BY OrderNO";
```

Note The dataset must be closed when you specify or modify the SQL property.

At design time, use the String List editor to specify the query. Click the ellipsis button by the *SQL* property in the Object Inspector to display the String List editor.

Note With some versions of C++Builder, if you are using *TQuery*, you can also use the SQL Builder to construct a query based on a visible representation of tables and fields in a database. To use the SQL Builder, select the query component, right-click it to invoke the context menu, and choose Graphical Query Editor. To learn how to use SQL Builder, open it and use its online help.

Because the *SQL* property is a *TStrings* object, you can load the text of the query from a file by calling the *TStrings::LoadFromFile* method:

```
MyQuery->SQL->LoadFromFile("custquery.sql");
```

You can also use the *Assign* method of the *SQL* property to copy the contents of a string list object into the *SQL* property. The *Assign* method automatically clears the current contents of the *SQL* property before copying the new statement:

```
MyQuery->SQL->Assign(Memo1->Lines);
```

Specifying a query using the CommandText property

When using *TADODataSet*, *TSQLDataSet*, or a client dataset, assign the text of the query statement to the *CommandText* property:

```
MyQuery->CommandText = "SELECT CustName, Address FROM Customer";
```

At design time, you can type the query directly into the Object Inspector, or, if the dataset already has an active connection to the database, you can click the ellipsis button by the *CommandText* property to display the Command Text editor. The Command Text editor lists the available tables, and the fields in those tables, to make it easier to compose your queries.

Using parameters in queries

A parameterized SQL statement contains parameters, or variables, the values of which can be varied at design time or runtime. Parameters can replace data values, such as those used in a WHERE clause for comparisons, that appear in an SQL statement. Ordinarily, parameters stand in for data values passed to the statement. For example, in the following INSERT statement, values to insert are passed as parameters:

```
INSERT INTO Country (Name, Capital, Population)
VALUES (:Name, :Capital, :Population)
```

In this SQL statement, *:Name*, *:Capital*, and *:Population* are placeholders for actual values supplied to the statement at runtime by your application. Note that the names of parameters begin with a colon. The colon is required so that the parameter names

can be distinguished from literal values. You can also include unnamed parameters by adding a question mark (?) to your query. Unnamed parameters are identified by position, because they do not have unique names.

Before the dataset can execute the query, you must supply values for any parameters in the query text. *TQuery*, *TIBQuery*, *TSQLQuery*, and client datasets use the *Params* property to store these values. *TADOQuery* uses the *Parameters* property instead. *Params* (or *Parameters*) is a collection of parameter objects (*TParam* or *TParameter*), where each object represents a single parameter. When you specify the text for the query, the dataset generates this set of parameter objects, and (depending on the dataset type) initializes any of their properties that it can deduce from the query.

Note You can suppress the automatic generation of parameter objects in response to changing the query text by setting the *ParamCheck* property to **false**. This is useful for data definition language (DDL) statements that contain parameters as part of the DDL statement that are not parameters for the query itself. For example, the DDL statement to create a stored procedure may define parameters that are part of the stored procedure. By setting *ParamCheck* to **false**, you prevent these parameters from being mistaken for parameters of the query.

Parameter values must be bound into the SQL statement before it is executed for the first time. Query components do this automatically for you even if you do not explicitly call the *Prepare* method before executing a query.

Tip It is a good programming practice to provide variable names for parameters that correspond to the actual name of the column with which it is associated. For example, if a column name is “Number,” then its corresponding parameter would be “:Number”. Using matching names is especially important if the dataset uses a data source to obtain parameter values from another dataset. This process is described in “Establishing master/detail relationships using parameters” on page 22-46.

Supplying parameters at design time

At design time, you can specify parameter values using the parameter collection editor. To display the parameter collection editor, click on the ellipsis button for the *Params* or *Parameters* property in the Object Inspector. If the SQL statement does not contain any parameters, no objects are listed in the collection editor.

Note The parameter collection editor is the same collection editor that appears for other collection properties. Because the editor is shared with other properties, its right-click context menu contains the Add and Delete commands. However, they are never enabled for query parameters. The only way to add or delete parameters is in the SQL statement itself.

For each parameter, select it in the parameter collection editor. Then use the Object Inspector to modify its properties.

When using the *Params* property (*TParam* objects), you will want to inspect or modify the following:

- The *DataType* property lists the data type for the parameter’s value. For some datasets, this value may be correctly initialized. If the dataset did not deduce the type, *DataType* is *ftUnknown*, and you must change it to indicate the type of the parameter value.

The *DataType* property lists the logical data type for the parameter. In general, these data types conform to server data types. For specific logical type-to-server data type mappings, see the documentation for the data access mechanism (BDE, dbExpress, InterBase).

- The *ParamType* property lists the type of the selected parameter. For queries, this is always *ptInput*, because queries can only contain input parameters. If the value of *ParamType* is *ptUnknown*, change it to *ptInput*.
- The *Value* property specifies a value for the selected parameter. You can leave *Value* blank if your application supplies parameter values at runtime.

When using the *Parameters* property (*TParameter* objects), you will want to inspect or modify the following:

- The *DataType* property lists the data type for the parameter's value. For some data types, you must provide additional information:
 - The *NumericScale* property indicates the number of decimal places for numeric parameters.
 - The *Precision* property indicates the total number of digits for numeric parameters.
 - The *Size* property indicates the number of characters in string parameters.
- The *Direction* property lists the type of the selected parameter. For queries, this is always *pdInput*, because queries can only contain input parameters.
- The *Attributes* property controls the type of values the parameter will accept. *Attributes* may be set to a combination of *psSigned*, *psNullable*, and *psLong*.
- The *Value* property specifies a value for the selected parameter. You can leave *Value* blank if your application supplies parameter values at runtime.

Supplying parameters at runtime

To create parameters at runtime, you can use the

- *ParamByName* method to assign values to a parameter based on its name (not available for *TADOQuery*)
- *Params::Items* or *Parameters::Items* property to assign values to a parameter based on the parameter's ordinal position within the SQL statement.
- *Params::ParamValues* or *Parameters::ParamValues* property to assign values to one or more parameters in a single command line, based on the name of each parameter set.

The following code uses *ParamByName* to assign the text of an edit box to the *:Capital* parameter:

```
SQLQuery1->ParamByName("Capital")->AsString = Edit1->Text;
```

The same code can be rewritten using the *Params* property, using an index of 0 (assuming the *:Capital* parameter is the first parameter in the SQL statement):

```
SQLQuery1->Params->Items[0]->AsString = Edit1->Text;
```

The command line below sets three parameters at once, using the *Params::ParamValues* property:

```
Query1->Params->ParamValues["Name;Capital;Continent"] =  
  VarArrayOf(OPENARRAY(Variant, (Edit1->Text, Edit2->Text, Edit3->Text)));
```

Note that *ParamValues* uses *Variants*, avoiding the need to cast values.

Establishing master/detail relationships using parameters

To set up a master/detail relationship where the detail set is a query-type dataset, you must specify a query that uses parameters. These parameters refer to current field values on the master dataset. Because the current field values on the master dataset change dynamically at runtime, you must rebind the detail set's parameters every time the master record changes. Although you could write code to do this using an event handler, all query-type datasets except *TIBQuery* provide an easier mechanism using the *DataSource* property.

If parameter values for a parameterized query are not bound at design time or specified at runtime, query-type datasets attempt to supply values for them based on the *DataSource* property. *DataSource* identifies a different dataset that is searched for field names that match the names of unbound parameters. This search dataset can be any type of dataset. The search dataset must be created and populated before you create the detail dataset that uses it. If matches are found in the search dataset, the detail dataset binds the parameter values to the values of the fields in the current record pointed to by the data source.

To illustrate how this works, consider two tables: a customer table and an orders table. For every customer, the orders table contains a set of orders that the customer made. The Customer table includes an ID field that specifies a unique customer ID. The orders table includes a CustID field that specifies the ID of the customer who made an order.

The first step is to set up the Customer dataset:

- 1 Add a table type dataset to your application and bind it to the Customer table.
- 2 Add a *TDataSource* component named *CustomerSource*. Set its *DataSet* property to the dataset added in step 1. This data source now represents the Customer dataset.
- 3 Add a query-type dataset and set its *SQL* property to

```
SELECT CustID, OrderNo, SaleDate  
FROM Orders  
WHERE CustID = :ID
```

Note that the name of the parameter is the same as the name of the field in the master (Customer) table.

- 4 Set the detail dataset's *DataSource* property to *CustomerSource*. Setting this property makes the detail dataset a linked query.

At runtime the *:ID* parameter in the SQL statement for the detail dataset is not assigned a value, so the dataset tries to match the parameter by name against a column in the dataset identified by *CustomerSource*. *CustomerSource* gets its data

from the master dataset, which, in turn, derives its data from the Customer table. Because the Customer table contains a column called “ID,” the value from the *ID* field in the current record of the master dataset is assigned to the *:ID* parameter for the detail dataset’s SQL statement. The datasets are linked in a master-detail relationship. Each time the current record changes in the Customers dataset, the detail dataset’s SELECT statement executes to retrieve all orders based on the current customer id.

Preparing queries

Preparing a query is an optional step that precedes query execution. Preparing a query submits the SQL statement and its parameters, if any, to the data access layer and the database server for parsing, resource allocation, and optimization. In some datasets, the dataset may perform additional setup operations when preparing the query. These operations improve query performance, making your application faster, especially when working with updatable queries.

An application can prepare a query by setting the *Prepared* property to **true**. If you do not prepare a query before executing it, the dataset automatically prepares it for you each time you call *Open* or *ExecSQL*. Even though the dataset prepares queries for you, you can improve performance by explicitly preparing the dataset before you open it the first time.

```
CustQuery->Prepared = true;
```

When you explicitly prepare the dataset, the resources allocated for executing the statement are not freed until you set *Prepared* to **false**.

Set the *Prepared* property to **false** if you want to ensure that the dataset is re-prepared before it executes (for example, if you add a parameter).

Note When you change the text of the *SQL* property for a query, the dataset automatically closes and unprepares the query.

Executing queries that don’t return a result set

When a query returns a set of records (such as a SELECT query), you execute the query the same way you populate any dataset with records: by setting *Active* to **true** or calling the *Open* method.

However, often SQL commands do not return any records. Such commands include statements that use Data Definition Language (DDL) or Data Manipulation Language (DML) statements other than SELECT statements (For example, INSERT, DELETE, UPDATE, CREATE INDEX, and ALTER TABLE commands do not return any records).

For all query-type datasets, you can execute a query that does not return a result set by calling *ExecSQL*:

```
CustomerQuery->ExecSQL(); // Does not return a result set
```

Tip If you are executing the query multiple times, it is a good idea to set the *Prepared* property to **true**.

Although the query does not return any records, you may want to know the number of records it affected (for example, the number of records deleted by a DELETE query). The *RowsAffected* property gives the number of affected records after a call to *ExecSQL*.

Tip When you do not know at design time whether the query returns a result set (for example, if the user supplies the query dynamically at runtime), you can code both types of query execution statements in a **try...catch** block. Put a call to the *Open* method in the **try** clause. An action query is executed when the query is activated with the *Open* method, but an exception occurs in addition to that. Check the exception, and suppress it if it merely indicates the lack of a result set. (For example, *TQuery* indicates this by an *ENoResultSet* exception.)

Using unidirectional result sets

When a query-type dataset returns a result set, it also receives a cursor, or pointer to the first record in that result set. The record pointed to by the cursor is the currently active record. The current record is the one whose field values are displayed in data-aware components associated with the result set's data source. Unless you are using dbExpress, this cursor is bi-directional by default. A bi-directional cursor can navigate both forward and backward through its records. Bi-directional cursor support requires some additional processing overhead, and can slow some queries.

If you do not need to be able to navigate backward through a result set, *TQuery* and *TIBQuery* let you improve query performance by requesting a unidirectional cursor instead. To request a unidirectional cursor, set the *UniDirectional* property to **true**.

Set *UniDirectional* before preparing and executing a query. The following code illustrates setting *UniDirectional* prior to preparing and executing a query:

```
if (!CustomerQuery->Prepared)
{
    CustomerQuery->UniDirectional = true;
    CustomerQuery->Prepared = true;
}
CustomerQuery->Open(); // Returns a result set with a one-way cursor
```

Note Do not confuse the *UniDirectional* property with a unidirectional dataset. Unidirectional datasets (*TSQIDataSet*, *TSQITable*, *TSQIQuery*, and *TSQIStoredProc*) use dbExpress, which only returns unidirectional cursors. In addition to restricting the ability to navigate backwards, unidirectional datasets do not buffer records, and so have additional limitations (such as the inability to use filters).

Using stored procedure-type datasets

How your application uses a stored procedure depends on how the stored procedure was coded, whether and how it returns data, the specific database server used, or a combination of these factors.

In general terms, to access a stored procedure on a server, an application must:

- 1 Place the appropriate dataset component in a data module or on a form, and set its *Name* property to a unique value appropriate to your application.
- 2 Identify the database server that defines the stored procedure. Each stored procedure-type dataset does this differently, but typically you specify a database connection component:
 - For *TStoredProc*, specify a *TDatabase* component or a BDE alias using the *DatabaseName* property.
 - For *TADOStoredProc*, specify a *TADOConnection* component using the *Connection* property.
 - For *TSQLStoredProc*, specify a *TSQLConnection* component using the *SQLConnection* property.
 - For *TIBStoredProc*, specify a *TIBConnection* component using the *Database* property.

For information about using database connection components, see Chapter 21, “Connecting to databases.”

- 3 Specify the stored procedure to execute. For most stored procedure-type datasets, you do this by setting the *StoredProcName* property. The one exception is *TADOStoredProc*, which has a *ProcedureName* property instead.
- 4 If the stored procedure returns a cursor to be used with visual data controls, add a data source component to the data module, and set its *DataSet* property to the stored procedure-type dataset. Connect data-aware components to the data source using their *DataSource* and *DataField* properties.
- 5 Provide input parameter values for the stored procedure, if necessary. If the server does not provide information about all stored procedure parameters, you may need to provide additional input parameter information, such as parameter names and data types. For information about working with stored procedure parameters, see “Working with stored procedure parameters” on page 22-50.
- 6 Execute the stored procedure. For stored procedures that return a cursor, use the *Active* property or the *Open* method. To execute stored procedures that do not return any results or that only return output parameters, use the *ExecProc* method at runtime. If you plan to execute the stored procedure more than once, you may want to call *Prepare* to initialize the data access layer and bind parameter values into the stored procedure. For information about preparing a query, see “Executing stored procedures that don’t return a result set” on page 22-53.
- 7 Process any results. These results can be returned as result and output parameters, or they can be returned as a result set that populates the stored procedure-type dataset. Some stored procedures return multiple cursors. For details on how to access the additional cursors, see “Fetching multiple result sets” on page 22-53.

Working with stored procedure parameters

There are four types of parameters that can be associated with stored procedures:

- *Input parameters*, used to pass values to a stored procedure for processing.
- *Output parameters*, used by a stored procedure to pass return values to an application.
- *Input/output parameters*, used to pass values to a stored procedure for processing, and used by the stored procedure to pass return values to the application.
- *A result parameter*, used by some stored procedures to return an error or status value to an application. A stored procedure can only return one result parameter.

Whether a stored procedure uses a particular type of parameter depends both on the general language implementation of stored procedures on your database server and on a specific instance of a stored procedure. For any server, individual stored procedures may or may not use input parameters. On the other hand, some uses of parameters are server-specific. For example, on MS-SQL Server and Sybase stored procedures always return a result parameter, but the InterBase implementation of a stored procedure never returns a result parameter.

Access to stored procedure parameters is provided by the *Params* property (in *TStoredProc*, *TSQLStoredProc*, *TIBStoredProc*) or the *Parameters* property (in *TADOStoredProc*). When you assign a value to the *StoredProcName* (or *ProcedureName*) property, the dataset automatically generates objects for each parameter of the stored procedure. For some datasets, if the stored procedure name is not specified until runtime, objects for each parameter must be programmatically created at that time. Not specifying the stored procedure and manually creating the *TParam* or *TParameter* objects allows a single dataset to be used with any number of available stored procedures.

Note Some stored procedures return a dataset in addition to output and result parameters. Applications can display dataset records in data-aware controls, but must separately process output and result parameters.

Setting up parameters at design time

You can specify stored procedure parameter values at design time using the parameter collection editor. To display the parameter collection editor, click on the ellipsis button for the *Params* or *Parameters* property in the Object Inspector.

Important You can assign values to input parameters by selecting them in the parameter collection editor and using the Object Inspector to set the *Value* property. However, do not change the names or data types for input parameters reported by the server. Otherwise, when you execute the stored procedure an exception is raised.

Some servers do not report parameter names or data types. In these cases, you must set up the parameters manually using the parameter collection editor. Right click and choose Add to add parameters. For each parameter you add, you must fully describe the parameter. Even if you do not need to add any parameters, you should check the properties of individual parameter objects to ensure that they are correct.

If the dataset has a *Params* property (*TParam* objects), the following properties must be correctly specified:

- The *Name* property indicates the name of the parameter as it is defined by the stored procedure.
- The *DataType* property gives the data type for the parameter's value. When using *TSQLStoredProc*, some data types require additional information:
 - The *NumericScale* property indicates the number of decimal places for numeric parameters.
 - The *Precision* property indicates the total number of digits for numeric parameters.
 - The *Size* property indicates the number of characters in string parameters.
- The *ParamType* property indicates the type of the selected parameter. This can be *ptInput* (for input parameters), *ptOutput* (for output parameters), *ptInputOutput* (for input/output parameters) or *ptResult* (for result parameters).
- The *Value* property specifies a value for the selected parameter. You can never set values for output and result parameters. These types of parameters have values set by the execution of the stored procedure. For input and input/output parameters, you can leave *Value* blank if your application supplies parameter values at runtime.

If the dataset uses a *Parameters* property (*TParameter* objects), the following properties must be correctly specified:

- The *Name* property indicates the name of the parameter as it is defined by the stored procedure.
- The *DataType* property gives the data type for the parameter's value. For some data types, you must provide additional information:
 - The *NumericScale* property indicates the number of decimal places for numeric parameters.
 - The *Precision* property indicates the total number of digits for numeric parameters.
 - The *Size* property indicates the number of characters in string parameters.
- The *Direction* property gives the type of the selected parameter. This can be *pdInput* (for input parameters), *pdOutput* (for output parameters), *pdInputOutput* (for input/output parameters) or *pdReturnValue* (for result parameters).
- The *Attributes* property controls the type of values the parameter will accept. *Attributes* may be set to a combination of *psSigned*, *psNullable*, and *psLong*.
- The *Value* property specifies a value for the selected parameter. Do not set values for output and result parameters. For input and input/output parameters, you can leave *Value* blank if your application supplies parameter values at runtime.

Using parameters at runtime

With some datasets, if the name of the stored procedure is not specified until runtime, no *TParam* objects are automatically created for parameters and they must be created programmatically. This can be done by instantiating a new *TParam* object or the *TParams::AddParam* method:

```
TParam *P1, *P2;
StoredProc1->StoredProcName = "GET_EMP_PROJ";
StoredProc1->Params->Clear();
P1 = new TParam(StoredProc1->Params, ptInput);
P2 = new TParam(StoredProc1->Params, ptOutput);
try
{
    StoredProc1->Params->Items[0]->Name = "EMP_NO";
    StoredProc1->Params->Items[1]->Name = "PROJ_ID";
    StoredProc1->ParamByName("EMP_NO")->AsSmallInt = 52;
    StoredProc1->ExecProc();
    Edit1->Text = StoredProc1->ParamByName("PROJ_ID")->AsString;
}
__finally
{
    delete P1;
    delete P2;
}
```

Even if you do not need to add the individual parameter objects at runtime, you may want to access individual parameter objects to assign values to input parameters and to retrieve values from output parameters. You can use the dataset's *ParamByName* method to access individual parameters based on their names. For example, the following code sets the value of an input/output parameter, executes the stored procedure, and retrieves the returned value:

```
SQLDataSet1->ParamByName("IN_OUTVAR")->AsInteger = 103;
SQLDataSet1->ExecSQL();
int Result = SQLDataSet1->ParamByName("IN_OUTVAR")->AsInteger;
```

Preparing stored procedures

As with query-type datasets, stored procedure-type datasets must be prepared before they execute the stored procedure. Preparing a stored procedure tells the data access layer and the database server to allocate resources for the stored procedure and to bind parameters. These operations can improve performance.

If you attempt to execute a stored procedure before preparing it, the dataset automatically prepares it for you, and then unprepares it after it executes. If you plan to execute a stored procedure a number of times, it is more efficient to explicitly prepare it by setting the *Prepared* property to **true**.

```
MyProc->Prepared = true;
```

When you explicitly prepare the dataset, the resources allocated for executing the stored procedure are not freed until you set *Prepared* to **false**.

Set the *Prepared* property to **false** if you want to ensure that the dataset is re-prepared before it executes (for example, if you change the parameters when using Oracle overloaded procedures).

Executing stored procedures that don't return a result set

When a stored procedure returns a cursor, you execute it the same way you populate any dataset with records: by setting *Active* to **true** or calling the *Open* method.

However, often stored procedures do not return any data, or only return results in output parameters. You can execute a stored procedure that does not return a result set by calling *ExecProc*. After executing the stored procedure, you can use the *ParamByName* method to read the value of the result parameter or of any output parameters:

```
MyStoredProcedure->ExecProc(); // Does not return a result set
Edit1->Text = MyStoredProcedure->ParamByName("OUTVAR")->AsString;
```

Note *TADOStoredProc* does not have a *ParamByName* method. To obtain output parameter values when using ADO, access parameter objects using the *Parameters* property.

Tip If you are executing the procedure multiple times, it is a good idea to set the *Prepared* property to **true**.

Fetching multiple result sets

Some stored procedures return multiple sets of records. The dataset only fetches the first set when you open it. If you are using *TSQLStoredProc* or *TADOStoredProc*, you can access the other sets of records by calling the *NextRecordSet* or *NextRecordset* method:

```
TCustomSQLDataSet *DataSet2 = SQLStoredProc1->NextRecordSet();
```

In *TSQLStoredProc*, *NextRecordSet* returns a newly created *TCustomSQLDataSet* component that provides access to the next set of records. In *TADOStoredProc*, *NextRecordset* returns an interface that can be assigned to the *RecordSet* property of an existing ADO dataset. For either class, the method returns the number of records in the returned dataset as an output parameter.

The first time you call *NextRecordSet* or *NextRecordset*, it returns the second set of records. Calling *NextRecordSet* or *NextRecordset* again returns a third dataset, and so on, until there are no more sets of records. When there are no additional cursors, *NextRecordSet* or *NextRecordset* returns NULL.

Working with field components

This chapter describes the properties, events, and methods common to the *TField* object and its descendants. Field components represent individual fields (columns) in datasets. This chapter also describes how to use field components to control the display and editing of data in your applications.

Field components are always associated with a dataset. You never use a *TField* object directly in your applications. Instead, each field component in your application is a *TField* descendant specific to the datatype of a column in a dataset. Field components provide data-aware controls such as *TDBEdit* and *TDBGrid* access to the data in a particular column of the associated dataset.

Generally speaking, a single field component represents the characteristics of a single column, or field, in a dataset, such as its data type and size. It also represents the field's display characteristics, such as alignment, display format, and edit format. For example, a *TFloatField* component has four properties that directly affect the appearance of its data:

Table 23.1 TFloatField properties that affect data display

| Property | Purpose |
|---------------|--|
| Alignment | Specifies whether data is displayed left-aligned, centered, or right-aligned. |
| DisplayWidth | Specifies the number of digits to display in a control at one time. |
| DisplayFormat | Specifies data formatting for display (such as how many decimal places to show). |
| EditFormat | Specifies how to display a value during editing. |

As you scroll from record to record in a dataset, a field component lets you view and change the value for that field in the current record.

Field components have many properties in common with one another (such as *DisplayWidth* and *Alignment*), and they have properties specific to their data types (such as *Precision* for *TFloatField*). Each of these properties affect how data appears to an application's users on a form. Some properties, such as *Precision*, can also affect what data values the user can enter in a control when modifying or entering data.

All field components for a dataset are either *dynamic* (automatically generated for you based on the underlying structure of database tables), or *persistent* (generated based on specific field names and properties you set in the Fields editor). Dynamic and persistent fields have different strengths and are appropriate for different types of applications. The following sections describe dynamic and persistent fields in more detail and offer advice on choosing between them.

Dynamic field components

Dynamically generated field components are the default. In fact, all field components for any dataset start out as dynamic fields the first time you place a dataset on a data module, specify how that dataset fetches its data, and open it. A field component is *dynamic* if it is created automatically based on the underlying physical characteristics of the data represented by a dataset. Datasets generate one field component for each column in the underlying data. The exact *TField* descendant created for each column is determined by field type information received from the database or (for *TClientDataSet*) from a provider component.

Dynamic fields are temporary. They exist only as long as a dataset is open. Each time you reopen a dataset that uses dynamic fields, it rebuilds a completely new set of dynamic field components based on the current structure of the data underlying the dataset. If the columns in the underlying data change, then the next time you open a dataset that uses dynamic field components, the automatically generated field components are also changed to match.

Use dynamic fields in applications that must be flexible about data display and editing. For example, to create a database browsing tool such as SQL explorer, you must use dynamic fields because every database table has different numbers and types of columns. You might also want to use dynamic fields in applications where user interaction with data mostly takes place inside grid components and you know that the datasets used by the application change frequently.

To use dynamic fields in an application:

- 1 Place datasets and data sources in a data module.
- 2 Associate the datasets with data. This involves using a connection component or provider to connect to the source of the data and setting any properties that specify what data the dataset represents.
- 3 Associate the data sources with the datasets.
- 4 Place data-aware controls in the application's forms, include the data module's header in each form's unit, and associate each data-aware control with a data source in the module. In addition, associate a field with each data-aware control that requires one. Note that because you are using dynamic field components, there is no guarantee that any field name you specify will exist when the dataset is opened.
- 5 Open the datasets.

Aside from ease of use, dynamic fields can be limiting. Without writing code, you cannot change the display and editing defaults for dynamic fields, you cannot safely change the order in which dynamic fields are displayed, and you cannot prevent access to any fields in the dataset. You cannot create additional fields for the dataset, such as calculated fields or lookup fields, and you cannot override a dynamic field's default data type. To gain control and flexibility over fields in your database applications, you need to invoke the Fields editor to create persistent field components for your datasets.

Persistent field components

By default, dataset fields are dynamic. Their properties and availability are automatically set and cannot be changed in any way. To gain control over a field's properties and events you must create persistent fields for the dataset. Persistent fields let you

- Set or change the field's display or edit characteristics at design time or runtime.
- Create new fields, such as lookup fields, calculated fields, and aggregated fields, that base their values on existing fields in a dataset.
- Validate data entry.
- Remove field components from the list of persistent components to prevent your application from accessing particular columns in an underlying database.
- Define new fields to replace existing fields, based on columns in the table or query underlying a dataset.

At design time, you can—and should—use the Fields editor to create persistent lists of the field components used by the datasets in your application. Persistent field component lists are stored in your application, and do not change even if the structure of a database underlying a dataset is changed. Once you create persistent fields with the Fields editor, you can also create event handlers for them that respond to changes in data values and that validate data entries.

Note When you create persistent fields for a dataset, only those fields you select are available to your application at design time and runtime. At design time, you can always use the Fields editor to add or remove persistent fields for a dataset.

All fields used by a single dataset are either persistent or dynamic. You cannot mix field types in a single dataset. If you create persistent fields for a dataset, and then want to revert to dynamic fields, you must remove all persistent fields from the dataset. For more information about dynamic fields, see “Dynamic field components” on page 23-2.

Note One of the primary uses of persistent fields is to gain control over the appearance and display of data. You can also control the appearance of columns in data-aware grids. To learn about controlling column appearance in grids, see “Creating a customized grid” on page 19-16.

Creating persistent fields

Persistent field components created with the Fields editor provide efficient, readable, and type-safe programmatic access to underlying data. Using persistent field components guarantees that each time your application runs, it always uses and displays the same columns, in the same order even if the physical structure of the underlying database has changed. Data-aware components and program code that rely on specific fields always work as expected. If a column on which a persistent field component is based is deleted or changed, C++Builder generates an exception rather than running the application against a nonexistent column or mismatched data.

To create persistent fields for a dataset:

- 1 Place a dataset in a data module.
- 2 Bind the dataset to its underlying data. This typically involves associating the dataset with a connection component or provider and specifying any properties to describe the data. For example, If you are using *TADODataSet*, you can set the *Connection* property to a properly configured *TADOConnection* component and set the *CommandText* property to a valid query.

- 3 Double-click the dataset component in the data module to invoke the Fields editor. The Fields editor contains a title bar, navigator buttons, and a list box.

The title bar of the Fields editor displays both the name of the data module or form containing the dataset, and the name of the dataset itself. For example, if you open the *Customers* dataset in the *CustomerData* data module, the title bar displays 'CustomerData->Customers,' or as much of the name as fits.

Below the title bar is a set of navigation buttons that let you scroll one-by-one through the records in an active dataset at design time, and to jump to the first or last record. The navigation buttons are dimmed if the dataset is not active or if the dataset is empty. If the dataset is unidirectional, the buttons for moving to the last record and the previous record are always dimmed.

The list box displays the names of persistent field components for the dataset. The first time you invoke the Fields editor for a new dataset, the list is empty because the field components for the dataset are dynamic, not persistent. If you invoke the Fields editor for a dataset that already has persistent field components, you see the field component names in the list box.

- 4 Choose Add Fields from the Fields editor context menu.
- 5 Select the fields to make persistent in the Add Fields dialog box. By default, all fields are selected when the dialog box opens. Any fields you select become persistent fields.

The Add Fields dialog box closes, and the fields you selected appear in the Fields editor list box. Fields in the Fields editor list box are persistent. If the dataset is active, note, too, that the Next and (if the dataset is not unidirectional) Last navigation buttons above the list box are enabled.

From now on, each time you open the dataset, it no longer creates dynamic field components for every column in the underlying database. Instead it only creates persistent components for the fields you specified.

Each time you open the dataset, it verifies that each non-calculated persistent field exists or can be created from data in the database. If it cannot, the dataset raises an exception warning you that the field is not valid, and does not open the dataset.

Arranging persistent fields

The order in which persistent field components are listed in the Fields editor list box is the default order in which the fields appear in a data-aware grid component. You can change field order by dragging and dropping fields in the list box.

To change the order of fields:

- 1 Select the fields. You can select and order one or more fields at a time.
- 2 Drag the fields to a new location.

If you select a noncontiguous set of fields and drag them to a new location, they are inserted as a contiguous block. Within the block, the order of fields does not change.

Alternatively, you can select the field, and use *Ctrl+Up* and *Ctrl+Dn* to change an individual field's order in the list.

Defining new persistent fields

Besides making existing dataset fields into persistent fields, you can also create special persistent fields as additions to or replacements of the other persistent fields in a dataset.

New persistent fields that you create are only for display purposes. The data they contain at runtime are not retained either because they already exist elsewhere in the database, or because they are temporary. The physical structure of the data underlying the dataset is not changed in any way.

To create a new persistent field component, invoke the context menu for the Fields editor and choose New field. The New Field dialog box appears.

The New Field dialog box contains three group boxes: Field properties, Field type, and Lookup definition.

- The Field properties group box lets you enter general field component information. Enter the field name in the Name edit box. The name you enter here corresponds to the field component's *FieldName* property. The New Field dialog uses this name to build a component name in the Component edit box. The name that appears in the Component edit box corresponds to the field component's *Name* property and is only provided for informational purposes (*Name* is the identifier by which you refer to the field component in your source code). The dialog discards anything you enter directly in the Component edit box.

- The Type combo box in the Field properties group lets you specify the field component's data type. You must supply a data type for any new field component you create. For example, to display floating-point currency values in a field, select *Currency* from the drop-down list. Use the Size edit box to specify the maximum number of characters that can be displayed or entered in a string-based field, or the size of *Bytes* and *VarBytes* fields. For all other data types, Size is meaningless.
- The Field type radio group lets you specify the type of new field component to create. The default type is Data. If you choose Lookup, the Dataset and Source Fields edit boxes in the Lookup definition group box are enabled. You can also create Calculated fields, and if you are working with a client dataset, you can create InternalCalc fields or Aggregate fields. The following table describes these types of fields you can create:

Table 23.2 Special persistent field kinds

| Field kind | Purpose |
|--------------|--|
| Data | Replaces an existing field (for example to change its data type) |
| Calculated | Displays values calculated at runtime by a dataset's <i>OnCalcFields</i> event handler. |
| Lookup | Retrieve values from a specified dataset at runtime based on search criteria you specify. (not supported by unidirectional datasets) |
| InternalCalc | Displays values calculated at runtime by a client dataset and stored with its data. |
| Aggregate | Displays a value summarizing the data in a set of records from a client dataset. |

The Lookup definition group box is only used to create lookup fields. This is described more fully in “Defining a lookup field” on page 23-8.

Defining a data field

A data field replaces an existing field in a dataset. For example, for programmatic reasons you might want to replace a *TSmallIntField* with a *TIntegerField*. Because you cannot change a field's data type directly, you must define a new field to replace it.

Important

Even though you define a new field to replace an existing field, the field you define must derive its data values from an existing column in a table underlying a dataset.

To create a replacement data field for a field in a table underlying a dataset, follow these steps:

- 1 Remove the field from the list of persistent fields assigned for the dataset, and then choose New Field from the context menu.
- 2 In the New Field dialog box, enter the name of an existing field in the database table in the Name edit box. Do not enter a new field name. You are actually specifying the name of the field from which your new field will derive its data.
- 3 Choose a new data type for the field from the Type combo box. The data type you choose should be different from the data type of the field you are replacing. You cannot replace a string field of one size with a string field of another size. Note that while the data type should be different, it must be compatible with the actual data type of the field in the underlying table.

- 4 Enter the size of the field in the Size edit box, if appropriate. Size is only relevant for fields of type *TStringField*, *TBytesField*, and *TVarBytesField*.
- 5 Select Data in the Field type radio group if it is not already selected.
- 6 Choose OK. The New Field dialog box closes, the newly defined data field replaces the existing field you specified in Step 1, and the component declaration in the data module or form's header is updated.

To edit the properties or events associated with the field component, select the component name in the Field editor list box, then edit its properties or events with the Object Inspector. For more information about editing field component properties and events, see "Setting persistent field properties and events" on page 23-10.

Defining a calculated field

A calculated field displays values calculated at runtime by a dataset's *OnCalcFields* event handler. For example, you might create a string field that displays concatenated values from other fields.

To create a calculated field in the New Field dialog box:

- 1 Enter a name for the calculated field in the Name edit box. Do not enter the name of an existing field.
- 2 Choose a data type for the field from the Type combo box.
- 3 Enter the size of the field in the Size edit box, if appropriate. Size is only relevant for fields of type *TStringField*, *TBytesField*, and *TVarBytesField*.
- 4 Select Calculated or InternalCalc in the Field type radio group. InternalCalc is only available if you are working with a client dataset. The significant difference between these types of calculated fields is that the values calculated for an InternalCalc field are stored and retrieved as part of the client dataset's data.
- 5 Choose OK. The newly defined calculated field is automatically added to the end of the list of persistent fields in the Field editor list box, and the component declaration is automatically added to the form's or data module's header.
- 6 Place code that calculates values for the field in the *OnCalcFields* event handler for the dataset. For more information about writing code to calculate field values, see "Programming a calculated field" on page 23-7.

Note To edit the properties or events associated with the field component, select the component name in the Field editor list box, then edit its properties or events with the Object Inspector. For more information about editing field component properties and events, see "Setting persistent field properties and events" on page 23-10.

Programming a calculated field

After you define a calculated field, you must write code to calculate its value. Otherwise, it always has a null value. Code for a calculated field is placed in the *OnCalcFields* event for its dataset.

To program a value for a calculated field:

- 1 Select the dataset component from the Object Inspector drop-down list.

- 2 Choose the Object Inspector Events page.
- 3 Double-click the *OnCalcFields* property to bring up or create a *CalcFields* procedure for the dataset component.
- 4 Write the code that sets the values and other properties of the calculated field as desired.

For example, suppose you have created a *CityStateZip* calculated field for the *Customers* table on the *CustomerData* data module. *CityStateZip* should display a company's city, state, and zip code on a single line in a data-aware control.

To add code to the *CalcFields* procedure for the *Customers* table, select the *Customers* table from the Object Inspector drop-down list, switch to the Events page, and double-click the *OnCalcFields* property.

The *TCustomerData::CustomersCalcFields* procedure appears in the unit's source code window. Add the following code to the procedure to calculate the field:

```
CustomersCityStateZip->Value = CustomersCity->Value + AnsiString(", ") +  
    CustomersState->Value + AnsiString(" ") + CustomersZip->Value;
```

Note When writing the *OnCalcFields* event handler for an internally calculated field, you can improve performance by checking the client dataset's *State* property and only recomputing the value when *State* is *dsInternalCalc*. See "Using internally calculated fields in client datasets" on page 27-10 for details.

Defining a lookup field

A lookup field is a read-only field that displays values at runtime based on search criteria you specify. In its simplest form, a lookup field is passed the name of an existing field to search on, a field value to search for, and a different field in a lookup dataset whose value it should display.

For example, consider a mail-order application that enables an operator to use a lookup field to determine automatically the city and state that correspond to the zip code a customer provides. The column to search on might be called *ZipTable->Zip*, the value to search for is the customer's zip code as entered in *Order->CustZip*, and the values to return would be those for the *ZipTable->City* and *ZipTable->State* columns of the record where the value of *ZipTable->Zip* matches the current value in the *Order->CustZip* field.

Note Unidirectional datasets do not support lookup fields.

To create a lookup field in the New Field dialog box:

- 1 Enter a name for the lookup field in the Name edit box. Do not enter the name of an existing field.
- 2 Choose a data type for the field from the Type combo box.
- 3 Enter the size of the field in the Size edit box, if appropriate. Size is only relevant for fields of type *TStringField*, *TBytesField*, and *TVarBytesField*.
- 4 Select Lookup in the Field type radio group. Selecting Lookup enables the Dataset and Key Fields combo boxes.

- 5 Choose from the Dataset combo box drop-down list the dataset in which to look up field values. The lookup dataset must be different from the dataset for the field component itself, or a circular reference exception is raised at runtime. Specifying a lookup dataset enables the Lookup Keys and Result Field combo boxes.
- 6 Choose from the Key Fields drop-down list a field in the current dataset for which to match values. To match more than one field, enter field names directly instead of choosing from the drop-down list. Separate multiple field names with semicolons. If you are using more than one field, you must use persistent field components.
- 7 Choose from the Lookup Keys drop-down list a field in the lookup dataset to match against the Source Fields field you specified in step 6. If you specified more than one key field, you must specify the same number of lookup keys. To specify more than one field, enter field names directly, separating multiple field names with semicolons.
- 8 Choose from the Result Field drop-down list a field in the lookup dataset to return as the value of the lookup field you are creating.

When you design and run your application, lookup field values are determined before calculated field values are calculated. You can base calculated fields on lookup fields, but you cannot base lookup fields on calculated fields.

You can use the *LookupCache* property to hone the way lookup fields are determined. *LookupCache* determines whether the values of a lookup field are cached in memory when a dataset is first opened, or looked up dynamically every time the current record in the dataset changes. Set *LookupCache* to **true** to cache the values of a lookup field when the *LookupDataSet* is unlikely to change and the number of distinct lookup values is small. Caching lookup values can speed performance, because the lookup values for every set of *LookupKeyFields* values are preloaded when the *DataSet* is opened. When the current record in the *DataSet* changes, the field object can locate its *Value* in the cache, rather than accessing the *LookupDataSet*. This performance improvement is especially dramatic if the *LookupDataSet* is on a network where access is slow.

Tip You can use a lookup cache to provide lookup values programmatically rather than from a secondary dataset. Be sure that the *LookupDataSet* property is NULL. Then, use the *LookupList* property's *Add* method to fill it with lookup values. Set the *LookupCache* property to **true**. The field will use the supplied lookup list without overwriting it with values from a lookup dataset.

If every record of *DataSet* has different values for *KeyFields*, the overhead of locating values in the cache can be greater than any performance benefit provided by the cache. The overhead of locating values in the cache increases with the number of distinct values that can be taken by *KeyFields*.

If *LookupDataSet* is volatile, caching lookup values can lead to inaccurate results. Call *RefreshLookupList* to update the values in the lookup cache. *RefreshLookupList* regenerates the *LookupList* property, which contains the value of the *LookupResultField* for every set of *LookupKeyFields* values.

When setting *LookupCache* at runtime, call *RefreshLookupList* to initialize the cache.

Defining an aggregate field

An aggregate field displays values from a maintained aggregate in a client dataset. An aggregate is a calculation that summarizes the data in a set of records. See “Using maintained aggregates” on page 27-11 for details about maintained aggregates.

To create an aggregate field in the New Field dialog box:

- 1 Enter a name for the aggregate field in the Name edit box. Do not enter the name of an existing field.
- 2 Choose aggregate data type for the field from the Type combo box.
- 3 Select Aggregate in the Field type radio group.
- 4 Choose OK. The newly defined aggregate field is automatically added to the client dataset and its *Aggregates* property is automatically updated to include the appropriate aggregate specification.
- 5 Place the calculation for the aggregate in the *ExprText* property of the newly created aggregate field. For more information about defining an aggregate, see “Specifying aggregates” on page 27-11.

Once a persistent *TAggregateField* is created, a *TDBText* control can be bound to the aggregate field. The *TDBText* control will then display the value of the aggregate field that is relevant to the current record of the underlying client data set.

Deleting persistent field components

Deleting a persistent field component is useful for accessing a subset of available columns in a table, and for defining your own persistent fields to replace a column in a table. To remove one or more persistent field components for a dataset:

- 1 Select the field(s) to remove in the Fields editor list box.
- 2 Press *Del*.

Note You can also delete selected fields by invoking the context menu and choosing Delete.

Fields you remove are no longer available to the dataset and cannot be displayed by data-aware controls. You can always recreate a persistent field component that you delete by accident, but any changes previously made to its properties or events is lost. For more information, see “Creating persistent fields” on page 23-4.

Note If you remove all persistent field components for a dataset, the dataset reverts to using dynamic field components for every column in the underlying database table.

Setting persistent field properties and events

You can set properties and customize events for persistent field components at design time. Properties control the way a field is displayed by a data-aware component, for example, whether it can appear in a *TDBGrid*, or whether its value

can be modified. Events control what happens when data in a field is fetched, changed, set, or validated.

To set the properties of a field component or write customized event handlers for it, select the component in the Fields editor, or select it from the component list in the Object Inspector.

Setting display and edit properties at design time

To edit the display properties of a selected field component, switch to the Properties page on the Object Inspector window. The following table summarizes display properties that can be edited.

Table 23.3 Field component properties

| Property | Purpose |
|-------------------------------|--|
| <i>Alignment</i> | Left justifies, right justifies, or centers a field contents within a data-aware component. |
| <i>ConstraintErrorMessage</i> | Specifies the text to display when edits clash with a constraint condition. |
| <i>CustomConstraint</i> | Specifies a local constraint to apply to data during editing. |
| <i>Currency</i> | Numeric fields only. true : displays monetary values. false (default): does not display monetary values. |
| <i>DisplayFormat</i> | Specifies the format of data displayed in a data-aware component. |
| <i>DisplayLabel</i> | Specifies the column name for a field in a data-aware grid component. |
| <i>DisplayWidth</i> | Specifies the width, in characters, of a grid column that display this field. |
| <i>EditFormat</i> | Specifies the edit format of data in a data-aware component. |
| <i>EditMask</i> | Limits data-entry in an editable field to specified types and ranges of characters, and specifies any special, non-editable characters that appear within the field (hyphens, parentheses, and so on). |
| <i>FieldKind</i> | Specifies the type of field to create. |
| <i>FieldName</i> | Specifies the actual name of a column in the table from which the field derives its value and data type. |
| <i>HasConstraints</i> | Indicates whether there are constraint conditions imposed on a field. |
| <i>ImportedConstraint</i> | Specifies an SQL constraint imported from the Data Dictionary or an SQL server. |
| <i>Index</i> | Specifies the order of the field in a dataset. |
| <i>LookupDataSet</i> | Specifies the table used to look up field values when <i>Lookup</i> is true . |
| <i>LookupKeyFields</i> | Specifies the field(s) in the lookup dataset to match when doing a lookup. |
| <i>LookupResultField</i> | Specifies the field in the lookup dataset from which to copy values into this field. |
| <i>MaxValue</i> | Numeric fields only. Specifies the maximum value a user can enter for the field. |
| <i>MinValue</i> | Numeric fields only. Specifies the minimum value a user can enter for the field. |
| <i>Name</i> | Specifies the component name of the field component within C++Builder. |
| <i>Origin</i> | Specifies the name of the field as it appears in the underlying database. |
| <i>Precision</i> | Numeric fields only. Specifies the number of significant digits. |

Table 23.3 Field component properties (continued)

| Property | Purpose |
|----------------------|---|
| <i>ReadOnly</i> | true : Displays field values in data-aware controls, but prevents editing. false (the default): Permits display and editing of field values. |
| <i>Size</i> | Specifies the maximum number of characters that can be displayed or entered in a string-based field, or the size, in bytes, of <i>TBytesField</i> and <i>TVarBytesField</i> fields. |
| <i>Tag</i> | Long integer bucket available for programmer use in every component as needed. |
| <i>Transliterate</i> | true (default): specifies that translation to and from the respective locales will occur as data is transferred between a dataset and a database. false : Locale translation does not occur. |
| <i>Visible</i> | true (the default): Permits display of field in a data-aware grid. false : Prevents display of field in a data-aware grid component. User-defined components can make display decisions based on this property. |

Not all properties are available for all field components. For example, a field component of type *TStringField* does not have *Currency*, *MaxValue*, or *DisplayFormat* properties, and a component of type *TFloatField* does not have a *Size* property.

While the purpose of most properties is straightforward, some properties, such as *Calculated*, require additional programming steps to be useful. Others, such as *DisplayFormat*, *EditFormat*, and *EditMask*, are interrelated; their settings must be coordinated. For more information about using *DisplayFormat*, *EditFormat*, and *EditMask*, see “Controlling and masking user input” on page 23-14.

Setting field component properties at runtime

You can use and manipulate the properties of field component at runtime. Access persistent field components by name, where the name can be obtained by concatenating the field name to the dataset name.

For example, the following code sets the *ReadOnly* property for the *CityStateZip* field in the *Customers* table to **true**:

```
CustomersCityStateZip->ReadOnly = true;
```

And this statement changes field ordering by setting the *Index* property of the *CityStateZip* field in the *Customers* table to 3:

```
CustomersCityStateZip->Index = 3;
```

Creating attribute sets for field components

When several fields in the datasets used by your application share common formatting properties (such as *Alignment*, *DisplayWidth*, *DisplayFormat*, *EditFormat*, *MaxValue*, *MinValue*, and so on), it is more convenient to set the properties for a single field, then store those properties as an attribute set in the Data Dictionary. Attribute sets stored in the data dictionary can be easily applied to other fields.

Note Attribute sets and the Data Dictionary are only available for BDE-enabled datasets.

To create an attribute set based on a field component in a dataset:

- 1 Double-click the dataset to invoke the Fields editor.
- 2 Select the field for which to set properties.
- 3 Set the desired properties for the field in the Object Inspector.
- 4 Right-click the Fields editor list box to invoke the context menu.
- 5 Choose Save Attributes to save the current field's property settings as an attribute set in the Data Dictionary.

The name for the attribute set defaults to the name of the current field. You can specify a different name for the attribute set by choosing Save Attributes As instead of Save Attributes from the context menu.

Once you have created a new attribute set and added it to the Data Dictionary, you can then associate it with other persistent field components. Even if you later remove the association, the attribute set remains defined in the Data Dictionary.

Note You can also create attribute sets directly from the SQL Explorer. When you create an attribute set using SQL Explorer, it is added to the Data Dictionary, but not applied to any fields. SQL Explorer lets you specify two additional attributes: a field type (such as *TFloatField*, *TStringField*, and so on) and a data-aware control (such as *TDBEdit*, *TDBCheckBox*, and so on) that are automatically placed on a form when a field based on the attribute set is dragged to the form. For more information, see the online help for the SQL Explorer.

Associating attribute sets with field components

When several fields in the datasets used by your application share common formatting properties (such as *Alignment*, *DisplayWidth*, *DisplayFormat*, *EditFormat*, *MaxValue*, *MinValue*, and so on), and you have saved those property settings as attribute sets in the Data Dictionary, you can easily apply the attribute sets to fields without having to recreate the settings manually for each field. In addition, if you later change the attribute settings in the Data Dictionary, those changes are automatically applied to every field associated with the set the next time field components are added to the dataset.

To apply an attribute set to a field component:

- 1 Double-click the dataset to invoke the Fields editor.
- 2 Select the field for which to apply an attribute set.
- 3 Invoke the context menu and choose Associate Attributes.
- 4 Select or enter the attribute set to apply from the Associate Attributes dialog box. If there is an attribute set in the Data Dictionary that has the same name as the current field, that set name appears in the edit box.

Important If the attribute set in the Data Dictionary is changed at a later date, you must reapply the attribute set to each field component that uses it. You can invoke the Fields editor and multi-select field components within a dataset when reapplying attributes.

Removing attribute associations

If you change your mind about associating an attribute set with a field, you can remove the association by following these steps:

- 1 Invoke the Fields editor for the dataset containing the field.
- 2 Select the field or fields from which to remove the attribute association.
- 3 Invoke the context menu for the Fields editor and choose Unassociate Attributes.

Important Unassociating an attribute set does not change any field properties. A field retains the settings it had when the attribute set was applied to it. To change these properties, select the field in the Fields editor and set its properties in the Object Inspector.

Controlling and masking user input

The *EditMask* property provides a way to control the type and range of values a user can enter into a data-aware component associated with *TStringField*, *TDateField*, *TTimeField*, and *TDateTimeField*, and *TSQLTimeStampField* components. You can use existing masks or create your own. The easiest way to use and create edit masks is with the Input Mask editor. You can, however, enter masks directly into the *EditMask* field in the Object Inspector.

Note For *TStringField* components, the *EditMask* property is also its display format.

To invoke the Input Mask editor for a field component:

- 1 Select the component in the Fields editor or Object Inspector.
- 2 Click the Properties page in the Object Inspector.
- 3 Double-click the values column for the EditMask field in the Object Inspector, or click the ellipsis button. The Input Mask editor opens.

The Input Mask edit box lets you create and edit a mask format. The Sample Masks grid lets you select from predefined masks. If you select a sample mask, the mask format appears in the Input Mask edit box where you can modify it or use it as is. You can test the allowable user input for a mask in the Test Input edit box.

The Masks button enables you to load a custom set of masks—if you have created one—into the Sample Masks grid for easy selection.

Using default formatting for numeric, date, and time fields

C++Builder provides built-in display and edit format routines and intelligent default formatting for *TFloatField*, *TCurrencyField*, *TBCDField*, *TFMTBCDField*, *TIntegerField*, *TSmallIntField*, *TWordField*, *TDateField*, *TDateTimeField*, and *TTimeField*, and *TSQLTimeStampField* components. To use these routines, you need do nothing.

Default formatting is performed by the following routines:

Table 23.4 Field component formatting routines

| Routine | Used by . . . |
|-----------------------------|---|
| <i>FormatFloat</i> | <i>TFloatField</i> , <i>TCurrencyField</i> |
| <i>FormatDateTime</i> | <i>TDateField</i> , <i>TTimeField</i> , <i>TDateTimeField</i> , |
| <i>SQLTimeStampToString</i> | <i>TSQLTimeStampField</i> |
| <i>FormatCurr</i> | <i>TCurrencyField</i> , <i>TBCDField</i> |
| <i>BcdToStrF</i> | <i>TFMTBCDField</i> |

Only format properties appropriate to the data type of a field component are available for a given component.

Default formatting conventions for date, time, currency, and numeric values are based on the Regional Settings properties in the Control Panel. For example, using the default settings for the United States, a *TFloatField* column with the *Currency* property set to **true** sets the *DisplayFormat* property for the value 1234.56 to \$1234.56, while the *EditFormat* is 1234.56.

At design time or runtime, you can edit the *DisplayFormat* and *EditFormat* properties of a field component to override the default display settings for that field. You can also write *OnGetText* and *OnSetText* event handlers to do custom formatting for field components at runtime.

Handling events

Like most components, field components have events associated with them. Methods can be assigned as handlers for these events. By writing these handlers you can react to the occurrence of events that affect data entered in fields through data-aware controls and perform actions of your own design. The following table lists the events associated with field components:

Table 23.5 Field component events

| Event | Purpose |
|-------------------|--|
| <i>OnChange</i> | Called when the value for a field changes. |
| <i>OnGetText</i> | Called when the value for a field component is retrieved for display or editing. |
| <i>OnSetText</i> | Called when the value for a field component is set. |
| <i>OnValidate</i> | Called to validate the value for a field component whenever the value is changed because of an edit or insert operation. |

OnGetText and *OnSetText* events are primarily useful to programmers who want to do custom formatting that goes beyond the built-in formatting functions. *OnChange* is useful for performing application-specific tasks associated with data change, such as enabling or disabling menus or visual controls. *OnValidate* is useful when you want to control data-entry validation in your application before returning values to a database server.

To write an event handler for a field component:

- 1 Select the component.
- 2 Select the Events page in the Object Inspector.
- 3 Double-click the Value field for the event handler to display its source code window.
- 4 Create or edit the handler code.

Working with field component methods at runtime

Field components methods available at runtime enable you to convert field values from one data type to another, and enable you to set focus to the first data-aware control in a form that is associated with a field component.

Controlling the focus of data-aware components associated with a field is important when your application performs record-oriented data validation in a dataset event handler (such as *BeforePost*). Validation may be performed on the fields in a record whether or not its associated data-aware control has focus. Should validation fail for a particular field in the record, you want the data-aware control containing the faulty data to have focus so that the user can enter corrections.

You control focus for a field's data-aware components with a field's *FocusControl* method. *FocusControl* sets focus to the first data-aware control in a form that is associated with a field. An event handler should call a field's *FocusControl* method before validating the field. The following code illustrates how to call the *FocusControl* method for the *Company* field in the *Customers* table:

```
CustomersCompany->FocusControl();
```

The following table lists some other field component methods and their uses. For a complete list and detailed information about using each method, see the entries for *TField* and its descendants in the online *VCL Reference*.

Table 23.6 Selected field component methods

| Method | Purpose |
|-------------|---|
| AssignValue | Sets a field value to a specified value using an automatic conversion function based on the field's type. |
| Clear | Clears the field and sets its value to NULL. |
| GetData | Retrieves unformatted data from the field. |
| IsValidChar | Determines if a character entered by a user in a data-aware control to set a value is allowed for this field. |
| SetData | Assigns unformatted data to this field. |

Displaying, converting, and accessing field values

Data-aware controls such as *TDBEdit* and *TDBGrid* automatically display the values associated with field components. If editing is enabled for the dataset and the controls, data-aware controls can also send new and changed values to the database. In general, the built-in properties and methods of data-aware controls enable them to connect to datasets, display values, and make updates without requiring extra programming on your part. Use them whenever possible in your database applications. For more information about data-aware control, see Chapter 19, “Using data controls.”

Standard controls can also display and edit database values associated with field components. Using standard controls, however, may require additional programming on your part. For example, when using standard controls, your application is responsible for tracking when to update controls because field values change. If the dataset has a *datasource* component, you can use its events to help you do this. In particular, the *OnDataChange* event lets you know when you may need to update a control's value and the *OnStateChange* event can help you determine when to enable or disable controls. For more information on these events, see “Responding to changes mediated by the data source” on page 19-4.

The following topics discuss how to work with field values so that you can display them in standard controls.

Displaying field component values in standard controls

An application can access the value of a dataset column through the *Value* property of a field component. For example, the following *OnDataChange* event handler updates the text in a *TEdit* control because the value of the *CustomersCompany* field may have changed:

```
void __fastcall TForm1::Table1DataChange(TObject *Sender, TField *Field)
{
    Edit3->Text = CustomersCompany->Value;
}
```

This method works well for string values, but may require additional programming to handle conversions for other data types. Fortunately, field components have built-in properties for handling conversions.

Note You can also use Variants to access and set field values. For more information about using variants to access and set field values, see “Accessing field values with the default dataset property” on page 23-19.

Converting field values

Conversion properties attempt to convert one data type to another. For example, the *AsString* property converts numeric and Boolean values to string representations.

The following table lists field component conversion properties, and which properties are recommended for field components by field-component class:

| | AsVariant | AsString | AsInteger | AsFloat AsCurrency AsBCD | AsDateTime AsSQLTimeStamp | AsBoolean |
|--------------------|-----------|----------|-----------|--------------------------------|------------------------------|-----------|
| TStringField | yes | NA | yes | yes | yes | yes |
| TWideStringField | yes | yes | yes | yes | yes | yes |
| TIntegerField | yes | yes | NA | yes | | |
| TSmallIntField | yes | yes | yes | yes | | |
| TWordField | yes | yes | yes | yes | | |
| TLargeIntField | yes | yes | yes | yes | | |
| TFloatField | yes | yes | yes | yes | | |
| TCurrencyField | yes | yes | yes | yes | | |
| TBCDField | yes | yes | yes | yes | | |
| TFMTBCDField | yes | yes | yes | yes | | |
| TDateTimeField | yes | yes | | yes | yes | |
| TDateField | yes | yes | | yes | yes | |
| TTimeField | yes | yes | | yes | yes | |
| TSQLTimeStampField | yes | yes | | yes | yes | |
| TBooleanField | yes | yes | | | | |
| TBytesField | yes | yes | | | | |
| TVarBytesField | yes | yes | | | | |
| TBlobField | yes | yes | | | | |
| TMemoField | yes | yes | | | | |
| TGraphicField | yes | yes | | | | |
| TVariantField | NA | yes | yes | yes | yes | yes |
| TAggregateField | yes | yes | | | | |

Note that some columns in the table refer to more than one conversion property (such as *AsFloat*, *AsCurrency*, and *AsBCD*). This is because all field data types that support one of those properties always support the others as well.

Note also that the *AsVariant* property can translate among all data types. For any datatypes not listed above, *AsVariant* is also available (and is, in fact, the only option). When in doubt, use *AsVariant*.

In some cases, conversions are not always possible. For example, *AsDateTime* can be used to convert a string to a date, time, or datetime format only if the string value is in a recognizable datetime format. A failed conversion attempt raises an exception.

In some other cases, conversion is possible, but the results of the conversion are not always intuitive. For example, what does it mean to convert a *TDateTimeField* value into a float format? *AsFloat* converts the date portion of the field to the number of

days since 12/31/1899, and it converts the time portion of the field to a fraction of 24 hours. Table 23.7 lists permissible conversions that produce special results:

Table 23.7 Special conversion results

| Conversion | Result |
|--|--|
| <i>String to Boolean</i> | Converts “True,” “False,” “Yes,” and “No” to Boolean. Other values raise exceptions. |
| <i>Float to Integer</i> | Rounds float value to nearest integer value. |
| <i>DateTime or SQLTimeStamp to Float</i> | Converts date to number of days since 12/31/1899, time to a fraction of 24 hours. |
| <i>Boolean to String</i> | Converts any Boolean value to “True” or “False.” |

In other cases, conversions are not possible at all. In these cases, attempting a conversion also raises an exception.

Conversion always occurs before an assignment is made. For example, the following statement converts the value of *CustomersCustNo* to a string and assigns the string to the text of an edit control:

```
Edit1->Text = CustomersCustNo->AsString;
```

Conversely, the next statement assigns the text of an edit control to the *CustomersCustNo* field as an integer:

```
MyTableMyField->AsInteger = StrToInt(Edit1->Text);
```

Accessing field values with the default dataset property

The most general method for accessing a field’s value is to use Variants with the *FieldValues* property. For example, the following statement puts the value of an edit box into the *CustNo* field in the *Customers* table:

```
Customers->FieldValues["CustNo"] = Edit2->Text;
```

Because the *FieldValues* property is of type Variant, it automatically converts other datatypes into a Variant value.

For more information about Variants, see the online help.

Accessing field values with a dataset’s Fields property

You can access the value of a field with the *Fields* property of the dataset component to which the field belongs. *Fields* maintains an indexed list of all the fields in the dataset. Accessing field values with the *Fields* property is useful when you need to iterate over a number of columns, or if your application works with tables that are not available to you at design time.

To use the *Fields* property you must know the order of and data types of fields in the dataset. You use an ordinal number to specify the field to access. The first field in a dataset is numbered 0. Field values must be converted as appropriate using each

field component's conversion properties. For more information about field component conversion properties, see "Converting field values" on page 23-17.

For example, the following statement assigns the current value of the seventh column (Country) in the *Customers* table to an edit control:

```
Edit1->Text = CustTable->Fields->Fields[6]->AsString;
```

Conversely, you can assign a value to a field by setting the *Fields* property of the dataset to the desired field. For example:

```
Customers->Edit();  
Customers->Insert();  
Customers->Fields->Fields[6]->AsString = Edit1->Text;  
Customers->Post();
```

Accessing field values with a dataset's FieldByName method

You can also access the value of a field with a dataset's *FieldByName* method. This method is useful when you know the name of the field you want to access, but do not have access to the underlying table at design time.

To use *FieldByName*, you must know the dataset and name of the field you want to access. You pass the field's name as an argument to the method. To access or change the field's value, convert the result with the appropriate field component conversion property, such as *AsString* or *AsInteger*. For example, the following statement assigns the value of the *CustNo* field in the *Customers* dataset to an edit control:

```
Edit2->Text = Customers->FieldByName("CustNo")->AsString;
```

Conversely, you can assign a value to a field:

```
Customers->Edit();  
Customers->FieldByName("CustNo")->AsString = Edit2->Text;  
Customers->Post();
```

Setting a default value for a field

You can specify how a default value for a field in a client dataset or a BDE-enabled dataset should be calculated at runtime using the *DefaultExpression* property. *DefaultExpression* can be any valid SQL value expression that does not refer to field values. If the expression contains literals other than numeric values, they must appear in quotes. For example, a default value of noon for a time field would be

```
'12:00:00'
```

including the quotes around the literal value.

Note If the underlying database table defines a default value for the field, the default you specify in *DefaultExpression* takes precedence. That is because *DefaultExpression* is applied when the dataset posts the record containing the field, before the edited record is applied to the database server.

Working with constraints

Field components in client datasets or BDE-enabled datasets can use SQL server constraints. In addition, your applications can create and use custom constraints for these datasets that are local to your application. All constraints are rules or conditions that impose a limit on the scope or range of values that a field can store.

Creating a custom constraint

A custom constraint is not imported from the server like other constraints. It is a constraint that you declare, implement, and enforce in your local application. As such, custom constraints can be useful for offering a prevalidation enforcement of data entry, but a custom constraint cannot be applied against data received from or sent to a server application.

To create a custom constraint, set the *CustomConstraint* property to specify a constraint condition, and set *ConstraintErrorMessage* to the message to display when a user violates the constraint at runtime.

CustomConstraint is an SQL string that specifies any application-specific constraints imposed on the field's value. Set *CustomConstraint* to limit the values that the user can enter into a field. *CustomConstraint* can be any valid SQL search expression such as

```
x > 0 and x < 100
```

The name used to refer to the value of the field can be any string that is not a reserved SQL keyword, as long as it is used consistently throughout the constraint expression.

Note Custom constraints are only available in BDE-enabled and client datasets.

Custom constraints are imposed in addition to any constraints to the field's value that come from the server. To see the constraints imposed by the server, read the *ImportedConstraint* property.

Using server constraints

Most production SQL databases use constraints to impose conditions on the possible values for a field. For example, a field may not permit NULL values, may require that its value be unique for that column, or that its values be greater than 0 and less than 150. While you could replicate such conditions in your client applications, client datasets and BDE-enabled datasets offer the *ImportedConstraint* property to propagate a server's constraints locally.

ImportedConstraint is a read-only property that specifies an SQL clause that limits field values in some manner. For example:

```
Value > 0 and Value < 100
```

Do not change the value of *ImportedConstraint*, except to edit nonstandard or server-specific SQL that has been imported as a comment because it cannot be interpreted by the database engine.

To add additional constraints on the field value, use the *CustomConstraint* property. Custom constraints are imposed in addition to the imported constraints. If the server constraints change, the value of *ImportedConstraint* also changed but constraints introduced in the *CustomConstraint* property persist.

Removing constraints from the *ImportedConstraint* property will not change the validity of field values that violate those constraints. Removing constraints results in the constraints being checked by the server instead of locally. When constraints are checked locally, the error message supplied as the *ConstraintErrorMessage* property is displayed when violations are found, instead of displaying an error message from the server.

Using object fields

Object fields are fields that represent a composite of other, simpler datatypes. These include ADT (Abstract Data Type) fields, Array fields, DataSet fields, and Reference fields. All of these field types either contain or reference child fields or other data sets.

ADT fields and array fields are fields that contain child fields. The child fields of an ADT field can be any scalar or object type (that is, any other field type). These child fields may differ in type from each other. An array field contains an array of child fields, all of the same type.

Dataset and reference fields are fields that access other data sets. A dataset field provides access to a nested (detail) dataset and a reference field stores a pointer (reference) to another persistent object (ADT).

Table 23.8 Types of object field components

| Component name | Purpose |
|-----------------|---|
| TADTField | Represents an ADT (Abstract Data Type) field. |
| TArrayField | Represents an array field. |
| TDataSetField | Represents a field that contains a nested data set reference. |
| TReferenceField | Represents a REF field, a pointer to an ADT. |

When you add fields with the Fields editor to a dataset that contains object fields, persistent object fields of the correct type are automatically created for you. Adding persistent object fields to a dataset automatically sets the dataset's *ObjectView* property to **true**, which instructs the dataset to store these fields hierarchically, rather than flattening them out as if the constituent child fields were separate, independent fields.

The following properties are common to all object fields and provide the functionality to handle child fields and datasets.

Table 23.9 Common object field descendant properties

| Property | Purpose |
|-------------|--|
| Fields | Contains the child fields belonging to the object field. |
| ObjectType | Classifies the object field. |
| FieldCount | Number of child fields belonging to the object field. |
| FieldValues | Provides access to the values of the child fields. |

Displaying ADT and array fields

Both ADT and array fields contain child fields that can be displayed through data-aware controls.

Data-aware controls such as *TDBEdit* that represent a single field value display child field values in an uneditable comma delimited string. In addition, if you set the control's *DataField* property to the child field instead of the object field itself, the child field can be viewed and edited just like any other normal data field.

A *TDBGrid* control displays ADT and array field data differently, depending on the value of the dataset's *ObjectView* property. When *ObjectView* is **false**, each child field appears in a single column. When *ObjectView* is **true**, an ADT or array field can be expanded and collapsed by clicking on the arrow in the title bar of the column. When the field is expanded, each child field appears in its own column and title bar, all below the title bar of the ADT or array itself. When the ADT or array is collapsed, only one column appears with an uneditable comma-delimited string containing the child fields.

Working with ADT fields

ADTs are user-defined types created on the server, and are similar to structures. An ADT can contain most scalar field types, array fields, reference fields, and nested ADTs.

There are a variety of ways to access the data in ADT field types. These are illustrated in the following examples, which assign a child field value to an edit box called *CityEdit*, and use the following ADT structure,

```
Address
  Street
  City
  State
  Zip
```

Using persistent field components

The easiest way to access ADT field values is to use persistent field components. For the ADT structure above, the following persistent fields can be added to the *Customer* table using the Fields editor:

```
CustomerAddress: TADTField;
CustomerAddrStreet: TStringField;
CustomerAddrCity: TStringField;
CustomerAddrState: TStringField;
CustomerAddrZip: TStringField;
```

Given these persistent fields, you can simply access the child fields of an ADT field by name:

```
CityEdit->Text = CustomerAddrCity->AsString;
```

Although persistent fields are the easiest way to access ADT child fields, it is not possible to use them if the structure of the dataset is not known at design time. When accessing ADT child fields without using persistent fields, you must set the dataset's *ObjectView* property to **true**.

Using the dataset's FieldByName method

You can access the children of an ADT field using the dataset's *FieldByName* method by qualifying the name of the child field with the ADT field's name:

```
CityEdit->Text = Customer->FieldByName("Address.City")->AsString;
```

Using the dataset's FieldValues property

You can also use qualified field names with a dataset's *FieldValues* property:

```
CityEdit->Text = Customer->FieldValues["Address.City"];
```

Note Unlike other runtime methods for accessing ADT child field values, the *FieldValues* property works even if the dataset's *ObjectView* property is **false**.

Using the ADT field's FieldValues property

You can access the value of a child field with the *TADTField*'s *FieldValues* property. *FieldValues* accepts and returns a *Variant*, so it can handle and convert fields of any type. The index parameter is an integer value that specifies the offset of the field.

```
CityEdit->Text = ((TADTField*)Customer->FieldByName("Address"))->FieldValues[1];
```

Using the ADT field's Fields property

Each ADT field has a *Fields* property that is analogous to the *Fields* property of a dataset. Like the *Fields* property of a dataset, you can use it to access child fields by position:

```
CityEdit->Text = ((TADTField*)Customer->FieldByName("Address"))->Fields->
Fields[1]->AsString;
```

or by name:

```
CityEdit->Text = ((TADTField*)Customer->FieldByName("Address"))->
Fields->FieldByName("City")->AsString;
```

Working with array fields

Array fields consist of a set of fields of the same type. The field types can be scalar (for example, float, string), or non-scalar (an ADT), but an array field of arrays is not permitted. The `SparseArrays` property of `TDataSet` determines whether a unique `TField` object is created for each element of the array field.

There are a variety of ways to access the data in array field types. If you are not using persistent fields, the dataset's `ObjectView` property must be set to **true** before you can access the elements of an array field.

Using persistent fields

You can map persistent fields to the individual array elements in an array field. For example, consider an array field `TelNos_Array`, which is a six element array of strings. The following persistent fields created for the `Customer` table component represent the `TelNos_Array` field and its six elements:

```
CustomerTELNOS_ARRAY: TArrayField;
CustomerTELNOS_ARRAY0: TStringField;
CustomerTELNOS_ARRAY1: TStringField;
CustomerTELNOS_ARRAY2: TStringField;
CustomerTELNOS_ARRAY3: TStringField;
CustomerTELNOS_ARRAY4: TStringField;
CustomerTELNOS_ARRAY5: TStringField;
```

Given these persistent fields, the following code uses a persistent field to assign an array element value to an edit box named `TelEdit`.

```
TelEdit->Text = CustomerTELNOS_ARRAY0->AsString;
```

Using the array field's FieldValues property

You can access the value of a child field with the array field's `FieldValues` property. `FieldValues` accepts and returns a *Variant*, so it can handle and convert child fields of any type. For example,

```
TelEdit->Text = ((TArrayField*)Customer->FieldByName("TelNos_Array"))->FieldValues[1];
```

Using the array field's Fields property

`TArrayField` has a `Fields` property that you can use to access individual sub-fields. This is illustrated below, where an array field (`OrderDates`) is used to populate a list box with all non-null array elements:

```
for (int i = 0; i < OrderDates->Size; ++i)
    if (!OrderDates->Fields->Fields[i]->IsNull)
        OrderDateListBox->Items->Add(OrderDates->Fields->Fields[i]->AsString);
```

Working with dataset fields

Dataset fields provide access to data stored in a nested dataset. The `NestedDataSet` property references the nested dataset. The data in the nested dataset is then accessed through the field objects of the nested dataset.

Displaying dataset fields

TDBGrid controls enable the display of data stored in data set fields. In a *TDBGrid* control, a dataset field is indicated in each cell of a dataset column with the string "(DataSet)", and at runtime an ellipsis button also exists to the right. Clicking on the ellipsis brings up a new form with a grid displaying the dataset associated with the current record's dataset field. This form can also be brought up programmatically with the DB grid's *ShowPopupEditor* method. For example, if the seventh column in the grid represents a dataset field, the following code will display the dataset associated with that field for the current record.

```
DBGrid1->ShowPopupEditor(DBGrid1->Columns->Items[7], -1, -1);
```

Accessing data in a nested dataset

A dataset field is not normally bound directly to a data aware control. Rather, since a nested data set is just that, a data set, the means to get at its data is via a *TDataSet* descendant. The type of dataset you use is determined by the parent dataset (the one with the dataset field.) For example, a BDE-enabled dataset uses *TNestedTable* to represent the data in its dataset fields, while client datasets use other client datasets.

To access the data in a dataset field,

- 1 Create a persistent *TDataSetField* object by invoking the Fields editor for the parent dataset.
- 2 Create a dataset to represent the values in that dataset field. It must be of a type compatible with the parent dataset.
- 3 Set that *DataSetField* property of the dataset created in step 2 to the persistent dataset field you created in step 1.

If the nested dataset field for the current record has a value, the detail dataset component will contain records with the nested data; otherwise, the detail dataset will be empty.

Before inserting records into a nested dataset, you should be sure to post the corresponding record in the master table, if it has just been inserted. If the inserted record is not posted, it will be automatically posted before the nested dataset posts.

Working with reference fields

Reference fields store a pointer or reference to another ADT object. This ADT object is a single record of another object table. Reference fields always refer to a single record in a dataset (object table). The data in the referenced object is actually returned in a nested dataset, but can also be accessed via the *Fields* property on the *TReferenceField*.

Displaying reference fields

In a *TDBGrid* control a reference field is designated in each cell of the dataset column, with (Reference) and, at runtime, an ellipsis button to the right. At runtime, clicking on the ellipsis brings up a new form with a grid displaying the object associated with the current record's reference field.

This form can also be brought up programmatically with the DB grid's *ShowPopupEditor* method. For example, if the seventh column in the grid represents a reference field, the following code will display the object associated with that field for the current record.

```
DBGrid1->ShowPopupEditor(DBGrid1->Columns->Items[7], -1, -1);
```

Accessing data in a reference field

You can access the data in a reference field in the same way you access a nested dataset:

- 1 Create a persistent *TDataSetField* object by invoking the Fields editor for the parent dataset.
- 2 Create a dataset to represent the value of that dataset field.
- 3 Set that *DataSetField* property of the dataset created in step 2 to the persistent dataset field you created in step 1.

If the reference is assigned, the reference dataset will contain a single record with the referenced data. If the reference is null, the reference dataset will be empty.

You can also use the reference field's Fields property to access the data in a reference field. For example, the following line assigns data from the reference field *CustomerRefCity* to an edit box called *CityEdit*:

```
CityEdit->Text = CustomerADDRESS_REF->NestedDataSet->Fields->Fields[1]->AsString;
```

When data in a reference field is edited, it is actually the referenced data that is modified.

To assign a reference field, you need to first use a SELECT statement to select the reference from the table, and then assign. For example:

```
AddressQuery->SQL->Text = "SELECT REF(A) FROM AddressTable A WHERE A.City = 'San Francisco'";
AddressQuery->Open();
CustomerAddressRef->Assign(AddressQuery->Fields->Fields[0]);
```


Using the Borland Database Engine

The Borland Database Engine (BDE) is a data-access mechanism that can be shared by several applications. The BDE defines a powerful library of API calls that can create, restructure, fetch data from, update, and otherwise manipulate local and remote database servers. The BDE provides a uniform interface to access a wide variety of database servers, using drivers to connect to different databases. Depending on your version of C++Builder, you can use the drivers for local databases (Paradox, dBASE, FoxPro, and Access), SQL Links drivers for remote database servers such as InterBase, Oracle, Sybase, Informix, Microsoft SQL server, and DB2, and an ODBC adapter that lets you supply your own ODBC drivers.

When deploying BDE-based applications, you must include the BDE with your application. While this increases the size of the application and the complexity of deployment, the BDE can be shared with other BDE-based applications and provides a broad range of support for database manipulation. Although you can use the BDE's API directly in your application, the components on the BDE page of the Component palette wrap most of this functionality for you.

Note For information on the BDE API, see its online help file, BDE32.hlp, which is installed in the directory where you install the Borland Database Engine.

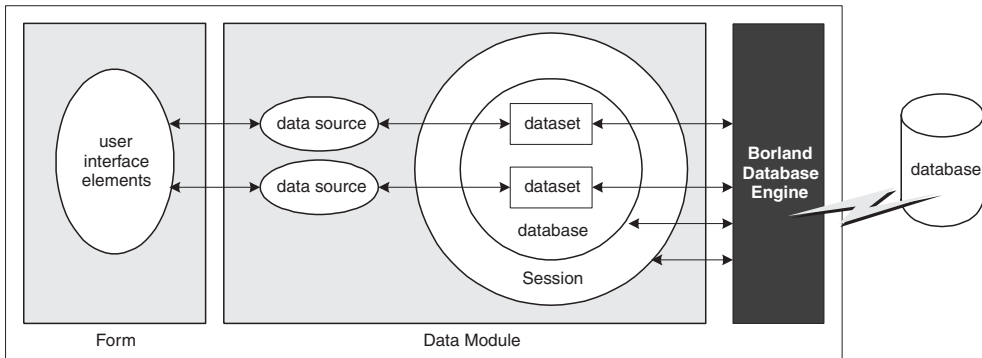
BDE-based architecture

When using the BDE, your application uses a variation of the general database architecture described in "Database architecture" on page 18-5. In addition to the user interface elements, datasource, and datasets common to all C++Builder database applications, A BDE-based application can include

- One or more database components to control transactions and to manage database connections.
- One or more session components to isolate data access operations such as database connections, and to manage groups of databases.

The relationships between the components in a BDE-based application are illustrated in Figure 24.1:

Figure 24.1 Components in a BDE-based application



Using BDE-enabled datasets

BDE-enabled datasets use the Borland Database Engine (BDE) to access data. They inherit the common dataset capabilities described in Chapter 22, “Understanding datasets,” using the BDE to provide the implementation. In addition, all BDE datasets add properties, events, and methods for

- Associating a dataset with database and session connections.
- Caching BLOBs.
- Obtaining a BDE handle.

There are three BDE-enabled datasets:

- *TTable*, a table type dataset that represents all of the rows and columns of a single database table. See “Using table type datasets” on page 22-25 for a description of features common to table type datasets. See “Using TTable” on page 24-4 for a description of features unique to *TTable*.
- *TQuery*, a query-type dataset that encapsulates an SQL statement and enables applications to access the resulting records, if any. See “Using query-type datasets” on page 22-41 for a description of features common to query-type datasets. See “Using TQuery” on page 24-8 for a description of features unique to *TQuery*.
- *TStoredProc*, a stored procedure-type dataset that executes a stored procedure that is defined on a database server. See “Using stored procedure-type datasets” on page 22-48 for a description of features common to stored procedure-type datasets. See “Using TStoredProc” on page 24-11 for a description of features unique to *TStoredProc*.

Note In addition to the three types of BDE-enabled datasets, there is a BDE-based client dataset (*TBDEClientDataSet*) that can be used for caching updates. For information on caching updates, see “Using a client dataset to cache updates” on page 27-15.

Associating a dataset with database and session connections

In order for a BDE-enabled dataset to fetch data from a database server it needs to use both a database and a session.

- Databases represent connections to specific database servers. The database identifies a BDE driver, a particular database server that uses that driver, and a set of connection parameters for connecting to that database server. Each database is represented by a *TDatabase* component. You can either associate your datasets with a *TDatabase* component you add to a form or data module, or you can simply identify the database server by name and let C++Builder generate an implicit database component for you. Using an explicitly-created *TDatabase* component is recommended for most applications, because the database component gives you greater control over how the connection is established, including the login process, and lets you create and use transactions.

To associate a BDE-enabled dataset with a database, use the *DatabaseName* property. *DatabaseName* is a string that contains different information, depending on whether you are using an explicit database component and, if not, the type of database you are using:

- If you are using an explicit *TDatabase* component, *DatabaseName* is the value of the *DatabaseName* property of the database component.
- If you want to use an implicit database component and the database has a BDE alias, you can specify a BDE alias as the value of *DatabaseName*. A BDE alias represents a database plus configuration information for that database. The configuration information associated with an alias differs by database type (Oracle, Sybase, InterBase, Paradox, dBASE, and so on). Use the BDE Administration tool or the SQL explorer to create and manage BDE aliases.
- If you want to use an implicit database component for a Paradox or dBASE database, you can also use *DatabaseName* to simply specify the directory where the database tables are located.
- A session provides global management for a group of database connections in an application. When you add BDE-enabled datasets to your application, your application automatically contains a session component, named *Session*. As you add database and dataset components to the application, they are automatically associated with this default session. It also controls access to password protected Paradox files, and it specifies directory locations for sharing Paradox files over a network. You can control database connections and access to Paradox files using the properties, events, and methods of the session.

You can use the default session to control all database connections in your application. Alternatively, you can add additional session components at design time or create them dynamically at runtime to control a subset of database connections in an application. To associate your dataset with an explicitly created session component, use the *SessionName* property. If you do not use explicit session components in your application, you do not have to provide a value for this property. Whether you use the default session or explicitly specify a session using the *SessionName* property, you can access the session associated with a dataset by reading the *DBSession* property.

Note If you use a session component, the *SessionName* property of a dataset must match the *SessionName* property for the database component with which the dataset is associated.

For more information about *TDatabase* and *TSession*, see “Connecting to databases with TDatabase” on page 24-12 and “Managing database sessions” on page 24-16.

Caching BLOBs

BDE-enabled datasets all have a *CacheBlobs* property that controls whether BLOB fields are cached locally by the BDE when an application reads BLOB records. By default, *CacheBlobs* is **true**, meaning that the BDE caches a local copy of BLOB fields. Caching BLOBs improves application performance by enabling the BDE to store local copies of BLOBs instead of fetching them repeatedly from the database server as a user scrolls through records.

In applications and environments where BLOBs are frequently updated or replaced, and a fresh view of BLOB data is more important than application performance, you can set *CacheBlobs* to **false** to ensure that your application always sees the latest version of a BLOB field.

Obtaining a BDE handle

You can use BDE-enabled datasets without ever needing to make direct API calls to the Borland Database Engine. The BDE-enabled datasets, in combination with database and session components, encapsulate much of the BDE functionality. However, if you need to make direct API calls to the BDE, you may need BDE handles for resources managed by the BDE. Many BDE APIs require these handles as parameters.

All BDE-enabled datasets include three read-only properties for accessing BDE handles at runtime:

- *Handle* is a handle to the BDE cursor that accesses the records in the dataset.
- *DBHandle* is a handle to the database that contains the underlying tables or stored procedure.
- *DBLocale* is a handle to the BDE language driver for the dataset. The locale controls the sort order and character set used for string data.

These properties are automatically assigned to a dataset when it is connected to a database server through the BDE. For more information about the BDE API, see the online help file, BDE32.HLP.

Using TTable

TTable encapsulates the full structure of and data in an underlying database table. It implements all of the basic functionality introduced by *TDataSet*, as well as all of the special features typical of table type datasets. Before looking at the unique features introduced by *TTable*, you should familiarize yourself with the common database features described in “Understanding datasets,” including the section on table type datasets that starts on page 22-25.

Because *TTable* is a BDE-enabled dataset, it must be associated with a database and a session. “Associating a dataset with database and session connections” on page 24-3 describes how you form these associations. Once the dataset is associated with a database and session, you can bind it to a particular database table by setting the *TableName* property and, if you are using a Paradox, dBASE, FoxPro, or comma-delimited ASCII text table, the *TableType* property.

Note The table must be closed when you change its association to a database, session, or database table, or when you set the *TableType* property. However, before you close the table to change these properties, first post or discard any pending changes. If cached updates are enabled, call the *ApplyUpdates* method to write the posted changes to the database.

TTable components are unique in the support they offer for local database tables (Paradox, dBASE, FoxPro, and comma-delimited ASCII text tables). The following topics describe the special properties and methods that implement this support.

In addition, *TTable* components can take advantage of the BDE’s support for batch operations (table level operations to append, update, delete, or copy entire groups of records). This support is described in “Importing data from another table” on page 24-7.

Specifying the table type for local tables

If an application accesses Paradox, dBASE, FoxPro, or comma-delimited ASCII text tables, then the BDE uses the *TableType* property to determine the table’s type (its expected structure). *TableType* is not used when *TTable* represents an SQL-based table on a database server.

By default *TableType* is set to *ttDefault*. When *TableType* is *ttDefault*, the BDE determines a table’s type from its filename extension. Table 24.1 summarizes the file extensions recognized by the BDE and the assumptions it makes about a table’s type:

Table 24.1 Table types recognized by the BDE based on file extension

| Extension | Table type |
|-------------------|------------|
| No file extension | Paradox |
| .DB | Paradox |
| .DBF | dBASE |
| .TXT | ASCII text |

If your local Paradox, dBASE, and ASCII text tables use the file extensions as described in Table 24.1, then you can leave *TableType* set to *ttDefault*. Otherwise, your application must set *TableType* to indicate the correct table type. Table 24.2 indicates the values you can assign to *TableType*:

Table 24.2 *TableType* values

| Value | Table type |
|-----------|--|
| ttDefault | Table type determined automatically by the BDE |
| ttParadox | Paradox |

Table 24.2 TableType values (continued)

| Value | Table type |
|----------|----------------------------|
| ttDBase | dBASE |
| ttFoxPro | FoxPro |
| ttASCII | Comma-delimited ASCII text |

Controlling read/write access to local tables

Like any table type dataset, *TTable* lets you control read and write access by your application using the *ReadOnly* property.

In addition, for Paradox, dBASE, and FoxPro tables, *TTable* can let you control read and write access to tables by other applications. The *Exclusive* property controls whether your application gains sole read/write access to a Paradox, dBASE, or FoxPro table. To gain sole read/write access for these table types, set the table component's *Exclusive* property to **true** before opening the table. If you succeed in opening a table for exclusive access, other applications cannot read data from or write data to the table. Your request for exclusive access is not honored if the table is already in use when you attempt to open it.

The following statements open a table for exclusive access:

```
CustomersTable->Exclusive = true; // Set request for exclusive lock
CustomersTable->Active = true; // Now open the table
```

Note You can attempt to set *Exclusive* on SQL tables, but some servers do not support exclusive table-level locking. Others may grant an exclusive lock, but permit other applications to read data from the table. For more information about exclusive locking of database tables on your server, see your server documentation.

Specifying a dBASE index file

For most servers, you use the methods common to all table type datasets to specify an index. These methods are described in "Sorting records with indexes" on page 22-26.

For dBASE tables that use non-production index files or dBASE III PLUS-style indexes (*.NDX), however, you must use the *IndexFiles* and *IndexName* properties instead. Set the *IndexFiles* property to the name of the non-production index file or list the .NDX files. Then, specify one index in the *IndexName* property to have it actively sorting the dataset.

At design time, click the ellipsis button in the *IndexFiles* property value in the Object Inspector to invoke the Index Files editor. To add one non-production index file or .NDX file: click the Add button in the Index Files dialog and select the file from the Open dialog. Repeat this process once for each non-production index file or .NDX file. Click the OK button in the Index Files dialog after adding all desired indexes.

This same operation can be performed programmatically at runtime. To do this, access the *IndexFiles* property using properties and methods of string lists. When adding a new set of indexes, first call the *Clear* method of the table's *IndexFiles*

property to remove any existing entries. Call the *Add* method to add each non-production index file or .NDX file:

```
Table2->IndexFiles->Clear();
Table2->IndexFiles->Add("Bystate.ndx");
Table2->IndexFiles->Add("Byzip.ndx");
Table2->IndexFiles->Add("Fullname.ndx");
Table2->IndexFiles->Add("St_name.ndx");
```

After adding any desired non-production or .NDX index files, the names of individual indexes in the index file are available, and can be assigned to the *IndexName* property. The index tags are also listed when using the *GetIndexNames* method and when inspecting index definitions through the *TIndexDef* objects in the *IndexDefs* property. Properly listed .NDX files are automatically updated as data is added, changed, or deleted in the table (regardless of whether a given index is used in the *IndexName* property).

In the example below, the *IndexFiles* for the *AnimalsTable* table component is set to the non-production index file ANIMALS.MDX, and then its *IndexName* property is set to the index tag called "NAME":

```
AnimalsTable->IndexFiles->Add("ANIMALS.MDX");
AnimalsTable->IndexName = "NAME";
```

Once you have specified the index file, using non-production or .NDX indexes works the same as any other index. Specifying an index name sorts the data in the table and makes it available for indexed-based searches, ranges, and (for non-production indexes) master-detail linking. See "Using table type datasets" on page 22-25 for details on these uses of indexes.

There are two special considerations when using dBASE III PLUS-style .NDX indexes with *TTable* components. The first is that .NDX files cannot be used as the basis for master-detail links. The second is that when activating a .NDX index with the *IndexName* property, you must include the .NDX extension in the property value as part of the index name:

```
Table1->IndexName = "ByState.NDX";
TVarRec vr = ("NE");
Table1->FindKey(&vr, 0);
```

Renaming local tables

To rename a Paradox or dBASE table at design time, right-click the table component and select Rename Table from the context menu.

To rename a Paradox or dBASE table at runtime, call the table's *RenameTable* method. For example, the following statement renames the Customer table to CustInfo:

```
Customer->RenameTable("CustInfo");
```

Importing data from another table

You can use a table component's *BatchMove* method to import data from another table. *BatchMove* can

- Copy records from another table into this table.

- Update records in this table that occur in another table.
- Append records from another table to the end of this table.
- Delete records in this table that occur in another table.

BatchMove takes two parameters: the name of the table from which to import data, and a mode specification that determines which import operation to perform. Table 24.3 describes the possible settings for the mode specification:

Table 24.3 BatchMove import modes

| Value | Meaning |
|-----------------|--|
| batAppend | Append all records from the source table to the end of this table. |
| batAppendUpdate | Append all records from the source table to the end of this table and update existing records in this table with matching records from the source table. |
| batCopy | Copy all records from the source table into this table. |
| batDelete | Delete all records in this table that also appear in the source table. |
| batUpdate | Update existing records in this table with matching records from the source table. |

For example, the following code updates all records in the current table with records from the *Customer* table that have the same values for fields in the current index:

```
Table1->BatchMove("CUSTOMER.DB", batUpdate);
```

BatchMove returns the number of records it imports successfully.

Caution Importing records using the *batCopy* mode overwrites existing records. To preserve existing records use *batAppend* instead.

BatchMove performs only some of the batch operations supported by the BDE. Additional functions are available using the *TBatchMove* component. If you need to move a large amount of data between or among tables, use *TBatchMove* instead of calling a table's *BatchMove* method. For information about using *TBatchMove*, see "Using TBatchMove" on page 24-47.

Using TQuery

TQuery represents a single Data Definition Language (DDL) or Data Manipulation Language (DML) statement (For example, a SELECT, INSERT, DELETE, UPDATE, CREATE INDEX, or ALTER TABLE command). The language used in commands is server-specific, but usually compliant with the SQL-92 standard for the SQL language. *TQuery* implements all of the basic functionality introduced by *TDataSet*, as well as all of the special features typical of query-type datasets. Before looking at the unique features introduced by *TQuery*, you should familiarize yourself with the common database features described in "Understanding datasets," including the section on query-type datasets that starts on page 22-41.

Because *TQuery* is a BDE-enabled dataset, it must usually be associated with a database and a session. (The one exception is when you use the *TQuery* for a heterogeneous query.) "Associating a dataset with database and session

connections” on page 24-3 describes how you form these associations. You specify the SQL statement for the query by setting the *SQL* property.

A *TQuery* component can access data in:

- Paradox or dBASE tables, using Local SQL, which is part of the BDE. Local SQL is a subset of the SQL-92 specification. Most DML is supported and enough DDL syntax to work with these types of tables. See the local SQL help, *LOCALSQL.HLP*, for details on supported SQL syntax.
- Local InterBase Server databases, using the InterBase engine. For information on InterBase’s SQL-92 standard SQL syntax support and extended syntax support, see the InterBase *Language Reference*.
- Databases on remote database servers such as Oracle, Sybase, MS-SQL Server, Informix, DB2, and InterBase. You must install the appropriate SQL Link driver and client software (vendor-supplied) specific to the database server to access a remote server. Any standard SQL syntax supported by these servers is allowed. For information on SQL syntax, limitations, and extensions, see the documentation for your particular server.

Creating heterogeneous queries

TQuery supports heterogeneous queries against more than one server or table type (for example, data from an Oracle table and a Paradox table). When you execute a heterogeneous query, the BDE parses and processes the query using Local SQL. Because BDE uses Local SQL, extended, server-specific SQL syntax is not supported.

To perform a heterogeneous query, follow these steps:

- 1 Define separate BDE aliases for each database accessed in the query using the BDE BDE Administration tool or the SQL explorer.
- 2 Leave the *DatabaseName* property of the *TQuery* blank; the names of the databases used will be specified in the SQL statement.
- 3 In the SQL property, specify the SQL statement to execute. Precede each table name in the statement with the BDE alias for the table’s database, enclosed in colons. This whole reference is then enclosed in quotation marks.
- 4 Set any parameters for the query in the *Params* property.
- 5 Call *Prepare* to prepare the query for execution prior to executing it for the first time.
- 6 Call *Open* or *ExecSQL* depending on the type of query you are executing.

For example, suppose you define an alias called *Oracle1* for an Oracle database that has a CUSTOMER table, and *Sybase1* for a Sybase database that has an ORDERS table. A simple query against these two tables would be:

```
SELECT Customer.CustNo, Orders.OrderNo
FROM " :Oracle1:CUSTOMER"
JOIN " :Sybase1:ORDERS"
ON (Customer.CustNo = Orders.CustNo)
WHERE (Customer.CustNo = 1503)
```

As an alternative to using a BDE alias to specify the database in a heterogeneous query, you can use a *TDatabase* component. Configure the *TDatabase* as normal to point to the database, set the *TDatabase::DatabaseName* to an arbitrary but unique value, and then use that value in the SQL statement instead of a BDE alias name.

Obtaining an editable result set

To request a result set that users can edit in data-aware controls, set a query component's *RequestLive* property to **true**. Setting *RequestLive* to **true** does not guarantee a live result set, but the BDE attempts to honor the request whenever possible. There are some restrictions on live result set requests, depending on whether the query uses the local SQL parser or a server's SQL parser.

- Queries where table names are preceded by a BDE database alias (as in heterogeneous queries) and queries executed against Paradox or dBASE are parsed by the BDE using Local SQL. When queries use the local SQL parser, the BDE offers expanded support for updatable, live result sets in both single table and multi-table queries. When using Local SQL, a live result set for a query against a single table or view is returned if the query does not contain any of the following:
 - DISTINCT in the SELECT clause
 - Joins (inner, outer, or UNION)
 - Aggregate functions with or without GROUP BY or HAVING clauses
 - Base tables or views that are not updatable
 - Subqueries
 - ORDER BY clauses not based on an index
- Queries against a remote database server are parsed by the server. If the *RequestLive* property is set to **true**, the SQL statement must abide by Local SQL standards in addition to any server-imposed restrictions because the BDE needs to use it for conveying data changes to the table. A live result set for a query against a single table or view is returned if the query does not contain any of the following:
 - A DISTINCT clause in the SELECT statement
 - Aggregate functions, with or without GROUP BY or HAVING clauses
 - References to more than one base table or updatable views (joins)
 - Subqueries that reference the table in the FROM clause or other tables

If an application requests and receives a live result set, the *CanModify* property of the query component is set to **true**. Even if the query returns a live result set, you may not be able to update the result set directly if it contains linked fields or you switch indexes before attempting an update. If these conditions exist, you should treat the result set as a read-only result set, and update it accordingly.

If an application requests a live result set, but the SELECT statement syntax does not allow it, the BDE returns either

- A read-only result set for queries made against Paradox or dBASE.
- An error code for SQL queries made against a remote server.

Updating read-only result sets

Applications can update data returned in a read-only result set if they are using cached updates.

If you are using a client dataset to cache updates, the client dataset or its associated provider can automatically generate the SQL for applying updates unless the query represents multiple tables. If the query represents multiple tables, you must indicate how to apply the updates:

- If all updates are applied to a single database table, you can indicate the underlying table to update in an *OnGetTableName* event handler.
- If you need more control over applying updates, you can associate the query with an update object (*TUpdateSQL*). A provider automatically uses this update object to apply updates:
 - 1 Associate the update object with the query by setting the query's *UpdateObject* property to the *TUpdateSQL* object you are using.
 - 2 Set the update object's *ModifySQL*, *InsertSQL*, and *DeleteSQL* properties to SQL statements that perform the appropriate updates for your query's data.

If you are using the BDE to cache updates, you must use an update object.

Note For more information on using update objects, see "Using update objects to update a dataset" on page 24-39.

Using TStoredProc

TStoredProc represents a stored procedure. It implements all of the basic functionality introduced by *TDataSet*, as well as most of the special features typical of stored procedure-type datasets. Before looking at the unique features introduced by *TStoredProc*, you should familiarize yourself with the common database features described in "Understanding datasets," including the section on stored procedure-type datasets that starts on page 22-48.

Because *TStoredProc* is a BDE-enabled dataset, it must be associated with a database and a session. "Associating a dataset with database and session connections" on page 24-3 describes how you form these associations. Once the dataset is associated with a database and session, you can bind it to a particular stored procedure by setting the *StoredProcName* property.

TStoredProc differs from other stored procedure-type datasets in the following ways:

- It gives you greater control over how to bind parameters.
- It provides support for Oracle overloaded stored procedures.

Binding parameters

When you prepare and execute a stored procedure, its input parameters are automatically bound to parameters on the server.

TStoredProc lets you use the *ParamBindMode* property to specify how parameters should be bound to the parameters on the server. By default *ParamBindMode* is set to

pbByName, meaning that parameters from the stored procedure component are matched to those on the server by name. This is the easiest method of binding parameters.

Some servers also support binding parameters by ordinal value, the order in which the parameters appear in the stored procedure. In this case the order in which you specify parameters in the parameter collection editor is significant. The first parameter you specify is matched to the first input parameter on the server, the second parameter is matched to the second input parameter on the server, and so on. If your server supports parameter binding by ordinal value, you can set *ParamBindMode* to *pbByNumber*.

Tip If you want to set *ParamBindMode* to *pbByNumber*, you need to specify the correct parameter types in the correct order. You can view a server's stored procedure source code in the SQL Explorer to determine the correct order and type of parameters to specify.

Working with Oracle overloaded stored procedures

Oracle servers allow overloading of stored procedures; overloaded procedures are different procedures with the same name. The stored procedure component's *Overload* property enables an application to specify the procedure to execute.

If *Overload* is zero (the default), there is assumed to be no overloading. If *Overload* is one (1), then the stored procedure component executes the first stored procedure it finds on the Oracle server that has the overloaded name; if it is two (2), it executes the second, and so on.

Note Overloaded stored procedures may take different input and output parameters. See your Oracle server documentation for more information.

Connecting to databases with TDatabase

When a C++Builder application uses the Borland Database Engine (BDE) to connect to a database, that connection is encapsulated by a *TDatabase* component. A database component represents the connection to a single database in the context of a BDE session.

TDatabase performs many of the same tasks as and shares many common properties, methods, and events with other database connection components. These commonalities are described in Chapter 21, "Connecting to databases."

In addition to the common properties, methods, and events, *TDatabase* introduces many BDE-specific features. These features are described in the following topics.

Associating a database component with a session

All database components must be associated with a BDE session. Use the *SessionName*, establish this association. When you first create a database component at design time, *SessionName* is set to "Default", meaning that it is associated with the default session component that is referenced by the global *Session* variable.

Multi-threaded or reentrant BDE applications may require more than one session. If you need to use multiple sessions, add *TSession* components for each session. Then, associate your dataset with a session component by setting the *SessionName* property to a session component's *SessionName* property.

At runtime, you can access the session component with which the database is associated by reading the *Session* property. If *SessionName* is blank or "Default", then the *Session* property references the same *TSession* instance referenced by the global *Session* variable. *Session* enables applications to access the properties, methods, and events of a database component's parent session component without knowing the session's actual name.

For more information about BDE sessions, see "Managing database sessions" on page 24-16.

If you are using an implicit database component, the session for that database component is the one specified by the dataset's *SessionName* property.

Understanding database and session component interactions

In general, session component properties provide global, default behaviors that apply to all implicit database components created at runtime. For example, the controlling session's *KeepConnections* property determines whether a database connection is maintained even if its associated datasets are closed (the default), or if the connections are dropped when all its datasets are closed. Similarly, the default *OnPassword* event for a session guarantees that when an application attempts to attach to a database on a server that requires a password, it displays a standard password prompt dialog box.

Session methods apply somewhat differently. *TSession* methods affect all database components, regardless of whether they are explicitly created or instantiated implicitly by a dataset. For example, the session method *DropConnections* closes all datasets belonging to a session's database components, and then drops all database connections, even if the *KeepConnection* property for individual database components is **true**.

Database component methods apply only to the datasets associated with a given database component. For example, suppose the database component *Database1* is associated with the default session. *Database1->CloseDataSets()* closes only those datasets associated with *Database1*. Open datasets belonging to other database components within the default session remain open.

Identifying the database

AliasName and *DriverName* are mutually exclusive properties that identify the database server to which the *TDatabase* component connects.

- *AliasName* specifies the name of an existing BDE alias to use for the database component. The alias appears in subsequent drop-down lists for dataset components so that you can link them to a particular database component. If you specify *AliasName* for a database component, any value already assigned to *DriverName* is cleared because a driver name is always part of a BDE alias.

You create and edit BDE aliases using the Database Explorer or the BDE Administration utility. For more information about creating and maintaining BDE aliases, see the online documentation for these utilities.

- *DriverName* is the name of a BDE driver. A driver name is one parameter in a BDE alias, but you may specify a driver name instead of an alias when you create a local BDE alias for a database component using the *DatabaseName* property. If you specify *DriverName*, any value already assigned to *AliasName* is cleared to avoid potential conflicts between the driver name you specify and the driver name that is part of the BDE alias identified in *AliasName*.

DatabaseName lets you provide your own name for a database connection. The name you supply is in addition to *AliasName* or *DriverName*, and is local to your application. *DatabaseName* can be a BDE alias, or, for Paradox and dBASE files, a fully-qualified path name. Like *AliasName*, *DatabaseName* appears in subsequent drop-down lists for dataset components to let you link them to database components.

At design time, to specify a BDE alias, assign a BDE driver, or create a local BDE alias, double-click a database component to invoke the Database Properties editor.

You can enter a *DatabaseName* in the Name edit box in the properties editor. You can enter an existing BDE alias name in the Alias name combo box for the *Alias* property, or you can choose from existing aliases in the drop-down list. The Driver name combo box enables you to enter the name of an existing BDE driver for the *DriverName* property, or you can choose from existing driver names in the drop-down list.

Note The Database Properties editor also lets you view and set BDE connection parameters, and set the states of the *LoginPrompt* and *KeepConnection* properties. For information on connection parameters, see “Setting BDE alias parameters” below. For information on *LoginPrompt*, see “Controlling server login” on page 21-4. For information on *KeepConnection* see “Opening a connection using TDatabase” on page 24-15.

Setting BDE alias parameters

At design time you can create or edit connection parameters in three ways:

- Use the Database Explorer or BDE Administration utility to create or modify BDE aliases, including parameters. For more information about these utilities, see their online Help files.
- Double-click the *Params* property in the Object Inspector to invoke the String List editor.
- Double-click a database component in a data module or form to invoke the Database Properties editor.

All of these methods edit the *Params* property for the database component. *Params* is a string list containing the database connection parameters for the BDE alias associated with a database component. Some typical connection parameters include path statement, server name, schema caching size, language driver, and SQL query mode.

When you first invoke the Database Properties editor, the parameters for the BDE alias are not visible. To see the current settings, click Defaults. The current parameters are displayed in the Parameter overrides memo box. You can edit existing entries or add new ones. To clear existing parameters, click Clear. Changes you make take effect only when you click OK.

At runtime, an application can set alias parameters only by editing the *Params* property directly. For more information about parameters specific to using SQL Links drivers with the BDE, see your online SQL Links help file.

Opening a connection using TDatabase

As with all database connection components, to connect to a database using *TDatabase*, you set the *Connected* property to **true** or call the *Open* method. This process is described in “Connecting to a database server” on page 21-3. Once a database connection is established the connection is maintained as long as there is at least one active dataset. When there are no more active datasets, the connection is dropped unless the database component’s *KeepConnection* property is **true**.

When you connect to a remote database server from an application, the application uses the BDE and the Borland SQL Links driver to establish the connection. (The BDE can also communicate with an ODBC driver that you supply.) You need to configure the SQL Links or ODBC driver for your application prior to making the connection. SQL Links and ODBC parameters are stored in the *Params* property of a database component. For information about SQL Links parameters, see the online *SQL Links User’s Guide*. To edit the *Params* property, see “Setting BDE alias parameters” on page 24-14.

Working with network protocols

As part of configuring the appropriate SQL Links or ODBC driver, you may need to specify the network protocol used by the server, such as SPX/IPX or TCP/IP, depending on the driver’s configuration options. In most cases, network protocol configuration is handled using a server’s client setup software. For ODBC it may also be necessary to check the driver setup using the ODBC driver manager.

Establishing an initial connection between client and server can be problematic. The following troubleshooting checklist should be helpful if you encounter difficulties:

- Is your server’s client-side connection properly configured?
- Are the DLLs for your connection and database drivers in the search path?
- If you are using TCP/IP:
 - Is your TCP/IP communications software installed? Is the proper WINSOCK.DLL installed?
 - Is the server’s IP address registered in the client’s HOSTS file?
 - Is the Domain Name Services (DNS) properly configured?
 - Can you ping the server?

For more troubleshooting information, see the online *SQL Links User’s Guide* and your server documentation.

Using ODBC

An application can use ODBC data sources (for example, Btrieve). An ODBC driver connection requires

- A vendor-supplied ODBC driver.
- The Microsoft ODBC Driver Manager.
- The BDE Administration utility.

To set up a BDE alias for an ODBC driver connection, use the BDE Administration utility. For more information, see the BDE Administration utility's online help file.

Using database components in data modules

You can safely place database components in data modules. If you put a data module that contains a database component into the Object Repository, however, and you want other users to be able to inherit from it, you must set the *HandleShared* property of the database component to **true** to prevent global name space conflicts.

Managing database sessions

An BDE-based application's database connections, drivers, cursors, queries, and so on are maintained within the context of one or more BDE sessions. Sessions isolate a set of database access operations, such as database connections, without the need to start another instance of the application.

All BDE-based database applications automatically include a default session component, named *Session*, that encapsulates the default BDE session. When database components are added to the application, they are automatically associated with the default session (note that its *SessionName* is "Default"). The default session provides global control over all database components not associated with another session, whether they are implicit (created by the session at runtime when you open a dataset that is not associated with a database component you create) or persistent (explicitly created by your application). The default session is not visible in your data module or form at design time, but you can access its properties and methods in your code at runtime.

To use the default session, you need write no code unless your application must

- Explicitly activate or deactivate a session, enabling or disabling the session's databases' ability to open.
- Modify the properties of the session, such as specifying default properties for implicitly generated database components.
- Execute a session's methods, such as managing database connections (for example opening and closing database connections in response to user actions).
- Respond to session events, such as when the application attempts to access a password-protected Paradox or dBASE table.

- Set Paradox directory locations such as the *NetFileDir* property to access Paradox tables on a network and the *PrivateDir* property to a local hard drive to speed performance.
- Manage the BDE aliases that describe possible database connection configurations for databases and datasets that use the session.

Whether you add database components to an application at design time or create them dynamically at runtime, they are automatically associated with the default session unless you specifically assign them to a different session. If you open a dataset that is not associated with a database component, C++Builder automatically

- Creates a database component for it at runtime.
- Associates the database component with the default session.
- Initializes some of the database component's key properties based on the default session's properties. Among the most important of these properties is *KeepConnections*, which determines when database connections are maintained or dropped by an application.

The default session provides a widely applicable set of defaults that can be used as is by most applications. You need only associate a database component with an explicitly named session if the component performs a simultaneous query against a database already opened by the default session. In this case, each concurrent query must run under its own session. Multi-threaded database applications also require multiple sessions, where each thread has its own session.

Applications can create additional session components as needed. BDE-based database applications automatically include a session list component, named *Sessions*, that you can use to manage all of your session components. For more information about managing multiple sessions see, "Managing multiple sessions" on page 24-28.

You can safely place session components in data modules. If you put a data module that contains one or more session components into the Object Repository, however, make sure to set the *AutoSessionName* property to **true** to avoid namespace conflicts when users inherit from it.

Activating a session

Active is a Boolean property that determines if database and dataset components associated with a session are open. You can use this property to read the current state of a session's database and dataset connections, or to change it. If *Active* is **false** (the default), all databases and datasets associated with the session are closed. If **true**, databases and datasets are open.

A session is activated when it is first created, and subsequently, whenever its *Active* property is changed to **true** from **false** (for example, when a database or dataset is associated with a session is opened and there are currently no other open databases or datasets). Setting *Active* to **true** triggers a session's *OnStartup* event, registers the paradox directory locations with the BDE, and registers the *ConfigMode* property, which determines what BDE aliases are available within the session. You can write an *OnStartup* event handler to initialize the *NetFileDir*, *PrivateDir*, and *ConfigMode*

properties before they are registered with the BDE, or to perform other specific session start-up activities. For information about the *NetFileDir* and *PrivateDir* properties, see “Specifying Paradox directory locations” on page 24-23. For information about *ConfigMode*, see “Working with BDE aliases” on page 24-24.

Once a session is active, you can open its database connections by calling the *OpenDatabase* method.

For session components you place in a data module or form, setting *Active* to **false** when there are open databases or datasets closes them. At runtime, closing databases and datasets may trigger events associated with them.

Note You cannot set *Active* to **false** for the default session at design time. While you can close the default session at runtime, it is not recommended.

You can also use a session’s *Open* and *Close* methods to activate or deactivate sessions other than the default session at runtime. For example, the following single line of code closes all open databases and datasets for a session:

```
Session1->Close();
```

This code sets *Session1*’s *Active* property to **false**. When a session’s *Active* property is **false**, any subsequent attempt by the application to open a database or dataset resets *Active* to **true** and calls the session’s *OnStartup* event handler if it exists. You can also explicitly code session reactivation at runtime. The following code reactivates *Session1*:

```
Session1->Open();
```

Note If a session is active you can also open and close individual database connections. For more information, see “Closing database connections” on page 24-19.

Specifying default database connection behavior

KeepConnections provides the default value for the *KeepConnection* property of implicit database components created at runtime. *KeepConnection* specifies what happens to a database connection established for a database component when all its datasets are closed. If **true** (the default), a constant, or *persistent*, database connection is maintained even if no dataset is active. If **false**, a database connection is dropped as soon as all its datasets are closed.

Note Connection persistence for a database component you explicitly place in a data module or form is controlled by that database component’s *KeepConnection* property. If set differently, *KeepConnection* for a database component always overrides the *KeepConnections* property of the session. For more information about controlling individual database connections within a session, see “Managing database connections” on page 24-19.

KeepConnections should be set to **true** for applications that frequently open and close all datasets associated with a database on a remote server. This setting reduces network traffic and speeds data access because it means that a connection need only be opened and closed once during the lifetime of the session. Otherwise, every time the application closes or reestablishes a connection, it incurs the overhead of attaching and detaching the database.

Note Even when *KeepConnections* is **true** for a session, you can close and free inactive database connections for all implicit database components by calling the *DropConnections* method. For more information about *DropConnections*, see “Dropping inactive database connections” on page 24-20.

Managing database connections

You can use a session component to manage the database connections within it. The session component includes properties and methods you can use to

- Open database connections.
- Close database connections.
- Close and free all inactive temporary database connections.
- Locate specific database connections.
- Iterate through all open database connections.

Opening database connections

To open a database connection within a session, call the *OpenDatabase* method. *OpenDatabase* takes one parameter, the name of the database to open. This name is a BDE alias or the name of a database component. For Paradox or dBASE, the name can also be a fully qualified path name. For example, the following statement uses the default session and attempts to open a database connection for the database pointed to by the BCDEMOS alias:

```
TDatabase *BCDemosDatabase = Session->OpenDatabase("BCDEMOS");
```

OpenDatabase activates the session if it is not already active, and then checks if the specified database name matches the *DatabaseName* property of any database components for the session. If the name does not match an existing database component, *OpenDatabase* creates a temporary database component using the specified name. Finally, *OpenDatabase* calls the *Open* method of the database component to connect to the server. Each call to *OpenDatabase* increments a reference count for the database by 1. As long as this reference count remains greater than 0, the database is open.

Closing database connections

To close an individual database connection, call the *CloseDatabase* method. When you call *CloseDatabase*, the reference count for the database, which is incremented when you call *OpenDatabase*, is decremented by 1. When the reference count for a database is 0, the database is closed. *CloseDatabase* takes one parameter, the database to close. If you opened the database using the *OpenDatabase* method, this parameter can be set to the return value of *OpenDatabase*.

```
Session->CloseDatabase(BCDemosDatabase);
```

If the specified database name is associated with a temporary (implicit) database component, and the session’s *KeepConnections* property is **false**, the database component is freed, effectively closing the connection.

Note If *KeepConnections* is **false** temporary database components are closed and freed automatically when the last dataset associated with the database component is closed. An application can always call *CloseDatabase* prior to that time to force

closure. To free temporary database components when *KeepConnections* is **true**, call the database component's *Close* method, and then call the session's *DropConnections* method.

Note Calling *CloseDatabase* for a persistent database component does not actually close the connection. To close the connection, call the database component's *Close* method directly.

There are two ways to close all database connections within the session:

- Set the *Active* property for the session to **false**.
- Call the *Close* method for the session.

When you set *Active* to **false**, C++Builder automatically calls the *Close* method. *Close* disconnects from all active databases by freeing temporary database components and calling each persistent database component's *Close* method. Finally, *Close* sets the session's BDE handle to **NULL**.

Dropping inactive database connections

If the *KeepConnections* property for a session is **true** (the default), then database connections for temporary database components are maintained even if all the datasets used by the component are closed. You can eliminate these connections and free all inactive temporary database components for a session by calling the *DropConnections* method. For example, the following code frees all inactive, temporary database components for the default session:

```
Session->DropConnections();
```

Temporary database components for which one or more datasets are active are not dropped or freed by this call. To free these components, call *Close*.

Searching for a database connection

Use a session's *FindDatabase* method to determine whether a specified database component is already associated with a session. *FindDatabase* takes one parameter, the name of the database to search for. This name is a BDE alias or database component name. For Paradox or dBASE, it can also be a fully-qualified path name.

FindDatabase returns the database component if it finds a match. Otherwise it returns **NULL**.

The following code searches the default session for a database component using the BCDEMOS alias, and if it is not found, creates one and opens it:

```
TDatabase *DB = Session->FindDatabase("BCDEMOS");
if ( !DB ) // Database does not exist for session so
    DB = Session->OpenDatabase("BCDEMOS"); // create and open it
if (DB && DB->Connected)
{
    if (!DB->InTransaction)
    {
        DB->StartTransaction();
        :
    }
}
```

Iterating through a session's database components

You can use two session component properties, *Databases* and *DatabaseCount*, to cycle through all the active database components associated with a session.

Databases is an array of all currently active database components associated with a session. *DatabaseCount* is the number of databases in that array. As connections are opened or closed during a session's life-span, the values of *Databases* and *DatabaseCount* change. For example, if a session's *KeepConnections* property is **false** and all database components are created as needed at runtime, each time a unique database is opened, *DatabaseCount* increases by one. Each time a unique database is closed, *DatabaseCount* decreases by one. If *DatabaseCount* is zero, there are no currently active database components for the session.

The following example code sets the *KeepConnection* property of each active database in the default session to **true**:

```
if (Session->DatabaseCount > 0)
    for (int MaxDbCount = 0; MaxDbCount < Session->DatabaseCount; MaxDbCount++)
        Session->Databases[MaxDbCount]->KeepConnection = true;
```

Working with password-protected Paradox and dBASE tables

A session component can store passwords for password-protected Paradox and dBASE tables. Once you add a password to the session, your application can open tables protected by that password. Once you remove the password from the session, your application can't open tables that use the password until you add it again.

Using the AddPassword method

The *AddPassword* method provides an optional way for an application to provide a password for a session prior to opening an encrypted Paradox or dBASE table that requires a password for access. If you do not add the password to the session, when your application attempts to open a password-protected table, a dialog box prompts the user for a password.

AddPassword takes one parameter, a string containing the password to use. You can call *AddPassword* as many times as necessary to add passwords (one at a time) to access tables protected with different passwords.

```
AnsiString PassWrd;
PassWrd = InputBox("Enter password", "Password:", "");
Session->AddPassword(PassWrd);
try
{
    Table1->Open();
}
catch(...)
{
    ShowMessage("Could not open table!");
    Application->Terminate();
}
```

Note Use of the *InputBox* function, above, is for demonstration purposes. In a real-world application, use password entry facilities that mask the password as it is entered, such as the *PasswordDialog* function or a custom form.

The Add button of the *PasswordDialog* function dialog has the same effect as the *AddPassword* method.

```
if (PasswordDlg(Session))
    Table1->Open();
else
    ShowMessage("No password given, could not open table!");
```

Using the RemovePassword and RemoveAllPasswords methods

RemovePassword deletes a previously added password from memory.

RemovePassword takes one parameter, a string containing the password to delete.

```
Session->RemovePassword("secret");
```

RemoveAllPasswords deletes all previously added passwords from memory.

```
Session->RemoveAllPasswords();
```

Using the GetPassword method and OnPassword event

The *OnPassword* event allows you to control how your application supplies passwords for Paradox and dBASE tables when they are required. Provide a handler for the *OnPassword* event if you want to override the default password handling behavior. If you do not provide a handler, C++Builder presents a default dialog for entering a password and no special behavior is provided—the table open attempt either succeeds or an exception is thrown.

If you provide a handler for the *OnPassword* event, do two things in the event handler: call the *AddPassword* method and set the event handler's *Continue* parameter to **true**. The *AddPassword* method passes a string to the session to be used as a password for the table. The *Continue* parameter indicates to C++Builder that no further password prompting need be done for this table open attempt. The default value for *Continue* is **false**, and so requires explicitly setting it to **true**. If *Continue* is **false** after the event handler has finished executing, an *OnPassword* event fires again—even if a valid password has been passed using *AddPassword*. If *Continue* is **true** after execution of the event handler and the string passed with *AddPassword* is not the valid password, the table open attempt fails and an exception is thrown.

OnPassword can be triggered by two circumstances. The first is an attempt to open a password-protected table (dBASE or Paradox) when a valid password has not already been supplied to the session. (If a valid password for that table has already been supplied, the *OnPassword* event does not occur.)

The other circumstance is a call to the *GetPassword* method. *GetPassword* either generates an *OnPassword* event, or, if the session does not have an *OnPassword* event handler, displays a default password dialog. It returns **true** if the *OnPassword* event handler or default dialog added a password to the session, and **false** if no entry at all was made.

In the following example, the *Password* method is designated as the *OnPassword* event handler for the default session by assigning it to the global *Session* object's *OnPassword* property.


```
void __fastcall TForm1::FormCreate(TObject *Sender)
{
    Session->OnPassword = Password;
}
```

In the *Password* method, the *InputBox* function prompts the user for a password. The *AddPassword* method then programmatically supplies the password entered in the dialog to the session.

```
void __fastcall TForm1::Password(TObject *Sender, bool &Continue)
{
    AnsiString PassWrd = InputBox("Enter password", "Password:", "");
    Session->AddPassword(PassWrd);
    Continue = (PassWrd > "");
}
```

The *OnPassword* event (and thus the *Password* event handler) is triggered by an attempt to open a password-protected table, as demonstrated below. Even though the user is prompted for a password in the handler for the *OnPassword* event, the table open attempt can still fail if they enter an invalid password or something else goes wrong.

```
void __fastcall TForm1::OpenTableBtnClick(TObject *Sender)
{
    try
    {
        // this line triggers the OnPassword event
        Table1->Open();
    }
    // exception if cannot open table
    catch(...)
    {
        ShowMessage("Could not open table!");
        Application->Terminate();
    }
}
```

Specifying Paradox directory locations

Two session component properties, *NetFileDir* and *PrivateDir*, are specific to applications that work with Paradox tables.

NetFileDir specifies the directory that contains the Paradox network control file, PDOXUSRS.NET. This file governs sharing of Paradox tables on network drives. All applications that need to share Paradox tables must specify the same directory for the network control file (typically a directory on a network file server). C++Builder derives a value for *NetFileDir* from the Borland Database Engine (BDE) configuration file for a given database alias. If you set *NetFileDir* yourself, the value you supply overrides the BDE configuration setting, so be sure to validate the new value.

At design time, you can specify a value for *NetFileDir* in the Object Inspector. You can also set or change *NetFileDir* in code at runtime. The following code sets *NetFileDir* for the default session to the location of the directory from which your application runs:

```
Session->NetFileDir = ExtractFilePath(ParamStr(0));
```

Note *NetFileDir* can only be changed when an application does not have any open Paradox files. If you change *NetFileDir* at runtime, verify that it points to a valid network directory that is shared by your network users.

PrivateDir specifies the directory for storing temporary table processing files, such as those generated by the BDE to handle local SQL statements. If no value is specified for the *PrivateDir* property, the BDE automatically uses the current directory at the time it is initialized. If your application runs directly from a network file server, you can improve application performance at runtime by setting *PrivateDir* to a user's local hard drive before opening the database.

Note Do not set *PrivateDir* at design time and then open the session in the IDE. Doing so generates a Directory is busy error when running your application from the IDE.

The following code changes the setting of the default session's *PrivateDir* property to a user's C:\TEMP directory:

```
Session->PrivateDir = "C:\\TEMP";
```

Important Do not set *PrivateDir* to a root directory on a drive. Always specify a subdirectory.

Working with BDE aliases

Each database component associated with a session has a BDE alias (although optionally a fully-qualified path name may be substituted for an alias when accessing Paradox and dBASE tables). A session can create, modify, and delete aliases during its lifetime.

The *AddAlias* method creates a new BDE alias for an SQL database server. *AddAlias* takes three parameters: a string containing a name for the alias, a string that specifies the SQL Links driver to use, and a string list populated with parameters for the alias. For example, the following statements use *AddAlias* to add a new alias for accessing an InterBase server to the default session:

```
TStringList *AliasParams = new TStringList();
try
{
    AliasParams->Add("OPEN MODE=READ");
    AliasParams->Add("USER NAME=TOMSTOPPARD");
    AliasParams->Add("SERVER NAME=ANIMALS:/CATS/PEDIGREE.GDB");
    Session->AddAlias("CATS", "INTRBASE", AliasParams);
    :
}
catch (...)
{
    delete AliasParams;
    throw;
}
delete AliasParams;
```

AddStandardAlias creates a new BDE alias for Paradox, dBASE, or ASCII tables. *AddStandardAlias* takes three string parameters: the name for the alias, the fully-qualified path to the Paradox or dBASE table to access, and the name of the default driver to use when attempting to open a table that does not have an extension. For

example, the following statement uses *AddStandardAlias* to create a new alias for accessing a Paradox table:

```
Session->AddStandardAlias("MYBCDEMOS", "C:\\TESTING\\DEMOS\\", "Paradox");
```

When you add an alias to a session, the BDE stores a copy of the alias in memory, where it is only available to this session and any other sessions with *cfmPersistent* included in the *ConfigMode* property. *ConfigMode* is a set that describes which types of aliases can be used by the databases in the session. The default setting is *cmAll*, which translates into the set [*cfmVirtual*, *cfmPersistent*, *cfmSession*]. If *ConfigMode* is *cmAll*, a session can see all aliases created within the session (*cfmSession*), all aliases in the BDE configuration file on a user's system (*cfmPersistent*), and all aliases that the BDE maintains in memory (*cfmVirtual*). You can change *ConfigMode* to restrict what BDE aliases the databases in a session can use. For example, setting *ConfigMode* to *cfmSession* restricts a session's view of aliases to those created within the session. All other aliases in the BDE configuration file and in memory are not available.

To make a newly created alias available to all sessions and to other applications, use the session's *SaveConfigFile* method. *SaveConfigFile* writes aliases in memory to the BDE configuration file where they can be read and used by other BDE-enabled applications.

After you create an alias, you can make changes to its parameters by calling *ModifyAlias*. *ModifyAlias* takes two parameters: the name of the alias to modify and a string list containing the parameters to change and their values. For example, the following statements use *ModifyAlias* to change the OPEN MODE parameter for the CATS alias to READ/WRITE in the default session:

```
TStringList *List = new TStringList();
List->Clear();
List->Add("OPEN MODE=READ/WRITE");
Session->ModifyAlias("CATS", List);
delete List;
```

To delete an alias previously created in a session, call the *DeleteAlias* method. *DeleteAlias* takes one parameter, the name of the alias to delete. *DeleteAlias* makes an alias unavailable to the session.

Note *DeleteAlias* does not remove an alias from the BDE configuration file if the alias was written to the file by a previous call to *SaveConfigFile*. To remove the alias from the configuration file after calling *DeleteAlias*, call *SaveConfigFile* again.

Session components provide five methods for retrieving information about a BDE aliases, including parameter information and driver information. They are:

- *GetAliasNames*, to list the aliases to which a session has access.
- *GetAliasParams*, to list the parameters for a specified alias.
- *GetAliasDriverName*, to return the name of the BDE driver used by the alias.
- *GetDriverNames*, to return a list of all BDE drivers available to the session.
- *GetDriverParams*, to return driver parameters for a specified driver.

For more information about using a session's informational methods, see "Retrieving information about a session" below. For more information about BDE aliases and the SQL Links drivers with which they work, see the BDE online help, BDE32.HLP.

Retrieving information about a session

You can retrieve information about a session and its database components by using a session's informational methods. For example, one method retrieves the names of all aliases known to the session, and another method retrieves the names of tables associated with a specific database component used by the session. Table 24.4 summarizes the informational methods to a session component:

Table 24.4 Database-related informational methods for session components

| Method | Purpose |
|---------------------------------|--|
| <code>GetAliasDriverName</code> | Retrieves the BDE driver for a specified alias of a database. |
| <code>GetAliasNames</code> | Retrieves the list of BDE aliases for a database. |
| <code>GetAliasParams</code> | Retrieves the list of parameters for a specified BDE alias of a database. |
| <code>GetConfigParams</code> | Retrieves configuration information from the BDE configuration file. |
| <code>GetDatabaseNames</code> | Retrieves the list of BDE aliases and the names of any <i>TDatabase</i> components currently in use. |
| <code>GetDriverNames</code> | Retrieves the names of all currently installed BDE drivers. |
| <code>GetDriverParams</code> | Retrieves the list of parameters for a specified BDE driver. |
| <code>GetStoredProcNames</code> | Retrieves the names of all stored procedures for a specified database. |
| <code>GetTableNames</code> | Retrieves the names of all tables matching a specified pattern for a specified database. |
| <code>GetFieldNames</code> | Retrieves the names of all fields in a specified table in a specified database. |

Except for *GetAliasDriverName*, these methods return a set of values into a string list declared and maintained by your application. (*GetAliasDriverName* returns a single string, the name of the current BDE driver for a particular database component used by the session.)

For example, the following code retrieves the names of all database components and aliases known to the default session:

```
TStringList *List = new TStringList();
try
{
    Session->GetDatabaseNames(List);
    :
}
catch (...)
{
    delete List;
    throw;
}
delete List;
```

Creating additional sessions

You can create sessions to supplement the default session. At design time, you can place additional sessions on a data module (or form), set their properties in the Object Inspector, write event handlers for them, and write code that calls their

methods. You can also create sessions, set their properties, and call their methods at runtime.

Note Creating additional sessions is optional unless an application runs concurrent queries against a database or the application is multi-threaded.

To enable dynamic creation of a session component at runtime, follow these steps:

- 1 Declare a *TSession* variable.
- 2 Instantiate a new session using the **new** operator. This operator calls the *TSession* constructor to create and initialize a new session. The constructor sets up an empty list of database components for the session, sets the *KeepConnections* property to **true**, and adds the session to the list of sessions maintained by the application's session list component.
- 3 Set the *SessionName* property for the new session to a unique name. This property is used to associate database components with the session. For more information about the *SessionName* property, see "Naming a session" on page 24-27.
- 4 Activate the session and optionally adjust its properties.

You can also create and open sessions using the *OpenSession* method of *TSessionList*. Using *OpenSession* is safer than using the **new** operator, because *OpenSession* only creates a session if it does not already exist. For information about *OpenSession*, see "Managing multiple sessions" on page 24-28.

The following code creates a new session component, assigns it a name, and opens the session for database operations that follow (not shown here). After use, it is destroyed with a call to the *Free* method.

Note Never delete the default session.

```
TSession *SecondSession = new TSession(Form1);
try
{
    SecondSession->SessionName = "SecondSession";
    SecondSession->KeepConnections = false;
    SecondSession->Open();
    :
}
__finally
{
    delete SecondSession;
};
```

Naming a session

A session's *SessionName* property is used to name the session so that you can associate databases and datasets with it. For the default session, *SessionName* is "Default." For each additional session component you create, you must set its *SessionName* property to a unique value.

Database and dataset components have *SessionName* properties that correspond to the *SessionName* property of a session component. If you leave the *SessionName* property blank for a database or dataset component it is automatically associated

with the default session. You can also set *SessionName* for a database or dataset component to a name that corresponds to the *SessionName* of a session component you create.

The following code uses the *OpenSession* method of the default *TSessionList* component, *Sessions*, to open a new session component, sets its *SessionName* to "InterBaseSession," activate the session, and associate an existing database component *Database1* with that session:

```
TSession *IBSession = Sessions->OpenSession("InterBaseSession");
Database1->SessionName = "InterBaseSession";
```

Managing multiple sessions

If you create a single application that uses multiple threads to perform database operations, you must create one additional session for each thread. The BDE page on the Component palette contains a session component that you can place in a data module or on a form at design time.

Important When you place a session component, you must also set its *SessionName* property to a unique value so that it does not conflict with the default session's *SessionName* property.

Placing a session component at design time presupposes that the number of threads (and therefore sessions) required by the application at runtime is static. More likely, however, is that an application needs to create sessions dynamically. To create sessions dynamically, call the *OpenSession* method of the global *Sessions* object at runtime.

OpenSession requires a single parameter, a name for the session that is unique across all session names for the application. The following code dynamically creates and activates a new session with a uniquely generated name:

```
Sessions->OpenSession("RunTimeSession" + IntToStr(Sessions->Count + 1));
```

This statement generates a unique name for a new session by retrieving the current number of sessions, and adding one to that value. Note that if you dynamically create and destroy sessions at runtime, this example code will not work as expected. Nevertheless, this example illustrates how to use the properties and methods of *Sessions* to manage multiple sessions.

Sessions is a variable of type *TSessionList* that is automatically instantiated for BDE-based database applications. You use the properties and methods of *Sessions* to keep track of multiple sessions in a multi-threaded database application. Table 24.5 summarizes the properties and methods of the *TSessionList* component:

Table 24.5 TSessionList properties and methods

| Property or Method | Purpose |
|--------------------|---|
| <i>Count</i> | Returns the number of sessions, both active and inactive, in the session list. |
| <i>FindSession</i> | Searches for a session with a specified name and returns a pointer to it, or NULL if there is no session with the specified name. If passed a blank session name, <i>FindSession</i> returns a pointer to the default session, <i>Session</i> . |

Table 24.5 TSessionList properties and methods (continued)

| Property or Method | Purpose |
|------------------------|---|
| <i>GetSessionNames</i> | Populates a string list with the names of all currently instantiated session components. This procedure always adds at least one string, "Default" for the default session. |
| <i>List</i> | Returns the session component for a specified session name. If there is no session with the specified name, an exception is raised. |
| <i>OpenSession</i> | Creates and activates a new session or reactivates an existing session for a specified session name. |
| <i>Sessions</i> | Accesses the session list by ordinal value. |

As an example of using *Sessions* properties and methods in a multi-threaded application, consider what happens when you want to open a database connection. To determine if a connection already exists, use the *Sessions* property to walk through each session in the sessions list, starting with the default session. For each session component, examine its *Databases* property to see if the database in question is open. If you discover that another thread is already using the desired database, examine the next session in the list.

If an existing thread is not using the database, then you can open the connection within that session.

If, on the other hand, all existing threads are using the database, you must open a new session in which to open another database connection.

If you are replicating a data module that contains a session in a multi-threaded application, where each thread contains its own copy of the data module, you can use the *AutoSessionName* property to make sure that all datasets in the data module use the correct session. Setting *AutoSessionName* to **true** causes the session to generate its own unique name dynamically when it is created at runtime. It then assigns this name to every dataset in the data module, overriding any explicitly set session names. This ensures that each thread has its own session, and each dataset uses the session in its own data module.

Using transactions with the BDE

By default, the BDE provides implicit transaction control for your applications. When an application is under implicit transaction control, a separate transaction is used for each record in a dataset that is written to the underlying database. Implicit transactions guarantee both a minimum of record update conflicts and a consistent view of the database. On the other hand, because each row of data written to a database takes place in its own transaction, implicit transaction control can lead to excessive network traffic and slower application performance. Also, implicit transaction control will not protect logical operations that span more than one record.

If you explicitly control transactions, you can choose the most effective times to start, commit, and roll back your transactions. When you develop applications in a multi-user environment, particularly when your applications run against a remote SQL server, you should control transactions explicitly.

There are two mutually exclusive ways to control transactions explicitly in a BDE-based database application:

- Use the database component to control transactions. The main advantage to using the methods and properties of a database component is that it provides a clean, portable application that is not dependent on a particular database or server. This type of transaction control is supported by all database connection components, and described in “Managing transactions” on page 21-6
- Use passthrough SQL in a query component to pass SQL statements directly to remote SQL or ODBC servers. The main advantage to passthrough SQL is that you can use the advanced transaction management capabilities of a particular database server, such as schema caching. To understand the advantages of your server’s transaction management model, see your database server documentation. For more information about using passthrough SQL, see “Using passthrough SQL” below.

When working with local databases, you can only use the database component to create explicit transactions (local databases do not support passthrough SQL). However, there are limitations to using local transactions. For more information on using local transactions, see “Using local transactions” on page 24-31.

Note You can minimize the number of transactions you need by caching updates. For more information about cached updates, see “Using a client dataset to cache updates” and “Using the BDE to cache updates” on page 24-31.

Using passthrough SQL

With passthrough SQL, you use a *TQuery*, *TStoredProc*, or *TUpdateSQL* component to send an SQL transaction control statement directly to a remote database server. The BDE does not process the SQL statement. Using passthrough SQL enables you to take direct advantage of the transaction controls offered by your server, especially when those controls are non-standard.

To use passthrough SQL to control a transaction, you must

- Install the proper SQL Links drivers. If you chose the “Typical” installation when installing C++Builder, all SQL Links drivers are already properly installed.
- Configure your network protocol. See your network administrator for more information.
- Have access to a database on a remote server.
- Set SQLPASSTHRU MODE to NOT SHARED using the SQL Explorer. SQLPASSTHRU MODE specifies whether the BDE and passthrough SQL statements can share the same database connections. In most cases, SQLPASSTHRU MODE is set to SHARED AUTOCOMMIT. However, you can’t share database connections when using transaction control statements. For more information about SQLPASSTHRU modes, see the help file for the BDE Administration utility.

Note When SQLPASSTHRU MODE is NOT SHARED, you must use separate database components for datasets that pass SQL transaction statements to the server and datasets that do not.

Using local transactions

The BDE supports local transactions against Paradox, dBASE, Access, and FoxPro tables. From a coding perspective, there is no difference to you between a local transaction and a transaction against a remote database server.

Note When using transactions with local Paradox, dBASE, Access, and FoxPro tables, set *TransIsolation* to *tiDirtyRead* instead of using the default value of *tiReadCommitted*. A BDE error is returned if *TransIsolation* is set to anything but *tiDirtyRead* for local tables.

When a transaction is started against a local table, updates performed against the table are logged. Each log record contains the old record buffer for a record. When a transaction is active, records that are updated are locked until the transaction is committed or rolled back. On rollback, old record buffers are applied against updated records to restore them to their pre-update states.

Local transactions are more limited than transactions against SQL servers or ODBC drivers. In particular, the following limitations apply to local transactions:

- Automatic crash recovery is not provided.
- Data definition statements are not supported.
- Transactions cannot be run against temporary tables.
- *TransIsolation* level must only be set to *tiDirtyRead*.
- For Paradox, local transactions can only be performed on tables with valid indexes. Data cannot be rolled back on Paradox tables that do not have indexes.
- Only a limited number of records can be locked and modified. With Paradox tables, you are limited to 255 records. With dBASE the limit is 100.
- Transactions cannot be run against the BDE ASCII driver.
- Closing a cursor on a table during a transaction rolls back the transaction unless:
 - Several tables are open.
 - The cursor is closed on a table to which no changes were made.

Using the BDE to cache updates

The recommended approach for caching updates is to use a client dataset (*TBDEClientDataSet*) or to connect the BDE-dataset to a client dataset using a dataset provider. The advantages of using a client dataset are discussed in “Using a client dataset to cache updates” on page 27-15.

For simple cases, however, you may choose to use the BDE to cache updates instead. BDE-enabled datasets and *TDatabase* components provide built-in properties,

methods, and events for handling cached updates. Most of these correspond directly to the properties, methods, and events that you use with client datasets and dataset providers when using a client dataset to cache updates. The following table lists these properties, events, and methods and the corresponding properties, methods and events on *TBDEClientDataSet*:

Table 24.6 Properties, methods, and events for cached updates

| On BDE-enabled datasets (or TDatabase) | On TBDEClientDataSet | Purpose |
|---|---|---|
| <i>CachedUpdates</i> | Not needed for client datasets, which always cache updates. | Determines whether cached updates are in effect for the dataset. |
| <i>UpdateObject</i> | Use a <i>BeforeUpdateRecord</i> event handler, or, if using <i>TClientDataSet</i> , use the <i>UpdateObject</i> property on the BDE-enabled source dataset. | Specifies the update object for updating read-only datasets. |
| <i>UpdatesPending</i> | <i>ChangeCount</i> | Indicates whether the local cache contains updated records that need to be applied to the database. |
| <i>UpdateRecordTypes</i> | <i>StatusFilter</i> | Indicates the kind of updated records to make visible when applying cached updates. |
| <i>UpdateStatus</i> | <i>UpdateStatus</i> | Indicates if a record is unchanged, modified, inserted, or deleted. |
| <i>OnUpdateError</i> | <i>OnReconcileError</i> | An event for handling update errors on a record-by-record basis. |
| <i>OnUpdateRecord</i> | <i>BeforeUpdateRecord</i> | An event for processing updates on a record-by-record basis. |
| <i>ApplyUpdates</i> <i>ApplyUpdates</i> (database) | <i>ApplyUpdates</i> | Applies records in the local cache to the database. |
| <i>CancelUpdates</i> | <i>CancelUpdates</i> | Removes all pending updates from the local cache without applying them. |
| <i>CommitUpdates</i> | <i>Reconcile</i> | Clears the update cache following successful application of updates. |
| <i>FetchAll</i> | <i>GetNextPacket</i> (and <i>PacketRecords</i>) | Copies database records to the local cache for editing and updating. |
| <i>RevertRecord</i> | <i>RevertRecord</i> | Undoes updates to the current record if updates are not yet applied. |

For an overview of the cached update process, see “Overview of using cached updates” on page 27-16.

Note Even if you are using a client dataset to cache updates, you may want to read the section about update objects on page 24-39. You can use update objects in the *BeforeUpdateRecord* event handler of *TBDEClientDataSet* or *TDataSetProvider* to apply updates from stored procedures or multi-table queries.

Enabling BDE-based cached updates

To use the BDE for cached updates, the BDE-enabled dataset must indicate that it should cache updates. This is specified by setting the *CachedUpdates* property to **true**. When you enable cached updates, a copy of all records is cached in local memory. Users view and edit this local copy of data. Changes, insertions, and deletions are also cached in memory. They accumulate in memory until the application applies those changes to the database server. If changed records are successfully applied to the database, the record of those changes are freed in the cache.

The dataset caches all updates until you set *CachedUpdates* to **false**. Applying cached updates does not disable further cached updates; it only writes the current set of changes to the database and clears them from memory. Canceling the updates by calling *CancelUpdates* removes all the changes currently in the cache, but does not stop the dataset from caching any subsequent changes.

Note If you disable cached updates by setting *CachedUpdates* to **false**, any pending changes that you have not yet applied are discarded without notification. To prevent losing changes, test the *UpdatesPending* property before disabling cached updates.

Applying BDE-based cached updates

Applying updates is a two-phase process that should occur in the context of a database component's transaction so that your application can recover gracefully from errors. For information about transaction handling with database components, see "Managing transactions" on page 21-6.

When applying updates under database transaction control, the following events take place:

- 1 A database transaction starts.
- 2 Cached updates are written to the database (phase 1). If you provide it, an *OnUpdateRecord* event is triggered once for each record written to the database. If an error occurs when a record is applied to the database, the *OnUpdateError* event is triggered if you provide one.
- 3 The transaction is committed if writes are successful or rolled back if they are not:
 - If the database write is successful:
 - Database changes are committed, ending the database transaction.
 - Cached updates are committed, clearing the internal cache buffer (phase 2).
 - If the database write is unsuccessful:
 - Database changes are rolled back, ending the database transaction.
 - Cached updates are not committed, remaining intact in the internal cache.

For information about creating and using an *OnUpdateRecord* event handler, see "Creating an OnUpdateRecord event handler" on page 24-35. For information about handling update errors that occur when applying cached updates, see "Handling cached update errors" on page 24-37.

Note Applying cached updates is particularly tricky when you are working with multiple datasets linked in a master/detail relationship because the order in which you apply updates to each dataset is significant. Usually, you must update master tables before detail tables, except when handling deleted records, where this order must be reversed. Because of this difficulty, it is strongly recommended that you use client datasets when caching updates in a master/detail form. Client datasets automatically handle all ordering issues with master/detail relationships.

There are two ways to apply BDE-based updates:

- You can apply updates using a database component by calling its *ApplyUpdates* method. This method is the simplest approach, because the database handles all details of managing a transaction for the update process and of clearing the dataset's cache when updating is complete.
- You can apply updates for a single dataset by calling the dataset's *ApplyUpdates* and *CommitUpdates* methods. When applying updates at the dataset level you must explicitly code the transaction that wraps the update process as well as explicitly call *CommitUpdates* to commit updates from the cache.

Important To apply updates from a stored procedure or an SQL query that does not return a live result set, you must use *TUpdateSQL* to specify how to perform updates. For updates to joins (queries involving two or more tables), you must provide one *TUpdateSQL* object for each table involved, and you must use the *OnUpdateRecord* event handler to invoke these objects to perform the updates. See "Using update objects to update a dataset" on page 24-39 for details.

Applying cached updates using a database

To apply cached updates to one or more datasets in the context of a database connection, call the database component's *ApplyUpdates* method. The following code applies updates to the *CustomersQuery* dataset in response to a button click event:

```
void __fastcall TForm1::ApplyButtonClick(TObject *Sender)
{
    // for local databases such as Paradox, dBASE, and FoxPro
    // set TransIsolation to DirtyRead
    if (!Database1->IsSQLBased && Database1->TransIsolation != tiDirtyRead)
        Database1->TransIsolation = tiDirtyRead;
    Database1->ApplyUpdates(&CustomersQuery,0);
}
```

The above sequence writes cached updates to the database in the context of an automatically-generated transaction. If successful, it commits the transaction and then commits the cached updates. If unsuccessful, it rolls back the transaction and leaves the update cache unchanged. In this latter case, you should handle cached update errors through a dataset's *OnUpdateError* event. For more information about handling update errors, see "Handling cached update errors" on page 24-37.

The main advantage to calling a database component's *ApplyUpdates* method is that you can update any number of dataset components that are associated with the database. The two arguments to the *ApplyUpdates* method for a database are an array of *TDBDataSet*, and the index of the last dataset in the array. To apply updates for

more than one dataset, create a local array of pointers to the datasets. For example, the following code applies updates for two queries:

```
TBDBDataSet* ds[] = {CustomerQuery, OrdersQuery};
if (!Database1->IsSQLBased && Database1->TransIsolation != tiDirtyRead)
    Database1->TransIsolation = tiDirtyRead;
Database1->ApplyUpdates(ds,1);
```

Applying cached updates with dataset component methods

You can apply updates for individual BDE-enabled datasets directly using the dataset's *ApplyUpdates* and *CommitUpdates* methods. Each of these methods encapsulate one phase of the update process:

- 1 *ApplyUpdates* writes cached changes to a database (phase 1).
- 2 *CommitUpdates* clears the internal cache when the database write is successful (phase 2).

The following code illustrates how you apply updates within a transaction for the *CustomerQuery* dataset:

```
void __fastcall TForm1::ApplyButtonClick(TObject *Sender)
{
    Database1->StartTransaction();
    try
    {
        if (!Database1->IsSQLBased && Database1->TransIsolation != tiDirtyRead)
            Database1->TransIsolation = tiDirtyRead;
        CustomerQuery->ApplyUpdates(); // try to write the updates to the database
        Database1->Commit(); // on success, commit the changes
    }
    catch (...)
    {
        Database1->Rollback(); // on failure, undo any changes
        throw; // throw the exception again to prevent a call to CommitUpdates
    }
    CustomerQuery->CommitUpdates(); // on success, clear the internal cache
}
```

If an exception is raised during the *ApplyUpdates* call, the database transaction is rolled back. Rolling back the transaction ensures that the underlying database table is not changed. The *throw* statement inside the **try...catch** block *rethrows* the exception, thereby preventing the call to *CommitUpdates*. Because *CommitUpdates* is not called, the internal cache of updates is not cleared so that you can handle error conditions and possibly retry the update.

Creating an OnUpdateRecord event handler

When a BDE-enabled dataset applies its cached updates, it iterates through the changes recorded in its cache, attempting to apply them to the corresponding records in the base table. As the update for each changed, deleted, or newly inserted record is about to be applied, the dataset component's *OnUpdateRecord* event fires.

Providing a handler for the *OnUpdateRecord* event allows you to perform actions just before the current record's update is actually applied. Such actions can include

special data validation, updating other tables, special parameter substitution, or executing multiple update objects. A handler for the *OnUpdateRecord* event affords you greater control over the update process.

Here is the skeleton code for an *OnUpdateRecord* event handler:

```
void __fastcall TForm1::DataSetUpdateRecord(TDataSet *DataSet,
    TUpdateKind UpdateKind, TUpdateAction &UpdateAction)
{
    // Perform updates here...
}
```

The *DataSet* parameter specifies the cached dataset with updates.

The *UpdateKind* parameter indicates the type of update that needs to be performed for the current record. Values for *UpdateKind* are *ukModify*, *ukInsert*, and *ukDelete*. If you are using an update object, you need to pass this parameter to the update object when applying the update. You may also need to inspect this parameter if your handler performs any special processing based on the kind of update.

The *UpdateAction* parameter indicates whether you applied the update. Values for *UpdateAction* are *uaFail* (the default), *uaAbort*, *uaSkip*, *uaRetry*, *uaApplied*. If your event handler successfully applies the update, change this parameter to *uaApplied* before exiting. If you decide not to update the current record, change the value to *uaSkip* to preserve unapplied changes in the cache. If you do not change the value for *UpdateAction*, the entire update operation for the dataset is aborted and an exception is raised. You can suppress the error message (raising a silent exception) by changing *UpdateAction* to *uaAbort*.

In addition to these parameters, you will typically want to make use of the *OldValue* and *NewValue* properties for the field component associated with the current record. *OldValue* gives the original field value that was fetched from the database. It can be useful in locating the database record to update. *NewValue* is the edited value in the update you are trying to apply.

Important An *OnUpdateRecord* event handler, like an *OnUpdateError* or *OnCalcFields* event handler, should never call any methods that change the current record in a dataset.

The following example illustrates how to use these parameters and properties. It uses a *TTable* component named *UpdateTable* to apply updates. In practice, it is easier to use an update object, but using a table illustrates the possibilities more clearly.

```
void __fastcall TForm1::EmpAuditUpdateRecord(TDataSet *DataSet,
    TUpdateKind UpdateKind, TUpdateAction &UpdateAction)
{
    if (UpdateKind == ukInsert)
    {
        TVarRec values[2];
        for (int i = 0; i < 2; i++)
            values[i] = DataSet->Fields->Fields[i]->NewValue;
        UpdateTable->AppendRecord(values, 1);
    }
    else
    {
        TLocateOptions lo;
        lo.Clear();
```

```

if (UpdateTable->Locate("KeyField", DataSet->Fields->Fields[0]->OldValue, lo))
    switch (UpdateKind)
    {
        case ukModify:
            UpdateTable->Edit();
            UpdateTable->Fields->Fields[1]->Value = DataSet->Fields->Fields[1]->Value;
            UpdateTable->Post();
            break;
        case ukDelete:
            UpdateTable->Delete();
            break;
    }
    UpdateAction = uaApplied;
}

```

Handling cached update errors

The Borland Database Engine (BDE) specifically checks for user update conflicts and other conditions when attempting to apply updates, and reports any errors. The dataset component's *OnUpdateError* event enables you to catch and respond to errors. You should create a handler for this event if you use cached updates. If you do not, and an error occurs, the entire update operation fails.

Here is the skeleton code for an *OnUpdateError* event handler:

```

void __fastcall TForm1::DataSetUpdateError(TDataSet *DataSet,
    EDatabaseError *E, TUpdateKind UpdateKind, TUpdateAction &UpdateAction)
{
    // Respond to errors here...
}

```

DataSet references the dataset to which updates are applied. You can use this dataset to access new and old values during error handling. The original values for fields in each record are stored in a read-only *TField* property called *OldValue*. Changed values are stored in the analogous *TField* property *NewValue*. These values provide the only way to inspect and change update values in the event handler.

Warning Do not call any dataset methods that change the current record (such as *Next* and *Prior*). Doing so causes the event handler to enter an endless loop.

The *E* parameter is usually of type *EDBEngineError*. From this exception type, you can extract an error message that you can display to users in your error handler. For example, the following code could be used to display the error message in the caption of a dialog box:

```
ErrorLabel->Caption = E->Message;
```

This parameter is also useful for determining the actual cause of the update error. You can extract specific error codes from *EDBEngineError*, and take appropriate action based on it.

The *UpdateKind* parameter describes the type of update that generated the error. Unless your error handler takes special actions based on the type of update being carried out, your code probably will not make use of this parameter.

The following table lists possible values for *UpdateKind*:

Table 24.7 UpdateKind values

| Value | Meaning |
|-----------------|--|
| <i>ukModify</i> | Editing an existing record caused an error. |
| <i>ukInsert</i> | Inserting a new record caused an error. |
| <i>ukDelete</i> | Deleting an existing record caused an error. |

UpdateAction tells the BDE how to proceed with the update process when your event handler exits. When your update error handler is first called, the value for this parameter is always set to *uaFail*. Based on the error condition for the record that caused the error and what you do to correct it, you typically set *UpdateAction* to a different value before exiting the handler:

- If your error handler can correct the error condition that caused the handler to be invoked, set *UpdateAction* to the appropriate action to take on exit. For error conditions you correct, set *UpdateAction* to *uaRetry* to apply the update for the record again.
- When set to *uaSkip*, the update for the row that caused the error is skipped, and the update for the record remains in the cache after all other updates are completed.
- Both *uaFail* and *uaAbort* cause the entire update operation to end. *uaFail* raises an exception and displays an error message. *uaAbort* raises a silent exception (does not display an error message).

The following code shows an *OnUpdateError* event handler that checks to see if the update error is related to a key violation, and if it is, it sets the *UpdateAction* parameter to *uaSkip*:

```
// include BDE.hpp in your unit file for this example

void __fastcall TForm1::DataSetUpdateError(TDataSet *DataSet,
    EDatabaseError *E, TUpdateKind UpdateKind, TUpdateAction &UpdateAction)
{
    UpdateAction = uaFail // initialize to fail the update
    if (E->ClassNameIs("EDBEngineError"))
    {
        EDBEngineError *pDBE = (EDBEngineError *)E;
        if (pDBE->Errors[pDBE->ErrorCount - 1]->ErrorCode == DBIERR_KEYVIOL)
            UpdateAction = uaSkip; // Key violation, just skip this record
    }
}
```

Note If an error occurs during the application of cached updates, an exception is *thrown* and an error message displayed. Unless the *ApplyUpdates* is called from within a **try...catch** construct, an error message to the user displayed from inside your *OnUpdateError* event handler may cause your application to display the same error message twice. To prevent error message duplication, set *UpdateAction* to *uaAbort* to turn off the system-generated error message display.

Using update objects to update a dataset

When the BDE-enabled dataset represents a stored procedure or a query that is not “live”, it is not possible to apply updates directly from the dataset. Such datasets may also cause a problem when you use a client dataset to cache updates. Whether you are using the BDE or a client dataset to cache updates, you can handle these problem datasets by using an update object:

- 1 If you are using a client dataset, use an external provider component with *TClientDataSet* rather than *TBDEClientDataSet*. This is so you can set the *UpdateObject* property of the BDE-enabled source dataset (step 3).
- 2 Add a *TUpdateSQL* component to the same data module as the BDE-enabled dataset.
- 3 Set the BDE-enabled dataset component’s *UpdateObject* property to the *TUpdateSQL* component in the data module.
- 4 Specify the SQL statements needed to perform updates using the update object’s *ModifySQL*, *InsertSQL*, and *DeleteSQL* properties. You can use the Update SQL editor to help you compose these statements.
- 5 Close the dataset.
- 6 Set the dataset component’s *CachedUpdates* property to **true** or link the dataset to the client dataset using a dataset provider.
- 7 Reopen the dataset.

Note Sometimes, you need to use multiple update objects. For example, when updating a multi-table join or a stored procedure that represents data from multiple datasets, you must provide one *TUpdateSQL* object for each table you want to update. When using multiple update objects, you can’t simply associate the update object with the dataset by setting the *UpdateObject* property. Instead, you must manually call the update object from an *OnUpdateRecord* event handler (when using the BDE to cache updates) or a *BeforeUpdateRecord* event handler (when using a client dataset).

The update object actually encapsulates three *TQuery* components. Each of these query components perform a single update task. One query component provides an SQL UPDATE statement for modifying existing records; a second query component provides an INSERT statement to add new records to a table; and a third component provides a DELETE statement to remove records from a table.

When you place an update component in a data module, you do not see the query components it encapsulates. They are created by the update component at runtime based on three update properties for which you supply SQL statements:

- *ModifySQL* specifies the UPDATE statement.
- *InsertSQL* specifies the INSERT statement.
- *DeleteSQL* specifies the DELETE statement.

At runtime, when the update component is used to apply updates, it:

- 1 Selects an SQL statement to execute based on whether the current record is modified, inserted, or deleted.

- 2 Provides parameter values to the SQL statement.
- 3 Prepares and executes the SQL statement to perform the specified update.

Creating SQL statements for update components

To update a record in an associated dataset, an update object uses one of three SQL statements. Each update object can only update a single table, so the object's update statements must each reference the same base table.

The three SQL statements delete, insert, and modify records cached for update. You must provide these statements as update object's *DeleteSQL*, *InsertSQL*, and *ModifySQL* properties. You can provide these values at design time or at runtime. For example, the following code specifies a value for the *DeleteSQL* property at runtime:

```
UpdateSQL->DeleteSQL->Clear();  
UpdateSQL->DeleteSQL->Add("DELETE FROM Inventory I");  
UpdateSQL->DeleteSQL->Add("WHERE (I.ItemNo = :OLD_ItemNo)");
```

At design time, you can use the Update SQL editor to help you compose the SQL statements that apply updates.

Update objects provide automatic parameter binding for parameters that reference the dataset's original and updated field values. Typically, therefore, you insert parameters with specially formatted names when you compose the SQL statements. For information on using these parameters, see "Understanding parameter substitution in update SQL statements" on page 24-41.

Using the Update SQL editor

To create the SQL statements for an update component,

- 1 Using the Object Inspector, select the name of the update object from the drop-down list for the dataset's *UpdateObject* property. This step ensures that the Update SQL editor you invoke in the next step can determine suitable default values to use for SQL generation options.
- 2 Right-click the update object and select UpdateSQL Editor from the context menu. This displays the Update SQL editor. The editor creates SQL statements for the update object's *ModifySQL*, *InsertSQL*, and *DeleteSQL* properties based on the underlying data set and on the values you supply to it.

The Update SQL editor has two pages. The Options page is visible when you first invoke the editor. Use the Table Name combo box to select the table to update. When you specify a table name, the Key Fields and Update Fields list boxes are populated with available columns.

The Update Fields list box indicates which columns should be updated. When you first specify a table, all columns in the Update Fields list box are selected for inclusion. You can multi-select fields as desired.

The Key Fields list box is used to specify the columns to use as keys during the update. For Paradox, dBASE, and FoxPro the columns you specify here must correspond to an existing index, but this is not a requirement for remote SQL databases. Instead of setting Key Fields you can click the Primary Keys button to choose key fields for the update based on the table's primary index. Click Dataset

Defaults to return the selection lists to the original state: all fields selected as keys and all selected for update.

Check the Quote Field Names check box if your server requires quotation marks around field names.

After you specify a table, select key columns, and select update columns, click Generate SQL to generate the preliminary SQL statements to associate with the update component's *ModifySQL*, *InsertSQL*, and *DeleteSQL* properties. In most cases you will want or need to fine tune the automatically generated SQL statements.

To view and modify the generated SQL statements, select the SQL page. If you have generated SQL statements, then when you select this page, the statement for the *ModifySQL* property is already displayed in the SQL Text memo box. You can edit the statement in the box as desired.

Important Keep in mind that generated SQL statements are starting points for creating update statements. You may need to modify these statements to make them execute correctly. For example, when working with data that contains NULL values, you need to modify the WHERE clause to read

```
WHERE field IS NULL
```

rather than using the generated field variable. Test each of the statements directly yourself before accepting them.

Use the Statement Type radio buttons to switch among generated SQL statements and edit them as desired.

To accept the statements and associate them with the update component's SQL properties, click OK.

Understanding parameter substitution in update SQL statements

Update SQL statements use a special form of parameter substitution that enables you to substitute old or new field values in record updates. When the Update SQL editor generates its statements, it determines which field values to use. When you write the update SQL, you specify the field values to use.

When the parameter name matches a column name in the table, the new value in the field in the cached update for the record is automatically used as the value for the parameter. When the parameter name matches a column name prefixed by the string "OLD_", then the old value for the field will be used. For example, in the update SQL statement below, the parameter :LastName is automatically filled with the new field value in the cached update for the inserted record.

```
INSERT INTO Names
(LastName, FirstName, Address, City, State, Zip)
VALUES (:LastName, :FirstName, :Address, :City, :State, :Zip)
```

New field values are typically used in the *InsertSQL* and *ModifySQL* statements. In an update for a modified record, the new field value from the update cache is used by the UPDATE statement to replace the old field value in the base table updated.

In the case of a deleted record, there are no new values, so the *DeleteSQL* property uses the ":OLD_FieldName" syntax. Old field values are also normally used in the

WHERE clause of the SQL statement for a modified or deletion update to determine which record to update or delete.

In the WHERE clause of an UPDATE or DELETE update SQL statement, supply at least the minimal number of parameters to uniquely identify the record in the base table that is updated with the cached data. For instance, in a list of customers, using just a customer's last name may not be sufficient to uniquely identify the correct record in the base table; there may be a number of records with "Smith" as the last name. But by using parameters for last name, first name, and phone number could be a distinctive enough combination. Even better would be a unique field value like a customer number.

Note If you create SQL statements that contain parameters that do not refer the edited or original field values, the update object does not know how to bind their values. You can, however, do this manually, using the update object's *Query* property. See "Using an update component's Query property" on page 24-46 for details.

Composing update SQL statements

At design time, you can use the Update SQL editor to write the SQL statements for the *DeleteSQL*, *InsertSQL*, and *ModifySQL* properties. If you do not use the Update SQL editor, or if you want to modify the generated statements, you should keep in mind the following guidelines when writing statements to delete, insert, and modify records in the base table.

The *DeleteSQL* property should contain only an SQL statement with the DELETE command. The base table to be updated must be named in the FROM clause. So that the SQL statement only deletes the record in the base table that corresponds to the record deleted in the update cache, use a WHERE clause. In the WHERE clause, use a parameter for one or more fields to uniquely identify the record in the base table that corresponds to the cached update record. If the parameters are named the same as the field and prefixed with "OLD_", the parameters are automatically given the values from the corresponding field from the cached update record. If the parameter are named in any other manner, you must supply the parameter values.

```
DELETE FROM Inventory I
WHERE (I.ItemNo = :OLD_ItemNo)
```

Some table types might not be able to find the record in the base table when fields used to identify the record contain NULL values. In these cases, the delete update fails for those records. To accommodate this, add a condition for those fields that might contain NULLs using the IS NULL predicate (in addition to a condition for a non-NULL value). For example, when a FirstName field may contain a NULL value:

```
DELETE FROM Names
WHERE (LastName = :OLD_LastName) AND
      ((FirstName = :OLD_FirstName) OR (FirstName IS NULL))
```

The *InsertSQL* statement should contain only an SQL statement with the INSERT command. The base table to be updated must be named in the INTO clause. In the VALUES clause, supply a comma-separated list of parameters. If the parameters are named the same as the field, the parameters are automatically given the value from the cached update record. If the parameter are named in any other manner, you must supply the parameter values. The list of parameters supplies the values for fields in

the newly inserted record. There must be as many value parameters as there are fields listed in the statement.

```
INSERT INTO Inventory
(ItemNo, Amount)
VALUES (:ItemNo, 0)
```

The *ModifySQL* statement should contain only an SQL statement with the UPDATE command. The base table to be updated must be named in the FROM clause. Include one or more value assignments in the SET clause. If values in the SET clause assignments are parameters named the same as fields, the parameters are automatically given values from the fields of the same name in the updated record in the cache. You can assign additional field values using other parameters, as long as the parameters are not named the same as any fields and you manually supply the values. As with the *DeleteSQL* statement, supply a WHERE clause to uniquely identify the record in the base table to be updated using parameters named the same as the fields and prefixed with "OLD_". In the update statement below, the parameter :ItemNo is automatically given a value and :Price is not.

```
UPDATE Inventory I
SET I.ItemNo = :ItemNo, Amount = :Price
WHERE (I.ItemNo = :OLD_ItemNo)
```

Considering the above update SQL, take an example case where the application end-user modifies an existing record. The original value for the ItemNo field is 999. In a grid connected to the cached dataset, the end-user changes the ItemNo field value to 123 and Amount to 20. When the ApplyUpdates method is invoked, this SQL statement affects all records in the base table where the ItemNo field is 999, using the old field value in the parameter :OLD_ItemNo. In those records, it changes the ItemNo field value to 123 (using the parameter :ItemNo, the value coming from the grid) and Amount to 20.

Using multiple update objects

When more than one base table referenced in the update dataset needs to be updated, you need to use multiple update objects: one for each base table updated. Because the dataset component's *UpdateObject* only allows one update object to be associated with the dataset, you must associate each update object with a dataset by setting its *DataSet* property to the name of the dataset.

Tip When using multiple update objects, you can use *TBDEClientDataSet* instead of *TClientDataSet* with an external provider. This is because you do not need to set the source dataset's *UpdateObject* property.

The *DataSet* property for update objects is not available at design time in the Object Inspector. You can only set this property at runtime.

```
UpdateSQL1->DataSet = Query1;
```

The update object uses this dataset to obtain original and updated field values for parameter substitution and, if it is a BDE-enabled dataset, to identify the session and database to use when applying the updates. So that parameter substitution will work correctly, the update object's *DataSet* property must be the dataset that contains the updated field values. When using the BDE-enabled dataset to cache updates, this is

the BDE-enabled dataset itself. When using a client dataset, this is a client dataset that is provided as a parameter to the *BeforeUpdateRecord* event handler.

When the update object has not been assigned to the dataset's *UpdateObject* property, its SQL statements are not automatically executed when you call *ApplyUpdates*. To update records, you must manually call the update object from an *OnUpdateRecord* event handler (when using the BDE to cache updates) or a *BeforeUpdateRecord* event handler (when using a client dataset). In the event handler, the minimum actions you need to take are

- If you are using a client dataset to cache updates, you must be sure that the updates object's *DatabaseName* and *SessionName* properties are set to the *DatabaseName* and *SessionName* properties of the source dataset.
- The event handler must call the update object's *ExecSQL* or *Apply* method. This invokes the update object for each record that requires updating. For more information about executing update statements, see "Executing the SQL statements" below.
- Set the event handler's *UpdateAction* parameter to *uaApplied* (*OnUpdateRecord*) or the *Applied* parameter to **true** (*BeforeUpdateRecord*).

You may optionally perform data validation, data modification, or other operations that depend on each record's update.

Warning If you call an update object's *ExecSQL* or *Apply* method in an *OnUpdateRecord* event handler, be sure that you do not set the dataset's *UpdateObject* property to that update object. Otherwise, this will result in a second attempt to apply each record's update.

Executing the SQL statements

When you use multiple update objects, you do not associate the update objects with a dataset by setting its *UpdateObject* property. As a result, the appropriate statements are not automatically executed when you apply updates. Instead, you must explicitly invoke the update object in code.

There are two ways to invoke the update object. Which way you choose depends on whether the SQL statement uses parameters to represent field values:

- If the SQL statement to execute uses parameters, call the *Apply* method.
- If the SQL statement to execute does not use parameters, it is more efficient to call the *ExecSQL* method.

Note If the SQL statement uses parameters other than the built-in types (for the original and updated field values), you must manually supply parameter values instead of relying on the parameter substitution provided by the *Apply* method. See "Using an update component's Query property" on page 24-46 for information on manually providing parameter values.

For information about the default parameter substitution for parameters in an update object's SQL statements, see "Understanding parameter substitution in update SQL statements" on page 24-41.

Calling the Apply method

The *Apply* method for an update component manually applies updates for the current record. There are two steps involved in this process:

- 1 Initial and edited field values for the record are bound to parameters in the appropriate SQL statement.
- 2 The SQL statement is executed.

Call the *Apply* method to apply the update for the current record in the update cache. The *Apply* method is most often called from within a handler for the dataset's *OnUpdateRecord* event or from a provider's *BeforeUpdateRecord* event handler.

Warning

If you use the dataset's *UpdateObject* property to associate dataset and update object, *Apply* is called automatically. In that case, do not call *Apply* in an *OnUpdateRecord* event handler as this will result in a second attempt to apply the current record's update.

OnUpdateRecord event handlers indicate the type of update that needs to be applied with an *UpdateKind* parameter of type *TUpdateKind*. You must pass this parameter to the *Apply* method to indicate which update SQL statement to use. The following code illustrates this using a *BeforeUpdateRecord* event handler:

```
void __fastcall TForm1::BDEClientDataSet1BeforeUpdateRecord(TObject *Sender,
    TDataSet *SourceDS, TCustomClientDataSet *DeltaDS, TUpdateKind UpdateKind, bool &Applied)
{
    UpdateSQL1->DataSet = DeltaDS;
    TDBDataSet *pSrcDS = dynamic_cast<TDBDataSet *>(SourceDS);
    UpdateSQL1->DatabaseName = pSrcDS->DatabaseName;
    UpdateSQL1->SessionName = pSrcDS->SessionName;
    UpdateSQL1->Apply(UpdateKind);
    Applied = true;
}
```

Calling the ExecSQL method

The *ExecSQL* method for an update component manually applies updates for the current record. Unlike the *Apply* method, *ExecSQL* does not bind parameters in the SQL statement before executing it. The *ExecSQL* method is most often called from within a handler for the *OnUpdateRecord* event (when using the BDE) or the *BeforeUpdateRecord* event (when using a client dataset).

Because *ExecSQL* does not bind parameter values, it is used primarily when the update object's SQL statements do not include parameters. You can use *Apply* instead, even when there are no parameters, but *ExecSQL* is more efficient because it does not check for parameters.

If the SQL statements include parameters, you can still call *ExecSQL*, but only after explicitly binding parameters. If you are using the BDE to cache updates, you can explicitly bind parameters by setting the update object's *DataSet* property and then calling its *SetParams* method. When using a client dataset to cache updates, you must supply parameters to the underlying query object maintained by *TUpdateSQL*. For information on how to do this, see "Using an update component's Query property" on page 24-46.

Warning If you use the dataset's *UpdateObject* property to associate dataset and update object, *ExecSQL* is called automatically. In that case, do not call *ExecSQL* in an *OnUpdateRecord* or *BeforeUpdateRecord* event handler as this will result in a second attempt to apply the current record's update.

OnUpdateRecord and *BeforeUpdateRecord* event handlers indicate the type of update that needs to be applied with an *UpdateKind* parameter of type *TUpdateKind*. You must pass this parameter to the *ExecSQL* method to indicate which update SQL statement to use. The following code illustrates this using a *BeforeUpdateRecord* event handler:

```
void __fastcall TForm1::BDEClientDataSet1BeforeUpdateRecord(TObject *Sender,
    TDataSet *SourceDS, TCustomClientDataSet *DeltaDS, TUpdateKind UpdateKind, bool &Applied)
{
    TDBDataSet *pSrcDS = dynamic_cast<TDBDataSet *>(SourceDS);
    UpdateSQL1->DatabaseName = pSrcDS->DatabaseName;
    UpdateSQL1->SessionName = pSrcDS->SessionName;
    UpdateSQL1->ExecSQL(UpdateKind);
    Applied = true;
}
```

If an exception is raised during the execution of the update program, execution continues in the *OnUpdateError* event, if it is defined.

Using an update component's Query property

The *Query* property of an update component provides access to the query components that implement its *DeleteSQL*, *InsertSQL*, and *ModifySQL* statements. In most applications, there is no need to access these query components directly: you can use the *DeleteSQL*, *InsertSQL*, and *ModifySQL* properties to specify the statements these queries execute, and execute them by calling the update object's *Apply* or *ExecSQL* method. There are times, however, when you may need to directly manipulate the query component. In particular, the *Query* property is useful when you want to supply your own values for parameters in the SQL statements rather than relying on the update object's automatic parameter binding to old and new field values.

Note The *Query* property is only accessible at runtime.

The *Query* property is indexed on a *TUpdateKind* value:

- Using an index of *ukModify* accesses the query that updates existing records.
- Using an index of *ukInsert* accesses the query that inserts new records.
- Using an index of *ukDelete* accesses the query that deletes records.

The following shows how to use the *Query* property to supply parameter values that can't be bound automatically:

```
void __fastcall TForm1::BDEClientDataSet1BeforeUpdateRecord(TObject *Sender,
    TDataSet *SourceDS, TCustomClientDataSet *DeltaDS, TUpdateKind UpdateKind, bool &Applied)
{
    UpdateSQL1->DataSet = DeltaDS; // required for the automatic parameter substitution
    TQuery *pQuery = UpdateSQL1->Query[UpdateKind]; // access the query
    // make sure the query has the correct DatabaseName and SessionName
    TDBDataSet *pSrcDS = dynamic_cast<TDBDataSet *>(SourceDS);
    pQuery->DatabaseName = pSrcDS->DatabaseName;
```



```

pQuery->SessionName = pSrcDS->SessionName;
// now substitute values for custom parameters
pQuery->ParamByName("TimeOfLastUpdate")->Value = Now();
UpdatesQL1->Apply(UpdateKind); // now do automatic substitution and execute
Applied = true;
}

```

Using TBatchMove

TBatchMove encapsulates Borland Database Engine (BDE) features that let you to duplicate a dataset, append records from one dataset to another, update records in one dataset with records from another dataset, and delete records from one dataset that match records in another dataset. *TBatchMove* is most often used to:

- Download data from a server to a local data source for analysis or other operations.
- Move a desktop database into tables on a remote server as part of an upsizing operation.

A batch move component can create tables on the destination that correspond to the source tables, automatically mapping the column names and data types as appropriate.

Creating a batch move component

To create a batch move component:

- 1 Place a table or query component for the dataset from which you want to import records (called the *Source* dataset) on a form or in a data module.
- 2 Place the dataset to which to move records (called the *Destination* dataset) on the form or data module.
- 3 Place a *TBatchMove* component from the BDE page of the Component palette in the data module or form, and set its *Name* property to a unique value appropriate to your application.
- 4 Set the *Source* property of the batch move component to the name of the table from which to copy, append, or update records. You can select tables from the drop-down list of available dataset components.
- 5 Set the *Destination* property to the dataset to create, append to, or update. You can select a destination table from the drop-down list of available dataset components.
 - If you are appending, updating, or deleting, *Destination* must represent an existing database table.
 - If you are copying a table and *Destination* represents an existing table, executing the batch move overwrites all of the current data in the destination table.

- If you are creating an entirely new table by copying an existing table, the resulting table has the name specified in the *Name* property of the table component to which you are copying. The resulting table type will be of a structure appropriate to the server specified by the *DatabaseName* property.
- 6 Set the *Mode* property to indicate the type of operation to perform. Valid operations are *batAppend* (the default), *batUpdate*, *batAppendUpdate*, *batCopy*, and *batDelete*. For information about these modes, see “Specifying a batch move mode” on page 24-48.
 - 7 Optionally set the *Transliterate* property. If *Transliterate* is **true** (the default), character data is translated from the *Source* dataset’s character set to the *Destination* dataset’s character set as necessary.
 - 8 Optionally set column mappings using the *Mappings* property. You need not set this property if you want batch move to match columns based on their position in the source and destination tables. For more information about mapping columns, see “Mapping data types” on page 24-49.
 - 9 Optionally specify the *ChangedTableName*, *KeyViolTableName*, and *ProblemTableName* properties. Batch move stores problem records it encounters during the batch operation in the table specified by *ProblemTableName*. If you are updating a Paradox table through a batch move, key violations can be reported in the table you specify in *KeyViolTableName*. *ChangedTableName* lists all records that changed in the destination table as a result of the batch move operation. If you do not specify these properties, these error tables are not created or used. For more information about handling batch move errors, see “Handling batch move errors” on page 24-51.

Specifying a batch move mode

The *Mode* property specifies the operation a batch move component performs:

Table 24.8 Batch move modes

| Property | Purpose |
|------------------------|---|
| <i>batAppend</i> | Append records to the destination table. |
| <i>batUpdate</i> | Update records in the destination table with matching records from the source table. Updating is based on the current index of the destination table. |
| <i>batAppendUpdate</i> | If a matching record exists in the destination table, update it. Otherwise, append records to the destination table. |
| <i>batCopy</i> | Create the destination table based on the structure of the source table. If the destination table already exists, it is dropped and recreated. |
| <i>batDelete</i> | Delete records in the destination table that match records in the source table. |

Appending records

To append data, the destination dataset must represent an existing table. During the append operation, the BDE converts data to appropriate data types and sizes for the destination dataset if necessary. If a conversion is not possible, an exception is thrown and the data is not appended.

Updating records

To update data, the destination dataset must represent an existing table and must have an index defined that enables records to be matched. If the primary index fields are used for matching, records with index fields in the destination dataset that match index fields records in the source dataset are overwritten with the source data. During the update operation, the BDE converts data to appropriate data types and sizes for the destination dataset if necessary.

Appending and updating records

To append and update data the destination dataset must represent an existing table and must have an index defined that enables records to be matched. If the primary index fields are used for matching, records with index fields in the destination dataset that match index fields records in the source dataset are overwritten with the source data. Otherwise, data from the source dataset is appended to the destination dataset. During append and update operations, the BDE converts data to appropriate data types and sizes for the destination dataset, if necessary.

Copying datasets

To copy a source dataset, the destination dataset should not represent an exist table. If it does, the batch move operation overwrites the existing table with a copy of the source dataset.

If the source and destination datasets are maintained by different types of database engines, for example, Paradox and InterBase, the BDE creates a destination dataset with a structure as close as possible to that of the source dataset and automatically performs data type and size conversions as necessary.

Note *TBatchMove* does not copy metadata structures such as indexes, constraints, and stored procedures. You must recreate these metadata objects on your database server or through the SQL Explorer as appropriate.

Deleting records

To delete data in the destination dataset, it must represent an existing table and must have an index defined that enables records to be matched. If the primary index fields are used for matching, records with index fields in the destination dataset that match index fields records in the source dataset are deleted in the destination table.

Mapping data types

In *batAppend* mode, a batch move component creates the destination table based on the column data types of the source table. Columns and types are matched based on their position in the source and destination tables. That is, the first column in the source is matched with the first column in the destination, and so on.

To override the default column mappings, use the *Mappings* property. *Mappings* is a list of column mappings (one per line). This listing can take one of two forms. To map a column in the source table to a column of the same name in the destination table, you can use a simple listing that specifies the column name to match. For example,

the following mapping specifies that a column named *ColName* in the source table should be mapped to a column of the same name in the destination table:

```
ColName
```

To map a column named *SourceColName* in the source table to a column named *DestColName* in the destination table, the syntax is as follows:

```
DestColName = SourceColName
```

If source and destination column data types are not the same, a batch move operation attempts a “best fit”. It trims character data types, if necessary, and attempts to perform a limited amount of conversion, if possible. For example, mapping a CHAR(10) column to a CHAR(5) column will result in trimming the last five characters from the source column.

As an example of conversion, if a source column of character data type is mapped to a destination of integer type, the batch move operation converts a character value of ‘5’ to the corresponding integer value. Values that cannot be converted generate errors. For more information about errors, see “Handling batch move errors” on page 24-51.

When moving data between different table types, a batch move component translates data types as appropriate based on the dataset’s server types. See the BDE online help file for the latest tables of mappings among server types.

Note To batch move data to an SQL server database, you must have that database server and a version of C++Builder with the appropriate SQL Link installed, or you can use ODBC if you have the proper third party ODBC drivers installed.

Executing a batch move

Use the *Execute* method to execute a previously prepared batch operation at runtime. For example, if *BatchMoveAdd* is the name of a batch move component, the following statement executes it:

```
BatchMoveAdd->Execute();
```

You can also execute a batch move at design time by right clicking the mouse on a batch move component and choosing *Execute* from the context menu.

The *MovedCount* property keeps track of the number of records that are moved when a batch move executes.

The *RecordCount* property specifies the maximum number of records to move. If *RecordCount* is zero, all records are moved, beginning with the first record in the source dataset. If *RecordCount* is a positive number, a maximum of *RecordCount* records are moved, beginning with the current record in the source dataset. If *RecordCount* is greater than the number of records between the current record in the source dataset and its last record, the batch move terminates when the end of the source dataset is reached. You can examine *MoveCount* to determine how many records were actually transferred.

Handling batch move errors

There are two types of errors that can occur in a batch move operation: data type conversion errors and integrity violations. *TBatchMove* has a number of properties that report on and control error handling.

The *AbortOnProblem* property specifies whether to abort the operation when a data type conversion error occurs. If *AbortOnProblem* is **true**, the batch move operation is canceled when an error occurs. If **false**, the operation continues. You can examine the table you specify in the *ProblemTableName* to determine which records caused problems.

The *AbortOnKeyViol* property indicates whether to abort the operation when a Paradox key violation occurs.

The *ProblemCount* property indicates the number of records that could not be handled in the destination table without a loss of data. If *AbortOnProblem* is **true**, this number is one, since the operation is aborted when an error occurs.

The following properties enable a batch move component to create additional tables that document the batch move operation:

- *ChangedTableName*, if specified, creates a local Paradox table containing all records in the destination table that changed as a result of an update or delete operation.
- *KeyViolTableName*, if specified, creates a local Paradox table containing all records from the source table that caused a key violation when working with a Paradox table. If *AbortOnKeyViol* is **true**, this table will contain at most one entry since the operation is aborted on the first problem encountered.
- *ProblemTableName*, if specified, creates a local Paradox table containing all records that could not be posted in the destination table due to data type conversion errors. For example, the table could contain records from the source table whose data had to be trimmed to fit in the destination table. If *AbortOnProblem* is **true**, there is at most one record in this table since the operation is aborted on the first problem encountered.

Note If *ProblemTableName* is not specified, the data in the record is trimmed and placed in the destination table.

The Data Dictionary

When you use the BDE to access your data, your application has access to the Data Dictionary. The Data Dictionary provides a customizable storage area, independent of your applications, where you can create extended field attribute sets that describe the content and appearance of data.

For example, if you frequently develop financial applications, you may create a number of specialized field attribute sets describing different display formats for currency. When you create datasets for your application at design time, rather than using the Object Inspector to set the currency fields in each dataset by hand, you can associate those fields with an extended field attribute set in the data dictionary. Using

the data dictionary ensures a consistent data appearance within and across the applications you create.

In a client/server environment, the Data Dictionary can reside on a remote server for additional sharing of information.

To learn how to create extended field attribute sets from the Fields editor at design time, and how to associate them with fields throughout the datasets in your application, see “Creating attribute sets for field components” on page 23-12. To learn more about creating a data dictionary and extended field attributes with the SQL and Database Explorers, see their respective online help files.

A programming interface to the Data Dictionary is available in the drntf header file (located in the include\VCL directory). This interface supplies the following methods:

Table 24.9 Data Dictionary interface

| Routine | Use |
|------------------------|--|
| DictionaryActive | Indicates if the data dictionary is active. |
| DictionaryDeactivate | Deactivates the data dictionary. |
| IsNullID | Indicates whether a given ID is a null ID |
| FindDatabaseID | Returns the ID for a database given its alias. |
| FindTableID | Returns the ID for a table in a specified database. |
| FindFieldID | Returns the ID for a field in a specified table. |
| FindAttrID | Returns the ID for a named attribute set. |
| GetAttrName | Returns the name an attribute set given its ID. |
| GetAttrNames | Executes a callback for each attribute set in the dictionary. |
| GetAttrID | Returns the ID of the attribute set for a specified field. |
| NewAttr | Creates a new attribute set from a field component. |
| UpdateAttr | Updates an attribute set to match the properties of a field. |
| CreateField | Creates a field component based on stored attributes. |
| UpdateField | Changes the properties of a field to match a specified attribute set. |
| AssociateAttr | Associates an attribute set with a given field ID. |
| UnassociateAttr | Removes an attribute set association for a field ID. |
| GetControlClass | Returns the control class for a specified attribute ID. |
| QualifyTableName | Returns a fully qualified table name (qualified by user name). |
| QualifyTableNameByName | Returns a fully qualified table name (qualified by user name). |
| HasConstraints | Indicates whether the dataset has constraints in the dictionary. |
| UpdateConstraints | Updates the imported constraints of a dataset. |
| UpdateDataset | Updates a dataset to the current settings and constraints in the dictionary. |

Tools for working with the BDE

One advantage of using the BDE as a data access mechanism is the wealth of supporting utilities that ship with C++Builder. These utilities include:

- **SQL Explorer and Database Explorer:** C++Builder ships with one of these two applications, depending on which version you have purchased. Both Explorers enable you to
 - Examine existing database tables and structures. The SQL Explorer lets you examine and query remote SQL databases.
 - Populate tables with data
 - Create extended field attribute sets in the Data Dictionary or associate them with fields in your application.
 - Create and manage BDE aliases.

SQL Explorer lets you do the following as well:

- Create SQL objects such as stored procedures on remote database servers.
- View the reconstructed text of SQL objects on remote database servers.
- Run SQL scripts.
- **SQL Monitor:** SQL Monitor lets you watch all of the communication that passes between the remote database server and the BDE. You can filter the messages you want to watch, limiting them to only the categories of interest. SQL Monitor is most useful when debugging your application.
- **BDE Administration utility:** The BDE Administration utility lets you add new database drivers, configure the defaults for existing drivers, and create new BDE aliases.
- **Database Desktop:** If you are using Paradox or dBASE tables, Database Desktop lets you view and edit their data, create new tables, and restructure existing tables. Using Database Desktop affords you more control than using the methods of a *TTable* component (for example, it allows you to specify validity checks and language drivers). It provides the only mechanism for restructuring Paradox and dBASE tables other than making direct calls the BDE's API.

Working with ADO components

The *dbGo* components provide data access through the ADO framework. ADO, (Microsoft ActiveX Data Objects) is a set of COM objects that access data through an OLE DB provider. The *dbGo* components encapsulate these ADO objects in the C++Builder database architecture.

The ADO layer of an ADO-based application consists of Microsoft ADO 2.1, an OLE DB provider or ODBC driver for the data store access, client software for the specific database system used (in the case of SQL databases), a database back-end system accessible to the application (for SQL database systems), and a database. All of these must be accessible to the ADO-based application for it to be fully functional.

The ADO objects that figure most prominently are the Connection, Command, and Recordset objects. These ADO objects are wrapped by the *TADOConnection*, *TADOCommand*, and ADO dataset components. The ADO framework includes other “helper” objects, like the Field and Properties objects, but these are typically not used directly in *dbGo* applications and are not wrapped by dedicated components.

This chapter presents the *dbGo* components and discusses the unique features they add to the common C++Builder database architecture. Before reading about the features peculiar to the *dbGo* components, you should familiarize yourself with the common features of database connection components and datasets described in Chapter 21, “Connecting to databases” and Chapter 22, “Understanding datasets.”

Overview of ADO components

The ADO page of the component palette hosts the *dbGo* components. These components let you connect to an ADO data store, execute commands, and retrieve data from tables in databases using the ADO framework. They require ADO 2.1 (or higher) to be installed on the host computer. Additionally, client software for the target database system (such as Microsoft SQL Server) must be installed, as well as an OLE DB driver or ODBC driver specific to the particular database system.

Most *dbGo* components have direct counterparts in the components available for other data access mechanisms: a database connection component (*TADOConnection*) and various types of datasets. In addition, *dbGo* includes *TADOCommand*, a simple component that is not a dataset but which represents an SQL command to be executed on the ADO data store.

The following table lists the ADO components.

Table 25.1 ADO components

| Component | Use |
|-----------------------|--|
| <i>TADOConnection</i> | A database connection component that establishes a connection with an ADO data store; multiple ADO dataset and command components can share this connection to execute commands, retrieve data, and operate on metadata. |
| <i>TADODataSet</i> | The primary dataset for retrieving and operating on data; <i>TADODataSet</i> can retrieve data from a single or multiple tables; can connect directly to a data store or use a <i>TADOConnection</i> component. |
| <i>TADOTable</i> | A table-type dataset for retrieving and operating on a recordset produced by a single database table; <i>TADOTable</i> can connect directly to a data store or use a <i>TADOConnection</i> component. |
| <i>TADOQuery</i> | A query-type dataset for retrieving and operating on a recordset produced by a valid SQL statement; <i>TADOQuery</i> can also execute data definition language (DDL) SQL statements. It can connect directly to a data store or use a <i>TADOConnection</i> component. |
| <i>TADOStoredProc</i> | A stored procedure-type dataset for executing stored procedures; <i>TADOStoredProc</i> executes stored procedures that may or may not retrieve data. It can connect directly to a data store or use a <i>TADOConnection</i> component. |
| <i>TADOCommand</i> | A simple component for executing commands (SQL statements that do not return result sets); <i>TADOCommand</i> can be used with a supporting dataset component, or retrieve a dataset from a table; It can connect directly to a data store or use a <i>TADOConnection</i> component. |

Connecting to ADO data stores

dbGo applications use Microsoft ActiveX Data Objects (ADO) 2.1 to interact with an OLE DB provider that connects to a data store and accesses its data. One of the items a data store can represent is a database. An ADO-based application requires that ADO 2.1 be installed on the client computer. ADO and OLE DB is supplied by Microsoft and installed with Windows.

An ADO provider represents one of a number of types of access, from native OLE DB drivers to ODBC drivers. These drivers must be installed on the client computer. OLE DB drivers for various database systems are supplied by the database vendor or by a third-party. If the application uses an SQL database, such as Microsoft SQL Server or Oracle, the client software for that database system must also be installed on the client computer. Client software is supplied by the database vendor and installed from the database systems CD (or disk).

To connect your application with the data store, use an ADO connection component (*TADOConnection*). Configure the ADO connection component to use one of the

available ADO providers. Although *TADOConnection* is not strictly required, because ADO command and dataset components can establish connections directly using their *ConnectionString* property, you can use *TADOConnection* to share a single connection among several ADO components. This can reduce resource consumption, and allows you to create transactions that span multiple datasets.

Like other database connection components, *TADOConnection* provides support for

- Controlling connections
- Controlling server login
- Managing transactions
- Working with associated datasets
- Sending commands to the server
- Obtaining metadata

In addition to these features that are common to all database connection components, *TADOConnection* provides its own support for

- A wide range of options you can use to fine-tune the connection.
- The ability to list the command objects that use the connection.
- Additional events when performing common tasks.

Connecting to a data store using TADOConnection

One or more ADO dataset and command components can share a single connection to a data store by using *TADOConnection*. To do so, associated dataset and command components with the connection component through their *Connection* properties. At design-time, select the desired connection component from the drop-down list for the *Connection* property in the Object Inspector. At runtime, assign the reference to the *Connection* property. For example, the following line associates a *TADODataset* component with a *TADOConnection* component.

```
ADODataset1->Connection = ADOConnection1;
```

The connection component represents an ADO connection object. Before you can use the connection object to establish a connection, you must identify the data store to which you want to connect. Typically, you provide information using the *ConnectionString* property. *ConnectionString* is a semicolon delimited string that lists one or more named connection parameters. These parameters identify the data store by specifying either the name of a file that contains the connection information or the name of an ADO provider and a reference identifying the data store. Use the following, predefined parameter names to supply this information:

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| <i>Provider</i> | The name of a local ADO provider to use for the connection. |
| <i>Data Source</i> | The name of the data store. |
| <i>File name</i> | The name of a file containing connection information. |
| <i>Remote Provider</i> | The name of an ADO provider that resides on a remote machine. |
| <i>Remote Server</i> | The name of the remote server when using a remote provider. |

Thus, a typical value of *ConnectionString* has the form

```
Provider=MSDASQL.1;Data Source=MQIS
```

Note The connection parameters in *ConnectionString* do not need to include the *Provider* or *Remote Provider* parameter if you specify an ADO provider using the *Provider* property. Similarly, you do not need to specify the *Data Source* parameter if you use the *DefaultDatabase* property.

In addition, to the parameters listed above, *ConnectionString* can include any connection parameters peculiar to the specific ADO provider you are using. These additional connection parameters can include user ID and password if you want to hardcode the login information.

At design-time, you can use the Connection String Editor to build a connection string by selecting connection elements (like the provider and server) from lists. Click the ellipsis button for the *ConnectionString* property in the Object Inspector to launch the Connection String Editor, which is an ActiveX property editor supplied by ADO.

Once you have specified the *ConnectionString* property (and, optionally, the *Provider* property), you can use the ADO connection component to connect to or disconnect from the ADO data store, although you may first want to use other properties to fine-tune the connection. When connecting to or disconnecting from the data store, *TADOConnection* lets you respond to a few additional events beyond those common to all database connection components. These additional events are described in “Events when establishing a connection” on page 25-7 and “Events when disconnecting” on page 25-7.

Note If you do not explicitly activate the connection by setting the connection component’s *Connected* property to **true**, it automatically establishes the connection when the first dataset component is opened or the first time you use an ADO command component to execute a command.

Accessing the connection object

Use the *ConnectionObject* property of *TADOConnection* to access the underlying ADO connection object. Using this reference it is possible to access properties and call methods of the underlying ADO Connection object.

Using the underlying ADO Connection object requires a good working knowledge of ADO objects in general and the ADO Connection object in particular. It is not recommended that you use the Connection object unless you are familiar with Connection object operations. Consult the Microsoft Data Access SDK help for specific information on using ADO Connection objects.

Fine-tuning a connection

One advantage of using *TADOConnection* for establishing the connection to a data store instead of simply supplying a connection string for your ADO command and dataset components, is that it provides a greater degree of control over the conditions and attributes of the connection.

Forcing asynchronous connections

Use the *ConnectOptions* property to force the connection to be asynchronous. Asynchronous connections allow your application to continue processing without waiting for the connection to be completely opened.

By default, *ConnectionOptions* is set to *coConnectUnspecified* which allows the server to decide the best type of connection. To explicitly make the connection asynchronous, set *ConnectOptions* to *coAsyncConnect*.

The example routines below enable and disable asynchronous connections in the specified connection component:

```
void __fastcall TForm1::AsyncConnectButtonClick(TObject *Sender)
{
    ADOConnection1->Close();
    ADOConnection1->ConnectOptions = coAsyncConnect;
    ADOConnection1->Open();
}

void __fastcall TForm1::ServerChoiceConnectButtonClick(TObject *Sender)
{
    ADOConnection1->Close();
    ADOConnection1->ConnectOptions = coConnectUnspecified;
    ADOConnection1->Open();
}
```

Controlling time-outs

You can control the amount of time that can elapse before attempted commands and connections are considered failed and are aborted using the *ConnectionTimeout* and *CommandTimeout* properties.

ConnectionTimeout specifies the amount of time, in seconds, before an attempt to connect to the data store times out. If the connection does not successfully compile prior to expiration of the time specified in *ConnectionTimeout*, the connection attempt is canceled:

```
ADOConnection1->ConnectionTimeout = 10; // seconds
ADOConnection1->Open();
```

CommandTimeout specifies the amount of time, in seconds, before an attempted command times out. If a command initiated by a call to the *Execute* method does not successfully complete prior to expiration of the time specified in *CommandTimeout*, the command is canceled and ADO generates an exception:

```
ADOConnection1->ConnectionTimeout = 10;
ADOConnection1->Execute("DROP TABLE Employee1997", cmdText, TExecuteOptions());
```

Indicating the types of operations the connection supports

ADO connections are established using a specific mode, similar to the mode you use when opening a file. The connection mode determines the permissions available to the connection, and hence the types of operations (such as reading and writing) that can be performed using that connection.

Use the *Mode* property to indicate the connection mode. The possible values are listed in Table 25.2:

Table 25.2 ADO connection modes

| Connect Mode | Meaning |
|------------------|---|
| cmUnknown | Permissions are not yet set for the connection or cannot be determined. |
| cmRead | Read-only permissions are available to the connection. |
| cmWrite | Write-only permissions are available to the connection. |
| cmReadWrite | Read/write permissions are available to the connection. |
| cmShareDenyRead | Prevents others from opening connections with read permissions. |
| cmShareDenyWrite | Prevents others from opening connection with write permissions. |
| cmShareExclusive | Prevents others from opening connection. |
| cmShareDenyNone | Prevents others from opening connection with any permissions. |

The possible values for *Mode* correspond to the *ConnectModeEnum* values of the *Mode* property on the underlying ADO connection object. See the Microsoft Data Access SDK help for more information on these values.

Specifying whether the connection automatically initiates transactions

Use the *Attributes* property to control the connection component's use of retaining commits and retaining aborts. When the connection component uses retaining commits, then every time your application commits a transaction, a new transaction is automatically started. When the connection component uses retaining aborts, then every time your application rolls back a transaction, a new transaction is automatically started.

Attributes is a set that can contain one, both, or neither of the constants *xaCommitRetaining* and *xaAbortRetaining*. When *Attributes* contains *xaCommitRetaining*, the connection uses retaining commits. When *Attributes* contains *xaAbortRetaining*, it uses retaining aborts.

Check whether either retaining commits or retaining aborts is enabled using the *Set Contains* method. Enable retaining commits or aborts by adding the appropriate value to the *attributes* property; disable them by subtracting the value. The example routines below respectively enable and disable retaining commits in an ADO connection component.

```
void __fastcall TForm1::RetainingCommitsOnButtonClick(TObject *Sender)
{
    ADOConnection1->Close()
    if (!ADOConnection1->Attributes.Contains(xaCommitRetaining))
        ADOConnection1->Attributes = TXactAttributes() << xaCommitRetaining;
    ADOConnection1->Open()
}

void __fastcall TForm1::RetainingCommitsOffButtonClick(TObject *Sender)
{
    ADOConnection1->Close()
    if (ADOConnection1->Attributes.Contains(xaCommitRetaining))
        ADOConnection1->Attributes = TXactAttributes() >> xaCommitRetaining;
    ADOConnection1->Open()
}
```

Accessing the connection's commands

Like other database connection components, you can access the datasets associated with the connection using the *DataSets* and *DataSetCount* properties. However, *dbGo* also includes *TADOCommand* objects, which are not datasets, but which maintain a similar relationship to the connection component.

You can use the *Commands* and *CommandCount* properties of *TADOConnection* to access the associated ADO command objects in the same way you use the *DataSets* and *DataSetCount* properties to access the associated datasets. Unlike *DataSets* and *DataSetCount*, which only list active datasets, *Commands* and *CommandCount* provide references to all *TADOCommand* components associated with the connection component.

Commands is a zero-based array of references to ADO command components. *CommandCount* provides a total count of all of the commands listed in *Commands*. You can use these properties together to iterate through all the commands that use a connection component, as illustrated in the following code:

```
for (int i = 0; i < ADOConnection2->CommandCount; i++)
    ADOConnection2->Commands[i]->Execute();
```

ADO connection events

In addition to the usual events that occur for all database connection components, *TADOConnection* generates a number of additional events that occur during normal usage.

Events when establishing a connection

In addition to the *BeforeConnect* and *AfterConnect* events that are common to all database connection components, *TADOConnection* also generates an *OnWillConnect* and *OnConnectComplete* event when establishing a connection. These events occur after the *BeforeConnect* event.

- *OnWillConnect* occurs before the ADO provider establishes a connection. It lets you make last minute changes to the connection string, provide a user name and password if you are handling your own login support, force an asynchronous connection, or even cancel the connection before it is opened.
- *OnConnectComplete* occurs after the connection is opened. Because *TADOConnection* can represent asynchronous connections, you should use *OnConnectComplete*, which occurs after the connection is opened or has failed due to an error condition, instead of the *AfterConnect* event, which occurs after the connection component instructs the ADO provider to open a connection, but not necessarily after the connection is opened.

Events when disconnecting

In addition to the *BeforeDisconnect* and *AfterDisconnect* events common to all database connection components, *TADOConnection* also generates an *OnDisconnect* event after

closing a connection. *OnDisconnect* occurs after the connection is closed but before any associated datasets are closed and before the *AfterDisconnect* event.

Events when managing transactions

The ADO connection component provides a number of events for detecting when transaction-related processes have been completed. These events indicate when a transaction process initiated by a *BeginTrans*, *CommitTrans*, and *RollbackTrans* method has been successfully completed at the data store.

- The *OnBeginTransComplete* event occurs when the data store has successfully started a transaction after a call to the *BeginTrans* method.
- The *OnCommitTransComplete* event occurs after a transaction is successfully committed due to a call to *CommitTrans*.
- The *OnRollbackTransComplete* event occurs after a transaction is successfully aborted due to a call to *RollbackTrans*.

Other events

ADO connection components introduce two additional events you can use to respond to notifications from the underlying ADO connection object:

- The *OnExecuteComplete* event occurs after the connection component executes a command on the data store (for example, after calling the *Execute* method). *OnExecuteComplete* indicates whether the execution was successful.
- The *OnInfoMessage* event occurs when the underlying connection object provides detailed information after an operation is completed. The *OnInfoMessage* event handler receives the interface to an ADO Error object that contains the detailed information and a status code indicating whether the operation was successful.

Using ADO datasets

ADO dataset components encapsulate the ADO Recordset object. They inherit the common dataset capabilities described in Chapter 22, “Understanding datasets,” using ADO to provide the implementation. In order to use an ADO dataset, you must familiarize yourself with these common features.

In addition to the common dataset features, all ADO datasets add properties, events, and methods for

- Connecting to an ADO data store.
- Accessing the underlying Recordset object.
- Filtering records based on bookmarks.
- Fetching records asynchronously.
- Performing batch updates (caching updates).
- Using files on disk to store data.

There are four ADO datasets:

- *TADOTable*, a table-type dataset that represents all of the rows and columns of a single database table. See “Using table type datasets” on page 22-25 for information on using *TADOTable* and other table-type datasets.
- *TADOQuery*, a query-type dataset that encapsulates an SQL statement and enables applications to access the resulting records, if any. See “Using query-type datasets” on page 22-41 for information on using *TADOQuery* and other query-type datasets.
- *TADOStoredProc*, a stored procedure-type dataset that executes a stored procedure defined on a database server. See “Using stored procedure-type datasets” on page 22-48 for information on using *TADOStoredProc* and other stored procedure-type datasets.
- *TADODataset*, a general-purpose dataset that includes the capabilities of the other three types. See “Using TADODataset” on page 25-15 for a description of features unique to *TADODataset*.

Note When using ADO to access database information, you do not need to use a dataset such as *TADOQuery* to represent SQL commands that do not return a cursor. Instead, you can use *TADOCommand*, a simple component that is not a dataset. For details on *TADOCommand*, see “Using Command objects” on page 25-16.

Connecting an ADO dataset to a data store

ADO datasets can connect to an ADO data store either collectively or individually.

When connecting datasets collectively, set the *Connection* property of each dataset to a *TADOConnection* component. Each dataset then uses the ADO connection component’s connection.

```
ADODataset1->Connection = ADOConnection1;
ADODataset2->Connection = ADOConnection1;
...
```

Among the advantages of connecting datasets collectively are:

- The datasets share the connection object’s attributes.
- Only one connection need be set up: that of the *TADOConnection*.
- The datasets can participate in transactions.

For more information on using *TADOConnection* see “Connecting to ADO data stores” on page 25-2.

When connecting datasets individually, set the *ConnectionString* property of each dataset. Each dataset that uses *ConnectionString* establishes its own connection to the data store, independent of any other dataset connection in the application.

The *ConnectionString* property of ADO datasets works the same way as the *ConnectionString* property of *TADOConnection*: it is a set of semicolon-delimited connection parameters such as the following:

```
ADODataset1->ConnectionString = "Provider=YourProvider;Password=SecretWord;";
ADODataset1->ConnectionString += "User ID=JaneDoe;SERVER=PURGATORY";
ADODataset1->ConnectionString += "UID=JaneDoe;PWD=SecretWord;";
ADODataset1->ConnectionString += "Initial Catalog=Employee";
```

At design time you can use the Connection String Editor to help you build the connection string. For more information about connection strings, see “Connecting to a data store using TADOConnection” on page 25-3.

Working with record sets

The *Recordset* property provides direct access to the ADO recordset object underlying the dataset component. Using this object, it is possible to access properties and call methods of the recordset object from an application. Use of *Recordset* to directly access the underlying ADO recordset object requires a good working knowledge of ADO objects in general and the ADO recordset object in specific. Using the recordset object directly is not recommended unless you are familiar with recordset object operations. Consult the Microsoft Data Access SDK help for specific information on using ADO recordset objects.

The *RecordsetState* property indicates the current state of the underlying recordset object. *RecordsetState* corresponds to the *State* property of the ADO recordset object. The value of *RecordsetState* is either *stOpen*, *stExecuting*, or *stFetching*. (*TObjectState*, the type of the *RecordsetState* property, defines other values, but only *stOpen*, *stExecuting*, and *stFetching* pertain to recordsets.) A value of *stOpen* indicates that the recordset is currently idle. A value of *stExecuting* indicates that it is executing a command. A value of *stFetching* indicates that it is fetching rows from the associated table (or tables).

Use *RecordsetState* values to perform actions dependent on the current state of the dataset. For example, a routine that updates data might check the *RecordsetState* property to see whether the dataset is active and not in the process of other activities such as connecting or fetching data.

Filtering records based on bookmarks

ADO datasets support the common dataset feature of using bookmarks to mark and return to specific records. Also like other datasets, ADO datasets let you use filters to limit the available records in the dataset. ADO datasets provide an additional feature that combines these two common dataset features: the ability to filter on a set of records identified by bookmarks.

To filter on a set of bookmarks,

- 1 Use the *Bookmark* method to mark the records you want to include in the filtered dataset.
- 2 Call the *FilterOnBookmarks* method to filter the dataset so that only the bookmarked records appear.

This process is illustrated below:

```
void __fastcall TForm1::Button1Click(TObject *Sender)
{
    TBookmarkStr BM1;
    TBookmarkStr BM2;
    BM1 = ADODataset1->Bookmark;
    BMList->Add(BM1);
    ADODataset1->MoveBy(3);
}
```

```

BM2 = ADODataset1->Bookmark;
BMList->Add(BM2);
ADODataset1->FilterOnBookmarks (ARRAYOFCONST ((BM1,BM2)));
}

```

Note that the example above also adds the bookmarks to a list object named BMList. This is necessary so that the application can later free the bookmarks when they are no longer needed.

For details on using bookmarks, see “Marking and returning to records” on page 22-9. For details on other types of filters, see “Displaying and editing a subset of data using filters” on page 22-12.

Fetching records asynchronously

Unlike other datasets, ADO datasets can fetch their data asynchronously. This allows your application to continue performing other tasks while the dataset populates itself with data from the data store.

To control whether the dataset fetches data asynchronously, if it fetches data at all, use the *ExecuteOptions* property. *ExecuteOptions* governs how the dataset fetches its records when you call *Open* or set *Active* to **true**. If the dataset represents a query or stored procedure that does not return any records, *ExecuteOptions* governs how the query or stored procedure is executed when you call *ExecSQL* or *ExecProc*.

ExecuteOptions is a set that includes zero or more of the following values:

Table 25.3 Execution options for ADO datasets

| Execute Option | Meaning |
|-------------------------|---|
| eoAsyncExecute | The command or data fetch operation is executed asynchronously. |
| eoAsyncFetch | The dataset first fetches the number of records specified by the <i>CacheSize</i> property synchronously, then fetches any remaining rows asynchronously. |
| eoAsyncFetchNonBlocking | Asynchronous data fetches or command execution do not block the current thread of execution. |
| eoExecuteNoRecords | A command or stored procedure that does not return data. If any rows are retrieved, they are discarded and not returned. |

Using batch updates

One approach for caching updates is to connect the ADO dataset to a client dataset using a dataset provider. This approach is discussed in “Using a client dataset to cache updates” on page 27-15.

However, ADO dataset components provide their own support for cached updates, which they call batch updates. The following table lists the correspondences between caching updates using a client dataset and using the batch updates features:

Table 25.4 Comparison of ADO and client dataset cached updates

| ADO dataset | TClientDataSet | Description |
|--------------|--|--|
| LockType | Not used: client datasets always cache updates | Specifies whether the dataset is opened in batch update mode. |
| CursorType | Not used: client datasets always work with an in-memory snapshot of data | Specifies how isolated the ADO dataset is from changes on the server. |
| RecordStatus | UpdateStatus | Indicates what update, if any, has occurred on the current row. <i>RecordStatus</i> provides more information than <i>UpdateStatus</i> . |
| FilterGroup | StatusFilter | Specifies which type of records are available. <i>FilterGroup</i> provides a wider variety of information. |
| UpdateBatch | ApplyUpdates | Applies the cached updates back to the database server. Unlike <i>ApplyUpdates</i> , <i>UpdateBatch</i> lets you limit the types of updates to be applied. |
| CancelBatch | CancelUpdates | Discards pending updates, reverting to the original values. Unlike <i>CancelUpdates</i> , <i>CancelBatch</i> lets you limit the types of updates to be canceled. |

Using the batch updates features of ADO dataset components is a matter of:

- Opening the dataset in batch update mode
- Inspecting the update status of individual rows
- Filtering multiple rows based on update status
- Applying the batch updates to base tables
- Canceling batch updates

Opening the dataset in batch update mode

To open an ADO dataset in batch update mode, it must meet these criteria:

- 1 The component's *CursorType* property must be *ctKeySet* (the default property value) or *ctStatic*.
- 2 The *LockType* property must be *ltBatchOptimistic*.
- 3 The command must be a SELECT query.

Before activating the dataset component, set the *CursorType* and *LockType* properties as indicated above. Assign a SELECT statement to the component's *CommandText* property (for *TADODataset*) or the *SQL* property (for *TADOQuery*). For *TADOStoredProc* components, set the *ProcedureName* to the name of a stored procedure that returns a result set. These properties can be set at design-time through the Object Inspector or programmatically at runtime. The example below shows the preparation of a *TADODataset* component for batch update mode.

```
ADODataset1->CursorLocation = clUseClient;
ADODataset1->CursorType = ctStatic;
ADODataset1->LockType = ltBatchOptimistic;
```

```
ADODataset1->CommandType = cmdText;
ADODataset1->CommandText = "SELECT * FROM Employee";
```

After a dataset has been opened in batch update mode, all changes to the data are cached rather than applied directly to the base tables.

Inspecting the update status of individual rows

Determine the update status of a given row by making it current and then inspecting the *RecordStatus* property of the ADO data component. *RecordStatus* reflects the update status of the current row and only that row.

```
switch (ADOQuery->RecordStatus)
{
    case rsUnmodified:
        StatusBar1->Panels->Items[0]->Text = "Unchanged record";
        break;
    case rsModified:
        StatusBar1->Panels->Items[0]->Text = "Changed record";
        break;
    case rsDeleted:
        StatusBar1->Panels->Items[0]->Text = "Deleted record";
        break;
    case rsNew:
        StatusBar1->Panels->Items[0]->Text = "New record";
        break;
}
```

Filtering multiple rows based on update status

Filter a recordset to show only those rows that belong to a group of rows with the same update status using the *FilterGroup* property. Set *FilterGroup* to the *TFilterGroup* constant that represents the update status of rows to display. A value of *fgNone* (the default value for this property) specifies that no filtering is applied and all rows are visible regardless of update status (except rows marked for deletion). The example below causes only pending batch update rows to be visible.

```
FilterGroup = fgPendingRecords;
Filtered = true;
```

Note For the *FilterGroup* property to have an effect, the ADO dataset component's *Filtered* property must be set to **true**.

Applying the batch updates to base tables

Apply pending data changes that have not yet been applied or canceled by calling the *UpdateBatch* method. Rows that have been changed and are applied have their changes put into the base tables on which the recordset is based. A cached row marked for deletion causes the corresponding base table row to be deleted. A record insertion (exists in the cache but not the base table) is added to the base table. Modified rows cause the columns in the corresponding rows in the base tables to be changed to the new column values in the cache.

UpdateBatch takes one parameter, a *TAffectRecords* value. If any value except *arAll* is passed, only a subset of the pending changes are applied. The example below applies only the currently active row to be applied:

```
ADODataset1->UpdateBatch(arCurrent);
```

Canceling batch updates

Cancel pending data changes that have not yet been canceled or applied by calling the *CancelBatch* method. When you cancel pending batch updates, field values on rows that have been changed revert to the values that existed prior to the last call to *CancelBatch* or *UpdateBatch*, if either has been called, or prior to the current pending batch of changes.

CancelBatch takes one parameter, a *TAffectRecords* value. If any value except *arAll* is passed, only a subset of the pending changes are canceled. The example below cancels all pending changes:

```
ADODataset1->CancelBatch(arAll);
```

Loading data from and saving data to files

The data retrieved via an ADO dataset component can be saved to a file for later retrieval on the same or a different computer. The data is saved in one of two proprietary formats: ADTG or XML. These two file formats are the only formats supported by ADO. However, both formats are not necessarily supported in all versions of ADO. Consult the ADO documentation for the version you are using to determine what save file formats are supported.

Save the data to a file using the *SaveToFile* method. *SaveToFile* takes two parameters, the name of the file to which data is saved, and the format (ADTG or XML) in which to save the data. Indicate the format for the saved file by setting the *Format* parameter to *pfADTG* or *pfXML*. If the file specified by the *FileName* parameter already exists, *SaveToFile* throws an *EOleException*.

Retrieve the data from file using the *LoadFromFile* method. *LoadFromFile* takes a single parameter, the name of the file to load. If the specified file does not exist, *LoadFromFile* throws an *EOleException* exception. On calling the *LoadFromFile* method, the dataset component is automatically activated.

In the example below, the first procedure saves the dataset retrieved by the *TADODataset* component *ADODataset1* to a file. The target file is an ADTG file named *SaveFile*, saved to a local drive. The second procedure loads this saved file into the *TADODataset* component *ADODataset2*.

```
void __fastcall TForm1::SaveBtnClick(TObject *Sender)
{
    if (FileExists("c:\\SaveFile"))
    {
        DeleteFile("c:\\SaveFile");
        StatusBar1->Panels->Items[0]->Text = "Save file deleted!";
    }
    ADODataset1->SaveToFile("c:\\SaveFile");
}

void __fastcall TForm1::LoadBtnClick(TObject *Sender)
```

```

{
    if (FileExists("c:\\SaveFile"))
        ADODataset1->LoadFromFile("c:\\SaveFile");
    else
        StatusBar1->Panels->Items[0]->Text = "Save file does not exist!";
}

```

The datasets that save and load the data need not be on the same form as above, in the same application, or even on the same computer. This allows for the briefcase-style transfer of data from one computer to another.

Using TADODataset

TADODataset is a general-purpose dataset for working with data from an ADO data store. Unlike the other ADO dataset components, *TADODataset* is not a table-type, query-type, or stored procedure-type dataset. Instead, it can function as any of these types:

- Like a table-type dataset, *TADODataset* lets you represent all of the rows and columns of a single database table. To use it in this way, set the *CommandType* property to *cmdTable* and the *CommandText* property to the name of the table. *TADODataset* supports table-type tasks such as
 - Assigning indexes to sort records or form the basis of record-based searches. In addition to the standard index properties and methods described in “Sorting records with indexes” on page 22-26, *TADODataset* lets you sort using temporary indexes by setting the *Sort* property. Indexed-based searches performed using the *Seek* method use the current index.
 - Emptying the dataset. The *DeleteRecords* method provides greater control than related methods in other table-type datasets, because it lets you specify what records to delete.

The table-type tasks supported by *TADODataset* are available even when you are not using a *CommandType* of *cmdTable*.

- Like a query-type dataset, *TADODataset* lets you specify a single SQL command that is executed when you open the dataset. To use it in this way, set the *CommandType* property to *cmdText* and the *CommandText* property to the SQL command you want to execute. At design time, you can double-click on the *CommandText* property in the Object Inspector to use the Command Text editor for help in constructing the SQL command. *TADODataset* supports query-type tasks such as
 - Using parameters in the query text. See “Using parameters in queries” on page 22-43 for details on query parameters.
 - Setting up master/detail relationships using parameters. See “Establishing master/detail relationships using parameters” on page 22-46 for details on how to do this.
 - Preparing the query in advance to improve performance by setting the *Prepared* property to **true**.

- Like a stored procedure-type dataset, *TADODataset* lets you specify a stored procedure that is executed when you open the dataset. To use it in this way, set the *CommandType* property to *cmdStoredProc* and the *CommandText* property to the name of the stored procedure. *TADODataset* supports stored procedure-type tasks such as
 - Working with stored procedure parameters. See “Working with stored procedure parameters” on page 22-50 for details on stored procedure parameters.
 - Fetching multiple result sets. See “Fetching multiple result sets” on page 22-53 for details on how to do this.
 - Preparing the stored procedure in advance to improve performance by setting the *Prepared* property to **true**.

In addition, *TADODataset* lets you work with data stored in files by setting the *CommandType* property to *cmdFile* and the *CommandText* property to the file name.

Before you set the *CommandText* and *CommandType* properties, you should link the *TADODataset* to a data store by setting the *Connection* or *ConnectionString* property. This process is described in “Connecting an ADO dataset to a data store” on page 25-9. As an alternative, you can use an RDS DataSpace object to connect the *TADODataset* to an ADO-based application server. To use an RDS DataSpace object, set the *RDSConnection* property to a *TRDSConnection* object.

Using Command objects

In the ADO environment, commands are textual representations of provider-specific action requests. Typically, they are Data Definition Language (DDL) and Data Manipulation Language (DML) SQL statements. The language used in commands is provider-specific, but usually compliant with the SQL-92 standard for the SQL language.

Although you can always execute commands using *TADOQuery*, you may not want the overhead of using a dataset component, especially if the command does not return a result set. As an alternative, you can use the *TADOCommand* component, which is a lighter-weight object designed to execute commands, one command at a time. *TADOCommand* is intended primarily for executing those commands that do not return result sets, such as Data Definition Language (DDL) SQL statements. Through an overloaded version of its *Execute* method, however, it is capable of returning a result set that can be assigned to the *RecordSet* property of an ADO dataset component.

In general, working with *TADOCommand* is very similar to working with *TADODataset*, except that you can't use the standard dataset methods to fetch data, navigate records, edit data, and so on. *TADOCommand* objects connect to a data store in the same way as ADO datasets. See “Connecting an ADO dataset to a data store” on page 25-9 for details.

The following topics provide details on how to specify and execute commands using *TADOCommand*.

Specifying the command

Specify commands for a *TADOCCommand* component using the *CommandText* property. Like *TADODataset*, *TADOCCommand* lets you specify the command in different ways, depending on the *CommandType* property. Possible values for *CommandType* include: *cmdText* (used if the command is an SQL statement), *cmdTable* (if it is a table name), and *cmdStoredProc* (if the command is the name of a stored procedure). At design-time, select the appropriate command type from the list in the Object Inspector. At runtime, assign a value of type *TCommandType* to the *CommandType* property.

```
ADOCCommand1->CommandText = "AddEmployee";
ADOCCommand1->CommandType = cmdStoredProc;
...
```

If no specific type is specified, the server is left to decide as best it can based on the command in *CommandText*.

CommandText can contain the text of an SQL query that includes parameters or the name of a stored procedure that uses parameters. You must then supply parameter values, which are bound to the parameters before executing the command. See “Handling command parameters” on page 25-18 for details.

Using the Execute method

Before *TADOCCommand* can execute its command, it must have a valid connection to a data store. This is established just as with an ADO dataset. See “Connecting an ADO dataset to a data store” on page 25-9 for details.

To execute the command, call the *Execute* method. *Execute* is an overloaded method that lets you choose the most appropriate way to execute the command.

For commands that do not require any parameters and for which you do not need to know how many records were affected, call *Execute* without any parameters:

```
ADOCCommand1->CommandText = "UpdateInventory";
ADOCCommand1->CommandType = cmdStoredProc;
ADOCCommand1->Execute();
```

Other versions of *Execute* let you provide parameter values using a Variant array, and to obtain the number of records affected by the command.

For information on executing commands that return a result set, see “Retrieving result sets with commands” on page 25-18.

Canceling commands

If you are executing the command asynchronously, then after calling *Execute* you can abort the execution by calling the *Cancel* method:

```
void __fastcall TDataForm::ExecuteButtonClick(TObject *Sender)
{
    ADOCCommand1->Execute();
}
```

```

    }

    void __fastcall TDataForm::CancelButtonClick(TObject *Sender)
    {
        ADOCommand1->Cancel();
    }

```

The *Cancel* method only has an effect if there is a command pending and it was executed asynchronously (*eoAsynchExecute* is in the *ExecuteOptions* parameter of the *Execute* method). A command is said to be pending if the *Execute* method has been called but the command has not yet been completed or timed out.

A command times out if it is not completed or canceled before the number of seconds specified in the *CommandTimeout* property expire. By default, commands time out after 30 seconds.

Retrieving result sets with commands

Unlike *TADOQuery* components, which use different methods to execute depending on whether they return a result set, *TADOCommand* always uses the *Execute* command to execute the command, regardless of whether it returns a result set. When the command returns a result set, *Execute* returns an interface to the ADO *_RecordSet* interface.

The most convenient way to work with this interface is to assign it to the *RecordSet* property of an ADO dataset.

For example, the following code uses *TADOCommand* (*ADOCommand1*) to execute a *SELECT* query, which returns a result set. This result set is then assigned to the *RecordSet* property of a *TADODataset* component (*ADODataset1*).

```

ADOCommand1->CommandText = "SELECT Company, State ";
ADOCommand1->CommandText += "FROM customer ";
ADOCommand1->CommandText += "WHERE State = :StateParam";
ADOCommand1->CommandType = cmdText;
ADOCommand1->Parameters->ParamByName("StateParam")->Value = "HI";
ADOCommand1->Recordset = ADOCommand1->Execute();

```

As soon as the result set is assigned to the ADO dataset's *Recordset* property, the dataset is automatically activated and the data is available.

Handling command parameters

There are two ways in which a *TADOCommand* object may use parameters:

- The *CommandText* property can specify a query that includes parameters. Working with parameterized queries in *TADOCommand* works like using a parameterized query in an ADO dataset. See "Using parameters in queries" on page 22-43 for details on parameterized queries.

- The *CommandText* property can specify a stored procedure that uses parameters. Stored procedure parameters work much the same using *TADOCommand* as with an ADO dataset. See “Working with stored procedure parameters” on page 22-50 for details on stored procedure parameters.

There are two ways to supply parameter values when working with *TADOCommand*: you can supply them when you call the *Execute* method, or you can specify them ahead of time using the *Parameters* property.

The *Execute* method is overloaded to include versions that take a set of parameter values as a Variant array. This is useful when you want to supply parameter values quickly without the overhead of setting up the *Parameters* property:

```
Variant Values[2];
Values[0] = Edit1->Text;
Values[1] = Date();
ADODCommand1.Execute(VarArrayOf(Values,1));
```

When working with stored procedures that return output parameters, you must use the *Parameters* property instead. Even if you do not need to read output parameters, you may prefer to use the *Parameters* property, which lets you supply parameters at design time and lets you work with *TADOCommand* properties in the same way you work with the parameters on datasets.

When you set the *CommandText* property, the *Parameters* property is automatically updated to reflect the parameters in the query or those used by the stored procedure. At design-time, you can use the Parameter Editor to access parameters, by clicking the ellipsis button for the *Parameters* property in the Object Inspector. At runtime, use properties and methods of *TParameter* to set (or get) the values of each parameter.

```
ADODCommand1->CommandText = "INSERT INTO Talley ";
ADODCommand1->CommandText += "(Counter) ";
ADODCommand1->CommandText += "VALUES (:NewValueParam)";
ADODCommand1->CommandType = cmdText;
ADODCommand1->Parameters->ParamByName("NewValueParam")->Value = 57;
ADODCommand1->Execute()
```


Using unidirectional datasets

dbExpress is a set of lightweight database drivers that provide fast access to SQL database servers. For each supported database, *dbExpress* provides a driver that adapts the server-specific software to a set of uniform *dbExpress* classes. When you deploy a database application that uses *dbExpress*, you need only include a dll (the server-specific driver) with the application files you build.

dbExpress lets you access databases using unidirectional datasets. Unidirectional datasets are designed for quick lightweight access to database information, with minimal overhead. Like other datasets, they can send an SQL command to the database server, and if the command returns a set of records, obtain a cursor for accessing those records. However, unidirectional datasets can only retrieve a unidirectional cursor. They do not buffer data in memory, which makes them faster and less resource-intensive than other types of dataset. However, because there are no buffered records, unidirectional datasets are also less flexible than other datasets. Many of the capabilities introduced by *TDataSet* are either unimplemented in unidirectional datasets, or cause them to raise exceptions. For example:

- The only supported navigation methods are the *First* and *Next* methods. Most others raise exceptions. Some, such as the methods involved in bookmark support, simply do nothing.
- There is no built-in support for editing because editing requires a buffer to hold the edits. The *CanModify* property is always **false**, so attempts to put the dataset into edit mode always fail. You can, however, use unidirectional datasets to update data using an SQL UPDATE command or provide conventional editing support by using a *dbExpress*-enabled client dataset or connecting the dataset to a client dataset (see “Connecting to another dataset” on page 18-10).
- There is no support for filters, because filters work with multiple records, which requires buffering. If you try to filter a unidirectional dataset, it raises an exception. Instead, all limits on what data appears must be imposed using the SQL command that defines the data for the dataset.

- There is no support for lookup fields, which require buffering to hold multiple records containing lookup values. If you define a lookup field on a unidirectional dataset, it does not work properly.

Despite these limitations, unidirectional datasets are a powerful way to access data. They are the fastest data access mechanism, and very simple to use and deploy.

Types of unidirectional datasets

The *dbExpress* page of the component palette contains four types of unidirectional dataset: *TSQLDataSet*, *TSQLQuery*, *TSQLTable*, and *TSQLStoredProc*.

TSQLDataSet is the most general of the four. You can use an SQL dataset to represent any data available through *dbExpress*, or to send commands to a database accessed through *dbExpress*. This is the recommended component to use for working with database tables in new database applications.

TSQLQuery is a query-type dataset that encapsulates an SQL statement and enables applications to access the resulting records, if any. See “Using query-type datasets” on page 22-41 for information on using query-type datasets.

TSQLTable is a table-type dataset that represents all of the rows and columns of a single database table. See “Using table type datasets” on page 22-25 for information on using table-type datasets.

TSQLStoredProc is a stored procedure-type dataset that executes a stored procedure defined on a database server. See “Using stored procedure-type datasets” on page 22-48 for information on using stored procedure-type datasets.

Note The *dbExpress* page also includes *TSQLClientDataSet*, which is not a unidirectional dataset. Rather, it is a client dataset that uses a unidirectional dataset internally to access its data

Connecting to the database server

The first step when working with a unidirectional dataset is to connect it to a database server. At design time, once a dataset has an active connection to a database server, the Object Inspector can provide drop-down lists of values for other properties. For example, when representing a stored procedure, you must have an active connection before the Object Inspector can list what stored procedures are available on the server.

The connection to a database server is represented by a separate *TSQLConnection* component. You work with *TSQLConnection* like any other database connection component. For information about database connection components, see Chapter 21, “Connecting to databases.”

To use *TSQLConnection* to connect a unidirectional dataset to a database server, set the *SQLConnection* property. At design time, you can choose the SQL connection

component from a drop-down list in the Object Inspector. If you make this assignment at runtime, be sure that the connection is active:

```
SQLDataSet1->SQLConnection = SQLConnection1;
SQLConnection1->Connected = true;
```

Typically, all unidirectional datasets in an application share the same connection component, unless you are working with data from multiple database servers. However, you may want to use a separate connection for each dataset if the server does not support multiple statements per connection. Check whether the database server requires a separate connection for each dataset by reading the *MaxStmtsPerConn* property. By default, *TSQLConnection* generates connections as needed when the server limits the number of statements that can be executed over a connection. If you want to keep stricter track of the connections you are using, set the *AutoClone* property to **false**.

Before you assign the *SQLConnection* property, you will need to set up the *TSQLConnection* component so that it identifies the database server and any required connection parameters (including which database to use on the server, the host name of the machine running the server, the username, password, and so on).

Setting up TSQLConnection

In order to describe a database connection in sufficient detail for *TSQLConnection* to open a connection, you must identify both the driver to use and a set of connection parameters that are passed to that driver.

Identifying the driver

The driver is identified by the *DriverName* property, which is the name of an installed *dbExpress* driver, such as INTERBASE, ORACLE, MYSQL, or DB2. The driver name is associated with two files

- The *dbExpress* driver. This is a dynamic-link library with a name like *dbexpint.dll*, *dbexpora.dll*, *dbexpmys.dll*, or *dbexpdb2.dll*.
- The dynamic-link library provided by the database vendor for client-side support.

The relationship between these two files and the database name is stored in a file called *dbxdrivers.ini*, which is updated when you install a *dbExpress* driver.

Typically, you do not need to worry about these files because the SQL connection component looks them up in *dbxdrivers.ini* when given the value of *DriverName*. When you set the *DriverName* property, *TSQLConnection* automatically sets the *LibraryName* and *VendorLib* properties to the names of the associated DLLs. Once *LibraryName* and *VendorLib* have been set, your application does not need to rely on *dbxdrivers.ini*. (That is, you do not need to deploy *dbxdrivers.ini* with your application unless you set the *DriverName* property at runtime.)

Specifying connection parameters

The *Params* property is a string list that lists name/value pairs. Each pair has the form *Name=Value*, where *Name* is the name of the parameter, and *Value* is the value you want to assign.

The particular parameters you need depend on the database server you are using. However, one particular parameter, *Database*, is required for all servers. Its value depends on the server you are using. For example, with InterBase, *Database* is the name of the .gdb file, with ORACLE it is the entry in TNSNames.ora, while with DB2, it is the client-side node name.

Other typical parameters include the *User_Name* (the name to use when logging in), *Password* (the password for *User_Name*), *HostName* (the machine name or IP address of where the server is located), and *TransIsolation* (the degree to which transactions you introduce are aware of changes made by other transactions). When you specify a driver name, the *Params* property is preloaded with all the parameters you need for that driver type, initialized to default values.

Because *Params* is a string list, at design time you can double-click on the *Params* property in the Object Inspector to edit the parameters using the String List editor. At runtime, use the *Params::Values* property to assign values to individual parameters.

Naming a connection description

Although you can always specify a connection using only the *DatabaseName* and *Params* properties, it can be more convenient to name a specific combination and then just identify the connection by name. You can name *dbExpress* database and parameter combinations, which are then saved in a file called dbxconnections.ini. The name of each combination is called a connection name.

Once you have defined the connection name, you can identify a database connection by simply setting the *ConnectionName* property to a valid connection name. Setting *ConnectionName* automatically sets the *DriverName* and *Params* properties. Once *ConnectionName* is set, you can edit the *Params* property to create temporary differences from the saved set of parameter values, but changing the *DriverName* property clears both *Params* and *ConnectionName*.

One advantage of using connection names arises when you develop your application using one database (for example Local InterBase), but deploy it for use with another (such as ORACLE). In that case, *DriverName* and *Params* will likely differ on the system where you deploy your application from the values you use during development. You can switch between the two connection descriptions easily by using two versions of the dbxconnections.ini file. At design-time, your application loads the *DriverName* and *Params* from the design-time version of dbxconnections.ini. Then, when you deploy your application, it loads these values from a separate version of dbxconnections.ini that uses the “real” database. However, for this to work, you must instruct your connection component to reload the *DriverName* and *Params* properties at runtime. There are two ways to do this:

- Set the *LoadParamsOnConnect* property to **true**. This causes *TSQLConnection* to automatically set *DriverName* and *Params* to the values associated with *ConnectionName* in dbxconnections.ini when the connection is opened.

- Call the *LoadParamsFromIniFile* method. This method sets *DriverName* and *Params* to the values associated with *ConnectionName* in *dbxconnections.ini* (or in another file that you specify). You might choose to use this method if you want to then override certain parameter values before opening the connection.

Using the Connection Editor

The relationships between connection names and their associated driver and connection parameters is stored in the *dbxconnections.ini* file. You can create or modify these associations using the Connection Editor.

To display the Connection Editor, double-click on the *TSQLErrorConnection* component. The Connection Editor appears, with a drop-down list containing all available drivers, a list of connection names for the currently selected driver, and a table listing the connection parameters for the currently selected connection name.

You can use this dialog to indicate the connection to use by selecting a driver and connection name. Once you have chosen the configuration you want, click the Test Connection button to check that you have chosen a valid configuration.

In addition, you can use this dialog to edit the named connections in *dbxconnections.ini*:

- Edit the parameter values in the parameter table to change the currently selected named connection. When you exit the dialog by clicking OK, the new parameter values are saved to *dbxconnections.ini*.
- Click the Add Connection button to define a new named connection. A dialog appears where you specify the driver to use and the name of the new connection. Once the connection is named, edit the parameters to specify the connection you want and click the OK button to save the new connection to *dbxconnections.ini*.
- Click the Delete Connection button to delete the currently selected named connection from *dbxconnections.ini*.
- Click the Rename Connection button to change the name of the currently selected named connection. Note that any edits you have made to the parameters are saved with the new name when you click the OK button.

Specifying what data to display

There are a number of ways to specify what data a unidirectional dataset represents. Which method you choose depends on the type of unidirectional dataset you are using and whether the information comes from a single database table, the results of a query, or from a stored procedure.

When you work with a *TSQLErrorDataSet* component, use the *CommandType* property to indicate where the dataset gets its data. *CommandType* can take any of the following values:

- *ctQuery*: When *CommandType* is *ctQuery*, *TSQLErrorDataSet* executes a query you specify. If the query is a SELECT command, the dataset contains the resulting set of records.

- *ctTable*: When *CommandType* is *ctTable*, *TSQLDataSet* retrieves all of the records from a specified table.
- *ctStoredProc*: When *CommandType* is *ctStoredProc*, *TSQLDataSet* executes a stored procedure. If the stored procedure returns a cursor, the dataset contains the returned records.

Note You can also populate the unidirectional dataset with metadata about what is available on the server. For information on how to do this, see “Fetching metadata into a unidirectional dataset” on page 26-12.

Representing the results of a query

Using a query is the most general way to specify a set of records. Queries are simply commands written in SQL. You can use either *TSQLDataSet* or *TSQLQuery* to represent the result of a query.

When using *TSQLDataSet*, set the *CommandType* property to *ctQuery* and assign the text of the query statement to the *CommandText* property. When using *TSQLQuery*, assign the query to the *SQL* property instead. These properties work the same way for all general-purpose or query-type datasets. “Specifying the query” on page 22-42 discusses them in greater detail.

When you specify the query, it can include parameters, or variables, the values of which can be varied at design time or runtime. Parameters can replace data values that appear in the SQL statement. Using parameters in queries and supplying values for those parameters is discussed in “Using parameters in queries” on page 22-43.

SQL defines queries such as UPDATE queries that perform actions on the server but do not return records. Such queries are discussed in “Executing commands that do not return records” on page 26-9.

Representing the records in a table

When you want to represent all of the fields and all of the records in a single underlying database table, you can use either *TSQLDataSet* or *TSQLTable* to generate the query for you rather than writing the SQL yourself.

Note If server performance is a concern, you may want to compose the query explicitly rather than relying on an automatically-generated query. Automatically-generated queries use wildcards rather than explicitly listing all of the fields in the table. This can result in slightly slower performance on the server. The wildcard (*) in automatically-generated queries is more robust to changes in the fields on the server.

Representing a table using TSQLDataSet

To make *TSQLDataSet* generate a query to fetch all fields and all records of a single database table, set the *CommandType* property to *ctTable*.

When *CommandType* is *ctTable*, *TSQLDataSet* generates a query based on the values of two properties:

- *CommandText* specifies the name of the database table that the *TSQLDataSet* object should represent.
- *SortFieldNames* lists the names of any fields to use to sort the data, in the order of significance.

For example, if you specify the following:

```
SQLDataSet1->CommandType = ctTable;
SQLDataSet1->CommandText = "Employee";
SQLDataSet1->SortFieldNames = "HireDate,Salary"
```

TSQLDataSet generates the following query, which lists all the records in the Employee table, sorted by HireDate and, within HireDate, by Salary:

```
select * from Employee order by HireDate, Salary
```

Representing a table using TSQLTable

When using *TSQLTable*, specify the table you want using the *TableName* property.

To specify the order of fields in the dataset, you must specify an index. There are two ways to do this:

- Set the *IndexName* property to the name of an index defined on the server that imposes the order you want.
- Set the *IndexFieldNames* property to a semicolon-delimited list of field names on which to sort. *IndexFieldNames* works like the *SortFieldNames* property of *TSQLDataSet*, except that it uses a semicolon instead of a comma as a delimiter.

Representing the results of a stored procedure

Stored procedures are sets of SQL statements that are named and stored on an SQL server. How you indicate the stored procedure you want to execute depends on the type of unidirectional dataset you are using.

When using *TSQLDataSet*, to specify a stored procedure:

- Set the *CommandType* property to *ctStoredProc*.
- Specify the name of the stored procedure as the value of the *CommandText* property:

```
SQLDataSet1->CommandType = ctStoredProc;
SQLDataSet1->CommandText = "MyStoredProcName";
```

When using *TSQLStoredProc*, you need only specify the name of the stored procedure as the value of the *StoredProcName* property.

```
SQLStoredProc1->StoredProcName = "MyStoredProcName";
```

After you have identified a stored procedure, your application may need to enter values for any input parameters of the stored procedure or retrieve the values of output parameters after you execute the stored procedure. See “Working with stored

procedure parameters” on page 22-50 for information about working with stored procedure parameters.

Fetching the data

Once you have specified the source of the data, you must fetch the data before your application can access it. Once the dataset has fetched the data, data-aware controls linked to the dataset through a data source automatically display data values and client datasets linked to the dataset through a provider can be populated with records.

As with any dataset, there are two ways to fetch the data for a unidirectional dataset:

- Set the *Active* property to **true**, either at design time in the Object Inspector, or in code at runtime:

```
CustQuery->Active = true;
```

- Call the *Open* method at runtime,

```
CustQuery->Open();
```

Use the *Active* property or the *Open* method with any unidirectional dataset that obtains records from the server. It does not matter whether these records come from a SELECT query (including automatically-generated queries when the *CommandType* is *ctTable*) or a stored procedure.

Preparing the dataset

Before a query or stored procedure can execute on the server, it must first be “prepared”. Preparing the dataset means that *dbExpress* and the server allocate resources for the statement and its parameters. If *CommandType* is *ctTable*, this is when the dataset generates its SELECT query. Any parameters that are not bound by the server are folded into a query at this point.

Unidirectional datasets are automatically prepared when you set *Active* to **true** or call the *Open* method. When you close the dataset, the resources allocated for executing the statement are freed. If you intend to execute the query or stored procedure more than once, you can improve performance by explicitly preparing the dataset before you open it the first time. To explicitly prepare a dataset, set its *Prepared* property to **true**.

```
CustQuery->Prepared = true;
```

When you explicitly prepare the dataset, the resources allocated for executing the statement are not freed until you set *Prepared* to **false**.

Set the *Prepared* property to **false** if you want to ensure that the dataset is re-prepared before it executes (for example, if you change a parameter value or the *SortFieldNames* property).

Fetching multiple datasets

Some stored procedures return multiple sets of records. The dataset only fetches the first set when you open it. In order to access the other sets of records, call the *NextRecordSet* method:

```
TCustomSQLDataSet *DataSet2 = SQLStoredProc1->NextRecordSet(nRows);
```

NextRecordSet returns a newly created *TCustomSQLDataSet* component that provides access to the next set of records. That is, the first time you call *NextRecordSet*, it returns a dataset for the second set of records. Calling *NextRecordSet* returns a third dataset, and so on, until there are no more sets of records. When there are no additional datasets, *NextRecordSet* returns NULL.

Executing commands that do not return records

You can use a unidirectional dataset even if the query or stored procedure it represents does not return any records. Such commands include statements that use Data Definition Language (DDL) or Data Manipulation Language (DML) statements other than SELECT statements (For example, INSERT, DELETE, UPDATE, CREATE INDEX, and ALTER TABLE commands do not return any records). The language used in commands is server-specific, but usually compliant with the SQL-92 standard for the SQL language.

The SQL command you execute must be acceptable to the server you are using. Unidirectional datasets neither evaluate the SQL nor execute it. They merely pass the command to the server for execution.

Note If the command does not return any records, you do not need to use a unidirectional dataset at all, because there is no need for the dataset methods that provide access to a set of records. The SQL connection component that connects to the database server can be used directly to execute a command on the server. See “Sending commands to the server” on page 21-10 for details.

Specifying the command to execute

With unidirectional datasets, the way you specify the command to execute is the same whether the command results in a dataset or not. That is:

When using *TSQLDataSet*, use the *CommandType* and *CommandText* properties to specify the command:

- If *CommandType* is *ctQuery*, *CommandText* is the SQL statement to pass to the server.
- If *CommandType* is *ctStoredProc*, *CommandText* is the name of a stored procedure to execute.

When using *TSQLQuery*, use the *SQL* property to specify the SQL statement to pass to the server.

When using *TSQLStoredProc*, use the *StoredProcName* property to specify the name of the stored procedure to execute.

Just as you specify the command in the same way as when you are retrieving records, you work with query parameters or stored procedure parameters the same way as with queries and stored procedures that return records. See “Using parameters in queries” on page 22-43 and “Working with stored procedure parameters” on page 22-50 for details.

Executing the command

To execute a query or stored procedure that does not return any records, you do not use the *Active* property or the *Open* method. Instead, you must use

- The *ExecSQL* method if the dataset is an instance of *TSQLDataSet* or *TSQLQuery*.

```
FixTicket->CommandText = "DELETE FROM TrafficViolations WHERE (TicketID = 1099)";  
FixTicket->ExecSQL();
```

- The *ExecProc* method if the dataset is an instance of *TSQLStoredProc*.

```
SQLStoredProc1->StoredProcName = "MyCommandWithNoResults";  
SQLStoredProc1->ExecProc();
```

Tip If you are executing the query or stored procedure multiple times, it is a good idea to set the *Prepared* property to **true**.

Creating and modifying server metadata

Most of the commands that do not return data fall into two categories: those that you use to edit data (such as INSERT, DELETE, and UPDATE commands), and those that you use to create or modify entities on the server such as tables, indexes, and stored procedures.

If you don't want to use explicit SQL commands for editing, you can link your unidirectional dataset to a client dataset and let it handle all the generation of all SQL commands concerned with editing (see “Connecting a client dataset to another dataset in the same application” on page 18-11). In fact, this is the recommended approach because data-aware controls are designed to perform edits through a dataset such as *TClientDataSet*.

The only way your application can create or modify metadata on the server, however, is to send a command. Not all database drivers support the same SQL syntax. It is beyond the scope of this topic to describe the SQL syntax supported by each database type and the differences between the database types. For a comprehensive and up-to-date discussion of the SQL implementation for a given database system, see the documentation that comes with that system.

In general, use the CREATE TABLE statement to create tables in a database and CREATE INDEX to create new indexes for those tables. Where supported, use other CREATE statements for adding various metadata objects, such as CREATE DOMAIN, CREATE VIEW, CREATE SCHEMA, and CREATE PROCEDURE.

For each of the CREATE statements, there is a corresponding DROP statement to delete the metadata object. These statements include DROP TABLE, DROP VIEW, DROP DOMAIN, DROP SCHEMA, and DROP PROCEDURE.

To change the structure of a table, use the ALTER TABLE statement. ALTER TABLE has ADD and DROP clauses to create new elements in a table and to delete them. For example, use the ADD COLUMN clause to add a new column to the table and DROP CONSTRAINT to delete an existing constraint from the table.

For example, the following statement creates a stored procedure called GET_EMP_PROJ on an InterBase database:

```
CREATE PROCEDURE GET_EMP_PROJ (EMP_NO SMALLINT)
RETURNS (PROJ_ID CHAR(5))
AS
BEGIN
    FOR SELECT PROJ_ID
    FROM EMPLOYEE_PROJECT
    WHERE EMP_NO = :EMP_NO
    INTO :PROJ_ID
    DO
        SUSPEND;
END
```

The following code uses a *TSQDataSet* to create this stored procedure. Note the use of the *ParamCheck* property to prevent the dataset from confusing the parameters in the stored procedure definition (:EMP_NO and :PROJ_ID) with a parameter of the query that creates the stored procedure.

```
SQLDataSet1->ParamCheck = false;
SQLDataSet1->CommandType = ctQuery;
SQLDataSet1->CommandText = "CREATE PROCEDURE GET_EMP_PROJ (EMP_NO SMALLINT) RETURNS (PROJ_ID
CHAR(5)) AS BEGIN FOR SELECT PROJ_ID FROM EMPLOYEE_PROJECT WHERE EMP_NO = :EMP_NO INTO
:PROJ_ID DO SUSPEND; END";
SQLDataSet1->ExecSQL();
```

Setting up master/detail linked cursors

There are two ways to use linked cursors to set up a master/detail relationship with a unidirectional dataset as the detail set. Which method you use depends on the type of unidirectional dataset you are using. Once you have set up such a relationship, the unidirectional dataset (the “many” in a one-to-many relationship) provides access only to those records that correspond to the current record on the master set (the “one” in the one-to-many relationship).

TSQDataSet and *TSQLQuery* require you to use a parameterized query to establish a master/detail relationship. This is the technique for creating such relationships on all query-type datasets. For details on creating master/detail relationships with query-type datasets, see “Establishing master/detail relationships using parameters” on page 22-46.

To set up a master/detail relationship where the detail set is an instance of *SQLTable*, use the *MasterSource* and *MasterFields* properties, just as you would with

any other table-type dataset. For details on creating master/detail relationships with table-type datasets, see “Establishing master/detail relationships using parameters” on page 22-46.

Accessing schema information

There are two ways to obtain information about what is available on the server. This information, called schema information or metadata, includes information about what tables and stored procedures are available on the server and information about these tables and stored procedures (such as the fields a table contains, the indexes that are defined, and the parameters a stored procedure uses).

The simplest way to obtain this metadata is to use the methods of *TSQLConnection*. These methods fill an existing string list or list object with the names of tables, stored procedures, fields, or indexes, or with parameter descriptors. This technique is the same as the way you fill lists with metadata for any other database connection component. These methods are described in “Obtaining metadata” on page 21-13.

If you require more detailed schema information, you can populate a unidirectional dataset with metadata. Instead of a simple list, the unidirectional dataset is filled with schema information, where each record represents a single table, stored procedure, index, field, or parameter.

Fetching metadata into a unidirectional dataset

To populate a unidirectional datasets with metadata from the database server, you must first indicate what data you want to see, using the *SetSchemaInfo* method. *SetSchemaInfo* takes three parameters:

- The type of schema information (metadata) you want to fetch. This can be a list of tables (*stTables*), a list of system tables (*stSysTables*), a list of stored procedures (*stProcedures*), a list of fields in a table (*stColumns*), a list of indexes (*stIndexes*), or a list of parameters used by a stored procedure (*stProcedureParams*). Each type of information uses a different set of fields to describe the items in the list. For details on the structures of these datasets, see “The structure of metadata datasets” on page 26-13.
- If you are fetching information about fields, indexes, or stored procedure parameters, the name of the table or stored procedure to which they apply. If you are fetching any other type of schema information, this parameter is NULL.
- A pattern that must be matched for every name returned. This pattern is an SQL pattern such as ‘Cust%’, which uses the wildcards ‘%’ (to match a string of arbitrary characters of any length) and ‘_’ (to match a single arbitrary character). To use a literal percent or underscore in a pattern, the character is doubled (%% or __). If you do not want to use a pattern, this parameter can be NULL.

Note If you are fetching schema information about tables (*stTables*), the resulting schema information can describe ordinary tables, system tables, views, and/or synonyms, depending on the value of the SQL connection’s *TableScope* property.

The following call requests a table listing all system tables (server tables that contain metadata):

```
SQLDataSet1->SetSchemaInfo(stSysTable, "", "");
```

When you open the dataset after this call to *SetSchemaInfo*, the resulting dataset has a record for each table, with columns giving the table name, type, schema name, and so on. If the server does not use system tables to store metadata (for example MySQL), when you open the dataset it contains no records.

The previous example used only the first parameter. Suppose, instead, you want to obtain a list of input parameters for a stored procedure named 'MyProc'. Suppose, further, that the person who wrote that stored procedure named all parameters using a prefix to indicate whether they were input or output parameters ('inName', 'outValue' and so on). You could call *SetSchemaInfo* as follows:

```
SQLDataSet1->SetSchemaInfo(stProcedureParams, "MyProc", "in%");
```

The resulting dataset is a table of input parameters with columns to describe the properties of each parameter.

Fetching data after using the dataset for metadata

There are two ways to return to executing queries or stored procedures with the dataset after a call to *SetSchemaInfo*:

- Change the *CommandText* property, specifying the query, table, or stored procedure from which you want to fetch data.
- Call *SetSchemaInfo*, setting the first parameter to *stNoSchema*. In this case, the dataset reverts to fetching the data specified by the current value of *CommandText*.

The structure of metadata datasets

For each type of metadata you can access using *TSQQLDataSet*, there is a predefined set of columns (fields) that are populated with information about the items of the requested type.

Information about tables

When you request information about tables (*stTables* or *stSysTables*), the resulting dataset includes a record for each table. It has the following columns:

Table 26.1 Columns in tables of metadata listing tables

| Column name | Field type | Contents |
|--------------|------------|---|
| RECNO | ftInteger | A record number that uniquely identifies each record. |
| CATALOG_NAME | ftString | The name of the catalog (database) that contains the table. This is the same as the <i>Database</i> parameter on an SQL connection component. |
| SCHEMA_NAME | ftString | The name of the schema that identifies the owner of the table. |

Table 26.1 Columns in tables of metadata listing tables (continued)

| Column name | Field type | Contents |
|-------------|------------|--|
| TABLE_NAME | ftString | The name of the table. This field determines the sort order of the dataset. |
| TABLE_TYPE | ftInteger | Identifies the type of table. It is a sum of one or more of the following values: 1: Table 2: View 4: System table 8: Synonym 16: Temporary table 32: Local table. |

Information about stored procedures

When you request information about stored procedures (*stProcedures*), the resulting dataset includes a record for each stored procedure. It has following columns:

Table 26.2 Columns in tables of metadata listing stored procedures

| Column name | Field type | Contents |
|--------------|------------|--|
| RECNO | ftInteger | A record number that uniquely identifies each record. |
| CATALOG_NAME | ftString | The name of the catalog (database) that contains the stored procedure. This is the same as the <i>Database</i> parameter on an SQL connection component. |
| SCHEMA_NAME | ftString | The name of the schema that identifies the owner of the stored procedure. |
| PROC_NAME | ftString | The name of the stored procedure. This field determines the sort order of the dataset. |
| PROC_TYPE | ftInteger | Identifies the type of stored procedure. It is a sum of one or more of the following values: 1: Procedure (no return value) 2: Function (returns a value) 4: Package 8: System procedure |
| IN_PARAMS | ftSmallint | The number of input parameters |
| OUT_PARAMS | ftSmallint | The number of output parameters. |

Information about fields

When you request information about the fields in a specified table (*stColumns*), the resulting dataset includes a record for each field. It includes the following columns:

Table 26.3 Columns in tables of metadata listing fields

| Column name | Field type | Contents |
|--------------|------------|--|
| RECNO | ftInteger | A record number that uniquely identifies each record. |
| CATALOG_NAME | ftString | The name of the catalog (database) that contains the table whose fields you listing. This is the same as the <i>Database</i> parameter on an SQL connection component. |
| SCHEMA_NAME | ftString | The name of the schema that identifies the owner of the field. |

Table 26.3 Columns in tables of metadata listing fields (continued)

| Column name | Field type | Contents |
|------------------|------------|--|
| TABLE_NAME | ftString | The name of the table that contains the fields. |
| COLUMN_NAME | ftString | The name of the field. This value determines the sort order of the dataset. |
| COLUMN_POSITION | ftSmallint | The position of the column in its table. |
| COLUMN_TYPE | ftInteger | Identifies the type of value in the field. It is a sum of one or more of the following: 1: Row ID 2: Row Version 4: Auto increment field 8: Field with a default value |
| COLUMN_DATATYPE | ftSmallint | The datatype of the column. This is one of the logical field type constants defined in sqllinks.h. |
| COLUMN_TYPPNAME | ftString | A string describing the datatype. This is the same information as contained in COLUMN_DATATYPE and COLUMN_SUBTYPE, but in a form used in some DDL statements. |
| COLUMN_SUBTYPE | ftSmallint | A subtype for the column's datatype. This is one of the logical subtype constants defined in sqllinks.h. |
| COLUMN_PRECISION | ftInteger | The size of the field type (number of characters in a string, bytes in a bytes field, significant digits in a BCD value, members of an ADT field, and so on). |
| COLUMN_SCALE | ftSmallint | The number of digits to the right of the decimal on BCD values, or descendants on ADT and array fields. |
| COLUMN_LENGTH | ftInteger | The number of bytes required to store field values. |
| COLUMN_NULLABLE | ftSmallint | A Boolean that indicates whether the field can be left blank (0 means the field requires a value). |

Information about indexes

When you request information about the indexes on a table (stIndexes), the resulting dataset includes a record for each field in each record. (Multi-record indexes are described using multiple records) The dataset has the following columns:

Table 26.4 Columns in tables of metadata listing indexes

| Column name | Field type | Contents |
|--------------|------------|---|
| RECNO | ftInteger | A record number that uniquely identifies each record. |
| CATALOG_NAME | ftString | The name of the catalog (database) that contains the index. This is the same as the <i>Database</i> parameter on an SQL connection component. |
| SCHEMA_NAME | ftString | The name of the schema that identifies the owner of the index. |
| TABLE_NAME | ftString | The name of the table for which the index is defined. |
| INDEX_NAME | ftString | The name of the index. This field determines the sort order of the dataset. |
| PKEY_NAME | ftString | Indicates the name of the primary key. |
| COLUMN_NAME | ftString | The name of the field (column) in the index. |

Table 26.4 Columns in tables of metadata listing indexes (continued)

| Column name | Field type | Contents |
|-----------------|------------|---|
| COLUMN_POSITION | ftSmallint | The position of this field in the index. |
| INDEX_TYPE | ftSmallint | Identifies the type of index. It is a sum of one or more of the following values: 1: Non-unique 2: Unique 4: Primary key |
| SORT_ORDER | ftString | Indicates that the index is ascending (a) or descending (d). |
| FILTER | ftString | Describes a filter condition that limits the indexed records. |

Information about stored procedure parameters

When you request information about the parameters of a stored procedure (*stProcedureParams*), the resulting dataset includes a record for each parameter. It has the following columns:

Table 26.5 Columns in tables of metadata listing parameters

| Column name | Field type | Contents |
|-----------------|------------|--|
| RECNO | ftInteger | A record number that uniquely identifies each record. |
| CATALOG_NAME | ftString | The name of the catalog (database) that contains the stored procedure. This is the same as the <i>Database</i> parameter on an SQL connection component. |
| SCHEMA_NAME | ftString | The name of the schema that identifies the owner of the stored procedure. |
| PROC_NAME | ftString | The name of the stored procedure that contains the parameter. |
| PARAM_NAME | ftString | The name of the parameter. This field determines the sort order of the dataset. |
| PARAM_TYPE | ftSmallint | Identifies the type of parameter. This is the same as a <i>TParam</i> object's <i>ParamType</i> property. |
| PARAM_DATATYPE | ftSmallint | The datatype of the parameter. This is one of the logical field type constants defined in <i>sqllinks.h</i> . |
| PARAM_SUBTYPE | ftSmallint | A subtype for the parameter's datatype. This is one of the logical subtype constants defined in <i>sqllinks.h</i> . |
| PARAM_TYPENAME | ftString | A string describing the datatype. This is the same information as contained in <i>PARAM_DATATYPE</i> and <i>PARAM_SUBTYPE</i> , but in a form used in some DDL statements. |
| PARAM_PRECISION | ftInteger | The maximum number of digits in floating-point values or bytes (for strings and Bytes fields). |
| PARAM_SCALE | ftSmallint | The number of digits to the right of the decimal on floating-point values. |
| PARAM_LENGTH | ftInteger | The number of bytes required to store parameter values. |
| PARAM_NULLABLE | ftSmallint | A Boolean that indicates whether the parameter can be left blank (0 means the parameter requires a value). |

Debugging dbExpress applications

While you are debugging your database application, it may prove useful to monitor the SQL messages that are sent to and from the database server through your connection component, including those that are generated automatically for you (for example by a provider component or by the *dbExpress* driver).

Using TSQLMonitor to monitor SQL commands

TSQLConnection uses a companion component, *TSQLMonitor*, to intercept these messages and save them in a string list. *TSQLMonitor* works much like the SQL monitor utility that you can use with the BDE, except that it monitors only those commands involving a single *TSQLConnection* component rather than all commands managed by *dbExpress*.

To use *TSQLMonitor*,

- 1 Add a *TSQLMonitor* component to the form or data module containing the *TSQLConnection* component whose SQL commands you want to monitor.
- 2 Set its *SQLConnection* property to the *TSQLConnection* component.
- 3 Set the SQL monitor's *Active* property to **true**.

As SQL commands are sent to the server, the SQL monitor's *TraceList* property is automatically updated to list all the SQL commands that are intercepted.

You can save this list to a file by specifying a value for the *FileName* property and then setting the *AutoSave* property to **true**. *AutoSave* causes the SQL monitor to save the contents of the *TraceList* property to a file every time it logs a new message.

If you do not want the overhead of saving a file every time a message is logged, you can use the *OnLogTrace* event handler to only save files after a number of messages have been logged. For example, the following event handler saves the contents of *TraceList* every 10th message, clearing the log after saving it so that the list never gets too long:

```
void __fastcall TForm1::SQLMonitor1LogTrace(TObject *Sender, void *CBInfo)
{
    TSQLMonitor *pMonitor = dynamic_cast<TSQLMonitor *>(Sender);
    if (pMonitor->TraceCount == 10)
    {
        // build unique file name
        AnsiString LogFileName = "c:\\log";
        LogFileName = LogFileName + IntToStr(pMonitor->Tag);
        LogFileName = LogFileName + ".txt"
        pMonitor->Tag = pMonitor->Tag + 1;
        // Save contents of log and clear the list
        pMonitor->SaveToFile(LogFileName);
        pMonitor->TraceList->Clear();
    }
}
```

Note If you were to use the previous event handler, you would also want to save any partial list (fewer than 10 entries) when the application shuts down.

Using a callback to monitor SQL commands

Instead of using *TSQLMonitor*, you can customize the way your application traces SQL commands by using the SQL connection component's *SetTraceCallbackEvent* method. *SetTraceCallbackEvent* takes two parameters: a callback of type *TSQLCallbackEvent*, and a user-defined value that is passed to the callback function.

The callback function takes two parameters: *CallType* and *CBInfo*:

- *CallType* is reserved for future use.
- *CBInfo* is a pointer to a structure that includes the category (the same as *CallType*), the text of the SQL command, and the user-defined value that is passed to the *SetTraceCallbackEvent* method.

The callback returns a value of type *CBRTYPE*, typically *cbrUSEDEF*.

The *dbExpress* driver calls your callback every time the SQL connection component passes a command to the server or the server returns an error message.

Warning Do not call *SetTraceCallbackEvent* if the *TSQLConnection* object has an associated *TSQLMonitor* component. *TSQLMonitor* uses the callback mechanism to work, and *TSQLConnection* can only support one callback at a time.

Using client datasets

Client datasets are specialized datasets that hold all their data in memory. The support for manipulating the data they store in memory is provided by `midas.dll`. The format client datasets use for storing data is self-contained and easily transported, which allows client datasets to

- Read from and write to dedicated files on disk, acting as a file-based dataset. Properties and methods supporting this mechanism are described in “Using a client dataset with file-based data” on page 27-32.
- Cache updates for data from a database server. Client dataset features that support cached updates are described in “Using a client dataset to cache updates” on page 27-15.
- Represent the data in the client portion of a multi-tiered application. To function in this way, the client dataset must work with an external provider, as described in “Using a client dataset with a provider” on page 27-24. For information about multi-tiered database applications, see Chapter 29, “Creating multi-tiered applications.”
- Represent the data from a source other than a dataset. Because a client dataset can use the data from an external provider, specialized providers can adapt a variety of information sources to work with client datasets. For example, you can use an XML provider to enable a client dataset to represent the information in an XML document.

Whether you use client datasets for file-based data, caching updates, data from an external provider (such as working with an XML document or in a multi-tiered application), or a combination of these approaches such as a “briefcase model” application, you can take advantage of broad range of features client datasets support for working with data.

Working with data using a client dataset

Like any dataset, you can use client datasets to supply the data for data-aware controls using a data source component. See Chapter 19, “Using data controls” for information on how to display database information in data-aware controls.

Client datasets implement all the properties and methods inherited from *TDataSet*. For a complete introduction to this generic dataset behavior, see Chapter 22, “Understanding datasets.”

In addition, client datasets implement many of the features common to table type datasets such as

- Sorting records with indexes.
- Using Indexes to search for records.
- Limiting records with ranges.
- Creating master/detail relationships.
- Controlling read/write access
- Creating the underlying dataset
- Emptying the dataset
- Synchronizing client datasets

For details on these features, see “Using table type datasets” on page 22-25.

Client datasets differ from other datasets in that they hold all their data in memory. Because of this, their support for some database functions can involve additional capabilities or considerations. This chapter describes some of these common functions and the differences introduced by client datasets.

Navigating data in client datasets

If an application uses standard data-aware controls, then a user can navigate through a client dataset’s records using the built-in behavior of those controls. You can also navigate programmatically through records using standard dataset methods such as *First*, *Last*, *Next*, and *Prior*. For more information about these methods, see “Navigating datasets” on page 22-5.

Unlike most datasets, client datasets can also position the cursor at a specific record in the dataset by using the *RecNo* property. Ordinarily an application uses *RecNo* to determine the record number of the current record. Client datasets can, however, set *RecNo* to a particular record number to make that record the current one.

Limiting what records appear

To restrict users to a subset of available data on a temporary basis, applications can use ranges and filters. When you apply a range or a filter, the client dataset does not display all the data in its in-memory cache. Instead, it only displays the data that meets the range or filter conditions. For more information about using filters, see “Displaying and editing a subset of data using filters” on page 22-12. For more information about ranges, see “Limiting records with ranges” on page 22-30.

With most datasets, filter strings are parsed into SQL commands that are then implemented on the database server. Because of this, the SQL dialect of the server limits what operations are used in filter strings. Client datasets implement their own filter support, which includes more operations than that of other datasets. For example, when using a client dataset, filter expressions can include string operators that return substrings, operators that parse date/time values, and much more. Client datasets also allow filters on BLOB fields or complex field types such as ADT fields and array fields.

The various operators and functions that client datasets can use in filters, along with a comparison to other datasets that support filters, is given below:

Table 27.1 Filter support in client datasets

| Operator or function | Example | Supported by other datasets | Comment |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|---|
| Comparisons | | | |
| = | State = 'CA' | Yes | |
| <> | State <> 'CA' | Yes | |
| >= | DateEntered >= '1/1/1998' | Yes | |
| <= | Total <= 100,000 | Yes | |
| > | Percentile > 50 | Yes | |
| < | Field1 < Field2 | Yes | |
| BLANK | State <> 'CA' or State = BLANK | Yes | Blank records do not appear unless explicitly included in the filter. |
| IS NULL | Field1 IS NULL | No | |
| IS NOT NULL | Field1 IS NOT NULL | No | |
| Logical operators | | | |
| and | State = 'CA' and Country = 'US' | Yes | |
| or | State = 'CA' or State = 'MA' | Yes | |
| not | not (State = 'CA') | Yes | |
| Arithmetic operators | | | |
| + | Total + 5 > 100 | Depends on driver | Applies to numbers, strings, or date (time) + number. |
| - | Field1 - 7 <> 10 | Depends on driver | Applies to numbers, dates, or date (time) - number. |
| * | Discount * 100 > 20 | Depends on driver | Applies to numbers only. |
| / | Discount > Total / 5 | Depends on driver | Applies to numbers only. |

Table 27.1 Filter support in client datasets (continued)

| Operator or function | Example | Supported by other datasets | Comment |
|---------------------------|---|-----------------------------|---|
| String functions | | | |
| Upper | Upper(Field1) = 'ALWAYS' | No | |
| Lower | Lower(Field1 + Field2) = 'josp' | No | |
| Substring | Substring(DateFld,8) = '1998' Substring(DateFld,1,3) = 'JAN' | No | Value goes from position of second argument to end or number of chars in third argument. First char has position 1. |
| Trim | Trim(Field1 + Field2) Trim(Field1, '-') | No | Removes third argument from front and back. If no third argument, trims spaces. |
| TrimLeft | TrimLeft(StringField) TrimLeft(Field1, '\$') <> " | No | See Trim. |
| TrimRight | TrimRight(StringField) TrimRight(Field1, '.') <> " | No | See Trim. |
| DateTime functions | | | |
| Year | Year(DateField) = 2000 | No | |
| Month | Month(DateField) <> 12 | No | |
| Day | Day(DateField) = 1 | No | |
| Hour | Hour(DateField) < 16 | No | |
| Minute | Minute(DateField) = 0 | No | |
| Second | Second(DateField) = 30 | No | |
| GetDate | GetDate - DateField > 7 | No | Represents current date and time. |
| Date | DateField = Date(GetDate) | No | Returns the date portion of a datetime value. |
| Time | TimeField > Time(GetDate) | No | Returns the time portion of a datetime value. |
| Miscellaneous | | | |
| Like | Memo LIKE '%filters%' | No | Works like SQL-92 without the ESC clause. When applied to BLOB fields, FilterOptions determines whether case is considered. |
| In | Day(DateField) in (1,7) | No | Works like SQL-92. Second argument is a list of values all with the same type. |
| * | State = 'M*' | Yes | Wildcard for partial comparisons. |

When applying ranges or filters, the client dataset still stores all of its records in memory. The range or filter merely determines which records are available to controls that navigate or display data from the client dataset.

Note When fetching data from a provider, you can also limit the data that the client dataset stores by supplying parameters to the provider. For details, see “Limiting records with parameters” on page 27-28.

Editing data

Client datasets represent their data as an in-memory data packet. This packet is the value of the client dataset’s *Data* property. By default, however, edits are not stored in the *Data* property. Instead the insertions, deletions, and modifications (made by users or programmatically) are stored in an internal change log, represented by the *Delta* property. Using a change log serves two purposes:

- The change log is required for applying updates to a database server or external provider component.
- The change log provides sophisticated support for undoing changes.

The *LogChanges* property lets you disable logging. When *LogChanges* is **true**, changes are recorded in the log. When *LogChanges* is **false**, changes are made directly to the *Data* property. You can disable the change log in file-based applications if you do not want the undo support.

Edits in the change log remain there until they are removed by the application. Applications remove edits when

- Undoing changes
- Saving changes

Note Saving the client dataset to a file does not remove edits from the change log. When you reload the dataset, the *Data* and *Delta* properties are the same as they were when the data was saved.

Undoing changes

Even though a record’s original version remains unchanged in *Data*, each time a user edits a record, leaves it, and returns to it, the user sees the last changed version of the record. If a user or application edits a record a number of times, each changed version of the record is stored in the change log as a separate entry.

Storing each change to a record makes it possible to support multiple levels of undo operations should it be necessary to restore a record’s previous state:

- To remove the last change to a record, call *UndoLastChange*. *UndoLastChange* takes a boolean parameter, *FollowChange*, that indicates whether to reposition the cursor on the restored record (**true**), or to leave the cursor on the current record (**false**). If there are several changes to a record, each call to *UndoLastChange* removes another layer of edits. *UndoLastChange* returns a boolean value indicating success or failure. If the removal occurs, *UndoLastChange* returns **true**. Use the *ChangeCount* property to check whether there are more changes to undo. *ChangeCount* indicates the number of changes stored in the change log.

- Instead of removing each layer of changes to a single record, you can remove them all at once. To remove all changes to a record, select the record, and call *RevertRecord*. *RevertRecord* removes any changes to the current record from the change log.
- To restore a deleted record, first set the *StatusFilter* property to *[usDeleted]*, which makes the deleted records “visible.” Next, navigate to the record you want to restore and call *RevertRecord*. Finally, restore the *StatusFilter* property to *[usModified, usInserted, usUnmodified]* so that the edited version of the dataset (now containing the restored record) is again visible.
- At any point during edits, you can save the current state of the change log using the *SavePoint* property. Reading *SavePoint* returns a marker into the current position in the change log. Later, if you want to undo all changes that occurred since you read the save point, set *SavePoint* to the value you read previously. Your application can obtain values for multiple save points. However, once you back up the change log to a save point, the values of all save points that your application read after that one are invalid.
- You can abandon all changes recorded in the change log by calling *CancelUpdates*. *CancelUpdates* clears the change log, effectively discarding all edits to all records. Be careful when you call *CancelUpdates*. After you call *CancelUpdates*, you cannot recover any changes that were in the log.

Saving changes

Client datasets use different mechanisms for incorporating changes from the change log, depending on whether the client datasets stores its data in a file or represents data obtained through a provider. Whichever mechanism is used, the change log is automatically emptied when all updates have been incorporated.

File-based applications can simply merge the changes into the local cache represented by the *Data* property. They do not need to worry about resolving local edits with changes made by other users. To merge the change log into the *Data* property, call the *MergeChangeLog* method. “Merging changes into data” on page 27-33 describes this process.

You can’t use *MergeChangeLog* if you are using the client dataset to cache updates or to represent the data from an external provider component. The information in the change log is required for resolving updated records with the data stored in the database (or source dataset). Instead, you call *ApplyUpdates*, which attempts to write the modifications to the database server or source dataset, and updates the *Data* property only when the modifications have been successfully committed. See “Applying updates” on page 27-20 for more information about this process.

Constraining data values

Client datasets can enforce constraints on the edits a user makes to data. These constraints are applied when the user tries to post changes to the change log. You can always supply custom constraints. These let you provide your own, application-defined limits on what values users post to a client dataset.

In addition, when client datasets represent server data that is accessed using the BDE, they also enforce data constraints imported from the database server. If the client dataset works with an external provider component, the provider can control whether those constraints are sent to the client dataset, and the client dataset can control whether it uses them. For details on how the provider controls whether constraints are included in data packets, see “Handling server constraints” on page 28-12. For details on how and why client dataset can turn off enforcement of server constraints, see “Handling constraints from the server” on page 27-29.

Specifying custom constraints

You can use the properties of the client dataset’s field components to impose your own constraints on what data users can enter. Each field component has two properties that you can use to specify constraints:

- The *DefaultExpression* property defines a default value that is assigned to the field if the user does not enter a value. Note that if the database server or source dataset also assigns a default expression for the field, the client dataset’s version takes precedence because it is assigned before the update is applied back to the database server or source dataset.
- The *CustomConstraint* property lets you assign a constraint condition that must be met before a field value can be posted. Custom constraints defined this way are applied in addition to any constraints imported from the server. For more information about working with custom constraints on field components, see “Creating a custom constraint” on page 23-21.

In addition, you can create record-level constraints using the client dataset’s *Constraints* property. *Constraints* is a collection of *TCheckConstraint* objects, where each object represents a separate condition. Use the *CustomConstraint* property of a *TCheckConstraint* object to add your own constraints that are checked when you post records.

Sorting and indexing

Using indexes provides several benefits to your applications:

- They allow client datasets to locate data quickly.
- They let you apply ranges to limit the available records.
- They let your application set up relationships with other datasets such as lookup tables or master/detail forms.
- They specify the order in which records appear.

If a client dataset represents server data or uses an external provider, it inherits a default index and sort order based on the data it receives. The default index is called `DEFAULT_ORDER`. You can use this ordering, but you cannot change or delete the index.

In addition to the default index, the client dataset maintains a second index, called **CHANGEINDEX**, on the changed records stored in the change log (*Delta* property). **CHANGEINDEX** orders all records in the client dataset as they would appear if the changes specified in *Delta* were applied. **CHANGEINDEX** is based on the ordering inherited from **DEFAULT_ORDER**. As with **DEFAULT_ORDER**, you cannot change or delete the **CHANGEINDEX** index.

You can use other existing indexes, and you can create your own indexes. The following sections describe how to create and use indexes with client datasets.

Note You may also want to review the material on indexes in table type datasets, which also applies to client datasets. This material is in “Sorting records with indexes” on page 22-26 and “Limiting records with ranges” on page 22-30.

Adding a new index

There are three ways to add indexes to a client dataset:

- To create a temporary index at runtime that sorts the records in the client dataset, you can use the *IndexFieldNames* property. Specify field names, separated by semicolons. Ordering of field names in the list determines their order in the index.

This is the least powerful method of adding indexes. You can't specify a descending or case-insensitive index, and the resulting indexes do not support grouping. These indexes do not persist when you close the dataset, and are not saved when you save the client dataset to a file.

- To create an index at runtime that can be used for grouping, call *AddIndex*. *AddIndex* lets you specify the properties of the index, including
 - The name of the index. This can be used for switching indexes at runtime.
 - The fields that make up the index. The index uses these fields to sort records and to locate records that have specific values on these fields.
 - How the index sorts records. By default, indexes impose an ascending sort order (based on the machine's locale). This default sort order is case-sensitive. You can set options to make the entire index case-insensitive or to sort in descending order. Alternately, you can provide a list of fields to be sorted case-insensitively and a list of fields to be sorted in descending order.
 - The default level of grouping support for the index.

Indexes created with *AddIndex* do not persist when the client dataset is closed. (That is, they are lost when you reopen the client dataset). You can't call *AddIndex* when the dataset is closed. Indexes you add using *AddIndex* are not saved when you save the client dataset to a file.

- The third way to create an index is at the time the client dataset is created. Before creating the client dataset, specify the desired indexes using the *IndexDefs* property. The indexes are then created along with the underlying dataset when you call *CreateDataSet*. See “Creating and deleting tables” on page 22-37 for more information about creating client datasets.

As with *AddIndex*, indexes you create with the dataset support grouping, can sort in ascending order on some fields and descending order on others, and can be case insensitive on some fields and case sensitive on others. Indexes created this way always persist and are saved when you save the client dataset to a file.

Tip You can index and sort on internally calculated fields with client datasets.

Deleting and switching indexes

To remove an index you created for a client dataset, call *DeleteIndex* and specify the name of the index to remove. You cannot remove the `DEFAULT_ORDER` and `CHANGEINDEX` indexes.

To use a different index when more than one index is available, use the *IndexName* property to select the index to use. At design time, you can select from available indexes in *IndexName* property drop-down box in the Object Inspector.

Using indexes to group data

When you use an index in your client dataset, it automatically imposes a sort order on the records. Because of this order, adjacent records usually contain duplicate values on the fields that make up the index. For example, consider the following fragment from an orders table that is indexed on the `SalesRep` and `Customer` fields:

| SalesRep | Customer | OrderNo | Amount |
|----------|----------|---------|--------|
| 1 | 1 | 5 | 100 |
| 1 | 1 | 2 | 50 |
| 1 | 2 | 3 | 200 |
| 1 | 2 | 6 | 75 |
| 2 | 1 | 1 | 10 |
| 2 | 3 | 4 | 200 |

Because of the sort order, adjacent values in the `SalesRep` column are duplicated. Within the records for `SalesRep` 1, adjacent values in the `Customer` column are duplicated. That is, the data is grouped by `SalesRep`, and within the `SalesRep` group it is grouped by `Customer`. Each grouping has an associated level. In this case, the `SalesRep` group has level 1 (because it is not nested in any other groups) and the `Customer` group has level 2 (because it is nested in the group with level 1). Grouping level corresponds to the order of fields in the index.

Client datasets let you determine where the current record lies within any given grouping level. This allows your application to display records differently, depending on whether they are the first record in the group, in the middle of a group, or the last record in a group. For example, you might want to display a field value

only if it is on the first record of the group, eliminating the duplicate values. To do this with the previous table results in the following:

| SalesRep | Customer | OrderNo | Amount |
|----------|----------|---------|--------|
| 1 | 1 | 5 | 100 |
| | | 2 | 50 |
| | 2 | 3 | 200 |
| | | 6 | 75 |
| 2 | 1 | 1 | 10 |
| | 3 | 4 | 200 |

To determine where the current record falls within any group, use the *GetGroupState* method. *GetGroupState* takes an integer giving the level of the group and returns a value indicating where the current record falls the group (first record, last record, or neither).

When you create an index, you can specify the level of grouping it supports (up to the number of fields in the index). *GetGroupState* can't provide information about groups beyond that level, even if the index sorts records on additional fields.

Representing calculated values

As with any dataset, you can add calculated fields to your client dataset. These are fields whose values you calculate dynamically, usually based on the values of other fields in the same record. For more information about using calculated fields, see "Defining a calculated field" on page 23-7.

Client datasets, however, let you optimize when fields are calculated by using internally calculated fields. For more information on internally calculated fields, see "Using internally calculated fields in client datasets" below.

You can also tell client datasets to create calculated values that summarize the data in several records using maintained aggregates. For more information on maintained aggregates, see "Using maintained aggregates" on page 27-11.

Using internally calculated fields in client datasets

In other datasets, your application must compute the value of calculated fields every time the record changes or the user edits any fields in the current record. It does this in an *OnCalcFields* event handler.

While you can still do this, client datasets let you minimize the number of times calculated fields must be recomputed by saving calculated values in the client dataset's data. When calculated values are saved with the client dataset, they must still be recomputed when the user edits the current record, but your application need not recompute values every time the current record changes. To save calculated values in the client dataset's data, use internally calculated fields instead of calculated fields.

Internally calculated fields, just like calculated fields, are calculated in an *OnCalcFields* event handler. However, you can optimize your event handler by checking the *State* property of your client dataset. When *State* is *dsInternalCalc*, you must recompute internally calculated fields. When *State* is *dsCalcFields*, you need only recompute regular calculated fields.

To use internally calculated fields, you must define the fields as internally calculated before you create the client dataset. Depending on whether you use persistent fields or field definitions, you do this in one of the following ways:

- If you use persistent fields, define fields as internally calculated by selecting *InternalCalc* in the Fields editor.
- If you use field definitions, set the *InternalCalcField* property of the relevant field definition to **true**.

Note Other types of datasets use internally calculated fields. However, with other datasets, you do not calculate these values in an *OnCalcFields* event handler. Instead, they are computed automatically by the BDE or remote database server.

Using maintained aggregates

Client datasets provide support for summarizing data over groups of records. Because these summaries are automatically updated as you edit the data in the dataset, this summarized data is called a “maintained aggregate.”

In their simplest form, maintained aggregates let you obtain information such as the sum of all values in a column of the client dataset. They are flexible enough, however, to support a variety of summary calculations and to provide subtotals over groups of records defined by a field in an index that supports grouping.

Specifying aggregates

To specify that you want to calculate summaries over the records in a client dataset, use the *Aggregates* property. *Aggregates* is a collection of aggregate specifications (*TAggregate*). You can add aggregate specifications to your client dataset using the Collection Editor at design time, or using the *Add* method of *Aggregates* at runtime. If you want to create field components for the aggregates, create persistent fields for the aggregated values in the Fields Editor.

Note When you create aggregated fields, the appropriate aggregate objects are added to the client dataset’s *Aggregates* property automatically. Do not add them explicitly when creating aggregated persistent fields. For details on creating aggregated persistent fields, see “Defining an aggregate field” on page 23-10.

For each aggregate, the *Expression* property indicates the summary calculation it represents. *Expression* can contain a simple summary expression such as

```
Sum(Field1)
```

or a complex expression that combines information from several fields, such as

```
Sum(Qty * Price) - Sum(AmountPaid)
```

Aggregate expressions include one or more of the summary operators in Table 27.2

Table 27.2 Summary operators for maintained aggregates

| Operator | Use |
|----------|---|
| Sum | Totals the values for a numeric field or expression |
| Avg | Computes the average value for a numeric or date-time field or expression |
| Count | Specifies the number of non-blank values for a field or expression |
| Min | Indicates the minimum value for a string, numeric, or date-time field or expression |
| Max | Indicates the maximum value for a string, numeric, or date-time field or expression |

The summary operators act on field values or on expressions built from field values using the same operators you use to create filters. (You can’t nest summary operators, however.) You can create expressions by using operators on summarized values with other summarized values, or on summarized values and constants. However, you can’t combine summarized values with field values, because such expressions are ambiguous (there is no indication of which record should supply the field value.) These rules are illustrated in the following expressions:

| | |
|---------------------------|--|
| Sum(Qty * Price) | {legal -- summary of an expression on fields } |
| Max(Field1) - Max(Field2) | {legal -- expression on summaries } |
| Avg(DiscountRate) * 100 | {legal -- expression of summary and constant } |
| Min(Sum(Field1)) | {illegal -- nested summaries } |
| Count(Field1) - Field2 | {illegal -- expression of summary and field } |

Aggregating over groups of records

By default, maintained aggregates are calculated so that they summarize all the records in the client dataset. However, you can specify that you want to summarize over the records in a group instead. This lets you provide intermediate summaries such as subtotals for groups of records that share a common field value.

Before you can specify a maintained aggregate over a group of records, you must use an index that supports the appropriate grouping. See “Using indexes to group data” on page 27-9 for information on grouping support.

Once you have an index that groups the data in the way you want it summarized, specify the *IndexName* and *GroupingLevel* properties of the aggregate to indicate what index it uses, and which group or subgroup on that index defines the records it summarizes.

For example, consider the following fragment from an orders table that is grouped by SalesRep and, within SalesRep, by Customer:

| SalesRep | Customer | OrderNo | Amount |
|----------|----------|---------|--------|
| 1 | 1 | 5 | 100 |
| 1 | 1 | 2 | 50 |
| 1 | 2 | 3 | 200 |

| SalesRep | Customer | OrderNo | Amount |
|----------|----------|---------|--------|
| 1 | 2 | 6 | 75 |
| 2 | 1 | 1 | 10 |
| 2 | 3 | 4 | 200 |

The following code sets up a maintained aggregate that indicates the total amount for each sales representative:

```
Agg->Expression = "Sum(Amount)";
Agg->IndexName = "SalesCust";
Agg->GroupingLevel = 1;
Agg->AggregateName = "Total for Rep";
```

To add an aggregate that summarizes for each customer within a given sales representative, create a maintained aggregate with level 2.

Maintained aggregates that summarize over a group of records are associated with a specific index. The *Aggregates* property can include aggregates that use different indexes. However, only the aggregates that summarize over the entire dataset and those that use the current index are valid. Changing the current index changes which aggregates are valid. To determine which aggregates are valid at any time, use the *ActiveAggs* property.

Obtaining aggregate values

To get the value of a maintained aggregate, call the *Value* method of the *TAggregate* object that represents the aggregate. *Value* returns the maintained aggregate for the group that contains the current record of the client dataset.

When you are summarizing over the entire client dataset, you can call *Value* at any time to obtain the maintained aggregate. However, when you are summarizing over grouped information, you must be careful to ensure that the current record is in the group whose summary you want. Because of this, it is a good idea to obtain aggregate values at clearly specified times, such as when you move to the first record of a group or when you move to the last record of a group. Use the *GetGroupState* method to determine where the current record falls within a group.

To display maintained aggregates in data-aware controls, use the Fields editor to create a persistent aggregate field component. When you specify an aggregate field in the Fields editor, the client dataset's *Aggregates* is automatically updated to include the appropriate aggregate specification. The *AggFields* property contains the new aggregated field component, and the *FindField* method returns it.

Copying data from another dataset

To copy the data from another dataset at design time, right click the client dataset and choose Assign Local Data. A dialog appears listing all the datasets available in your project. Select the one whose data and structure you want to copy and choose OK. When you copy the source dataset, your client dataset is automatically activated.

To copy from another dataset at runtime, you can assign its data directly or, if the source is another client dataset, you can clone the cursor.

Assigning data directly

You can use the client dataset's *Data* property to assign data to a client dataset from another dataset. *Data* is a data packet in the form of an OleVariant. A data packet can come from another client dataset or from any other dataset by using a provider. Once a data packet is assigned to *Data*, its contents are displayed automatically in data-aware controls connected to the client dataset by a data source component.

When you open a client dataset that represents server data or that uses an external provider component, data packets are automatically assigned to *Data*.

When your client dataset does not use a provider, you can copy the data from another client dataset as follows:

```
ClientDataSet1->Data = ClientDataSet2->Data;
```

Note When you copy the *Data* property of another client dataset, you copy the change log as well, but the copy does not reflect any filters or ranges that have been applied. To include filters or ranges, you must clone the source dataset's cursor instead.

If you are copying from a dataset other than a client dataset, you can create a dataset provider component, link it to the source dataset, and then copy its data:

```
TempProvider = new TDataSetProvider(Form1);
TempProvider->DataSet = SourceDataSet;
ClientDataSet1->Data = TempProvider->Data;
delete TempProvider;
```

Note When you assign directly to the *Data* property, the new data packet is not merged into the existing data. Instead, all previous data is replaced.

If you want to merge changes from another dataset, rather than copying its data, you must use a provider component. Create a dataset provider as in the previous example, but attach it to the destination dataset and instead of copying the data property, use the *ApplyUpdates* method:

```
TempProvider = new TDataSetProvider(Form1);
TempProvider->DataSet = ClientDataSet1;
TempProvider->ApplyUpdates(SourceDataSet->Delta, -1, ErrCount);
delete TempProvider;
```

Cloning a client dataset cursor

Client datasets use the *CloneCursor* method to let you work with a second view of the data at runtime. *CloneCursor* lets a second client dataset share the original client dataset's data. This is less expensive than copying all the original data, but, because the data is shared, the second client dataset can't modify the data without affecting the original client dataset.

CloneCursor takes three parameters: *Source* specifies the client dataset to clone. The last two parameters (*Reset* and *KeepSettings*) indicate whether to copy information other than the data. This information includes any filters, the current index, links to a

master table (when the source dataset is a detail set), the *ReadOnly* property, and any links to a connection component or provider.

When *Reset* and *KeepSettings* are **false**, a cloned client dataset is opened, and the settings of the source client dataset are used to set the properties of the destination. When *Reset* is **true**, the destination dataset's properties are given the default values (no index or filters, no master table, *ReadOnly* is **false**, and no connection component or provider is specified). When *KeepSettings* is **true**, the destination dataset's properties are not changed.

Adding application-specific information to the data

Application developers can add custom information to the client dataset's *Data* property. Because this information is bundled with the data packet, it is included when you save the data to a file or stream. It is copied when you copy the data to another dataset. Optionally, it can be included with the *Delta* property so that a provider can read this information when it receives updates from the client dataset.

To save application-specific information with the *Data* property, use the *SetOptionalParam* method. This method lets you store an OleVariant that contains the data under a specific name.

To retrieve this application-specific information, use the *GetOptionalParam* method, passing in the name that was used when the information was stored.

Using a client dataset to cache updates

By default, when you edit data in most datasets, every time you delete or post a record, the dataset generates a transaction, deletes or writes that record to the database server, and commits the transaction. If there is a problem writing changes to the database, your application is notified immediately: the dataset raises an exception when you post the record.

If your dataset uses a remote database server, this approach can degrade performance due to network traffic between your application and the server every time you move to a new record after editing the current record. To minimize the network traffic, you may want to cache updates locally. When you cache updates, your application retrieves data from the database, caches and edits it locally, and then applies the cached updates to the database in a single transaction. When you cache updates, changes to a dataset (such as posting changes or deleting records) are stored locally instead of being written directly to the dataset's underlying table. When changes are complete, your application calls a method that writes the cached changes to the database and clears the cache.

Caching updates can minimize transaction times and reduce network traffic. However, cached data is local to your application and is not under transaction control. This means that while you are working on your local, in-memory, copy of the data, other applications can be changing the data in the underlying database table. They also can't see any changes you make until you apply the cached updates.

Because of this, cached updates may not be appropriate for applications that work with volatile data, as you may create or encounter too many conflicts when trying to merge your changes into the database.

Although the BDE and ADO provide alternate mechanisms for caching updates, using a client dataset for caching updates has several advantages:

- Applying updates when datasets are linked in master/detail relationships is handled for you. This ensures that updates to multiple linked datasets are applied in the correct order.
- Client datasets give you the maximum of control over the update process. You can set properties to influence the SQL that is generated for updating records, specify the table to use when updating records from a multi-table join, or even apply updates manually from a *BeforeUpdateRecord* event handler.
- When errors occur applying cached updates to the database server, only client datasets (and dataset providers) provide you with information about the current record value on the database server in addition to the original (unedited) value from your dataset and the new (edited) value of the update that failed.
- Client datasets let you specify the number of update errors you want to tolerate before the entire update is rolled back.

Overview of using cached updates

To use cached updates, the following order of processes must occur in an application:

1 Indicate the data you want to edit. How you do this depends on the type of client dataset you are using:

- If you are using *TClientDataSet*, Specify the provider component that represent the data you want to edit. This is described in “Specifying a provider” on page 27-24.
- If you are using a client dataset associated with a particular data access mechanism, you must
 - Identify the database server by setting the *DBConnection* property to an appropriate connection component.
 - Indicate what data you want to see by specifying the *CommandText* and *CommandType* properties. *CommandType* indicates whether *CommandText* is an SQL statement to execute, the name of a stored procedure, or the name of a table. If *CommandText* is a query or stored procedure, use the *Params* property to provide any input parameters.
 - Optionally, use the *Options* property to indicate whether nested detail sets and BLOB data should be included in data packets or fetched separately, whether specific types of edits (insertions, modifications, or deletions) should be disabled, whether a single update can affect multiple server records, and whether the client dataset's records are refreshed when it applies updates. *Options* is identical to a provider's *Options* property. As a result, it allows you to set options that are not relevant or appropriate. For example, there is no reason to include *poIncFieldProps*, because the client dataset does not fetch its data from

a dataset with persistent fields. Conversely, you do not want to exclude *poAllowCommandText*, which is included by default, because that would disable the *CommandText* property, which the client dataset uses to specify what data it wants. For information on the provider's *Options* property, see "Setting options that influence the data packets" on page 28-5.

- 2 Display and edit the data**, permit insertion of new records, and support deletions of existing records. Both the original copy of each record and any edits to it are stored in memory. This process is described in "Editing data" on page 27-5.
- 3 Fetch additional records as necessary**. By default, client datasets fetch all records and store them in memory. If a dataset contains many records or records with large BLOB fields, you may want to change this so that the client dataset fetches only enough records for display and re-fetches as needed. For details on how to control the record-fetching process, see "Requesting data from the source dataset or document" on page 27-25.
- 4 Optionally, refresh the records**. As time passes, other users may modify the data on the database server. This can cause the client dataset's data to deviate more and more from the data on the server, increasing the chance of errors when you apply updates. To mitigate this problem, you can refresh records that have not already been edited. See "Refreshing records" on page 27-30 for details.
- 5 Apply the locally cached records to the database** or cancel the updates. For each record written to the database, a *BeforeUpdateRecord* event is triggered. If an error occurs when writing an individual record to the database, an *OnUpdateError* event enables the application to correct the error, if possible, and continue updating. When updates are complete, all successfully applied updates are cleared from the local cache. For more information about applying updates to the database, see "Updating records" on page 27-19.

Instead of applying updates, an application can cancel the updates, emptying the change log without writing the changes to the database. You can cancel the updates by calling *CancelUpdates* method. All deleted records in the cache are undeleted, modified records revert to original values, and newly inserted record simply disappear.

Choosing the type of dataset for caching updates

C++Builder includes some specialized client dataset components for caching updates. Each client dataset is associated with a particular data access mechanism. These are listed in Table 27.3:

Table 27.3 Specialized client datasets for caching updates

| Client dataset | Data access mechanism |
|-------------------|-------------------------|
| TBDEClientDataSet | Borland Database Engine |
| TSQLClientDataSet | dbExpress |
| TIBClientDataSet | InterBase Express |

In addition, you can cache updates using the generic client dataset (*TClientDataSet*) with an external provider and source dataset. For information about using *TClientDataSet* with an external provider, see “Using a client dataset with a provider” on page 27-24.

Note The specialized client datasets associated with each data access mechanism actually use a provider and source dataset as well. However, both the provider and the source dataset are internal to the client dataset.

It is simplest to use one of the specialized client datasets to cache updates. However, there are times when it is preferable to use *TClientDataSet* with an external provider:

- If you are using a data access mechanism that does not have a specialized client dataset, you must use *TClientDataSet* with an external provider component. For example, if the data comes from an XML document or custom dataset.
- If you are working with tables that are related in a master/detail relationship, you should use *TClientDataSet* and connect it, using a provider, to the master table of two source datasets linked in a master/detail relationship. The client dataset sees the detail dataset as a nested dataset field. This approach is necessary so that updates to master and detail tables can be applied in the correct order.
- If you want to code event handlers that respond to the communication between the client dataset and the provider (for example, before and after the client dataset fetches records from the provider), you must use *TClientDataSet* with an external provider component. The specialized client datasets publish the most important events for applying updates (*OnReconcileError*, *BeforeUpdateRecord* and *OnGetTableName*), but do not publish the events surrounding communication between the client dataset and its provider, because they are intended primarily for multi-tiered applications.
- When using the BDE, you may want to use an external provider and source dataset if you need to use an update object. Although it is possible to code an update object from the *BeforeUpdateRecord* event handler of *TBDEClientDataSet*, it can be simpler just to assign the *UpdateObject* property of the source dataset. For information about using update objects, see “Using update objects to update a dataset” on page 24-39.

Indicating what records are modified

While the user edits a client dataset, you may find it useful to provide feedback about the edits that have been made. This is especially useful if you want to allow the user to undo specific edits, for example, by navigating to them and clicking an “Undo” button.

The *UpdateStatus* method and *StatusFilter* properties are useful when providing feedback on what updates have occurred:

- *UpdateStatus* indicates what type of update, if any, has occurred for the current record. It can be any of the following values:
 - *usUnmodified* indicates that the current record is unchanged.
 - *usModified* indicates that the current record has been edited.

- *usInserted* indicates a record that was inserted by the user.
- *usDeleted* indicates a record that was deleted by the user.
- *StatusFilter* controls what type of updates in the change log are visible. *StatusFilter* works on cached records in much the same way as filters work on regular data. *StatusFilter* is a set, so it can contain any combination of the following values:
 - *usUnmodified* indicates an unmodified record.
 - *usModified* indicates a modified record.
 - *usInserted* indicates an inserted record.
 - *usDeleted* indicates a deleted record.

By default, *StatusFilter* is the set [*usModified*, *usInserted*, *usUnmodified*]. You can add *usDeleted* to this set to provide feedback about deleted records as well.

Note *UpdateStatus* and *StatusFilter* are also useful in *BeforeUpdateRecord* and *OnReconcileError* event handlers. For information about *BeforeUpdateRecord*, see “Intervening as updates are applied” on page 27-21. For information about *OnReconcileError*, see “Reconciling update errors” on page 27-22.

The following example shows how to provide feedback about the update status of records using the *UpdateStatus* method. It assumes that you have changed the *StatusFilter* property to include *usDeleted*, allowing deleted records to remain visible in the dataset. It further assumes that you have added a calculated field to the dataset called “Status.”

```
void __fastcall TForm1::ClientDataSet1CalcFields(TDataSet *DataSet)
{
    switch (DataSet->UpdateStatus())
    {
        case usUnmodified:
            ClientDataSet1Status->Value = NULL; break;
        case usModified:
            ClientDataSet1Status->Value = "M"; break;
        case usInserted:
            ClientDataSet1Status->Value = "I"; break;
        case usDeleted:
            ClientDataSet1Status->Value = "D"; break;
    }
}
```

Updating records

The contents of the change log are stored as a data packet in the client dataset’s *Delta* property. To make the changes in *Delta* permanent, the client dataset must apply them to the database (or source dataset or XML document).

When a client applies updates to the server, the following steps occur:

- 1 The client application calls the *ApplyUpdates* method of a client dataset object. This method passes the contents of the client dataset’s *Delta* property to the (internal or external) provider. *Delta* is a data packet that contains a client dataset’s updated, inserted, and deleted records.

- 2 The provider applies the updates, caching any problem records that it can't resolve itself. See "Responding to client update requests" on page 28-8 for details on how the provider applies updates.
- 3 The provider returns all unresolved records to the client dataset in a *Result* data packet. The *Result* data packet contains all records that were not updated. It also contains error information, such as error messages and error codes.
- 4 The client dataset attempts to reconcile update errors returned in the *Result* data packet on a record-by-record basis.

Applying updates

Changes made to the client dataset's local copy of data are not sent to the database server (or XML document) until the client application calls the *ApplyUpdates* method. *ApplyUpdates* takes the changes in the change log, and sends them as a data packet (called *Delta*) to the provider. (Note that, when using most client datasets, the provider is internal to the client dataset.)

ApplyUpdates takes a single parameter, *MaxErrors*, which indicates the maximum number of errors that the provider should tolerate before aborting the update process. If *MaxErrors* is 0, then as soon as an update error occurs, the entire update process is terminated. No changes are written to the database, and the client dataset's change log remains intact. If *MaxErrors* is -1, any number of errors is tolerated, and the change log contains all records that could not be successfully applied. If *MaxErrors* is a positive value, and more errors occur than are permitted by *MaxErrors*, all updates are aborted. If fewer errors occur than specified by *MaxErrors*, all records successfully applied are automatically cleared from the client dataset's change log.

ApplyUpdates returns the number of actual errors encountered, which is always less than or equal to *MaxErrors* plus one. This return value indicates the number of records that could not be written to the database.

The client dataset's *ApplyUpdates* method does the following:

- 1 It indirectly calls the provider's *ApplyUpdates* method. The provider's *ApplyUpdates* method writes the updates to the database, source dataset, or XML document and attempts to correct any errors it encounters. Records that it cannot apply because of error conditions are sent back to the client dataset.
- 2 The client dataset's *ApplyUpdates* method then attempts to reconcile these problem records by calling the *Reconcile* method. *Reconcile* is an error-handling routine that calls the *OnReconcileError* event handler. You must code the *OnReconcileError* event handler to correct errors. For details about using *OnReconcileError*, see "Reconciling update errors" on page 27-22.
- 3 Finally, *Reconcile* removes successfully applied changes from the change log and updates *Data* to reflect the newly updated records. When *Reconcile* completes, *ApplyUpdates* reports the number of errors that occurred.

Important In some cases, the provider can't determine how to apply updates (for example, when applying updates from a stored procedure or multi-table join). Client datasets

and provider components generate events that let you handle these situations. See “Intervening as updates are applied” below for details.

Tip If the provider is on a stateless application server, you may want to communicate with it about persistent state information before or after you apply updates. *TClientDataSet* receives a *BeforeApplyUpdates* event before the updates are sent, which lets you send persistent state information to the server. After the updates are applied (but before the reconcile process), *TClientDataSet* receives an *AfterApplyUpdates* event where you can respond to any persistent state information returned by the application server.

Intervening as updates are applied

When a client dataset applies its updates, the provider determines how to handle writing the insertions, deletions, and modifications to the database server or source dataset. When you use *TClientDataSet* with an external provider component, you can use the properties and events of that provider to influence the way updates are applied. These are described in “Responding to client update requests” on page 28-8.

When the provider is internal, however, as it is for any client dataset associated with a data access mechanism, you can’t set its properties or provide event handlers. As a result, the client dataset publishes one property and two events that let you influence how the internal provider applies updates.

- *UpdateMode* controls what fields are used to locate records in the SQL statements the provider generates for applying updates. *UpdateMode* is identical to the provider’s *UpdateMode* property. For information on the provider’s *UpdateMode* property, see “Influencing how updates are applied” on page 28-9.
- *OnGetTableName* lets you supply the provider with the name of the database table to which it should apply updates. This lets the provider generate the SQL statements for updates when it can’t identify the database table from the stored procedure or query specified by *CommandText*. For example, if the query executes a multi-table join that only requires updates to a single table, supplying an *OnGetTableName* event handler allows the internal provider to correctly apply updates.

An *OnGetTableName* event handler has three parameters: the internal provider component, the internal dataset that fetched the data from the server, and a parameter to return the table name to use in the generated SQL.

- *BeforeUpdateRecord* occurs for every record in the delta packet. This event lets you make any last-minute changes before the record is inserted, deleted, or modified. It also provides a way for you to execute your own SQL statements to apply the update in cases where the provider can’t generate correct SQL (for example, for multi-table joins where multiple tables must be updated.)

A *BeforeUpdateRecord* event handler has five parameters: the internal provider component, the internal dataset that fetched the data from the server, a delta packet that is positioned on the record that is about to be updated, an indication of whether the update is an insertion, deletion, or modification, and a parameter that returns whether the event handler performed the update. The use of these is

illustrated in the following event handler. For simplicity, the example assumes the SQL statements are available as global variables that only need field values:

```
void __fastcall TForm1::SQLClientDataSet1BeforeUpdateRecord(TObject *Sender,
    TDataSet *SourceDS, TCustomClientDataSet *DeltaDS, TUpdateKind UpdateKind, bool &Applied)
{
    TSQLConnection *pConn := (dynamic_cast<TCustomSQLDataSet *>(SourceDS)->SQLConnection);
    char buffer[256];
    switch (UpdateKind)
    case ukModify:
        // 1st dataset: update Fields[1], use Fields[0] in where clause
        sprintf(buffer, UpdateStmt1, DeltaDS->Fields->Fields[1]->NewValue,
            DeltaDS->Fields->Fields[0]->OldValue);
        pConn->Execute(buffer, NULL, NULL);
        // 2nd dataset: update Fields[2], use Fields[3] in where clause
        sprintf(buffer, UpdateStmt2, DeltaDS->Fields->Fields[2]->NewValue,
            DeltaDS->Fields->Fields[3]->OldValue);
        pConn->Execute(buffer, NULL, NULL);
        break;
    case ukDelete:
        // 1st dataset: use Fields[0] in where clause
        sprintf(buffer, DeleteStmt1, DeltaDS->Fields->Fields[0]->OldValue);
        pConn->Execute(buffer, NULL, NULL);
        // 2nd dataset: use Fields[3] in where clause
        sprintf(buffer, DeleteStmt2, DeltaDS->Fields->Fields[3]->OldValue);
        pConn->Execute(buffer, NULL, NULL);
        break;
    case ukInsert:
        // 1st dataset: values in Fields[0] and Fields[1]
        sprintf(buffer, UpdateStmt1, DeltaDS->Fields->Fields[0]->NewValue,
            DeltaDS->Fields->Fields[1]->NewValue);
        pConn->Execute(buffer, NULL, NULL);
        // 2nd dataset: values in Fields[2] and Fields[3]
        sprintf(buffer, UpdateStmt2, DeltaDS->Fields->Fields[2]->NewValue,
            DeltaDS->Fields->Fields[3]->NewValue);
        pConn->Execute(buffer, NULL, NULL);
        break;
    }
}
```

Reconciling update errors

There are two events that let you handle errors that occur during the update process:

- During the update process, the internal provider generates an *OnUpdateError* event every time it encounters an update that it can't handle. If you correct the problem in an *OnUpdateError* event handler, then the error does not count toward the maximum number of errors passed to the *ApplyUpdates* method. This event only occurs for client datasets that use an internal provider. If you are using *TClientDataSet*, you can use the provider component's *OnUpdateError* event instead.
- After the entire update operation is finished, the client dataset generates an *OnReconcileError* event for every record that the provider could not apply to the database server.

You should always code an *OnReconcileError* or *OnUpdateError* event handler, even if only to discard the records returned that could not be applied. The event handlers for these two events work the same way. They include the following parameters:

- *DataSet*: A client dataset that contains the updated record which couldn't be applied. You can use this dataset's methods to get information about the problem record and to edit the record in order to correct any problems. In particular, you will want to use the *CurValue*, *OldValue*, and *NewValue* properties of the fields in the current record to determine the cause of the update problem. However, you must not call any client dataset methods that change the current record in your event handler.
- *E*: An object that represents the problem that occurred. You can use this exception to extract an error message or to determine the cause of the update error.
- *UpdateKind*: The type of update that generated the error. *UpdateKind* can be *ukModify* (the problem occurred updating an existing record that was modified), *ukInsert* (the problem occurred inserting a new record), or *ukDelete* (the problem occurred deleting an existing record).
- *Action*: A reference parameter that indicates what action to take when the event handler exits. In your event handler, you set this parameter to
 - Skip this record, leaving it in the change log. (rrSkip or raSkip)
 - Stop the entire reconcile operation. (rrAbort or raAbort)
 - Merge the modification that failed into the corresponding record from the server. (rrMerge or raMerge) This only works if the server record does not include any changes to fields modified in the client dataset's record.
 - Replace the current update in the change log with the value of the record in the event handler, which has presumably been corrected. (rrApply or raCorrect)
 - Ignore the error completely. (rrIgnore) This possibility only exists in the *OnUpdateError* event handler, and is intended for the case where the event handler applies the update back to the database server. The updated record is removed from the change log and merged into *Data*, as if the provider had applied the update.
 - Back out the changes for this record on the client dataset, reverting to the originally provided values. (raCancel) This possibility only exists in the *OnReconcileError* event handler.
 - Update the current record value to match the record on the server. (raRefresh) This possibility only exists in the *OnReconcileError* event handler.

The following code shows an *OnReconcileError* event handler that uses the reconcile error dialog from the RecError unit which ships in the objrepos directory. (To use this dialog, include RecError.hpp in your source unit.)

```
void __fastcall TForm1::ClientDataSetReconcileError(TCustomClientDataSet *DataSet,
    EReconcileError *E, TUpdateKind UpdateKind, TReconcileAction &Action)
{
    Action = HandleReconcileError(this, DataSet, UpdateKind, E);
}
```

Using a client dataset with a provider

A client dataset uses a provider to supply it with data and apply updates when

- It caches updates from a database server or another dataset.
- It represents the data in an XML document.
- It stores the data in the client portion of a multi-tiered application.

For any client dataset other than *TClientDataSet*, this provider is internal, and so not directly accessible by the application. With *TClientDataSet*, the provider is an external component that links the client dataset to an external source of data.

An external provider component can reside in the same application as the client dataset, or it can be part of a separate application running on another system. For more information about provider components, see Chapter 28, “Using provider components.” For more information about applications where the provider is in a separate application on another system, see Chapter 29, “Creating multi-tiered applications.”

When using an (internal or external) provider, the client dataset always caches any updates. For information on how this works, see “Using a client dataset to cache updates” on page 27-15.

The following topics describe additional properties and methods of the client dataset that enable it to work with a provider.

Specifying a provider

Unlike the client datasets that are associated with a data access mechanism, *TClientDataSet* has no internal provider component to package data or apply updates. If you want it to represent data from a source dataset or XML document, therefore, you must associated the client dataset with an external provider component.

The way you associate *TClientDataSet* with a provider depends on whether the provider is in the same application as the client dataset or on a remote application server running on another system.

- If the provider is in the same application as the client dataset, you can associate it with a provider by choosing a provider from the drop-down list for the *ProviderName* property in the Object Inspector. This works as long as the provider has the same *Owner* as the client dataset. (The client dataset and the provider have the same *Owner* if they are placed in the same form or data module.) To use a local provider that has a different *Owner*, you must form the association at runtime using the client dataset’s *SetProvider* method

If you think you may eventually scale up to a remote provider, or if you want to make calls directly to the *IAppServer* interface, you can also set the *RemoteServer* property to a *TLocalConnection* component. If you use *TLocalConnection*, the *TLocalConnection* instance manages the list of all providers that are local to the application, and handles the client dataset’s *IAppServer* calls. If you do not use

TLocalConnection, the application creates a hidden object that handles the *IAppServer* calls from the client dataset.

- If the provider is on a remote application server, then, in addition to the *ProviderName* property, you need to specify a component that connects the client dataset to the application server. There are two properties that can handle this task: *RemoteServer*, which specifies the name of a connection component from which to get a list of providers, or *ConnectionBroker*, which specifies a centralized broker that provides an additional level of indirection between the client dataset and the connection component. The connection component and, if used, the connection broker, reside in the same data module as the client dataset. The connection component establishes and maintains a connection to an application server, sometimes called a “data broker”. For more information, see “The structure of the client application” on page 29-4.

At design time, after you specify *RemoteServer* or *ConnectionBroker*, you can select a provider from the drop-down list for the *ProviderName* property in the Object Inspector. This list includes both local providers (in the same form or data module) and remote providers that can be accessed through the connection component.

Note If the connection component is an instance of *TDCOMConnection*, the application server must be registered on the client machine.

At runtime, you can switch among available providers (both local and remote) by setting *ProviderName* in code.

Requesting data from the source dataset or document

Client datasets can control how they fetch their data packets from a provider. By default, they retrieve all records from the source dataset. This is true whether the source dataset and provider are internal components (as with *TBDEClientDataSet*, *TSQLEClientDataSet*, and *TIBClientDataSet*), or separate components that supply the data for *TClientDataSet*.

You can change how the client dataset fetches records using the *PacketRecords* and *FetchOnDemand* properties.

Incremental fetching

By changing the *PacketRecords* property, you can specify that the client dataset fetches data in smaller chunks. *PacketRecords* specifies either how many records to fetch at a time, or the type of records to return. By default, *PacketRecords* is set to *-1*, which means that all available records are fetched at once, either when the client dataset is first opened, or when the application explicitly calls *GetNextPacket*. When *PacketRecords* is *-1*, then after the client dataset first fetches data, it never needs to fetch more data because it already has all available records.

To fetch records in small batches, set *PacketRecords* to the number of records to fetch. For example, the following statement sets the size of each data packet to ten records:

```
ClientDataSet1->PacketRecords = 10;
```

This process of fetching records in batches is called “incremental fetching”. Client datasets use incremental fetching when *PacketRecords* is greater than zero.

To fetch each batch of records, the client dataset calls *GetNextPacket*. Newly fetched packets are appended to the end of the data already in the client dataset. *GetNextPacket* returns the number of records it fetches. If the return value is the same as *PacketRecords*, the end of available records was not encountered. If the return value is greater than 0 but less than *PacketRecords*, the last record was reached during the fetch operation. If *GetNextPacket* returns 0, then there are no more records to fetch.

Warning Incremental fetching does not work if you are fetching data from a remote provider on a stateless application server. See “Supporting state information in remote data modules” on page 29-19 for information on how to use incremental fetching with stateless remote data modules.

Note You can also use *PacketRecords* to fetch metadata information about the source dataset. To retrieve metadata information, set *PacketRecords* to 0.

Fetch-on-demand

Automatic fetching of records is controlled by the *FetchOnDemand* property. When *FetchOnDemand* is **true** (the default), the client dataset automatically fetches records as needed. To prevent automatic fetching of records, set *FetchOnDemand* to **false**. When *FetchOnDemand* is **false**, the application must explicitly call *GetNextPacket* to fetch records.

For example, Applications that need to represent extremely large read-only datasets can turn off *FetchOnDemand* to ensure that the client datasets do not try to load more data than can fit into memory. Between fetches, the client dataset frees its cache using the *EmptyDataSet* method. This approach, however, does not work well when the client must post updates to the server.

The provider controls whether the records in data packets include BLOB data and nested detail datasets. If the provider excludes this information from records, the *FetchOnDemand* property causes the client dataset to automatically fetch BLOB data and detail datasets on an as-needed basis. If *FetchOnDemand* is **false** and the provider does not include BLOB data and detail datasets with records, you must explicitly call the *FetchBlobs* or *FetchDetails* method to retrieve this information.

Getting parameters from the source dataset

There are two circumstances when the client dataset needs to fetch parameter values:

- The application needs the value of output parameters on a stored procedure.
- The application wants to initialize the input parameters of a query or stored procedure to the current values on the source dataset.

Client datasets store parameter values in their *Params* property. These values are refreshed with any output parameters when the client dataset fetches data from the source dataset. However, there may be times a *TClientDataSet* component in a client application needs output parameters when it is not fetching data.

To fetch output parameters when not fetching records, or to initialize input parameters, the client dataset can request parameter values from the source dataset by calling the *FetchParams* method. The parameters are returned in a data packet from the provider and assigned to the client dataset's *Params* property.

At design time, the *Params* property can be initialized by right-clicking the client dataset and choosing Fetch Params.

Note There is never a need to call *FetchParams* when the client dataset uses an internal provider and source dataset, because the *Params* property always reflects the parameters of the internal source dataset. With *TClientDataSet*, the *FetchParams* method (or the Fetch Params command) only works if the client dataset is connected to a provider whose associated dataset can supply parameters. For example, if the source dataset is a table type dataset, there are no parameters to fetch.

If the provider is on a separate system as part of a stateless application server, you can't use *FetchParams* to retrieve output parameters. In a stateless application server, other clients can change and rerun the query or stored procedure, changing output parameters before the call to *FetchParams*. To retrieve output parameters from a stateless application server, use the *Execute* method. If the provider is associated with a query or stored procedure, *Execute* tells the provider to execute the query or stored procedure and return any output parameters. These returned parameters are then used to automatically update the *Params* property.

Passing parameters to the source dataset

Client datasets can pass parameters to the source dataset to specify what data they want provided in the data packets it sends. These parameters can specify

- Input parameter values for a query or stored procedure that is run on the application server
- Field values that limit the records sent in data packets

You can specify parameter values that your client dataset sends to the source dataset at design time or at runtime. At design time, select the client dataset and double-click the *Params* property in the Object Inspector. This brings up the collection editor, where you can add, delete, or rearrange parameters. By selecting a parameter in the collection editor, you can use the Object Inspector to edit the properties of that parameter.

At runtime, use the *CreateParam* method of the *Params* property to add parameters to your client dataset. *CreateParam* returns a parameter object, given a specified name, parameter type, and datatype. You can then use the properties of that parameter object to assign a value to the parameter.

For example, the following code adds an input parameter named *CustNo* with a value of 605:

```
TParam *pParam = ClientDataSet1->Params->CreateParam(ftInteger, "CustNo", ptInput);
pParam->AsInteger = 605;
```

If the client dataset is not active, you can send the parameters to the application server and retrieve a data packet that reflects those parameter values simply by setting the *Active* property to **true**.

Sending query or stored procedure parameters

When the client dataset's *CommandType* property is *ctQuery* or *ctStoredProc*, or, if the client dataset is a *TClientDataSet* instance, when the associated provider represents the results of a query or stored procedure, you can use the *Params* property to specify parameter values. When the client dataset requests data from the source dataset or uses its *Execute* method to run a query or stored procedure that does not return a dataset, it passes these parameter values along with the request for data or the execute command. When the provider receives these parameter values, it assigns them to its associated dataset. It then instructs the dataset to execute its query or stored procedure using these parameter values, and, if the client dataset requested data, begins providing data, starting with the first record in the result set.

Note Parameter names should match the names of the corresponding parameters on the source dataset.

Limiting records with parameters

If the client dataset is

- a *TClientDataSet* instance whose associated provider represents a *TTable* or *TSQLTable* component
- a *TSQLClientDataSet* or *TBDEClientDataSet* instance whose *CommandType* property is *ctTable*

then it can use the *Params* property to limit the records that it caches in memory. Each parameter represents a field value that must be matched before a record can be included in the client dataset's data. This works much like a filter, except that with a filter, the records are still cached in memory, but unavailable.

Each parameter name must match the name of a field. When using *TClientDataSet*, these are the names of fields in the *TTable* or *TSQLTable* component associated with the provider. When using *TSQLClientDataSet* or *TBDEClientDataSet*, these are the names of fields in the table on the database server. The data in the client dataset then includes only those records whose values on the corresponding fields match the values assigned to the parameters.

For example, consider an application that displays the orders for a single customer. When the user identifies the customer, the client dataset sets its *Params* property to include a single parameter named *CustID* (or whatever field in the source table is called) whose value identifies the customer whose orders should be displayed. When the client dataset requests data from the source dataset, it passes this parameter value. The provider then sends only the records for the identified customer. This is more efficient than letting the provider send all the orders records to the client application and then filtering the records using the client dataset.

Handling constraints from the server

When a database server defines constraints on what data is valid, it is useful if the client dataset knows about them. That way, the client dataset can ensure that user edits never violate those server constraints. As a result, such violations are never passed to the database server where they would be rejected. This means fewer updates generate error conditions during the updating process.

Regardless of the source of data, you can duplicate such server constraints by explicitly adding them to the client dataset. This process is described in “Specifying custom constraints” on page 27-7.

It is more convenient, however, if the server constraints are automatically included in data packets. Then you need not explicitly specify default expressions and constraints, and the client dataset changes the values it enforces when the server constraints change. By default, this is exactly what happens: if the source dataset is aware of server constraints, the provider automatically includes them in data packets and the client dataset enforces them when the user posts edits to the change log.

Note Only datasets that use the BDE can import constraints from the server. This means that server constraints are only included in data packets when using *TBDEClientDataSet* or *TClientDataSet* with a provider that represents a BDE-based dataset. For more information on how to import server constraints and how to prevent a provider from including them in data packets, see “Handling server constraints” on page 28-12.

Note For more information on working with the constraints once they have been imported, see “Using server constraints” on page 23-21.

While importing server constraints and expressions is an extremely valuable feature that helps an application preserve data integrity, there may be times when it needs to disable constraints on a temporary basis. For example, if a server constraint is based on the current maximum value of a field, but the client dataset uses incremental fetching, the current maximum value for a field in the client dataset may differ from the maximum value on the database server, and constraints may be invoked differently. In another case, if a client dataset applies a filter to records when constraints are enabled, the filter may interfere in unintended ways with constraint conditions. In each of these cases, an application may disable constraint-checking.

To disable constraints temporarily, call the *DisableConstraints* method. Each time *DisableConstraints* is called, a reference count is incremented. While the reference count is greater than zero, constraints are not enforced on the client dataset.

To reenable constraints for the client dataset, call the dataset’s *EnableConstraints* method. Each call to *EnableConstraints* decrements the reference count. When the reference count is zero, constraints are enabled again.

Tip Always call *DisableConstraints* and *EnableConstraints* in paired blocks to ensure that constraints are enabled when you intend them to be.

Refreshing records

Client datasets work with an in-memory snapshot of the data from the source dataset. If the source dataset represents server data, then as time elapses other users may modify that data. The data in the client dataset becomes a less accurate picture of the underlying data.

Like any other dataset, client datasets have a *Refresh* method that updates its records to match the current values on the server. However, calling *Refresh* only works if there are no edits in the change log. Calling *Refresh* when there are unapplied edits results in an exception.

Client datasets can also update the data while leaving the change log intact. To do this, call the *RefreshRecord* method. Unlike the *Refresh* method, *RefreshRecord* updates only the current record in the client dataset. *RefreshRecord* changes the record value originally obtained from the provider but leaves any changes in the change log.

Warning It is not always appropriate to call *RefreshRecord*. If the user's edits conflict with changes made to the underlying dataset by other users, calling *RefreshRecord* masks this conflict. When the client dataset applies its updates, no reconcile error occurs and the application can't resolve the conflict.

In order to avoid masking update errors, you may want to check that there are no pending updates before calling *RefreshRecord*. For example, the following *AfterScroll* refreshes the current record every time the user moves to a new record (ensuring the most up-to-date value), but only when it is safe to do so.:

```
void __fastcall TForm1::ClientDataSet1AfterScroll(TDataSet *DataSet)
{
    if (ClientDataSet1->UpdateStatus == usUnModified)
        ClientDataSet1->RefreshRecord();
}
```

Communicating with providers using custom events

Client datasets communicate with a provider component through a special interface called *IAppServer*. If the provider is local, *IAppServer* is the interface to an automatically-generated object that handles all communication between the client dataset and its provider. If the provider is remote, *IAppServer* is the interface to a remote data module's associated COM object on the application server, or (in the case of a SOAP server) an interface generated by the connection component.

TClientDataSet provides many opportunities for customizing the communication that uses the *IAppServer* interface. Before and after every *IAppServer* method call that is directed at the client dataset's provider, *TClientDataSet* receives special events that allow it to communicate arbitrary information with its provider. These events are matched with similar events on the provider. Thus for example, when the client dataset calls its *ApplyUpdates* method, the following events occur:

- 1 The client dataset receives a *BeforeApplyUpdates* event, where it specifies arbitrary custom information in an OleVariant called *OwnerData*.

- 2 The provider receives a *BeforeApplyUpdates* event, where it can respond to the *OwnerData* from the client dataset and update the value of *OwnerData* to new information.
- 3 The provider goes through its normal process of assembling a data packet (including all the accompanying events).
- 4 The provider receives an *AfterApplyUpdates* event, where it can respond to the current value of *OwnerData* and update it to a value for the client dataset.
- 5 The client dataset receives an *AfterApplyUpdates* event, where it can respond to the returned value of *OwnerData*.

Every other *IAppServer* method call is accompanied by a similar set of *BeforeXXX* and *AfterXXX* events that let you customize the communication between client dataset and provider.

In addition, the client dataset has a special method, *DataRequest*, whose only purpose is to allow application-specific communication with the provider. When the client dataset calls *DataRequest*, it passes an *OleVariant* as a parameter that can contain any information you want. This, in turn, generates an *OnDataRequest* event on the provider, where you can respond in any application-defined way and return a value to the client dataset.

Overriding the source dataset

The client datasets that are associated with a particular data access mechanism use the *CommandText* and *CommandType* properties to specify the data they represent. When using *TClientDataSet*, however, the data is specified by the source dataset, not the client dataset. Typically, this source dataset has a property that specifies an SQL statement to generate the data or the name of a database table or stored procedure.

If the provider allows, *TClientDataSet* can override the property on the source dataset that indicates what data it represents. That is, if the provider permits, the client dataset's *CommandText* property replaces the property on the provider's dataset that specifies what data it represents. This allows *TClientDataSet* to specify dynamically what data it wants to see.

By default, external provider components do not let client datasets use the *CommandText* value in this way. To allow *TClientDataSet* to use its *CommandText* property, you must add *poAllowCommandText* to the *Options* property of the provider. Otherwise, the value of *CommandText* is ignored.

Note Never remove *poAllowCommandText* from the *Options* property of *TSQLClientDataSet*, *TBDEClientDataSet*, or *TIBClientDataSet*. The client dataset's *Options* property is forwarded to the internal provider, so removing *poAllowCommandText* prevents the client dataset from specifying what data to access.

The client dataset sends its *CommandText* string to the provider at two times:

- When the client dataset first opens. After it has retrieved the first data packet from the provider, the client dataset does not send *CommandText* when fetching subsequent data packets.

- When the client dataset sends an *Execute* command to provider.

To send an SQL command or to change a table or stored procedure name at any other time, you must explicitly use the *IAppServer* interface that is available as the *AppServer* property. This property represents the interface through which the client dataset communicates with its provider.

Using a client dataset with file-based data

Client datasets can work with dedicated files on disk as well as server data. This allows them to be used in file-based database applications and “briefcase model” applications. The special files that client datasets use for their data are called MyBase.

Tip All client datasets are appropriate for a briefcase model application, but for a pure MyBase application (one that does not use a provider), it is preferable to use *TClientDataSet*, because it involves less overhead.

In a pure MyBase application, the client application cannot get table definitions and data from the server, and there is no server to which it can apply updates. Instead, the client dataset must independently

- Define and create tables
- Load saved data
- Merge edits into its data
- Save data

Creating a new dataset

There are three ways to define and create client datasets that do not represent server data:

- You can define and create a new client dataset using persistent fields or field and index definitions. This follows the same scheme as creating any table type dataset. See “Creating and deleting tables” on page 22-37 for details.
- You can copy an existing dataset (at design or runtime). See “Copying data from another dataset” on page 27-13 for more information about copying existing datasets.
- You can create a client dataset from an arbitrary XML document. See “Converting XML documents into data packets” on page 30-6 for details.

Once the dataset is created, you can save it to a file. From then on, you do not need to recreate the table, only load it from the file you saved. When beginning a file-based database application, you may want to first create and save empty files for your datasets before writing the application itself. This way, you start with the metadata for your client dataset already defined, making it easier to set up the user interface.

Loading data from a file or stream

To load data from a file, call a client dataset's *LoadFromFile* method. *LoadFromFile* takes one parameter, a string that specifies the file from which to read data. The file name can be a fully qualified path name, if appropriate. If you always load the client dataset's data from the same file, you can use the *FileName* property instead. If *FileName* names an existing file, the data is automatically loaded when the client dataset is opened.

To load data from a stream, call the client dataset's *LoadFromStream* method. *LoadFromStream* takes one parameter, a stream object that supplies the data.

The data loaded by *LoadFromFile* (*LoadFromStream*) must have previously been saved in a client dataset's data format by this or another client dataset using the *SaveToFile* (*SaveToStream*) method, or generated from an XML document. For more information about saving data to a file or stream, see "Saving data to a file or stream" on page 27-34. For information about creating client dataset data from an XML document, see Chapter 30, "Using XML in database applications."

When you call *LoadFromFile* or *LoadFromStream*, all data in the file is read into the *Data* property. Any edits that were in the change log when the data was saved are read into the *Delta* property. However, the only indexes that are read from the file are those that were created with the dataset.

Merging changes into data

When you edit the data in a client dataset, all edits to the data exist only in an in-memory change log. This log can be maintained separately from the data itself, although it is completely transparent to objects that use the client dataset. That is, controls that navigate the client dataset or display its data see a view of the data that includes the changes. If you do not want to back out of changes, however, you should merge the change log into the data of the client dataset by calling the *MergeChangeLog* method. *MergeChangeLog* overwrites records in *Data* with any changed field values in the change log.

After *MergeChangeLog* executes, *Data* contains a mix of existing data and any changes that were in the change log. This mix becomes the new *Data* baseline against which further changes can be made. *MergeChangeLog* clears the change log of all records and resets the *ChangeCount* property to 0.

Warning Do not call *MergeChangeLog* for client datasets that use a provider. In this case, call *ApplyUpdates* to write changes to the database. For more information, see "Applying updates" on page 27-20.

Note It is also possible to merge changes into the data of a separate client dataset if that dataset originally provided the data in the *Data* property. To do this, you must use a dataset provider. For an example of how to do this, see "Assigning data directly" on page 27-14.

If you do not want to use the extended undo capabilities of the change log, you can set the client dataset's *LogChanges* property to **false**. When *LogChanges* is **false**, edits are automatically merged when you post records and there is no need to call *MergeChangeLog*.

Saving data to a file or stream

Even when you have merged changes into the data of a client dataset, this data still exists only in memory. While it persists if you close the client dataset and reopen it in your application, it will disappear when your application shuts down. To make the data permanent, it must be written to disk. Write changes to disk using the *SaveToFile* method.

SaveToFile takes one parameter, a string that specifies the file into which to write data. The file name can be a fully qualified path name, if appropriate. If the file already exists, its current contents are completely overwritten.

Note *SaveToFile* does not preserve any indexes you added to the client dataset at runtime, only indexes that were added when you created the client dataset.

If you always save the data to the same file, you can use the *FileName* property instead. If *FileName* is set, the data is automatically saved to the named file when the client dataset is closed.

You can also save data to a stream, using the *SaveToStream* method. *SaveToStream* takes one parameter, a stream object that receives the data.

Note If you save a client dataset while there are still edits in the change log, these are not merged with the data. When you reload the data, using the *LoadFromFile* or *LoadFromStream* method, the change log will still contain the unmerged edits. This is important for applications that support the briefcase model, where those changes will eventually have to be applied to a provider component on the application server.

Using provider components

Provider components (*TDataSetProvider* and *TXMLTransformProvider*) supply the most common mechanism by which client datasets obtain their data. Providers

- Receive data requests from a client dataset (or XML broker), fetch the requested data, package the data into a transportable data packet, and return the data to the client dataset (or XML broker). This activity is called “providing.”
- Receive updated data from a client dataset (or XML broker), apply updates to the database server, source dataset, or source XML document, and log any updates that cannot be applied, returning unresolved updates to the client dataset for further reconciliation. This activity is called “resolving.”

Most of the work of a provider component happens automatically. You need not write any code on the provider to create data packets from the data in a dataset or XML document or to apply updates. However, provider components include a number of events and properties that allow your application more direct control over what information is packaged for clients and how your application responds to client requests.

When using *TBDEClientDataSet*, *TSQLClientDataSet*, or *TIBClientDataSet*, the provider is internal to the client dataset, and the application has no direct access to it. When using *TClientDataSet* or *TXMLBroker*, however, the provider is a separate component that you can use to control what information is packaged for clients and for responding to events that occur around the process of providing and resolving. The client datasets that have internal providers surface some of the internal provider’s properties and events as their own properties and events, but for the greatest amount of control, you may want to use *TClientDataSet* with a separate provider component.

When using a separate provider component, it can reside in the same application as the client dataset (or XML broker), or it can reside on an application server as part of a multi-tiered application.

This chapter describes how to use a provider component to control the interaction with client datasets or XML brokers.

Determining the source of data

When you use a provider component, you must specify the source it uses to get the data it assembles into data packets. Depending on your version of C++Builder, you can specify the source as one of the following:

- To provide the data from a dataset, use *TDataSetProvider*.
- To provide the data from an XML document, use *TXMLTransformProvider*.

Using a dataset as the source of the data

If the provider is a dataset provider (*TDataSetProvider*), set the *DataSet* property of the provider to indicate the source dataset. At design time, select from available datasets in the *DataSet* property drop-down list in the Object Inspector.

TDataSetProvider interacts with the source dataset using the *IProviderSupport* interface. This interface is introduced by *TDataSet*, so it is available for all datasets. However, the *IProviderSupport* methods implemented in *TDataSet* are mostly stubs that don't do anything or that throw exceptions.

The dataset classes that ship with C++Builder (BDE-enabled datasets, ADO-enabled datasets, *dbExpress* datasets, and InterBase Express datasets) override these methods to implement the *IProviderSupport* interface in a more useful fashion. Client datasets don't add anything to the inherited *IProviderSupport* implementation, but can still be used as a source dataset as long as the *ResolveToDataSet* property of the provider is **true**.

Component writers that create their own custom descendants from *TDataSet* must override all appropriate *IProviderSupport* methods if their datasets are to supply data to a provider. If the provider only provides data packets on a read-only basis (that is, if it does not apply updates), the *IProviderSupport* methods implemented in *TDataSet* may be sufficient.

Using an XML document as the source of the data

If the provider is an XML provider, set the *XMLDataFile* property of the provider to indicate the source document.

XML providers must transform the source document into data packets, so in addition to indicating the source document, you must also specify how to transform that document into data packets. This transformation is handled by the provider's *TransformRead* property. *TransformRead* represents a *TXMLTransform* object. You can set its properties to specify what transformation to use, and use its events to provide your own input to the transformation. For more information on using XML providers, see "Using an XML document as the source for a provider" on page 30-8.

Communicating with the client dataset

All communication between a provider and a client dataset or XML broker takes place through an *IAppServer* interface. If the provider is in the same application as the client, this interface is implemented by a hidden object generated automatically for you, or by a *TLocalConnection* component. If the provider is part of a multi-tiered application, this is the interface for the application server or (in the case of a SOAP server) an interface generated by the connection component.

Most applications do not use *IAppServer* directly, but invoke it indirectly through the properties and methods of the client dataset or XML broker. However, when necessary, you can make direct calls to the *IAppServer* interface by using the *AppServer* property of a client dataset.

Table 28.1 lists the methods of the *IAppServer* interface, as well as the corresponding methods and events on the provider component and the client dataset. These *IAppServer* methods include a *Provider* parameter. In multi-tiered applications, this parameter indicates the provider on the application server with which the client dataset communicates. Most methods also include an *OleVariant* parameter called *OwnerData* that allows a client dataset and a provider to pass custom information back and forth. *OwnerData* is not used by default, but is passed to all event handlers so that you can write code that allows your provider to adjust to application-defined information before and after each call from a client dataset.

Table 28.1 AppServer interface members

| IAppServer | Provider component | TClientDataSet |
|----------------------------|--|---|
| AS_ApplyUpdates method | ApplyUpdates method, BeforeApplyUpdates event, AfterApplyUpdates event | ApplyUpdates method, BeforeApplyUpdates event, AfterApplyUpdates event. |
| AS_DataRequest method | DataRequest method, OnDataRequest event | DataRequest method. |
| AS_Execute method | Execute method, BeforeExecute event, AfterExecute event | Execute method, BeforeExecute event, AfterExecute event. |
| AS_GetParams method | GetParams method, BeforeGetParams event, AfterGetParams event | FetchParams method, BeforeGetParams event, AfterGetParams event. |
| AS_GetProviderNames method | Used to identify all available providers. | Used to create a design-time list for ProviderName property. |
| AS_GetRecords method | GetRecords method, BeforeGetRecords event, AfterGetRecords event | GetNextPacket method, Data property, BeforeGetRecords event, AfterGetRecords event |
| AS_RowRequest method | RowRequest method, BeforeRowRequest event, AfterRowRequest event | FetchBlobs method, FetchDetails method, RefreshRecord method, BeforeRowRequest event, AfterRowRequest event |

Choosing how to apply updates using a dataset provider

TXMLTransformProvider components always apply updates to the associated XML document. When using *TDataSetProvider*, however, you can choose how updates are applied. By default, when *TDataSetProvider* components apply updates and resolve update errors, they communicate directly with the database server using dynamically generated SQL statements. This approach has the advantage that your server application does not need to merge updates twice (first to the dataset, and then to the remote server).

However, you may not always want to take this approach. For example, you may want to use some of the events on the dataset component. Alternately, the dataset you use may not support the use of SQL statements (for example if you are providing from a *TClientDataSet* component).

TDataSetProvider lets you decide whether to apply updates to the database server using SQL or to the source dataset by setting the *ResolveToDataSet* property. When this property is **true**, updates are applied to the dataset. When it is **false**, updates are applied directly to the underlying database server.

Controlling what information is included in data packets

When working with a dataset provider, there are a number of ways to control what information is included in data packets that are sent to and from the client. These include

- Specifying what fields appear in data packets
- Setting options that influence the data packets
- Adding custom information to data packets

Note These techniques for controlling the content of data packets are only available for dataset providers. When using *TXMLTransformProvider*, you can only control the content of data packets by controlling the transformation file the provider uses.

Specifying what fields appear in data packets

When using a dataset provider, you can control what fields are included in data packets by creating persistent fields on the dataset that the provider uses to build data packets. The provider then includes only these fields. Fields whose values are generated dynamically by the source dataset (such as calculated fields or lookup fields) can be included, but appear to client datasets on the receiving end as static read-only fields. For information about persistent fields, see “Persistent field components” on page 23-3.

If the client dataset will be editing the data and applying updates, you must include enough fields so that there are no duplicate records in the data packet. Otherwise, when the updates are applied, it is impossible to determine which record to update. If you do not want the client dataset to be able to see or use extra fields provided only

to ensure uniqueness, set the *ProviderFlags* property for those fields to include *pfHidden*.

Note Including enough fields to avoid duplicate records is also a consideration when the provider's source dataset represents a query. You must specify the query so that it includes enough fields to ensure all records are unique, even if your application does not use all the fields.

Setting options that influence the data packets

The *Options* property of a dataset provider lets you specify when BLOBs or nested detail tables are sent, whether field display properties are included, what type of updates are allowed, and so on. The following table lists the possible values that can be included in *Options*.

Table 28.2 Provider options

| Value | Meaning |
|------------------------|---|
| poAutoRefresh | The provider refreshes the client dataset with current record values whenever it applies updates. |
| poReadOnly | The client dataset can't apply updates to the provider. |
| poDisableEdits | Client datasets can't modify existing data values. If the user tries to edit a field, the client dataset raises exception. (This does not affect the client dataset's ability to insert or delete records). |
| poDisableInserts | Client datasets can't insert new records. If the user tries to insert a new record, the client dataset raises an exception. (This does not affect the client dataset's ability to delete records or modify existing data) |
| poDisableDeletes | Client datasets can't delete records. If the user tries to delete a record, the client dataset raises an exception. (This does not affect the client dataset's ability to insert or modify records) |
| poFetchBlobsOnDemand | BLOB field values are not included in data packets. Instead, client datasets must request these values on an as-needed basis. If the client dataset's <i>FetchOnDemand</i> property is true , it requests these values automatically. Otherwise, the application must call the client dataset's <i>FetchBlobs</i> method to retrieve BLOB data. |
| poFetchDetailsOnDemand | When the provider's dataset represents the master of a master/detail relationship, nested detail values are not included in data packets. Instead, client datasets request these on an as-needed basis. If the client dataset's <i>FetchOnDemand</i> property is true , it requests these values automatically. Otherwise, the application must call the client dataset's <i>FetchDetails</i> method to retrieve nested details. |
| poIncFieldProps | The data packet includes the following field properties (where applicable): <i>Alignment</i> , <i>DisplayLabel</i> , <i>DisplayWidth</i> , <i>Visible</i> , <i>DisplayFormat</i> , <i>EditFormat</i> , <i>MaxValue</i> , <i>MinValue</i> , <i>Currency</i> , <i>EditMask</i> , <i>DisplayValues</i> . |
| poCascadeDeletes | When the provider's dataset represents the master of a master/detail relationship, the server automatically deletes detail records when master records are deleted. To use this option, the database server must be set up to perform cascaded deletes as part of its referential integrity. |

Table 28.2 Provider options (continued)

| Value | Meaning |
|---------------------------|--|
| poCascadeUpdates | When the provider's dataset represents the master of a master/detail relationship, key values on detail tables are updated automatically when the corresponding values are changed in master records. To use this option, the database server must be set up to perform cascaded updates as part of its referential integrity. |
| poAllowMultiRecordUpdates | A single update can cause more than one record of the underlying database table to change. This can be the result of triggers, referential integrity, SQL statements on the source dataset, and so on. Note that if an error occurs, the event handlers provide access to the record that was updated, not the other records that change in consequence. |
| poNoReset | Client datasets can't specify that the provider should reposition the cursor on the first record before providing data. |
| poPropagateChanges | Changes made by the server to updated records as part of the update process are sent back to the client and merged into the client dataset. |
| poAllowCommandText | The client can override the associated dataset's SQL text or the name of the table or stored procedure it represents. |
| poRetainServerOrder | The client dataset should not re-sort the records in the dataset to enforce a default order. |

Adding custom information to data packets

Dataset providers can add application-defined information to data packets using the *OnGetDataSetProperties* event. This information is encoded as an *OleVariant*, and stored under a name you specify. Client datasets can then retrieve the information using their *GetOptionalParam* method. You can also specify that the information be included in delta packets that the client dataset sends when updating records. In this case, the client dataset may never be aware of the information, but the provider can send a round-trip message to itself.

When adding custom information in the *OnGetDataSetProperties* event, each individual attribute (sometimes called an "optional parameter") is specified using a Variant array that contains three elements: the name (a string), the value (a Variant), and a boolean flag indicating whether the information should be included in delta packets when the client applies updates. Add multiple attributes by creating a Variant array of Variant arrays. For example, the following *OnGetDataSetProperties* event handler sends two values, the time the data was provided and the total number of records in the source dataset. Only the time the data was provided is returned when client datasets apply updates:

```
void __fastcall TMyDataModule1::Provider1GetDataSetProperties(TObject *Sender, TDataSet
*DataSet, out OleVariant Properties)
{
    int ArrayBounds[2];
    ArrayBounds[0] = 0;
    ArrayBounds[1] = 1;
```

```

Properties = VarArrayCreate(ArrayBounds, 1, varVariant);
Variant values[3];
values[0] = Variant("TimeProvided");
values[1] = Variant(Now());
values[2] = Variant(true);
Properties[0] = VarArrayOf(values,2);
values[0] = Variant("TableSize");
values[1] = Variant(DataSet->RecordCount);
values[2] = Variant(false);
Properties[1] = VarArrayOf(values,2);
}

```

When the client dataset applies updates, the time the original records were provided can be read in the provider's *OnUpdateData* event:

```

void __fastcall TMyDataModule1::Provider1UpdateData(TObject *Sender, TCustomClientDataSet
*DataSet)
{
    Variant WhenProvided = DataSet->GetOptionalParam("TimeProvided");
    ...
}

```

Responding to client data requests

Usually client requests for data are handled automatically. A client dataset or XML broker requests a data packet by calling *GetRecords* (indirectly, through the *IAppServer* interface). The provider responds automatically by fetching data from the associated dataset or XML document, creating a data packet, and sending the packet to the client.

The provider has the option of editing data after it has been assembled into a data packet but before the packet is sent to the client. For example, you might want to remove records from the packet based on some criterion (such as the user's level of access), or, in a multi-tiered application, you might want to encrypt sensitive data before it is sent on to the client.

To edit the data packet before sending it on to the client, write an *OnGetData* event handler. *OnGetData* event handlers provide the data packet as a parameter in the form of a client dataset. Using the methods of this client dataset, you can edit data before it is sent to the client.

As with all method calls made through the *IAppServer* interface, the provider can communicate persistent state information with a client dataset before and after the call to *GetRecords*. This communication takes place using the *BeforeGetRecords* and *AfterGetRecords* event handlers. For a discussion of persistent state information in application servers, see "Supporting state information in remote data modules" on page 29-19.

Responding to client update requests

A provider applies updates to database records based on a *Delta* data packet received from a client dataset or XML broker. The client requests updates by calling the *ApplyUpdates* method (indirectly, through the *IAppServer* interface).

As with all method calls made through the *IAppServer* interface, the provider can communicate persistent state information with a client dataset before and after the call to *ApplyUpdates*. This communication takes place using the *BeforeApplyUpdates* and *AfterApplyUpdates* event handlers. For a discussion of persistent state information in application servers, see “Supporting state information in remote data modules” on page 29-19.

If you are using a dataset provider, a number of additional events allow you more control:

When a dataset provider receives an update request, it generates an *OnUpdateData* event, where you can edit the Delta packet before it is written to the dataset or influence how updates are applied. After the *OnUpdateData* event, the provider writes the changes to the database or source dataset.

The provider performs the update on a record-by-record basis. Before the dataset provider applies each record, it generates a *BeforeUpdateRecord* event, which you can use to screen updates before they are applied. If an error occurs when updating a record, the provider receives an *OnUpdateError* event where it can resolve the error. Usually errors occur because the change violates a server constraint or a database record was changed by a different application subsequent to its retrieval by the provider, but prior to the client dataset’s request to apply updates.

Update errors can be processed by either the dataset provider or the client dataset. When the provider is part of a multi-tiered application, it should handle all update errors that do not require user interaction to resolve. When the provider can’t resolve an error condition, it temporarily stores a copy of the offending record. When record processing is complete, the provider returns a count of the errors it encountered to the client dataset, and copies the unresolved records into a results data packet that it returns to the client dataset for further reconciliation.

The event handlers for all provider events are passed the set of updates as a client dataset. If your event handler is only dealing with certain types of updates, you can filter the dataset based on the update status of records. By filtering the records, your event handler does not need to sort through records it won’t be using. To filter the client dataset on the update status of its records, set its *StatusFilter* property.

Note Applications must supply extra support when the updates are directed at a dataset that does not represent a single table. For details on how to do this, see “Applying updates to datasets that do not represent a single table” on page 28-11.

Editing delta packets before updating the database

Before a dataset provider applies updates to the database, it generates an *OnUpdateData* event. The *OnUpdateData* event handler receives a copy of the *Delta* packet as a parameter. This is a client dataset.

In the *OnUpdateData* event handler, you can use any of the properties and methods of the client dataset to edit the *Delta* packet before it is written to the dataset. One particularly useful property is the *UpdateStatus* property. *UpdateStatus* indicates what type of modification the current record in the delta packet represents. It can have any of the values in Table 28.3.

Table 28.3 UpdateStatus values

| Value | Description |
|--------------|---------------------------------------|
| usUnmodified | Record contents have not been changed |
| usModified | Record contents have been changed |
| usInserted | Record has been inserted |
| usDeleted | Record has been deleted |

For example, the following *OnUpdateData* event handler inserts the current date into every new record that is inserted into the database:

```
void __fastcall TMyDataModule1::Provider1UpdateData(TObject *Sender, TCustomClientDataSet
*DataSet)
{
    DataSet->First();
    while (!DataSet->Eof)
    {
        if (DataSet->UpdateStatus == usInserted)
        {
            DataSet->Edit();
            DataSet->FieldByName("DateCreated")->AsDateTime = Date();
            DataSet->Post();
        }
        DataSet->Next();
    }
}
```

Influencing how updates are applied

The *OnUpdateData* event also gives your dataset provider a chance to indicate how records in the delta packet are applied to the database.

By default, changes in the delta packet are written to the database using automatically generated SQL UPDATE, INSERT, or DELETE statements such as

```
UPDATE EMPLOYEES
set EMPNO = 748, NAME = 'Smith', TITLE = 'Programmer 1', DEPT = 52
WHERE
EMPNO = 748 and NAME = 'Smith' and TITLE = 'Programmer 1' and DEPT = 47
```

Unless you specify otherwise, all fields in the delta packet records are included in the UPDATE clause and in the WHERE clause. However, you may want to exclude some of these fields. One way to do this is to set the *UpdateMode* property of the provider. *UpdateMode* can be assigned any of the following values:

Table 28.4 UpdateMode values

| Value | Meaning |
|----------------|---|
| upWhereAll | All fields are used to locate fields (the WHERE clause). |
| upWhereChanged | Only key fields and fields that are changed are used to locate records. |
| upWhereKeyOnly | Only key fields are used to locate records. |

You might, however, want even more control. For example, with the previous statement, you might want to prevent the EMPNO field from being modified by leaving it out of the UPDATE clause and leave the TITLE and DEPT fields out of the WHERE clause to avoid update conflicts when other applications have modified the data. To specify the clauses where a specific field appears, use the *ProviderFlags* property. *ProviderFlags* is a set that can include any of the values in Table 28.5

Table 28.5 ProviderFlags values

| Value | Description |
|------------|---|
| pfInWhere | The field appears in the WHERE clause of generated INSERT, DELETE, and UPDATE statements when <i>UpdateMode</i> is <i>upWhereAll</i> or <i>upWhereChanged</i> . |
| pfInUpdate | The field appears in the UPDATE clause of generated UPDATE statements. |
| pfInKey | The field is used in the WHERE clause of generated statements when <i>UpdateMode</i> is <i>upWhereKeyOnly</i> . |
| pfHidden | The field is included in records to ensure uniqueness, but can't be seen or used on the client side. |

Thus, the following *OnUpdateData* event handler allows the TITLE field to be updated and uses the EMPNO and DEPT fields to locate the desired record. If an error occurs, and a second attempt is made to locate the record based only on the key, the generated SQL looks for the EMPNO field only:

```
void __fastcall TMyDataModule1::Provider1UpdateData(TObject *Sender, TCustomClientDataSet
*DataSet)
{
    DataSet->FieldByName("EMPNO")->ProviderFlags.Clear();
    DataSet->FieldByName("EMPNO")->ProviderFlags << pfInWhere << pfInKey;
    DataSet->FieldByName("TITLE")->ProviderFlags.Clear();
    DataSet->FieldByName("TITLE")->ProviderFlags << pfInUpdate;
    DataSet->FieldByName("DEPT")->ProviderFlags.Clear();
    DataSet->FieldByName("DEPT")->ProviderFlags << pfInWhere;
}
```

Note You can use the *UpdateFlags* property to influence how updates are applied even if you are updating to a dataset and not using dynamically generated SQL. These flags still determine which fields are used to locate records and which fields get updated.

Screening individual updates

Immediately before each update is applied, a dataset provider receives a *BeforeUpdateRecord* event. You can use this event to edit records before they are applied, similar to the way you can use the *OnUpdateData* event to edit entire delta packets. For example, the provider does not compare BLOB fields (such as memos) when checking for update conflicts. If you want to check for update errors involving BLOB fields, you can use the *BeforeUpdateRecord* event.

In addition, you can use this event to apply updates yourself or to screen and reject updates. The *BeforeUpdateRecord* event handler lets you signal that an update has been handled already and should not be applied. The provider then skips that record, but does not count it as an update error. For example, this event provides a mechanism for applying updates to a stored procedure (which can't be updated automatically), allowing the provider to skip any automatic processing once the record is updated from within the event handler.

Resolving update errors on the provider

When an error condition arises as the dataset provider tries to post a record in the delta packet, an *OnUpdateError* event occurs. If the provider can't resolve an update error, it temporarily stores a copy of the offending record. When record processing is complete, the provider returns a count of the errors it encountered, and copies the unresolved records into a results data packet that it passes back to the client for further reconciliation.

In multi-tiered applications, this mechanism lets you handle any update errors you can resolve mechanically on the application server, while still allowing user interaction on the client application to correct error conditions.

The *OnUpdateError* handler gets a copy of the record that could not be changed, an error code from the database, and an indication of whether the resolver was trying to insert, delete, or update the record. The problem record is passed back in a client dataset. You should never use the data navigation methods on this dataset. However, for each field in the dataset, you can use the *NewValue*, *OldValue*, and *CurValue* properties to determine the cause of the problem and make any modifications to resolve the update error. If the *OnUpdateError* event handler can correct the problem, it sets the *Response* parameter so that the corrected record is applied.

Applying updates to datasets that do not represent a single table

When a dataset provider generates SQL statements that apply updates directly to a database server, it needs the name of the database table that contains the records. This can be handled automatically for many datasets such as table type datasets or "live" *TQuery* components. Automatic updates are a problem however, if the provider must apply updates to the data underlying a stored procedure with a result set or a multi-table query. There is no easy way to obtain the name of the table to which updates should be applied.

If the query or stored procedure is a BDE-enabled dataset (*TQuery* or *TStoredProc*) and it has an associated update object, the provider uses the update object. However, if there is no update object, you can supply the table name programmatically in an *OnGetTableName* event handler. Once an event handler supplies the table name, the provider can generate appropriate SQL statements to apply updates.

Supplying a table name only works if the target of the updates is a single database table (that is, only the records in one table need to be updated). If the update requires making changes to multiple underlying database tables, you must explicitly apply the updates in code using the *BeforeUpdateRecord* event of the provider. Once this event handler has applied an update, you can set the event handler's *Applied* parameter to **true** so that the provider does not generate an error.

Note If the provider is associated with a BDE-enabled dataset, you can use an update object in the *BeforeUpdateRecord* event handler to apply updates using customized SQL statements. See "Using update objects to update a dataset" on page 24-39 for details.

Responding to client-generated events

Provider components implement a general-purpose event that lets you create your own calls from client datasets directly to the provider. This is the *OnDataRequest* event.

OnDataRequest is not part of the normal functioning of the provider. It is simply a hook to allow your client datasets to communicate directly with providers. The event handler takes an *OleVariant* as an input parameter and returns an *OleVariant*. By using *OleVariants*, the interface is sufficiently general to accommodate almost any information you want to pass to or from the provider.

To generate an *OnDataRequest* event, the client application calls the *DataRequest* method of the client dataset.

Handling server constraints

Most relational database management systems implement constraints on their tables to enforce data integrity. A constraint is a rule that governs data values in tables and columns, or that governs data relationships across columns in different tables. For example, most SQL-92 compliant relational databases support the following constraints:

- NOT NULL, to guarantee that a value supplied to a column has a value.
- NOT NULL UNIQUE, to guarantee that column value has a value and does not duplicate any other value already in that column for another record.
- CHECK, to guarantee that a value supplied to a column falls within a certain range, or is one of a limited number of possible values.
- CONSTRAINT, a table-wide check constraint that applies to multiple columns.

- PRIMARY KEY, to designate one or more columns as the table's primary key for indexing purposes.
- FOREIGN KEY, to designate one or more columns in a table that reference another table.

Note This list is not exclusive. Your database server may support some or all of these constraints in part or in whole, and may support additional constraints. For more information about supported constraints, see your server documentation.

Database server constraints obviously duplicate many kinds of data checks that traditional desktop database applications manage. You can take advantage of server constraints in multi-tiered database applications without having to duplicate the constraints in application server or client application code.

If the provider is working with a BDE-enabled dataset, the *Constraints* property lets you replicate and apply server constraints to data passed to and received from client datasets. When *Constraints* is **true** (the default), server constraints stored in the source dataset are included in data packets and affect client attempts to update data.

Important Before the provider can pass constraint information on to client datasets, it must retrieve the constraints from the database server. To import database constraints from the server, use SQL Explorer to import the database server's constraints and default expressions into the Data Dictionary. Constraints and default expressions in the Data Dictionary are automatically made available to BDE-enabled datasets.

There may be times when you do not want to apply server constraints to data sent to a client dataset. For example, a client dataset that receives data in packets and permits local updating of records prior to fetching more records may need to disable some server constraints that might be triggered because of the temporarily incomplete set of data. To prevent constraint replication from the provider to a client dataset, set *Constraints* to **false**. Note that client datasets can disable and enable constraints using the *DisableConstraints* and *EnableConstraints* methods. For more information about enabling and disabling constraints from the client dataset, see "Handling constraints from the server" on page 27-29.

Creating multi-tiered applications

This chapter describes how to create a multi-tiered, client/server database application. A multi-tiered client/server application is partitioned into logical units, called tiers, which run in conjunction on separate machines. Multi-tiered applications share data and communicate with one another over a local-area network or even over the Internet. They provide many benefits, such as centralized business logic and thin client applications.

In its simplest form, sometimes called the “three-tiered model,” a multi-tiered application is partitioned into thirds:

- **Client application:** provides a user interface on the user’s machine.
- **Application server:** resides in a central networking location accessible to all clients and provides common data services.
- **Remote database server:** provides the relational database management system (RDBMS).

In this three-tiered model, the application server manages the flow of data between clients and the remote database server, so it is sometimes called a “data broker.” You usually only create the application server and its clients, although, if you are really ambitious, you could create your own database back end as well.

In more complex multi-tiered applications, additional services reside between a client and a remote database server. For example, there might be a security services broker to handle secure Internet transactions, or bridge services to handle sharing of data with databases on other platforms.

VCL and CLX support for developing multi-tiered applications is an extension of the way client datasets communicate with a provider component using transportable data packets. This chapter focuses on creating a three-tiered database application. Once you understand how to create and manage a three-tiered application, you can create and add additional service layers based on your needs.

Advantages of the multi-tiered database model

The multi-tiered database model breaks a database application into logical pieces. The client application can focus on data display and user interactions. Ideally, it knows nothing about how the data is stored or maintained. The application server (middle tier) coordinates and processes requests and updates from multiple clients. It handles all the details of defining datasets and interacting with the database server.

The advantages of this multi-tiered model include the following:

- **Encapsulation of business logic in a shared middle tier.** Different client applications all access the same middle tier. This allows you to avoid the redundancy (and maintenance cost) of duplicating your business rules for each separate client application.
- **Thin client applications.** Your client applications can be written to make a small footprint by delegating more of the processing to middle tiers. Not only are client applications smaller, but they are easier to deploy because they don't need to worry about installing, configuring, and maintaining the database connectivity software (such as the Borland Database Engine and the database server's client-side software). Thin client applications can be distributed over the Internet for additional flexibility.
- **Distributed data processing.** Distributing the work of an application over several machines can improve performance because of load balancing, and allow redundant systems to take over when a server goes down.
- **Increased opportunity for security.** You can isolate sensitive functionality into tiers that have different access restrictions. This provides flexible and configurable levels of security. Middle tiers can limit the entry points to sensitive material, allowing you to control access more easily. If you are using HTTP or COM+, you can take advantage of the security models they support.

Understanding provider-based multi-tiered applications

Multi-tiered applications use the components on the DataSnap page, the Data Access page, and possibly the WebServices page of the component palette, plus a remote data module that is created by a wizard on the Multitier or WebServices page of the New Items dialog. They are based on the ability of provider components to package data into transportable data packets and handle updates received as transportable delta packets.

The components needed for a multi-tiered application are described in Table 29.1:

Table 29.1 Components used in multi-tiered applications

| Component | Description |
|--------------------------|--|
| Remote data modules | Specialized data modules that work with a COM Automation server or Web Services application to give client applications access to any providers they contain. Used on the application server. |
| Provider component | A data broker that provides data by creating data packets and resolves client updates. Used on the application server. |
| Client dataset component | A specialized dataset that uses <i>midas.dll</i> or <i>midaslib.dcu</i> to manage data stored in data packets. The client dataset is used in the client application. It caches updates locally, and applies them in delta packets to the application server. |
| Connection components | A family of components that locate the server, form connections, and make the <i>IAppServer</i> interface available to client datasets. Each connection component is specialized to use a particular communications protocol. |

The provider and client dataset components require *midas.dll* or *midaslib.dcu*, which manages datasets stored as data packets. (Note that, because the provider is used on the application server and the client dataset is used on the client application, if you are using *midas.dll*, you must deploy it on both application server and client application.)

If you are using BDE-enabled datasets, the application server may also require SQL Explorer to help in database administration and to import server constraints into the Data Dictionary so that they can be checked at any level of the multi-tiered application.

Note You must purchase server licenses for deploying your application server.

An overview of the architecture into which these components fit is described in “Using a multi-tiered architecture” on page 18-12.

Overview of a three-tiered application

The following numbered steps illustrate a normal sequence of events for a provider-based three-tiered application:

- 1 A user starts the client application. The client connects to the application server (which can be specified at design time or runtime). If the application server is not already running, it starts. The client receives an *IAppServer* interface for communicating with the application server.
- 2 The client requests data from the application server. A client may request all data at once, or may request chunks of data throughout the session (fetch on demand).
- 3 The application server retrieves the data (first establishing a database connection, if necessary), packages it for the client, and returns a data packet to the client. Additional information, (for example, field display characteristics) can be included in the metadata of the data packet. This process of packaging data into data packets is called “providing.”

- 4 The client decodes the data packet and displays the data to the user.
- 5 As the user interacts with the client application, the data is updated (records are added, deleted, or modified). These modifications are stored in a change log by the client.
- 6 Eventually the client applies its updates to the application server, usually in response to a user action. To apply updates, the client packages its change log and sends it as a data packet to the server.
- 7 The application server decodes the package and posts updates (in the context of a transaction if appropriate). If a record can't be posted (for example, because another application changed the record after the client requested it and before the client applied its updates), the application server either attempts to reconcile the client's changes with the current data, or saves the records that could not be posted. This process of posting records and caching problem records is called "resolving."
- 8 When the application server finishes the resolving process, it returns any unposted records to the client for further resolution.
- 9 The client reconciles unresolved records. There are many ways a client can reconcile unresolved records. Typically the client attempts to correct the situation that prevented records from being posted or discards the changes. If the error situation can be rectified, the client applies updates again.
- 10 The client refreshes its data from the server.

The structure of the client application

To the end user, the client application of a multi-tiered application looks and behaves no differently than a two-tiered application that uses cached updates. User interaction takes place through standard data-aware controls that display data from a *TClientDataSet* component. For detailed information about using the properties, events, and methods of client datasets, see Chapter 27, "Using client datasets."

TClientDataSet fetches data from and applies updates to a provider component, just as in two-tiered applications that use a client dataset with an external provider. For details about providers, see Chapter 28, "Using provider components." For details about client dataset features that facilitate its communication with a provider, see "Using a client dataset with a provider" on page 27-24

The client dataset communicates with the provider through the *IAppServer* interface. It gets this interface from a connection component. The connection component establishes the connection to the application server. Different connection components

are available for using different communications protocols. These connection components are summarized in the following table:

Table 29.2 Connection components

| Component | Protocol |
|-------------------|--------------------------|
| TDCOMConnection | DCOM |
| TSocketConnection | Windows sockets (TCP/IP) |
| TWebConnection | HTTP |
| TSOAPConnection | SOAP (HTTP and XML) |

Note The DataSnap page of the component palette also includes a connection component that does not connect to an application server at all, but instead supplies an *IAppServer* interface for client datasets to use when communicating with providers in the same application. This component, *TLocalConnection*, is not required, but makes it easier to later scale up to a multi-tiered application.

For more information about using connection components, see “Connecting to the application server” on page 29-22.

The structure of the application server

When you set up and run an application server, it does not establish any connection with client applications. Rather, client applications initiate and maintain the connection. The client application uses a connection component to connect to the application server, and uses the interface of the application server to communicate with a selected provider. All of this happens automatically, without your having to write code to manage incoming requests or supply interfaces.

The basis of an application server is a remote data module, which is a specialized data module that supports the *IAppServer* interface (for application servers that also function as a Web Service, the remote data module supports the *IAppServerSOAP* interface as well, and uses it in preference to *IAppServer*.) Client applications use the remote data module’s interface to communicate with providers on the application server. When the remote data module uses *IAppServerSOAP*, the connection component adapts this to an *IAppServer* interface that client datasets can use.

There are two types of remote data modules:

- COM-based remote data modules are data modules that use an associated object, called the implementation object, that descends from `REMOTEDATAMODULE_IMPL()`. `REMOTEDATAMODULE_IMPL` is a macro defined in `Atlvl.h` that lists the ancestors for the implementation object. These include the ATL classes `CComObjectRootEx` and `CComCoClass`, as well as the *IAppServer* interface. If you are creating an application server that can take advantage of the distributed application services provided by MTS or COM+, `REMOTEDATAMODULE_IMPL` also includes the *IObjectControl* interface, which is required of all transactional objects. The implementation class, which is generated for you by a wizard, has access to an *IObjectContext* interface, which is

provided by the system on its behalf and which it uses to manage transactions, free resources, and take advantage of security support.

- SOAP data modules are data modules that implement the *IAppServerSOAP* interface as an invokable interface. These data modules are added to a Web Service application and allow clients to access the data as a Web Service. For information about Web Service applications, see Chapter 36, “Using Web Services.”

Note If the application server is to be deployed under MTS or COM+, the remote data module includes events for when the application server is activated or deactivated. This allows it to acquire database connections when activated and release them when deactivated.

The contents of the remote data module

As with any data module, you can include any nonvisual component in the remote data module. There are certain components, however, that you must include:

- If the remote data module is exposing information from a database server, it must include a dataset component to represent the records from that database server. Other components, such as a database connection component of some type, may be required to allow the dataset to interact with a database server. For information about datasets, see Chapter 22, “Understanding datasets.” For information about database connection components, see Chapter 21, “Connecting to databases.”

For every dataset that the remote data module exposes to clients, it must include a dataset provider. A dataset provider packages data into data packets that are sent to client datasets and applies updates received from client datasets back to a source dataset or a database server. For more information about dataset providers, see Chapter 28, “Using provider components.”

- For every XML document that the remote data module exposes to clients, it must include an XML provider. An XML provider acts like a dataset provider, except that it fetches data from and applies updates to an XML document rather than a database server. For more information about XML providers, see “Using an XML document as the source for a provider” on page 30-8.

Note Do not confuse database connection components, which connect datasets to a database server, with the connection components used by client applications in a multi-tiered application. The connection components in multi-tiered applications can be found on the DataSnap page or WebServices page of the Component palette.

Using transactional data modules

You can write an application server that takes advantage of special services for distributed applications that are supplied by MTS (before Windows 2000) or COM+ (under Windows 2000 and later). To do so, you create a transactional data module instead of an ordinary remote data module.

When you use a transactional data module, your application can take advantage of the following special services:

- **Security.** MTS and COM+ provide role-based security for your application server. Clients are assigned roles, which determine how they can access the application server's interface. You can use the *IObjectContext* interface which is accessed through your implementation class, to access these security services. For more information about MTS and COM+ security, see "Role-based security" on page 44-16.
- **Database handle pooling.** Transactional data modules automatically pool database connections that are made via ADO or (if you are using MTS and turn on MTS POOLING) the BDE. When one client is finished with a database connection, another client can reuse it. This cuts down on network traffic, because your middle tier does not need to log off of the remote database server and then log on again. When pooling database handles, your database connection component should set its *KeepConnection* property to **false**, so that your application maximizes the sharing of connections. For more information about pooling database handles, see "Database resource dispensers" on page 44-6.
- **Transactions.** When using a transactional data module, you can provide enhanced transaction support beyond that available with a single database connection. Transactional data modules can participate in transactions that span multiple databases, or include functions that do not involve databases at all. For more information about the transaction support provided by transactional objects such as transactional data modules, see "Managing transactions in multi-tiered applications" on page 29-17.
- **Just-in-time activation and as-soon-as-possible deactivation.** You can write your server so that instances are activated and deactivated on an as-needed basis. When using just-in-time activation and as-soon-as-possible deactivation, your application server is instantiated only when it is needed to handle client requests. This prevents it from tying up resources such as database handles when they are not in use.

Using just-in-time activation and as-soon-as-possible deactivation provides a middle ground between routing all clients through a single remote data module instance, and creating a separate instance for every client connection. With a single remote data module instance, the application server must handle all database calls through a single database connection. This acts as a bottleneck, and can impact performance when there are many clients. With multiple instances of the remote data module, each instance can maintain a separate database connection, thereby avoiding the need to serialize database access. However, this monopolizes resources because other clients can't use the database connection while it is associated with another client's remote data module.

To take advantage of transactions, just-in-time activation, and as-soon-as-possible deactivation, remote data module instances must be stateless. This means you must provide additional support if your client relies on state information. For example, the client must pass information about the current record when performing incremental fetches. For more information about state information and remote data modules in

multi-tiered applications, see “Supporting state information in remote data modules” on page 29-19.

By default, all automatically generated calls to a transactional data module are transactional (that is, they assume that when the call exits, the data module can be deactivated and any current transactions committed or rolled back). You can write a transactional data module that depends on persistent state information by setting the *AutoComplete* property to **false**, but it will not support transactions, just-in-time activation, or as-soon-as-possible deactivation unless you use a custom interface.

Warning Application servers containing transactional data modules should not open database connections until the data module is activated. While developing your application, be sure that all datasets are not active and the database is not connected before running your application. In the application itself, add code to open database connections when the data module is activated and close them when it is deactivated.

Pooling remote data modules

Object pooling allows you to create a cache of application servers that are shared by their clients, thereby conserving resources. How this works depends on the type of remote data module and on the connection protocol.

If you are creating a transactional data module that will be installed to COM+, you can use the COM+ Component Manager to install the application server as a pooled object. See “Object pooling” on page 44-9 for details.

Even if you are not using a transactional data module, you can take advantage of object pooling if the connection is formed using *TWebConnection*. Under this second type of object pooling, you limit the number of instances of your application server that are created. This limits the number of database connections that you must hold, as well as any other resources used by the application server.

When the Web Server application (which passes calls to your application server) receives client requests, it passes them on to the first available application server in the pool. If there is no available application server, it creates a new one (up to a maximum number that you specify). This provides a middle ground between routing all clients through a single application server instance (which can act as a bottleneck), and creating a separate instance for every client connection (which can consume many resources).

If an application server instance in the pool does not receive any client requests for a while, it is automatically freed. This prevents the pool from monopolizing resources unless they are used.

To set up object pooling when using a Web connection (HTTP), do the following:

- 1 Locate the *UpdateRegistry* method of the implementation class. This method appears in the header file of your implementation unit:

```
static HRESULT WINAPI UpdateRegistry(BOOL bRegister)
{
    TRemoteDataModuleRegistrar regObj(GetObjectCLSID(), GetProgID(), GetDescription());
    return regObj.UpdateRegistry(bRegister);
}
```

- 2 Set the *RegisterPooled* flag of the *regObj* variable, which is an instance of *TRemoteDataModuleRegistrar*, to **true**. You will also want to set other properties of *regObj* to indicate how the cache of remote data modules should be managed. For example, the following code allows a maximum of 10 remote data module instances and frees them from the cache if they are idle for more than 15 minutes:

```
static HRESULT WINAPI UpdateRegistry(BOOL bRegister)
{
    TRemoteDataModuleRegistrar regObj(GetObjectCLSID(), GetProgID(), GetDescription());
    regObj.RegisterPooled = true;
    regObj.Timeout = 15;
    regObj.Max = 10;
    return regObj.UpdateRegistry(bRegister);
}
```

When using either method of object pooling, your application server must be stateless. This is because a single instance potentially handles requests from several clients. If it relied on persistent state information, clients could interfere with each other. See “Supporting state information in remote data modules” on page 29-19 for more information on how to ensure that your remote data module is stateless.

Choosing a connection protocol

Each communications protocol you can use to connect your client applications to the application server provides its own unique benefits. Before choosing a protocol, consider how many clients you expect, how you are deploying your application, and future development plans.

Using DCOM connections

DCOM provides the most direct approach to communication, requiring no additional runtime applications on the server. However, because DCOM is not included with Windows 95, some older client machines may not have DCOM installed.

DCOM provides the only approach that lets you use security services when writing a transactional data module. These security services are based on assigning roles to the callers of transactional objects. When using DCOM, DCOM identifies the caller to the system that calls your application server (MTS or COM+). Therefore, it is possible to accurately determine the role of the caller. When using other protocols, however, there is a runtime executable, separate from the application server, that receives client calls. This runtime executable makes COM calls into the application server on behalf of the client. Because of this, it is impossible to assign roles to separate clients: The runtime executable is, effectively, the only client. For more information about security and transactional objects, see “Role-based security” on page 44-16.

Using Socket connections

TCP/IP Sockets let you create lightweight clients. For example, if you are writing a Web-based client application, you can’t be sure that client systems support DCOM. Sockets provide a lowest common denominator that you know will be available for

connecting to the application server. For more information about sockets, see Chapter 37, “Working with sockets.”

Instead of instantiating the remote data module directly from the client (as happens with DCOM), sockets use a separate application on the server (ScktSrvr.exe), which accepts client requests and instantiates the application server using COM. The connection component on the client and ScktSrvr.exe on the server are responsible for marshaling *IAppServer* calls.

Note ScktSrvr.exe can run as an NT service application. Register it with the Service manager by starting it using the -install command line option. You can unregister it using the -uninstall command line option.

Before you can use a socket connection, the application server must register its availability to clients using a socket connection. By default, all new remote data modules automatically register themselves via the *TRemoteDataModuleRegistrar* object in the *UpdateRegistry* method of the implementation object. You can prevent this registration by setting that object’s *EnableSocket* property to **false**.

Note Because older servers did not add this registration, you can disable the check for whether an application server is registered by unchecking the Connections | Registered Objects Only menu item on ScktSrvr.exe.

When using sockets, there is no protection on the server against client systems failing before they release a reference to interfaces on the application server. While this results in less message traffic than when using DCOM (which sends periodic keep-alive messages), this can result in an application server that can’t release its resources because it is unaware that the client has gone away.

Using Web connections

HTTP lets you create clients that can communicate with an application server that is protected by a firewall. HTTP messages provide controlled access to internal applications so that you can distribute your client applications safely and widely. Like socket connections, HTTP messages provide a lowest common denominator that you know will be available for connecting to the application server. For more information about HTTP messages, see Chapter 32, “Creating Internet server applications.”

Instead of instantiating the remote data module directly from the client (as happens with DCOM), HTTP-based connections use a Web server application on the server (httpsrvr.dll) that accepts client requests and instantiates the application server using COM. Because of this, they are also called Web connections. The connection component on the client and httpsrvr.dll on the server are responsible for marshaling *IAppServer* calls.

Web connections can take advantage of the SSL security provided by wininet.dll (a library of Internet utilities that runs on the client system). Once you have configured the Web server on the server system to require authentication, you can specify the user name and password using the properties of the Web connection component.

As an additional security measure, the application server must register its availability to clients using a Web connection. By default, all new remote data modules automatically register themselves via the *TRemoteDataModuleRegistrar* object in the

UpdateRegistry method of the implementation object. You can prevent this registration by setting that object's *EnableWeb* property to **false**.

Web connections can take advantage of object pooling. This allows your server to create a limited pool of application server instances that are available for client requests. By pooling the application servers, your server does not consume the resources for the data module and its database connection except when they are needed. For more information on object pooling, see "Pooling remote data modules" on page 29-8.

Unlike most other connection components, you can't use callbacks when the connection is formed via HTTP.

Using SOAP connections

SOAP is the protocol that underlies the VCL or CLX support for Web Service applications. SOAP marshals method calls using an XML encoding. SOAP connections use HTTP as a transport protocol.

SOAP connections have the advantage that they work in cross-platform applications because they are supported on both the Windows and Linux. Because SOAP connections use HTTP, they have the same advantages as Web connections: HTTP provides a lowest common denominator that you know is available on all clients, and clients can communicate with an application server that is protected by a "firewall". For more information about using SOAP to distribute applications, see Chapter 36, "Using Web Services."

As with HTTP connections, you can't use callbacks when the connection is formed via SOAP. SOAP connections also limit you to a single remote data module in the application server.

Building a multi-tiered application

The general steps for creating a multi-tiered database application are

- 1 Create the application server.
- 2 Register or install the application server.
- 3 Create a client application.

The order of creation is important. You should create and run the application server before you create a client. At design time, you can then connect to the application server to test your client. You can, of course, create a client without specifying the application server at design time, and only supply the server name at runtime. However, doing so prevents you from seeing if your application works as expected when you code at design time, and you will not be able to choose servers and providers using the Object Inspector.

Note If you are not creating the client application on the same system as the server, and you are using a DCOM connection, you may want to register the application server on the client system. This makes the connection component aware of the application server at design time so that you can choose server names and provider names from

a drop-down list in the Object Inspector. (If you are using a Web connection, SOAP connection, or socket connection, the connection component fetches the names of registered providers from the server machine.)

Creating the application server

You create an application server very much as you create most database applications. The major difference is that the application server uses a remote data module.

To create an application server, follow these steps:

- 1 Start a new project:
 - If you are using SOAP as a transport protocol, this should be a new Web Service application. Choose File | New | Other, and on the WebServices page of the new items dialog, choose SOAP Server application.
 - For any other transport protocol, you need only choose File | New | Application.

Save the new project.

- 2 Add a new remote data module to the project. From the main menu, choose File | New | Other, and on the MultiTier or WebServices page of the new items dialog, select
 - **Remote Data Module** if you are creating a COM Automation server that clients access using DCOM, HTTP, or sockets.
 - **Transactional Data Module** if you are creating a remote data module that runs under MTS or COM+. Connections can be formed using DCOM, HTTP, or sockets. However, only DCOM supports the security services.
 - **SOAP Server Data Module** if you are creating a SOAP server in a Web Service application.

For more detailed information about setting up a remote data module, see “Setting up the remote data module” on page 29-13.

Note If you choose Remote Data Module or Transactional Data Module, the Wizard also creates a special COM Automation object that contains a reference to the remote data module and uses it to look for providers. This object is called the implementation object. For SOAP data modules, there is no need for a separate implementation object, because the data module implements the *IAppServerSOAP* interface itself.

- 3 Place the appropriate dataset components on the data module and set them up to access the database server.
- 4 Place a *TDataSetProvider* component on the data module for each dataset. This provider is required for brokering client requests and packaging data. Set the *DataSet* property for each provider component to the name of the dataset to access. You can set additional properties for the provider. See Chapter 28, “Using provider components” for more detailed information about setting up a provider.

If you are working with data from XML documents, you can use a *TXMLTransformProvider* component instead of a dataset and *TDataSetProvider* component. When using *TXMLTransformProvider*, set the *XMLDataFile* property to specify the XML document from which data is provided and to which updates are applied.

- 5 Write application server code to implement events, shared business rules, shared data validation, and shared security. When writing this code, you may want to
 - Extend the application server's interface to provide additional ways for the client application to call the server. Extending the application server's interface is described in "Extending the application server's interface" on page 29-16.
 - Provide transaction support beyond the transactions automatically created when applying updates. Transaction support in multi-tiered database applications is described in "Managing transactions in multi-tiered applications" on page 29-17.
 - Create master/detail relationships between the datasets in your application server. Master/detail relationships are described in "Supporting master/detail relationships" on page 29-18.
 - Ensure your application server is stateless. Handling state information is described in "Supporting state information in remote data modules" on page 29-19.
 - Divide your application server into multiple remote data modules. Using multiple remote data modules is described in "Using multiple remote data modules" on page 29-20.
- 6 Save, compile, and register or install the application server. Registering an application server is described in "Registering the application server" on page 29-21.
- 7 If your server application does not use DCOM or SOAP, you must install the runtime software that receives client messages, instantiates the remote data module, and marshals interface calls.
 - For TCP/IP sockets this is a socket dispatcher application, *Scktsrvr.exe*.
 - For HTTP connections this is *httpsrvr.dll*, an ISAPI/NSAPI DLL that must be installed with your Web server.

Setting up the remote data module

When you create the remote data module, you must provide certain information that indicates how it responds to client requests. This information varies, depending on the type of remote data module.

Configuring the remote data module when it is not transactional

To add a COM-based remote data module to your application without including transactional attributes, choose File | New | Other and select Remote Data Module from the Multitier page of the new items dialog. You will see the Remote Data Module wizard.

You must supply a class name for your remote data module. This is the base name of a descendant of *TCRemoteDataModule* that your application creates. It is also the base name of the application server's interface. For example, if you specify the class name *MyDataServer*, the wizard creates a new unit declaring *TMyDataServer*, a descendant of *TCRemoteDataModule*. In the unit header, the Wizard also declares a the implementation class (*TMyDataServerImpl*) that implements *IMyDataServer*, a descendant of *IAppServer*.

Note You can add your own properties and methods to the new interface. For more information, see "Extending the application server's interface" on page 29-16.

You must specify the threading model in the Remote Data Module wizard. You can choose Single-threaded, Apartment-threaded, Free-threaded, or Both.

- If you choose Single-threaded, COM ensures that only one client request is serviced at a time. You do not need to worry about client requests interfering with each other.
- If you choose Apartment-threaded, COM ensures that any instance of your remote data module services one request at a time. When writing code in an Apartment-threaded library, you must guard against thread conflicts if you use global variables or objects not contained in the remote data module. This is the recommended model if you are using BDE-enabled datasets. (Note that you will need a session component with its *AutoSessionName* property set to **true** to handle threading issues on BDE-enabled datasets).
- If you choose Free-threaded, your application can receive simultaneous client requests on several threads. You are responsible for ensuring your application is thread-safe. Because multiple clients can access your remote data module simultaneously, you must guard your instance data (properties, contained objects, and so on) as well as global variables. This is the recommended model if you are using ADO datasets.
- If you choose Both, your library works the same as when you choose Free-threaded, with one exception: all callbacks (calls to client interfaces) are serialized for you.
- If you choose Neutral, the remote data module can receive simultaneous calls on separate threads, as in the Free-threaded model, but COM guarantees that no two threads access the same method at the same time.

Configuring a transactional remote data module

To add a remote data module to your application when you will be using MTS or COM+, choose File | New | Other and select Transactional Data Module from the Multitier page of the new items dialog. You will see the Transactional Data Module wizard.

You must supply a class name for your remote data module. This is the base name of a descendant of *TCRemoteDataModule* that your application creates. It is also the base name of the application server's interface. For example, if you specify the class name *MyDataServer*, the wizard creates a new unit declaring *TMyDataServer*, a descendant of *TCRemoteDataModule*. In the unit header, the Wizard also declares the implementation class (*TMyDataServerImpl*) that implements both *IMyDataServer* (a

descendant of *IAppServer*) and *IObjectControl* (which is required of all transactional objects). *TMyDataServerImpl* includes a data member for the *IObjectContext* interface, which you can use to manage transactions, check security, and so on.

Note You can add your own properties and methods to your new interface. For more information, see “Extending the application server’s interface” on page 29-16.

You must specify the threading model in the Transactional Data Module wizard. Choose Single, Apartment, or Both.

- If you choose Single, client requests are serialized so that your application services only one at a time. You do not need to worry about client requests interfering with each other.
- If you choose Apartment, the system ensures that any instance of your remote data module services one request at a time, and calls always use the same thread. You must guard against thread conflicts if you use global variables or objects not contained in the remote data module. Instead of using global variables, you can use the shared property manager. For more information on the shared property manager, see “Shared property manager” on page 44-6.
- If you choose Both, MTS calls into the application server’s interface in the same way as when you choose Apartment. However, any callbacks you make to client applications are serialized, so that you don’t need to worry about them interfering with each other.

Note The Apartment model under MTS or COM+ is different from the corresponding model under DCOM.

You must also specify the transaction attributes of your remote data module. You can choose from the following options:

- Requires a transaction. When you select this option, every time a client uses your application server’s interface, that call is executed in the context of a transaction. If the caller supplies a transaction, a new transaction need not be created.
- Requires a new transaction. When you select this option, every time a client uses your application server’s interface, a new transaction is automatically created for that call.
- Supports transactions. When you select this option, your application server can be used in the context of a transaction, but the caller must supply the transaction when it invokes the interface.
- Does not support transactions. When you select this option, your application server can’t be used in the context of transactions.

Configuring TSoapDataModule

To add a *TSoapDataModule* component to your application, choose File | New | Other and select SOAP Server Data Module from the WebServices page of the new items dialog. The SOAP data module wizard appears.

You must supply a class name for your SOAP data module. This is the base name of a *TSoapDataModule* descendant that your application creates. For example, if you specify the class name *MyDataServer*, the wizard creates a new unit declaring

TMyDataServer, a descendant of *TSoapDataModule*. This new class inherits an implementation of *IAppServer*. and *IAppServerSOAP* from *TSoapDataModule*.

Unlike with other remote data modules, SOAP data modules do not implement a custom interface that descends from *IAppServer* or *IAppServerSOAP*. This is because of differences in the way Web Service applications dispatch incoming interface calls. Instead, you can add new interfaces to your application using the Add Web Service wizard.

Note To use *TSoapDataModule*, the new data module should be added to a Web Service application. The *IAppServerSOAP* interface is an invokable interface, which is registered in the startup code of the new unit. This allows the invoker component in the main Web module to forward all incoming calls to your data module.

Note If you want your application server to respond to clients that are written using Kylix 2 or Delphi 6 (prior to update patch 2), you must add code to register the *IAppServer* interface. Locate the startup code that registers *IAppServerSOAP*. Immediately after that registration call, add a call to the global *RegDeflAppServerInvClass* function, which registers the data module as the implementation for *IAppServer*.

Extending the application server's interface

For COM-based servers, client applications interact with the application server by creating or connecting to the implementation class that was created by the data module Wizard. They use its interface as the basis of all communication with the application server.

If you are using a COM-based application server, you can add to your implementation class's interface to provide additional support for your client applications. This interface is a descendant of *IAppServer* and is created for you automatically by the wizard when you create the remote data module.

To add to the implementation class's interface, use the type library editor. For more information about using the type library editor, see Chapter 39, "Working with type libraries."

When you add to a COM interface, your changes are added to your unit source code and the type library file (.TLB).

Note You must explicitly save the TLB file by choosing Refresh in the type library editor and then saving the changes from the IDE.

Once you have added to your implementation class's interface, locate the properties and methods that were added to your implementation class. Add code to finish this implementation by filling in the bodies of the new methods.

Client applications call your interface extensions using the *AppServer* property of their connection component. For more information on how to do this, see "Calling server interfaces" on page 29-27.

Adding callbacks to the application server's interface

You can allow the application server to call your client application by introducing a callback. To do this, the client application passes an interface to one of the application server's methods, and the application server later calls this method as needed. However, if your extensions to the implementation class's interface include callbacks, you can't use an HTTP or SOAP-based connection. *TWebConnection* and *TSoapConnection* do not support callbacks. If you are using a socket-based connection, client applications must indicate whether they are using callbacks by setting the *SupportCallbacks* property. All other types of connection automatically support callbacks.

Extending a transactional application server's interface

When using transactions or just-in-time activation, you must be sure all new methods call the *IObjectContext*'s *SetComplete* method to indicate when they are finished. This allows transactions to complete and permits the application server to be deactivated.

Furthermore, you can't return any values from your new methods that allow the client to communicate directly with objects or interfaces on the application server unless they provide a safe reference. If you are using a stateless MTS data module, neglecting to use a safe reference can lead to crashes because you can't guarantee that the remote data module is active. For more information on safe references, see "Passing object references" on page 44-24.

Managing transactions in multi-tiered applications

When client applications apply updates to the application server, the provider component automatically wraps the process of applying updates and resolving errors in a transaction. This transaction is committed if the number of problem records does not exceed the *MaxErrors* value specified as an argument to the *ApplyUpdates* method. Otherwise, it is rolled back.

In addition, you can add transaction support to your server application by adding a database connection component or managing the transaction directly by sending SQL to the database server. This works the same way that you would manage transactions in a two-tiered application. For more information about this sort of transaction control, see "Managing transactions" on page 21-6.

If you have a transactional data module, you can broaden your transaction support by using MTS or COM+ transactions. These transactions can include any of the business logic on your application server, not just the database access. In addition, because they support two-phase commits, they can span multiple databases.

Only the BDE- and ADO-based data access components support two-phase commit. Do not use InterbaseExpress or dbExpress components if you want to have transactions that span multiple databases.

Warning

When using the BDE, two-phase commit is fully implemented only on Oracle7 and MS-SQL databases. If your transaction involves multiple databases, and some of them are remote servers other than Oracle7 or MS-SQL, your transaction runs a small

risk of only partially succeeding. Within any one database, however, you will always have transaction support.

By default, all *IAppServer* calls on a transactional data module are transactional. You need only set the transaction attribute of your data module to indicate that it must participate in transactions. In addition, you can extend the application server's interface to include method calls that encapsulate transactions that you define.

If your transaction attribute indicates that the application server requires a transaction, then every time a client calls a method on its interface, it is automatically wrapped in a transaction. All client calls to your application server are then enlisted in that transaction until you indicate that the transaction is complete. These calls either succeed as a whole or are rolled back.

Note Do not combine MTS or COM+ transactions with explicit transactions created by a database connection component or using explicit SQL commands. When your transactional data module is enlisted in a transaction, it automatically enlists all of your database calls in the transaction as well.

For more information about using MTS and COM+ transactions, see "MTS and COM+ transaction support" on page 44-10.

Supporting master/detail relationships

You can create master/detail relationships between client datasets in your client application in the same way you set them up using any table-type dataset. For more information about setting up master/detail relationships in this way, see "Creating master/detail relationships" on page 22-34.

However, this approach has two major drawbacks:

- The detail table must fetch and store all of its records from the application server even though it only uses one detail set at a time. (This problem can be mitigated by using parameters. For more information, see "Limiting records with parameters" on page 27-28.)
- It is very difficult to apply updates, because client datasets apply updates at the dataset level and master/detail updates span multiple datasets. Even in a two-tiered environment, where you can use the database connection component to apply updates for multiple tables in a single transaction, applying updates in master/detail forms is tricky.

In multi-tiered applications, you can avoid these problems by using nested tables to represent the master/detail relationship. To do this when providing from datasets, set up a master/detail relationship between the datasets on the application server. Then set the *DataSet* property of your provider component to the master table. To use nested tables to represent master/detail relationships when providing from XML documents, use a transformation file that defines the nested detail sets.

When clients call the *GetRecords* method of the provider, it automatically includes the detail dataset as a *DataSet* field in the records of the data packet. When clients call the *ApplyUpdates* method of the provider, it automatically handles applying updates in the proper order.

Supporting state information in remote data modules

The *IAppServer* interface, which client datasets use to communicate with providers on the application server, is mostly stateless. When an application is stateless, it does not “remember” anything that happened in previous calls by the client. This stateless quality is useful if you are pooling database connections in a transactional data module, because your application server does not need to distinguish between database connections for persistent information such as record currency. Similarly, this stateless quality is important when you are sharing remote data module instances between many clients, as occurs with just-in-time activation or object pooling. SOAP data modules must be stateless.

However, there are times when you want to maintain state information between calls to the application server. For example, when requesting data using incremental fetching, the provider on the application server must “remember” information from previous calls (the current record).

Before and after any calls to the *IAppServer* interface that the client dataset makes (*AS_ApplyUpdates*, *AS_Execute*, *AS_GetParams*, *AS_GetRecords*, or *AS_RowRequest*), it receives an event where it can send or retrieve custom state information. Similarly, before and after providers respond to these client-generated calls, they receive events where they can retrieve or send custom state information. Using this mechanism, you can communicate persistent state information between client applications and the application server, even if the application server is stateless.

For example, consider a dataset that represents the following parameterized query:

```
SELECT * from CUSTOMER WHERE CUST_NO > :MinVal ORDER BY CUST_NO
```

To enable incremental fetching in a stateless application server, you can do the following:

- When the provider packages a set of records in a data packet, it notes the value of CUST_NO on the last record in the packet:

```
TRemoteDataModule1::DataSetProvider1GetData(TObject *Sender, TCustomClientDataSet *DataSet)
{
    DataSet->Last(); // move to the last record
    TComponent *pProvider = dynamic_cast<TComponent *>(Sender);
    pProvider->Tag = DataSet->FieldValues["CUST_NO"];
}
```

- The provider sends this last CUST_NO value to the client after sending the data packet:

```
TRemoteDataModule1::DataSetProvider1AfterGetRecords(TObject *Sender, OleVariant &OwnerData)
{
    TComponent *pProvider = dynamic_cast<TComponent *>(Sender);
    OwnerData = pProvider->Tag;
}
```

- On the client, the client dataset saves this last value of CUST_NO:

```
TDataModule1::ClientDataSet1AfterGetRecords(TObject *Sender, OleVariant &OwnerData)
{
    TComponent *pDS = dynamic_cast<TComponent *>(Sender);
```

```
pDS->Tag = OwnerData;
}
```

- Before fetching a data packet, the client sends the last value of CUST_NO it received:

```
TDataModule1::ClientDataSet1BeforeGetRecords(TObject *Sender, OleVariant &OwnerData)
{
    TClientDataSet *pDS = dynamic_cast<TClientDataSet *>(Sender);
    if (!pDS->Active)
        return;
    OwnerData = pDS->Tag;
}
```

- Finally, on the server, the provider uses the last CUST_NO sent as a minimum value in the query:

```
TRemoteDataModule1::DataSetProvider1BeforeGetRecords(TObject *Sender, OleVariant &OwnerData)
{
    if (!VarIsEmpty(OwnerData))
    {
        TDataSetProvider *pProv = dynamic_cast<TDataSetProvider *>(Sender);
        TSQLDataSet *pDS = (dynamic_cast<TSQLDataSet *>(pProv->DataSet));
        pDS->Params->ParamValues["MinVal"] = OwnerData;
        pDS->Refresh(); // force the query to reexecute
    }
}
```

Using multiple remote data modules

You may want to structure your application server so that it uses multiple remote data modules. Using multiple remote data modules lets you partition your code, organizing a large application server into multiple units, where each unit is relatively self-contained.

Although you can always create multiple remote data modules on the application server that function independently, a special connection component on the DataSnap page of the Component palette provides support for a model where you have one main “parent” remote data module that dispatches connections from clients to other “child” remote data modules. This model requires that you use a COM-based application server.

To create the parent remote data module, you must extend its *IAppServer* interface, adding properties that expose the interfaces of the child remote data modules. That is, for each child remote data module, add a property to the parent data module’s interface whose value is the *IAppServer* interface for the child data module.

For information about extending the parent remote data module’s interface, see “Extending the application server’s interface” on page 29-16.

- Tip** You may also want to extend the interface for each child data module, exposing the parent data module’s interface, or the interfaces of the other child data modules. This lets the various data modules in your application server communicate more freely with each other.

Once you have added properties that represent the child remote data modules to the main remote data module, client applications do not need to form separate connections to each remote data module on the application server. Instead, they share a single connection to the parent remote data module, which then dispatches messages to the “child” data modules. Because each client application uses the same connection for every remote data module, the remote data modules can share a single database connection, conserving resources. For information on how child applications share a single connection, see “Connecting to an application server that uses multiple data modules” on page 29-28.

Registering the application server

Before client applications can locate and use an application server, it must be registered or installed.

- If the application server uses DCOM, HTTP, or sockets as a communication protocol, it acts as an Automation server and must be registered like any other COM server. For information about registering a COM server, see “Registering a COM object” on page 41-16.
- If you are using a transactional data module, you do not register the application server. Instead, you install it with MTS or COM+. For information about installing transactional objects, see “Installing transactional objects” on page 44-27.
- When the application server uses SOAP, the application must be a Web Service application. As such, it must be registered with your Web Server, so that it receives incoming HTTP messages. In addition, you need to publish a WSDL document that describes the invocable interfaces in your application. For information about exporting a WSDL document for a Web Service application, see “Generating WSDL documents for a Web Service application” on page 36-15.

Creating the client application

In most regards, creating a multi-tiered client application is similar to creating a two-tiered client that uses a client dataset to cache updates. The major difference is that a multi-tiered client uses a connection component to establish a conduit to the application server.

To create a multi-tiered client application, start a new project and follow these steps:

- 1 Add a new data module to the project.
- 2 Place a connection component on the data module. The type of connection component you add depends on the communication protocol you want to use. See “The structure of the client application” on page 29-4 for details.
- 3 Set properties on your connection component to specify the application server with which it should establish a connection. To learn more about setting up the connection component, see “Connecting to the application server” on page 29-22.

- 4 Set the other connection component properties as needed for your application. For example, you might set the *ObjectBroker* property to allow the connection component to choose dynamically from several servers. For more information about using the connection components, see “Managing server connections” on page 29-26
- 5 Place as many *TClientDataSet* components as needed on the data module, and set the *RemoteServer* property for each component to the name of the connection component you placed in Step 2. For a full introduction to client datasets, see Chapter 27, “Using client datasets.”
- 6 Set the *ProviderName* property for each *TClientDataSet* component. If your connection component is connected to the application server at design time, you can choose available application server providers from the *ProviderName* property’s drop-down list.
- 7 Continue in the same way you would create any other database application. There are a few additional features available to clients of multi-tiered applications:
 - Your application may want to make direct calls to the application server. “Calling server interfaces” on page 29-27 describes how to do this.
 - You may want to use the special features of client datasets that support their interaction with the provider components. These are described in “Using a client dataset with a provider” on page 27-24.

Connecting to the application server

To establish and maintain a connection to an application server, a client application uses one or more connection components. You can find these components on the DataSnap or WebServices page of the Component palette.

Use a connection component to

- Identify the protocol for communicating with the application server. Each type of connection component represents a different communication protocol. See “Choosing a connection protocol” on page 29-9 for details on the benefits and limitations of the available protocols.
- Indicate how to locate the server machine. The details of identifying the server machine vary depending on the protocol.
- Identify the application server on the server machine.
- If you are not using SOAP, identify the server using the *ServerName* or *ServerGUID* property. *ServerName* identifies the base name of the class you specify when creating the remote data module on the application server. See “Setting up the remote data module” on page 29-13 for details on how this value is specified on the server. If the server is registered or installed on the client machine, or if the connection component is connected to the server machine, you can set the *ServerName* property at design time by choosing from a drop-down list in the Object Inspector. *ServerGUID* specifies the GUID of the remote data module’s interface. You can look up this value using the type library editor.

If you are using SOAP, the server is identified in the URL you use to locate the server machine. Follow the steps in “Specifying a connection using SOAP” on page 29-25.

- Manage server connections. Connection components can be used to create or drop connections and to call application server interfaces.

Usually the application server is on a different machine from the client application, but even if the server resides on the same machine as the client application (for example, during the building and testing of the entire multi-tier application), you can still use the connection component to identify the application server by name, specify a server machine, and use the application server interface.

Specifying a connection using DCOM

When using DCOM to communicate with the application server, client applications include a *TDCOMConnection* component for connecting to the application server. *TDCOMConnection* uses the *ComputerName* property to identify the machine on which the server resides.

When *ComputerName* is blank, the DCOM connection component assumes that the application server resides on the client machine or that the application server has a system registry entry. If you do not provide a system registry entry for the application server on the client when using DCOM, and the server resides on a different machine from the client, you must supply *ComputerName*.

Note Even when there is a system registry entry for the application server, you can specify *ComputerName* to override this entry. This can be especially useful during development, testing, and debugging.

If you have multiple servers that your client application can choose from, you can use the *ObjectBroker* property instead of specifying a value for *ComputerName*. For more information, see “Brokering connections” on page 29-25.

If you supply the name of a host computer or server that cannot be found, the DCOM connection component throws an exception when you try to open the connection.

Specifying a connection using sockets

You can establish a connection to the application server using sockets from any machine that has a TCP/IP address. This method has the advantage of being applicable to more machines, but does not provide for using any security protocols. When using sockets, include a *TSocketConnection* component for connecting to the application server.

TSocketConnection identifies the server machine using the IP Address or host name of the server system, and the port number of the socket dispatcher program (Scktsrvr.exe) that is running on the server machine. For more information about IP addresses and port values, see “Describing sockets” on page 37-3.

Three properties of *TSocketConnection* specify this information:

- *Address* specifies the IP Address of the server.
- *Host* specifies the host name of the server.

- *Port* specifies the port number of the socket dispatcher program on the application server.

Address and *Host* are mutually exclusive. Setting one unsets the value of the other. For information on which one to use, see “Describing the host” on page 37-4.

If you have multiple servers that your client application can choose from, you can use the *ObjectBroker* property instead of specifying a value for *Address* or *Host*. For more information, see “Brokering connections” on page 29-25.

By default, the value of *Port* is 211, which is the default port number of the socket dispatcher program that forwards incoming messages to your application server. If the socket dispatcher has been configured to use a different port, set the *Port* property to match that value.

Note You can configure the port of the socket dispatcher while it is running by right-clicking the Borland Socket Server tray icon and choosing Properties.

Although socket connections do not provide for using security protocols, you can customize the socket connection to add your own encryption. To do this

- 1 Create a COM object that supports the *IDataIntercept* interface. This is an interface for encrypting and decrypting data.
- 2 Register your new COM server on the client machine.
- 3 Set the *InterceptName* or *InterceptGUID* property of the socket connection component to specify this COM object.
- 4 Finally, right click the Borland Socket Server tray icon, choose Properties, and on the properties tab set the Intercept Name or Intercept GUID to the ProgId or GUID for the interceptor.

This mechanism can also be used for data compression and decompression.

Specifying a connection using HTTP

You can establish a connection to the application server using HTTP from any machine that has a TCP/IP address. Unlike sockets, however, HTTP allows you to take advantage of SSL security and to communicate with a server that is protected behind a firewall. When using HTTP, include a *TWebConnection* component for connecting to the application server.

The Web connection component establishes a connection to the Web server application (httpsrvr.dll), which in turn communicates with the application server. *TWebConnection* locates httpsrvr.dll using a Uniform Resource Locator (URL). The URL specifies the protocol (http or, if you are using SSL security, https), the host name for the machine that runs the Web server and httpsrvr.dll, and the path to the Web server application (httpsrvr.dll). Specify this value using the *URL* property.

Note When using *TWebConnection*, wininet.dll must be installed on the client machine. If you have IE3 or higher installed, wininet.dll can be found in the Windows system directory.

If the Web server requires authentication, or if you are using a proxy server that requires authentication, you must set the values of the *UserName* and *Password* properties so that the connection component can log on.

If you have multiple servers that your client application can choose from, you can use the *ObjectBroker* property instead of specifying a value for *URL*. For more information, see “Brokering connections” on page 29-25.

Specifying a connection using SOAP

You can establish a connection to a SOAP application server using the *TSoapConnection* component. *TSoapConnection* is very similar to *TWebConnection*, because it also uses HTTP as a transport protocol. Thus, you can use *TSoapConnection* from any machine that has a TCP/IP address, and it can take advantage of SSL security to communicate with a server that is protected by a firewall.

The SOAP connection component establishes a connection to a Web Service provider that implements the *IAppServerSOAP* or *IAppServer* interface. (The *UseSOAPAdapter* property specifies which interface it expects the server to support.) If the server implements the *IAppServerSOAP* interface, *TSoapConnection* converts that interface to an *IAppServer* interface for client datasets. *TSoapConnection* locates the Web Server application using a Uniform Resource Locator (URL). The URL specifies the protocol (http or, if you are using SSL security, https), the host name for the machine that runs the Web server, the name of the Web Service application, and a path that matches the path name of the *THTTPSoapDispatcher* on the application server. Specify this value using the *URL* property.

Note When using *TSoapConnection*, wininet.dll must be installed on the client machine. If you have IE3 or higher installed, wininet.dll can be found in the Windows system directory.

If the Web server requires authentication, or if you are using a proxy server that requires authentication, you must set the values of the *UserName* and *Password* properties so that the connection component can log on.

Brokering connections

If you have multiple COM-based servers that your client application can choose from, you can use an Object Broker to locate an available server system. The object broker maintains a list of servers from which the connection component can choose. When the connection component needs to connect to an application server, it asks the Object Broker for a computer name (or IP address, host name, or URL). The broker supplies a name, and the connection component forms a connection. If the supplied name does not work (for example, if the server is down), the broker supplies another name, and so on, until a connection is formed.

Once the connection component has formed a connection with a name supplied by the broker, it saves that name as the value of the appropriate property (*ComputerName*, *Address*, *Host*, *RemoteHost*, or *URL*). If the connection component closes the connection later, and then needs to reopen the connection, it tries using this property value, and only requests a new name from the broker if the connection fails.

Use an Object Broker by specifying the *ObjectBroker* property of your connection component. When the *ObjectBroker* property is set, the connection component does not save the value of *ComputerName*, *Address*, *Host*, *RemoteHost*, or *URL* to disk.

Managing server connections

The main purpose of connection components is to locate and connect to the application server. Because they manage server connections, you can also use connection components to call the methods of the application server's interface.

Connecting to the server

To locate and connect to the application server, you must first set the properties of the connection component to identify the application server. This process is described in "Connecting to the application server" on page 29-22. Before opening the connection, any client datasets that use the connection component to communicate with the application server should indicate this by setting their *RemoteServer* property to specify the connection component.

The connection is opened automatically when client datasets try to access the application server. For example, setting the *Active* property of the client dataset to **true** opens the connection, as long as the *RemoteServer* property has been set.

If you do not link any client datasets to the connection component, you can open the connection by setting the *Connected* property of the connection component to **true**.

Before a connection component establishes a connection to an application server, it generates a *BeforeConnect* event. You can perform any special actions prior to connecting in a *BeforeConnect* handler that you code. After establishing a connection, the connection component generates an *AfterConnect* event for any special actions.

Dropping or changing a server connection

A connection component drops a connection to the application server when you

- set the *Connected* property to **false**.
- free the connection component. A connection object is automatically freed when a user closes the client application.
- change any of the properties that identify the application server (*ServerName*, *ServerGUID*, *ComputerName*, and so on). Changing these properties allows you to switch among available application servers at runtime. The connection component drops the current connection and establishes a new one.

Note Instead of using a single connection component to switch among available application servers, a client application can instead have more than one connection component, each of which is connected to a different application server.

Before a connection component drops a connection, it automatically calls its *BeforeDisconnect* event handler, if one is provided. To perform any special actions prior to disconnecting, write a *BeforeDisconnect* handler. Similarly, after dropping the connection, the *AfterDisconnect* event handler is called. If you want to perform any special actions after disconnecting, write an *AfterDisconnect* handler.

Calling server interfaces

Applications do not need to call the *IAppServer* interface directly because the appropriate calls are made automatically when you use the properties and methods of the client dataset. However, while it is not necessary to work directly with the *IAppServer* interface, if you are not using SOAP you may have added your own extensions to the application server's interface. When you extend the application server's interface, you need a way to call those extensions using the connection created by your connection component. You can do this using the *AppServer* property of the connection component. For information about extending the application server's interface, see "Extending the application server's interface" on page 29-16.

AppServer is a Variant that represents the application server's interface. To call this interface, you must obtain a dispatch interface from this Variant. The dispatch interface has the same name as the interface that was created when you created the remote data module, but with the string "Disp" appended. Thus, if your remote data module is called *MyAppServer*, you can use *AppServer* to call its interface as follows:

```
IDispatch* disp = (IDispatch*)(MyConnection->AppServer)
IMyAppServerDisp TempInterface( (IMyAppServer*)disp);
TempInterface.SpecialMethod(x,y);
```

Note The dispatch interface is declared in the `_TLB.h` file generated by the Type Library editor.

If you are using SOAP, you can't use the *AppServer* property. Instead, you must use a remote interfaced object (*THHTTPRIO*) and make early-bound calls. As with all early-bound calls, the client application must know the application server's interface declaration at compile time. You can add this to your client application by referencing a WSDL document that describes the interface you want to call. Note that for SOAP servers, this interface is entirely separate from the SOAP data module's interface. For information on importing a WSDL document that describes the interface, see "Importing WSDL documents" on page 36-16.

Note The unit that declares the server interface must also register it with the invocation registry. For details on how to register invokable interfaces, see "Understanding invokable interfaces" on page 36-2.

Once you have imported a WSDL document to generate a unit declaring and registering the interface, create an instance of *THHTTPRIO* for the desired interface:

```
THHTTPRIO *X = new THHTTPRIO(NULL);
```

Next, assign the URL that your connection component uses to the remote interfaced object, appending the name of the interface you want to call:

```
X->URL = SoapConnection1.URL + "IMyInterface";
```

Now, you can use the *QueryInterface* method to obtain an interface to call the server's methods:

```
InterfaceVariable = X->QueryInterface(IMyInterfaceIntf);
if (InterfaceVariable)
{
    InterfaceVariable->SpecialMethod(a,b);
}
```

Note that the call to *QueryInterface* takes as an argument the *DelphiInterface* wrapper for the invokable interface rather than the invokable interface itself.

Connecting to an application server that uses multiple data modules

If a COM-based application server uses a main “parent” remote data module and several child remote data modules, as described in “Using multiple remote data modules” on page 29-20, then you need a separate connection component for every remote data module on the application server. Each connection component represents the connection to a single remote data module.

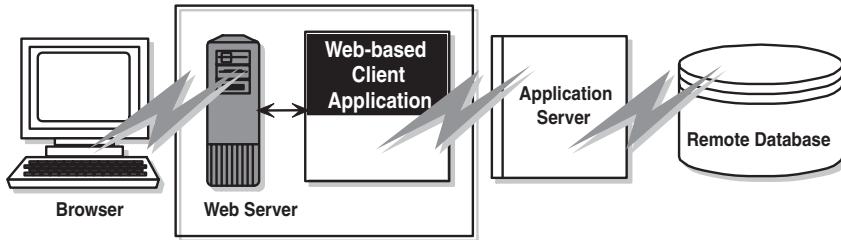
While it is possible to have your client application form independent connections to each remote data module on the application server, it is more efficient to use a single connection to the application server that is shared by all the connection components. That is, you add a single connection component that connects to the “main” remote data module on the application server, and then, for each “child” remote data module, add an additional component that shares the connection to the main remote data module.

- 1 For the connection to the main remote data module, add and set up a connection component as described in “Connecting to the application server” on page 29-22. The only limitation is that you can’t use a SOAP connection.
- 2 For each child remote data module, use a *TSharedConnection* component.
 - Set its *ParentConnection* property to the connection component you added in step 1. The *TSharedConnection* component shares the connection that this main connection establishes.
 - Set its *ChildName* property to the name of the property on the main remote data module’s interface that exposes the interface of the desired child remote data module.

When you assign the *TSharedConnection* component placed in step 2 as the value of a client dataset’s *RemoteServer* property, it works as if you were using an entirely independent connection to the child remote data module. However, the *TSharedConnection* component uses the connection established by the component you placed in step 1.

Writing Web-based client applications

If you want to create Web-based clients for your multi-tiered database application, you must replace the client tier with a special Web application that acts simultaneously as a client to an application server and as a Web server application that is installed with a Web server on the same machine. This architecture is illustrated in Figure 29.1.

Figure 29.1 Web-based multi-tiered database application

There are two approaches that you can take to build the Web application:

- You can combine the multi-tiered database architecture with an ActiveX form to distribute the client application as an ActiveX control. This allows any browser that supports ActiveX to run your client application as an in-process server.
- You can use XML data packets to build an InternetExpress application. This allows browsers that supports javascript to interact with your client application through html pages.

These two approaches are very different. Which one you choose depends on the following considerations:

- Each approach relies on a different technology (ActiveX vs. javascript and XML). Consider what systems your end users will use. The first approach requires a browser to support ActiveX (which limits clients to a Windows platform). The second approach requires a browser to support javascript and the DHTML capabilities introduced by Netscape 4 and Internet Explorer 4.
- ActiveX controls must be downloaded to the browser to act as an in-process server. As a result, the clients using an ActiveX approach require much more memory than the clients of an HTML-based application.
- The InternetExpress approach can be integrated with other HTML pages. An ActiveX client must run in a separate window.
- The InternetExpress approach uses standard HTTP, thereby avoiding any firewall issues that confront an ActiveX application.
- The ActiveX approach provides greater flexibility in how you program your application. You are not limited by the capabilities of the javascript libraries. The client datasets used in the ActiveX approach surface more features (such as filters, ranges, aggregation, optional parameters, delayed fetching of BLOBs or nested details, and so on) than the XML brokers used in the InternetExpress approach.

Caution Your Web client application may look and act differently when viewed from different browsers. Test your application with the browsers you expect your end-users to use.

Distributing a client application as an ActiveX control

The multi-tiered database architecture can be combined with ActiveX features to distribute a client application as an ActiveX control.

When you distribute your client application as an ActiveX control, create the application server as you would for any other multi-tiered application. For details on creating the application server, see “Creating the application server” on page 29-12.

When creating the client application, you must use an Active Form as the basis instead of an ordinary form. See “Creating an Active Form for the client application” for details.

Once you have built and deployed your client application, it can be accessed from any ActiveX-enabled Web browser on another machine. For a Web browser to successfully launch your client application, the Web server must be running on the machine that has the client application.

If the client application uses DCOM to communicate between the client application and the application server, the machine with the Web browser must be enabled to work with DCOM. If the machine with the Web browser is a Windows 95 machine, it must have installed DCOM95, which is available from Microsoft.

Creating an Active Form for the client application

- 1 Because the client application will be deployed as an ActiveX control, you must have a Web server that runs on the same system as the client application. You can use a ready-made server such as Microsoft's Personal Web server or you can write your own using the socket components described in Chapter 37, “Working with sockets.”
- 2 Create the client application following the steps described in “Creating the client application” on page 29-21, except start by choosing File | New | ActiveX | Active Form, rather than beginning an ordinary client project.
- 3 If your client application uses a data module, add a call to explicitly create the data module in the active form initialization.
- 4 When your client application is finished, compile the project, and select Project | Web Deployment Options. In the Web Deployment Options dialog, you must do the following:
 - 1 On the Project page, specify the Target directory, the URL for the target directory, and the HTML directory. Typically, the Target directory and the HTML directory will be the same as the projects directory for your Web Server. The target URL is typically the name of the server machine.
 - 2 On the Additional Files page, include midas.dll with your client application.
- 5 Finally, select Project | WebDeploy to deploy the client application as an active form.

Any Web browser that can run Active forms can run your client application by specifying the .HTM file that was created when you deployed the client application.

This .HTM file has the same name as your client application project, and appears in the directory specified as the Target directory.

Building Web applications using InternetExpress

A client application can request that the application server provide data packets that are coded in XML instead of OleVariants. By combining XML-coded data packets, special javascript libraries of database functions, and the Web server application support, you can create thin client applications that can be accessed using a Web browser that supports javascript. This combination of features is called InternetExpress.

Before building an InternetExpress application, you should understand the Web server application architecture. This is described in Chapter 32, “Creating Internet server applications.”

An InternetExpress application extends the basic Web server application architecture to act as the client of an application server. InternetExpress applications generate HTML pages that contain a mixture of HTML, XML, and javascript. The HTML governs the layout and appearance of the pages seen by end users in their browsers. The XML encodes the data packets and delta packets that represent database information. The javascript allows the HTML controls to interpret and manipulate the data in these XML data packets on the client machine.

If the InternetExpress application uses DCOM to connect to the application server, you must take additional steps to ensure that the application server grants access and launch permissions to its clients. See “Granting permission to access and launch the application server” on page 29-33 for details.

Tip You can create an InternetExpress application to provide Web browsers with “live” data even if you do not have an application server. Simply add the provider and its dataset to the Web module.

Building an InternetExpress application

The following steps describe one way to build a Web application using InternetExpress. The result is an application that creates HTML pages that let users interact with the data from an application server via a javascript-enabled Web browser. You can also build an InternetExpress application using the Site Express architecture by using the InternetExpress page producer (*TInetXPageProducer*).

- 1 Choose File | New | Other to display the New Items dialog box, and on the New page select Web Server application. This process is described in “Creating Web server applications with Web Broker” on page 33-1.
- 2 From the DataSnap page of the component palette, add a connection component to the Web Module that appears when you create a new Web server application. The type of connection component you add depends on the communication protocol you want to use. See “Choosing a connection protocol” on page 29-9 for details.

- 3 Set properties on your connection component to specify the application server with which it should establish a connection. To learn more about setting up the connection component, see “Connecting to the application server” on page 29-22.
- 4 Instead of a client dataset, add an XML broker from the InternetExpress page of the component palette to the Web module. Like *TClientDataSet*, *TXMLBroker* represents the data from a provider on the application server and interacts with the application server through an *IAppServer* interface. However, unlike client datasets, XML brokers request data packets as XML instead of as *OleVariants* and interact with InternetExpress components instead of data controls.
- 5 Set the *RemoteServer* property of the XML broker to point to the connection component you added in step 2. Set the *ProviderName* property to indicate the provider on the application server that provides data and applies updates. For more information about setting up the XML broker, see “Using an XML broker” on page 29-34.
- 6 Add an InternetExpress page producer (*TInetXPageProducer*) to the Web module for each separate page that users will see in their browsers. For each page producer, you must set the *IncludePathURL* property to indicate where it can find the javascript libraries that augment its generated HTML controls with data management capabilities.
- 7 Right-click a Web page and choose Action Editor to display the Action editor. Add action items for every message you want to handle from browsers. Associate the page producers you added in step 6 with these actions by setting their *Producer* property or writing code in an *OnAction* event handler. For more information on adding action items using the Action editor, see “Adding actions to the dispatcher” on page 33-4.
- 8 Double-click each Web page to display the Web Page editor. (You can also display this editor by clicking the ellipsis button in the Object Inspector next to the *WebPageItems* property.) In this editor you can add Web Items to design the pages that users see in their browsers. For more information about designing Web pages for your InternetExpress application, see “Creating Web pages with an InternetExpress page producer” on page 29-36.
- 9 Build your Web application. Once you install this application with your Web server, browsers can call it by specifying the name of the application as the script name portion of the URL and the name of the Web Page component as the pathinfo portion.

Using the javascript libraries

The HTML pages generated by the InternetExpress components and the Web items they contain make use of several javascript libraries that ship in the source/webmidas directory:

Table 29.3 Javascript libraries

| Library | Description |
|---------------|--|
| xmldom.js | This library is a DOM-compatible XML parser written in javascript. It allows parsers that do not support XML to use XML data packets. Note that this does not include support for XML Islands, which are supported by IE5 and later. |
| xmldb.js | This library defines data access classes that manage XML data packets and XML delta packets. |
| xmldisp.js | This library defines classes that associate the data access classes in xmldb with HTML controls in the HTML page. |
| xmlerrdisp.js | This library defines classes that can be used when reconciling update errors. These classes are not used by any of the built-in InternetExpress components, but are useful when writing a Reconcile producer. |
| xmlshow.js | This library includes functions to display formatted XML data packets and XML delta packets. This library is not used by any of the InternetExpress components, but is useful when debugging. |

Once you have installed these libraries, you must set the *IncludePathURL* property of all InternetExpress page producers to indicate where they can be found.

It is possible to write your own HTML pages using the javascript classes provided in these libraries instead of using Web items to generate your Web pages. However, you must ensure that your code does not do anything illegal, as these classes include minimal error checking (so as to minimize the size of the generated Web pages).

Granting permission to access and launch the application server

Requests from the InternetExpress application appear to the application server as originating from a guest account with the name IUSR_computername, where computername is the name of the system running the Web application. By default, this account does not have access or launch permission for the application server. If you try to use the Web application without granting these permissions, when the Web browser tries to load the requested page it times out with EOLE_ACCESS_ERROR.

Note Because the application server runs under this guest account, it can't be shut down by other accounts.

To grant the Web application access and launch permissions, run DCOMCnfg.exe, which is located in the System32 directory of the machine that runs the application server. The following steps describe how to configure your application server:

- 1 When you run DCOMCnfg, select your application server in the list of applications on the Applications page.
- 2 Click the Properties button. When the dialog changes, select the Security page.

- 3 Select Use Custom Access Permissions, and press the Edit button. Add the name IUSR_computername to the list of accounts with access permission, where computername is the name of the machine that runs the Web application.
- 4 Select Use Custom Launch Permissions, and press the Edit button. Add IUSR_computername to this list as well.
- 5 Click the Apply button.

Using an XML broker

The XML broker serves two major functions:

- It fetches XML data packets from the application server and makes them available to the Web Items that generate HTML for the InternetExpress application.
- It receives updates in the form of XML delta packets from browsers and applies them to the application server.

Fetching XML data packets

Before the XML broker can supply XML data packets to the components that generate HTML pages, it must fetch them from the application server. To do this, it uses the *IAppServer* interface, which it acquires from a connection component.

Note Even when using SOAP, where the application server supports *IAppServerSOAP*, the XML broker uses *IAppServer* because the connection component acts as an adapter between the two interfaces.

You must set the following properties so that the XML producer can use the *IAppServer* interface:

- Set the *RemoteServer* property to the connection component that establishes the connection to the application server and gets its *IAppServer* interface. At design time, you can select this value from a drop-down list in the object inspector.
- Set the *ProviderName* property to the name of the provider component on the application server that represents the dataset for which you want XML data packets. This provider both supplies XML data packets and applies updates from XML delta packets. At design time, if the *RemoteServer* property is set and the connection component has an active connection, the Object Inspector displays a list of available providers. (If you are using a DCOM connection the application server must also be registered on the client machine).

Two properties let you indicate what you want to include in data packets:

- You can limit the number of records that are added to the data packet by setting the *MaxRecords* property. This is especially important for large datasets because InternetExpress applications send the entire data packet to client Web browsers. If the data packet is too large, the download time can become prohibitively long.
- If the provider on the application server represents a query or stored procedure, you may want to provide parameter values before obtaining an XML data packet. You can supply these parameter values using the *Params* property.

The components that generate HTML and javascript for the InternetExpress application automatically use the XML broker's XML data packet once you set their *XMLBroker* property. To obtain the XML data packet directly in code, use the *RequestRecords* method.

Note When the XML broker supplies a data packet to another component (or when you call *RequestRecords*), it receives an *OnRequestRecords* event. You can use this event to supply your own XML string instead of the data packet from the application server. For example, you could fetch the XML data packet from the application server using *GetXMLRecords* and then edit it before supplying it to the emerging Web page.

Applying updates from XML delta packets

When you add the XML broker to the Web module (or data module containing a *TWebDispatcher*), it automatically registers itself with the Web dispatcher as an auto-dispatching object. This means that, unlike other components, you do not need to create an action item for the XML broker in order for it to respond to update messages from a Web browser. These messages contain XML delta packets that should be applied to the application server. Typically, they originate from a button that you create on one of the HTML pages produced by the Web client application.

So that the dispatcher can recognize messages for the XML broker, you must describe them using the *WebDispatch* property. Set the *PathInfo* property to the path portion of the URL to which messages for the XML broker are sent. Set *MethodType* to the value of the method header of update messages addressed to that URL (typically *mtPost*). If you want to respond to all messages with the specified path, set *MethodType* to *mtAny*. If you don't want the XML broker to respond directly to update messages (for example, if you want to handle them explicitly using an action item), set the *Enabled* property to **false**. For more information on how the Web dispatcher determines which component handles messages from the Web browser, see "Dispatching request messages" on page 33-5.

When the dispatcher passes an update message on to the XML broker, it passes the updates on to the application server and, if there are update errors, receives an XML delta packet describing all update errors. Finally, it sends a response message back to the browser, which either redirects the browser to the same page that generated the XML delta packet or sends it some new content.

A number of events allow you to insert custom processing at all steps of this update process:

- 1 When the dispatcher first passes the update message to the XML broker, it receives a *BeforeDispatch* event, where you can preprocess the request or even handle it entirely. This event allows the XML broker to handle messages other than update messages.
- 2 If the *BeforeDispatch* event handler does not handle the message, the XML broker receives an *OnRequestUpdate* event, where you can apply the updates yourself rather than using the default processing.
- 3 If the *OnRequestUpdate* event handler does not handle the request, the XML broker applies the updates and receives a delta packet containing any update errors.

- 4 If there are no update errors, the XML broker receives an *OnGetResponse* event, where you can create a response message that indicates the updates were successfully applied or sends refreshed data to the browser. If the *OnGetResponse* event handler does not complete the response (does not set the *Handled* parameter to **true**), the XML broker sends a response that redirects the browser back to the document that generated the delta packet.
- 5 If there are update errors, the XML broker receives an *OnGetErrorResponse* event instead. You can use this event to try to resolve update errors or to generate a Web page that describes them to the end user. If the *OnGetErrorResponse* event handler does not complete the response (does not set the *Handled* parameter to **true**), the XML broker calls on a special content producer called the *ReconcileProducer* to generate the content of the response message.
- 6 Finally, the XML broker receives an *AfterDispatch* event, where you can perform any final actions before sending a response back to the Web browser.

Creating Web pages with an InternetExpress page producer

Each InternetExpress page producer generates an HTML document that appears in the browsers of your application's clients. If your application includes several separate Web documents, use a separate page producer for each of them.

The InternetExpress page producer (*TInetXPageProducer*) is a special page producer component. As with other page producers, you can assign it as the *Producer* property of an action item or call it explicitly from an *OnAction* event handler. For more information about using content producers with action items, see "Responding to request messages with action items" on page 33-7. For more information about page producers, see "Using page producer components" on page 33-13.

The InternetExpress page producer has a default template as the value of its *HTMLDoc* property. This template contains a set of HTML-transparent tags that the InternetExpress page producer uses to assemble an HTML document (with embedded javascript and XML) including content produced by other components. Before it can translate all of the HTML-transparent tags and assemble this document, you must indicate the location of the javascript libraries used for the embedded javascript on the page. This location is specified by setting the *IncludePathURL* property.

You can specify the components that generate parts of the Web page using the Web page editor. Display the Web page editor by double-clicking the Web page component or clicking the ellipsis button next to the *WebPageItems* property in the Object Inspector.

The components you add in the Web page editor generate the HTML that replaces one of the HTML-transparent tags in the InternetExpress page producer's default template. These components become the value of the *WebPageItems* property. After adding the components in the order you want them, you can customize the template to add your own HTML or change the default tags.

Using the Web page editor

The Web page editor lets you add Web items to your InternetExpress page producer and view the resulting HTML page. Display the Web page editor by double-clicking on a InternetExpress page producer component.

Note You must have Internet Explorer 4 or better installed to use the Web page editor.

The top of the Web page editor displays the Web items that generate the HTML document. These Web items are nested, where each type of Web item assembles the HTML generated by its subitems. Different types of items can contain different subitems. On the left, a tree view displays all of the Web items, indicating how they are nested. On the right, you can see the Web items included by the currently selected item. When you select a component in the top of the Web page editor, you can set its properties using the Object Inspector.

Click the New Item button to add a subitem to the currently selected item. The Add Web Component dialog lists only those items that can be added to the currently selected item.

The InternetExpress page producer can contain one of two types of item, each of which generates an HTML form:

- *TDataForm*, which generates an HTML form for displaying data and the controls that manipulate that data or submit updates.

Items you add to *TDataForm* display data in a multi-record grid (*TDataGrid*) or in a set of controls each of which represents a single field from a single record (*TFieldGroup*). In addition, you can add a set of buttons to navigate through data or post updates (*TDataNavigator*), or a button to apply updates back to the Web client (*TApplyUpdatesButton*). Each of these items contains subitems to represent individual fields or buttons. Finally, as with most Web items, you can add a layout grid (*TLayoutGroup*), that lets you customize the layout of any items it contains.

- *TQueryForm*, which generates an HTML form for displaying or reading application-defined values. For example, you can use this form for displaying and submitting parameter values.

Items you add to *TQueryForm* display application-defined values (*TQueryFieldGroup*) or a set of buttons to submit or reset those values (*TQueryButtons*). Each of these items contains subitems to represent individual values or buttons. You can also add a layout grid to a query form, just as you can to a data form.

The bottom of the Web page editor displays the generated HTML code and lets you see what it looks like in a browser (IE4).

Setting Web item properties

The Web items that you add using the Web page editor are specialized components that generate HTML. Each Web item class is designed to produce a specific control or section of the final HTML document, but a common set of properties influences the appearance of the final HTML.

When a Web item represents information from the XML data packet (for example, when it generates a set of field or parameter display controls or a button that manipulates the data), the *XMLBroker* property associates the Web item with the XML broker that manages the data packet. You can further specify a dataset that is contained in a dataset field of that data packet using the *XMLDataSetField* property. If the Web item represents a specific field or parameter value, the Web item has a *FieldName* or *ParamName* property.

You can apply a style attribute to any Web item, thereby influencing the overall appearance of all the HTML it generates. Styles and style sheets are part of the HTML 4 standard. They allow an HTML document to define a set of display attributes that apply to a tag and everything in its scope. Web items offer a flexible selection of ways to use them:

- The simplest way to use styles is to define a style attribute directly on the Web item. To do this, use the *Style* property. The value of *Style* is simply the attribute definition portion of a standard HTML style definition, such as
color: red.

- You can also define a style sheet that defines a set of style definitions. Each definition includes a style selector (the name of a tag to which the style always applies or a user-defined style name) and the attribute definition in curly braces:
H2 B {color: red}
.MyStyle {font-family: arial; font-weight: bold; font-size: 18px }

The entire set of definitions is maintained by the InternetExpress page producer as its *Styles* property. Each Web item can then reference the styles with user-defined names by setting its *StyleRule* property.

- If you are sharing a style sheet with other applications, you can supply the style definitions as the value of the InternetExpress page producer's *StylesFile* property instead of the *Styles* property. Individual Web items still reference styles using the *StyleRule* property.

Another common property of Web items is the *Custom* property. *Custom* includes a set of options that you add to the generated HTML tag. HTML defines a different set of options for each type of tag. The VCL reference for the *Custom* property of most Web items gives an example of possible options. For more information on possible options, use an HTML reference.

Customizing the InternetExpress page producer template

The template of an InternetExpress page producer is an HTML document with extra embedded tags that your application translates dynamically. Initially, the page producer generates a default template as the value of the *HTMLDoc* property. This default template has the form

```
<HTML>
<HEAD>
</HEAD>
<BODY>
<#INCLUDES> <#STYLES> <#WARNINGS> <#FORMS> <#SCRIPT>
</BODY>
</HTML>
```

The HTML-transparent tags in the default template are translated as follows:

<#INCLUDES> generates the statements that include the javascript libraries. These statements have the form

```
<SCRIPT language=Javascript type="text/javascript" SRC="IncludePathURL/xmldom.js"> </SCRIPT>
<SCRIPT language=Javascript type="text/javascript" SRC="IncludePathURL/xmldb.js"> </SCRIPT>
<SCRIPT language=Javascript type="text/javascript" SRC="IncludePathURL/xmlbind.js"> </SCRIPT>
```

<#STYLES> generates the statements that defines a style sheet from definitions listed in the *Styles* or *StylesFile* property of the InternetExpress page producer.

<#WARNINGS> generates nothing at runtime. At design time, it adds warning messages for problems detected while generating the HTML document. You can see these messages in the Web page editor.

<#FORMS> generates the HTML produced by the components that you add in the Web page editor. The HTML from each component is generated in the order it appears in *WebPageItems*.

<#SCRIPT> generates a block of javascript declarations that are used in the HTML generated by the components added in the Web page editor.

You can replace the default template by changing the value of *HTMLDoc* or setting the *HTMLFile* property. The customized HTML template can include any of the HTML-transparent tags that make up the default template. The InternetExpress page producer automatically translates these tags when you call the *Content* method. In addition, The InternetExpress page producer automatically translates three additional tags:

<#BODYELEMENTS> is replaced by the same HTML as results from the 5 tags in the default template. It is useful when generating a template in an HTML editor when you want to use the default layout but add additional elements using the editor.

<#COMPONENT Name=WebComponentName> is replaced by the HTML that the component named *WebComponentName* generates. This component can be one of the components added in the Web page editor, or it can be any component that supports the *IWebContent* interface and has the same Owner as the InternetExpress page producer.

<#DATAPACKET XMLBroker=BrokerName> is replaced with the XML data packet obtained from the XML broker specified by *BrokerName*. When, in the Web page editor, you see the HTML that the InternetExpress page producer generates, you see this tag instead of the actual XML data packet.

In addition, the customized template can include any other HTML-transparent tags that you define. When the InternetExpress page producer encounters a tag that is not one of the seven types it translates automatically, it generates an *OnHTMLTag* event, where you can write code to perform your own translations. For more information about HTML templates in general, see "HTML templates" on page 33-13.

Tip The components that appear in the Web page editor generate static code. That is, unless the application server changes the metadata that appears in data packets, the HTML is always the same, no matter when it is generated. You can avoid the overhead of generating this code dynamically at runtime in response to every request

message by copying the generated HTML in the Web page editor and using it as a template. Because the Web page editor displays a `<#DATAPACKET>` tag instead of the actual XML, using this as a template still allows your application to fetch data packets from the application server dynamically.

Using XML in database applications

In addition to the support for connecting to database servers, C++Builder lets you work with XML documents as if they were database servers. XML (Extensible Markup Language) is a markup language for describing structured data. XML documents provide a standard, transportable format for data that is used in Web applications, business-to-business communication, and so on. For information on C++Builder's support for working directly with XML documents, see Chapter 35, "Working with XML documents."

C++Builder's support for working with XML documents in database applications is based on a set of components that can convert data packets (the *Data* property of a client dataset) into XML documents and convert XML documents into data packets. In order to use these components, you must first define the transformation between the XML document and the data packet. Once you have defined the transformation, you can use special components to

- convert XML documents into data packets.
- provide data from and resolve updates to an XML document.
- use an XML document as the client of a provider.

Defining transformations

Before you can convert between data packets and XML documents, you must define the relationship between the metadata in a data packet and the nodes of the corresponding XML document. A description of this relationship is stored in a special XML document called a transformation.

Each transformation file contains two things: the mapping between the nodes in an XML schema and the fields in a data packet, and a skeletal XML document that represents the structure for the results of the transformation. A transformation is a one-way mapping: from an XML schema or document to a data packet or from the metadata in a data packet to an XML schema. Often, you create transformation files

in pairs: one that maps from XML to data packet, and one that maps from data packet to XML.

In order to create the transformation files for a mapping, use the XMLMapper utility that ships in the bin directory.

Mapping between XML nodes and data packet fields

XML provides a text-based way to store or describe structured data. Datasets provide another way to store and describe structured data. To convert an XML document into a dataset, therefore, you must identify the correspondences between the nodes in an XML document and the fields in a dataset.

Consider, for example, an XML document that represents a set of email messages. It might look like the following (containing a single message):

```
<?xml version="1.0" standalone='yes' ?>
<email>
  <head>
    <from>
      <name>Dave Boss</name>
      <address>dboss@MyCo.com</address>
    </from>
    <to>
      <name>Joe Engineer</name>
      <address>jengineer@MyCo.com</address>
    </to>
    <cc>
      <name>Robin Smith</name>
      <address>rsmith@MyCo.com</address>
    </cc>
    <cc>
      <name>Leonard Devon</name>
      <address>ldevon@MyCo.com</address>
    </cc>
  </head>
  <body>
    <subject>XML components</subject>
    <content>
      Joe,
      Attached is the specification for the new XML component support in C++Builder.
      This looks like a good solution to our buisness-to-buisness application!
      Also attached, please find the project schedule. Do you think its reasonable?
      Dave.
    </content>
    <attachment attachfile="XMLSpec.txt"/>
    <attachment attachfile="Schedule.txt"/>
  </body>
</email>
```

One natural mapping between this document and a dataset would map each e-mail message to a single record. The record would have fields for the sender's name and address. Because an e-mail message can have multiple recipients, the recipient (<to>

would map to a nested dataset. Similarly, the cc list maps to a nested dataset. The subject line would map to a string field while the message itself (<content>) would probably be a memo field. The names of attachment files would map to a nested dataset because one message can have several attachments. Thus, the e-mail above would map to a dataset something like the following:

| SenderName | SenderAddress | To | CC | Subject | Content | Attach |
|------------|----------------|-----------|-----------|----------------|---------|-----------|
| Dave Boss | dboss@MyCo.Com | (DataSet) | (DataSet) | XML components | (MEMO) | (DataSet) |

where the nested dataset in the “To” field is

| Name | Address |
|--------------|--------------------|
| Joe Engineer | jengineer@MyCo.Com |

the nested dataset in the “CC” field is

| Name | Address |
|---------------|-----------------|
| Robin Smith | rsmith@MyCo.Com |
| Leonard Devon | ldevon@MyCo.Com |

and the nested dataset in the “Attach” field is

| Attachfile |
|--------------|
| XMLSpec.txt |
| Schedule.txt |

Defining such a mapping involves identifying those nodes of the XML document that can be repeated and mapping them to nested datasets. Tagged elements that have values and appear only once (such as <content>...</content>) map to fields whose datatype reflects the type of data that can appear as the value. Attributes of a tag (such as the AttachFile attribute of the attachment tag) also map to fields.

Note that not all tags in the XML document appear in the corresponding dataset. For example, the <head>...</head> element has no corresponding element in the resulting dataset. Typically, only elements that have values, elements that can be repeated, or the attributes of a tag map to the fields (including nested dataset fields) of a dataset. The exception to this rule is when a parent node in the XML document maps to a field whose value is built up from the values of the child nodes. For example, an XML document might contain a set of tags such as

```
<FullName>
  <Title> Mr. </Title>
  <FirstName> John </FirstName>
  <LastName> Smith </LastName>
</FullName>
```

which could map to a single dataset field with the value

```
Mr. John Smith
```

Using XMLMapper

The XML mapper utility, `xmlmapper.exe`, lets you define mappings in three ways:

- From an existing XML schema (or document) to a client dataset that you define. This is useful when you want to create a database application to work with data for which you already have an XML schema.
- From an existing data packet to a new XML schema you define. This is useful when you want to expose existing database information in XML, for example to create a new business-to-business communication system.
- Between an existing XML schema and an existing data packet. This is useful when you have an XML schema and a database that both describe the same information and you want to make them work together.

Once you define the mapping, you can generate the transformation files that are used to convert XML documents to data packets and to convert data packets to XML documents. Note that only the transformation file is directional: a single mapping can be used to generate both the transformation from XML to data packet and from data packet to XML.

Note XML mapper relies on two .DLLs (`midas.dll` and `msxml.dll`) to work correctly. Be sure that you have both of these .DLLs installed before you try to use `xmlmapper.exe`. In addition, `msxml.dll` must be registered as a COM server. You can register it using `Regsvr32.exe`.

Loading an XML schema or data packet

Before you can define a mapping and generate a transformation file, you must first load descriptions of the XML document and the data packet between which you are mapping.

You can load an XML document or schema by choosing **File | Open** and selecting the document or schema in the resulting dialog.

You can load a data packet by choosing **File | Open** and selecting a data packet file in the resulting dialog. (The data packet is simply the file generated when you call a client dataset's *SaveToFile* method.) If you have not saved the data packet to disk, you can fetch the data packet directly from the application server of a multi-tiered application by right-clicking in the Datapacket pane and choosing **Connect To Remote Server**.

You can load only an XML document or schema, only a data packet, or you can load both. If you load only one side of the mapping, XML mapper can generate a natural mapping for the other side.

Defining mappings

The mapping between an XML document and a data packet need not include all of the fields in the data packet or all of the tagged elements in the XML document. Therefore, you must first specify those elements that are mapped. To specify these elements, first select the Mapping page in the central pane of the dialog.

To specify the elements of an XML document or schema that are mapped to fields in a data packet, select the Sample or Structure tab of the XML document pane and double-click on the nodes for elements that map to data packet fields.

To specify the fields of the data packet that are mapped to tagged elements or attributes in the XML document and double-click on the nodes for those fields in the Datapacket pane.

If you have only loaded one side of the mapping (the XML document or the data packet), you can generate the other side after you have selected the nodes that are mapped.

- If you are generating a data packet from an XML document, you first define attributes for the selected nodes that determine the types of fields to which they correspond in the data packet. In the center pane, select the Node Repository page. Select each node that participates in the mapping and indicate the attributes of the corresponding field. If the mapping is not straightforward (for example, a node with subnodes that corresponds to a field whose value is built from those subnodes), check the User Defined Translation check box. You will need to write an event handler later to perform the transformation on user defined nodes.

Once you have specified the way nodes are to be mapped, choose Create | Datapacket from XML. The corresponding data packet is automatically generated and displayed in the Datapacket pane.

- If you are generating an XML document from a data packet, choose Create | XML from Datapacket. A dialog appears where you can specify the names of the tags and attributes in the XML document that correspond to fields, records, and datasets in the data packet. For field values, you specify whether they map to a tagged element with a value or to an attribute by the way you name them. Names that begin with an @ symbol map to attributes of the tag that corresponds to the record, while names that do not begin with an @ symbol map to tagged elements that have values and that are nested within the element for the record.
- If you have loaded both an XML document and a data packet (client dataset file), be sure you select corresponding nodes in the same order. The corresponding nodes should appear next to each other in the table at the top of the Mapping page.

Once you have loaded or generated both the XML document and the data packet and selected the nodes that appear in the mapping, the table at the top of the Mapping page should reflect the mapping you have defined.

Generating transformation files

To generate a transformation file, use the following steps:

- 1 First select the radio button that indicates what the transformation creates:
 - Choose the Datapacket to XML button if the mapping goes from data packet to XML document.
 - Choose the XML to Datapacket button if the mapping goes from XML document to data packet.

- 2 If you are generating a data packet, you will also want to use the radio buttons in the Create Datapacket As section. These buttons let you specify how the data packet will be used: as a dataset, as a delta packet for applying updates, or as the parameters to supply to a provider before fetching data.
- 3 Click Create and Test Transformation to generate an in-memory version of the transformation. XML mapper displays the XML document that would be generated for the data packet in the Datapacket pane or the data packet that would be generated for the XML document in the XML Document pane.
- 4 Finally, choose File | Save | Transformation to save the transformation file. The transformation file is a special XML file (with the .xtr extension) that describes the transformation you have defined.

Converting XML documents into data packets

Once you have created a transformation file that indicates how to transform an XML document into a data packet, you can create data packets for any XML document that conforms to the schema used in the transformation. These data packets can then be assigned to a client dataset and saved to a file so that they form the basis of a file-based database application.

The *TXMLTransform* component transforms an XML document into a data packet according to the mapping in a transformation file.

Note You can also use *TXMLTransform* to convert a data packet that appears in XML format into an arbitrary XML document.

Specifying the source XML document

There are three ways to specify the source XML document:

- If the source document is an .xml file on disk, you can use the *SourceXmlFile* property.
- If the source document is an in-memory string of XML, you can use the *SourceXml* property.
- If you have an IDOMDocument interface for the source document, you can use the *SourceXmlDocument* property.

TXMLTransform checks these properties in the order listed above. That is, it first checks for a file name in the *SourceXmlFile* property. Only if *SourceXmlFile* is an empty string does it check the *SourceXml* property. Only if *SourceXml* is an empty string does it then check the *SourceXmlDocument* property.

Specifying the transformation

There are two ways to specify the transformation that converts the XML document into a data packet:

- Set the *TransformationFile* property to indicate a transformation file that was created using *xmlmapper.exe*.
- Set the *TransformationDocument* property if you have an *IDOMDocument* interface for the transformation.

TXMLTransform checks these properties in the order listed above. That is, it first checks for a file name in the *TransformationFile* property. Only if *TransformationFile* is an empty string does it check the *TransformationDocument* property.

Obtaining the resulting data packet

To cause *TXMLTransform* to perform its transformation and generate a data packet, you need only read the *Data* property. For example, the following code uses an XML document and transformation file to generate a data packet, which is then assigned to a client dataset:

```
XMLTransform1->SourceXMLFile = "CustomerDocument.xml";
XMLTransform1->TransformationFile = "CustXMLToCustTable.xtr";
ClientDataSet1->XMLData = XMLTransform1->Data;
```

Converting user-defined nodes

When you define a transformation using *xmlmapper.exe*, you can specify that some of the nodes in the XML document are “user-defined”. User-defined nodes are nodes for which you want to provide the transformation in code rather than relying on a straightforward node-value-to-field-value translation.

You can provide the code to translate user-defined nodes using the *OnTranslate* event. *OnTranslate* is called every time the *TXMLTransform* component encounters a user-defined node in the XML document. In the *OnTranslate* event handler, you can read the source document and specify the resulting value for the field in the data packet.

For example, the following *OnTranslate* event handler converts a node in the XML document with the following form

```
<FullName>
  <Title> </Title>
  <FirstName> </FirstName>
  <LastName> </LastName>
</FullName>
```

into a single field value:

```
void __fastcall TForm1::XMLTransform1Translate(TObject *Sender, AnsiString Id,
  _di_IDOMNode SrcNode, AnsiString &Value, _di_IDOMNode DestNode)
{
  if (Id == "FullName")
```

```

{
    Value = "";
    if (SrcNode.hasChildNodes)
    {
        _di_IXMLDOMNode CurNode = SrcNode.firstChild;
        Value = SrcValue + AnsiString(CurNode.nodeValue);
        while (CurNode != SrcNode.lastChild)
        {
            CurNode = CurNode.nextSibling;
            Value = Value + AnsiString(" ");
            Value = Value + AnsiString(CurNode.nodeValue);
        }
    }
}

```

Using an XML document as the source for a provider

The *TXMLTransformProvider* component lets you use an XML document as if it were a database table. *TXMLTransformProvider* packages the data from an XML document and applies updates from clients back to that XML document. It appears to clients such as client datasets or XML brokers like any other provider component. For information on provider components, see Chapter 28, “Using provider components.” For information on using provider components with client datasets, see “Using a client dataset with a provider” on page 27-24.

You can specify the XML document from which the XML provider provides data and to which it applies updates using the *XMLDataFile* property.

TXMLTransformProvider components use internal *TXMLTransform* components to translate between data packets and the source XML document: one to translate the XML document into data packets, and one to translate data packets back into the XML format of the source document after applying updates. These two *TXMLTransform* components can be accessed using the *TransformRead* and *TransformWrite* properties, respectively.

When using *TXMLTransformProvider*, you must specify the transformations that these two *TXMLTransform* components use to translate between data packets and the source XML document. You do this by setting the *TXMLTransform* component’s *TransformationFile* or *TransformationDocument* property, just as when using a stand-alone *TXMLTransform* component.

In addition, if the transformation includes any user-defined nodes, you must supply an *OnTranslate* event handler to the internal *TXMLTransform* components.

You do not need to specify the source document on the *TXMLTransform* components that are the values of *TransformRead* and *TransformWrite*. For *TransformRead*, the source is the file specified by the provider’s *XMLDataFile* property (although, if you set *XMLDataFile* to an empty string, you can supply the source document using *TransformRead->XmlSource* or *TransformRead->XmlSourceDocument*). For *TransformWrite*, the source is generated internally by the provider when it applies updates.

Using an XML document as the client of a provider

The *TXMLTransformClient* component acts as an adapter to let you use an XML document (or set of documents) as the client for an application server (or simply as the client of a dataset to which it connects via a *TDataSetProvider* component). That is, *TXMLTransform* client lets you publish database data as an XML document and to make use of update requests (insertions or deletions) from an external application that supplies them in the form of XML documents.

To specify the provider from which the *TXMLTransformClient* object fetches data and to which it applies updates, set the *ProviderName* property. As with the *ProviderName* property of a client dataset, *ProviderName* can be the name of a provider on a remote application server or it can be a local provider in the same form or data module as the *TXMLTransformClient* object. For information about providers, see Chapter 28, “Using provider components.”

If the provider is on a remote application server, you must use a *DataSnap* connection component to connect to that application server. Specify the connection component using the *RemoteServer* property. For information on *DataSnap* connection components, see “Connecting to the application server” on page 29-22.

Fetching an XML document from a provider

TXMLTransformClient uses an internal *TXMLTransform* component to translate data packets from the provider into an XML document. You can access this *TXMLTransform* component as the value of the *TransformGetData* property.

Before you can create an XML document that represents the data from a provider, you must specify the transformation file that *TransformGetData* uses to translate the data packet into the appropriate XML format. You do this by setting the *TXMLTransform* component’s *TransformationFile* or *TransformationDocument* property, just as when using a stand-alone *TXMLTransform* component. If that transformation includes any user-defined nodes, you will want to supply *TransformGetData* with an *OnTranslate* event handler as well.

There is no need to specify the source document for *TransformGetData*, *TXMLTransformClient* fetches that from the provider. However, if the provider expects any input parameters, you may want to set them before fetching the data. Use the *SetParams* method to supply these input parameters before you fetch data from the provider. *SetParams* takes two arguments: a string of XML from which to extract parameter values, and the name of a transformation file to translate that XML into a data packet. *SetParams* uses the transformation file to convert the string of XML into a data packet, and then extracts the parameter values from that data packet.

Note You can override either of these arguments if you want to specify the parameter document or transformation in another way. Simply set one of the properties on *TransformSetParams* property to indicate the document that contains the parameters or the transformation to use when converting them, and then set the argument you want to override to an empty string when you call *SetParams*. For details on the

properties you can use, see “Converting XML documents into data packets” on page 30-6.

Once you have configured *TransformGetData* and supplied any input parameters, you can call the *GetDataAsXml* method to fetch the XML. *GetDataAsXml* sends the current parameter values to the provider, fetches a data packet, converts it into an XML document, and returns that document as a string. You can save this string to a file:

```
XMLTransformClient1->ProviderName = "Provider1";
XMLTransformClient1->TransformGetData->TransformationFile = "CustTableToCustXML.xtr";
XMLTransformClient1->TransformSetParams->SourceXmlFile = "InputParams.xml";
XMLTransformClient1->SetParams("", "InputParamsToDP.xtr");
AnsiString XML = XMLTransformClient1->GetDataAsXml();
TFileStream pXMLDoc = new TFileStream("Customers.xml", fmCreate || fmOpenWrite);
__try
{
    pXMLDoc->Write(XML.c_str(), XML.Length());
}
__finally
{
    delete pXMLDoc;
}
```

Applying updates from an XML document to a provider

TXMLTransformClient also lets you insert all of the data from an XML document into the provider’s dataset or to delete all of the records in an XML document from the provider’s dataset. To perform these updates, call the *ApplyUpdates* method, passing in

- A string whose value is the contents of the XML document with the data to insert or delete.
- The name of a transformation file that can convert that XML data into an insert or delete delta packet. (When you define the transformation file using the XML mapper utility, you specify whether the transformation is for an insert or delete delta packet.)
- The number of update errors that can be tolerated before the update operation is aborted. If fewer than the specified number of records can’t be inserted or deleted, *ApplyUpdates* returns the number of actual failures. If more than the specified number of records can’t be inserted or deleted, the entire update operation is rolled back, and no update is performed.

The following call transforms the XML document *Customers.xml* into a delta packet and applies all updates regardless of the number of errors:

```
StringList1->LoadFromFile("Customers.xml");
nErrors = ApplyUpdates(StringList1->Text, "CustXMLToInsert.xtr", -1);
```


Writing Internet applications

The chapters in “Writing Internet applications” present concepts and skills necessary for building applications that are distributed over the Internet.

Note The components described in this section are not available in all editions of C++Builder.

Writing CORBA applications

CORBA (Common Object Request Broker Architecture) is a specification adopted by the Object Management Group (OMG) to address the complexity of developing distributed object applications.

As its name implies, CORBA provides an object-oriented approach to writing distributed applications. This is in contrast to a message-oriented approach such as the one described for HTTP applications in Chapter 32, “Creating Internet server applications.” Under CORBA, server applications implement objects that can be used remotely by client applications, through well-defined interfaces.

Note COM provides another object-oriented approach to distributed applications. For more information about COM, see Chapter 38, “Overview of COM technologies.” Unlike COM, however, CORBA is a standard that applies to platforms other than Windows. This means you can write CORBA clients or servers using C++Builder that can communicate with CORBA-enabled applications running on other platforms.

The CORBA specification defines how client applications communicate with objects that are implemented on a server. This communication is handled by an Object Request Broker (ORB). C++Builder is tightly integrated with Borland’s VisiBroker ORB (Version 4.5) to make your CORBA development easier.

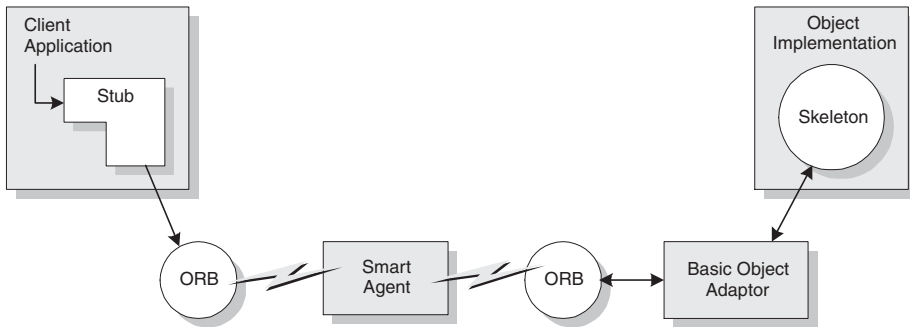
In addition to the basic ORB technology, which enables clients to communicate with objects on server machines, the CORBA standard defines a number of standard services. Because these services use well-defined interfaces, developers can write clients that use these services even if the servers are written by different vendors.

Overview of a CORBA application

If you are already doing object-oriented programming, CORBA makes writing distributed applications easy, because it lets you use remote objects almost as if they were local. This is because the design of a CORBA application is much like any other object-oriented application, except that it includes an additional layer for handling

network communication when an object resides on a different machine. This additional layer is handled by special objects called stubs and skeletons.

Figure 31.1 Structure of a CORBA application



On CORBA clients, the stub acts as a proxy for an object that may be implemented by the same process, another process, or on another (server) machine. The client interacts with the stub as it would with any other object.

However, unlike most objects, the stub handles interface calls by calling into the ORB software that is installed on the client machine. The VisiBroker ORB uses a Smart Agent (osagent) that is running somewhere on the local area network. The Smart Agent is a dynamic, distributed directory service that locates an available server which provides the real object implementation.

On the CORBA server, the ORB software passes interface calls to an automatically-generated skeleton. The skeleton communicates with the ORB software through the Basic Object Adaptor (BOA). Using the BOA, the skeleton registers the object with the Smart Agent, indicates the scope of the object (whether it can be used on remote machines), and indicates when objects are instantiated and ready to respond to clients.

Understanding stubs and skeletons

The basis of a distributed object under CORBA is its interface. The interface is much like a class definition, except that it includes no implementation information. You define interfaces using the CORBA interface definition language (IDL). You can then add the interface definition to your project as an IDL file. For more information about IDL files, stubs, and skeletons, see the *VisiBroker Programmer's Guide*. For more information on working with IDL files in C++Builder, see "Defining object interfaces" on page 31-5.

When you compile the IDL file, C++Builder builds two .cpp files for you. One, the client file, contains the implementation of the stub class. The other, the server file, contains the implementation of the skeleton class. Stubs and skeletons provide the mechanism that allows CORBA applications to marshal interface calls. Marshaling

- Takes an object instance in the server's process and makes it available to code in the client process.

- Transfers the arguments of an interface call as passed from the client and places the arguments into the remote object's process space.

When the client application calls the method of a CORBA object, it pushes arguments onto the stack and calls the stub object. The stub writes the arguments into a marshaling buffer and transmits the call in a structure to the remote object. The server skeleton unpacks this structure, pushes the arguments onto the stack, and calls the object's implementation. In essence, the skeleton recreates the client's call in its own address space.

Using Smart Agent

The Smart Agent (osagent) is a dynamic, distributed directory service that locates an available server that implements an object. If there are multiple servers to choose from, the Smart Agent provides load balancing. It also protects against server failures by attempting to restart the server when a connection fails, or, if necessary, locating a server on another host.

A Smart Agent must be started on at least one host in your local network, where local network refers to a network within which a broadcast message can be sent. The ORB locates a Smart Agent by using a broadcast message. If the network includes multiple Smart Agents, the ORB uses the first one that responds. Once the Smart Agent is located, the ORB uses a point-to-point UDP protocol to communicate with the Smart Agent. The UDP protocol consumes fewer network resources than a TCP connection.

When a network includes multiple Smart Agents, each Smart Agent recognizes a subset of the objects available, and communicates with other Smart Agents to locate objects it can't recognize directly. If one Smart Agent terminates unexpectedly, the objects it keeps track of are automatically reregistered with another available Smart Agent.

For details about configuring and using Smart Agents on your local networks, see the *VisiBroker Installation and Administration Guide*.

Activating server applications

When the server application starts, it informs the ORB (through the Basic Object Adaptor) of the objects that can accept client calls. This code, which initializes the ORB and informs it that the server is up and ready, is added to your application automatically by the wizard you use to start your CORBA server application.

Typically, CORBA server applications are started manually. However, you can use the Object Activation Daemon (OAD) to start your servers or instantiate their objects only when clients need to use them.

To use the OAD, you must register your objects with it. Registering your objects with the OAD stores the association between your objects and the server application that implements them in a database called the Implementation Repository.

Once there is an entry for your object in the Implementation Repository, the OAD simulates your application to the ORB. When a client requests the object, the ORB

contacts the OAD as if it were the server application. The OAD then forwards the client request to the real server, launching the application if necessary.

For details about registering your objects with the OAD, see the *VisiBroker Programmer's Guide*.

Binding interface calls dynamically

Typically, CORBA clients use static binding when calling the interfaces of objects on the server. This approach has many advantages, including faster performance and compile-time type checking. However, there are times when you can't know until runtime what interface you want to use. For these cases, C++Builder lets you bind to interfaces dynamically at runtime.

When using dynamic binding, it helps to register your interfaces with the Interface Repository.

For details on how to use dynamic binding in your CORBA client applications, see the information on the Dynamic Invocation Interface (DII) in the *VisiBroker Programmer's Guide*.

Writing CORBA servers

C++Builder includes several wizards to ease the process of developing CORBA servers. The following steps describe how to create a CORBA server using C++Builder:

- 1 Define your object interfaces. These interfaces define how client applications interact with your server. They also are the basis from which C++Builder creates your stub and skeleton implementations.
- 2 Use the CORBA server wizard to create a new CORBA server application that includes the code to initialize the CORBA BOA and ORB at startup.
- 3 Compile the IDL files that contain your interface definitions into skeleton classes (and stub classes).
- 4 Use the CORBA object wizard to define (and instantiate) your implementation classes.
- 5 Implement your CORBA objects by completing the classes created in step 5.
- 6 If necessary, change your CORBA interfaces and fold those changes into your implementation classes.

In addition to the steps listed above, you may choose to register your IDL files with the Interface Repository and Object Activation Daemon.

Defining object interfaces

CORBA object interfaces are defined using the CORBA Interface Definition Language (IDL). IDL has a syntax similar to C++, so an IDL file looks similar to a C++ header file. The IDL file acts much like a header file also, declaring the interfaces that can be shared, just the way a header file declares the classes that can be shared. However, in CORBA, the interfaces (classes) are shared with other applications rather than (or in addition to) other modules in the same application.

Note The term IDL is used in different contexts to refer to similar, but not identical, interface definition languages. There is a CORBA IDL (defined by OMG), a Microsoft IDL (used for COM) and a DCE IDL. For details on the CORBA IDL, see the online help.

To define a new IDL file from within C++Builder, choose File | New | Other and select CORBA IDL File from the Multitier page of the New Items dialog. This opens the code editor with a blank IDL file and adds the IDL file to your current project.

If you already have an IDL file defining your objects, you can simply add this file to your project by choosing Project | Add to Project, selecting IDL files as a file type, and selecting your existing IDL file.

Using the CORBA Server Wizard

To start a new CORBA Server project, choose File | New | Other and from the Multitier page of the New Items dialog, choose the icon labeled CORBA Server. The CORBA Server wizard lets you indicate whether you want to create a console application or a windows application.

If you are creating a console application, you can specify whether your server will use the VCL classes. If you do not check the VCL checkbox, all generated code can be ported to other platforms.

In addition to choosing the type of application, you can include any existing IDL files to your project, or specify that you want to include a new, blank IDL file. Your server project must eventually include one or more IDL files, which define the interfaces clients use to communicate with your server.

Note If you do not add the IDL files when you start a CORBA server project, you can always add them later by choosing Project | Add to Project (for existing IDL files) or choosing CORBA IDL file from the Multitier page of the New Items dialog (to define a new IDL file).

When you indicate the type of server you want and click OK, the CORBA Server wizard creates a new server project of the specified type, adding the CORBA libraries to the project file and startup code to initialize the ORB (Object Request Broker) and BOA (Basic Object Adaptor).

The automatically generated code declares two variables, orb and boa, that you can use to communicate with the ORB and BOA:

```
CORBA::ORB_var orb = CORBA::ORB_init(argc, argv);
CORBA::BOA_var boa = orb->BOA_init(argc, argv);
```

If you specified a console application, you will also see the following line:

```
boa->impl_is_ready();
```

This call allows your application to receive messages from the BOA, much the way a Windows message loop allows a Windows application to receive messages from Windows. (Windows applications use the Windows message loop for CORBA messages as well).

For more information about the ORB and BOA, see your VisiBroker documentation.

Generating stubs and skeletons from an IDL file

Once you have added the IDL file that describes your CORBA interfaces to a CORBA project, you are ready to generate the stub and skeleton classes that handle the communication between your server and its client applications.

To generate the stub and skeleton classes, simply compile the IDL file. You can compile this file by choosing Project | Compile Unit when the IDL file is displayed in the code editor, or right-click on the IDL file in the project manager and choose Compile. The IDL compiler generates two new files, which appear in the code editor and project manager. These are

- The server file (xxx_s.cpp). This file contains the implementation of the skeleton classes.
- The client file (xxx_c.cpp). This file contains the implementation of the stub classes.

The CORBA page of the project options dialog allows you to influence how the stub and skeleton classes are generated from your IDL file. For example, you can specify that you only want to include the generated server unit in your project, or specify that you want to include Tie classes if your server uses the delegation model (described in “Using the delegation model” on page 31-8). These options affect the compilation of all IDL files included in the current project.

Using the CORBA Object Implementation Wizard

To implement the CORBA objects defined in your IDL file, you must create implementation classes that correspond to every skeleton class. To do this, choose File | New | Other, and from the Multitier page of the New Items dialog, choose CORBA Object Implementation. This brings up the CORBA Object Implementation Wizard.

The CORBA Object Implementation Wizard lists all the interfaces that are defined in the IDL files included in your project. Choose an IDL file and from that IDL file select the interface that you want to implement. Provide a name for the implementation class and specify the unit name for the .h and .cpp files that will contain the object definition and implementation.

In the Wizard, indicate whether your implementation classes should be descendants of the automatically generated skeleton classes, or whether you are using a delegation model (tie classes). If you are using the delegation model (and your server application is VCL-enabled), you can also tell the Wizard to make your implementation class a data module. This allows you to add components to the implementation data module that you want to use when writing the implementation.

You can tell the wizard to add code to instantiate your CORBA objects when the application starts up, so that they are available to receive client requests. If you instantiate objects at start-up, you must supply them with a name so that they can be located by clients. This name is passed to the constructor as a parameter, it is not the name of the variable that references the instance. When client applications bind to your CORBA object, they use this name to indicate the object they want.

When you click OK, the CORBA Object Implementation Wizard generates the definition for your implementation class and generates an implementation where every method has an empty body. It may also add code to instantiate your objects if you indicated that was what you wanted.

Before these changes are added to your project, you can view and edit them. To do so, check the box labeled Show Updates before clicking OK. After you have viewed the changes and edited them, they are added to your project. If you do not choose to view and edit the changes when you exit the wizard, you can edit them later in the code editor.

To implement multiple interfaces, you must invoke the CORBA Object Implementation Wizard several times, once for each interface. However, you can tell the Wizard to generate multiple instances of a single implementation class by providing multiple names.

Instantiating CORBA objects

For every CORBA object, you must decide how it is to be instantiated. There are two choices:

- The object is instantiated when the server application starts. In this case, the object is available to client applications whenever the server is.
- The object is instantiated in response to a client request (a method call on an existing object). In this case, the server application instantiates the object within the implementation of an interface method, and returns a reference to the object from that method.

If the object is instantiated when the application starts, check the box labeled Instantiate in main in the CORBA Object Wizard. The wizard adds the code to instantiate your implementation class directly to your project's source file. You can see this code by choosing Project | View Source. After the lines that the CORBA Server Wizard inserted to call ORB_init and BOA_init, and before the call to impl_is_ready(), you will find the code that instantiates your implementation class and inform the boa that the object can take requests:

```
MyObjImpl MyObject_TheObject("TheObject"); // create the object instance
boa->obj_is_ready(&MyObject_TheObject); // inform the boa it can take requests
```

You can add initialization code between the constructor and the call to `obj_is_ready`:

```
MyObjImpl MyObject_TheObject("TheObject"); // create the object instance
MyObject_TheObject.Initialize(50000);
boa->obj_is_ready(&MyObject_TheObject); // inform the boa it can take requests
```

Note If you are using tie classes (see below), there will also be a call to instantiate the tie class.

If you do not instantiate your objects at startup, then can call the constructor (and, if necessary, the constructor for the tie class) from a method and return a reference to the object instance. It is good practice to add a call to the BOA's `obj_is_ready` method as well.

Objects that accept calls from CORBA clients must be given a name, or the clients can't find them. Transient objects (objects created in response to client calls and returned as references) do not need to be given names.

Using the delegation model

By default, CORBA objects are descendants of skeleton classes that are created when you compile an IDL file. This means that the object classes inherit all the code that marshals interface calls and interacts with the BOA. However, if you want to expose objects in your CORBA server that have already been written, that descend from VCL classes (which do not permit multiple inheritance), or that you want to share with other, non-CORBA applications, it is possible to use server classes that have no dependence on CORBA or the generated server files.

To expose objects that do not descend from a skeleton class, your application must use a delegation model. A delegation model is one where the instances of the skeleton classes do not directly implement the CORBA objects, but rather pass interface class on to a completely separate implementation class. That is, the implementation class is not a descendant of the skeleton, but rather, is called by the skeleton.

To use the delegation model, you must generate tie classes when you compile the IDL files. Before compiling the IDL files, choose **Project | Options**, and on the IDL page of the project options dialog, check the box for generating tie classes.

When the IDL file is compiled, the server file contains a special tie class in addition to the skeleton class. This tie class acts as a proxy for your implementation class, and for its method implementations, it delegates (passes the call on) to your implementation class.

When you use the CORBA Object Wizard to define your implementation class, choose the **Delegation (Tie)** radio button, so that the implementation class is not created as a descendant of the skeleton class. The CORBA Object Wizard adds a comment next to the class declaration. Do not remove this comment: it is used by C++Builder to identify the class as a CORBA implementation class.

In addition to changing the way the CORBA Object Wizard generates the implementation class, choosing **Tie** also affects any automatically generated code that instantiates the object.

When your server application instantiates the implementation class, it must immediately afterward instantiate the associated tie class, passing the implementation class instance as an argument to the constructor. If your implementation class is instantiated at start-up, the code to do this is generated automatically by the CORBA Object Wizard. However, if you are instantiating your CORBA object dynamically at runtime, you must add this code yourself. For example:

```
MyObjImpl myobj(); // instantiate implementation object
_tie_MyObj<MyObjImpl> tieobj(myobj, "InstanceName");
```

Viewing and editing changes

Before adding any changes to your project, it is a good idea to preview and edit those changes. This serves two purposes:

- You are aware of all changes made to your project. No automatically generated code will appear that creates behavior you don't know about.
- You can customize those changes without having to search through your implementation files. This is especially helpful if you are adding changes to a file that already has a lot of code.

To view and edit changes, use the Project Updates dialog box. This dialog box appears when you check Show Updates in any of the CORBA wizards or when you choose Edit | CORBA Refresh.

The Project Updates dialog lists the changes in a pane on the left. You can reject any change by unchecking the box that appears to its left. If you reject a change, it is not committed to your project, and you must write the analogous code yourself.

Note The changes are listed in the order in which they are made. Removing one change may remove other changes that depend on that change. For example, unchecking the creation of a new file will uncheck the changes that represent code added to that file.

As you scroll through the list of changes, you will see the code that is added in the code pane. The file that is changed to contain that code is listed at the bottom of the code pane.

You can edit the code pane if you want to customize a change. For example, you may want to add an additional ancestor class to your implementation class so that inherits the behavior of one of your existing classes. You can also add code to implement methods, filling in the automatically generated empty method bodies.

When you have finished viewing and editing the automatically generated changes, click OK, and they are added to your project, including any edits you made. If you do not want to accept any of the changes, cancel the dialog.

Implementing CORBA Objects

If you are not using a delegation model, the implementation class is a descendant of the skeleton class that was generated when you compiled the IDL file. Otherwise, there are no explicit ancestors to your implementation classes. You can change this

class definition so that it inherits from another class in your server application, but do not remove any existing inheritance from a skeleton class.

Consider the following declaration from an IDL file, `account.idl`:

```
interface Account {
    float balance();
};
```

When the IDL file is compiled (without tie classes), the generated server header (`account_s.hh`) includes the declaration of a skeleton class with pure virtual methods for every method in your interface.

The CORBA Object Wizard creates an implementation unit that derives an implementation class from the skeleton class (`_sk_Account`). Its header file looks like the following:

```
#ifndef Interface1ServerH
#define Interface1ServerH
#include "account_s.hh"
//-----
class AccountImpl: public _sk_Account
{
    protected:
    public:
        AccountImpl(const char *object_name=NULL);
        CORBA::float balance();
};

#endif
```

You may want to add additional data members or methods to this class definition that you need for your implementation. For example:

```
#ifndef Interface1ServerH
#define Interface1ServerH
#include "account_s.hh"
//-----
class AccountImpl: public _sk_Account
{
    protected:
        CORBA::float _bal;
    public:
        void Initialize(CORBA::float startbal); // not available to clients
        AccountImpl(const char *object_name=NULL);
        CORBA::float balance();
};

#endif
```

These additional methods and properties are available from the server application but are not exposed to clients.

In the generated .cpp file, fill in the body of the implementation class so that you have a working CORBA object:

```
AccountImpl::AccountImpl(const char *object_name):
    _sk_Account(object_name)
{
}

CORBA::float AccountImpl::balance()
{
    return _bal;
};

void Initialize(CORBA::float startbal) // not available to clients
{
    _bal = startbal;
}
```

Note From your CORBA server, you can write code that interacts with the BOA. For example, using the BOA, you can temporarily hide, or deactivate, server objects and later reactivate them. See the *VisiBroker Programmer's Guide* for details on how to write code that interacts with the BOA.

Guarding against thread conflicts

By default, CORBA applications are multi-threaded. This means that you must guard against thread conflicts when implementing your CORBA objects.

Unless you specify otherwise, the BOA pools client threads, meaning that client requests can use any available thread. You can, however, ensure that each client always uses the same thread by starting the BOA with a per-session threading policy. When each client always uses the same thread, you can store persistent client information in thread variables. See the *VisiBroker Programmer's Guide* for information about how to set the threading policy when you start the BOA.

The VisiBroker library includes classes that can help you guard your code against thread conflicts. These are defined in the header file `vthread.h`, which is installed in the VisiBroker include directory. The VisiBroker thread support classes include a mutex (`VisMutex`), a condition variable (`VisCondition`), and a read/write lock that works like the VCL's multi-read exclusive-write synchronizer (`VisRWLock`). One advantage to using these classes is that they are portable across all platforms supported by VisiBroker.

For example, you can protect instance data by adding a `VisMutex` field to your implementation class:

```
class A {
    VisMutex _mtx;
    ...
}
```

Then, when you need to synchronize access to instance data, you can lock the mutex within any method that accesses the instance data:

```
void A::AccessSharedMemory(...)
{
    VISMutex_var lock(_mtx); // acquires a lock that is released on exit
    // add code here to access the instance data
}
```

Note that the mutex is released when `AccessSharedMemory` completes execution, even if an exception is thrown within the body of the method.

If you are using the VCL in your server application, C++Builder includes a number of classes that can help you guard against thread conflicts. See Chapter 11, “Writing multi-threaded applications” for more information about them.

Changing CORBA interfaces

If you make changes to the interfaces in your IDL files after you have generated implementation classes for them using the CORBA Object Wizard, C++Builder lets you automatically update your server project to reflect those changes without losing the work you have already invested in writing the implementation classes.

After you have changed the IDL files, choose **Edit | CORBA Refresh**. This command recompiles your IDL files so that the automatically generated client and server files reflect the new interface definitions and current compiler options. If the IDL files successfully compile, you can preview and edit the changes that C++Builder makes, using the **Project Updates** dialog.

Note If C++Builder does not find the interface that corresponds to an existing implementation class, it asks if you have renamed the interface. If you say yes, you will be prompted to indicate how your interfaces were renamed, so that the implementation classes can be correctly matched to interfaces.

When you use the **CORBA Refresh** command, new methods are added to your implementation classes and declarations are updated to reflect changes to existing methods and attributes. However, certain changes do not lead to updates. In particular, if you delete a method or attribute, the code for it is not deleted. Instead, deleted methods remain a part of the class, but are no longer available to CORBA clients. Similarly, if you rename a method or attribute, this is treated like a deletion and an addition, so the old method or attribute remains, and code is generated for a new method or attribute.

Registering server interfaces

While it is not necessary to register your server interfaces if you are only using static binding of client calls into your server objects, registering your interfaces is recommended. There are two utilities with which you can register your interfaces:

- **The Interface Repository.** By registering with the Interface Repository, clients can programmatically obtain information about your interfaces when they use the dynamic invocation interface (DII). For more information about using DII, see

“Using the dynamic invocation interface” on page 31-15. Registering with the Interface Repository is also a convenient way to allow other developers to view your interfaces when they write client applications.

You can register your interfaces with the interface repository by choosing Tools | IDL Repository.

- **The Object Activation Daemon.** By registering with the Object Activation Daemon (OAD), your server need not be launched or your objects instantiated until they are needed by clients. This conserves resources on your server system.

Writing CORBA clients

When you write a CORBA client, the first step is to ensure that the client application can talk to the ORB software on the client machine. To do this, use the CORBA Client wizard. Choose File | New | Other, and from the Multitier page of the New Items dialog, choose the icon labeled CORBA Client. The CORBA Client wizard lets you indicate whether you want to create a console application or a windows application.

As with a CORBA server application, you can specify whether your CORBA client application will use the VCL classes. If you do not check the VCL checkbox, all generated code can be ported to other platforms.

In the CORBA Client wizard, include any existing IDL files that define the interfaces of server objects you want to use. While it is possible to create a CORBA client application without including any IDL files (by explicitly adding a generated client unit to the project), this is not the preferred approach. When the project includes the IDL files for server interfaces, you can use the Use CORBA Object wizard to bind to objects on the server.

Note If you do not add the IDL files when you start a CORBA client project, you can always add them later by choosing Project | Add to Project.

The CORBA Client wizard always creates a new client project of the specified type, adding the CORBA libraries to the project file and adds the following startup code to initialize the ORB (Object Request Broker).

```
CORBA::ORB_var orb = CORBA::ORB_init(argc, argv);
```

If you intend to pass callback interfaces to the CORBA server, you will need to initialize the BOA (Basic Object Adaptor) in your client application as well. To do this, simply check the appropriate box in the wizard.

Next, proceed with writing your application in the same way you write any other application in C++Builder. However, when you want to use objects that are defined in the server application, you do not work directly with an object instance. Instead, you obtain a reference to a CORBA object and work with that. You can obtain the CORBA object reference in one of two ways, depending on whether you want to use static or dynamic binding.

To use static binding, you can invoke the Use CORBA Object wizard by choosing Edit | Use CORBA Object. Using static binding is faster than using dynamic binding,

and provides additional benefits such as compile-time type checking and code-completion.

However, there are times when you do not know until runtime what object or interface you want to use. For these cases, you can use dynamic binding. Dynamic binding uses a generic CORBA object, which passes requests to the server using a special CORBA type called an Any.

Using stubs

Stub classes are generated automatically when you Compile the IDL file. They are defined in the generated client files, which have names of the form `BaseName_c.cpp` and `BaseName_c.hh`.

Note You can tell C++Builder to build only the client (stub) files and not the server files using the CORBA page of the Project Options dialog.

When writing a CORBA client, you do not edit the code in the generated client files. Instead, instantiate the stub classes where they are used. To do this, choose **Edit | Use CORBA Object** to bring up the Use CORBA Object wizard.

In the Use CORBA Object wizard, specify the IDL file that contains the interface you want to access, and select the interface you will use. If you want to bind only to a specific named instance of the CORBA object, you can optionally supply a name for the CORBA Object.

The Use CORBA Object wizard lets you choose from several mechanisms for binding to a server object.

- If your client application is a VCL-enabled Windows application, it can create a property on your application's form that holds an instance of your CORBA object's stub class. You can then use this property like an instance of the CORBA server object.
- If you are creating a console application, the wizard can instantiate the stub class as a variable in your application's `main()` function. Similarly, it can instantiate the stub class as a variable in the `WinMain()` function if you are creating a Windows application.
- Whether you are creating a Windows application or a console application, the wizard can add a property to an existing class in any unit you specify, or start a new class for you that includes a property for the stub instance.

No matter which mechanism you choose, the wizard adds any necessary header files and generates code that binds a stub variable or property to the CORBA server object. For example, the following code instantiates the stub for a server interface named `MyServerObj` in the `main()` function of a console application:

```
#include <corba.h>
#include <condefs.h>
#include "MyServerObj_c.hh"
#pragma argsused
int main(int argc, char* argv[])
{
```



```

try
{
    // Initialize the ORB
    CORBA::ORB_var orb = CORBA::ORB_init(argc, argv);
    MyServerObj_var TheObject = MyServerObj::_bind("InstanceName");
}
catch(const CORBA::Exception& e)
{
    cerr << e << endl;
    return(1);
}
return 0;
}

```

Warning If you copy the code that binds to a sever object to another portion of your application, be sure that the stub variable is a local variable or the data member of a class. Global stub variables are tricky because they may not release their CORBA reference count before the orb variable is released. If you must use a global stub variable, be sure to unbind by setting the variable to NULL before the orb is released.

If your client application includes only the generated client unit (BaseName_c), you can't use the CORBA Object wizard to bind to server objects. Instead, you must generate this code yourself. You may also want to write your own bind code to take advantage of VisiBroker's bind options. (For example, you may want to specify a specific server, disable the feature that automatically tries to rebind to a server if the CORBA connection is lost, and so on.) For more information about writing code that binds to server objects, see the VisiBroker documentation.

Using the dynamic invocation interface

The dynamic invocation interface (DII) allows client applications to call server objects without using a stub class that explicitly marshals interface calls. Because DII must encode all type information before the client sends a request and then decode that information on the server, it is slower than using a stub class.

To use DII in a client application, you must

- 1 Create a generic CORBA object, which works like a stub object, except that its implementation does not include the code for marshaling requests. You must supply the repository ID of the object to indicate what object should receive DII requests:

```

CORBA::Object_var diiObj;
try
{
    diiObj = orb->bind("IDL:ServerObj:1.0");
} catch (const CORBA::Exception& E)
{
    // handle the bind exception.
}

```

- 2 Next, use the generic CORBA object to create a request object for a specific method of the object represented by the generic CORBA object:

```
CORBA::Request_var req = diiObj->_request("methodName");
```

- 3 Next, add any arguments that the method takes. The arguments are added to a list on the request of type CORBA::NVList_ptr. Each argument is of the CORBA::Any type, which is similar to a Variant. The CORBA::Any type is required because a named value list (CORBA::NVList) must handle any argument list, which may include values of any type.

```
CORBA::Any arg;
arg <<= (const char *)"argvalue";
CORBA::NVList_ptr arguments = req->arguments();
arguments->add_value("arg1", arg, CORBA::ARG_IN);
```

- 4 Now the request can be invoked:

```
req->invoke();
```

- 5 Finally, check for errors, and retrieve the result:

```
if (req->env()->exception())
    // handle exception
else
{
    CORBA::Any_ptr pRetVal = req->result()->value();
    CORBA::float val;
    Any_ptr >>= val;
}
```

For more details on using the dynamic invocation interface, see the *VisiBroker Programmer's Guide*.

Testing CORBA servers

C++Builder includes a CORBATest demo, that builds a universal client which allows you to test your server interfaces. CORBATest records and runs scripts that exercise the objects in your CORBA server application.

Note If you plan to use CORBATest to test many servers, you may find it convenient to install this application on your Tools menu. To do this, Choose Tools | Configure Tools, and add CorbaTest.exe using the Tools Options dialog box.

Setting up the testing tool

Before you can use CORBATest to test a CORBA application, the interface for your server must be registered with a running Interface Repository. To do this:

- 1 Make sure that the VisiBroker SmartAgent is running by choosing Tools | VisiBroker SmartAgent if the menu item is not checked.
- 2 Run the server application you wish to test.

- 3 Choose Tools | IDL Repository to add the .idl files for your server application to the Interface Repository. While you can use any running interface repository, you will probably want to use a dedicated testing repository so that your testing does not interfere with other uses of the interface repository. To start a dedicated testing repository, click the Add IREP button in the Update IDL Repository dialog that appears when you choose Tools | IDL Repository.
- 4 Start the testing tool by running CORBATest.exe, which can be built from the demo code in the corbatest directory (..\examples\corba\corbatest).

Recording and running test scripts

A test script is simply a set CORBA object methods to be called, along with any parameters to be passed to those methods. A single script can contain several calls to the same method (for example, to test the method with different parameter values).

Build up a script by adding commands to the commands pane in the upper middle pane of the testing tool. To add a command

- 1 If the object whose method you want to call does not have a tabbed page in the objects pane (upper left), choose Edit | Add Object. The New Objects dialog appears, where you can select an object by its repository ID. The repository ID for an object is a string of the form "IDL:MyInterface1:1.0", where "MyInterface" is the interface name as declared in the .idl file. When you select an object, assign it a name.
- 2 In the upper left pane, select the tab for the object whose method you want to add. Each tab is labeled with an object name, which you assign when you add the object (step 1). Each tabbed page lists the operations (methods) of the object that can be tested.
- 3 Add commands to the script by dragging an operation from the object pane into the commands pane in the upper middle of the testing tool.
- 4 When you select a method in the commands pane, its input parameters appear in the details pane at the upper right. Supply values for the input parameters. The status bar indicates the type of value required for the current input parameter.

Repeat these steps to add as many commands as you like for as many objects as you like. When your script contains all the commands you want, choose Edit | Save Script As (or click the Save Script button) to save your script and give it a name. You can then begin a new script by choosing File | New Script (or clicking the New Script button).

Note You can remove objects or commands that you have added to a script by selecting the object or command and choosing Edit | Remove Object or Edit | Remove Command.

You can run your script by choosing Run | Run, or clicking the Run Script button. When the script is run, the testing tool uses the dynamic invocation interface to call the CORBA server, passing the indicated parameter values. The return value (if any) and any return parameters for all methods are then displayed in the results section of the testing tool (or in a results file for automated testing).

The results section displays the results of all commands in the script on the results tab. These same results also appear on the other pages of the results sections, divided into categories so that you can more easily locate the information you want. The other pages of the results section include return values, input parameter values, output parameter values, and errors that occurred when running the script.

Creating Internet server applications

Web server applications extend the functionality and capability of existing Web servers. A Web server application receives HTTP request messages from the Web server, performs any actions requested in those messages, and formulates responses that it passes back to the Web server. Many operations that you can perform with a C++Builder application can be incorporated into a Web server application.

C++Builder provides two different architectures for developing Web server applications: Web Broker and WebSnap. Although these two architectures are different, WebSnap and Web Broker have many common elements. The WebSnap architecture acts as a superset of Web Broker. It provides additional components and new features like the Preview tab, which allows the content of a page to be displayed without the developer having to run the application. Applications developed with WebSnap can include Web Broker components, whereas applications developed with Web Broker cannot include WebSnap components.

This chapter describes the features of the Web Broker and WebSnap technologies and provides general information on Internet-based client/server applications.

About Web Broker and WebSnap

Part of the function of any application is to make data accessible to the user. In a standard C++Builder application you accomplish this by creating traditional front end elements, like dialogs and scrolling windows. Developers can specify the exact layout of these objects using familiar C++Builder form design tools. Web server applications must be designed differently, however. All information passed to users must be in the form of HTML pages which are transferred through HTTP. Pages are generally interpreted on the client machine by a Web browser application, which displays the pages in a form appropriate for the user's particular system in its present state.

The first step in building a Web server application is choosing which architecture you want to use, Web Broker or WebSnap. Both approaches provide many of the same features, including

- Support for CGI and Apache DSO Web server application types. These are described in “Types of Web server applications” on page 32-6.
- Multithreading support so that incoming client requests are handled on separate threads.
- Caching of Web modules for quicker responses.
- Cross-platform development. You can easily port your Web server application between the Windows and Linux operating systems. Your source code will compile on either platform.

Both the Web Broker and WebSnap components handle all of the mechanics of page transfer. WebSnap uses Web Broker as its foundation, so it incorporates all of the functionality of Web Broker’s architecture. WebSnap offers a much more powerful set of tools for generating pages, however. Also, WebSnap applications allow you to use server-side scripting to help generate pages at runtime. Web Broker does not have this scripting capability. The tools offered in Web Broker are not nearly as complete as those in WebSnap, and are much less intuitive. If you are developing a new Web server application, WebSnap is probably a better choice of architecture than Web Broker.

The major differences between these two approaches are outlined in the following table:

Table 32.1 Web Broker versus WebSnap

| Web Broker | WebSnap |
|--|--|
| Backward compatible | Although WebSnap applications can use any Web Broker components that produce content, the Web modules and dispatcher that contain these are new. |
| Only one Web module allowed in an application. | Multiple Web modules can partition the application into units, allowing multiple developers to work on the same project with fewer conflicts. |
| Only one Web dispatcher allowed in the application. | Multiple, special-purpose dispatchers handle different types of requests. |
| Specialized components for creating content include page producers, InternetExpress components, and Web Services components. | Supports all the content producers that can appear in Web Broker applications, plus many others designed to let you quickly build complex data-driven Web pages. |
| No scripting support. | Support for server-side scripting allows HTML generation logic to be separated from the business logic. |
| No built-in support for named pages. | Named pages can be automatically retrieved by a page dispatcher and addressed from server-side scripts. |

Table 32.1 Web Broker versus WebSnap (continued)

| Web Broker | WebSnap |
|---|--|
| No session support. | Sessions store information about an end user that is needed for a short period of time. This can be used for such tasks as login/logout support. |
| Every request must be explicitly handled, using either an action item or an auto-dispatching component. | Dispatch components automatically respond to a variety of requests. |
| Only a few specialized components provide previews of the content they produce. Most development is not visual. | WebSnaplets you build Web pages more visually and view the results at design time. Previews are available for all components. |

For more information on Web Broker, see Chapter 33, “Using Web Broker.” For more information on WebSnap, see Chapter 34, “Creating Web Server applications using WebSnap.”

Terminology and standards

Many of the protocols that control activity on the Internet are defined in Request for Comment (RFC) documents that are created, updated, and maintained by the Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF), the protocol engineering and development arm of the Internet. There are several important RFCs that you will find useful when writing Internet applications:

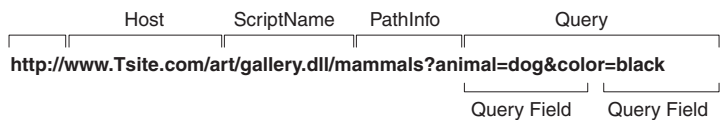
- RFC822, “Standard for the format of ARPA Internet text messages,” describes the structure and content of message headers.
- RFC1521, “MIME (Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions) Part One: Mechanisms for Specifying and Describing the Format of Internet Message Bodies,” describes the method used to encapsulate and transport multipart and multiformat messages.
- RFC1945, “Hypertext Transfer Protocol — HTTP/1.0,” describes a transfer mechanism used to distribute collaborative hypermedia documents.

The IETF maintains a library of the RFCs on their Web site, www.ietf.cnri.reston.va.us

Parts of a Uniform Resource Locator

The Uniform Resource Locator (URL) is a complete description of the location of a resource that is available over the net. It is composed of several parts that may be accessed by an application. These parts are illustrated in Figure 32.1:

Figure 32.1 Parts of a Uniform Resource Locator



The first portion (not technically part of the URL) identifies the protocol (http). This portion can specify other protocols such as https (secure http), ftp, and so on.

The Host portion identifies the machine that runs the Web server and Web server application. Although it is not shown in the preceding picture, this portion can override the port that receives messages. Usually, there is no need to specify a port, because the port number is implied by the protocol.

The ScriptName portion specifies the name of the Web server application. This is the application to which the Web server passes messages.

Following the script name is the pathinfo. This identifies the destination of the message within the Web server application. Path info values may refer to directories on the host machine, the names of components that respond to specific messages, or any other mechanism the Web server application uses to divide the processing of incoming messages.

The Query portion contains a set of named values. These values and their names are defined by the Web server application.

URI vs. URL

The URL is a subset of the Uniform Resource Identifier (URI) defined in the HTTP standard, RFC1945. Web server applications frequently produce content from many sources where the final result does not reside in a particular location, but is created as necessary. URIs can describe resources that are not location-specific.

HTTP request header information

HTTP request messages contain many headers that describe information about the client, the target of the request, the way the request should be handled, and any content sent with the request. Each header is identified by a name, such as “Host” followed by a string value. For example, consider the following HTTP request:

```
GET /art/gallery.dll/animals?animal=dog&color=black HTTP/1.0
Connection: Keep-Alive
User-Agent: Mozilla/3.0b4Gold (WinNT; I)
Host: www.TSite.com:1024
Accept: image/gif, image/x-xbitmap, image/jpeg, image/pjpeg, */*
```

The first line identifies the request as a GET. A GET request message asks the Web server application to return the content associated with the URI that follows the word GET (in this case /art/gallery.dll/animals?animal=dog&color=black). The last part of the first line indicates that the client is using the HTTP 1.0 standard.

The second line is the Connection header, and indicates that the connection should not be closed once the request is serviced. The third line is the User-Agent header, and provides information about the program generating the request. The next line is the Host header, and provides the Host name and port on the server that is contacted to form the connection. The final line is the Accept header, which lists the media types the client can accept as valid responses.

HTTP server activity

The client/server nature of Web browsers is deceptively simple. To most users, retrieving information on the World Wide Web is a simple procedure: click on a link, and the information appears on the screen. More knowledgeable users have some understanding of the nature of HTML syntax and the client/server nature of the protocols used. This is usually sufficient for the production of simple, page-oriented Web site content. Authors of more complex Web pages have a wide variety of options to automate the collection and presentation of information using HTML.

Before building a Web server application, it is useful to understand how the client issues a request and how the server responds to client requests.

Composing client requests

When an HTML hypertext link is selected (or the user otherwise specifies a URL), the browser collects information about the protocol, the specified domain, the path to the information, the date and time, the operating environment, the browser itself, and other content information. It then composes a request.

For example, to display a page of images based on criteria selected by clicking buttons on a form, the client might construct this URL:

```
http://www.TSite.com/art/gallery.dll/animals?animal=dog&color=black
```

which specifies an HTTP server in the www.TSite.com domain. The client contacts www.TSite.com, connects to the HTTP server, and passes it a request. The request might look something like this:

```
GET /art/gallery.dll/animals?animal=dog&color=black HTTP/1.0
Connection: Keep-Alive
User-Agent: Mozilla/3.0b4Gold (WinNT; I)
Host: www.TSite.com:1024
Accept: image/gif, image/x-xbitmap, image/jpeg, image/pjpeg, */*
```

Serving client requests

The Web server receives a client request and can perform any number of actions, based on its configuration. If the server is configured to recognize the /gallery.dll portion of the request as a program, it passes information about the request to that program. The way information about the request is passed to the program depends on the type of Web server application:

- If the program is a Common Gateway Interface (CGI) program, the server passes the information contained in the request directly to the CGI program. The server waits while the program executes. When the CGI program exits, it passes the content directly back to the server.
- If the program is WinCGI, the server opens a file and writes out the request information. It then executes the Win-CGI program, passing the location of the file containing the client information and the location of a file that the Win-CGI

program should use to create content. The server waits while the program executes. When the program exits, the server reads the data from the content file written by the Win-CGI program.

- If the program is a dynamic-link library (DLL), the server loads the DLL (if necessary) and passes the information contained in the request to the DLL as a structure. The server waits while the program executes. When the DLL exits, it passes the content directly back to the server.

In all cases, the program acts on the request of and performs actions specified by the programmer: accessing databases, doing simple table lookups or calculations, constructing or selecting HTML documents, and so on.

Responding to client requests

When a Web server application finishes with a client request, it constructs a page of HTML code or other MIME content, and passes it back (via the server) to the client for display. The way the response is sent also differs based on the type of program:

- When a Win-CGI script finishes it constructs a page of HTML, writes it to a file, writes any response information to another file, and passes the locations of both files back to the server. The server opens both files and passes the HTML page back to the client.
- When a DLL finishes, it passes the HTML page and any response information directly back to the server, which passes them back to the client.

Creating a Web server application as a DLL reduces system load and resource use by reducing the number of processes and disk accesses necessary to service an individual request.

Types of Web server applications

Whether you use Web Broker or WebSnap, you can create five standard types of Web server applications. In addition, you can create a Web Application Debugger executable, which integrates the Web server into your application so that you can debug your application logic. The Web Application Debugger executable is intended only for debugging. When you deploy your application, you should migrate to one of the other five types.

ISAPI and NSAPI

An ISAPI or NSAPI Web server application is a DLL that is loaded by the Web server. Client request information is passed to the DLL as a structure and evaluated by the ISAPI/NSAPI application, which creates appropriate request and response objects. Each request message is automatically handled in a separate execution thread.

CGI stand-alone

A CGI stand-alone Web server application is a console application that receives client request information on standard input and passes the results back to the server on standard output. This data is evaluated by the CGI application, which creates appropriate request and response objects. Each request message is handled by a separate instance of the application.

Win-CGI stand-alone

A Win-CGI stand-alone Web server application is a Windows application that receives client request information from a configuration settings (INI) file written by the server and writes the results to a file that the server passes back to the client. The INI file is evaluated by the Web server application, which creates appropriate request and response objects. Each request message is handled by a separate instance of the application.

Apache

An Apache Web server application is a DLL that is loaded by the Web server. Client request information is passed to the DLL as a structure and evaluated by the Apache Web server application, which creates appropriate request and response objects. Each request message is automatically handled in a separate execution thread.

When you deploy your Apache Web server application, you will need to specify some application-specific information in the Apache configuration files. The default module name is the project name with `_module` appended to the end. For example, a project named `Project1` would have `Project1_module` as its module name. Similarly, the default content type is the project name with `-content` appended, and the default handler type is the project name with `-handler` appended.

These definitions can be changed in the project (`.bpr`) file when necessary. For example, when you create your project a default module name is stored in the project file. Here is a common example:

```
extern "C"
{
    Httpd::module __declspec(dllexport) Project1_module;
}
```

Note When you rename the project during the save process, that name isn't changed automatically. Whenever you rename your project, you must change the module name in your project file to match your project name. The content and handler definitions should change automatically once the module name is changed.

For information on using module, content, and handler definitions in your Apache configuration files, see the documentation on the Apache Web site <http://apache.org>.

Web App Debugger

The server types mentioned above have their advantages and disadvantages for production environments, but none of them is well-suited for debugging. Deploying your application and configuring the debugger can make Web server application debugging far more tedious than debugging other application types.

Fortunately, Web server application debugging doesn't need to be that complicated. C++Builder includes a Web App Debugger which makes debugging simple. The Web App Debugger acts like a Web server on your development machine. If you build your Web server application as a Web App Debugger executable, deployment happens automatically during the build process. To debug your application, start it using Run | Run. Next, select Tools | Web App Debugger, click the default URL and select your application in the Web browser which appears. Your application will launch in the browser window, and you can use the IDE to set breakpoints and obtain debugging information.

When your application is ready to be tested or deployed in a production environment, you can convert your Web App Debugger project to one of the other target types using the steps given below.

Note When you create a Web App Debugger project, you will need to provide a CoClass Name for your project. This is simply a name used by the Web App Debugger to refer to your application. Most developers use the application's name as the CoClass Name.

Converting Web server application target types

One powerful feature of Web Broker and WebSnap is that they offer several different target server types. C++Builder allows you to easily convert from one target type to another.

Because Web Broker and WebSnap have slightly different design philosophies, you must use a different conversion method for each architecture. To convert your Web Broker application target type, use the following steps:

- 1 Right-click the Web module and choose Add To Repository.
- 2 In the Add To Repository dialog box, give your Web module a title, text description, Repository page (probably Data Modules), author name, and icon.
- 3 Choose OK to save your Web module as a template.
- 4 From the main menu, choose File | New and select Web Server Application. In the New Web Server Application dialog box, choose the appropriate target type.
- 5 Delete the automatically generated Web module.
- 6 From the main menu, choose File | New and select the template you saved in step 3. This will be on the page you specified in step 2.

To convert a WebSnap application's target type:

- 1 Open your project in the IDE.
- 2 Display the Project Manager using View | Project Manager. Expand your project so all of its units are visible.
- 3 In the Project Manager, click the New button to create a new Web server application project. Double-click the WebSnap Application item in the WebSnap tab. Select the appropriate options for your project, including the server type you want to use, then click OK.

- 4 Expand the new project in the Project Manager. Select any files appearing there and delete them.
- 5 One at a time, select each file in your project (except for the form file in a Web App Debugger project) and drag it to the new project. When a dialog appears asking if you want to add that file to your new project, click Yes.

Debugging server applications

Debugging Web server applications presents some unique problems, because they run in response to messages from a Web server. You can not simply launch your application from the IDE, because that leaves the Web server out of the loop, and your application will not find the request message it is expecting.

The following topics describe techniques you can use to debug Web server applications.

Using the Web Application Debugger

The Web Application Debugger provides an easy way to monitor HTTP requests, responses, and response times. The Web Application Debugger takes the place of the Web server. Once you have debugged your application, you can convert it to one of the supported types of Web application and install it with a commercial Web server.

To use the Web Application Debugger, you must first create your Web application as a Web Application Debugger executable. Whether you are using Web Broker or WebSnap, the wizard that creates your Web server application includes this as an option when you first begin the application. This creates a Web server application that is also a COM server.

For information on how to write this Web server application using Web Broker, see Chapter 33, “Using Web Broker.” For more information on using WebSnap, see Chapter 34, “Creating Web Server applications using WebSnap.”

Launching your application with the Web Application Debugger

Once you have developed your Web server application, you can run and debug it as follows:

- 1 With your project loaded in the IDE, set any breakpoints so that you can debug your application just like any other executable.
- 2 Choose Run | Run. This displays the console window of the COM server that is your Web server application. The first time you run your application, it registers your COM server so that the Web App debugger can access it.
- 3 Select Tools | Web App Debugger.
- 4 Click the Start button. This displays the ServerInfo page in your default Browser.

- 5 The ServerInfo page provides a drop-down list of all registered Web Application Debugger executables. Select your application from the drop-down list. If you do not find your application in this drop-down list, try running your application as an executable. Your application must be run once so that it can register itself. If you still do not find your application in the drop-down list, try refreshing the Web page. (Sometimes the Web browser caches this page, preventing you from seeing the most recent changes.)
- 6 Once you have selected your application in the drop-down list, press the Go button. This launches your application in the Web Application Debugger, which provides you with details on request and response messages that pass between your application and the Web Application Debugger.

Converting your application to another type of Web server application

When you have finished debugging your Web server application with the Web Application Debugger, you will need to convert it to another type that can be installed on a commercial Web server. To learn more about converting your application, see “Converting Web server application target types” on page 32-8.

Debugging Web applications that are DLLs

ISAPI, NSAPI, and Apache applications are actually DLLs that contain predefined entry points. The Web server passes request messages to the application by making calls to these entry points. Because these applications are DLLs, you can debug them by setting your application’s run parameters to launch the server.

To set up your application’s run parameters, choose Run | Parameters and set the Host Application and Run Parameters to specify the executable for the Web server and any parameters it requires when you launch it. For details about these values on your Web server, see the documentation provided by your Web server vendor.

Note Some Web Servers require additional changes before you have the rights to launch the Host Application in this way. See your Web server vendor for details.

Tip If you are using Windows 2000 with IIS 5, details on all of the changes you need to make to set up your rights properly are described at the following Web site:

<http://community.borland.com/article/0,1410,23024,00.html>

Once you have set the Host Application and Run Parameters, you can set up your breakpoints so that when the server passes a request message to your DLL, you hit one of your breakpoints, and can debug normally.

Note Before launching the Web server using your application’s run parameters, make sure that the server is not already running.

User rights necessary for DLL debugging

Under Windows, you must have the correct user rights to debug a DLL. You can obtain these rights as follows:

- 1** In the Administrative Tools portion of the Control Panel, click on Local Security Policy. Expand Local Policies and double-click User Rights Assignment. Double-click Act as part of the operating system in the right-hand panel.
- 2** Select Add to add a user to the list. Add your current user.
- 3** Reboot so the changes take effect.

Using Web Broker

Web Broker components (located on the Internet tab of the component palette) enable you to create event handlers that are associated with a specific Uniform Resource Identifier (URI). When processing is complete, You can programmatically construct HTML or XML documents and transfer them to the client. You can use Web Broker components for cross-platform application development.

Frequently, the content of Web pages is drawn from databases. You can use Internet components to automatically manage connections to databases, allowing a single DLL to handle numerous simultaneous, thread-safe database connections.

The following sections in this chapter explain how you use the Web Broker components to create a Web server application.

Creating Web server applications with Web Broker

To create a new Web server application using the Web Broker architecture:

- 1 Select File | New | Other.
- 2 In the New Items dialog box, select the New tab and choose Web Server Application.
- 3 A dialog box appears, where you can select one of the Web server application types:
 - ISAPI and NSAPI: Selecting this type of application sets up your project as a DLL, with the exported methods expected by the Web server. It also includes the appropriate header files for generating your application.
 - Apache: Selecting this type of application sets up your project as a DLL, with the exported methods expected by the Apache Web server. It also includes the appropriate header files for generating your application.

- CGI stand-alone: Selecting this type of application sets up your project as a console application, and includes the appropriate header files.
- Win-CGI stand-alone: Selecting this type of application sets up your project as a Windows application, and includes the appropriate header files.
- Web Application Debugger stand-alone executable: Selecting this type of application sets up an environment for developing and testing Web server applications. This type of application is not intended for deployment.

Choose the type of Web Server Application that communicates with the type of Web Server your application will use. This creates a new project configured to use Internet components and containing an empty Web Module.

The Web module

The Web module (*TWebModule*) is a descendant of *TDataModule* and may be used in the same way: to provide centralized control for business rules and non-visual components in the Web application.

Add any content producers that your application uses to generate response messages. These can be the built-in content producers such as *TPageProducer*, *TDataSetPageProducer*, *TDataSetTableProducer*, *TQueryTableProducer* and *TInetXPageProducer*, or descendants of *TCustomContentProducer* that you have written yourself. If your application generates response messages that include material drawn from databases, you can add data access components or special components for writing a Web server that acts as a client in a multi-tiered database application.

In addition to storing non-visual components and business rules, the Web module also acts as a dispatcher, matching incoming HTTP request messages to action items that generate the responses to those requests.

You may have a data module already that is set up with many of the non-visual components and business rules that you want to use in your Web application. You can replace the Web module with your pre-existing data module. Simply delete the automatically generated Web module and replace it with your data module. Then, add a *TWebDispatcher* component to your data module, so that it can dispatch request messages to action items, the way a Web module can. If you want to change the way action items are chosen to respond to incoming HTTP request messages, derive a new dispatcher component from *TCustomWebDispatcher*, and add that to the data module instead.

Your project can contain only one dispatcher. This can either be the Web module that is automatically generated when you create the project, or the *TWebDispatcher* component that you add to a data module that replaces the Web module. If a second data module containing a dispatcher is created during execution, the Web server application generates a runtime error.

Note The Web module that you set up at design time is actually a template. In ISAPI and NSAPI applications, each request message spawns a separate thread, and separate instances of the Web module and its contents are created dynamically for each thread.

Warning The Web module in a DLL-based Web server application is cached for later reuse to increase response time. The state of the dispatcher and its action list is not reinitialized between requests. Enabling or disabling action items during execution may cause unexpected results when that module is used for subsequent client requests.

The Web Application object

The project that is set up for your Web application contains a global variable named *Application*. *Application* is a descendant of *TWebApplication* (either *TISAPIApplication*, *TApacheApplication*, or *TCGIApplication*) that is appropriate to the type of application you are creating. It runs in response to HTTP request messages received by the Web server.

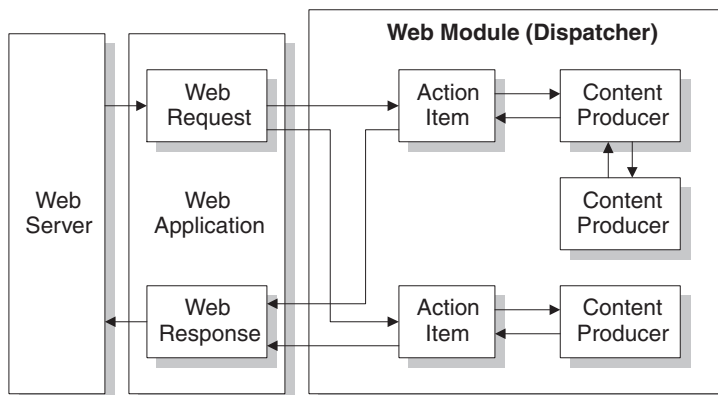
Warning Do not include *Forms.hpp* after the include statement for *CGIApp.hpp* or *ISAPIApp.hpp* in the project file. *Forms.hpp* also declares a global variable named *Application*, and if it appears after *CGIApp.hpp* or *ISAPIApp.hpp*, *Application* will be initialized to an object of the wrong type.

The structure of a Web Broker application

When the Web application receives an HTTP request message, it creates a *TWebRequest* object to represent the HTTP request message, and a *TWebResponse* object to represent the response that should be returned. The application then passes these objects to the Web dispatcher (either the Web module or a *TWebDispatcher* component).

The Web dispatcher controls the flow of the Web server application. The dispatcher maintains a collection of action items (*TWebActionItem*) that know how to handle certain types of HTTP request messages. The dispatcher identifies the appropriate action items or auto-dispatching components to handle the HTTP request message, and passes the request and response objects to the identified handler so that it can perform any requested actions or formulate a response message. It is described more fully in the section “The Web dispatcher” on page 33-4.

Figure 33.1 Structure of a Server Application



The action items are responsible for reading the request and assembling a response message. Specialized content producer components aid the action items in dynamically generating the content of response messages, which can include custom HTML code or other MIME content. The content producers can make use of other content producers or descendants of *THTMLTagAttributes*, to help them create the content of the response message. For more information on content producers, see “Generating the content of response messages” on page 33-13.

If you are creating the Web Client in a multi-tiered database application, your Web server application may include additional, auto-dispatching components that represent database information encoded in XML and database manipulation classes encoded in javascript. If you are creating a server that implements a Web Service, your Web server application may include an auto-dispatching component that passes SOAP-based messages on to an invoker that interprets and executes them. The dispatcher calls on these auto-dispatching components to handle the request message after it has tried all of its action items.

When all action items (or auto-dispatching components) have finished creating the response by filling out the *TWebResponse* object, the dispatcher passes the result back to the Web application. The application sends the response on to the client via the Web server.

The Web dispatcher

If you are using a Web module, it acts as a Web dispatcher. If you are using a pre-existing data module, you must add a single dispatcher component (*TWebDispatcher*) to that data module. The dispatcher maintains a collection of action items that know how to handle certain kinds of request messages. When the Web application passes a request object and a response object to the dispatcher, it chooses one or more action items to respond to the request.

Adding actions to the dispatcher

Open the action editor from the Object Inspector by clicking the ellipsis on the *Actions* property of the dispatcher. Action items can be added to the dispatcher by clicking the Add button in the action editor.

Add actions to the dispatcher to respond to different request methods or target URIs. You can set up your action items in a variety of ways. You can start with action items that preprocess requests, and end with a default action that checks whether the response is complete and either sends the response or returns an error code. Or, you can add a separate action item for every type of request, where each action item completely handles the request.

Action items are discussed in further detail in “Action items” on page 33-5.

Dispatching request messages

When the dispatcher receives the client request, it generates a *BeforeDispatch* event. This provides your application with a chance to preprocess the request message before it is seen by any of the action items.

Next, the dispatcher iterates over its list of action items, looking for an entry that matches the *PathInfo* portion of the request message's target URL and that also provides the service specified as the method of the request message. It does this by comparing the *PathInfo* and *MethodType* properties of the *TWebRequest* object with the properties of the same name on the action item.

When the dispatcher finds an appropriate action item, it causes that action item to fire. When the action item fires, it does one of the following:

- Fills in the response content and sends the response or signals that the request is completely handled.
- Adds to the response and then allows other action items to complete the job.
- Defers the request to other action items.

After checking all its action items, if the message is not handled the dispatcher checks any specially registered auto-dispatching components that do not use action items. These components are specific to multi-tiered database applications, which are described in "Building Web applications using InternetExpress" on page 29-31

If, after checking all the action items and any specially registered auto-dispatching components, the request message has still not been fully handled, the dispatcher calls the default action item. The default action item does not need to match either the target URL or the method of the request.

If the dispatcher reaches the end of the action list (including the default action, if any) and no actions have been triggered, nothing is passed back to the server. The server simply drops the connection to the client.

If the request is handled by the action items, the dispatcher generates an *AfterDispatch* event. This provides a final opportunity for your application to check the response that was generated, and make any last minute changes.

Action items

Each action item (*TWebActionItem*) performs a specific task in response to a given type of request message.

Action items can completely respond to a request or perform part of the response and allow other action items to complete the job. Action items can send the HTTP response message for the request, or simply set up part of the response for other action items to complete. If a response is completed by the action items but not sent, the Web server application sends the response message.

Determining when action items fire

Most properties of the action item determine when the dispatcher selects it to handle an HTTP request message. To set the properties of an action item, you must first bring up the action editor: select the *Actions* property of the dispatcher in the Object Inspector and click on the ellipsis. When an action is selected in the action editor, its properties can be modified in the Object Inspector.

The target URL

The dispatcher compares the *PathInfo* property of an action item to the *PathInfo* of the request message. The value of this property should be the path information portion of the URL for all requests that the action item is prepared to handle. For example, given this URL,

```
http://www.TSite.com/art/gallery.dll/mammals?animal=dog&color=black
```

and assuming that the `/gallery.dll` part indicates the Web server application, the path information portion is

```
/mammals
```

Use path information to indicate where your Web application should look for information when servicing requests, or to divide your Web application into logical subservices.

The request method type

The *MethodType* property of an action item indicates what type of request messages it can process. The dispatcher compares the *MethodType* property of an action item to the *MethodType* of the request message. *MethodType* can take one of the following values:

Table 33.1 MethodType values

| Value | Meaning |
|---------------|---|
| <i>mtGet</i> | The request is asking for the information associated with the target URI to be returned in a response message. |
| <i>mtHead</i> | The request is asking for the header properties of a response, as if servicing an <i>mtGet</i> request, but omitting the content of the response. |
| <i>mtPost</i> | The request is providing information to be posted to the Web application. |
| <i>mtPut</i> | The request asks that the resource associated with the target URI be replaced by the content of the request message. |
| <i>mtAny</i> | Matches any request method type, including <i>mtGet</i> , <i>mtHead</i> , <i>mtPut</i> , and <i>mtPost</i> . |

Enabling and disabling action items

Each action item has an *Enabled* property that can be used to enable or disable that action item. By setting *Enabled* to **false**, you disable the action item so that it is not considered by the dispatcher when it looks for an action item to handle a request.

A *BeforeDispatch* event handler can control which action items should process a request by changing the *Enabled* property of the action items before the dispatcher begins matching them to the request message.

Caution Changing the *Enabled* property of an action during execution may cause unexpected results for subsequent requests. If the Web server application is a DLL that caches Web modules, the initial state will not be reinitialized for the next request. Use the *BeforeDispatch* event to ensure that all action items are correctly initialized to their appropriate starting states.

Choosing a default action item

Only one of the action items can be the default action item. The default action item is selected by setting its *Default* property to **true**. When the *Default* property of an action item is set to **true**, the *Default* property for the previous default action item (if any) is set to **false**.

When the dispatcher searches its list of action items to choose one to handle a request, it stores the name of the default action item. If the request has not been fully handled when the dispatcher reaches the end of its list of action items, it executes the default action item.

The dispatcher does not check the *PathInfo* or *MethodType* of the default action item. The dispatcher does not even check the *Enabled* property of the default action item. Thus, you can make sure the default action item is only called at the very end by setting its *Enabled* property to **false**.

The default action item should be prepared to handle any request that is encountered, even if it is only to return an error code indicating an invalid URI or *MethodType*. If the default action item does not handle the request, no response is sent to the Web client.

Caution Changing the *Default* property of an action during execution may cause unexpected results for the current request. If the *Default* property of an action that has already been triggered is set to **true**, that action will not be reevaluated and the dispatcher will not trigger that action when it reaches the end of the action list.

Responding to request messages with action items

The real work of the Web server application is performed by action items when they execute. When the Web dispatcher fires an action item, that action item can respond to the current request message in two ways:

- If the action item has an associated producer component as the value of its *Producer* property, that producer automatically assigns the *Content* of the response message using its *Content* method. The Internet page of the component palette includes a number of content producer components that can help construct an HTML page for the content of the response message.
- After the producer has assigned any response content (if there is an associated producer), the action item receives an *OnAction* event. The *OnAction* event handler is passed the *TWebRequest* object that represents the HTTP request message and a *TWebResponse* object to fill with any response information.

If the action item's content can be generated by a single content producer, it is simplest to assign the content producer as the action item's *Producer* property. However, you can always access any content producer from the *OnAction* event handler as well. The *OnAction* event handler allows more flexibility, so that you can use multiple content producers, assign response message properties, and so on.

Both the content-producer component and the *OnAction* event handler can use any objects or runtime library methods to respond to request messages. They can access databases, perform calculations, construct or select HTML documents, and so on. For more information about generating response content using content-producer components, see "Generating the content of response messages" on page 33-13.

Sending the response

An *OnAction* event handler can send the response back to the Web client by using the methods of the *TWebResponse* object. However, if no action item sends the response to the client, it will still get sent by the Web server application as long as the last action item to look at the request indicates that the request was handled.

Using multiple action items

You can respond to a request from a single action item, or divide the work up among several action items. If the action item does not completely finish setting up the response message, it must signal this state in the *OnAction* event handler by setting the *Handled* parameter to **false**.

If many action items divide up the work of responding to request messages, each setting *Handled* to **false** so that others can continue, make sure the default action item leaves the *Handled* parameter set to **true**. Otherwise, no response will be sent to the Web client.

When dividing the work among several action items, either the *OnAction* event handler of the default action item or the *AfterDispatch* event handler of the dispatcher should check whether all the work was done and set an appropriate error code if it is not.

Accessing client request information

When an HTTP request message is received by the Web server application, the headers of the client request are loaded into the properties of a *TWebRequest* object. In NSAPI and ISAPI applications, the request message is encapsulated by a *TISAPIRequest* object. Console CGI applications use *TCGIRequest* objects, and Windows CGI applications use *TWinCGIRequest* objects.

The properties of the request object are read-only. You can use them to gather all of the information available in the client request.

Properties that contain request header information

Most properties in a request object contain information about the request that comes from the HTTP request header. Not every request supplies a value for every one of these properties. Also, some requests may include header fields that are not surfaced in a property of the request object, especially as the HTTP standard continues to evolve. To obtain the value of a request header field that is not surfaced as one of the properties of the request object, use the *GetFieldByName* method.

Properties that identify the target

The full target of the request message is given by the *URL* property. Usually, this is a URL that can be broken down into the protocol (HTTP), *Host* (server system), *ScriptName* (server application), *PathInfo* (location on the host), and *Query*.

Each of these pieces is surfaced in its own property. The protocol is always HTTP, and the *Host* and *ScriptName* identify the Web server application. The dispatcher uses the *PathInfo* portion when matching action items to request messages. The *Query* is used by some requests to specify the details of the requested information. Its value is also parsed for you as the *QueryFields* property.

Properties that describe the Web client

The request also includes several properties that provide information about where the request originated. These include everything from the e-mail address of the sender (the *From* property), to the URI where the message originated (the *Referer* or *RemoteHost* property). If the request contains any content, and that content does not arise from the same URI as the request, the source of the content is given by the *DerivedFrom* property. You can also determine the IP address of the client (the *RemoteAddr* property), and the name and version of the application that sent the request (the *UserAgent* property).

Properties that identify the purpose of the request

The *Method* property is a string describing what the request message is asking the server application to do. The HTTP 1.1 standard defines the following methods:

| Value | What the message requests |
|----------------|--|
| <i>OPTIONS</i> | Information about available communication options. |
| <i>GET</i> | Information identified by the <i>URL</i> property. |
| <i>HEAD</i> | Header information from an equivalent GET message, without the content of the response. |
| <i>POST</i> | The server application to post the data included in the <i>Content</i> property, as appropriate. |
| <i>PUT</i> | The server application to replace the resource indicated by the <i>URL</i> property with the data included in the <i>Content</i> property. |
| <i>DELETE</i> | The server application to delete or hide the resource identified by the <i>URL</i> property. |
| <i>TRACE</i> | The server application to send a loop-back to confirm receipt of the request. |

The *Method* property may indicate any other method that the Web client requests of the server.

The Web server application does not need to provide a response for every possible value of *Method*. The HTTP standard does require that it service both GET and HEAD requests, however.

The *MethodType* property indicates whether the value of *Method* is GET (mtGet), HEAD (mtHead), POST (mtPost), PUT (mtPut) or some other string (mtAny). The dispatcher matches the value of the *MethodType* property with the *MethodType* of each action item.

Properties that describe the expected response

The *Accept* property indicates the media types the Web client will accept as the content of the response message. The *IfModifiedSince* property specifies whether the client only wants information that has changed recently. The *Cookie* property includes state information (usually added previously by your application) that can modify the response.

Properties that describe the content

Most requests do not include any content, as they are requests for information. However, some requests, such as POST requests, provide content that the Web server application is expected to use. The media type of the content is given in the *ContentType* property, and its length in the *ContentLength* property. If the content of the message was encoded (for example, for data compression), this information is in the *ContentEncoding* property. The name and version number of the application that produced the content is specified by the *ContentVersion* property. The *Title* property may also provide information about the content.

The content of HTTP request messages

In addition to the header fields, some request messages include a content portion that the Web server application should process in some way. For example, a POST request might include information that should be added to a database accessed by the Web server application.

The unprocessed value of the content is given by the *Content* property. If the content can be parsed into fields separated by ampersands (&), a parsed version is available in the *ContentFields* property.

Creating HTTP response messages

When the Web server application creates a *TWebRequest* object for an incoming HTTP request message, it also creates a corresponding *TWebResponse* object to represent the response message that will be sent in return. In NSAPI and ISAPI applications, the response message is encapsulated by a *TISAPIResponse* object. Console CGI applications use *TCGIResponse* objects, and Windows CGI applications use *TWinCGIResponse* objects.

The action items that generate the response to a Web client request fill in the properties of the response object. In some cases, this may be as simple as returning an error code or redirecting the request to another URI. In other cases, this may involve complicated calculations that require the action item to fetch information from other sources and assemble it into a finished form. Most request messages require some response, even if it is only the acknowledgment that a requested action was carried out.

Filling in the response header

Most of the properties of the *TWebResponse* object represent the header information of the HTTP response message that is sent back to the Web client. An action item sets these properties from its *OnAction* event handler.

Not every response message needs to specify a value for every one of the header properties. The properties that should be set depend on the nature of the request and the status of the response.

Indicating the response status

Every response message must include a status code that indicates the status of the response. You can specify the status code by setting the *StatusCode* property. The HTTP standard defines a number of standard status codes with predefined meanings. In addition, you can define your own status codes using any of the unused possible values.

Each status code is a three-digit number where the most significant digit indicates the class of the response, as follows:

- 1xx: Informational (The request was received but has not been fully processed).
- 2xx: Success (The request was received, understood, and accepted).
- 3xx: Redirection (Further action by the client is needed to complete the request).
- 4xx: Client Error (The request cannot be understood or cannot be serviced).
- 5xx: Server Error (The request was valid but the server could not handle it).

Associated with each status code is a string that explains the meaning of the status code. This is given by the *ReasonString* property. For predefined status codes, you do not need to set the *ReasonString* property. If you define your own status codes, you should also set the *ReasonString* property.

Indicating the need for client action

When the status code is in the 300-399 range, the client must perform further action before the Web server application can complete its request. If you need to redirect the client to another URI, or indicate that a new URI was created to handle the request, set the *Location* property. If the client must provide a password before you can proceed, set the *WWWAuthenticate* property.

Describing the server application

Some of the response header properties describe the capabilities of the Web server application. The *Allow* property indicates the methods to which the application can respond. The *Server* property gives the name and version number of the application used to generate the response. The *Cookies* property can hold state information about the client's use of the server application which is included in subsequent request messages.

Describing the content

Several properties describe the content of the response. *ContentType* gives the media type of the response, and *ContentVersion* is the version number for that media type. *ContentLength* gives the length of the response. If the content is encoded (such as for data compression), indicate this with the *ContentEncoding* property. If the content came from another URI, this should be indicated in the *DerivedFrom* property. If the value of the content is time-sensitive, the *LastModified* property and the *Expires* property indicate whether the value is still valid. The *Title* property can provide descriptive information about the content.

Setting the response content

For some requests, the response to the request message is entirely contained in the header properties of the response. In most cases, however, action item assigns some content to the response message. This content may be static information stored in a file, or information that was dynamically produced by the action item or its content producer.

You can set the content of the response message by using either the *Content* property or the *ContentStream* property.

The *Content* property is an *AnsiString*. *AnsiStrings* are not limited to text values, so the value of the *Content* property can be a string of HTML commands, graphics content such as a bit-stream, or any other MIME content type.

Use the *ContentStream* property if the content for the response message can be read from a stream. For example, if the response message should send the contents of a file, use a *TFileStream* object for the *ContentStream* property. As with the *Content* property, *ContentStream* can provide a string of HTML commands or other MIME content type. If you use the *ContentStream* property, do not free the stream yourself. The Web response object automatically frees it for you.

Note If the value of the *ContentStream* property is not NULL, the *Content* property is ignored.

Sending the response

If you are sure there is no more work to be done in response to a request message, you can send a response directly from an *OnAction* event handler. The response object provides two methods for sending a response: *SendResponse* and *SendRedirect*. Call *SendResponse* to send the response using the specified content and all the header

properties of the *TWebResponse* object. If you only need to redirect the Web client to another URI, the *SendRedirect* method is more efficient.

If none of the event handlers send the response, the Web application object sends it after the dispatcher finishes. However, if none of the action items indicate that they have handled the response, the application will close the connection to the Web client without sending any response.

Generating the content of response messages

C++Builder provides a number of objects to assist your action items in producing content for HTTP response messages. You can use these objects to generate strings of HTML commands that are saved in a file or sent directly back to the Web client. You can write your own content producers, deriving them from *TCustomContentProducer* or one of its descendants.

TCustomContentProducer provides a generic interface for creating any MIME type as the content of an HTTP response message. Its descendants include page producers and table producers:

- Page producers scan HTML documents for special tags that they replace with customized HTML code. They are described in the following section.
- Table producers create HTML commands based on the information in a dataset. They are described in “Using database information in responses” on page 33-17.

Using page producer components

Page producers (*TPageProducer* and its descendants) take an HTML template and convert it by replacing special HTML-transparent tags with customized HTML code. You can store a set of standard response templates that are filled in by page producers when you need to generate the response to an HTTP request message. You can chain page producers together to iteratively build up an HTML document by successive refinement of the HTML-transparent tags.

HTML templates

An HTML template is a sequence of HTML commands and HTML-transparent tags. An HTML-transparent tag has the form

```
<#TagName Param1=Value1 Param2=Value2 ...>
```

The angle brackets (< and >) define the entire scope of the tag. A pound sign (#) immediately follows the opening angle bracket (<) with no spaces separating it from the angle bracket. The pound sign identifies the string to the page producer as an HTML-transparent tag. The tag name immediately follows the pound sign with no spaces separating it from the pound sign. The tag name can be any valid identifier and identifies the type of conversion the tag represents.

Following the tag name, the HTML-transparent tag can optionally include parameters that specify details of the conversion to be performed. Each parameter is

of the form *ParamName=Value*, where there is no space between the parameter name, the equals symbol (=) and the value. The parameters are separated by whitespace.

The angle brackets (< and >) make the tag transparent to HTML browsers that do not recognize the #TagName construct.

While you can create your own HTML-transparent tags to represent any kind of information processed by your page producer, there are several predefined tag names associated with values of the *TTag* data type. These predefined tag names correspond to HTML commands that are likely to vary over response messages. They are listed in the following table:

| Tag Name | TTag value | What the tag should be converted to |
|-----------------|-------------------|--|
| <i>Link</i> | <i>tgLink</i> | A hypertext link. The result is an HTML sequence beginning with an <A> tag and ending with an tag. |
| <i>Image</i> | <i>tgImage</i> | A graphic image. The result is an HTML tag. |
| <i>Table</i> | <i>tgTable</i> | An HTML table. The result is an HTML sequence beginning with a <TABLE> tag and ending with a </TABLE> tag. |
| <i>ImageMap</i> | <i>tgImageMap</i> | A graphic image with associated hot zones. The result is an HTML sequence beginning with a <MAP> tag and ending with a </MAP> tag. |
| <i>Object</i> | <i>tgObject</i> | An embedded ActiveX object. The result is an HTML sequence beginning with an <OBJECT> tag and ending with an </OBJECT> tag. |
| <i>Embed</i> | <i>tgEmbed</i> | A Netscape-compliant add-in DLL. The result is an HTML sequence beginning with an <EMBED> tag and ending with an </EMBED> tag. |

Any other tag name is associated with *tgCustom*. The page producer supplies no built-in processing of the predefined tag names. They are simply provided to help applications organize the conversion process into many of the more common tasks.

Note The predefined tag names are case insensitive.

Specifying the HTML template

Page producers provide you with many choices in how to specify the HTML template. You can set the *HTMLFile* property to the name of a file that contains the HTML template. You can set the *HTMLDoc* property to a *TStrings* object that contains the HTML template. If you use either the *HTMLFile* property or the *HTMLDoc* property to specify the template, you can generate the converted HTML commands by calling the *Content* method.

In addition, you can call the *ContentFromString* method to directly convert an HTML template that is a single *AnsiString* which is passed in as a parameter. You can also call the *ContentFromStream* method to read the HTML template from a stream. Thus, for example, you could store all your HTML templates in a memo field in a database, and use the *ContentFromStream* method to obtain the converted HTML commands, reading the template directly from a *TBlobStream* object.

Converting HTML-transparent tags

The page producer converts the HTML template when you call one of its *Content* methods. When the *Content* method encounters an HTML-transparent tag, it triggers the *OnHTMLTag* event. You must write an event handler to determine the type of tag encountered, and to replace it with customized content.

If you do not create an *OnHTMLTag* event handler for the page producer, HTML-transparent tags are replaced with an empty string.

Using page producers from an action item

A typical use of a page producer component uses the *HTMLFile* property to specify a file containing an HTML template. The *OnAction* event handler calls the *Content* method to convert the template into a final HTML sequence:

```
void __fastcall WebModule1::MyActionEventHandler(TObject *Sender,
    TWebRequest *Request, TWebResponse *Response, bool &Handled)
{
    PageProducer1->HTMLFile = "Greeting.html";
    Response->Content = PageProducer1->Content();
}
```

Greeting.html is a file that contains this HTML template:

```
<HTML>
<HEAD><TITLE>Our Brand New Web Site</TITLE></HEAD>
<BODY>
Hello <#UserName>! Welcome to our Web site.
</BODY>
</HTML>
```

The *OnHTMLTag* event handler replaces the custom tag (<#UserName>) in the HTML during execution:

```
void __fastcall WebModule1::HTMLTagHandler(TObject *Sender, TTag Tag,
    const AnsiString TagString, TStringList *TagParams, AnsiString &ReplaceText)
{
    if (CompareText(TagString, "UserName") == 0)
        ReplaceText = ((TPageProducer *)Sender)->Dispatcher->Request->Content;
}
```

If the content of the request message was the string *Mr. Ed*, the value of *Response->Content* would be

```
<HTML>
<HEAD><TITLE>Our Brand New Web Site</TITLE></HEAD>
<BODY>
Hello Mr. Ed! Welcome to our Web site.
</BODY>
</HTML>
```

Note This example uses an *OnAction* event handler to call the content producer and assign the content of the response message. You do not need to write an *OnAction* event handler if you assign the page producer's *HTMLFile* property at design time. In that case, you can simply assign *PageProducer1* as the value of the action item's *Producer* property to accomplish the same effect as the *OnAction* event handler above.

Chaining page producers together

The replacement text from an *OnHTMLTag* event handler need not be the final HTML sequence you want to use in the HTTP response message. You may want to use several page producers, where the output from one page producer is the input for the next.

The simplest way is to chain the page producers together is to associate each page producer with a separate action item, where all action items have the same *PathInfo* and *MethodType*. The first action item sets the content of the Web response message from its content producer, but its *OnAction* event handler makes sure the message is not considered handled. The next action item uses the *ContentFromString* method of its associated producer to manipulate the content of the Web response message, and so on. Action items after the first one use an *OnAction* event handler such as the following:

```
void __fastcall WebModule1::Action2Action(TObject *Sender,
    TWebRequest *Request, TWebResponse *Response, bool &Handled)
{
    Response->Content = PageProducer2->ContentFromString(Response->Content);
}
```

For example, consider an application that returns calendar pages in response to request messages that specify the month and year of the desired page. Each calendar page contains a picture, followed by the name and year of the month between small images of the previous month and next months, followed by the actual calendar. The resulting image looks something like this:



The general form of the calendar is stored in a template file. It looks like this:

```
<HTML>
<Head></HEAD>
<BODY>
<#MonthlyImage> <#TitleLine><#MainBody>
</BODY>
</HTML>
```

The *OnHTMLTag* event handler of the first page producer looks up the month and year from the request message. Using that information and the template file, it does the following:

- Replaces <#MonthlyImage> with <#Image Month=January Year=2000>.
- Replaces <#TitleLine> with <#Calendar Month=December Year=1999 Size=Small> January 2000 <#Calendar Month=February Year=2000 Size=Small>.
- Replaces <#MainBody> with <#Calendar Month=January Year=2000 Size=Large>.

The *OnHTMLTag* event handler of the next page producer uses the content produced by the first page producer, and replaces the `<#Image Month=January Year=2000>` tag with the appropriate HTML `` tag. Yet another page producer resolves the `#Calendar` tags with appropriate HTML tables.

Using database information in responses

The response to an HTTP request message may include information taken from a database. Specialized content producers on the Internet palette page can generate the HTML to represent the records from a database in an HTML table.

As an alternate approach, special components on the InternetExpress page of the component palette let you build Web servers that are part of a multi-tiered database application. See “Building Web applications using InternetExpress” on page 29-31 for details.

Adding a session to the Web module

Both console CGI applications and Win-CGI applications are launched in response to HTTP request messages. When working with databases in these types of applications, you can use the default session to manage your database connections, because each request message has its own instance of the application. Each instance of the application has its own distinct, default session.

When writing an ISAPI application or an NSAPI application, however, each request message is handled in a separate thread of a single application instance. To prevent the database connections from different threads from interfering with each other, you must give each thread its own session.

Each request message in an ISAPI or NSAPI application spawns a new thread. The Web module for that thread is generated dynamically at runtime. Add a *TSession* object to the Web module to handle the database connections for the thread that contains the Web module.

Separate instances of the Web module are generated for each thread at runtime. Each of those modules contains the session object. Each of those sessions must have a separate name, so that the threads that handle separate request messages do not interfere with each other's database connections. To cause the session objects in each module to dynamically generate unique names for themselves, set the *AutoSessionName* property of the session object. Each session object will dynamically generate a unique name for itself and set the *SessionName* property of all datasets in the module to refer to that unique name. This allows all interaction with the database for each request thread to proceed without interfering with any of the other request messages. For more information on sessions, see “Managing database sessions” on page 24-16.

Representing database information in HTML

Specialized Content producer components on the Internet palette page supply HTML commands based on the records of a dataset. There are two types of data-aware content producers:

- The dataset page producer, which formats the fields of a dataset into the text of an HTML document.
- Table producers, which format the records of a dataset as an HTML table.

Using dataset page producers

Dataset page producers work like other page producer components: they convert a template that includes HTML-transparent tags into a final HTML representation. They include the special ability, however, of converting tags that have a tag name which matches the name of a field in a dataset into the current value of that field. For more information about using page producers in general, see “Using page producer components” on page 33-13.

To use a dataset page producer, add a *TDataSetPageProducer* component to your Web module and set its *DataSet* property to the dataset whose field values should be displayed in the HTML content. Create an HTML template that describes the output of your dataset page producer. For every field value you want to display, include a tag of the form

```
<#FieldName>
```

in the HTML template, where *FieldName* specifies the name of the field in the dataset whose value should be displayed.

When your application calls the *Content*, *ContentFromString*, or *ContentFromStream* method, the dataset page producer substitutes the current field values for the tags that represent fields.

Using table producers

The Internet palette page includes two components that create an HTML table to represent the records of a dataset:

- Dataset table producers, which format the fields of a dataset into the text of an HTML document.
- Query table producers, which runs a query after setting parameters supplied by the request message and formats the resulting dataset as an HTML table.

Using either of the two table producers, you can customize the appearance of a resulting HTML table by specifying properties for the table’s color, border, separator thickness, and so on. To set the properties of a table producer at design time, double-click the table producer component to display the Response Editor dialog.

Specifying the table attributes

Table producers use the *THTMLTableAttributes* object to describe the visual appearance of the HTML table that displays the records from the dataset. The

THTMLTableAttributes object includes properties for the table's width and spacing within the HTML document, and for its background color, border thickness, cell padding, and cell spacing. These properties are all turned into options on the HTML <TABLE> tag created by the table producer.

At design time, specify these properties using the Object Inspector. Select the table producer object in the Object Inspector and expand the *TableAttributes* property to access the display properties of the *THTMLTableAttributes* object.

You can also specify these properties programmatically at runtime.

Specifying the row attributes

Similar to the table attributes, you can specify the alignment and background color of cells in the rows of the table that display data. The *RowAttributes* property is a *THTMLTableRowAttributes* object.

At design time, specify these properties using the Object Inspector by expanding the *RowAttributes* property. You can also specify these properties programmatically at runtime.

You can also adjust the number of rows shown in the HTML table by setting the *MaxRows* property.

Specifying the columns

If you know the dataset for the table at design time, you can use the Columns editor to customize the columns' field bindings and display attributes. Select the table producer component, and right-click. From the context menu, choose the Columns editor. This lets you add, delete, or rearrange the columns in the table. You can set the field bindings and display properties of individual columns in the Object Inspector after selecting them in the Columns editor.

If you are getting the name of the dataset from the HTTP request message, you can't bind the fields in the Columns editor at design time. However, you can still customize the columns programmatically at runtime, by setting up the appropriate *THTMLTableColumn* objects and using the methods of the *Columns* property to add them to the table. If you do not set up the *Columns* property, the table producer creates a default set of columns that match the fields of the dataset and specify no special display characteristics.

Embedding tables in HTML documents

You can embed the HTML table that represents your dataset in a larger document by using the *Header* and *Footer* properties of the table producer. Use *Header* to specify everything that comes before the table, and *Footer* to specify everything that comes after the table.

You may want to use another content producer (such as a page producer) to create the values for the *Header* and *Footer* properties.

If you embed your table in a larger document, you may want to add a caption to the table. Use the *Caption* and *CaptionAlignment* properties to give your table a caption.

Setting up a dataset table producer

TDataSetTableProducer is a table producer that creates an HTML table for a dataset. Set the *DataSet* property of *TDataSetTableProducer* to specify the dataset that contains the records you want to display. You do not set the *DataSource* property, as you would for most data-aware objects in a conventional database application. This is because *TDataSetTableProducer* generates its own data source internally.

You can set the value of *DataSet* at design time if your Web application always displays records from the same dataset. You must set the *DataSet* property at runtime if you are basing the dataset on the information in the HTTP request message.

Setting up a query table producer

You can produce an HTML table to display the results of a query, where the parameters of the query come from the HTTP request message. Specify the *TQuery* object that uses those parameters as the *Query* property of a *TQueryTableProducer* component.

If the request message is a GET request, the parameters of the query come from the *Query* fields of the URL that was given as the target of the HTTP request message. If the request message is a POST request, the parameters of the query come from the content of the request message.

When you call the *Content* method of *TQueryTableProducer*, it runs the query, using the parameters it finds in the request object. It then formats an HTML table to display the records in the resulting dataset.

As with any table producer, you can customize the display properties or column bindings of the HTML table, or embed the table in a larger HTML document.

Creating Web Server applications using WebSnap

WebSnap augments Web Broker with additional components, wizards, and views—making it easier to build Web server applications that deliver complex, data-driven Web pages. WebSnap's support for multiple modules and for server-side scripting makes development and maintenance easier for teams of C++Builder developers and Web designers.

WebSnap allows HTML design experts on your team to make a more effective contribution to Web server development and maintenance. The final product of the WebSnap development process includes a series of scriptable HTML page templates. These pages can be changed using HTML editors that support embedded script tags, like Microsoft FrontPage, or even a simple text editor. Changes can be made to the templates as needed, even after the application is deployed. There is no need to modify the project source code at all, which saves valuable development time. Also, WebSnap's multiple module support can be used to partition your application into smaller pieces during the coding phases of your project. C++Builder developers can work more independently.

The dispatcher components automatically handle requests for page content, HTML form submissions, and requests for dynamic images. WebSnap components called adapters provide a means to define a scriptable interface to the business rules of your application. For example, the *TDataSetAdapter* object is used to make dataset components scriptable. You can use WebSnap producer components to quickly build complex, data-driven forms and tables, or to use XSL to generate a page. You can use the session component to keep track of end users. You can use the user list component to provide access to user names, passwords, and access rights.

The Web application wizard allows you to quickly build an application that is customized with the components that you will need. The Web page module wizard allows you to create a module that defines a new page in your application. Or use the Web data module wizard to create a container for components that are shared across your Web application.

The page module views show the result of server-side scripting without running the application. You can view the generated HTML in an embedded browser using the Preview tab, or in text form using the HTML Result tab. The HTML Script tab shows the page with server-side scripting, which is used to generate HTML for the page.

The following sections of this chapter explain how you use the WebSnap components to create a Web server application.

Fundamental WebSnap components

Before you can build Web server applications using WebSnap, you must first understand the fundamental components used in WebSnap development. They fall into three categories:

- Web modules, which contain the components that make up the application and define pages
- Adapters, which provide an interface between HTML pages and the Web server application itself
- Page producers, which contain the routines that create the HTML pages to be served to the end user

The following sections examine each type of component in more detail.

Web modules

Web modules are the basic building block of WebSnap applications. Every WebSnap server application must have at least one Web module. More can be added as needed. There are four Web module types:

- Web application page modules (*TWebAppPageModule* objects)
- Web application data modules (*TWebAppDataModule* objects)
- Web page modules (*TWebPageModule* objects)
- Web data modules (*TWebDataModule* objects)

Web page modules and Web application page modules provide content for Web pages. Web data modules and Web application data modules act as containers for components shared across your application; they serve the same purpose in WebSnap applications that ordinary data modules serve in regular C++ Builder applications. You can include any number of Web page or data modules in your server application.

You may be wondering how many Web modules your application needs. Every WebSnap application needs one (and only one) Web application module of some type. Beyond that, you can add as many Web page or data modules as you need.

For Web page modules, a good rule of thumb is one per page style. If you intend to implement a page that can use the format of an existing page, you may not need a new Web page module. Modifications to an existing page module may suffice. If the

page is very different from your existing modules, you will probably want to create a new module. For example, let's say you are trying to build a server to handle online catalog sales. Pages which describe available products might all share the same Web page module, since the pages can all contain the same basic information types using the same layout. An order form, however, would probably require a different Web page module, since the format and function of an order form is different from that of an item description page.

The rules are different for Web data modules. Components that can be shared by many different Web modules should be placed in a Web data module to simplify shared access. You will also want to place components that can be used by many different Web applications in their own Web data module. That way you can easily share those items among applications. Of course, if neither of these circumstances applies you might choose not to use Web data modules at all. Use them the same way you would use regular data modules, and let your own judgment and experience be your guide.

Web application module types

Web application modules provide centralized control for business rules and non-visual components in the Web application. The two types of Web application modules are tabulated below.

Table 34.1 Web application module types

| Web application module type | Description |
|-----------------------------|---|
| Page | Creates a content page. The page module contains a page producer which is responsible for generating the content of a page. The page producer displays its associated page when the HTTP request pathinfo matches the page name. The page can act as the default page when the pathinfo is blank. |
| Data | Used as a container for components shared by other modules, such as database components used by multiple Web page modules. |

Web application modules act as containers for components that perform functions for the application as a whole—such as dispatching requests, managing sessions, and maintaining user lists. If you are already familiar with the Web Broker architecture, you can think of Web application modules as being similar to *TWebApplication* objects. Web application modules also contain the functionality of a regular Web module, either page or data, depending on the Web application module type. Your project can contain only one Web application module. You will never need more than one anyway; you can add regular Web modules to your server to provide whatever extra features you want.

Use the Web application module to contain the most basic features of your server application. If your server will maintain a home page of some sort, you may want to make your Web application module a *TWebAppPageModule* instead of a *TWebAppDataModule*, so you don't have to create an extra Web page module for that page.

Web page modules

Each Web page module has a page producer associated with it. When a request is received, the page dispatcher analyzes the request and calls the appropriate page module to process the request and return the content of the page.

Like Web data modules, Web page modules are containers for components. A Web page module is more than a mere container, however. A Web page module is used specifically to produce a Web page.

All web page modules have an editor view, called Preview, that allows you to preview the page as you are building it. You can take full advantage of the visual application development environment offered by C++Builder.

Page producer component

Web page modules have a property that identifies the page producer component responsible for generating content for the page. (To learn more about page producers, see “Page producers” on page 34-6.) The WebSnap page module wizard automatically adds a producer when creating a Web page module. You can change the page producer component later by dropping in a different producer from the WebSnap palette. However, if the page module has a template file, be sure that the content of this file is compatible with the replacement producer component.

Page name

Web page modules have a page name that can be used to reference the page in an HTTP request or within the application's logic. A factory in the Web page module's unit specifies the page name for the Web page module.

Producer template

Most page producers use a template. HTML templates typically contain some static HTML mixed in with transparent tags or server-side scripting. When page producers create their content, they replace the transparent tags with appropriate values and execute the server-side script to produce the HTML that is displayed by a client browser. (The XSLPageProducer is an exception to this. It uses XSL templates, which contain XSL rather than HTML. The XSL templates do not support transparent tags or server-side script.)

Web page modules may have an associated template file that is managed as part of the unit. A managed template file appears in the Project Manager and has the same base file name and location as the unit service file. If the Web page module does not have an associated template file, the properties of the page producer component specify the template.

Web data modules

Like standard data modules, Web data modules are a container for components from the palette. Data modules provide a design surface for adding, removing, and selecting components. The Web data module differs from a standard data module in the structure of the unit and the interfaces that the Web data module implements.

Use the Web data module as a container for components that are shared across your application. For example, you can put a dataset component in a data module and access the dataset from both:

- a page module that displays a grid, and
- a page module that displays an input form.

You can also use Web data modules to contain sets of components that can be used by several different Web server applications.

Structure of a Web data module unit

Standard data modules have a variable called a form variable, which is used to access the data module object. Web data modules replace the variable with a function, which is defined in a Web data module's unit and has the same name as the Web data module. The function's purpose is the same as that of the variable it replaces.

WebSnap applications may be multi-threaded and may have multiple instances of a particular module to service multiple requests concurrently. Therefore, the function is used to return the correct instance.

The Web data module unit also registers a factory to specify how the module should be managed by the WebSnap application. For example, flags indicate whether to cache the module and reuse it for other requests or to destroy the module after a request has been serviced.

Adapters

Adapters define a script interface to your server application. They allow you to insert scripting languages into a page and retrieve information by making calls from your script code to the adapters. For example, you can use an adapter to define data fields to be displayed on an HTML page. A scripted HTML page can then contain HTML content and script statements that retrieve the values of those data fields. This is similar to the transparent tags used in Web Broker applications. Adapters also support actions that execute commands. For example, clicking on a hyperlink or submitting an HTML form can initiate adapter actions.

Adapters simplify the task of creating HTML pages dynamically. By using adapters in your application, you can include object-oriented script that supports conditional logic and looping. Without adapters and server-side scripting, you must write more of your HTML generation logic in C++ event handlers. Using adapters can significantly reduce development time.

See "Server-side scripting in WebSnap" on page 34-30 and "Dispatching requests and responses" on page 34-33 for more details about scripting.

Four types of adapter components can be used to create page content: fields, actions, errors and records.

Fields

Fields are components that the page producer uses to retrieve data from your application and to display the content on a Web page. Fields can also be used to

retrieve an image. In this case, the field returns the address of the image written to the Web page. When a page displays its content, a request is sent to the Web server application, which invokes the adapter dispatcher to retrieve the actual image from the field component.

Actions

Actions are components that execute commands on behalf of the adapter. When a page producer generates its page, the scripting language calls adapter action components to return the name of the action along with any parameters necessary to execute the command. For example, consider clicking a button on an HTML form to delete a row from a table. This returns, in the HTTP request, the action name associated with the button and a parameter indicating the row number. The adapter dispatcher locates the named action component and passes the row number as a parameter to the action.

Errors

Adapters keep a list of errors that occur while executing an action. Page producers can access this list of errors and display them in the Web page that the application returns to the end user.

Records

Some adapter components, such as *TDataSetAdapter*, represent multiple records. The adapter provides a scripting interface which allows iteration through the records. Some adapters support paging and iterate only through the records on the current page.

Page producers

Page producers to generate content on behalf of a Web page module. Page producers provide the following functionality:

- They generate HTML content.
- They can reference an external file using the `HTMLFile` property, or the internal string using the `HTMLDoc` property.
- When the producers are used with a Web page module, the template can be a file associated with a unit.
- Producers dynamically generate HTML that can be inserted into the template using transparent tags or active scripting. Transparent tags can be used in the same way as WebBroker applications. To learn more about using transparent tags, see “Converting HTML-transparent tags” on page 33-15. Active scripting support allows you to embed JScript or VBScript inside the HTML page.

The standard WebSnap method for using page producers is as follows. When you create a Web page module, you must choose a page producer type in the Web Page Module wizard. You have many choices, but most WebSnap developers prototype their pages by using an adapter page producer, *TAdapterPageProducer*. The adapter

page producer lets you build a prototype Web page using a process analogous to the standard component model. You add a type of form, an adapter form, to the adapter page producer. As you need them, you can add adapter components (such as adapter grids) to the adapter form. Using adapter page producers, you can create Web pages in a way that is similar to the standard C++Builder technique for building user interfaces.

There are some circumstances where switching from an adapter page producer to a regular page producer is more appropriate. For example, part of the function of an adapter page producer is to dynamically generate script in a page template at runtime. You may decide that static script would help optimize your server. Also, users who are experienced with script may want to make changes to the script directly. In this case, a regular page producer must be used to avoid conflicts between dynamic and static script. To learn how to change to a regular page producer, see “Advanced HTML design” on page 34-23.

You can also use page producers the same way you would use them in Web Broker applications, by associating the producer with a Web dispatcher action item. The advantages of using the Web page module are

- the ability to preview the page’s layout without running the application, and
- the ability to associate a page name with the module, so that the page dispatcher can call the page producer automatically.

Creating Web server applications with WebSnap

If you look at the source code for WebSnap, you will discover that WebSnap comprises hundreds of objects. In fact, WebSnap is so rich in objects and features that you could spend a long time studying its architecture in detail before understanding it completely. Fortunately, you really don’t need to understand the whole WebSnap system before you start developing your server application.

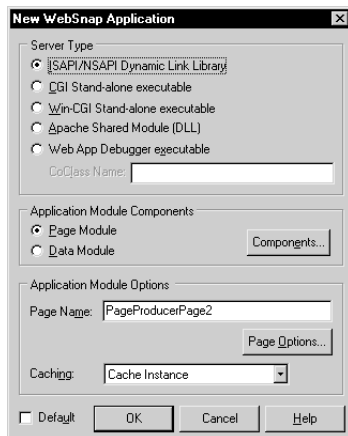
Here you will learn more about how WebSnap works by creating a new Web server application.

To create a new Web server application using the WebSnap architecture:

- 1 Choose File | New | Other.
- 2 In the New Items dialog box, select the WebSnap tab and choose WebSnap Application.

A dialog box appears (as shown in Figure 34.1).

- 3 Specify the correct server type.
- 4 Use the components button to specify application module components.
- 5 Use the Page Options button to select application module options.

Figure 34.1 New WebSnap application dialog box

Selecting a server type

Select one of the following types of Web server application, depending on your application's type of Web server.

Table 34.2 Web server application types

| Server type | Description |
|-----------------------------|---|
| ISAPI and NSAPI | Sets up your project as a DLL with the exported methods expected by the Web server. |
| Apache | Sets up your project as a DLL with the exported methods expected by the Apache Web server. |
| CGI stand-alone | Sets up your project as a console application which conforms to the Common Gateway Interface (CGI) standard. |
| Win-CGI stand-alone | Sets up your project as a Windows CGI application, a variant of the CGI standard adapted for Windows. |
| Web App Debugger executable | Creates an environment for developing and testing Web server applications. This type of application is not intended for deployment. |

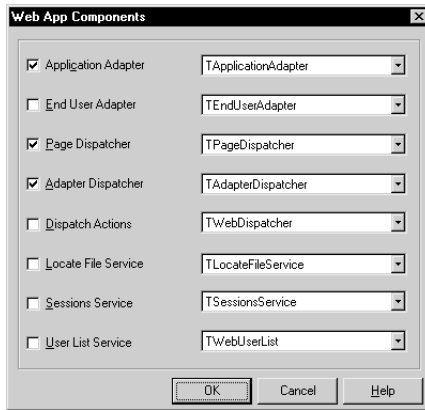
Specifying application module components

Application components provide the Web application's functionality. For example, including an adapter dispatcher component automatically handles HTML form submissions and the return of dynamically generated images. Including a page dispatcher automatically displays the content of a page when the HTTP request pathinfo contains the name of the page.

Selecting the Components button on the new WebSnap application dialog (see Figure 34.1) displays another dialog that allows you to select one or more of the Web

application module components. The dialog, which is called the Web App Components dialog, is shown in Figure 34.2.

Figure 34.2 Web App Components dialog



The following table contains a brief explanation of the available components:

Table 34.3 Web application components

| Component type | Description |
|---------------------|--|
| Application Adapter | Contains information about the application, such as the title. The default type is <i>TApplicationAdapter</i> . |
| End User Adapter | Contains information about the user, such as their name, access rights, and whether they are logged in. The default type is <i>TEndUserAdapter</i> . <i>TEndUserSessionAdapter</i> may also be selected. |
| Page Dispatcher | Examines the HTTP request's pathinfo and calls the appropriate page module to return the content of a page. The default type is <i>TPageDispatcher</i> . |
| Adapter Dispatcher | Automatically handles HTML form submissions and requests for dynamic images by calling adapter action and field components. The default type is <i>TAdapterDispatcher</i> . |
| Dispatch Actions | Allows you to define a collection of action items to handle requests based on pathinfo and method type. Action items call user-defined events or request the content of page-producer components. The default type is <i>TWebDispatcher</i> . |
| Locate File Service | Provides control over the loading of template files, and script include files, when the Web application is running. The default type is <i>TLocateFileService</i> . |
| Sessions Service | Stores information about end users that is needed for a short period of time. For example, you can use sessions to keep track of logged-in users and to automatically log a user out after a period of inactivity. The default type is <i>TSessionsService</i> . |
| User List Service | Keeps track of authorized users, their passwords, and their access rights. The default type is <i>TWebUserList</i> . |

For each of the above components, the component types listed are the default types shipped with C++Builder. Users can create their own component types or use third-party component types.

Selecting Web application module options

If the selected application module type is a page module, you can associate a name with the page by entering a name in the Page Name field in the New WebSnap Application dialog box. At runtime, the instance of this module can be either kept in cache or removed from memory when the request has been serviced. Select either of the options from the Caching field. You can select more page module options by choosing the Page Options button. The Application Module Page Options dialog is displayed and provides the following categories:

- **Producer:** The producer type for the page can be set to one of *AdapterPageProducer*, *DataSetPageProducer*, *InetXPageProducer*, *PageProducer*, or *XSLPageProducer*. If the selected page producer supports scripting, then use the Script Engine drop-down list to select the language used to script the page.

Note The *AdapterPageProducer* supports only JScript.

- **HTML:** When the selected producer uses an HTML template this group will be visible.
- **XSL:** When the selected producer uses an XSL template, such as *TXSLPageProducer*, this group will be visible.
- **New File:** Check New File if you want a template file to be created and managed as part of the unit. A managed template file appears in the Project Manager and has the same file name and location as the unit source file. Uncheck New File if you want to use the properties of the producer component (typically the *HTMLODoc* or *HTMLFile* property).
- **Template:** When New File is checked, choose the default content for the template file from the Template drop-down. The standard template displays the title of the application, the title of the page, and hyperlinks to published pages. The blank template creates a blank page.
- **Page:** Enter a page name and title for the page module. The page name is used to reference the page in an HTTP request or within the application's logic, whereas the title is the name that the end user will see when the page is displayed in a browser.
- **Published:** Check Published to allow the page to automatically respond to HTTP requests where the page name matches the pathinfo in the request message.
- **Login Required:** Check Login Required to require the user to log on before the page can be accessed.

You have now learned how to begin creating a WebSnap server application. The WebSnap tutorial in the next section describes how to develop a more complete application.

WebSnap tutorial

This tutorial provides step-by-step instructions on building a WebSnap application. The WebSnap application demonstrates how to use WebSnap HTML components to build an application that edits the content of a table. Follow the instructions from beginning to end. If you need a break, you can use File | Save All at any time to save your project.

Create a new application

This topic describes how to create a new WebSnap application called Country Tutorial. It displays a table of information about various countries to users on the Web. Users can add and delete countries and edit information about existing countries.

Step 1. Start the WebSnap application wizard

- 1 Run C++Builder and choose File | New | Other.
- 2 In the New Items dialog box, select the WebSnap tab and choose WebSnap Application.
- 3 In the New WebSnap Application dialog box:
 - Select Web App Debugger executable.
 - In the CoClass Name edit control, type CountryTutorial.
 - Select Page Module as the component type.
 - In the Page Name field, type Home.
- 4 Click OK.

Step 2. Save the generated files and project

To save the Pascal unit file and project:

- 1 Select File | Save All.
- 2 In the Save dialog, change to an appropriate directory where you can save all of the files in the Country Tutorial project.
- 3 In the File name field enter HomeU.cpp and click Save.
- 4 In the File name field enter CountryU.cpp and click Save.
- 5 In the File name field enter CountryTutorial.bpr and click Save.

Note Save the units and the project in the same directory because the application looks for the HomeU.html file in the same directory as the executable.

Step 3. Specify the application title

The application title is the name displayed to the end user. To specify the application title:

- 1 Choose View | Project Manager.
- 2 In the Project Manager expand CountryTutorial.exe and double-click the HomeU entry.
- 3 In the top line of the Object Inspector window, select ApplicationAdapter from the pull-down list.
- 4 In the Properties tab, enter Country Tutorial for the ApplicationTitle property.
- 5 Click the Preview tab in the editor window. The application title is displayed at the top of the page with the page name, Home.

This page is very basic. You can improve it by editing the HomeU.html file, either by using the HomeU.html editor tab or by using an external editor. For more information on how to edit the page template, see “Advanced HTML design” on page 34-23.

Create a CountryTable page

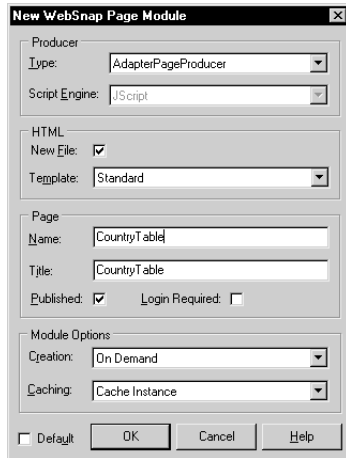
A Web page module defines a published page, and it also acts as a container for data components. Whenever a Web page needs to be returned to the end user, the Web page module extracts the necessary information from the data components it contains and uses that information to help create a page.

Here you will add a new page module to the WebSnap application. The page module will add a second viewable page to the Country Tutorial application. The first page, Home, was defined when you created the application. The second page, called CountryTable, shows the table of country information.

Step 1. Add a new Web page module

To add a new page module:

- 1 Choose File | New | Other.
- 2 In the New Items dialog box, select the WebSnap tab, choose WebSnap Page Module, and click OK.
- 3 In the dialog box, set the Producer Type to AdapterPageProducer.
- 4 In the Page Name field enter CountryTable. Notice that the Title also changes as you type.
- 5 Leave the rest of the fields with their default values.
The dialog should appear as shown in Figure 34.3.
- 6 Click OK.

Figure 34.3 New WebSnap Page Module dialog box for the CountryTable page

The CountryTable module should now appear in the IDE. After saving the module, you will add new components to the CountryTable module.

Step 2. Save the new Web page module

Save the unit to the directory of the project file. When the application runs, it searches for the CountryTableU.html file in the same directory as the executable.

- 1 Choose File | Save.
- 2 In the File name field, enter CountryTableU.cpp and click Save.

Add data components to the CountryTable module

TTable and *TDataSetAdapter* are data-aware components; they provide access to data. *TTable* provides the data for the HTML table. *TDataSetAdapter* allows server-side script to access the *TTable* component. Here we will add these data-aware components to your application.

Steps 1 and 2 below assume some basic familiarity with database programming, but you don't need it in order to complete this tutorial. WebSnap acts only as an interface (through adapter components) to database components. To learn more about database programming, you can refer to Part II of this manual.

Step 1. Add data-aware components

- 1 Choose View | Project Manager.
- 2 In the Project Manager expand CountryTutorial.exe and double-click the CountryTableU entry.
- 3 Choose View | Object TreeView. The Object TreeView window becomes active.
- 4 Select the BDE tab on the component palette.

- 5 Select a Table component and add it to the CountryTable Web page module.
- 6 Select a Session component and add it to the CountryTable Web page module. The Session component is required because you are using a BDE component (*TTable*) in a multi-threaded application.
- 7 Select the Session component, named Session1 by default, in the Web page module or the Object TreeView. This displays the Session component values in the Object Inspector.
- 8 In the Object Inspector, set the *AutoSessionName* property to *true*.
- 9 Select the Table component in the Web page module or the Object TreeView. This displays the Table component values in the Object Inspector.
- 10 In the Object Inspector, change the following properties:
 - Set the *DatabaseName* property to DBDEMOS .
 - In the *Name* property, type Country.
 - Set the *TableName* property to country.db.
 - Set the *Active* property to *true*.

Step 2. Specify a key field

The key field is used to identify records within a table. This becomes important when you add an edit page to the application. To specify a key field:

- 1 In the Object TreeView, expand the Session and DBDemos node, then select the country.db node. This node is the Country Table component.
- 2 Right-click the country.db node and select Fields Editor.
- 3 Right-click on the CountryTable->Country editor window and choose Add All Fields.
- 4 Select the Name field from the list of added fields.
- 5 In the Object Inspector, expand the *ProviderFlags* property.
- 6 Set the *pflnKey* property to *true*.

Step 3. Add an adapter component

You are finished adding database components. Now, to expose the data in the *TTable* through server-side scripting, you must include a dataset adapter (*TDataSetAdapter*) component. To add a dataset adapter:

- 1 Choose the DataSetAdapter component from the WebSnap tab of the component palette. Add it to the CountryTable Web module.
- 2 Change the following properties in the Object Inspector:
 - Set the *DataSet* property to Country.
 - Set the *Name* property to Adapter.

When you are finished, the CountryTable Web page module should look similar to what is shown in Figure 34.4.

Figure 34.4 CountryTable Web page module



Since the elements in the module aren't visual, it doesn't matter where they appear in the module. What matters is that your module contains the same components as shown in the figure.

Create a grid to display the data

Step 1. Add a grid

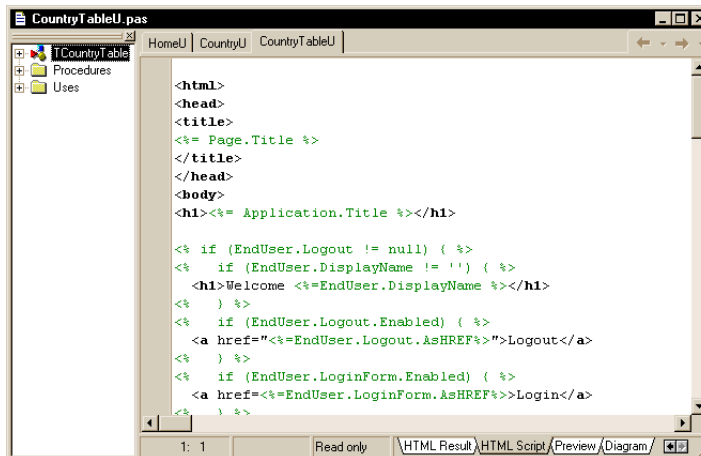
Now, add a grid to display the data from the country table database:

- 1 Choose View | Project Manager.
- 2 In the Project Manager, expand CountryTutorial.exe and double-click the CountryTableU entry.
- 3 Choose View | Object TreeView or click on the Object TreeView.
- 4 Expand the AdapterPageProducer component. This component generates server-side script to quickly build an HTML table.
- 5 Right-click the WebPageItems entry and choose New Component.
- 6 In the Add Web Component dialog box, select AdapterForm, then click OK. An AdapterForm1 component appears in the Object TreeView.
- 7 Right-click AdapterForm1 and select New Component.
- 8 In the Add Web Component window, select AdapterGrid then click OK. An AdapterGrid1 component appears in the Object TreeView.
- 9 In the Object Inspector window, set the Adapter property to Adapter.

To preview the page, select the CountryTableU tab at the top of the code editor, then select the Preview tab at the bottom. If the Preview tab is not shown, use the right arrow at the bottom to scroll through the tabs. The preview should appear similar to Figure 34.5.

Figure 34.5 CountryTable Preview tab

The Preview tab shows you what the final, static HTML page looks like in a Web browser. That page is generated from a dynamic HTML page that includes script. To see a text representation showing the script commands, select the HTML Script tab at the bottom of the editor window (see Figure 34.6).

Figure 34.6 CountryTable HTML Script tab

The HTML Script tab shows a mixture of HTML and script. HTML and script are differentiated in the editor by font color and attributes. By default, HTML tags appear in boldfaced black text, while HTML attribute names appear in black and HTML attribute values appear in blue. Script, which appears between the script brackets `<% %>`, is colored green. You can change the default font colors and attributes for these items in the Color tab of the Editor Properties dialog, which can be displayed by right-clicking on the editor and selecting Properties.

There are two other HTML-related editor tabs. The HTML Result tab shows the raw HTML contents of the preview. Note that the HTML Result, HTML Script, and

Preview views are all read-only. You can use the last HTML-related editor tab, CountryTable.html, for editing.

If you want to improve the look of this page, you can add HTML using either the CountryTable.html tab or an external editor at any time. For more information on how to edit the page template, see “Advanced HTML design” on page 34-23.

Step 2. Add editing commands to the grid

Users may need to update the content of the table by deleting, inserting or editing a row. To allow users to make such updates, add command components.

To add command components:

- 1 In the Object TreeView for the CountryTable, expand the AdapterPageProducer component and all its branches.
- 2 Right-click the AdapterGrid1 component and choose Add All Columns. Five columns are added to the adapter group.
- 3 Right-click the AdapterGrid1 component again and choose New Component.
- 4 Select AdapterCommandColumn and then click OK. An AdapterCommandColumn1 entry is added to the AdapterGrid1 component.
- 5 Right-click AdapterCommandColumn1 and choose Add Commands.
- 6 Multi-select the DeleteRow, EditRow, and NewRow commands, then click OK.
- 7 To preview the page, click the Preview tab at the bottom of the code editor. There are now three new buttons (DeleteRow, EditRow, and NewRow) at the end of each row in the table, as shown in Figure 34.7. When the application is running, pressing one of these buttons performs the associated action.

Figure 34.7 CountryTable Preview after editing commands have been added



Click the Save All button to save the application before continuing.

Add an edit form

You can now create a Web page module to handle the Edit form for the country table. Users will be able to change data in the CountryTutorial application through the Edit form. Specifically, when the user presses the EditRow or NewRow buttons, an Edit form appears. When the user is finished with the Edit form, the modified information automatically appears in the table.

Step 1. Add a new Web page module

To add a new Web page module:

- 1 Choose File | New | Other.
- 2 In the New Items dialog box, select the WebSnap tab and choose WebSnap Page Module.
- 3 In the dialog box, set the Producer Type to AdapterPageProducer.
- 4 Set the Page Name field to CountryForm.
- 5 Uncheck the Published box, so this page does not appear in a list of available pages on this site. The Edit form is accessed through the Edit button, and its contents depend on which row of the country table is to be modified.
- 6 Leave the rest of the fields and selections set to their default values. Click OK.

Step 2. Save the new module

Save the module in the same directory as the project file. When the application runs, it looks for the CountryFormU.html file in the same directory as the executable.

- 1 Choose File | Save.
- 2 In the File name field enter CountryFormU.cpp and click OK.

Step 3. Make CountryTableU accessible to the new module

Add CountryTableU unit to the include directives to allow the module access to the Adapter component.

- 1 Choose File | Include Unit Hdr.
- 2 Choose CountryTableU from the list then click OK.
- 3 Choose File | Save.

Step 4. Add input fields

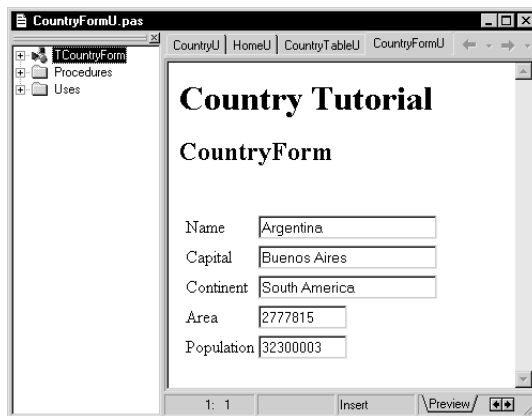
Add components to the AdapterPageProducer component to generate data entry fields in the HTML form.

To add input fields:

- 1 Choose View | Project Manager.
- 2 In the Project Manager window, expand CountryTutorial.exe and double-click the CountryFormU entry.

- 3 In the Object TreeView expand the AdapterPageProducer component, right-click WebPageItems, and select New Component.
- 4 Select AdapterForm, then click OK. An AdapterForm1 entry appears in the Object TreeView.
- 5 Right-click AdapterForm1 and select New Component.
- 6 Select AdapterFieldGroup then click OK. An AdapterFieldGroup1 entry appears in the Object TreeView.
- 7 In the Object Inspector window, set the *Adapter* property to CountryTable->Adapter. Set the *AdapterManager* property to Edit.
- 8 To preview the Page, click the Preview tab at the bottom of the code editor. Your preview should resemble the one shown in Figure 34.8.

Figure 34.8 Previewing the CountryForm



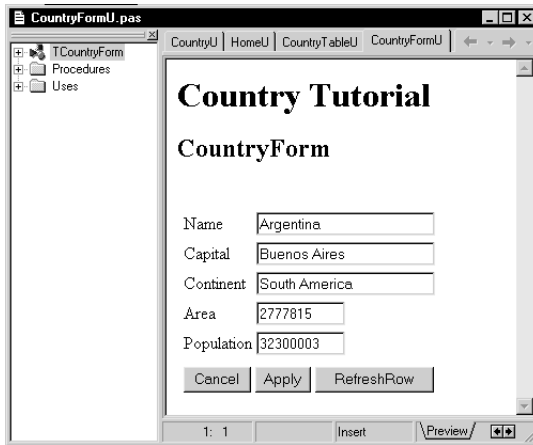
Step 5. Add buttons

Add components to the AdapterPageProducer component to generate the submit buttons in the HTML form. To add components:

- 1 In the Object TreeView, expand the *AdapterPageProducer* component and all its branches.
- 2 Right-click AdapterForm1 and choose New Component.
- 3 Select AdapterCommandGroup then click OK. An AdapterCommandGroup1 entry appears in the Object TreeView.
- 4 In the Object Inspector, set the *DisplayComponent* property to AdapterFieldGroup1.
- 5 Right-click AdapterCommandGroup1 entry and choose Add Commands.
- 6 Multi-select the Cancel, Apply, and Refresh Row commands, then click OK.

- 7 To preview the page, click the Preview tab at the bottom of the code editor window. If the preview does not show the country form, click the Code tab and then click the Preview tab again. Your preview should resemble the one shown in Figure 34.9.

Figure 34.9 CountryForm with submit buttons



Step 6. Link form actions to the grid page

When the user clicks a button, an adapter action is executed which in turn carries out the described action. To specify which page to display after an adapter action is executed:

- 1 In the Object TreeView, expand AdapterCommandGroup1 to show the CmdCancel, CmdApply, and CmdRefreshRow entries.
- 2 Select CmdCancel. In the Object Inspector window, type CountryTable in the *PageName* property.
- 3 Select CmdApply. In the Object Inspector window, type CountryTable in the *PageName* property.

Step 7. Link grid actions to the form page

An adapter action is executed by pushing a button in the grid. To specify which page is displayed in response to the adapter action:

- 1 Choose View | Project Manager.
- 2 In the Project Manager, expand CountryTutorial.exe and double-click the CountryTableU entry.
- 3 In the Object TreeView, expand the *AdapterPageProducer* component and all its branches to show the CmdNewRow, CmdEditRow, and CmdDeleteRow entries. These entries appear under the AdapterCommandColumn1 entry.
- 4 Select CmdNewRow. In the Object Inspector, type CountryForm in the *PageName* property.

- 5 Select `CmdEditRow`. In the Object Inspector, type `CountryForm` in the *PageName* property.

To verify that the application is working and that all buttons perform some action, run the application. To learn how to run the application, see “Run the completed application” on page 34-21. When you run the application, you are running a server. To check that the application is working, you must view it in a Web browser. You can do this by launching it from the Web Application debugger.

Note There will be no indication of database errors, such as an invalid type. For example, try adding a new country with an invalid value (for example, 'abc') in the Area field.

Run the completed application

To run the completed application:

- 1 Choose **Run | Run**. A form is displayed. Web App Debugger executable Web applications are COM servers, and the form you see is the console window for the COM server. The first time you run the project, it registers the COM object that the Web App Debugger can access directly.
- 2 Choose **Tools | Web App Debugger**.
- 3 Click the default URL link to display the `ServerInfo` page. The `ServerInfo` page displays the names of all registered Web Application Debugger executables.
- 4 Choose `CountryTutorial` in the drop-down list and click on the **Go** button.

Your browser now shows the Country Tutorial application. Click on the `CountryTable` link to see the `CountryTable` page.

Add error reporting

Right now, your application won't show any errors to the user. For example, if someone types letters into the Area field of a country record, that user will receive no notification that an error occurred. You will now add an *AdapterErrorList* component to display errors that occur while executing adapter actions which edit the country table.

Step 1. Add error support to the grid

To add error support to the grid:

- 1 In the Object TreeView for `CountryTable`, expand the *AdapterPageProducer* component and all its branches to show `AdapterForm1`.
- 2 Right-click `AdapterForm1` and choose **New Component**.
- 3 Select `AdapterErrorList` from the list, then click **OK**. An `AdapterErrorList1` entry appears in the Object TreeView.
- 4 Move `AdapterErrorList1` above `AdapterGrid1` (either by dragging it or by using the upward-pointing arrow in the Object TreeView toolbar).

- 5 In the Object Inspector, set the *Adapter* property to Adapter.

Step 2. Add error support to the form

To add error support to the form:

- 1 In the Object TreeView for CountryForm, expand the *AdapterPageProducer* component and all its branches to show AdapterForm1.
- 2 Right-click AdapterForm1 and choose New Component.
- 3 Select AdapterErrorList from the list, then click OK. An AdapterErrorList1 entry appears in the Object TreeView.
- 4 Move AdapterErrorList1 above AdapterFieldGroup1 (either by dragging it or by using the upward-pointing arrow in the Object TreeView toolbar).
- 5 In the Object Inspector, set the *Adapter* property to CountryTable->Adapter.

Step 3. Test the error-reporting mechanism

To observe the error-reporting mechanism, you must first make a small change to the C++Builder IDE. Select Tools | Debugger Options. In the Language Exceptions tab, make sure the Stop on Delphi Exceptions checkbox is unchecked, which will allow the application to proceed when exceptions are detected. Now, to test for grid errors:

- 1 Run the application and browse to the CountryTable page using the Web Application Debugger. For information on how to do this, see “Run the completed application” on page 34-21.
- 2 Open another browser window and browse to the CountryTable page.
- 3 Click the DeleteRow button on the first row in the grid.
- 4 Without refreshing the second browser, click the DeleteRow button on the first row in the grid.

An error message, “Row not found in Country,” is displayed above the grid.

To test for form errors:

- 1 Run the application, and browse to the CountryTable page using the Web Application debugger.
- 2 Click on the EditRow Button. The CountryForm page is displayed.
- 3 Change the area field to 'abc', and click the Apply Button.

An error message (“Invalid value for field ‘Area’”) will be displayed above the first field.

You have now completed the WebSnap tutorial. You might want to recheck the Stop on Delphi Exceptions checkbox before continuing. Also, save the application by choosing File | Save All so your completed application is available for future reference.

Advanced HTML design

Using adapters and adapter page producers, WebSnap makes it easy to create scripted HTML pages in your Web server application. You can create a Web front end for your application data using WebSnap tools that may suit all of your needs. One powerful feature of WebSnap, however, is the ability to incorporate Web design expertise from other sources into your application. This section discusses some strategies for expanding the Web server design and maintenance process to include other tools and non-programmer team members.

The end products of WebSnap development are your server application and HTML templates for the pages that the server produces. The templates include a mixture of scripting and HTML. Once they have been generated initially, they can be edited at any time using any HTML tool you like. (It would be best to use a tool that supports embedded script tags, like Microsoft FrontPage, to ensure that the editor doesn't accidentally damage the script.) The ability to edit template pages outside of the IDE can be used many ways.

For example, C++ Builder developers can edit the HTML templates at design time using any external editor they prefer. This allows them to use advanced formatting and scripting features that may be present in an external HTML editor but not in C++ Builder. To enable an external HTML editor from the IDE, use the following steps:

- 1 From the main menu, select Tools | Environment Options. In the Environment Options dialog, click on the Internet tab.
- 2 In the Internet File Types box, select HTML and click the Edit button to display the Edit Type dialog box.
- 3 In the Edit Action box, select an action associated with your HTML editor. For example, to select the default HTML editor on your system, choose Edit from the drop-down list. Click OK twice to close the Edit Type and Environment Options dialog boxes.

To edit an HTML template, open the unit which contains that template. In the Edit window, right-click and select html Editor from the context menu. The HTML editor displays the template for editing in a separate window. The editor runs independent of the IDE; save the template and close the editor when you're finished.

After the product has been deployed, you may wish to change the look of the final HTML pages. Perhaps your software development team is not even responsible for the final page layout. That duty may belong to a dedicated Web page designer in your organization, for example. Your page designers may not have any experience with C++ Builder development. Fortunately, they don't have to. They can edit the page templates at any point in the product development and maintenance cycle, without ever changing the source code. Thus, WebSnap HTML templates can make server development and maintenance more efficient.

Manipulating server-side script in HTML files

HTML in page templates can be modified at any time in the development cycle. Server-side scripting can be a different matter, however. It is always possible to manipulate the server-side script in the templates outside of C++ Builder, but it is not recommended for pages generated by an adapter page producer. The adapter page producer is different from ordinary page producers in that it can change the server-side scripting in the page templates at runtime. It can be difficult to predict how your script will act if other script is added dynamically. If you want to manipulate script directly, make sure that your Web page module contains a page producer instead of an adapter page producer.

If you have a Web page module that uses an adapter page producer, you can convert it to use a regular page producer instead by using the following steps:

- 1 In the module you want to convert (let's call it `ModuleName`), copy all of the information from the HTML Script tab to the `ModuleName.html` tab, replacing all of the information that it contained previously.
- 2 Drop a page producer (located on the Internet tab of the component palette) onto your Web page module.
- 3 Set the page producer's *ScriptEngine* property to match that of the adapter page producer it replaces.
- 4 Change the page producer in the Web page module from the adapter page producer to the new page producer. Click on the Preview tab to verify that the page contents are unchanged.
- 5 The adapter page producer has now been bypassed. You may now delete it from the Web page module.

Login support

Many Web server applications require login support. For example, a server application may require a user to login before granting access to some parts of a Web site. Pages may have a different appearance for different users; logins may be necessary to enable the Web server to send the right pages. Also, because servers have physical limitations on memory and processor cycles, server applications sometimes need the ability to limit the number of users at any given time.

With WebSnap, incorporating login support into your Web server application is fairly simple and straightforward. In this section, you will learn how you can add login support, either by designing it in from the beginning of your development process or by retrofitting it onto an existing application.

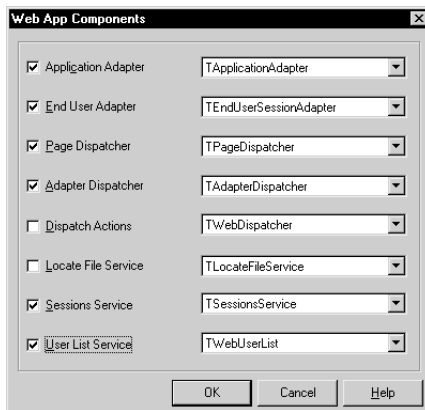
Adding login support

In order to implement login support, you need to make sure your Web application module has the following components:

- A user list service (an object of type *TWebUserList*), which contains the usernames, passwords and permissions for server users
- A sessions service (*TSessionsService*), which stores information about users currently logged in to the server
- An end user adapter (*TEndUserSessionAdapter*) which handles actions associated with logging in

When you first create your Web server application, you can add these components using the New WebSnap Application dialog box. Click the Components button on that dialog to display the New Web App Components dialog box. Check the End User Adapter, Sessions Service and Web User List boxes. Select *TEndUserSessionAdapter* on the drop down menu next to the End User Adapter box to select the end user adapter type. (The default choice, *TEndUserAdapter*, is not appropriate for login support because it cannot track the current user.) When you're finished, your dialog should look like the one shown below. Click OK twice to dismiss the dialog boxes. Your Web application module now has the necessary components for login support.

Figure 34.10 Web App Components dialog with options for login support selected



If you are adding login support to an existing Web application module, you can drop these components directly into your module from the WebSnap tab of the component palette. The Web application module will configure itself automatically.

The sessions service and the end user adapter may not require your attention during your design phase, but the Web user list probably will. You can add default users and set their read/modify permissions through the WebUserList component editor. Double-click on the component to display an editor which lets you set usernames, passwords and access rights. For more information on how to set up access rights, see “User access rights” on page 34-28.

Using the sessions service

The sessions service, which is an object of type *TSessionsService*, keeps track of the users who are logged into your Web server application. The sessions service is responsible for assigning a different session for each user and for associating name/value pairs (such as a username) with a user.

Information contained in a sessions service is stored in the application's memory. Therefore, the Web server application must keep running between requests for the sessions service to work. Some server application types, such as CGI, terminate between requests.

Note If you want your application to support logins, be sure to use a server type that does not terminate between requests. If your project produces a Web App debugger executable, you must have the application running in the background before it receives a page request. Otherwise it will terminate after each page request, and users will never be able to get past the login page.

There are two important properties in the sessions service which you can use to change default server behavior. The *MaxSessions* property specifies how many users can be logged into the system at any given time. The default value for *MaxSessions* is -1, which places no software limitation on the number of allowed users. Of course, your server hardware can still run short of memory or processor cycles for new users, which can adversely affect system performance. If you are concerned that excessive numbers of users might overwhelm your server, be sure to set *MaxSessions* to an appropriate value.

The *DefaultTimeout* property specifies the default time-out period in minutes. After *DefaultTimeout* minutes have passed without any user activity, the session is automatically terminated. If the user had logged in, all login information is lost.. The default value is 20. You can override the default value in any given session by changing its *TimeoutMinutes* property.

Login pages

Of course, your application also needs a login page. Users enter their username and password for authentication, either while trying to access a restricted page or prior to such an attempt. The user can also specify which page they receive when authentication is completed. If the username and password match a user in the Web user list, the user acquires the appropriate access rights and is forwarded to the page specified on the login page. If the user isn't authenticated, the login page may be redisplayed (the default action) or some other action may occur.

Fortunately, WebSnap makes it easy to create a simple login page using a Web page module and the adapter page producer. To create a login page, start by creating a new Web page module. Select File | New | Other to display the New Items dialog box, then select WebSnap Page Module from the WebSnap tab. Select AdapterPageProducer as the page producer type. Fill in the other options however you like. Login tends to be a good name for the login page.

Now you should add the most basic login page fields: a username field, a password field, a selection box for selecting which page the user receives after logging in, and a Login button which submits the page and authenticates the user. To add these fields:

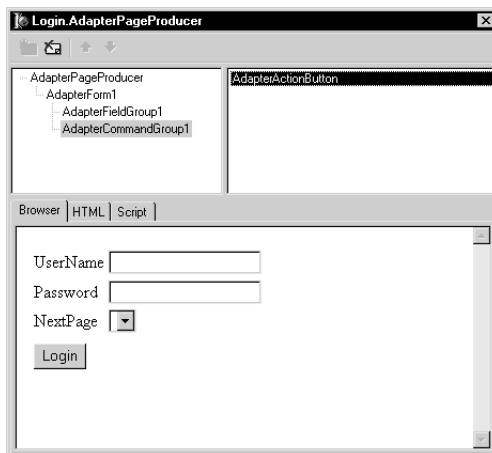
- 1 Add a *LoginFormAdapter* component (which you can find on the WebSnap tab of the component palette) to the Web page module you just created.
- 2 Double-click the *AdapterPageProducer* component to display a Web page editor window.
- 3 Right-click the *AdapterPageProducer* in the top left pane and select New Component. In the Add Web Component dialog box, select *AdapterForm* and click OK.
- 4 Add an *AdapterFieldGroup* to the *AdapterForm*. (Right-click the *AdapterForm* in the top left pane and select New Component. In the Add Web Component dialog box, select *AdapterFieldGroup* and click OK.)
- 5 Now go to the Object Inspector and set the *Adapter* property of your *AdapterFieldGroup* to your *LoginFormAdapter*. The *UserName*, *Password* and *NextPage* fields should appear automatically in the Browser tab of the Web page editor.

So, WebSnap takes care of most of the work in a few simple steps. The login page is still missing a Login button, which submits the information on the form for authentication. To add a Login button:

- 1 Add an *AdapterCommandGroup* to the *AdapterForm*.
- 2 Add an *AdapterActionButton* to the *AdapterCommandGroup*.
- 3 Click on the *AdapterActionButton* (listed in the upper right pane of the Web page editor) and change its *ActionName* property to *Login* using the Object Inspector. You can see a preview of your login page in the Web page editor's Browser tab.

Your Web page editor should look similar to the one shown below.

Figure 34.11 An example of a login page as seen from a Web page editor



If the button doesn't appear below the *AdapterFieldGroup*, make sure that the *AdapterCommandGroup* is listed below the *AdapterFieldGroup* on the Web page editor. If it appears above, select the *AdapterCommandGroup* and click the down arrow on the Web page editor. (In general, Web page elements appear vertically in the same order as they appear in the Web page editor.)

There is one more step necessary before your login page becomes functional. You need to specify which of your pages is the login page in your end user session adapter. To do so, select the *EndUserSessionAdapter* component in your Web application module. In the Object Inspector, change the *LoginPage* property to the name of your login page. Your login page is now enabled for all the pages in your Web server application.

Setting pages to require logins

Once you have a working login page, you must require logins for those pages which need controlled access. The easiest way to have a page require logins is to design that requirement into the page. When you first create a Web page module, check the Login Required box in the Page section of the New WebSnap Page Module dialog box.

If you create a page without requiring logins, you can change your mind later. To require logins after a Web page module has been created:

- 1 Open the source code file associated with the Web page module in the editor.
- 2 Scroll down to the declaration of the static *WebInit* function.
- 3 Uncomment the *wpLoginRequired* portion of the parameter list by removing the */** and **/* symbols surrounding it. The *WebInit* function should resemble the one shown below:

```
static TWebPageInit WebInit(__classid(TAdapterPageProducerPage3), crOnDemand, caCache,
    PageAccess << wpPublished << wpLoginRequired, ".html", "", "", "", "");
```

To remove the login requirement from a page, reverse the process and recomment the *wpLoginRequired* portion of the declaration.

Note You can use the same process to make the page published or not. Simply add or remove comment marks around the *wpPublished* portion as needed.

User access rights

User access rights are an important part of any Web server application. You need to be able to control who can view and modify the information your server provides. For example, let's say you are building a server application to handle online retail sales. It makes sense to allow users to view items in your catalog, but you don't want them to be able to change your prices! Clearly, access rights are an important issue.

Fortunately, WebSnap offers you several ways to control access to pages and server content. In previous sections, you saw how you can control page access by requiring logins. You have other options as well. For example:

- You can show data fields in an edit box to users with appropriate modify access rights; other users will see the field contents, but not have the ability to edit them.
- You can hide specific fields from users who don't have the correct view access rights.
- You can prevent unauthorized users from receiving specific pages.

Descriptions for implementing these behaviors are included in this section.

Dynamically displaying fields as edit or text boxes

If you use the adapter page producer, you can change the appearance of page elements for users with different access rights. For example, the Biolife demo (found in the WebSnap subdirectory of the Demos directory) contains a form page which shows all the information for a given species. The form appears when the user clicks a Details button on the grid. A user logged in as Will sees data displayed as plain text. Will is not allowed to modify the data, so the form doesn't give him a mechanism to do so. User Ellen does have modify permissions, so when Ellen views the form page, she sees a series of edit boxes which allow her to change field contents. Using access rights in this manner can save you from creating extra pages.

The appearance of some page elements, such as *TAdapterDisplayField* and *TAdapterDisplayColumn*, is determined by its *ViewMode* property. If *ViewMode* is set to *vmToggleOnAccess*, the page element will appear as an edit box to users with modify access. Users without modify access will see plain text. Set the *ViewMode* property to *vmToggleOnAccess* to allow the page element's appearance and function to be determined dynamically.

A Web user list is a list of *TWebUserListItem* objects, one for each user who can login to the system. Permissions for users are stored in their Web user list item's *AccessRights* property. *AccessRights* is a text string, so you are free to specify permissions any way you like. Create a name for every kind of access right you want in your server application. If you want a user to have multiple access rights, separate items in the list with a space, semicolon or comma.

Access rights for fields are controlled by their *ViewAccess* and *ModifyAccess* properties. *ViewAccess* stores the name of the access rights needed to view a given field. *ModifyAccess* dictates what access rights are needed to modify field data. These properties appear in two places: in each field and in the adapter object that contains them.

Checking access rights is a two-step process. When deciding the appearance of a field in a page, the application first checks the field's own access rights. If the value is an empty string, the application then checks the access rights for the adapter which contains the field. If the adapter property is empty as well, the application will follow its default behavior. For modify access, the default behavior is to allow modifications by any user in the Web user list who has a non-empty *AccessRights* property. For view access, permission is automatically granted when no view access rights are specified.

Hiding fields and their contents

You can hide the contents of a field from users who don't have appropriate view permissions. First set the *ViewAccess* property for the field to match the permission you want users to have. Next, make sure that the *ViewAccess* for the field's page element is set to *vmToggleOnAccess*. The field caption will appear, but the value of the field won't.

Of course, it is often best to hide all references to the field when a user doesn't have view permissions. To do so, set the *HideOptions* for the field's page element to include *hoHideOnNoDisplayAccess*. Neither the caption nor the contents of the field will be displayed.

Preventing page access

You may decide that certain pages should not be accessible to unauthorized users. To grant check access rights before displaying pages, alter your declaration of the module's *WebInit* function. This function appears in the source code for your module.

The *WebInit* function takes up to 9 arguments. WebSnap usually leaves four of them set to default values (empty strings), so the call generally looks like this:

```
static TWebPageInit WebInit(__classid(TAdapterPageProducerPage3), crOnDemand, caCache,
    PageAccess << wpPublished /* << wpLoginRequired */, ".html", "", "", "", "");
```

To check permissions before granting access, you need to supply the string for the necessary permission in the ninth parameter. For example, let's say that the permission is called *Access*. This is how you could modify the *WebInit* function:

```
static TWebPageInit WebInit(__classid(TAdapterPageProducerPage3), crOnDemand, caCache,
    PageAccess << wpPublished /* << wpLoginRequired */, ".html", "", "", "", "Access");
```

Access to the page will now be denied to anyone who lacks *Access* permission.

Server-side scripting in WebSnap

Page producer templates can include scripting languages such as JScript or VBScript. The page producer executes the script in response to a request for the producer's content. Because the Web server application evaluates the script, it is called server-side script, as opposed to client-side script (which is evaluated by the browser).

This section provides a conceptual overview of server-side scripting and how it is used by WebSnap applications. The "WebSnap server-side scripting reference" appendix has much more detailed information about script objects and their properties and methods. You can think of it as an API reference for server-side scripting, similar to the object descriptions for C++Builder found in the help files. The appendix also contains detailed script examples which show you exactly how script can be used to generate HTML pages.

Although server-side scripting is a valuable part of WebSnap, it is not essential that you use scripting in your WebSnap applications. Scripting is used for HTML generation and nothing else. It allows you to insert application data into an HTML page. In fact, almost all of the properties exposed by adapters and other script-

enabled objects are read-only. Server-side script isn't used to change application data, which is still managed by components and event handlers written in Pascal or C++.

There are other ways to insert application data into an HTML page. You can use Web Broker's transparent tags or some other tag-based solution, if you prefer. For example, several projects in the C++ Builder Examples\WebSnap folder use XML and XSL instead of scripting. Without scripting, however, you will be forced to write most of your HTML generation logic in C++, which will increase your development time.

The scripting used in WebSnap is object-oriented and supports conditional logic and looping, which can greatly simplify your page generation tasks. For example, your pages may include a data field that can be edited by some users but not others. With scripting, conditional logic can be placed in your template pages which displays an edit box for authorized users and simple text for others. With a tag-based approach, you must program such decision-making into your HTML generating source code.

Active scripting

WebSnap relies on *active scripting* to implement server-side script. Active scripting is a technology created by Microsoft to allow a scripting language to be used with application objects through COM interfaces. Microsoft ships two active scripting languages, VBScript and JScript. Support for other languages is available through third parties.

Script engine

The page producer's *ScriptEngine* property identifies the active scripting engine that evaluates the script within a template. It is set to support JScript by default, but it can also support other scripting languages (such as VBScript).

Note WebSnap's adapters are designed to produce JScript. You will need to provide your own script generation logic for other scripting languages.

Script blocks

Script blocks, which appear in HTML templates, are delimited by `<%` and `%>`. The script engine evaluates any text inside script blocks. The result becomes part of the page producer's content. The page producer writes text outside of a script block after translating any embedded transparent tags. Script blocks can also enclose text, allowing conditional logic and loops to dictate the output of text. For example, the following JScript block generates a list of five numbered lines:

```
<ul>
<% for (i=0;i<5;i++) { %>
    <li>Item <%=i %></li>
<% } %>
</ul>
```

(The `<%=` delimiter is short for *Response.Write*.)

Creating script

Developers can take advantage of WebSnap features to automatically generate script.

Wizard templates

When creating a new WebSnap application or page module, WebSnap wizards provide a template field that is used to select the initial content for the page module template. For example, the Default template generates JScript which, in turn, displays the application title, page name, and links to published pages.

TAdapterPageProducer

The *TAdapterPageProducer* builds forms and tables by generating HTML and JScript. The generated JScript calls adapter objects to retrieve field values, field image parameters, and action parameters.

Editing and viewing script

Use the HTML Result tab to view the HTML resulting from the executed script. Use the Preview tab to view the result in a browser. The HTML Script tab is available when the Web Page module uses *TAdapterPageProducer*. The HTML Script tab displays the HTML and JScript generated by the *TAdapterPageProducer* object. Consult this view to see how to write script that builds HTML forms to display adapter fields and execute adapter actions.

Including script in a page

A template can include script from a file or from another page. To include script from a file, use the following code statement:

```
<!-- #include file="filename.html" -->
```

When the template includes script from another page, the script is evaluated by the including page. Use the following code statement to include the unevaluated content of page1.

```
<!-- #include page="page1" -- >
```

Script objects

Script objects are objects that script commands can reference. You make objects available for scripting by registering an *IDispatch* interface to the object with the

active scripting engine. The following objects are available for scripting:

Table 34.4 Script objects

| Script object | Description |
|-----------------|---|
| Application | Provides access to the application adapter of the Web Application module. |
| EndUser | Provides access to the end user adapter of the Web Application module. |
| Session | Provides access to the session object of the Web Application module. |
| Pages | Provides access to the application pages. |
| Modules | Provides access to the application modules. |
| Page | Provides access to the current page |
| Producer | Provides access to the page producer of the Web Page module. |
| Response | Provides access to the WebResponse. Use this object when tag replacement is not desired. |
| Request | Provides access to the WebRequest. |
| Adapter objects | All of the adapter components on the current page can be referenced without qualification. Adapters in other modules must be qualified using the Modules objects. |

Script objects on the current page, which all use the same adapter, can be referenced without qualification. Script objects on other pages are part of another page module and have a different adapter object. They can be accessed by starting the script object reference with the name of the adapter object. For example,

```
<%= FirstName %>
```

displays the contents of the *FirstName* property of the current page's adapter. The following script line displays the *FirstName* property of *Adapter1*, which is in another page module:

```
<%= Adapter1.FirstName %>
```

For more complete descriptions of script objects, see Appendix B, "WebSnap server-side scripting reference."

Dispatching requests and responses

One reason to use WebSnap for your Web server application development is that WebSnap components automatically handle HTML requests and responses. Instead of writing event handlers for common page transfer chores, you can focus your efforts on your business logic and server design. Still, it can be helpful to understand how WebSnap applications handle HTML requests and responses. This section gives you an overview of that process.

Before handling any requests, the Web application module initializes the Web context object (of type *TWebContext*). The Web context object, which is accessed by calling the global *WebContext* function, provides global access to variables used by components servicing the request. For example, the Web context contains the *TWebRequest* and *TWebResponse* objects to represent the HTTP request message and the response that should be returned.

Dispatcher components

The dispatcher components in the Web application module control the flow of the application. The dispatchers determine how to handle certain types of HTTP request messages by examining the HTTP request.

The adapter dispatcher component (*TAdapterDispatcher*) looks for a content field, or a query field, that identifies an adapter action component or an adapter image field component. If the adapter dispatcher finds a component, it passes control to that component.

The Web dispatcher component (*TWebDispatcher*) maintains a collection of action items (of type *TWebActionItem*) that know how to handle certain types of HTTP request messages. The Web dispatcher looks for an action item that matches the request. If it finds one, it passes control to that action item. The Web dispatcher also looks for auto-dispatching components that can handle the request.

The page dispatcher component (*TPageDispatcher*) examines the *PathInfo* property of the *TWebRequest* object, looking for the name of a registered Web page module. If the dispatcher finds a Web page module name, it passes control to that module.

Adapter dispatcher operation

The adapter dispatcher component (*TAdapterDispatcher*) automatically handles HTML form submissions, and requests for dynamic images, by calling adapter action and field components.

Using adapter components to generate content

For WebSnap applications to automatically execute adapter actions and retrieve dynamic images from adapter fields, the HTML content must be properly constructed. If the HTML content is not properly constructed, the resulting HTTP request will not contain the information that the adapter dispatcher needs to call adapter action and field components.

To reduce errors in constructing the HTML page, adapter components indicate the names and values of HTML elements. Adapter components have methods that retrieve the names and values of hidden fields that must appear on an HTML form designed to update adapter fields. Typically, page producers use server-side scripting to retrieve names and values from adapter components and then uses this information to generate HTML. For example, the following script constructs an `` element that references the field called `Graphic` from `Adapter1`:

```
">
```

When the Web application evaluates the script, the HTML `src` attribute will contain the information necessary to identify the field and any parameters that the field component needs to retrieve the image. The resulting HTML might look like this:

```

```

When the browser sends an HTTP request to retrieve this image to the Web application, the adapter dispatcher will be able to determine that the `Graphic` field of

Adapter1, in the module DM, should be called with the parameter “Species No=90090”. The adapter dispatcher will call the Graphic field to write an appropriate HTTP response.

The following script constructs an <A> element referencing the EditRow action of Adapter1 and creates a hyperlink to a page called Details:

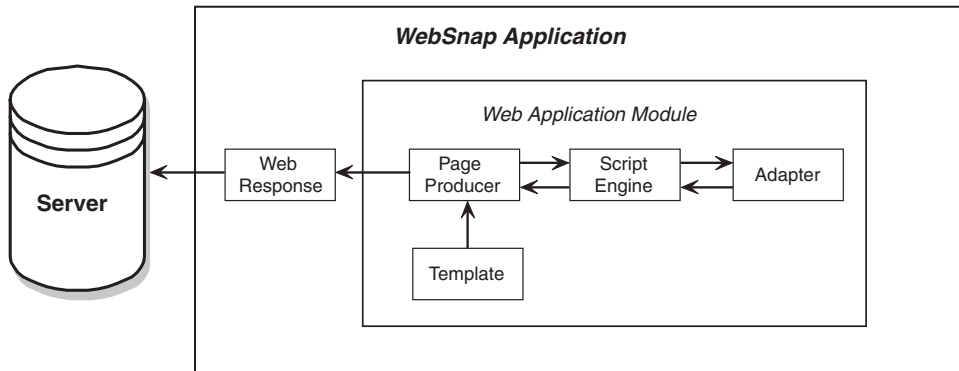
```
<a href="%=Adapter1.EditRow.LinkToPage("Details", Page.Name).AShref%">Edit...</a>
```

The resulting HTML might look like this:

```
<a href="?&_lSpecies No=90310&__sp=Edit&__fp=Grid&__id=DM.Adapter1.EditRow">Edit...</a>
```

The end user clicks this hyperlink, and the browser sends an HTTP request. The adapter dispatcher can determine that the EditRow action of Adapter1, in the module DM, should be called with the parameter Species No=903010. The adapter dispatcher also displays the Edit page if the action executes successfully, and displays the Grid page if action execution fails. It then calls the EditRow action to locate the row to be edited, and the page named Edit is called to generate an HTTP response. Figure 34.12 shows how adapter components are used to generate content.

Figure 34.12 Generating content flow



Receiving adapter requests and generating responses

When the adapter dispatcher receives a client request, the adapter dispatcher creates adapter request and adapter response objects to hold information about that HTTP request. The adapter request and adapter response objects are stored in the Web context to allow access during the processing of the request.

The adapter dispatcher creates two types of adapter request objects: action and image. It creates the action request object when executing an adapter action. It creates the image request object when retrieving an image from an adapter field.

The adapter response object is used by the adapter component to indicate the response to an adapter action or adapter image request. There are two types of adapter response objects, action and image.

Action requests

Action request objects are responsible for breaking the HTTP request down into information needed to execute an adapter action. The types of information needed for executing an adapter action may include the following request information:

Table 34.5 Request information found in action requests

| Request informaton | Description |
|---------------------------|--|
| Component name | Identifies the adapter action component. |
| Adapter mode | Defines a mode. For example, <i>TDataSetAdapter</i> supports Edit, Insert, and Browse modes. An adapter action may execute differently depending on the mode. |
| Success page | Identifies the page displayed after successful execution of the action. |
| Failure page | Identifies the page displayed if an error occurs during execution of the action. |
| Action request parameters | Identifies the parameters need by the adapter action. For example, the <i>TDataSetAdapter</i> Apply action will include the key values identifying the record to be updated. |
| Adapter field values | Specifies values for the adapter fields passed in the HTTP request when an HTML form is submitted. A field value can include new values entered by the end user, the original values of the adapter field, and uploaded files. |
| Record keys | Specifies keys that uniquely identify each record. |

Generating action responses

Action response objects generate an HTTP response on behalf of an adapter action component. The adapter action indicates the type of response by setting properties within the object, or by calling methods in the action response object. The properties include:

- *RedirectOptions*—The redirect options indicate whether to perform an HTTP redirect instead of returning HTML content.
- *ExecutionStatus*—Setting the status to success causes the default action response to be the content of the success page identified in the Action Request.

The action response methods include:

- *RespondWithPage*—The adapter action calls this method when a particular Web page module should generate the response.
- *RespondWithComponent*—The adapter action calls this method when the response should come from the Web page module containing this component.
- *RespondWithURL*—The adapter action calls this method when the response is a redirect to a specified URL.

When responding with a page, the action response object attempts to use the page dispatcher to generate page content. If it does not find the page dispatcher, it calls the Web page module directly.

Figure 34.13 illustrates how action request and action response objects handle a request.

Figure 34.13 Action request and response

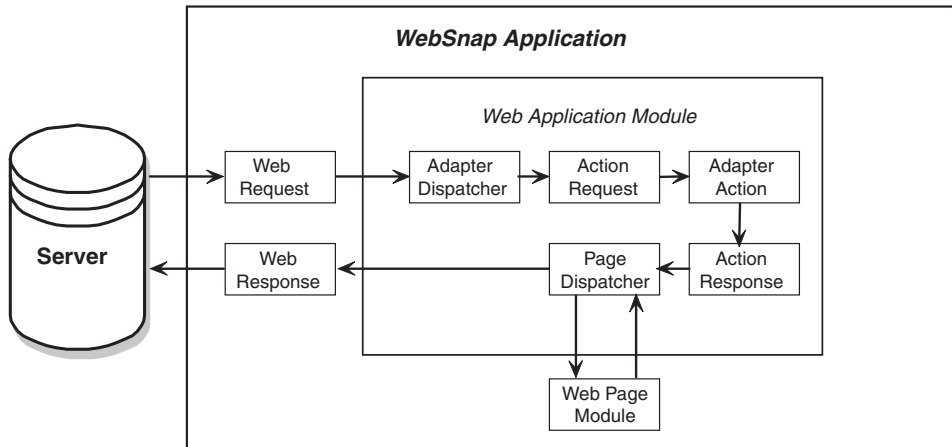


Image request

The image request object is responsible for breaking the HTTP request down into the information required by the adapter image field to generate an image. The types of information represented by the Image Request include:

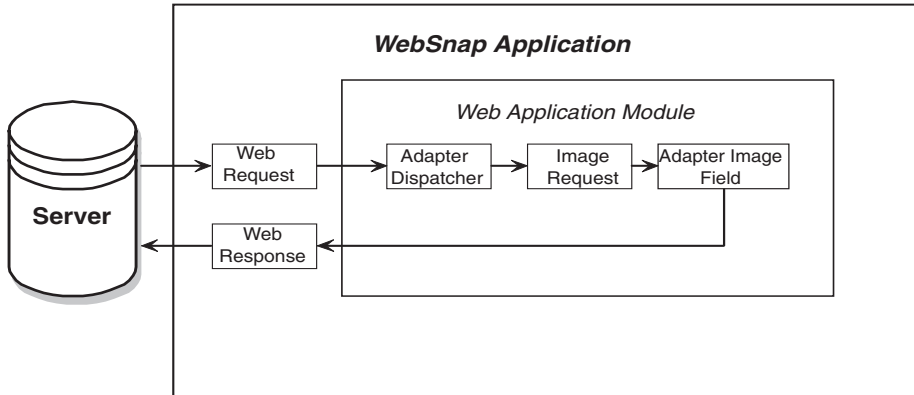
- **Component name** - Identifies the adapter field component.
- **Image request parameters** - Identifies the parameters needed by the adapter image. For example, the *TDataSetAdapterImageField* object needs key values to identify the record that contains the image.

Image response

The image response object contains the *TWebResponse* object. Adapter fields respond to an adapter request by writing an image to the Web response object.

Figure 34.14 illustrates how adapter image fields respond to a request.

Figure 34.14 Image response to a request



Dispatching action items

When responding to a request, the Web dispatcher (*TWebDispatcher*) searches through its list of action items for one that:

- matches the *PathInfo* portion of the target URL's request message, and
- can provide the service specified as the method of the request message.

It accomplishes this by comparing the *PathInfo* and *MethodType* properties of the *TWebRequest* object with the properties of the same name on the action item.

When the dispatcher finds the appropriate action item, it causes that action item to fire. When the action item fires, it does one of the following:

- Fills in the response content and sends the response, or signals that the request has been completely handled.
- Adds to the response, and then allows other action items to complete the job.
- Defers the request to other action items.

After the dispatcher has checked all of its action items, if the message was not handled correctly, the dispatcher checks for specially registered auto-dispatching components that do not use action items. (These components are specific to multi-tiered database applications.) If the request message is still not fully handled, the dispatcher calls the default action item. The default action item does not need to match either the target URL or the method of the request.

Page dispatcher operation

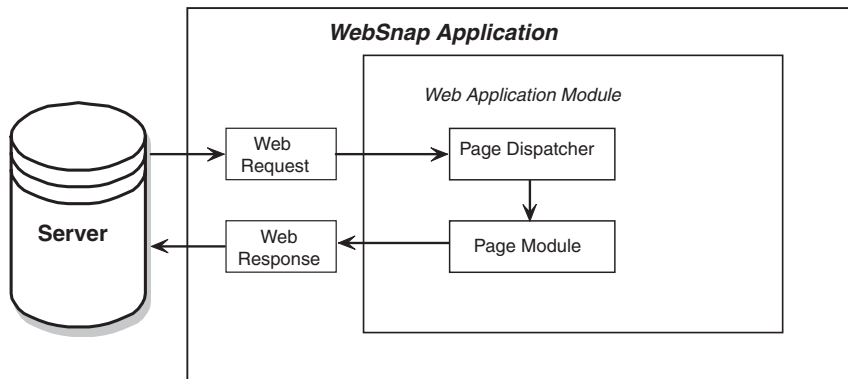
When the page dispatcher receives a client request, it determines the page name by checking the *PathInfo* portion of the target URL's request message. If the *PathInfo* portion is not blank, the page dispatcher uses the ending word of *PathInfo* as the page name. If the *PathInfo* portion is blank, the page dispatcher tries to determine a default page name.

If the page dispatcher's *DefaultPage* property contains a page name, the page dispatcher uses this name as the default page name. If the *DefaultPage* property is blank and the Web application module is a page module, the page dispatcher uses the name of the Web application module as the default page name.

If the page name is not blank, the page dispatcher searches for a Web page module with a matching name. If it finds a Web page module, it calls that module to generate a response. If the page name is blank, or if the page dispatcher does not find a Web page module, the page dispatcher raises an exception.

Figure 34.15 shows how the page dispatcher responds to a request.

Figure 34.15 Dispatching a page



Working with XML documents

XML (Extensible Markup Language) is a markup language for describing structured data. It is similar to HTML, except that the tags describe the structure of information rather than its display characteristics. XML documents provide a simple, text-based way to store information so that it is easily searched or edited. They are often used as a standard, transportable format for data in Web applications, business-to-business communication, and so on.

XML documents provide a hierarchical view of a body of data. Tags in the XML document describe the role or meaning of each data element, as illustrated in the following document, which describes a collection of stock holdings:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding=UTF-8 standalone="no" ?>
<!DOCTYPE StockHoldings SYSTEM "sth.dtd">
<StockHoldings>
  <Stock exchange="NASDAQ">
    <name>Borland</name>
    <price>15.375</price>
    <symbol>BORL</symbol>
    <shares>100</shares>
  </Stock>
  <Stock exchange="NYSE">
    <name>Pfizer</name>
    <price>42.75</price>
    <symbol>PFE</symbol>
    <shares type="preferred">25</shares>
  </Stock>
</StockHoldings>
```

This example illustrates a number of typical elements in an XML document. The first line is a processing instruction called an XML declaration. The XML declaration is optional but you should include it, because it supplies useful information about the document. In this example, the XML declaration says that the document conforms to version 1.0 of the XML specification, that it uses UTF-8 character encoding, and that it relies on an external file for its document type declaration (DTD).

The second line, which begins with the `<!DOCTYPE>` tag, is a document type declaration. The document type declaration (DTD) is how XML defines the structure of the document. It imposes syntax rules on the elements (tags) contained in the document. The DTD in this example references another file (`sth.dtd`). In this case, the structure is defined within an external file, rather than within the XML document itself. Other types of files that describe the structure of an XML document include Reduced XML Data (XDR) and XML schemas (XSD).

The remaining lines are organized into a hierarchy with a single root node (the `<StockHoldings>` tag). Each node in this hierarchy contains either a set of child nodes, or a text value. Some of the tags (the `<Stock>` and `<shares>` tags) include attributes, which are Name=Value pairs that provide details on how to interpret the tag.

Although it is possible to work directly with the text in an XML document, typically applications use additional tools for parsing and editing the data. W3C defines a set of standard interfaces for representing a parsed XML document called the Document Object Model (DOM). A number of vendors provide XML parsers that implement the DOM interfaces to let you interpret and edit XML documents more easily.

C++Builder provides a number of additional tools for working with XML documents. These tools use a DOM parser that is provided by another vendor, and make it even easier to work with XML documents. This chapter describes those tools.

Note In addition to the tools described in this chapter, C++Builder comes with tools and components for converting XML documents to data packets that integrate into the C++Builder database architecture. For details on tools for integrating XML documents into database applications, see Chapter 30, “Using XML in database applications.”

Using the Document Object Model

The Document Object Model (DOM) is a set of standard interfaces for representing a parsed XML document. By default, you get a copy of the Microsoft DOM implementation. In addition, there is a registration mechanism that lets you integrate additional DOM implementations by other vendors into the XML framework.

The XMLDOM unit includes declarations for all the DOM interfaces defined in the W3C XML DOM level 2 specification. Each DOM vendor provides an implementation for these interfaces.

- To use the Microsoft implementation, include the MSXMLDOM unit header in your source file. Because the Microsoft implementation is COM-based, you may need to register the `msxml.dll` library as a COM server if it is not already registered. You can use `Regsvr32.exe` to register this DLL.
- To use another DOM implementation, you must create a unit that defines a descendant of the `TDOMVendor` class. In your descendant class, you must override two methods: the *Description* method, which returns a string identifying the vendor, and the *DOMImplementation* method, which returns the top-level interface (*IDOMImplementation*). You should register this vendor by calling the global

RegisterDOMVendor procedure. You can unregister the vendor by calling the global *UnRegisterDOMVendor* procedure. Once you have registered your new DOMVendor, your application has access to the DOM implementation it wraps until you unregister the vendor.

Some vendors supply extensions to the standard DOM interfaces. To allow you to use these extensions, the XMLDOM unit also defines an *IDOMNodeEx* interface. *IDOMNodeEx* is a descendant of the standard *IDOMNode* that includes the most useful of these extensions.

You can work directly with the DOM interfaces to parse and edit XML documents. Simply call the *GetDOM* function to obtain an *IDOMImplementation* interface, which you can use as a starting point.

Note For detailed descriptions of the DOM interfaces, see the declarations in the XMLDOM unit header, the documentation supplied by your DOM Vendor, or the specifications provided on the W3C web site (www.w3.org).

You may find it more convenient to use special XML classes rather than working directly with the DOM interfaces. These are described below.

Working with XML components

The VCL (or CLX) defines a number of classes and interfaces for working with XML documents. These simplify the process of loading, editing, and saving XML documents.

Using TXMLDocument

The starting point for working with an XML document is the *TXMLDocument* component. The following steps describe how to use *TXMLDocument* to work directly with an XML document:

- 1 Add a *TXMLDocument* component into your form or data module.
TXMLDocument appears on the Internet page of the Component palette.
- 2 Set the *DOMVendor* property to specify the DOM implementation you want the component to use for parsing and editing an XML document. The Object Inspector lists all the currently registered DOM vendors. For information on DOM implementations, see “Using the Document Object Model” on page 35-2.
- 3 Depending on your implementation, you may want to set the *ParseOptions* property to configure how the underlying DOM implementation parses the XML document.
- 4 If you are working with an existing XML document, specify the document:
 - If the XML document is stored in a file, set the *FileName* property to the name of that file.
 - You can specify the XML document as a string instead by using the *XML* property.

5 Set the *Active* property to **true**.

Once you have an active *TXMLDocument* object, you can traverse the hierarchy of its nodes, reading or setting their values. The root node of this hierarchy is available as the *DocumentElement* property.

Working with XML nodes

Once an XML document has been parsed by a DOM implementation, the data it represents is available as a hierarchy of nodes. Each node corresponds to a tagged element in the document. For example, given the following XML:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" standalone="no" ?>
<!DOCTYPE StockHoldings SYSTEM "sth.dtd">
<StockHoldings>
  <Stock exchange="NASDAQ">
    <name>Borland</name>
    <price>15.375</price>
    <symbol>BORL</symbol>
    <shares>100</shares>
  </Stock>
  <Stock exchange="NYSE">
    <name>Pfizer</name>
    <price>42.75</price>
    <symbol>PFE</symbol>
    <shares type="preferred">25</shares>
  </Stock>
</StockHoldings>
```

TXMLDocument would generate a hierarchy of nodes as follows: The root of the hierarchy would be the *StockHoldings* node. *StockHoldings* would have two child nodes, which correspond to the two *Stock* tags. Each of these two child nodes would have four child nodes of its own (*name*, *price*, *symbol*, and *shares*). Those four child nodes would act as leaf nodes. The text they contain would appear as the value of each of the leaf nodes.

Note This division into nodes differs slightly from the way a DOM implementation generates nodes for an XML document. In particular, a DOM parser treats all tagged elements as internal nodes. Additional nodes (of type text node) would be created for the values of the *name*, *price*, *symbol*, and *shares* nodes. These text nodes would then appear as the children of the *name*, *price*, *symbol*, and *shares* nodes.

Each node is accessed through an *IXMLNode* interface, starting with the root node, which is the value of the XML document component's *DocumentElement* property.

Working with a node's value

Given an *IXMLNode* interface, you can check whether it represents an internal node or a leaf node by checking the *IsTextElement* property.

- If it represents a leaf node, you can read or set its value using the *Text* property.
- If it represents an internal node, you can access its child nodes using the *ChildNodes* property.

Thus, for example, using the XML document above, you can read the price of Borland's stock as follows:

```
_di_IXMLNode BorlandStock = XMLDocument1->DocumentElement->ChildNodes[0];
AnsiString Price = BorlandStock->ChildNodes->Nodes["price"]->Text;
```

Working with a node's attributes

If the node includes any attributes, you can work with them using the *Attributes* property. You can read or change an attribute value by specifying an existing attribute name. You can add new attributes by specifying a new attribute name when you set the *Attributes* property:

```
_di_IXMLNode BorlandStock = XMLDocument1->DocumentElement->ChildNodes[0];
BorlandStock->ChildNodes->Nodes["shares"]->Attributes["type"] = "common";
```

Adding and deleting child nodes

You can add child nodes using the *AddChild* method. *AddChild* creates new nodes that correspond to tagged elements in the XML document. Such nodes are called element nodes.

To create a new element node, specify the name that appears in the new tag and, optionally, the position where the new node should appear. For example, the following code adds a new stock listing to the document above:

```
_di_IXMLNode NewStock = XMLDocument1->DocumentElement->AddChild("stock");
NewStock->Attributes["exchange"] = "NASDAQ";
_di_IXMLNode ValueNode = NewStock->AddChild("name");
ValueNode->Text = "Cisco Systems";
ValueNode = NewStock->AddChild("price");
ValueNode->Text = "62.375";
ValueNode = NewStock->AddChild("symbol");
ValueNode->Text = "CSCO";
ValueNode = NewStock->AddChild("shares");
ValueNode->Text = "25";
```

An overloaded version of *AddChild* lets you specify the namespace URI in which the tag name is defined.

You can delete child nodes using the methods of the *ChildNodes* property. *ChildNodes* is an *IXMLNodeList* interface, which manages the children of a node. You can use its *Delete* method to delete a single child node that is identified by position or by name. For example, the following code deletes the last stock listed in the document above:

```
_di_IXMLNode StockList = XMLDocument1->DocumentElement;
StockList->ChildNodes->Delete(StockList->ChildNodes->Count - 1);
```

Abstracting XML documents with the Data Binding wizard

Although it is possible to work with an XML document using only the *TXMLDocument* component and the *IXMLNode* interface it surfaces for the nodes in that document, or even to work exclusively with the DOM interfaces (avoiding even

TXMLDocument), you can write code that is much simpler and more readable by using the XML Data Binding wizard.

The Data Binding wizard takes an XML schema or data file and generates a set of interfaces that map on top of it. (An interface is a class that contains only pure virtual members.) For example, given XML data that looks like the following:

```
<customer id=1>
  <name>Mark</name>
  <phone>(831) 431-1000</phone>
</customer>
```

The Data Binding wizard generates the following interface (along with a class to implement it):

```
__interface INTERFACE_UUID("{F3729105-3DD0-1234-80e0-22A04FE7B451}") ICustomer :
    public IXMLNode
{
public:
    virtual int __fastcall Getid(void) = 0 ;
    virtual DOMString __fastcall Getname(void) = 0 ;
    virtual DOMString __fastcall Getphone(void) = 0 ;
    virtual void __fastcall Setid(int Value)= 0 ;
    virtual void __fastcall Setname(DOMString Value)= 0 ;
    virtual void __fastcall Setphone(DOMString Value)= 0 ;
    __property int id = {read=Getid, write=Setid};
    __property DOMString name = {read=Getname, write=Setname};
    __property DOMString phone = {read=Getphone, write=Setphone};
};
```

Every child node is mapped to a property whose name matches the tag name of the child node and whose value is the interface of the child node (if the child is an internal node) or the value of the child node (for leaf nodes). Every node attribute is also mapped to a property, where the property name is the attribute name and the property value is the attribute value.

In addition to creating interfaces (and their descendant implementation classes) for each tagged element in the XML document, the wizard creates global functions for obtaining the interface to the root node. For example, if the XML above came from a document whose root node had the tag <Customers>, the Data Binding wizard would create the following global routines:

```
extern PACKAGE _di_ICustomers __fastcall GetCustomers(TXMLDocument *XMLDoc);
extern PACKAGE _di_ICustomers __fastcall GetCustomers(_di_IXMLDocument XMLDoc);
extern PACKAGE _di_ICustomers __fastcall LoadCustomers(const WideString FileName);
extern PACKAGE _di_ICustomers __fastcall NewCustomers(void);
```

The Get... function takes the interface wrapper for a *TXMLDocument* instance (or a pointer to that *TXMLDocument* instance). The Load... function dynamically creates a *TXMLDocument* instance and loads the specified XML file as its value before returning an interface pointer. The New... function creates a new (empty) *TXMLDocument* instance and returns the interface to the root node.

Using the generated interfaces simplifies your code, because they reflect the structure of the XML document more directly. For example, instead of writing code such as the following:

```
_di_IXMLNode CustIntf = XMLDocument1->DocumentElement;
CustName = CustIntf->ChildNodes->Nodes[0]->ChildNodes->Nodes["name"]->Value;
```

Your code would look as follows:

```
_di_ICustomers CustIntf = GetCustomers(XMLDocument1);
CustName = CustIntf->Nodes[0]->Name;
```

Note that the interfaces generated by the Data Binding wizard all descend from *IXMLNode*. This means you can still add and delete child nodes in the same way as when you do not use the Data Binding wizard. (See “Adding and deleting child nodes” on page 35-5.) In addition, when child nodes represent repeating elements (when all of the children of a node are of the same type), the parent node is given two methods, *Add*, and *Insert*, for adding additional repeats. These methods are simpler than using *AddChild*, because you do not need to specify the type of node to create.

Using the XML Data Binding wizard

To use the Data Binding wizard,

- 1 Choose File | New | Other and select the icon labeled XML Data Binding from the bottom of the New page.
- 2 The XML Data Binding wizard appears.
- 3 On the first page of the wizard, specify the XML document or schema for which you want to generate interfaces. This can be a sample XML document, a Document Type Definition (.dtd) file, a Reduced XML Data (.xdr) file, or an XML schema (.xsd) file.
- 4 Click the Options button to specify the naming strategies you want the wizard to use when generating interfaces and implementation classes and the default mapping of types defined in the schema to native data types.
- 5 Move to the second page of the wizard. This page lets you provide detailed information about every node type in the document or schema. At the left is a tree view that shows all of the node types in the document. For complex nodes (nodes that have children), the tree view can be expanded to display the child elements. When you select a node in this tree view, the right-hand side of the dialog displays information about that node and lets you specify how you want the wizard to treat that node.
 - The Source Name control displays the name of the node type in the XML schema.
 - The Source Datatype control displays the type of the node’s value, as specified in the XML schema.
 - The Documentation control lets you add comments to the schema describing the use or purpose of the node.

- If the wizard generates code for the selected node (that is, if it is a complex type for which the wizard generates an interface and implementation class, or if it is one of the child elements of a complex type for which the wizard generates a property on the complex type's interface), you can use the Generate Binding check box to specify whether you want the wizard to generate code for the node. If you uncheck Generate Binding, the wizard does not generate the interface or implementation class for a complex type, or does not create a property in the parent interface for a child element or attribute.
 - The Binding Options section lets you influence the code that the wizard generates for the selected element. For any node, you can specify the Identifier Name (the name of the generated interface or property). In addition, for interfaces, you must indicate which one represents the root node of the document. For nodes that represent properties, you can specify the type of the property and, if the property is not an interface, whether it is a read-only property.
- 6 Once you have specified what code you want the wizard to generate for each node, move to the third page. This page lets you choose some global options about how the wizard generates its code and lets you preview the code that will be generated, and lets you tell the wizard how to save your choices for future use.
 - To preview the code the wizard generates, select an interface in the Binding Summary list and view the resulting interface definition in the Code Preview control.
 - Use the Data Binding Settings to indicate how the wizard should save your choices. You can store the settings as annotations in a schema file that is associated with the document (the schema file specified on the first page of the dialog), or you can name an independent schema file that is used only by the wizard.
 - 7 When you click Finish, the Data Binding wizard generates a new unit that defines interfaces and implementation classes for all of the node types in your XML document. In addition, it creates a global function that takes a *TXMLDocument* object and returns the interface for the root node of the data hierarchy.

Using code that the XML Data Binding wizard generates

Once the wizard has generated a set of interfaces and implementation classes, you can use them to work with XML documents that match the structure of the document or schema you supplied to the wizard. Just as when you are using only the built-in XML components, your starting point is the *TXMLDocument* component that appears on the Internet page of the Component palette.

To work with an XML document, use the following steps:

- 1 Obtain an interface for the root node of your XML document. You can do this in one of three ways:
 - Place a *TXMLDocument* component in your form or data module. Bind the *TXMLDocument* to an XML document by setting the *FileName* property. (As an

alternative approach, you can use a string of XML by setting the *XML* property at runtime.) Then, In your code, call the global function that the wizard created to obtain an interface for the root node of the XML document. For example, if the root element of the XML document was the tag <StockList>, by default, the wizard generates a function *GetStockListType*, which returns an *IStockListType* interface:

```
XMLDocument1->FileName := "Stocks.xml";
_di_IStockListType StockList = GetStockListType(XMLDocument1);
```

- Call the generated Load... function to create and bind the *TXMLDocument* instance and obtain its interface all in one step. For example, using the same XML document described above:

```
_di_IStockListType StockList = LoadStockListType("Stocks.xml");
```

- Call the generated New... function to create the *TXMLDocument* instance for an empty document when you want to create all the data in your application:

```
_di_IStockListType StockList = NewStockListType();
```

- 2 This interface has properties that correspond to the subnodes of the document's root element, as well as properties that correspond to that root element's attributes. You can use these to traverse the hierarchy of the XML document, modify the data in the document, and so on.
- 3 To save any changes you make using the interfaces generated by the wizard, call the *TXMLDocument* component's *SaveToFile* method or read its *XML* property.

Tip If you set the *Options* property of the *TXMLDocument* object to include *doAutoSave*, then you do not need to explicitly call the *SaveToFile* method.

Using Web Services

Web Services are self-contained modular applications that can be published and invoked over the Internet. Web Services provide well-defined interfaces that describe the services provided. Unlike Web server applications that generate Web pages for client browsers, Web Services are not designed for direct human interaction. Rather, they are accessed programmatically by client applications.

Web Services are designed to allow a loose coupling between client and server. That is, server implementations do not require clients to use a specific platform or programming language. In addition to defining interfaces in a language-neutral fashion, they are designed to allow multiple communications mechanisms as well.

C++Builder's support for Web Services is designed to work using SOAP (Simple Object Access Protocol). SOAP is a standard lightweight protocol for exchanging information in a decentralized, distributed environment. It uses XML to encode remote procedure calls and typically uses HTTP as a communications protocol. For more information about SOAP, see the SOAP specification available at

<http://www.w3.org/TR/SOAP/>

Note Although the components that support Web Services are built to use SOAP and HTTP, the framework is sufficiently general that it can be expanded to use other encoding and communications protocols.

In addition to letting you build SOAP-based Web Service applications (servers), C++Builder provides support for clients of Web Services that use either a SOAP encoding or a Document Literal style. The Document Literal style is used in .Net Web Services.

The components that support Web Services are available on both Windows and Linux, so you can use them as the basis of cross-platform distributed applications. There is no special client runtime software to install, as you must have when distributing applications using CORBA. Because this technology is based on HTTP messages, it has the advantage that it is widely available on a variety of machines. Support for Web Services is built on the Web server application architecture (Web Broker).

Web Service applications publish information on what interfaces are available and how to call them using a WSDL (Web Service Definition Language) document. On the server side, your application can publish a WSDL document that describes your Web Service. On the client side, a wizard or command-line utility can import a published WSDL document, providing you with the interface definitions and connection information you need. If you already have a WSDL document that describes the Web service you want to implement, you can generate the server-side code as well when importing the WSDL document.

Understanding invokable interfaces

Servers that support Web Services are built using invokable interfaces. Invokable interfaces are pure virtual classes (classes that include only pure virtual methods) that are compiled to include runtime type information (RTTI). On the server, this RTTI is used when interpreting incoming method calls from clients so that they can be correctly marshaled. On clients, this RTTI is used to dynamically generate a method table for making calls to the methods of the interface.

To create an invokable interface, you need to declare the interface class using the `__declspec` keyword, using the `delphirtti` modifier. The descendant of any invokable interface is also invokable. However, if an invokable interface descends from another interface class that is not invokable, your Web Service can only use the methods defined in the invokable interface and its descendants. Methods inherited from the non-invokable ancestors are not compiled with type information and so can't be used as part of the Web Service.

Note For information about interface classes in C++Builder, see "Inheritance and interfaces" on page 13-2.

The `sysmac.h` header file defines a base invokable interface, *IInvokable*, from which you can derive any interface exposed to clients by a Web Service server. *IInvokable* is the same as the base interface (*IInterface*), except that it is compiled using the `__declspec(delphirtti)` option so that it and all its descendants include RTTI.

For example, the following code defines an invokable interface that contains two methods for encoding and decoding numeric values:

```
__interface INTERFACE_UUID("{C527B88F-3F8E-1134-80e0-01A04F57B270}") IEncodeDecode :
    public IInvokable
{
public:
    virtual double __stdcall EncodeValue(int Value) = 0 ;
    virtual int __stdcall DecodeValue(double Value) = 0 ;
};
```

Note In this example, notice the use of `__interface` in the declaration. This is not a true keyword, but rather a macro that is used by convention for interfaces. It maps to the `class` keyword. The `INTERFACE_UUID` macro assigns a globally unique identifier (GUID) to the interface. Note that the interface class contains only pure virtual methods.

Before a Web Service application can use this invokable interface, it must be registered with the invocation registry. On the server, the invocation registry entry allows the invoker component (*THHTTPSOAPCppInvoker*) to identify an implementation class to use for executing interface calls. On client applications, an invocation registry entry allows remote interfaced objects (*THHTTPRio*) to look up information that identifies the invokable interface and supplies information on how to call it.

Typically, your Web Service client or server creates the code to define invokable interfaces either by importing a WSDL document or using the Web Service wizard. By default, when the WSDL importer or Web Service wizard generates an interface, the definition is added to a header file with the same name as the Web Service. The corresponding .cpp file contains the code to register the interface (as well as an implementation class if you are writing a server). For the interface described above, this registration code looks like the following:

```
static void RegTypes()
{
    InvRegistry()->RegisterInterface(__delphirtti(IEncodeDecode), "", "");
}

#pragma startup RegTypes 32
```

The interfaces of Web Services must have a namespace to identify them among all the interfaces in all possible Web Services. The previous example does not supply a namespace for the interface. When you do not explicitly supply a namespace, the invocation registry automatically generates one for you. This namespace is built from a string that uniquely identifies the application (the *AppNamespacePrefix* variable), the interface name, and the name of the unit in which it is defined. If you do not want to use the automatically-generated namespace, you can specify one explicitly using a second parameter to the *RegisterInterface* call.

Note Do not be tempted to use the same header file that defines an invokable interface in both client and server applications. This can easily lead to mismatches in the namespaces, because when the header is included in another source file, the name of the unit changes to the including source file, changing the name of the generated namespace. Therefore, client applications should import the Web Service using a WSDL document.

Using nonscalar types in invokable interfaces

The Web Services architecture automatically includes support for marshaling the following scalar types:

- bool
- char
- signed char
- unsigned char
- short
- unsigned short
- int
- unsigned int

- long
- unsigned long
- __int64
- unsigned __int64
- float
- double
- long double
- AnsiString
- WideString
- Currency
- Variant

You need do nothing special when you use these types on an invocable interface. If your interface includes any properties or methods that use other types, however, your application must register those types with the remotable type registry. For more information on the remotable type registry, see “Registering nonscalar types” on page 36-4.

Enumerated types and types declared using a typedef statement require a little extra work so that the remotable type registry can extract the type information it needs from the type definition. These are described in “Registering typedef’ed types and enumerated types” on page 36-6.

The dynamic array types defined in sysdyn.h are automatically registered for you, so your application does not need to add any special registration code for them. One of these in particular, *TByteDynArray*, deserves special notice because it maps to a ‘base64’ block of binary data, rather than mapping each array element separately the way the other dynamic array types do.

For any other types, such as static arrays, structs, or classes, you must map the type to a remotable class. A remotable class is a class that includes runtime type information (RTTI). Your interface must then use the remotable class instead of the corresponding static array, struct, or class. Any remotable classes you create must be registered with the remotable type registry.

Important All types should be declared explicitly with a **typedef** statement rather than declared inline. This is necessary so that the remotable type registry can determine the native C++ type name.

Registering nonscalar types

Before an invocable interface can use any types other than the built-in scalar types listed in “Using nonscalar types in invocable interfaces” on page 36-3, the application must register the type with the remotable type registry. To access the remotable type registry, you must include *InvokeRegistry.hpp* in your source file. This header declares a global function, *RemTypeRegistry()*, which returns a reference to the remotable type registry.

Note On clients, the code to register types with the remotable type registry is generated automatically when you import a WSDL document. For servers, remotable types are registered for you automatically when you register an interface that uses them. You only need to explicitly add code to register types if you want to specify the namespace or type name rather than using the automatically-generated values.

The remotable type registry has two methods that you can use to register types: *RegisterXSInfo* and *RegisterXSClass*. The first (*RegisterXSInfo*) lets you register a dynamic array. The second (*RegisterXSClass*) is for registering remotable classes that you define to represent other types.

If you are using dynamic arrays, the invocation registry can get the information it needs from the compiler-generated type information. Thus, for example, your interface may use a type such as the following:

```
typedef DynamicArray<TXSDateTime> TDateTimeArray;
```

This type is registered automatically when you register the invokable interface. However, if you want to specify the namespace in which the type is defined or the name of the type, you must add the following registration to the *RegTypes* function where you register the invokable interface that uses this dynamic array:

```
void RegTypes()
{
    RemTypeRegistry()->RegisterXSInfo(__arraytypeinfo(TDateTimeArray),
        MyNameSpace, "DTarray", "DTarray");
    InvRegistry()->RegisterInterface(__delphirtti(ITimeServices));
}
```

Note Do not use multiple dynamic array types that all map to the same underlying element type. Because the compiler treats these as transparent types that can be implicitly cast one to another, it doesn't distinguish their runtime type information.

The first parameter of *RegisterXSInfo* is the type information for the type you are registering. The second parameter is the namespace URI for the namespace in which the type is defined. If you omit this parameter or supply an empty string, the registry generates a namespace for you. The third parameter is the name of the type as it appears in native C++ code. You must supply a value for this parameter. The final parameter is the name of the type as it appears in WSDL documents. If you omit this parameter or supply an empty string, the registry uses the native type name (the third parameter).

Registering a remotable class is similar, except that you supply a class reference rather than a type information pointer. For example, the following code registers a remotable class called *TXSRecord*:

```
void RegTypes()
{
    RemTypeRegistry()->RegisterXSClass(__classid(TXSRecord), MyNameSpace, "record", "",
false);
    InvRegistry()->RegisterInterface(__delphirtti(ITimeServices));
}
```

The first parameter is class reference for the remotable class that represents the type. The second is a uniform resource identifier (URI) that uniquely identifies the namespace of the new class. If you supply an empty string, the registry generates a URI for you. The third and fourth parameters specify the native and external names of the data type your class represents. If you omit the second fourth parameter, the type registry uses the third parameter for both values. If you supply an empty string for both parameters, the registry uses the class name. The fifth parameter indicates

whether the value of class instances can be transmitted as a string. You can optionally add a sixth parameter (not shown here) to control how multiple references to the same object instance should be represented in SOAP packets.

Registering typedef'ed types and enumerated types

If your invokable interface uses an enumerated type, the `__delphirtti` function can't extract its type information directly. To work around this, you need to generate a VCL-style holder class that can be used to extract the type information for your enumerated type:

```
class MyEnumType_TypeInfoHolder : public TObject {
    MyEnumType __instanceType;
public:
    __published:
        __property MyEnumType __propType = {read=__instanceType };
};
```

In this case, the class *MyEnumType_TypeInfoHolder* is defined to extract the type information from an enumerated type called *MyEnumType*. It has a single published property, `__propType`, whose type is the enumerated type you want to register. Once you have defined the holder class, you can obtain the type information for the enumerated type by calling the global *GetClsMemberTypeInfo* function. The following code illustrates how to register an enumerated type, given its holder class:

```
void RegTypes()
{
    RemTypeRegistry()->RegisterXSInfo(
        GetClsMemberTypeInfo(__classid(MyEnumType_TypeInfoHolder), "__propType"),
        MyNameSpace, "MyEnumType");
}
```

RegisterClsMemberTypeInfo has two parameters: The type information of the holder class, and the name of the published property from whose type you want to extract type information. If the holder class has only one published property (as in the previous example), you can omit the second parameter.

This technique of using a holder class must also be used if your type is declared using a typedef statement that maps it to a built-in C++ scalar type. (A built-in C++ scalar type is any of the types listed in “Using nonscalar types in invokable interfaces” on page 36-3 except for the ones that are classes that emulate Object Pascal types.) Thus, for example, given the following type:

```
typedef int CardNumber;
```

You would create a holder class such as the following:

```
class CardNumberType_TypeInfoHolder : public TObject {
    CardNumber __instanceType;
public:
    __published:
        __property CardNumber __propType = {read=__instanceType };
};
```

and then register it as follows:

```
RemTypeRegistry()->RegisterXSInfo(GetClsMemberTypeInfo(
    __classid(CardNumber_TypeInfoHolder), "__propType"),
    MyNamespace, "CardNumber");
```

For any other type declared using a typedef statement, call *RegisterXSInfo* if it maps to a dynamic array class, and *RegisterXSClass* if it maps to a class. For more information about registering dynamic arrays and classes, see “Registering nonscalar types” on page 36-4.

Note You should try to avoid typedef statements that map multiple types to the same underlying type. The runtime type information for these is not distinct.

Using remotable objects

Use *TRemotable* as a base class when defining a class to represent a complex data type on an invokable interface. For example, in the case where you would ordinarily pass a struct as a parameter, you would instead define a *TRemotable* descendant where every member of the struct is a published property on your new class.

You can control whether the published properties of your *TRemotable* descendant appear as element nodes or attributes in the corresponding SOAP encoding of the type. To make the property an attribute, use the stored directive on the property definition, assigning a value of `AS_ATTRIBUTE`:

```
__property bool MyAttribute =
    {read=FMyAttribute, write=FMyAttribute, stored= AS_ATTRIBUTE;
```

Note If you do not include a stored directive, or if you assign any other value to the stored directive (even a function that returns `AS_ATTRIBUTE`), the property is encoded as a node rather than an attribute.

If the value of your new *TRemotable* descendant represents a scalar type in a WSDL document, you should use *TRemotableXS* as a base class instead. *TRemotableXS* is a *TRemotable* descendant that introduces two methods for converting between your new class and its string representation. Implement these methods by overriding the *XSToNative* and *NativeToXS* methods.

For certain commonly-used XML scalar types, the `XSBuildIns` unit already defines and registers remotable classes for you. These are listed in the following table:

Table 36.1 Remotable classes

| XML type | remotable class |
|--------------|-----------------|
| dateTime | TXSDateTime |
| timeInstant | |
| date | TXSDate |
| time | TXSTime |
| duration | TXSDuration |
| timeDuration | |
| decimal | TXSDecimal |
| hexBinary | TXSHexBinary |

After you define a remotable class, it must be registered with the remotable type registry, as described in “Registering nonscalar types” on page 36-4. This registration happens automatically on servers when you register the interface that uses the class. On clients, the code to register the class is generated automatically when you import the WSDL document that defines the type.

Tip It is a good idea to implement and register *TRemotable* descendants in a separate unit from the rest of your server application, including from the units that declare and register invocable interfaces. In this way, you can use the type for more than one interface.

One issue that arises when using *TRemotable* descendants is the question of when they are created and destroyed. Obviously, the server application must create its own local instance of these objects, because the caller’s instance is in a separate process space. To handle this, Web Service applications create a data context for incoming requests. The data context persists while the server handles the request, and is freed after any output parameters are marshaled into a return message. When the server creates local instances of remotable objects, it adds them to the data context, and those instances are then freed along with the data context. In some cases, you may want to keep an instance of a remotable object from being freed after a method call. For example, if the object contains state information, it may be more efficient to have a single instance that is used for every message call. To prevent the remotable object from being freed along with the data context, change its *DataContext* property.

Remotable object example

This example shows how to create a remotable object for a parameter on an invocable interface where you would otherwise use an existing class. In this example, the existing class is a string list (*TStringList*). To keep the example small, it does not reproduce the *Objects* property of the string list.

Because the new class is not scalar, it descends from *TRemotable* rather than *TRemotableXS*. It includes a published property for every property of the string list you want to communicate between the client and server. Each of these remotable properties corresponds to a remotable type. In addition, the new remotable class includes methods to convert to and from a string list.

```
class TRemotableStringList: public TRemotable
{
    private:
        bool FCaseSensitive;
        bool FSorted;
        Classes::TDuplicates FDuplicates;
        System::TStringDynArray FStrings;
    public:
        void __fastcall Assign(Classes::TStringList *SourceList);
        void __fastcall AssignTo(Classes::TStringList *DestList);
    __published:
        __property bool CaseSensitive = {read=FCaseSensitive, write=FCaseSensitive};
        __property bool Sorted = {read=FSorted, write=FSorted};
        __property Classes::TDuplicates Duplicates = {read=FDuplicates, write=FDuplicates};
        __property System::TStringDynArray Strings = {read=FStrings, write=FStrings};
}
```

Note that *TRemovableStringList* exists only as a transport class. Thus, although it has a *Sorted* property (to transport the value of a string list's *Sorted* property), it does not need to sort the strings it stores, it only needs to record whether the strings should be sorted. This keeps the implementation very simple. You only need to implement the *Assign* and *AssignTo* methods, which convert to and from a string list:

```
void __fastcall TRemovableStringList::Assign(Classes::TStringList *SourceList)
{
    SetLength(Strings, SourceList->Count);
    for (int i = 0; i < SourceList->Count; i++)
        Strings[i] = SourceList->Strings[i];
    CaseSensitive = SourceList->CaseSensitive;
    Sorted = SourceList->Sorted;
    Duplicates = SourceList->Duplicates;
}

void __fastcall TRemovableStringList::AssignTo(Classes::TStringList *DestList)
{
    DestList->Clear();
    DestList->Capacity = Length(Strings);
    DestList->CaseSensitive = CaseSensitive;
    DestList->Sorted = Sorted;
    DestList->Duplicates = Duplicates;
    for (int i = 0; i < Length(Strings); i++)
        DestList->Add(Strings[i]);
}
```

Optionally, you may want to register the new removable class so that you can specify its class name. If you do not register the class, it is registered automatically when you register the interface that uses it. Similarly, if you register the class but not the *TDuplicates* and *TStringDynArray* types that it uses, they are registered automatically. This code shows how to register the *TRemovableStringList* class. *TStringDynArray* is registered automatically because it is one of the built-in dynamic array types declared in *sysdyn.h*. For details on explicitly registering an enumerated type such as *TDuplicates*, see “Registering typedef’ed types and enumerated types” on page 36-6.

```
void RegTypes()
{
    RemTypeRegistry()->RegisterXSclass(__classid(TRemovableStringList), MyNameSpace,
    "stringList", "", false);
}

#pragma startup initServices 32
```

Writing servers that support Web Services

In addition to the invocable interfaces and the descendant classes that implement their pure virtual methods, your server requires two components: a dispatcher and an invoker. The dispatcher (*THHTTPSoapDispatcher*) receives incoming SOAP messages and passes them on to the invoker. The invoker (*THHTTPSoapCppInvoker*) interprets the SOAP message, identifies the invocable interface it calls, executes the call, and assembles the response message.

Note *THTTPSoapDispatcher* and *THTTPSoapCppInvoker* are designed to respond to HTTP messages containing a SOAP request. The underlying architecture is sufficiently general, however, that it can support other protocols with the substitution of different dispatcher and invoker components.

Once you register your invokable interfaces and their implementation classes, the dispatcher and invoker automatically handle any messages that identify those interfaces in the SOAP Action header of the HTTP request message.

Web services also include a publisher (*TWSDLHTMLPublish*). Publishers respond to incoming client requests by creating the WSDL documents that describe how to call the Web Services in the application.

Building a Web Service server

Use the following steps to build a server application that implements a Web Service:

- 1 Choose File | New | Other and on the WebServices tab, double-click the Soap Server Application icon to launch the SOAP Server Application wizard. The wizard creates a new Web server application that includes the components you need to respond to SOAP requests. For details on the SOAP application wizard and the code it generates, see “Using the SOAP application wizard” on page 36-11.
- 2 When you exit the SOAP Server Application wizard, it asks you if you want to define an interface for your Web Service. If you are creating a Web Service from scratch, click yes, and you will see the Add New Web Service wizard. The wizard adds code to declare and register a new invokable interface for your Web Service. Edit the generated code to define and implement your Web Service. If you want to add additional interfaces (or you want to define the interfaces at a later time), choose File | New | Other, and on the WebServices tab, double-click the SOAP Web Service interface icon. For details on using the Add New Web Service wizard and completing the code it generates, see “Adding new Web Services” on page 36-12.
- 3 If you are implementing a Web Service that has already been defined in a WSDL document, you can use the Web Services Importer to generate the interfaces, implementation classes, and registration code that your application needs. You need only fill in the body of the methods the importer generates for the implementation classes. For details on using the Web Services Importer, see “Using the Web Services Importer” on page 36-13.
- 4 If your application raises an exception when attempting to execute a SOAP request, the exception will be automatically encoded in a SOAP fault packet, which is returned instead of the results of the method call. If you want to convey more information than a simple error message, you can create your own exception classes that are encoded and passed to the client. This is described in “Creating custom exception classes for Web Services” on page 36-14.
- 5 The SOAP Server Application wizard adds a publisher component (*TWSDLHTMLPublish*) to new Web Service applications. This enables your application to publish WSDL documents that describe your Web Service to clients. For information on the WSDL publisher, see “Generating WSDL documents for a Web Service application” on page 36-15.

Using the SOAP application wizard

Web Service applications are a special form of Web Server application. Because of this, support for Web Services is built on top of the Web Broker architecture. To understand the code that the SOAP Application wizard generates, therefore, it is helpful to understand the Web Broker architecture. Information about Web Server applications in general, and Web Broker in particular, can be found in Chapter 32, “Creating Internet server applications” and Chapter 33, “Using Web Broker.”

To launch the SOAP application wizard, choose File | New | Other, and on the WebServices page, double-click the Soap Server Application icon. Choose the type of Web server application you want to use for your Web Service. For information about different types of Web Server applications, see “Types of Web server applications” on page 32-6.

The wizard generates a new Web server application that includes a Web module which contains three components:

- An invoker component (*THHTTPSOAPCppInvoker*). The invoker converts between SOAP messages and the methods of any registered invocable interfaces in your Web Service application.
- A dispatcher component (*THHTTPSoapDispatcher*). The dispatcher automatically responds to incoming SOAP messages and forwards them to the invoker. You can use its *WebDispatch* property to identify the HTTP request messages to which your application responds. This involves setting the *PathInfo* property to indicate the path portion of any URL directed to your application, and the *MethodType* property to indicate the method header for request messages.
- A WSDL publisher (*TWSDLHTMLPublish*). The WSDL publisher publishes a WSDL document that describes your interfaces and how to call them. The WSDL document tells clients that how to call on your Web Service application. For details on using the WSDL publisher, see “Generating WSDL documents for a Web Service application” on page 36-15.

The SOAP dispatcher and WSDL publisher are auto-dispatching components. This means they automatically register themselves with the Web module so that it forwards any incoming requests addressed using the path information they specify in their *WebDispatch* properties. If you right-click on the Web module, you can see that in addition to these auto-dispatching components, it has a single Web action item named *DefaultHandler*.

DefaultHandler is the default action item. That is, if the Web module receives a request for which it can't find a handler (can't match the path information), it forwards that message to the default action item. *DefaultHandler* generates a Web page that describes your Web Service. To change the default action, edit this action item's *OnAction* event handler.

Adding new Web Services

To add a new Web Service interface to your server application, choose File | New | Other, and on the WebServices tab double-click on the icon labeled SOAP Server Interface.

The Add New Web Service wizard lets you specify the name of the invocable interface you want to expose to clients, and generates the code to declare and register the interface and its descendant implementation class. By default, the wizard also generates comments that show sample methods and additional type definitions, to help you get started in editing the generated files.

Editing the generated code

The interface definitions appear in the header file of the generated unit, which has the name you specified using the wizard. You will want to change the interface declaration, replacing the sample methods with the methods you are making available to clients.

The wizard generates an implementation class that descends from *TInvokableClass* and from the invocable interface). If you are defining an invocable interface from scratch, you must edit the declaration of the implementation class to match any edits you made to the generated invocable interface.

When adding methods to the invocable interface and implementation class, remember that the methods must only use remotable types. For information on remotable types and invocable interfaces, see “Using nonscalar types in invocable interfaces” on page 36-3.

Using a different base class

The Add New Web Service wizard generates implementation classes that descend from *TInvokableClass*. This is the easiest way to create a new class to implement a Web Service. You can, however, replace this generated class with an implementation class that has a different base class (for example, you may want to use an existing class as a base class.) There are a number of considerations to take into account when you replace the generated implementation class:

- Your new implementation class must descend from the invocable interface directly. The invocation registry, with which you register invocable interfaces and their implementation classes, keeps track of what class implements each registered interface and makes it available to the invoker component when the invoker needs to call the interface. It can only detect that a class implements an interface if the interface is directly included in the class declaration. It does not detect support an interface if it is inherited along with a base class.
- Your new implementation class must include support for the IUnknown methods that are part of any interface. This point may seem obvious, but it is an easy one to overlook. For more information about IUnknown, see “Creating classes that support IUnknown” on page 13-4.
- You must change the generated code that registers the implementation class to include a factory method to create instances of your implementation class.

This last point takes a bit of explanation. When the implementation class descends from *TInvokableClass* and does not replace the inherited constructor with a new constructor that includes one or more parameters, the invocation registry knows how to create instances of the class when it needs them. When you write an implementation class that does not descend from *TInvokableClass*, or when you change the constructor, you must tell the invocation registry how to obtain instances of your implementation class.

You can tell the invocation registry how to obtain instances of your implementation class by supplying it with a factory procedure. Even if you have an implementation class that descends from *TInvokableClass* and that uses the inherited constructor, you may want to supply a factory procedure anyway. For example, you can use a single global instance of your implementation class rather than requiring the invocation registry to create a new instance every time your application receives a call to the invokable interface.

The factory procedure must be of type *TCreateInstanceProc*. It returns an instance of your implementation class. If the procedure creates a new instance, the implementation object should free itself when the reference count on its interface drops to zero, as the invocation registry does not explicitly free object instances. The following code illustrates another approach, where the factory procedure returns a single global instance of the implementation class:

```
void __fastcall CreateEncodeDecode(System::TObject* &obj)
{
    if (!FEncodeDecode)
    {
        FEncodeDecode = new TEncodeDecodeImpl();
        // save a reference to the interface so that the global instance doesn't free itself
        TEncodeDecodeImpl->QueryInterface(FEncodeDecodeInterface);
    }
    obj = FEncodeDecode;
}
```

Note In the previous example, *FEncodeDecodeInterface* is a variable of type *_di_IEncodeDecode*.

You register the factory procedure with an implementation class by supplying it as a second to the call that registers the class with the invocation registry. First, locate the call the wizard generated to register the implementation class. This will appear in the *RegTypes* method at the bottom of the unit that defines the class. It looks something like the following:

```
InvRegistry()->RegisterInvokableClass(__classid(TEncodeDecodeImpl));
```

Add a second parameter to this call that specifies the factory procedure:

```
InvRegistry()->RegisterInvokableClass(__classid(TEncodeDecodeImpl), &CreateEncodeDecode);
```

Using the Web Services Importer

To use the Web Services Importer, choose **File | New | Other**, and on the **WebServices** page double-click the icon labeled **Web Services Importer**. In the dialog that appears,

specify the file name of a WSDL document (or XML file) or provide the URL where that document is published.

If the WSDL document is on a server that requires authentication (or must be reached using a proxy server that requires authentication), you need to provide a user name and password before the wizard can retrieve the WSDL document. To supply this information, click the Options button and provide the appropriate connection information.

When you click the Next button, the Web Services Importer displays the code it generates for every definition in the WSDL document that is compatible with the Web Services framework. That is, it only uses those port types that have a SOAP binding. You can configure the way the importer generates code by clicking the Options button and choosing the options you want.

You can use the Web Services Importer when writing either a server or a client application. When writing a server, click the Options button and in the resulting dialog, check the option that tells the importer to generate server code. When you select this option, the importer generates implementation classes for the invokable interfaces, and you need only fill in the bodies of the methods.

Warning

If you import a WSDL document to create a server that implements a Web Service that is already defined, you must still publish your own WSDL document for that service. There may be minor differences in the imported WSDL document and the generated implementation. For example, If the WSDL document or XML schema file uses identifiers that are also C++ keywords, the importer automatically adjusts their names so that the generated code can compile.)

When you click Finish, the importer creates new units that define and register invokable interfaces for the operations defined in the document, and that define and register remotable classes for the types that the document defines.

As an alternate approach, you can use the command line WSDL importer instead. For a server, call the command line importer with the -S option, as follows:

```
WSDLIMP -S -C -V MyWSDLDoc.wsdl
```

For a client application, call the command line importer without the -S option:

```
WSDLIMP -C -V MyWSDLDoc.wsdl
```

Creating custom exception classes for Web Services

When your Web Service application raises an exception in the course of trying to execute a SOAP request, it automatically encodes information about that exception in a SOAP fault packet, which it returns instead of the results of the method call. The client application then raises the exception.

By default, the client application raises a generic exception of type *ERemotableException* with the information from the SOAP fault packet. You can transmit additional, application-specific information by deriving an *ERemotableException* descendant. The values of any published properties you add to the exception class are included in the SOAP fault packet so that the client can raise an equivalent exception.

To use an *ERemovableException* descendant, you must register it with the remotable type registry. Thus, in the unit that defines your *ERemovableException* descendant, you must include `InvokeRegistry.hpp` and add a call to the `RegisterXSClass` method of the object that the global `RemTypeRegistry` function returns.

If the client also defines and registers your *ERemovableException* descendant, then when it receives the SOAP fault packet, it automatically raises an instance of the appropriate exception class, with all properties set to the values in the SOAP fault packet.

Generating WSDL documents for a Web Service application

To allow client applications to know what Web Services your application makes available, you can publish a WSDL document that describes your invocable interfaces and indicates how to call them.

Note You must always publish a WSDL document for your Web Service application, even if you implemented an imported service or if your client is written using C++Builder.

To publish a WSDL document that describes your Web Service, include a *TWSDLHTMLPublish* component in your Web Module. (The SOAP Server Application wizard adds this component by default.) *TWSDLHTMLPublish* is an auto-dispatching component, which means it automatically responds to incoming messages that request a list of WSDL documents for your Web Service. Use the *WebDispatch* property to specify the path information of the URL that clients must use to access the list of WSDL documents. The Web browser can then request the list of WSDL documents by specifying an URL that is made up of the location of the server application followed by the path in the *WebDispatch* property. This URL looks something like the following:

`http://www.myco.com/MyService.dll/WSDL`

Tip If you want to use a physical WSDL file instead, you can display the WSDL document in your Web browser and then save it to generate a WSDL document file.

It is not necessary to publish the WSDL document from the same application that implements your Web Service. To create an application that simply publishes the WSDL document, omit the code that implements and registers the implementation objects and only include the code that defines and registers invocable interfaces, remotable classes that represent complex types, and any remotable exceptions.

By default, when you publish a WSDL document, it indicates that the services are available at the same URL as the one where you published the WSDL document (but with a different path). If you are deploying multiple versions of your Web Service application, or if you are publishing the WSDL document from a different application than the one that implements the Web Service, you will need to change the WSDL document so that it includes updated information on where to locate the Web Service.

To change the URL, use the WSDL administrator. The first step is to enable the administrator. You do this by setting the *AdminEnabled* property of the *TWSDLHTMLPublish* component to **true**. Then, when you use your browser to display the list of WSDL documents, it includes a button to administer them as well.

Use the WSDL administrator to specify the locations (URLs) where you have deployed your Web Service application.

Writing clients for Web Services

C++Builder provides client-side support for calling Web Services that use a SOAP-based binding. These Web Services can be supplied by a server written in C++Builder, or by any other server that defines its Web Service in a WSDL document.

Importing WSDL documents

Before you can use a Web Service, your application must define and register the invocable interfaces and types that are included in the Web Service application. To obtain these definitions, you can import a WSDL document (or XML file) that defines the service. The Web Services importer creates a unit that defines and registers the interfaces and types you need to use. For details on using the Web Services Importer, see “Using the Web Services Importer” on page 36-13.

Calling invocable interfaces

To call an invocable interface, your client application must include any headers that define the invocable interfaces and any remotable classes that implement complex types.

Once the client application has the declaration of an invocable interface, create an instance of *THHTTPRIO* for the desired interface:

```
X = new THHTTPRIO(NULL);
```

Note It is important that you do not explicitly destroy the *THHTTPRIO* instance. If it is created without an *Owner* (as in the previous line of code), it automatically frees itself when its interface is released. If it is created with an *Owner*, the *Owner* is responsible for freeing the *THHTTPRIO* instance.

Next, provide the *THHTTPRIO* object with the information it needs to identify the server interface and locate the server. There are two ways to supply this information:

- If you do not expect the URL for the Web Service or the namespaces and soap Action headers it requires to change, you can simply specify the URL for the Web Service you want to access. *THHTTPRIO* uses this URL to look up the definition of the interface, plus any namespace and header information, based on the information in the invocation registry. Specify the URL by setting the *URL* property to the location of the server:

```
X->URL = "http://www.myco.com/MyService.dll/SOAP/IServerInterface";
```

- If you want to look up the URL, namespace, or Soap Action header from the WSDL document dynamically at runtime, you can use the *WSDLLocation*, *Service*,

and *Port* properties, and it will extract the necessary information from the WSDL document:

```
X.WSDLLocation = "Cryptography.wsdl";
X.Service = "Cryptography";
X.Port = "SoapEncodeDecode";
```

Once you have specified how to locate the server and identify the interface, you can then use the *QueryInterface* method to obtain an interface pointer for the invokable interface. When you do this, it creates a vtable for the associated interface dynamically in memory, enabling you to make interface calls:

```
_di_IEncodeDecode InterfaceVariable;
X->QueryInterface(InterfaceVariable);
if (InterfaceVariable)
{
    Code = InterfaceVariable->EncodeValue(5);
}
```

Note that the call to *QueryInterface* takes as an argument the *DelphiInterface* wrapper for the invokable interface rather than the invokable interface itself.

THTTPrIo relies on the invocation registry to obtain information about the invokable interface. If the client application does not have an invocation registry, or if the invokable interface is not registered, *THTTPrIo* can't build its in-memory vtable.

Warning

If you assign the interface you obtain from *THTTPrIo* to a global variable, you must change that assignment to NULL before shutting down your application. For example, if *InterfaceVariable* in the previous code sample is a global variable, rather than stack variable, you must release the interface before the *THTTPrIo* object is freed. Typically, this code goes in the *OnDestroy* event handler of the form or data module:

```
void __fastcall TForm1::FormDestroy(TObject *Sender)
{
    InterfaceVariable = NULL;
}
```

The reason you must reassign a global interface variable to NULL is because *THTTPrIo* builds its vtable dynamically in memory. That vtable must still be present when the interface is released. If you do not release the interface along with the form or data module, it is released when the global variable is freed on shutdown. The memory for global variables may be freed after the form or data module that contains the *THTTPrIo* object, in which case the vtable will not be available when the interface is released.

Working with sockets

This chapter describes the socket components that let you create an application that can communicate with other systems using TCP/IP and related protocols. Using sockets, you can read and write over connections to other machines without worrying about the details of the underlying networking software. Sockets provide connections based on the TCP/IP protocol, but are sufficiently general to work with related protocols such as User Datagram Protocol (UDP), Xerox Network System (XNS), Digital's DECnet, or Novell's IPX/SPX family.

Using sockets, you can write network servers or client applications that read from and write to other systems. A server or client application is usually dedicated to a single service such as Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP) or File Transfer Protocol (FTP). Using server sockets, an application that provides one of these services can link to client applications that want to use that service. Client sockets allow an application that uses one of these services to link to server applications that provide the service.

Implementing services

Sockets provide one of the pieces you need to write network servers or client applications. For many services, such as HTTP or FTP, third party servers are readily available. Some are even bundled with the operating system, so that there is no need to write one yourself. However, when you want more control over the way the service is implemented, a tighter integration between your application and the network communication, or when no server is available for the particular service you need, then you may want to create your own server or client application. For example, when working with distributed data sets, you may want to write a layer to communicate with databases on other systems.

Understanding service protocols

Before you can write a network server or client, you must understand the service that your application is providing or using. Many services have standard protocols that your network application must support. If you are writing a network application for a standard service such as HTTP, FTP, or even finger or time, you must first understand the protocols used to communicate with other systems. See the documentation on the particular service you are providing or using.

If you are providing a new service for an application that communicates with other systems, the first step is designing the communication protocol for the servers and clients of this service. What messages are sent? How are these messages coordinated? How is the information encoded?

Communicating with applications

Often, your network server or client application provides a layer between the networking software and an application that uses the service. For example, an HTTP server sits between the Internet and a Web server application that provides content and responds to HTTP request messages.

Sockets provide the interface between your network server or client application and the networking software. You must provide the interface between your application and the clients that use it. You can copy the API of a standard third party server (such as Apache), or you can design and publish your own API.

Services and ports

Most standard services are associated, by convention, with specific port numbers. We will discuss port numbers in greater detail later. For now, consider the port number a numeric code for the service.

If you are implementing a standard service for use in cross-platform applications, Linux socket objects provide methods for you to look up the port number for the service. If you are providing a new service, you can specify the associated port number in the `/etc/services` file. See your Linux documentation for more information on the services file.

Types of socket connections

Socket connections can be divided into three basic types, which reflect how the connection was initiated and what the local socket is connected to. These are

- Client connections.
- Listening connections.
- Server connections.

Once the connection to a client socket is completed, the server connection is indistinguishable from a client connection. Both end points have the same capabilities and receive the same types of events. Only the listening connection is fundamentally different, as it has only a single endpoint.

Client connections

Client connections connect a client socket on the local system to a server socket on a remote system. Client connections are initiated by the client socket. First, the client socket must describe the server socket to which it wishes to connect. The client socket then looks up the server socket and, when it locates the server, requests a connection. The server socket may not complete the connection right away. Server sockets maintain a queue of client requests, and complete connections as they find time. When the server socket accepts the client connection, it sends the client socket a full description of the server socket to which it is connecting, and the connection is completed by the client.

Listening connections

Server sockets do not locate clients. Instead, they form passive “half connections” that listen for client requests. Server sockets associate a queue with their listening connections; the queue records client connection requests as they come in. When the server socket accepts a client connection request, it forms a new socket to connect to the client, so that the listening connection can remain open to accept other client requests.

Server connections

Server connections are formed by server sockets when a listening socket accepts a client request. A description of the server socket that completes the connection to the client is sent to the client when the server accepts the connection. The connection is established when the client socket receives this description and completes the connection.

Describing sockets

Sockets let your network application communicate with other systems over the network. Each socket can be viewed as an endpoint in a network connection. It has an address that specifies:

- The system on which it is running.
- The types of interfaces it understands.
- The port it is using for the connection.

A full description of a socket connection includes the addresses of the sockets on both ends of the connection. You can describe the address of each socket endpoint by supplying both the IP address or host and the port number.

Before you can make a socket connection, you must fully describe the sockets that form its endpoints. Some of the information is available from the system your application is running on. For instance, you do not need to describe the local IP address of a client socket—this information is available from the operating system.

The information you must provide depends on the type of socket you are working with. Client sockets must describe the server they want to connect to. Listening server sockets must describe the port that represents the service they provide.

Describing the host

The host is the system that is running the application that contains the socket. You can describe the host for a socket by giving its IP address, which is a string of four numeric (byte) values in the standard Internet dot notation, such as

```
123.197.1.2
```

A single system may support more than one IP address.

IP addresses are often difficult to remember and easy to mistype. An alternative is to use the host name. Host names are aliases for the IP address that you often see in Uniform Resource Locators (URLs). They are strings containing a domain name and service, such as

```
http://www.ASite.com
```

Most Intranets provide host names for the IP addresses of systems on the Internet. You can learn the host name associated with any IP address (if one already exists) by executing the following command from a command prompt:

```
nslookup IPADDRESS
```

where *IPADDRESS* is the IP address you're interested in. If your local IP address doesn't have a host name and you decide you want one, contact your network administrator. It is common for computers to refer to themselves with the name *localhost* and the IP number 127.0.0.1.

Server sockets do not need to specify a host. The local IP address can be read from the system. If the local system supports more than one IP address, server sockets will listen for client requests on all IP addresses simultaneously. When a server socket accepts a connection, the client socket provides the remote IP address.

Client sockets must specify the remote host by providing either its host name or IP address.

Choosing between a host name and an IP address

Most applications use the host name to specify a system. Host names are easier to remember, and easier to check for typographical errors. Further, servers can change the system or IP address that is associated with a particular host name. Using a host

name allows the client socket to find the abstract site represented by the host name, even when it has moved to a new IP address.

If the host name is unknown, the client socket must specify the server system using its IP address. Specifying the server system by giving the IP address is faster. When you provide the host name, the socket must search for the IP address associated with the host name, before it can locate the server system.

Using ports

While the IP address provides enough information to find the system on the other end of a socket connection, you also need a port number on that system. Without port numbers, a system could only form a single connection at a time. Port numbers are unique identifiers that enable a single system to host multiple connections simultaneously, by giving each connection a separate port number.

Earlier, we described port numbers as numeric codes for the services implemented by network applications. This is actually just a convention that allows listening server connections to make themselves available on a fixed port number so that they can be found by client sockets. Server sockets listen on the port number associated with the service they provide. When they accept a connection to a client socket, they create a separate socket connection that uses a different, arbitrary, port number. This way, the listening connection can continue to listen on the port number associated with the service.

Client sockets use an arbitrary local port number, as there is no need for them to be found by other sockets. They specify the port number of the server socket to which they want to connect so that they can find the server application. Often, this port number is specified indirectly, by naming the desired service.

Using socket components

The Internet palette page includes three socket components that allow your network application to form connections to other machines, and that allow you to read and write information over that connection. These are:

- *TcpServer*
- *TcpClient*
- *UdpSocket*

Associated with each of these socket components are socket objects, which represent the endpoint of an actual socket connection. The socket components use the socket objects to encapsulate the socket server calls, so that your application does not need to be concerned with the details of establishing the connection or managing the socket messages.

If you want to customize the details of the connections that the socket components make on your behalf, you can use the properties, events, and methods of the socket objects.

Getting information about the connection

After completing the connection to a client or server socket, you can use the client or server socket object associated with your socket component to obtain information about the connection. Use the *LocalHost* and *LocalPort* properties to determine the address and port number used by the local client or server socket, or use the *RemoteHost* and *RemotePort* properties to determine the address and port number used by the remote client or server socket. Use the *GetSocketAddr* method to build a valid socket address based on the host name and port number. You can use the *LookupPort* method to look up the port number. Use the *LookupProtocol* method to look up the protocol number. Use the *LookupHostName* method to look up the host name based on the host machine's IP address.

To view network traffic in and out of the socket, use the *BytesSent* and *BytesReceived* properties.

Using client sockets

Add a *TcpClient* or *UdpSocket* component to your form or data module to turn your application into a TCP/IP or UDP client. Client sockets allow you to specify the server socket you want to connect to, and the service you want that server to provide. Once you have described the desired connection, you can use the client socket component to complete the connection to the server.

Each client socket component uses a single client socket object to represent the client endpoint in a connection.

Specifying the desired server

Client socket components have a number of properties that allow you to specify the server system and port to which you want to connect. Use the *RemoteHost* property to specify the remote host server by either its host name or IP address.

In addition to the server system, you must specify the port on the server system that your client socket will connect to. You can use the *RemotePort* property to specify the server port number directly or indirectly by naming the target service.

Forming the connection

Once you have set the properties of your client socket component to describe the server you want to connect to, you can form the connection at runtime by calling the *Open* method. If you want your application to form the connection automatically when it starts up, set the *Active* property to **true** at design time, using the Object Inspector.

Getting information about the connection

After completing the connection to a server socket, you can use the client socket object associated with your client socket component to obtain information about the connection. Use the *LocalHost* and *LocalPort* properties to determine the address and port number used by the client and server sockets to form the end points of the

connection. You can use the *Handle* property to obtain a handle to the socket connection to use when making socket calls.

Closing the connection

When you have finished communicating with a server application over the socket connection, you can shut down the connection by calling the *Close* method. The connection may also be closed from the server end. If that is the case, you will receive notification in an *OnDisconnect* event.

Using server sockets

Add a server socket component (*TcpServer* or *UdpSocket*) to your form or data module to turn your application into an IP server. Server sockets allow you to specify the service you are providing or the port you want to use to listen for client requests. You can use the server socket component to listen for and accept client connection requests.

Each server socket component uses a single server socket object to represent the server endpoint in a listening connection. It also uses a server client socket object for the server endpoint of each active connection to a client socket that the server accepts.

Specifying the port

Before your server socket can listen to client requests, you must specify the port that your server will listen on. You can specify this port using the *LocalPort* property. If your server application is providing a standard service that is associated by convention with a specific port number, you can also specify the service name using the *LocalPort* property. It is a good idea to use the service name instead of a port number, because it is easy to introduce typographical errors when specifying the port number.

Listening for client requests

Once you have set the port number of your server socket component, you can form a listening connection at runtime by calling the *Open* method. If you want your application to form the listening connection automatically when it starts up, set the *Active* property to **true** at design time, using the Object Inspector.

Connecting to clients

A listening server socket component automatically accepts client connection requests when they are received. You receive notification every time this occurs in an *OnAccept* event.

Closing server connections

When you want to shut down the listening connection, call the *Close* method or set the *Active* property to **false**. This shuts down all open connections to client applications, cancels any pending connections that have not been accepted, and then

shuts down the listening connection so that your server socket component does not accept any new connections.

When TCP clients shut down their individual connections to your server socket, you are informed by an *OnDisconnect* event.

Responding to socket events

When writing applications that use sockets, you can write or read to the socket anywhere in the program. You can write to the socket using the *SendBuf*, *SendStream*, or *SendLn* methods in your program after the socket has been opened. You can read from the socket using the similarly-named methods *ReceiveBuf* and *ReceiveLn*. The *OnSend* and *OnReceive* events are triggered every time something is written or read from the socket. They can be used for filtering. Every time you read or write, a read or write event is triggered.

Both client sockets and server sockets generate error events when they receive error messages from the connection.

Socket components also receive two events in the course of opening and completing a connection. If your application needs to influence how the opening of the socket proceeds, you must use the *SendBuf* and *ReceiveBuf* methods to respond to these client events or server events.

Error events

Client and server sockets generate *OnError* events when they receive error messages from the connection. You can write an *OnError* event handler to respond to these error messages. The event handler is passed information about

- What socket object received the error notification.
- What the socket was trying to do when the error occurred.
- The error code that was provided by the error message.

You can respond to the error in the event handler, and change the error code to 0 to prevent the socket from throwing an exception.

Client events

When a client socket opens a connection, the following events occur:

- The socket is set up and initialized for event notification.
- An *OnCreateHandle* event occurs after the server and server socket is created. At this point, the socket object available through the *Handle* property can provide information about the server or client socket that will form the other end of the connection. This is the first chance to obtain the actual port used for the connection, which may differ from the port of the listening sockets that accepted the connection.

- The connection request is accepted by the server and completed by the client socket.
- When the connection is established, the *OnConnect* notification event occurs.

Server events

Server socket components form two types of connections: listening connections and connections to client applications. The server socket receives events during the formation of each of these connections.

Events when listening

Just before the listening connection is formed, the *OnListening* event occurs. You can use its *Handle* property to make changes to the socket before it is opened for listing. For example, if you want to restrict the IP addresses the server uses for listening, you would do that in an *OnListening* event handler.

Events with client connections

When a server socket accepts a client connection request, the following events occur:

- An *OnAccept* event occurs, passing in the new *TTcpClient* object to the event handler. This is the first point when you can use the properties of *TTcpClient* to obtain information about the server endpoint of the connection to a client.
- If *BlockMode* is *bmThreadBlocking* an *OnGetThread* event occurs. If you want to provide your own customized descendant of *TServerSocketThread*, you can create one in an *OnGetThread* event handler, and that will be used instead of *TServerSocketThread*. If you want to perform any initialization of the thread, or make any socket API calls before the thread starts reading or writing over the connection, you should use the *OnGetThread* event handler for these tasks as well.
- The client completes the connection and an *OnAccept* event occurs. With a non-blocking server, you may want to start reading or writing over the socket connection at this point.

Reading and writing over socket connections

The reason you form socket connections to other machines is so that you can read or write information over those connections. What information you read or write, or when you read it or write it, depends on the service associated with the socket connection.

Reading and writing over sockets can occur asynchronously, so that it does not block the execution of other code in your network application. This is called a non-blocking connection. You can also form blocking connections, where your application waits for the reading or writing to be completed before executing the next line of code.

Non-blocking connections

Non-blocking connections read and write asynchronously, so that the transfer of data does not block the execution of other code in your network application. To create a non-blocking connection for client or server sockets, set the *BlockMode* property to *bmNonBlocking*.

When the connection is non-blocking, reading and writing events inform your socket when the socket on the other end of the connection tries to read or write information.

Reading and writing events

Non-blocking sockets generate reading and writing events when they need to read or write over the connection. You can respond to these notifications in an *OnReceive* or *OnSend* event handler.

The socket object associated with the socket connection is provided as a parameter to the read or write event handlers. This socket object provides a number of methods to allow you to read or write over the connection.

To read from the socket connection, use the *ReceiveBuf* or *ReceiveLn* method. To write to the socket connection, use the *SendBuf*, *SendStream*, or *SendLn* method.

Blocking connections

When the connection is blocking, your socket must initiate reading or writing over the connection. It cannot wait passively for a notification from the socket connection. Use a blocking socket when your end of the connection is in charge of when reading and writing takes place.

For client or server sockets, set the *BlockMode* property to *bmBlocking* to form a blocking connection. Depending on what else your client application does, you may want to create a new execution thread for reading or writing, so that your application can continue executing code on other threads while it waits for the reading or writing over the connection to be completed.

For server sockets, set the *BlockMode* property to *bmBlocking* or *bmThreadBlocking* to form a blocking connection. Because blocking connections hold up the execution of all other code while the socket waits for information to be written or read over the connection, server socket components always spawn a new execution thread for every client connection when the *BlockMode* is *bmThreadBlocking*. When the *BlockMode* is *bmBlocking*, program execution is blocked until a new connection is established.

Developing COM-based applications

The chapters in “Developing COM-based applications” present concepts necessary for building COM-based applications, including Automation controllers, Automation servers, ActiveX controls, and COM+ applications.

Note Support for COM clients is available in all editions of C++Builder. However, to create servers, you need the Professional or Enterprise edition.

Overview of COM technologies

C++Builder provides wizards and classes to make it easy to implement applications based on the Component Object Model (COM) from Microsoft. With these wizards, you can create COM-based classes and components to use within applications or you can create fully functional COM clients or servers that implement COM objects, Automation servers (including Active Server Objects), ActiveX controls, or ActiveForms.

Note COM components such as those on the ActiveX, COM+, and Servers tabs of the Component palette are not available for use in CLX applications. This technology is for use on Windows only and is not cross-platform.

COM is a language-independent software component model that enables interaction between software components and applications running on a Windows platform. The key aspect of COM is that it enables communication between components, between applications, and between clients and servers through clearly defined interfaces. Interfaces provide a way for clients to ask a COM component which features it supports at runtime. To provide additional features for your component, you simply add an additional interface for those features.

Applications can access the interfaces of COM components that exist on the same computer as the application or that exist on another computer on the network using a mechanism called Distributed COM (DCOM). For more information on clients, servers, and interfaces see, “Parts of a COM application,” on page 38-2.

This chapter provides a conceptual overview of the underlying technology on which Automation and ActiveX controls are built. Later chapters provide details on creating Automation objects and ActiveX controls in C++Builder.

COM as a specification and implementation

COM is both a specification and an implementation. The COM specification defines how objects are created and how they communicate with each other. According to this specification, COM objects can be written in different languages, run in different process spaces and on different platforms. As long as the objects adhere to the

written specification, they can communicate. This allows you to integrate legacy code as a component with new components implemented in object-oriented languages.

The COM implementation is built into the Win32 subsystem, which provides a number of core services that support the written specification. The COM library contains a set of standard interfaces that define the core functionality of a COM object, and a small set of API functions designed for the purpose of creating and managing COM objects.

When you use C++Builder wizards and VCL objects in your application, you are using C++Builder's implementation of the COM specification. In addition, C++Builder provides some wrappers for COM services for those features that it does not implement directly (such as Active Documents).

Note C++Builder implements objects conforming to the COM specification by using the Microsoft Active Template Library (ATL), modified by classes and macros.

COM extensions

As COM has evolved, it has been extended beyond the basic COM services. COM serves as the basis for other technologies such as Automation, ActiveX controls, Active Documents, and Active Directories. For details on COM extensions, see "COM extensions" on page 38-10.

In addition, when working in a large, distributed environment, you can create transactional COM objects. Prior to Windows 2000, these objects were not architecturally part of COM, but rather ran in the Microsoft Transaction Server (MTS) environment. With the advent of Windows 2000, this support is integrated into COM+. Transactional objects are described in detail in Chapter 44, "Creating MTS or COM+ objects."

C++Builder provides wizards to easily implement applications that incorporate the above technologies in the C++Builder environment. For details, see "Implementing COM objects with wizards" on page 38-19.

Parts of a COM application

When implementing a COM application, you supply the following:

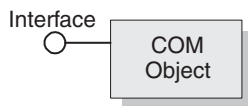
COM interface The way in which an object exposes its services externally to clients. A COM object provides an interface for each set of related methods and properties. Note that COM properties are not identical to properties on VCL objects. COM properties always use read and write access methods, and are not declared using the **__property** keyword.

| | |
|-------------------|--|
| COM server | A module, either an EXE, DLL, or OCX, that contains the code for a COM object. Object implementations reside in servers. A COM object implements one or more interfaces. |
| COM client | The code that calls the interfaces to get the requested services from the server. Clients know what they want to get from the server (through the interface); clients do not know the internals of how the server provides the services. C++Builder eases the process in creating a client by letting you install COM servers (such as a Word document or PowerPoint slide) as components on the Component Palette. This allows you to connect to the server and hook its events through the Object Inspector. |

COM interfaces

COM clients communicate with objects through COM interfaces. Interfaces are groups of logically or semantically related routines which provide communication between a provider of a service (server object) and its clients. The standard way to depict a COM interface is shown in Figure 38.1:

Figure 38.1 A COM interface



For example, every COM object must implement the basic interface, *IUnknown*. Through a routine called *QueryInterface* in *IUnknown*, clients can request other interfaces implemented by the server.

Objects can have multiple interfaces, where each interface implements a feature. An interface provides a way to convey to the client what service it provides, without providing implementation details of how or where the object provides this service.

Key aspects of COM interfaces are as follows:

- Once published, interfaces are immutable; that is, they do not change. You can rely on an interface to provide a specific set of functions. Additional functionality is provided by additional interfaces.
- By convention, COM interface identifiers begin with a capital I and a symbolic name that defines the interface, such as *IMalloc* or *IPersist*.
- Interfaces are guaranteed to have a unique identification, called a **Globally Unique Identifier (GUID)**, which is a 128-bit randomly generated number. Interface GUIDs are called **Interface Identifiers (IIDs)**. This eliminates naming conflicts between different versions of a product or different products.
- Interfaces are language independent. You can use any language to implement a COM interface as long as the language supports a structure of pointers, and can call a function through a pointer either explicitly or implicitly.

- Interfaces are not objects themselves; they provide a way to access an object. Therefore, clients do not access data directly; clients access data through an interface pointer. Windows 2000 adds an additional layer of indirection known as an interceptor through which it provides COM+ features such as just-in-time activation and object pooling.
- Interfaces are always inherited from the fundamental interface, *IUnknown*.
- Interfaces can be redirected by COM through proxies to enable interface method calls to call between threads, processes, and networked machines, all without the client or server objects ever being aware of the redirection. For more information see , “In-process, out-of-process, and remote servers,” on page 38-6.

The fundamental COM interface, *IUnknown*

All COM objects must support the fundamental interface, called *IUnknown*, a *typedef* to the base interface type *IInterface*. *IUnknown* contains the following routines:

| | |
|--------------------|---|
| QueryInterface | Provides pointers to other interfaces that the object supports. |
| AddRef and Release | Simple reference counting methods that keep track of the object's lifetime so that an object can delete itself when the client no longer needs its service. |

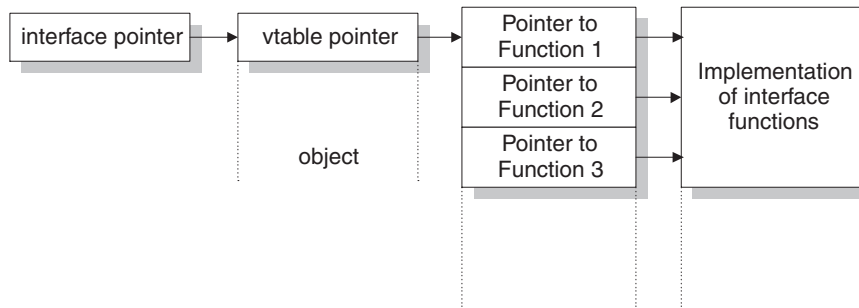
Clients obtain pointers to other interfaces through the *IUnknown* method, *QueryInterface*. *QueryInterface* knows about every interface in the server object and can give a client a pointer to the requested interface. When receiving a pointer to an interface, the client is assured that it can call any method of the interface.

Objects track their own lifetime through the *IUnknown* methods, *AddRef* and *Release*, which are simple reference counting methods. As long as an object's reference count is nonzero, the object remains in memory. Once the reference count reaches zero, the interface implementation can safely dispose of the underlying object(s).

COM interface pointers

An interface pointer is a pointer to an object instance that points, in turn, to the implementation of each method in the interface. The implementation is accessed through an array of pointers to these methods, which is called a **vtable**. Vtables are similar to the mechanism used to support virtual functions in C++. Because of this similarity, the compiler can resolve calls to methods on the interface the same way it resolves calls to methods on C++ classes.

The vtable is shared among all instances of an object class, so for each object instance, the object code allocates a second structure that contains its private data. The client's interface pointer, then, is a pointer *to the pointer* to the vtable, as shown in the following diagram.

Figure 38.2 Interface vtable

In Windows 2000 and subsequent versions of Windows, when an object is running under COM+, an added level of indirection is provided between the interface pointer and the vtable pointer. The interface pointer available to the client points at an interceptor, which in turn points at the vtable. This allows COM+ to provide such services as just-in-time activation, whereby the server can be deactivated and reactivated dynamically in a way that is opaque to the client. To achieve this, COM+ guarantees that the interceptor behaves as if it were an ordinary vtable pointer.

COM servers

A COM server is an application or a library that provides services to a client application or library. A COM server consists of one or more COM objects, where a COM object is a set of properties (data members or content) and methods (or member functions).

Clients do not know *how* a COM object performs its service; the object's implementation remains encapsulated. An object makes its services available through its **interfaces** as described previously.

In addition, clients do not need to know *where* a COM object resides. COM provides transparent access regardless of the object's **location**.

When a client requests a service from a COM object, the client passes a class identifier (CLSID) to COM. A CLSID is simply a GUID that identifies a COM object. COM uses this CLSID, which is registered in the system registry, to locate the appropriate server implementation. Once the server is located, COM brings the code into memory, and has the server instantiate an object instance for the client. This process is handled indirectly, through a special object called a class factory (based on interfaces) that creates instances of objects on demand.

As a minimum, a COM server must perform the following:

- Register entries in the system registry that associate the server module with the class identifier (CLSID).
- Implement a class factory object, which manufactures another object of a particular CLSID.

- Expose the class factory to COM.
- Provide an unloading mechanism through which a server that is not servicing clients can be removed from memory.

Note C++Builder wizards automate the creation of COM objects and servers as described in “Implementing COM objects with wizards” on page 38-19.

CoClasses and class factories

A COM object is an instance of a **CoClass**, which is a class that implements one or more COM interfaces. The COM object provides the services as defined by its interfaces.

CoClasses are instantiated by a special type of object called a *class factory*. Whenever an object’s services are requested by a client, a class factory creates an object instance for that particular client. Typically, if another client requests the object’s services, the class factory creates another object instance to service the second client. (Clients can also bind to running COM objects that register themselves to support it.)

A CoClass must have a class factory and a class identifier (CLSID) so that it can be instantiated externally, that is, from another module. Using these unique identifiers for CoClasses means that they can be updated whenever new interfaces are implemented in their class. A new interface can modify or add methods without affecting older versions, which is a common problem when using DLLs.

C++Builder wizards take care of assigning class identifiers and of implementing and instantiating class factories.

In-process, out-of-process, and remote servers

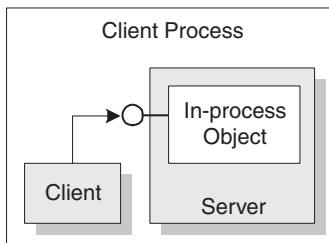
With COM, a client does not need to know where an object resides, it simply makes a call to an object’s interface. COM performs the necessary steps to make the call. These steps differ depending on whether the object resides in the same process as the client, in a different process on the client machine, or in a different machine across the network. The different types of servers are known as:

| | |
|-------------------|---|
| In-process server | A library (DLL) running in the <i>same process space</i> as the client, for example, an ActiveX control embedded in a Web page viewed under Internet Explorer or Netscape. Here, the ActiveX control is downloaded to the client machine and invoked within the same process as the Web browser. The client communicates with the in-process server using direct calls to the COM interface. |
|-------------------|---|

| | |
|---|--|
| Out-of-process server (or local server) | Another application (EXE) running in a <i>different process space</i> but on the <i>same machine</i> as the client. For example, an Excel spreadsheet embedded in a Word document are two separate applications running on the same machine. |
| Remote server | <p>The local server uses COM to communicate with the client.</p> <p>A DLL or another application running on a <i>different machine</i> from that of the client. For example, a C++Builder database application is connected to an application server on another machine in the network.</p> <p>The remote server uses distributed COM (DCOM) to access interfaces and communicate with the application server.</p> |

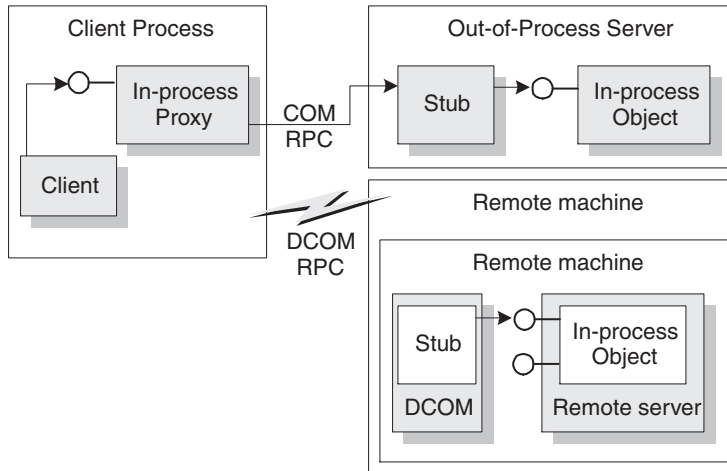
As shown in Figure 38.3, for in-process servers, pointers to the object interfaces are in the same process space as the client, so COM makes direct calls into the object implementation.

Figure 38.3 In-process server



Note This is not always true under COM+. When a client makes a call to an object in a different context, COM+ intercepts the call so that it behaves like a call to an out-of-process server (see below), even if the server is in-process. See Chapter 44, “Creating MTS or COM+ objects” for more information working with COM+.

As shown in Figure 38.4, when the process is either in a different process or in a different machine altogether, COM uses a proxy to initiate remote procedure calls. The **proxy** resides in the same process as the client, so from the client’s perspective, all interface calls look alike. The proxy intercepts the client’s call and forwards it to where the real object is running. The mechanism that enables the client to access objects in a different process space, or even different machine, as if they were in their own process, is called **marshaling**.

Figure 38.4 Out-of-process and remote servers

The difference between out-of-process and remote servers is the type of interprocess communication used. The proxy uses COM to communicate with an out-of-process server, it uses distributed COM (DCOM) to communicate with a remote machine. DCOM transparently transfers a local object request to the remote object running on a different machine.

Note For remote procedure calls, DCOM uses the RPC protocol provided by Open Group's Distributed Computing Environment (DCE). For distributed security, DCOM uses the NT LAN Manager (NTLM) security protocol. For directory services, DCOM uses the Domain Name System (DNS).

The marshaling mechanism

Marshaling is the mechanism that allows a client to make interface function calls to remote objects in another process or on a different machine. Marshaling

- Takes an interface pointer in the server's process and makes a proxy pointer available to code in the client process.
- Transfers the arguments of an interface call as passed from the client and places the arguments into the remote object's process space.

For any interface call, the client pushes arguments onto a stack and makes a function call through the interface pointer. If the call to the object is not in-process, the call gets passed to the proxy. The proxy packs the arguments into a marshaling packet and transmits the structure to the remote object. The object's stub unpacks the packet, pushes the arguments onto the stack, and calls the object's implementation. In essence, the object recreates the client's call in its own address space.

The type of marshaling that occurs depends on what interface the COM object implements. Objects can use a standard marshaling mechanism provided by the *IDispatch* interface. This is a generic marshaling mechanism that enables communication through a system-standard remote procedure call (RPC). For details on the *IDispatch* interface, see "Automation interfaces" on page 41-12. Even if the

object does not implement *IDispatch*, if it limits itself to automation-compatible types and has a registered type library, COM automatically provides marshaling support.

Applications that do not limit themselves to automation-compatible types or register a type library must provide their own marshaling. Marshaling is provided either through an implementation of the *IMarshal* interface, or by using a separately generated proxy/stub DLL. C++Builder does not support the automatic generation of proxy/stub DLLs.

Aggregation

Sometimes, a server object makes use of another COM object to perform some of its functions. For example, an inventory management object might make use of a separate invoicing object to handle customer invoices. If the inventory management object wants to present the invoice interface to clients, however, there is a problem: Although a client that has the inventory interface can call *QueryInterface* to obtain the invoice interface, when the invoice object was created it did not know about the inventory management object and can't return an inventory interface in response to a call to *QueryInterface*. A client that has the invoice interface can't get back to the inventory interface.

To avoid this problem, some COM objects support **aggregation**. When the inventory management object creates an instance of the invoice object, it passes it a copy of its own *IUnknown* interface. The invoice object can then use that *IUnknown* interface to handle any *QueryInterface* calls that request an interface, such as the inventory interface, that it does not support. When this happens, the two objects together are called an aggregate. The invoice object is called the inner, or contained object of the aggregate, and the inventory object is called the outer object.

Note In order to act as the outer object of an aggregate, a COM object must create the inner object using the Windows API *CoCreateInstance* or *CoCreateInstanceEx*, passing its *IUnknown* pointer as a parameter that the inner object can use for *QueryInterface* calls. You can also instantiate a *TComInterface* object and use its *CreateInstance* method for this purpose.

Objects that act as the inner object of an aggregate provide two implementations of the *IUnknown* interface: one that defers *QueryInterface* calls it can't handle to the controlling *IUnknown* of the outer object, and one that returns an error when it receives *QueryInterface* calls it can't handle. The C++Builder wizards automatically create objects that include this support for acting as inner objects.

COM clients

Clients can always query the interfaces of a COM object to determine what it is capable of providing. All COM objects allow clients to request known interfaces. In addition, if the server supports the *IDispatch* interface, clients can query the server for information about what methods the interface supports. Server objects have no expectations about the client using its objects. Similarly, clients don't need to know how (or even where) an object provides the services; they simply rely on server objects to provide the services they advertise through their interfaces.

There are two types of COM clients, controllers and containers. Controllers launch the server and interact with it through its interface. They request services from the COM object or drive it as a separate process. Containers host visual controls or objects that appear in the container's user interface. They use predefined interfaces to negotiate display issues with server objects. It is impossible to have a container relationship over DCOM; for example, visual controls that appear in the container's user interface must be located locally. This is because the controls are expected to paint themselves, which requires that they have access to local GDI resources.

C++Builder makes it easier for you to develop COM clients by letting you import a type library or ActiveX control into a component wrapper so that server objects look like other VCL components. For details on this process, see Chapter 40, "Creating COM clients."

COM extensions

COM was originally designed to provide core communication functionality and to enable the broadening of this functionality through extensions. COM itself has extended its core functionality by defining specialized sets of interfaces for specific purposes.

The following lists some of the services COM extensions currently provide. Subsequent sections describe these services in greater detail.

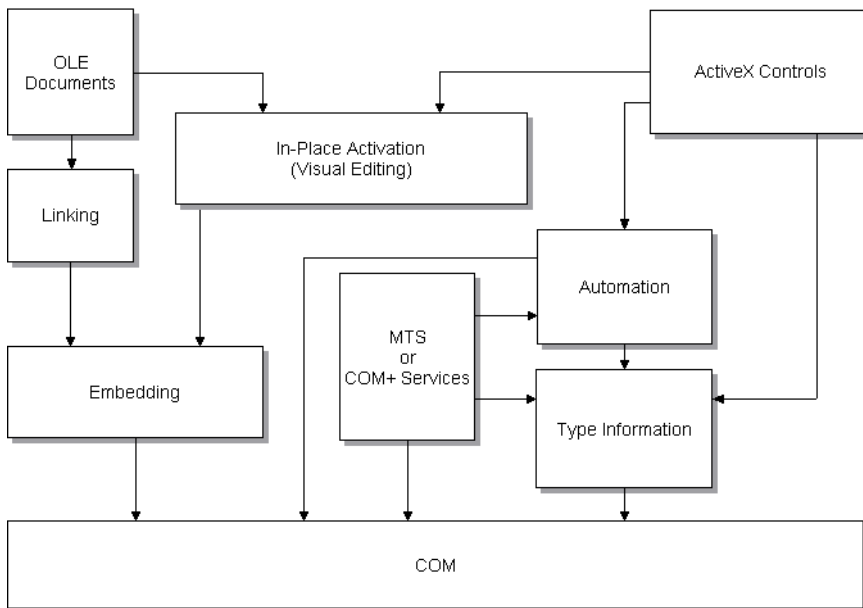
| | |
|------------------------------|--|
| Automation servers | Automation refers to the ability of an application to control the objects in another application programmatically. Automation servers are the objects that can be controlled by other executables at runtime. |
| ActiveX controls | ActiveX controls are specialized in-process servers, typically intended for embedding in a client application. The controls offer both design and runtime behaviors as well as events. |
| Active Server Pages | Active Server Pages are scripts that generate HTML pages. The scripting language includes constructs for creating and running Automation objects. That is, the Active Server Page acts as an Automation controller. |
| Active Documents | Objects that support linking and embedding, drag-and-drop, visual editing, and in-place activation. Word documents and Excel spreadsheets are examples of Active Documents. |
| Transactional objects | Objects that include additional support for responding to large numbers of clients. This includes features such as just-in-time activation, transactions, resource pooling, and security services. These features were originally handled by MTS but have been built into COM with the advent of COM+. |

COM+ Event and event subscription objects Objects that support the loosely coupled COM+ Events model. Unlike the tightly coupled model used by ActiveX controls, the COM+ Events model allows you to develop event publishers independently of event subscribers.

Type libraries A collection of static data structures, often saved as a resource, that provides detailed type information about an object and its interfaces. Clients of Automation servers, ActiveX controls, and transactional objects expect type information to be available.

The following diagram illustrates the relationship of the COM extensions and how they are built upon COM:

Figure 38.5 COM-based technologies



COM objects can be visual or non-visual. Some must run in the same process space as their clients; others can run in different processes or remote machines, as long as the objects provide marshaling support. Table 38.1 summarizes the types of COM objects

that you can create, whether they are visual, process spaces they can run in, how they provide marshaling, and whether they require a type library.

Table 38.1 COM object requirements

| Object | Visual Object? | Process space | Communication | Type library |
|------------------------------------|----------------|---------------------------------------|--|-----------------------------------|
| Active Document | Usually | In-process, or out-of-process | OLE Verbs | No |
| Automation Server | Occasionally | In-process, out-of-process, or remote | Automatically marshaled using the <i>IDispatch</i> interface (for out-of process and remote servers) | Required for automatic marshaling |
| ActiveX Control | Usually | In-process | Automatically marshaled using the <i>IDispatch</i> interface | Required |
| MTS or COM+ | Occasionally | In-process for MTS, any for COM+ | Automatically marshaled via a type library | Required |
| In-process custom interface object | Optionally | In-process | No marshaling required for in-process servers | Recommended |
| Other custom interface object | Optionally | In-process, out-of-process, or remote | Automatically marshaled via a type library; otherwise, manually marshaled using custom interfaces | Recommended |

Automation servers

Automation refers to the ability of an application to control the objects in another application programmatically, like a macro that can manipulate more than one application at the same time. The server object being manipulated is called the Automation object, and the client of the Automation object is referred to as an Automation controller.

Automation can be used on in-process, local, and remote servers.

Automation is characterized by two key points:

- The Automation object defines a set of properties and commands, and describes their capabilities through type descriptions. In order to do this, it must have a way to provide information about its interfaces, the interface methods, and those methods' arguments. Typically, this information is available in a type library. The Automation server can also generate type information dynamically when queried via its *IDispatch* interface (see following).
- Automation objects make their methods accessible so that other applications can use them. For this, they implement the *IDispatch* interface. Through this interface an object can expose all of its methods and properties. Through the primary method of this interface, the object's methods can be invoked, once having been identified through type information.

Developers often use Automation to create and use non-visual OLE objects that run in any process space because the Automation *IDispatch* interface automates the marshaling process. Automation does, however, restrict the types that you can use.

For a list of types that are valid for type libraries in general, and Automation interfaces in particular, see “Valid types” on page 39-11.

For information on writing an Automation server, see Chapter 41, “Creating simple COM servers.”

Active Server Pages

The Active Server Page (ASP) technology lets you write simple scripts, called Active Server Pages, that can be launched by clients via a Web server. Unlike ActiveX controls, which run on the client, Active Server Pages run on the server, and return a resulting HTML page to clients.

Active Server Pages are written in Jscript or VB script. The script runs every time the server loads the Web page. That script can then launch an embedded Automation server (or Enterprise Java Bean). For example, you can write an Automation server, such as one to create a bitmap or connect to a database, and this server accesses data that gets updated every time a client loads the Web page.

Active Server Pages rely on the Microsoft Internet Information Server (IIS) environment to serve your Web pages.

C++Builder wizards let you create an Active Server Object, which is an Automation object specifically designed to work with an Active Server Page. For more information about creating and using these types of objects, see Chapter 42, “Creating an Active Server Page.”

ActiveX controls

ActiveX is a technology that allows COM components, especially controls, to be more compact and efficient. This is especially necessary for controls that are intended for Intranet applications that need to be downloaded by a client before they are used.

ActiveX controls are visual controls that run only as in-process servers, and can be plugged into an ActiveX control container application. They are not complete applications in themselves, but can be thought of as prefabricated OLE controls that are reusable in various applications. ActiveX controls have a visible user interface, and rely on predefined interfaces to negotiate I/O and display issues with their host containers.

ActiveX controls make use of Automation to expose their properties, methods, and events. Features of ActiveX controls include the ability to fire events, bind to data sources, and support licensing.

One use of ActiveX controls is on a Web site as interactive objects in a Web page. As such, ActiveX is a standard that targets interactive content for the World Wide Web, including the use of ActiveX Documents used for viewing non-HTML documents

through a Web browser. For more information about ActiveX technology, see the Microsoft ActiveX Web site.

C++Builder wizards allow you to easily create ActiveX controls. For more information about creating and using these types of objects, see Chapter 43, “Creating an ActiveX control.”

Active Documents

Active Documents (previously referred to as OLE documents) are a set of COM services that support linking and embedding, drag-and-drop, and visual editing. Active Documents can seamlessly incorporate data or objects of different formats, such as sound clips, spreadsheets, text, and bitmaps.

Unlike ActiveX controls, Active Documents are not limited to in-process servers; they can be used in cross-process applications.

Unlike Automation objects, which are almost never visual, Active Document objects can be visually active in another application. Thus, Active Document objects are associated with two types of data: presentation data, used for visually displaying the object on a display or output device, and native data, used to edit an object.

Active Document objects can be document containers or document servers. While C++Builder does not provide an automatic wizard for creating Active Documents, you can use the VCL class, *TOleContainer*, to support linking and embedding of existing Active Documents.

You can also use *TOleContainer* as a basis for an Active Document container. To create objects for Active Document servers, use the COM object wizard and add the appropriate interfaces, depending on the services the object needs to support. For more information about creating and using Active Document servers, see the Microsoft ActiveX Web site.

Note While the specification for Active Documents has built-in support for marshaling in cross-process applications, Active Documents do not run on remote servers because they use types that are specific to a system on a given machine such as window handles, menu handles, and so on.

Transactional objects

C++Builder uses the term “transactional objects” to refer to objects that take advantage of the transaction services, security, and resource management supplied by Microsoft Transaction Server (MTS) (for versions of Windows prior to Windows 2000) or COM+ (for Windows 2000 and later). These objects are designed to work in a large, distributed environment.

The transaction services provide robustness so that activities are always completed or rolled back (the server never partially completes an activity). The security services allow you to expose different levels of support to different classes of clients. The resource management allows an object to handle more clients by pooling resources or keeping objects active only when they are in use. To enable the system to provide

these services, the object must implement the *IObjectControl* interface. To access the services, transactional objects use an interface called *IObjectContext*, which is created on their behalf by MTS or COM+.

Under MTS, the server object must be built into a library (DLL), which is then installed in the MTS runtime environment. That is, the server object is an in-process server that runs in the MTS runtime process space. Under COM+, this restriction does not apply because all COM calls are routed through an interceptor. To clients, the difference between MTS and COM+ is transparent.

MTS or COM+ servers group transactional objects that run in the same process space. Under MTS, this group is called an MTS package, while under COM+ it is called a COM+ application. A single machine can be running several different MTS packages (or COM+ applications), where each one is running in a separate process space.

To clients, the transactional object may appear like any other COM server object. The client need never know about transactions, security, or just-in-time activation unless it is initiating a transaction itself.

Both MTS and COM+ provide a separate tool for administering transactional objects. This tool lets you configure objects into packages or COM+ applications, view the packages or COM+ applications installed on a computer, view or change the attributes of the included objects, monitor and manage transactions, make objects available to clients, and so on. Under MTS, this tool is the MTS Explorer. Under COM+ it is the COM+ Component Manager.

COM+ Event and event subscriber objects

The COM+ Events system introduces a middle layer of software that decouples applications that generate events (called publishers) from applications that respond to events (called subscribers). Instead of being tightly bound to each other, publishers and subscribers can be developed, deployed and activated independently of each other.

In the COM+ Events model, an event interface is first created using C++Builder's COM+ Event Object wizard. The event interface has no implementation; it simply defines the event methods that publishers will generate, and that subscribers will respond to. The COM+ event object is then installed into a COM+ Application, in the COM+ Catalog. This can be done using the C++Builder IDE, programmatically using the *TComAdminCatalog* object, or by a system administrator using the Component Services tool.

Event subscribers are responsible for providing an implementation for the event interface. You can create event subscriber components using C++Builder's COM+ Event Subscription wizard. Using the wizard, you can select the event object you want to implement, and C++Builder will stub out each method of the interface. You can also select a type library if the event object has not yet been installed in the COM+ Catalog.

Finally, once the subscriber component has been implemented, it too must be installed in the COM+ Catalog. Again, this can be done either with the C++Builder IDE, a *TComAdminCatalog* object, or by using the Component Services administrative tool.

When a publisher wishes to generate an event, it simply creates an instance of the event object (not the subscriber component), and calls the appropriate methods on the event interface. COM+ then steps in and notifies all applications that have subscribed to that event object, calling them synchronously, one at a time. This way, publishers need not know anything about those applications that are subscribing to the event. Subscribers don't need anything more than an implementation of the event interface, and to select those publishers they wish to subscribe to. COM+ handles the rest.

For more information regarding the COM+ Events system, see "Generating events under COM+" on page 44-20.

Type libraries

Type libraries provide a way to get more type information about an object than can be determined from an object's interface. The type information contained in type libraries provides needed information about objects and their interfaces, such as what interfaces exist on what objects (given the CLSID), what member functions exist on each interface, and what arguments those functions require.

You can obtain type information either by querying a running instance of an object or by loading and reading type libraries. With this information, you can implement a client which uses a desired object, knowing specifically what member functions you need, and what to pass those member functions.

Clients of Automation servers, ActiveX controls, and transactional objects expect type information to be available. All of C++Builder's wizards generate a type library automatically. You can view or edit this type information by using the **Type Library Editor** as described in Chapter 39, "Working with type libraries."

This section describes what a type library contains, how it is created, when it is used, and how it is accessed. For developers wanting to share interfaces across languages, the section ends with suggestions on using type library tools.

The content of type libraries

Type libraries contain *type information*, which indicates which interfaces exist in which COM objects, and the types and numbers of arguments to the interface methods. These descriptions include the unique identifiers for the CoClasses (CLSIDs) and the interfaces (IIDs), so that they can be properly accessed, as well as the dispatch identifiers (dispIDs) for Automation interface methods and properties.

Type libraries can also contain the following information:

- Descriptions of custom type information associated with custom interfaces
- Routines that are exported by the Automation or ActiveX server, but that are not interface methods

- Information about enumeration, record (structures), unions, alias, and module data types
- References to type descriptions from other type libraries

Creating type libraries

With traditional development tools, you create type libraries by writing scripts in the Interface Definition Language (IDL) or the Object Description Language (ODL), then running that script through a compiler. However, C++Builder automatically generates a type library when you create a COM object (including ActiveX controls, Automation objects, remote data modules, and so on) using any of the wizards on the ActiveX or Multitier page of the new items dialog. You can also create a type library by choosing from the main menu, File | New | Other, select the ActiveX tab, and choose Type Library.

You can view the type library using C++Builder's Type Library editor. You can easily edit your type library using the Type Library editor and C++Builder automatically updates the corresponding .tlb file (binary type library file) when the type library is saved. For any changes to Interfaces and CoClasses that were created using a wizard, the Type Library editor also updates your implementation files. For more information on using the Type Library editor to write interfaces and CoClasses, see Chapter 39, "Working with type libraries."

When to use type libraries

It is important to create a type library for each set of objects that is exposed to external users, for example,

- ActiveX controls require a type library, which must be included as a resource in the DLL that contains the ActiveX controls.
- Exposed objects that support vtable binding of custom interfaces must be described in a type library because vtable references are bound at compile time. Clients import information about the interfaces from the type library and use that information to compile. For more information about vtable and compile time binding, see "Automation interfaces" on page 41-12.
- Applications that implement Automation servers should provide a type library so that clients can early bind to it.
- Objects instantiated from classes that support the *IProvideClassInfo* interface must have a type library.
- Type libraries are not required, but are useful for identifying the objects used with OLE drag-and-drop.

Accessing type libraries

The binary type library is normally a part of a resource file (.res) or a stand-alone file with a .tlb file-name extension. When included in a resource file, the type library can be bound into a server (.dll, .ocx, or .exe).

Once a type library has been created, object browsers, compilers, and similar tools can access type libraries through special type interfaces:

| Interface | Description |
|-------------------|---|
| <i>ITypeLib</i> | Provides methods for accessing a library of type descriptions. |
| <i>ITypeLib2</i> | Augments <i>ITypeLib</i> to include support for documentation strings, custom data, and statistics about the type library. |
| <i>ITypeInfo</i> | Provides descriptions of individual objects contained in a type library. For example, a browser uses this interface to extract information about objects from the type library. |
| <i>ITypeInfo2</i> | Augments <i>ITypeInfo</i> to access additional type library information, including methods for accessing custom data elements. |
| <i>ITypeComp</i> | Provides a fast way to access information that compilers need when binding to an interface. |

C++Builder can import and use type libraries from other applications by choosing Project | Import Type Library.

Benefits of using type libraries

Even if your application does not require a type library, you can consider the following benefits of using one:

- You can use early binding with Automation (as opposed to calling through Variants), and controllers that do not support vtables or dual interfaces can encode dispIDs at compile time, improving runtime performance.
- Type browsers can scan the library, so clients can see the characteristics of your objects.
- The *RegisterTypeLib* function can be used to register your exposed objects in the registration database.
- The *UnRegisterTypeLib* function can be used to completely uninstall an application's type library from the system registry.
- Local server access is improved because Automation uses information from the type library to package the parameters that are passed to an object in another process.

Using type library tools

The tools for working with type libraries are listed below.

- The TLBIMP (Type Library Import) tool, which takes existing type libraries and creates C++Builder Interface files (*_TLB.cpp* and *_TLB.h* files), is incorporated into the Type Library editor. TLBIMP provides additional configuration options not available inside the Type Library editor.
- TRegSvr is a tool for registering and unregistering servers and type libraries, which comes with C++Builder. The source to TRegSvr is available as an example in the Examples directory.

- The Microsoft IDL compiler (MIDL) compiles IDL scripts to create a type library. MIDL has an optional switch for generating header files, found in the MS Win32 SDK.
- RegSvr32.exe is a standard Windows utility for registering and unregistering servers and type libraries.
- OLEView is a type library browser tool, found on Microsoft's Web site.

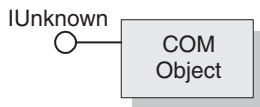
Implementing COM objects with wizards

C++Builder makes it easier to write COM server applications by providing wizards that handle many of the details involved. C++Builder provides separate wizards to create the following:

- A simple COM object
- An Automation object
- An Active Server Object (for embedding in an Active Server page)
- An ActiveX control
- An ActiveX Form
- A transactional object
- A COM+ Event Object
- A COM+ Subscription Object
- A Property page
- A Type library
- An ActiveX library

The wizards handle many of the tasks involved in creating each type of COM object. They provide the required COM interfaces for each type of object. As shown in Figure 38.6, with a simple COM object, the wizard implements the one required COM interface, *IUnknown*, which provides an interface pointer to the object.

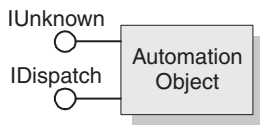
Figure 38.6 Simple COM object interface



The COM object wizard also provides an implementation for *IDispatch* if you specify that you are creating an object that supports an *IDispatch* descendant.

As shown in Figure 38.7, for Automation and Active Server objects, the wizard implements *IUnknown* and *IDispatch*, which provides automatic marshaling.

Figure 38.7 Automation object interface



As shown in Figure 38.8, for ActiveX control objects and ActiveX forms, the wizard implements all the required ActiveX control interfaces, from *IUnknown*, *IDispatch*, *IObject*, *IObjectControl*, and so on.

Figure 38.8 ActiveX object interface

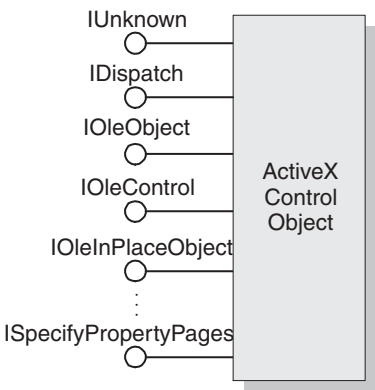


Table 38.2 lists the various wizards and the interfaces they implement:

Table 38.2 C++Builder wizards for implementing COM, Automation, and ActiveX objects

| Wizard | Implemented interfaces | What the wizard does |
|-------------------|---|--|
| COM server | <i>IUnknown</i> (and <i>IDispatch</i> if you select a default interface that descends from <i>IDispatch</i>) | <p>Exports routines that handle server registration, class registration, loading and unloading the server, and object instantiation.</p> <p>Creates and manages class factories for objects implemented on the server.</p> <p>Provides registry entries for the object that specify the selected threading model.</p> <p>Provides server-side support for generating events, if requested.</p> <p>Declares the methods that implement a selected interface, providing skeletal implementations for you to complete.</p> <p>Provides a type library.</p> <p>Allows you to select an arbitrary interface that is registered in the type library and implement it. If you do this, you must use a type library.</p> |
| Automation server | <i>IUnknown</i> , <i>IDispatch</i> | <p>Performs the tasks of a COM server wizard (described above), plus:</p> <p>Implements the interface that you specify, either dual or dispatch.</p> |

Table 38.2 C++Builder wizards for implementing COM, Automation, and ActiveX objects (continued)

| Wizard | Implemented interfaces | What the wizard does |
|--------------------------|--|--|
| Active Server Object | <i>IUnknown, IDispatch, (IASPObj)</i> | <p>Performs the tasks of an Automation object wizard (described above) and optionally generates an .ASP page which can be loaded into a Web browser. It leaves you in the Type Library editor so that you can modify the object's properties and methods if needed.</p> <p>Surfaces the ASP intrinsics as properties so that you can easily obtain information about the ASP application and the HTTP messages that launched it.</p> |
| ActiveX Control | <i>IUnknown, IDispatch, IPersistStreamInit, IOleInPlaceActiveObject, IPersistStorage, IViewObject, IOleObject, IViewObject2, IOleControl, IPerPropertyBrowsing, IOleInPlaceObject, ISpecifyPropertyPages</i> | <p>Performs the tasks of the Automation server wizard (described above), plus:</p> <p>Generates an implementation CoClass that corresponds to the VCL control on which the ActiveX control is based and which implements all the ActiveX interfaces.</p> <p>Leaves you in the source code editor so that you can modify the implementation class.</p> |
| ActiveForm | Same interfaces as ActiveX Control | <p>Performs the tasks of the ActiveX control wizard, plus:</p> <p>Creates a <i>TActiveForm</i> descendant that takes the place of the pre-existing VCL class in the ActiveX control wizard. This new class lets you design the Active Form the same way you design a form in a Windows application.</p> |
| Transactional object | <i>IUnknown, IDispatch, IObjectControl</i> | <p>Adds a new unit to the current project containing the MTS or COM+ object definition. It inserts proprietary GUIDs into the type library so that C++Builder can install the object properly, and leaves you in the Type Library editor so that you can define the interface that the object exposes to clients. You must install the object separately after it is built.</p> |
| Property Page | <i>IUnknown, IPropertyPage</i> | Creates a new property page that you can design in the Forms designer. |
| COM+ Event object | None, by default | Creates a COM+ event object that you can define using the Type Library editor. Unlike the other object wizards, the COM+ Event object wizard does not create an implementation unit because event objects have no implementation (it is provided by event subscriber objects). |
| COM+ Subscription object | None, by default | Creates a COM+ subscriber object that implements the chosen event interface. |
| Type Library | None, by default | Creates a new type library and associates it with the active project. |
| ActiveX library | None, by default | Creates a new ActiveX or Com server DLL and exposes the necessary export functions. |

You can add additional COM objects or reimplement an existing implementation. To add a new object, it is easiest to use the wizard a second time. This is because the wizard sets up an association between the type library and an implementation class, so that changes you make in the type library editor are automatically applied to your implementation object.

Code generated by wizards

C++Builder's wizards generate code that uses the Microsoft Active Template Library (ATL) as the basis of its COM support. ATL is a framework of template classes that handle many of the implementation details of developing COM applications. Because ATL is template-based, you don't link to DLLs. Instead, your project includes ATL header files that compile into your object code. The C++Builder wizards generate include statements for these header files in a unit with the `_ATL` suffix (For example, `Project1_ATL.cpp` and `Project1_ATL.h`).

Note The ATL header files in C++Builder's Include/ATL directory differ slightly from the ATL header files supplied by Microsoft. These differences are required so that C++Builder's compiler can compile the headers. You can't replace these headers with another version of ATL, because it will not compile properly.

In addition to the include statements for the ATL files (and additional files that enable the ATL classes to work with VCL classes), the generated `_ATL` unit header also includes the declaration of a global variable called `_Module`. `_Module` is an instance of the ATL class `CComModule`, which isolates the rest of the application from differences between DLLs and EXEs in the way threading and registration issues are handled. In your project file (`Project1.cpp`), `_Module` is assigned to an instance of `TComModule`, which is a descendant of `CComModule` that supports C++Builder's style of COM registration. Typically, you do not need to use this object directly.

The wizard also adds an object map to your project file. This is a set of ATL macros that looks something like the following:

```
BEGIN_OBJECT_MAP(ObjectMap)
    OBJECT_ENTRY(CLSID_MyObj, TMyObjImpl)
END_OBJECT_MAP()
```

Each entry between the `BEGIN_OBJECT_MAP` line and the `END_OBJECT_MAP` line defines an association between a class id and its ATL implementation class. The `_Module` object uses this map to register components. The object map is also used by the ATL object creator classes. If you add any COM objects to your application without using a wizard, you must update the object map so that they can be properly registered and created. To do so, add another line that uses the `OBJECT_ENTRY` macro, assigning the class id and the implementation class name as parameters.

The wizards generate an implementation unit for the particular type of COM object you are creating. The implementation unit contains the declaration of the class that implements your COM object. This class is a descendant (directly or indirectly) of the ATL class `CComObjectRootEx`, the ATL class `CComCoClass`, and other classes that depend on the type of object you are creating.

CComCoClass provides the class factory support for creating your class. It uses the object map that was added to your project file.

CComObjectRootEx is a template class that provides the underlying support for *IUnknown*. It implements the *QueryInterface* method by making use of an interface map, which you can find in the implementation unit header. The interface map looks like the following:

```
BEGIN_COM_MAP(TMObjImpl)
    COM_INTERFACE_ENTRY(IMyObj)
END_COM_MAP()
```

Each entry in the interface map is an interface that is exposed by the *QueryInterface* method. If you add additional interfaces to your implementation class, you must add them to the interface map (using the `COM_INTERFACE_ENTRY` macro), and add them as additional ancestors of the implementation class.

CComObjectRootEx supplies the underlying support for reference counting. It does not, however, declare the *AddRef* and *Release* methods. These methods are added to your implementation class through the `END_COM_MAP()` macro at the end of the interface map.

Note For more information on the ATL, see the Microsoft documentation. However, note that C++Builder's COM support does not use the ATL for registration, ActiveX controls (which are based on VCL objects instead), or property page support.

The wizards also generate a type library and its associated unit, which has a name of the form `Project1_TLB`. The `Project1_TLB` unit includes the definitions your application needs to use the type definitions and interfaces defined in the type library. For more information on the contents of this file, see "Code generated when you import type library information" on page 40-5.

You can modify the interface generated by the wizard using the type library editor. When you do this, the implementation class is automatically updated to reflect those changes. You need only fill in the bodies of the generated methods to complete the implementation.

Working with type libraries

This chapter describes how to create and edit type libraries using C++Builder's Type Library editor. Type libraries are files that include information about data types, interfaces, member functions, and object classes exposed by a COM object. They provide a way to identify what types of objects and interfaces are available on a server. For a detailed overview on why and when to use type libraries, see "Type libraries" on page 38-16.

A type library can contain any and all of the following:

- Information about custom data types such as aliases, enumerations, structures, and unions.
- Descriptions of one or more COM elements, such as an interface, dispinterface, or CoClass. Each of these descriptions is commonly referred to as *type information*.
- Descriptions of constants and methods defined in external modules.
- References to type descriptions from other type libraries.

By including a type library with your COM application or ActiveX library, you make information about the objects in your application available to other applications and programming tools through COM's type library tools and interfaces.

With traditional development tools, you create type libraries by writing scripts in the Interface Definition Language (IDL), then run that script through a compiler. The Type Library editor automates some of this process, easing the burden of creating and modifying your own type libraries.

When you create a COM server of any type (ActiveX control, Automation object, remote data module, and so on) using C++Builder's wizards, the wizard automatically generates a type library for you. Most of the work you do in customizing the generated object starts with the type library, because that is where you define the properties and methods it exposes to clients: you change the interface of the CoClass generated by the wizard, using the Type Library editor. The Type Library editor automatically updates the implementation unit for your object, so that all you need do is fill in the bodies of the generated methods.

Type Library editor

The Type Library editor enables developers to examine and create type information for COM objects. Using the Type Library editor can greatly simplify the task of developing COM objects by centralizing the tasks of defining interfaces, CoClasses, and types, obtaining GUIDs for new interfaces, associating interfaces with CoClasses, updating implementation units, and so on.

The Type Library editor outputs two types of file that represent the contents of the type library:

Table 39.1 Type Library editor files

| File | Description |
|-----------|--|
| .TLB file | The binary type library file. By default, you do not need to use this file, because the type library is automatically compiled into the application as a resource. However, you can use this file to explicitly compile the type library into another project or to deploy the type library separately from the .exe or .ocx. For more information, see “Opening an existing type library” on page 39-13 and “Deploying type libraries” on page 39-19. |
| _TLB unit | This unit (.cpp and .h files) reflects the contents of the type library for use by your application. It contains all the declarations your application needs to use the elements defined in the type library. Although you can open this file in the code editor, you should never edit it—it is maintained by the Type Library editor, so any changes you make will be overwritten by the Type Library editor. For more details on the contents of this file, see “Code generated when you import type library information” on page 40-5. |

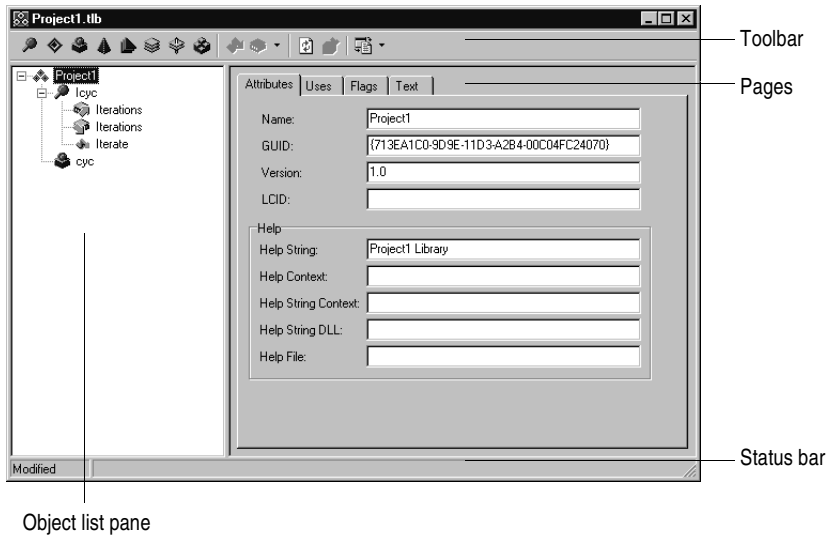
Parts of the Type Library editor

The main elements of the Type Library editor are described in Table 39.2:

Table 39.2 Type Library editor parts

| Part | Description |
|------------------|--|
| Toolbar | Includes buttons to add new types, CoClasses, interfaces, and interface members to your type library. The toolbar also includes buttons for refreshing your implementation unit, registering the type library, and saving an IDL file with the information in your type library. |
| Object list pane | Displays all the existing elements in the type library. When you click on an item in the object list pane, it displays pages valid for that object. |
| Status bar | Displays syntax errors if you try to add invalid types to your type library. |
| Pages | Display information about the selected object. Which pages appear here depends on the type of object selected. |

These parts are illustrated in Figure 39.1, which shows the Type Library editor displaying type information for a COM object named cyc.









Figure 39.1 Type Library editor

Toolbar

The Type Library editor's toolbar located at the top of the Type Library Editor, contains buttons that you click to add new objects into your type library.








The first group of buttons let you add elements to the type library. When you click a toolbar button, the icon for that element appears in the object list pane. You can then customize its attributes in the right pane. Depending on the type of icon you select, different pages of information appear to the right.

The following table lists the elements you can add to your type library:

| Icon | Meaning |
|---|------------------------------|
|  | An interface description. |
|  | A dispinterface description. |
|  | A CoClass. |
|  | An enumeration. |
|  | An alias. |
|  | A record. |
|  | A union. |
|  | A module. |

When you select one of the elements listed above in the object list pane, the second group of buttons displays members that are valid for that element. For example, when you select Interface, the Method and Property icons in the second box become enabled because you can add methods and properties to your interface definition. When you select Enum, the second group of buttons changes to display the Const member, which is the only valid member for Enum type information.

The following table lists the members that can be added to elements in the object list pane:

| Icon | Meaning |
|---|---|
|  | A method of the interface, dispinterface, or an entry point in a module. |
|  | A property on an interface or dispinterface. |
|  | A write-only property. (available from the drop-down list on the property button) |
|  | A read-write property. (available from the drop-down list on the property button) |
|  | A read-only property. (available from the drop-down list on the property button) |
|  | A field in a record or union. |
|  | A constant in an enum or a module. |

The third group of buttons let you refresh, register, or export your type library (save it as an IDL file), as described in “Saving and registering type library information” on page 39-17.

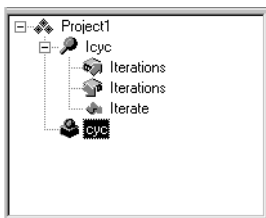
Object list pane

The Object list pane displays all the elements of the current type library in a tree view. The root of the tree represents the type library itself, and appears as the following icon:



Descending from the type library node are the elements in the type library:

Figure 39.2 Object list pane



When you select any of these elements (including the type library itself), the pages of type information to the right change to reflect only the relevant information for that element. You can use these pages to edit the definition and properties of the selected element.

You can manipulate the elements in the object list pane by right clicking to get the object list pane context menu. This menu includes commands that let you use the Windows clipboard to move or copy existing elements as well as commands to add new elements or customize the appearance of the Type Library editor.

Status bar

When editing or saving a type library, syntax, translation errors, and warnings are listed in the Status bar pane.

For example, if you specify a type that the Type Library editor does not support, you will get a syntax error. For a complete list of types supported by the Type Library editor, see “Valid types” on page 39-11.

Pages of type information

When you select an element in the object list pane, pages of type information appear in the Type Library editor that are valid for the selected element. Which pages appear depends on the element selected in the object list panel, as follows:

Table 39.3 Type library pages

| Type Info element | Page of type information | Contents of page |
|----------------------|--------------------------|---|
| Type library | Attributes | Name, version, and GUID for the type library, as well as information linking the type library to help. |
| | Uses | List of other type libraries that contain definitions on which this one depends. |
| | Flags | Flags that determine how other applications can use the type library. |
| | Text | All definitions and declarations defining the type library itself (see discussion below). |
| Interface | Attributes | Name, version, and GUID for the interface, the name of the interface from which it descends, and information linking the interface to help. |
| | Flags | Flags that indicate whether the interface is hidden, dual, Automation-compatible, and/or extensible. |
| | Text | The definitions and declarations for the Interface (see discussion below). |
| Dispinterface | Attributes | Name, version, and GUID for the interface, and information linking it to help. |
| | Flags | Flags that indicate whether the Dispinterface is hidden, dual, and/or extensible. |
| | Text | The definitions and declarations for the Dispinterface. (see discussion below). |

Table 39.3 Type library pages (continued)

| Type Info element | Page of type information | Contents of page |
|--------------------|--------------------------|--|
| CoClass | Attributes | Name, version, and GUID for the CoClass, and information linking it to help. |
| | Implements | A List of interfaces that the CoClass implements, as well as their attributes. |
| | COM+ | The attributes of transactional objects, such as the transaction model, call synchronization, just-in-time activation, object pooling, and so on. Also includes the attributes of COM+ event objects. |
| | Flags | Flags that indicate various attributes of the CoClass, including how clients can create and use instances, whether it is visible to users in a browser, whether it is an ActiveX control, and whether it can be aggregated (act as part of a composite). |
| | Text | The definitions and declarations for the CoClass (see discussion below). |
| Enumeration | Attributes | Name, version, and GUID for the enumeration, and information linking it to help. |
| | Text | The definitions and declarations for the enumerated type (see discussion below). |
| Alias | Attributes | Name, version, and GUID for the enumeration, the type the alias represents, and information linking it to help. |
| | Text | The definitions and declarations for the alias (see discussion below). |
| Record | Attributes | Name, version, and GUID for the record, and information linking it to help. |
| | Text | The definitions and declarations for the record (see discussion below). |
| Union | Attributes | Name, version, and GUID for the union, and information linking it to help. |
| | Text | The definitions and declarations for the union (see discussion below). |
| Module | Attributes | Name, version, GUID, and associated DLL for the module, and information linking it to help. |
| | Text | The definitions and declarations for the module (see discussion below). |
| Method | Attributes | Name, dispatch ID or DLL entry point, and information linking it to help. |
| | Parameters | Method return type, and a list of all parameters with their types and any modifiers. |
| | Flags | Flags to indicate how clients can view and use the method, whether this is a default method for the interface, and whether it is replaceable. |
| | Text | The definitions and declarations for the method (see discussion below). |
| Property | Attributes | Name, dispatch ID, type of property access method (getter vs. setter), and information linking it to help. |

Table 39.3 Type library pages (continued)

| Type Info element | Page of type information | Contents of page |
|-------------------|--------------------------|---|
| Const | Parameters | Property access method return type, and a list of all parameters with their types and any modifiers. |
| | Flags | Flags to indicate how clients can view and use the property, whether this is a default for the interface, whether the property is replaceable, bindable, and so on. |
| | Text | The definitions and declarations for the property access method (see discussion below). |
| | Attributes | Name, value, type (for module consts), and information linking it to help. |
| | Flags | Flags to indicate how clients can view and use the constant, whether this represents a default value, whether the constant is bindable, and so on. |
| | Text | The definitions and declarations for the constant (see discussion below). |
| Field | Attributes | Name, type, and information linking it to help. |
| | Flags | Flags to indicate how clients can view and use the field, whether this represents a default value, whether the field is bindable, and so on. |
| | Text | The definitions and declarations for the field (see discussion below). |

Note For more detailed information about the various options you can set on type information pages, see the online Help for the Type Library editor.

You can use each of the pages of type information to view or edit the values it displays. Most of the pages organize the information into a set of controls so that you can type in values or select them from a list without requiring that you know the syntax of the corresponding declarations. This can prevent many small mistakes such as typographic errors when specifying values from a limited set. However, you may find it faster to type in the declarations directly. To do this, use the Text page.

All type library elements have a text page that displays the syntax for the element. This syntax appears in an IDL subset of Microsoft Interface Definition Language. Any changes you make in other pages of the element are reflected on the text page. If you add code directly in the text page, changes are reflected in the other pages of the Type Library editor.

The Type Library editor generates syntax errors if you add identifiers that are currently not supported by the editor; the editor currently supports only those identifiers that relate to type library support (not RPC support or constructs used by the Microsoft IDL compiler for C++ code generation or marshaling support).

Type library elements

The Type Library interface can seem overwhelmingly complicated at first. This is because it represents information about a great number of elements, each of which has its own characteristics. However, many of these characteristics are common to all elements. For example, every element (including the type library itself) has the following:

- A Name, which is used to describe the element and which is used when referring to the element in code.
- A GUID (globally unique identifier), which is a unique 128-bit value that COM uses to identify the element. This should always be supplied for the type library itself and for CoClasses and interfaces. It is optional otherwise.
- A Version number, which distinguishes between multiple versions of the element. This is always optional, but should be provided for CoClasses and interfaces, because some tools can't use them without a version number.
- Information linking the element to a Help topic. These include a Help String, and Help Context or Help String Context value. The Help Context is used for a traditional Windows Help system where the type library has a stand-alone Help file. The Help String Context is used when help is supplied by a separate DLL instead. The Help Context or Help String Context refers to a Help file or DLL that is specified on the type library's Attributes page. This is always optional.

Interfaces

An interface describes the methods (and any properties expressed as 'get' and 'set' functions) for an object that must be accessed through a virtual function table (vtable). If an interface is flagged as dual, it will inherit from *IDispatch*, and your object can provide both early-bound, vtable access, and runtime binding through OLE automation. By default, the type library flags all interfaces you add as dual.

Interfaces can be assigned members: methods and properties. These appear in the object list pane as children of the interface node. Properties for interfaces are represented by the 'get' and 'set' methods used to read and write the property's underlying data. They are represented in the tree view using special icons that indicate their purpose.

Note When a property is specified as Write By Reference, it means it is passed as a pointer rather than by value. Some applications, such as Visual Basic, use Write By Reference, if it is present, to optimize performance. To pass the property only by reference rather than by value, use the property type *By Reference Only*. To pass the property by reference as well as by value, select Read | Write | Write By Ref. To invoke this menu, go to the toolbar and select the arrow next to the property icon.

Once you add the properties or methods using the toolbar button or the object list pane context menu, you describe their syntax and attributes by selecting the property or method and using the pages of type information.

The Attributes page lets you give the property or method a name and dispatch ID (so that it can be called using *IDispatch*). For properties, you also assign a type. The

function signature is created using the Parameters page, where you can add, remove, and rearrange parameters, set their type and any modifiers, and specify function return types.

Note that when you assign properties and methods to an interface, they are implicitly assigned to its associated CoClass. This is why the Type Library editor does not let you add properties and methods directly to a CoClass.

Dispinterfaces

Interfaces are more commonly used than dispinterfaces to describe the properties and methods of an object. Dispinterfaces are only accessible through dynamic binding, while interfaces can have static binding through a vtable.

You can add methods and properties to dispinterfaces in the same way you add them to interfaces. However, when you create a property for a dispinterface, you can't specify a function kind or parameter types.

CoClasses

A CoClass describes a unique COM object that implements one or more interfaces. When defining a CoClass, you must specify which implemented interface is the default for the object, and optionally, which dispinterface is the default source for events. Note that you do not add properties or methods to a CoClass in the Type Library editor. Properties and methods are exposed to clients by interfaces, which are associated with the CoClass using the Implements page.

Type definitions

Enumerations, aliases, records, and unions all declare types that can then be used elsewhere in the type library.

Enums consist of a list of constants, each of which must be numeric. Numeric input is usually an integer in decimal or hexadecimal format. The base value is zero by default. You can add constants to your enumeration by selecting the enumeration in the object list pane and clicking the Const button on the toolbar or selecting New | Const command from the object list pane context menu.

Note It is strongly recommended that you provide help strings for your enumerations to make their meaning clearer. The following is a sample entry of an enumeration type for a mouse button and includes a help string for each enumeration element.

```
typedef enum TxMouseButton
{
    [helpstring("mbLeft")]
    mbLeft = 0,
    [helpstring("mbRight")]
    mbRight = 1,
    [helpstring("mbMiddle")]
    mbMiddle = 2
} TxMouseButton;
```

An alias creates an alias (typedef) for a type. You can use the alias to define types that you want to use in other type info such as records or unions. Associate the alias with the underlying type definition by setting the Type attribute on the Attributes page.

A record is a C-style structure. It consists of a list of structure members or fields. A union defines a C-style *union*. Like a record, a union consists of a list of structure members or fields. However, unlike the members of records, each member of a union occupies the same physical address, so that only one logical value can be stored.

Add the fields to a record or union by selecting it in the object list pane and clicking the field button in the toolbar or right clicking and choosing field from the object list pane context menu. Each field has a name and a type, which you assign by selecting the field and assigning values using the Attributes page. Records and unions can be defined with an optional tag, as with a C *struct*.

Members can be of any built-in type, or you can specify a type using alias before you define the record.

Note C++Builder does not support marshaling related keywords for structs and unions, such as `switch_type`, `first_is`, `last_is`, etc.

Modules

A module defines a group of functions, typically a set of DLL entry points. You define a module by

- Specifying a DLL that it represents on the attributes page.
- Adding methods and constants using the toolbar or the object list pane context menu. For each method or constant, you must then define its attributes by selecting the it in the object list pane and setting the values on the Attributes page.

For module methods, you must assign a name and DLL entry point using the attributes page. Declare the function's parameters and return type using the parameters page.

For module constants, use the Attributes page to specify a name, type, and value.

Note The Type Library editor does not generate any declarations or implementation related to a module. The specified DLL must be created as a separate project.

Using the Type Library editor

Using the type library editor, you can create new type libraries or edit existing ones. Typically, an application developer uses a wizard to create the objects that are exposed in the type library, letting C++Builder generate the type library automatically. Then, the automatically-generated type library is opened in the Type Library editor so that the interfaces can be defined (or modified), type definitions added, and so on.

However, even if you are not using a wizard to define the objects, you can use the Type Library editor to define a new type library. In this case, you must create any implementation classes yourself, because the Type Library editor does not generate code for CoClasses that were not associated with a type library by a wizard.

The editor supports a subset of valid types in a type library as described below.

The final topics in this section describe how to:

- Create a new type library
- Open an existing type library
- Add an interface to the type library
- Modify an interface
- Add properties and methods to the type library
- Add a CoClass to the type library
- Add an interface to a CoClass
- Add an enumeration to the type library
- Add an alias to the type library
- Add a record or union to the type library
- Add a module to the type library
- Save and register type library information

Valid types

The Type Library editor supports the following IDL types in a type library. The Automation compatible column specifies whether the type can be used by an interface that has its Automation or Dispinterface flag checked. These are the types that COM can marshal via the type library automatically.

| IDL type | Variant type | Automation compatible | Description |
|----------------|--------------|-----------------------|--|
| short | VT_I2 | Yes | 2-byte signed integer |
| long | VT_I4 | Yes | 4-byte signed integer |
| single | VT_R4 | Yes | 4-byte real |
| double | VT_R8 | Yes | 8-byte real |
| CURRENCY | VT_CY | Yes | currency |
| DATE | VT_DATE | Yes | date |
| BSTR | VT_BSTR | Yes | binary string |
| IDispatch | VT_DISPATCH | Yes | pointer to IDispatch interface |
| SCODE | VT_ERROR | Yes | OLE Error Code |
| VARIANT_BOOL | VT_BOOL | Yes | True = -1, False = 0 |
| VARIANT | VT_VARIANT | Yes | pointer to OLE Variant |
| IUnknown | VT_UNKNOWN | Yes | pointer to IUnknown interface |
| DECIMAL | VT_DECIMAL | Yes | 16-byte fixed point |
| byte | VT_I1 | No* | 1-byte signed integer |
| unsigned char | VT_UI1 | Yes | 1-byte unsigned integer |
| unsigned short | VT_UI2 | No* | 2-byte unsigned integer |
| unsigned long | VT_UI4 | No* | 4-byte unsigned integer |
| __int64 | VT_I8 | No | 8-byte signed real |
| uint64 | VT_UI8 | No | 8-byte unsigned real |
| int | VT_INT | No* | system-dependent integer (Win32=Integer) |

| IDL type | Variant type | Automation compatible | Description |
|--------------|--------------|-----------------------|-----------------------------------|
| unsigned int | VT_UINT | No* | system-dependent unsigned integer |
| void | VT_VOID | Yes | C style VOID |
| HRESULT | VT_HRESULT | No | 32-bit error code |
| SAFEARRAY | VT_SAFEARRAY | Yes | OLE Safe Array |
| LPSTR | VT_LPSTR | No | null terminated string |
| LPWSTR | VT_LPWSTR | No | wide null terminated string |

* May be Automation compatible with some applications.

Note The unsigned char type (VT_UI1) is Automation-compatible, but is not allowed in a Variant or OleVariant since many Automation servers do not handle this value correctly.

Note For valid types for CORBA development, see “Defining object interfaces” on page 31-5.

Besides these IDL types, any interfaces and types defined in the library or defined in referenced libraries can be used in a type library definition.

The Type Library editor stores type information in the generated type library (.TLB) file in binary form.

SafeArrays

COM requires that arrays be passed via a special data type known as a SafeArray. You can create and destroy SafeArrays by calling special COM functions to do so, and all elements within a SafeArray must be valid automation-compatible types.

In the Type Library editor, a *SafeArray* must specify the type of its elements. For example, the following line from the text page declares a method with a parameter that is a *SafeArray* with an element type of long:

```
HRESULT _stdcall HighlightLines(SAFEARRAY(long) Lines);
```

Note Although you must specify the element type when declaring a *SafeArray* type in the Type Library editor, the declaration in the generated _TLB unit does not indicate the element type.

Creating a new type library

You may want to create a type library that is independent of a particular COM object. For example, you might want to define a type library that contains type definitions that you use in several other type libraries. You can then create a type library of basic definitions and add it to the uses page of other type libraries.

You can also create a type library for an object that is not yet implemented. Once the type library contains the interface definition, you can use the COM object wizard to generate a CoClass and implementation.

To create a new type library,

- 1 Choose File | New | Other to open the New Items dialog box.
- 2 Choose the ActiveX page.
- 3 Select the Type Library icon.
- 4 Choose OK.

The Type Library editor opens with a prompt to enter a name for the type library.

- 5 Enter a name for the type library. Continue by adding elements to your type library.

Opening an existing type library

When you use the wizards to create an ActiveX control, Automation object, Active form, Active Server Page object, COM object, transactional object, remote data module, or transactional data module, a type library is automatically created with an implementation unit. In addition, you may have type libraries that are associated with other products (servers) that are available on your system.

To open a type library that is not currently part of your project,

- 1 Choose File | Open from the main menu in the IDE.
- 2 In the Open dialog box, set the File Type to type library.
- 3 Navigate to the desired type library files and choose Open.

To open a type library associated with the current project,

- 1 Choose View | Type Library.

Now, you can add interfaces, CoClasses, and other elements of the type library such as enumerations, properties, and methods.

Tip When writing client applications, you do not need to open the type library. You only need the *Project_TLB* unit that the Type Library editor creates from a type library, not the type library itself. You can add this file directly to a client project, or, if the type library is registered on your system, you can use the Import Type Library dialog (Project | Import Type Library).

Adding an interface to the type library

To add an interface,

- 1 On the toolbar, click on the interface icon.

An interface is added to the object list pane prompting you to add a name.

- 2 Type a name for the interface.

The new interface contains default attributes that you can modify as needed.

You can add properties (represented by getter/setter functions) and methods to suit the purpose of the interface.

Modifying an interface using the type library

There are several ways to modify an interface or dispinterface once it is created.

- You can change the interface's attributes using the page of type information that contains the information you want to change. Select the interface in the object list pane and then use the controls on the appropriate page of type information. For example, you may want to change the parent interface using the attributes page, or use the flags page to change whether or not it is a dual interface.
- You can edit the interface declaration directly by selecting the interface in the object list pane and then editing the declarations on the Text page.
- You can Add properties and methods to the interface (see the next section).
- You can modify the properties and methods already in your interface by changing their type information.
- You can associate it with a CoClass by selecting the CoClass in the object list pane, right-clicking on the Implements page, and choosing Insert Interface.

If the interface is associated with a CoClass that was generated by a wizard, you can tell the Type Library editor to apply your changes to the implementation file by clicking the Refresh button on the toolbar.

Adding properties and methods to an interface or dispinterface

To add properties or methods to an interface or dispinterface,

- 1 Select the interface, and choose either a property or method icon from the toolbar. If you are adding a property, you can click directly on the property icon to create a read/write property (with both a getter and a setter), or click the down arrow to display a menu of property types.

The property access method members or method member is added to the object list pane, prompting you to add a name.

- 2 Type a name for the member.

The new member contains default settings on its attributes, parameters, and flags pages that you can modify to suit the member. For example, you will probably want to assign a type to a property on the attributes page. If you are adding a method, you will probably want to specify its parameters on the parameters page.

As an alternate approach, you can add properties and methods by typing directly into the text page using IDL syntax. For example, you can type the following property declarations into the text page of an interface:

```
[
    uuid(5FD36EEF-70E5-11D1-AA62-00C04FB16F42),
    version(1.0),
    dual,
    oleautomation
]
interface Interface1: IDispatch
{ // Add everything between the curly braces
  [propget, id(0x00000002)]
```

```

HRESULT _stdcall AutoSelect([out, retval] long Value );
[propget, id(0x00000003)]
HRESULT _stdcall AutoSize([out, retval] VARIANT_BOOL Value );
[propput, id(0x00000003)]
HRESULT _stdcall AutoSize([in] VARIANT_BOOL Value );
};

```

After you have added members to an interface using the interface text page, the members appear as separate items in the object list pane, each with its own attributes, flags, and parameters pages. You can modify each new property or method by selecting it in the object list pane and using these pages, or by making edits directly in the text page.

If the interface is associated with a CoClass that was generated by a wizard, you can tell the Type Library editor to apply your changes to the implementation file by clicking the Refresh button on the toolbar. The Type Library editor adds new methods to your implementation class to reflect the new members. You can then locate the new methods in implementation unit's source code and fill in their bodies to complete the implementation.

Adding a CoClass to the type library

The easiest way to add a CoClass to your project is to choose File | New | Other from the main menu in the IDE and use the appropriate wizard on the ActiveX or Multitier page of the New Items dialog. The advantage to this approach is that, in addition to adding the CoClass and its interface to the type library, the wizard adds an implementation unit, updates the project file to include the new implementation unit, and adds the new CoClass to the object map in the project file.

If you are not using a wizard, however, you can create a CoClass by clicking the CoClass icon on the toolbar and then specifying its attributes. You will probably want to give the new CoClass a name (on the Attributes page), and may want to use the Flags page to indicate information such as whether the CoClass is an application object, whether it represents an ActiveX control, and so on.

Note When you add a CoClass to a type library using the toolbar instead of a wizard, you must generate the implementation for the CoClass yourself and update it by hand every time you change an element on one of the CoClass's interfaces. When you add a CoClass implementation manually, be sure to add the new CoClass to the object map in the project file.

You can't add members directly to a CoClass. Instead, you implicitly add members when you add an interface to the CoClass.

Adding an interface to a CoClass

CoClasses are defined by the interfaces they present to clients. While you can add any number of properties and methods to the implementation class of a CoClass, clients can only see those properties and methods that are exposed by interfaces associated with the CoClass.

To associate an interface with a CoClass, right-click in the Implements page for the class and choose Insert Interface to display a list of interfaces from which you can choose. The list includes interfaces that are defined in the current type library and

those defined in any type libraries that the current type library references. Choose an interface you want the class to implement. The interface is added to the page with its GUID and other attributes.

If the CoClass was generated by a wizard, the Type Library editor automatically updates the implementation class to include skeletal methods for the methods (including property access methods) of any interfaces you add this way.

Adding an enumeration to the type library

To add enumerations to a type library,

- 1 On the toolbar, click on the enum icon.

An enum type is added to the object list pane prompting you to add a name.

- 2 Type a name for the enumeration.

The new enum is empty and contains default attributes in its attributes page for you to modify.

Add values to the enum by clicking on the New Const button. Then, select each enumerated value and assign it a name (and possibly a value) using the attributes page.

Once you have added an enumeration, the new type is available for use by the type library or any other type library that references it from its uses page. For example, you can use the enumeration as the type for a property or parameter.

Adding an alias to the type library

To add an alias to a type library,

- 1 On the toolbar, click on the alias icon.

An alias type is added to the object list pane prompting you to add a name.

- 2 Type a name for the alias.

By default, the new alias stands for an long type. Use the Attributes page to change this to the type you want the alias to represent.

Once you have added an alias, the new type is available for use by the type library or any other type library that references it from its uses page. For example, you can use the alias as the type for a property or parameter.

Adding a record or union to the type library

To add a record or union to a type library,

- 1 On the toolbar, click on the record icon or the union icon.

The selected type element is added to the object list pane prompting you to add a name.

- 2 Type a name for the record or union.

At this point, the new record or union contains no fields.

- 3 With the record or union selected in the object list pane, click on the field icon in the toolbar. Specify the field's name and type, using the Attributes page.
- 4 Repeat step 3 for as many fields as you need.

Once you have defined the record or union, the new type is available for use by the type library or any other type library that references it from its uses page. For example, you can use the record or union as the type for a property or parameter.

Adding a module to the type library

To add a module to a type library,

- 1 On the toolbar, click on the module icon.
The selected module is added to the object list pane prompting you to add a name.
- 2 Type a name for the module.
- 3 On the Attributes page, specify the name of the DLL whose entry points the Module represents.
- 4 Add any methods from the DLL you specified in step 3 by clicking on the Method icon in the toolbar and then using the attributes pages to describe the method.
- 5 Add any constants you want the module to define by clicking on the Const icon on the toolbar. For each constant, specify a name, type, and value.

Saving and registering type library information

After modifying your type library, you'll want to save and register the type library information.

Saving the type library automatically updates:

- The binary type library file (.tlb extension).
- The *Project_TLB* unit that represents its contents
- The implementation code for any CoClasses that were generated by a wizard.

Note The type library is stored as a separate binary (.TLB) file, but is also linked into the server (.EXE, DLL, or .OCX).

The Type Library editor gives you options for storing your type library information. Which way you choose depends on what stage you are at in implementing the type library:

- **Save**, to save both the .TLB and the *Project_TLB* unit to disk.
- **Refresh**, to update the type library units in memory only.
- **Register**, to add an entry for the type library in your system's Windows registry. This is done automatically when the server with which the .TLB is associated is itself registered.
- **Export**, to save a .IDL file that contains the type and interface definitions in IDL syntax.

All the above methods perform syntax checking. When you refresh, register, or save the type library, C++Builder automatically updates the implementation unit of any CoClasses that were created using a wizard.

Saving a type library

Saving a type library

- Performs a syntax and validity check.
- Saves information out to a .TLB file.
- Saves information out to the *Project_TLB* unit.
- Notifies the IDE's module manager to update the implementation, if the type library is associated with a CoClass that was generated by a wizard.

To save the type library, choose File | Save from the C++Builder main menu.

Refreshing the type library

Refreshing the type library

- Performs a syntax check.
- Regenerates the C++Builder type library units in memory only. It does not save any files to disk.
- Notifies the IDE's module manager to update the implementation, if the type library is associated with a CoClass that was generated by a wizard.

To refresh the type library choose the Refresh icon on the Type Library editor toolbar.

Note If you have renamed items in the type library, refreshing the implementation may create duplicate entries. In this case, you must move your code to the correct entry and delete any duplicates. Similarly, if you delete items in the type library, refreshing the implementation does not remove them from CoClasses (under the assumption that you are merely removing them from visibility to clients). You must delete these items manually in the implementation unit if they are no longer needed.

Registering the type library

Typically, you do not need to explicitly register a type library because it is registered automatically when you register your COM server application (see "Registering a COM object" on page 41-16). However, when you create a type library using the Type Library wizard, it is not associated with a server object. In this case, you can register the type library directly using the toolbar.

Registering the type library,

- Performs a syntax check
- Adds an entry to the Windows Registry for the type library

To register the type library, choose the Register icon on the Type Library editor toolbar.

Exporting an IDL file

Exporting the type library,

- Performs a syntax check.
- Creates an IDL file that contains the type information declarations. This file describes the type information in Microsoft IDL.

To export the type library, choose the Export icon on the Type Library editor toolbar.

Deploying type libraries

By default, when you have a type library that was created as part of an ActiveX or Automation server project, the type library is automatically linked into the .DLL, .OCX, or EXE as a resource.

You can, however, deploy your application with the type library as a separate .TLB, as C++Builder maintains the type library, if you prefer.

Historically, type libraries for Automation applications were stored as a separate file with the .TLB extension. Now, typical Automation applications compile the type libraries into the .OCX or .EXE file directly. The operating system expects the type library to be the first resource in the executable (.DLL, .OCX, or .EXE) file.

When you make type libraries other than the primary project type library available to application developers, the type libraries can be in any of the following forms:

- A resource. This resource should have the type TYPELIB and an integer ID. If you choose to build type libraries with a resource compiler, it must be declared in the resource (.RC) file as follows:

```
1 typelib mylib1.tlb
2 typelib mylib2.tlb
```

There can be multiple type library resources in an ActiveX library. Application developers use the resource compiler to add the .TLB file to their own ActiveX library.

- Stand-alone binary files. The .TLB file output by the Type Library editor is a binary file.

Creating COM clients

COM clients are applications that make use of a COM object implemented by another application or library. The most common types are applications that control an Automation server (Automation controllers) and applications that host an ActiveX control (ActiveX containers).

At first glance these two types of COM client are very different: The typical Automation controller launches an external server EXE and issues commands to make that server perform tasks on its behalf. The Automation server is usually nonvisual and out-of-process. The typical ActiveX client, on the other hand, hosts a visual control, using it much the same way you use any control on the Component palette. ActiveX servers are always in-process servers.

However, the task of writing these two types of COM client is remarkably similar: The client application obtains an interface for the server object and uses its properties and methods. C++Builder makes this particularly easy by letting you wrap the server CoClass in a component on the client, which you can even install on the Component palette. Samples of such component wrappers appear on two pages of the Component palette: sample ActiveX wrappers appear on the ActiveX page and sample Automation objects appear on the Servers page.

When writing a COM client, you must understand the interface that the server exposes to clients, just as you must understand the properties and methods of a component from the Component palette to use it in your application. This interface (or set of interfaces) is determined by the server application, and typically published in a type library. For specific information on a particular server application's published interfaces, you should consult that application's documentation.

Even if you do not choose to wrap a server object in a component wrapper and install it on the Component palette, you must make its interface definition available to your application. To do this, you can import the server's type information.

Note You can also query the type information directly using COM APIs, but C++Builder provides no special support for this.

Some older COM technologies, such as object linking and embedding (OLE), do not provide type information in a type library. Instead, they rely on a standard set of predefined interfaces. These are discussed in “Creating clients for servers that do not have a type library” on page 40-15.

Importing type library information

To make information about the COM server available to your client application, you must import the information about the server that is stored in the server’s type library. Your application can then use the resulting generated classes to control the server object.

There are two ways to import type library information:

- You can use the Import Type Library dialog to import all available information about the server types, objects, and interfaces. This is the most general method, because it lets you import information from any type library and can optionally generate component wrappers for all creatable CoClasses in the type library that are not flagged as Hidden, Restricted, or PreDeclID.
- You can use the Import ActiveX dialog if you are importing from the type library of an ActiveX control. This imports the same type information, but only creates component wrappers for CoClasses that represent ActiveX controls.
- You can use the command line utility tlibimp.exe which provides additional configuration options not available from within the IDE.
- A type library generated using a wizard is automatically imported using the same mechanism as the import type library menu item.

Regardless of which method you choose to import type library information, the resulting dialog creates a unit with the name *TypeLibName_TLB*, where *TypeLibName* is the name of the type library. This file contains declarations for the classes, types, and interfaces defined in the type library. By including it in your project, those definitions are available to your application so that you can create objects and call their interfaces. This file may be recreated by the IDE from time to time; as a result, making manual changes to the file is not recommended.

In addition to adding type definitions to the *TypeLibName_TLB* unit, the dialog can also create VCL class wrappers for any CoClasses defined in the type library, which it puts in a separate unit with the name *TypeLibName_OCX*. When you use the Import Type Library dialog, these wrappers are optional. When you use the Import ActiveX dialog, they are always generated for all CoClasses that represent controls.

Note If you are generating Component wrappers, the import dialog generates the *TypeLibName_OCX* unit, but does not add it to your project. (It only adds the *TypeLibName_TLB* unit to your project.) You can explicitly add the *TypeLibName_OCX* unit to your project by choosing Project | Add to Project.

The generated class wrappers represent the CoClasses to your application, and expose the properties and methods of its interfaces. If a CoClass supports the interfaces for generating events (*IConnectionPointContainer* and *IConnectionPoint*), the

VCL class wrapper creates an event sink so that you can assign event handlers for the events as simply as you can for any other component. If you tell the dialog to install the generated VCL classes on the Component palette, you can use the Object Inspector to assign property values and event handlers.

Note The Import Type Library dialog does not create class wrappers for COM+ event objects. To write a client that responds to events generated by a COM+ event object, you must create the event sink programmatically. This process is described in “Handling COM+ events” on page 40-15.

For more details about the code generated when you import a type library, see “Code generated when you import type library information” on page 40-5.

Using the Import Type Library dialog

To import a type library,

- 1 Choose Project | Import Type Library.
- 2 Select the type library from the list.

The dialog lists all the libraries registered on this system. If the type library is not in the list, choose the Add button, find and select the type library file, choose OK. This registers the type library, making it available. Then repeat step 2. Note that the type library could be a stand-alone type library file (.tlb, .olb), or a server that provides a type library (.dll, .ocx, .exe).

- 3 If you want to generate a VCL component that wraps a CoClass in the type library, check Generate Component Wrapper. If you do not generate the component, you can still use the CoClass by using the definitions in the *TypeLibName_TLB* unit. However, you will have to write your own calls to create the server object and, if necessary, to set up an event sink.

The Import Type Library dialog only imports CoClasses that have the CanCreate flag set and that do not have the Hidden, Restricted, or PreDeclID flags set. These flags can be overridden using the command-line utility *tlbimp.exe*.

- 4 If you do not want to install a generated component wrapper on the Component palette, choose Create Unit. This generates the *TypeLibName_TLB* unit and, if you checked Generate Component Wrapper in step 3, the *TypeLibName_OCX* unit. This exits the Import Type Library dialog.
- 5 If you want to install the generated component wrapper on the Component palette, select the Palette page on which this component will reside and then choose Install. This generates the *TypeLibName_TLB* and *TypeLibName_OCX* units, like the Create Unit button, and then displays the Install component dialog, letting you specify the package where the components should reside (either an existing package or a new one). This button is grayed out if no component can be created for the type library.

When you exit the Import Type Library dialog, the new *TypeLibName_TLB* and *TypeLibName_OCX* units appear in the directory specified by the Unit dir name control. The *TypeLibName_TLB* unit contains declarations for the elements defined in

the type library. The *TypeLibName_OCX* unit contains the generated component wrapper if you checked Generate Component Wrapper.

In addition, if you installed the generated component wrapper, a server object that the type library described now resides on the Component palette. You can use the Object Inspector to set properties or write an event handler for the server. If you add the component to a form or data module, you can right-click on it at design time to see its property page (if it supports one).

Note The Servers page of the Component palette contains a number of example Automation servers that were imported this way for you.

Using the Import ActiveX dialog

To import an ActiveX control,

1 Choose Component | Import ActiveX Control.

2 Select the type library from the list.

The dialog lists all the registered libraries that define ActiveX controls. (This is a subset of the libraries listed in the Import Type Library dialog.) If the type library is not in the list, choose the Add button, find and select the type library file, choose OK. This registers the type library, making it available. Then repeat step 2. Note that the type library could be a stand-alone type library file (.tlb, .olb), or an ActiveX server (.dll, .ocx).

3 If you do not want to install the ActiveX control on the Component palette, choose Create Unit. This generates the *TypeLibName_TLB* unit and the *TypeLibName_OCX* unit. This exits the Import ActiveX dialog.

4 If you want to install the ActiveX control on the Component palette, select the Palette page on which this component will reside and then choose Install. This generates the *TypeLibName_TLB* and *TypeLibName_OCX* units, like the Create Unit button, and then displays the Install component dialog, letting you specify the package where the components should reside (either an existing package or a new one).

When you exit the Import ActiveX dialog, the new *TypeLibName_TLB* and *TypeLibName_OCX* units appear in the directory specified by the Unit dir name control. The *TypeLibName_TLB* unit contains declarations for the elements defined in the type library. The *TypeLibName_OCX* unit contains the generated component wrapper for the ActiveX control.

Note Unlike the Import Type Library dialog where it is optional, the import ActiveX dialog always generates a component wrapper. This is because, as a visual control, an ActiveX control needs the additional support of the component wrapper so that it can fit in with VCL forms.

If you installed the generated component wrapper, an ActiveX control now resides on the Component palette. You can use the Object Inspector to set properties or write event handlers for this control. If you add the control to a form or data module, you can right-click on it at design time to see its property page (if it supports one).

Note The ActiveX page of the Component palette contains a number of example ActiveX controls that were imported this way for you.

Code generated when you import type library information

Once you import a type library, you can view the generated *TypeLibName_TLB* unit. The source file for that unit defines constants that give symbolic names to the GUIDS of the type library and its interfaces and CoClasses. The names for these constants are generated as follows:

- The GUID for the type library has the form *LIBID_TypeLibName*, where *TypeLibName* is the name of the type library.
- The GUID for an interface has the form *IID_InterfaceName*, where *InterfaceName* is the name of the interface.
- The GUID for a dispinterface has the form *DIID_InterfaceName*, where *InterfaceName* is the name of the dispinterface.
- The GUID for a CoClass has the form *CLSID_ClassName*, where *ClassName* is the name of the CoClass.

If you right click in the source file and choose Open Source/Header file, you will find the following definitions:

- Declarations for the CoClasses in the type library. These map each CoClass to its default interface. In addition, a wrapper for each CoClass, using the *TComInterface* template, is declared. This wrapper's name has the form *CoClassNamePtr*.
- Declarations for the interfaces and dispinterfaces in the type library.
- Declarations of class wrappers for the interfaces and dispinterfaces. For interfaces, the class wrapper uses the *TComInterface* template, and has a name of the form *TComInterfaceName*. For dispinterfaces, the class wrapper uses the *TAutoDriver* template, and has a name of the form *InterfaceNameDisp*.
- Declarations for a creator class for each CoClass whose default interface supports VTable binding. The creator class has two static methods, *Create* and *CreateRemote*, that can be used to instantiate the CoClass locally (*Create*) or remotely (*CreateRemote*). These methods return the class wrapper for the CoClass's default interface (defined in *TypeLibName_TLB.h* using the *TComInterface* template).
- A proxy class wrapper for every event interface. This class wrapper has a name of the form *TEvents_CoClassName*, where *CoClassName* is the name of the CoClass that generates the events. The proxy class maintains a list of all client event sinks and invokes the appropriate method on all appropriate event sinks when the server object fires events.

These declarations provide you with what you need to create instances of the CoClass and access its interface. All you need do is include the generated *TypeLibName_TLB.h* file in the unit where you wish to bind to a CoClass and call its interfaces.

Warning The generated wrapper classes use a static object (*TInitOleT*) to handle COM initialization. This can be a problem if you are creating objects from multiple threads, because COM is only initialized on the first thread that connects to a server. You must explicitly create a separate instance of *TInitOleT* or *TInitOle* on all other threads that connect to a COM server.

Note The *TypeLibName_TLB* unit is also generated when you use the Type Library editor or the command-line utility TLBIMP.

If you want to use an ActiveX control, you also need the generated VCL wrapper in addition to the declarations described above. The VCL wrapper handles window management issues for the control. You may also have generated a VCL wrapper for other CoClasses in the Import Type Library dialog. These VCL wrappers simplify the task of creating server objects and calling their methods. They are especially recommended if you want your client application to respond to events.

The declarations for generated VCL wrappers appear in the *TypeLibName_OCX* unit. Component wrappers for ActiveX controls are descendants of *TOleControl*. Component wrappers for Automation objects descend from *TOleServer*. The generated component wrapper adds the properties, events, and methods exposed by the CoClass's interface. You can use this component like any other VCL component.

Warning You should not edit the generated *TypeLibName_TLB* or *TypeLibName_OCX* unit. They are regenerated each time the type library is refreshed, so any changes will be overwritten.

Note For the most up-to-date information about the generated code, refer to the comments in the automatically-generated *TypeLibName_TLB* unit and *utilcls.h*.

Controlling an imported object

After importing type library information, you are ready to start programming with the imported objects. How you proceed depends in part on the objects, and in part on whether you have chosen to create component wrappers.

Using component wrappers

If you generated a component wrapper for your server object, writing your COM client application is not very different from writing any other application that contains VCL components. The server object's properties, methods, and events are already encapsulated in the VCL component. You need only assign event handlers, set property values, and call methods.

To use the properties, methods, and events of the server object, see the documentation for your server. The component wrapper automatically provides a dual interface where possible. C++Builder determines the VTable layout from information in the type library.

In addition, your new component inherits certain important properties and methods from its base class.

ActiveX wrappers

You should always use a component wrapper when hosting ActiveX controls, because the component wrapper integrates the control's window into the VCL framework.

The properties and methods an ActiveX control inherits from *TOleControl* allow you to access the underlying interface or obtain information about the control. Most applications, however, do not need to use these. Instead, you use the imported control the same way you would use any other VCL control.

Typically, ActiveX controls provide a property page that lets you set their properties. Property pages are similar to the component editors some components display when you double-click on them in the form designer. To display an ActiveX control's property page, right click and choose Properties.

The way you use most imported ActiveX controls is determined by the server application. However, ActiveX controls use a standard set of notifications when they represent the data from a database field. See "Using data-aware ActiveX controls" on page 40-8 for information on how to host such ActiveX controls.

Automation object wrappers

The wrappers for Automation objects let you control how you want to form the connection to your server object:

- The *ConnectKind* property indicates whether the server is local or remote and whether you want to connect to a server that is already running or if a new instance should be launched. When connecting to a remote server, you must specify the machine name using the *RemoteMachineName* property.
- Once you have specified the *ConnectKind*, there are three ways you can connect your component to the server:
 - you can explicitly connect to the server by calling the component's *Connect* method.
 - You can tell the component to connect automatically when your application starts up by setting the *AutoConnect* property to **true**.
 - You do not need to explicitly connect to the server. The component automatically forms a connection when you use one of the server's properties or methods using the component.

Calling methods or accessing properties is the same as using any other component:

```
TServerComponent1->DoSomething();
```

Handling events is easy, because you can use the Object Inspector to write event handlers. Note, however, that the event handler on your component may have slightly different parameters than those defined for the event in the type library. Parameters that are interface pointers are usually wrapped using the *TComInterface* template, rather than appearing as a raw interface pointer. The resulting interface wrapper has a name of the form *InterfaceNamePtr*.

For example, the following code shows an event handler for the `ExcelApplication` event, `OnNewWorkbook`. The event handler has a parameter that provides the interface of another CoClass (`ExcelWorkbook`). However, the interface is not passed as an `ExcelWorkbook` interface pointer, but rather as an *ExcelWorkbookPtr* object.

```
void _fastcall TForm1::XLappNewWorkbook(TObject *Sender, ExcelWorkbookPtr Wb)
{
    ExcelWorkbook1->ConnectTo(Wb);
}
```

In this example, the event handler assigns the workbook to an `ExcelWorkbook` component (`ExcelWorkbook1`). This demonstrates how to connect a component wrapper to an existing interface by using the *ConnectTo* method. The *ConnectTo* method is added to the generated code for the component wrapper.

Servers that have an application object expose a `Quit` method on that object to let clients terminate the connection. `Quit` typically exposes functionality that is equivalent to using the File menu to quit the application. Code to call the `Quit` method is generated in your component's *Disconnect* method. If it is possible to call the `Quit` method with no parameters, the component wrapper also has an *AutoQuit* property. *AutoQuit* causes your controller to call `Quit` when the component is freed. If you want to disconnect at some other time, or if the `Quit` method requires parameters, you must call it explicitly. `Quit` appears as a public method on the generated component.

Using data-aware ActiveX controls

When you use a data-aware ActiveX control in a C++Builder application, you must associate it with the database whose data it represents. To do this, you need a data source component, just as you need a data source for any data-aware VCL control.

After you place the data-aware ActiveX control in the form designer, assign its *DataSource* property to the data source that represents the desired dataset. Once you have specified a data source, you can use the Data Bindings editor to link the control's data-bound property to a field in the dataset.

To display the Data Bindings editor, right-click the data-aware ActiveX control to display a list of options. In addition to the basic options, the additional Data Bindings item appears. Select this item to see the Data Bindings editor, which lists the names of fields in the dataset and the bindable properties of the ActiveX control.

To bind a field to a property,

- 1 In the ActiveX Data Bindings Editor dialog, select a field and a property name.

Field Name lists the fields of the database and Property Name lists the ActiveX control properties that can be bound to a database field. The `dispid` of the property is in parentheses, for example, `Value(12)`.

- 2 Click Bind and OK.

Note If no properties appear in the dialog, the ActiveX control contains no data-aware properties. To enable simple data binding for a property of an ActiveX control, use

the type library as described in “Enabling simple data binding with the type library” on page 43-11.

The following example walks you through the steps of using a data-aware ActiveX control in the C++Builder container. This example uses the Microsoft Calendar Control, which is available if you have Microsoft Office 97 installed on your system.

- 1 From the C++Builder main menu, choose Component | Import ActiveX Control.
- 2 Select a data-aware ActiveX control, such as the Microsoft Calendar control 8.0, change its class name to *TCalendarAXControl*, and click Install.
- 3 In the Install dialog, click OK to add the control to the default user package, which makes the control available on the Palette.
- 4 Choose Close All and File | New | Application to begin a new application.
- 5 From the ActiveX tab, drop a *TCalendarAXControl* object, which you just added to the Palette, onto the form.
- 6 Drop a *DataSource* object from the Data Access tab, and a *Table* object from the BDE tab onto the form.
- 7 Select the *DataSource* object and set its *DataSet* property to *Table1*.
- 8 Select the *Table* object and do the following:
 - Set the *DatabaseName* property to BCDEMOS
 - Set the *TableName* property to EMPLOYEE.DB
 - Set the *Active* property to **true**
- 9 Select the *TCalendarAXControl* object and set its *DataSource* property to *DataSource1*.
- 10 Select the *TCalendarAXControl* object, right-click, and choose Data Bindings to invoke the ActiveX Control Data Bindings Editor.
 Field Name lists all the fields in the active database. Property Name lists those properties of the ActiveX Control that can be bound to a database field. The dispID of the property is in parentheses.
- 11 Select the *HireDate* field and the *Value* property name, choose Bind, and OK.
 The field name and property are now bound.
- 12 From the Data Controls tab, drop a *DBGrid* object onto the form and set its *DataSource* property to *DataSource1*.
- 13 From the Data Controls tab, drop a *DBNavigator* object onto the form and set its *DataSource* property to *DataSource1*.
- 14 Run the application.
- 15 Test the application as follows:

With the *HireDate* field displayed in the *DBGrid* object, navigate through the database using the Navigator object. The dates in the ActiveX control change as you move through the database.

Example: Printing a document with Microsoft Word

The following steps show how to create an Automation controller that prints a document using Microsoft Word 8 from Office 97.

Before you begin: Create a new project that consists of a form, a button, and an open dialog box (*TOpenDialog*). These controls constitute the Automation controller.

Step 1: Prepare C++Builder for this example

For your convenience, C++Builder has provided many common servers, such as Word, Excel, and PowerPoint, on the Component palette. To demonstrate how to import a server, we use Word. Since it already exists on the Component palette, this first step asks you to remove the package containing Word so that you can see how to install it on the palette. Step 4 describes how to return the Component palette to its normal state.

To remove Word from the Component palette,

- 1 Choose Component | Install packages.
- 2 Click Borland C++Builder COM Server Components Sample Package and choose Remove.

The Servers page of the Component palette no longer contains any of the servers supplied with C++Builder. (If no other servers have been imported, the Servers page also disappears.)

Step 2: Import the Word type library

To import the Word type library,

- 1 Choose Project | Import Type Library.
- 2 In the Import Type Library dialog,
 - 1 Select Microsoft Office 8.0 Object Library.

If Word (Version 8) is not in the list, choose the Add button, go to Program Files\Microsoft Office\Office, select the Word type library file, MSWord8.olb choose Add, and then select Word (Version 8) from the list.

- 2 For Palette Page, choose Servers.
- 3 Choose Install.

The Install dialog appears. Select the Into New Packages tab and type WordExample to create a new package containing this type library.

- 3 Go to the Servers Palette Page, select WordApplication and place it on a form.
- 4 Write an event handler for the button object as described in the next step.

Step 3: Use a VTable or dispatch interface object to control Microsoft Word

You can use either a VTable or a dispatch object to control Microsoft Word.

Using a VTable interface object

By dropping an instance of the WordApplication object onto your form, you can easily access the control using a VTable interface object. You simply call on methods of the class you just created. For Word, this is the *TWordApplication* class.

- 1 Select the button, double-click its *OnClick* event handler and supply the following event handling code:

```
void __fastcall TForm1::Button1Click(TObject *Sender)
{
    if (OpenDialog1->Execute())
    {
        TVariant FileName = OpenDialog1->FileName.c_str();
        WordApplication1->Documents->Open(&FileName);

        WordApplication1->ActiveDocument->PrintOut();
    }
}
```

- 2 Build and run the program. By clicking the button, Word prompts you for a file to print.

Using a dispatch interface object

As an alternate, you can use a dispatch interface for late binding. To use a dispatch interface object, you create and initialize the Application object using the *_ApplicationDisp* dispatch wrapper class as follows. Notice that dispinterface methods are “documented” by the source as returning VTable interfaces, but, in fact, you must cast them to dispatch interfaces.

- 1 Select the button, double-click its *OnClick* event handler and supply the following event handling code:

```
void __fastcall TForm1::Button1Click(TObject *Sender)
{
    if (OpenDialog1->Execute())
    {
        TVariant FileName = OpenDialog1->FileName.c_str();

        _ApplicationDisp MyWord;
        MyWord.Bind(CLSID_WordApplication);
        DocumentsDisp MyDocs = MyWord->Documents;
        MyDocs->Open(&FileName);

        _DocumentDisp MyActiveDoc = MyWord->ActiveDocument;
        MyActiveDoc->PrintOut();
        MyWord->Quit();
    }
}
```

- 2 Build and run the program. By clicking the button, Word prompts you for a file to print.

Step 4: Clean up the example

After completing this example, you will want to restore C++Builder to its original form.

- 1 Delete the objects on this Servers page:
 - Choose Component | Install Packages.
 - From the list, select the WordExample package and click remove.
 - Click Yes to the message box asking for confirmation.
 - Exit the Install Packages dialog by clicking OK.
- 2 Return the Borland C++Builder COM Server Components Sample Package package:
 - Choose Component | Install Packages.
 - Click the Add button.
 - In the resulting dialog, choose bcb97axserver60.bpl for the Office 97 components, or bcb2kaxserver60.bpl for the Office 2000 components.
 - Exit the Install Packages dialog by clicking OK.

Writing client code based on type library definitions

Although you must use a component wrapper for hosting an ActiveX control, you can write an Automation controller using only the definitions from the type library that appear in the *TypeLibName_TLB* unit. This process is a bit more involved than letting a component do the work, especially if you need to respond to events.

Connecting to a server

Before you can drive an Automation server from your controller application, you must obtain a reference to an interface it supports. Typically, you connect to a server through its main interface. For example, you connect to Microsoft Word through the WordApplication component.

If the main interface is a dual interface, you can use the creator objects in the *TypeLibName_TLB.h* file. The creator classes have the same name as the CoClass, with the prefix “Co” added. You can connect to a server on the same machine by calling the *Create* method, or a server on a remote machine using the *CreateRemote* method. Because *Create* and *CreateRemote* are static methods, you do not need an instance of the creator class to call them.

```
pInterface = CoServerClassName.Create();
pInterface = CoServerClassName.CreateRemote("Machine1");
```

Create and *CreateRemote* return the class wrapper for the CoClass’s default interface (defined in *TypeLibName_TLB.h* using the TComInterface template).

If the default interface is a dispatch interface, then there is no Creator class generated for the CoClass. Instead, you must create an instance of the automatically generated wrapper class for the default interface. This class is defined using the *TAutoDriver*

template, and has a name of the form *InterfaceNameDisp*. Next, call the *Bind* method, passing in the GUID for the CoClass (there is a constant for this GUID defined at the top of the *_TLB* unit).

Controlling an Automation server using a dual interface

After using the automatically generated creator class to connect to the server, you call methods of the interface wrapper object, using the “->” operator. For example,

```
TComApplication AppPtr = CoWordApplication_.Create();
AppPtr->DoSomething;
```

The interface wrapper and creator class are defined in the *TypeLibName_TLB* unit that is generated automatically when you import a type library. An advantage of using this wrapper class for interfaces is that it automatically frees the underlying interface when it is destroyed.

For information about dual interfaces, see “Dual interfaces” on page 41-12.

Controlling an Automation server using a dispatch interface

Typically, you use the dual interface to control the Automation server, as described above. However, you may find a need to control an Automation server with a dispatch interface because no dual interface is available.

To call the methods of a dispatch interface,

- 1 Connect to the server, using the *Bind* method of the wrapper class for the dispatch interface. For more details on connecting to the server, see “Connecting to a server” on page 40-12.
- 2 Control the Automation server by calling methods of the dispatch interface wrapper object.

The wrapper class surfaces the properties and methods of the dispatch interface as its own properties and methods. In addition, because it descends from *TAutoDriver*, you can use the *IDispatch* mechanism to call the server object’s properties and methods. Before you can access a property or method, you must obtain its dispatch ID. To do this, use the *GetIDsOfNames* method, passing in the name and a reference to a *DISPID* variable that receives the dispatch ID for that name. Once you have the dispatch ID, you can use it to call *OlePropertyGet*, *OlePropertyPut*, or *OleFunction* to access the server objects properties and methods.

Another way to use dispatch interfaces is to assign them to a *Variant*. This approach is taken by some VCL objects for properties or parameters whose values are interfaces. The *Variant* type includes built-in support for calling dispatch interfaces, through its *OlePropertyGet*, *OlePropertySet*, *OleFunction*, and *OleProcedure* methods, which correspond to the methods on a dispatch interface wrapper class. Using *Variants* can be a bit slower than using the dispatch interface wrapper class, because the *Variant* methods dynamically look up the dispatch ID every time you call them. However, they have the advantage that you do not need to import the type library to use them.

Warning Care must be taken when assigning an interface to a *Variant* instead of a dispatch interface wrapper. While the wrapper automatically handles calls to *AddRef* and *Release*, the *Variant* does not. Thus, for example, if you assign a *Variant* whose value is an interface to an interface wrapper, the interface wrapper does not call *AddRef*, but its destructor calls *Release*. Because of this, using *Variants* is not recommended except where they already appear as the property of a VCL object.

For more information on dispatch interfaces, see “Automation interfaces” on page 41-12.

Handling events in an automation controller

When you generate a Component wrapper for an object whose type library you import, you can respond to events simply using the events that are added to the generated component. If you do not use a Component wrapper, however, (or if the server uses COM+ events), you must write the event sink code yourself.

Handling Automation events programmatically

Before you can handle events, you must define an event sink. This is a class that implements the event dispatch interface that is defined in the server’s type library.

The event sink is a descendant of *TEventDispatcher*, which is a templated class that requires two parameters, the class of your event sink and the GUID for the event interface that your event sink handles:

```
class MyEventSinkClass: TEventDispatcher<MyEventSinkClass, DIID_TheServerEvents>
{
    ...// declare the methods of DIID_TheServerEvents here
}
```

Once you have an instance of your event sink class, call its *ConnectEvents* method to let the server know about your event sink. This method uses the *IConnectionPointContainer* and *IConnectionPoint* interfaces of the server to register the object as an event sink. Now your object receives calls from the server when events occur:

```
pInterface = CoServerClassName.CreateRemote("Machine1");
MyEventSinkClass ES;
ES.ConnectEvents(pInterface);
```

You must terminate the connection before you free your event sink. To do this, call the event sink’s *DisconnectEvents* method:

```
ES.DisconnectEvents(pInterface);
```

Note You must be certain that the server has released its connection to your event sink before you free it. Because you don’t know how the server responds to the disconnect notification initiated by *DisconnectEvents*, this may lead to a race condition if you free your event sink immediately after the call. *TEventDispatcher* guards against this for you by maintaining its own reference count that is not decremented until the server releases the event sink’s interface.

Handling COM+ events

Under COM+, servers use a special helper object to generate events rather than a set of special interfaces (*IConnectionPointContainer* and *IConnectionPoint*). Because of this, you can't use an event sink that descends from *TEventDispatcher*. *TEventDispatcher* is designed to work with those interfaces, not COM+ event objects.

Instead of defining an event sink, your client application defines a subscriber object. Subscriber objects, like event sinks, provide the implementation of the event interface. They differ from event sinks in that they subscribe to a particular event object rather than connecting to a server's connection point.

To define a subscriber object, use the COM Object wizard, selecting the event object's interface as the one you want to implement. The wizard generates an implementation unit with skeletal methods that you can fill in to create your event handlers. For more information about using the COM Object wizard to implement an existing interface, see "Using the COM object wizard" on page 41-2.

Note You may need to add the event object's interface to the registry using the wizard if it does not appear in the list of interfaces you can implement.

Once you create the subscriber object, you must subscribe to the event object's interface or to individual methods (events) on that interface. There are three types of subscriptions from which you can choose:

- **Transient subscriptions.** Like traditional event sinks, transient subscriptions are tied to the lifetime of an object instance. When the subscriber object is freed, the subscription ends and COM+ no longer forwards events to it.
- **Persistent subscriptions.** These are tied to the object class rather than a specific object instance. When the event occurs, COM locates or launches an instance of the subscriber object and calls its event handler. In-process objects (DLLs) use this type of subscription.
- **Per-user subscriptions.** These subscriptions provide a more secure version of transient subscriptions. Both the subscriber object and the server object that fires events must be running under the same user account on the same machine.

To subscribe to an event object, use the global *RegisterComPlusEventSubscription* function.

Note Objects that subscribe to COM+ events must be installed in a COM+ application.

Creating clients for servers that do not have a type library

Some older COM technologies, such as object linking and embedding (OLE), do not provide type information in a type library. Instead, they rely on a standard set of predefined interfaces. To write clients that host such objects, you can use the *TOleContainer* component. This component appears on the System page of the Component palette.

TOleContainer acts as a host site for an Ole2 object. It implements the *IOleClientSite* interface and, optionally, *IOleDocumentSite*. Communication is handled using OLE verbs.

To use *TOleContainer*,

- 1 Place a *TOleContainer* component on your form.
- 2 Set the *AllowActiveDoc* property to **true** if you want to host an Active document.
- 3 Set the *AllowInPlace* property to indicate whether the hosted object should appear in the *TOleContainer*, or in a separate window.
- 4 Write event handlers to respond when the object is activated, deactivated, moved, or resized.
- 5 To bind the *TOleContainer* object at design time, right click and choose Insert Object. In the Insert Object dialog, choose a server object to host.
- 6 To bind the *TOleContainer* object at runtime, you have several methods to choose from, depending on how you want to identify the server object. These include *CreateObject*, which takes a program id, *CreateObjectFromFile*, which takes the name of a file to which the object has been saved, *CreateObjectFromInfo*, which takes a struct containing information on how to create the object, or *CreateLinkToFile*, which takes the name of a file to which the object was saved and links to it rather than embeds it.
- 7 Once the object is bound, you can access its interface using the *OleObjectInterface* property. However, because communication with Ole2 objects was based on OLE verbs, you will most likely want to send commands to the server using the *DoVerb* method.
- 8 When you want to release the server object, call the *DestroyObject* method.

Creating simple COM servers

C++Builder provides wizards to help you create various COM objects. The simplest COM objects are servers that expose properties and methods (and possibly events) through a default interface that clients can call.

Note COM servers and Automation is not available for use in CLX applications. This technology is for use on Windows only and is not cross-platform.

Two wizards, in particular, ease the process of creating simple COM objects:

- The COM Object wizard builds a lightweight COM object whose default interface descends from *IUnknown* or that implements an interface already registered on your system. This wizard provides the most flexibility in the types of COM objects you can create.
- The Automation Object wizard creates a simple Automation object whose default interface descends from *IDispatch*. *IDispatch* introduces a standard marshaling mechanism and support for late binding of interface calls.

Note COM defines many standard interfaces and mechanisms for handling specific situations. The C++Builder wizards automate the most common tasks. However, some tasks, such as custom marshaling, are not supported by any C++Builder wizards. For information on that and other technologies not explicitly supported by C++Builder, refer to the Microsoft Developer's Network (MSDN) documentation. The Microsoft Web site also provides current information on COM support.

Overview of creating a COM object

Whether you use the Automation object wizard to create a new Automation server or the COM object wizard to create some other type of COM object, the process you follow is the same. It involves these steps:

- 1 Design the COM object.

- 2 Use the COM Object wizard or the Automation Object wizard to create the server object.
- 3 Specify options on the ATL page of the project options dialog to indicate how COM will call the application that houses your object and what type of debugging support you want.
- 4 Define the interface that the object exposes to clients.
- 5 Register the COM object.
- 6 Test and debug the application.

Designing a COM object

When designing the COM object, you need to decide what COM interfaces you want to implement. You can write a COM object to implement an interface that has already been defined, or you can define a new interface for your object to implement. In addition, you can have your object support more than one interface. For information about standard COM interfaces that you might want to support, see the MSDN documentation.

- To create a COM object that implements an existing interface, use the COM Object wizard.
- To create a COM object that implements a new interface that you define, use either the COM Object wizard or the Automation Object wizard. The COM object wizard can generate a new default interface that descends from *IUnknown*, and the Automation object gives your object a default interface that descends from *IDispatch*. No matter which wizard you use, you can always use the Type Library editor later to change the parent interface of the default interface that the wizard generates.

In addition to deciding what interfaces to support, you must decide whether the COM object is an in-process server, out-of-process server, or remote server. For in-process servers and for out-of-process and remote servers that use a type library, COM marshals the data for you. Otherwise, you must consider how to marshal the data to out-of-process servers. For information on server types, see, “In-process, out-of-process, and remote servers,” on page 38-6.

Using the COM object wizard

The COM object wizard performs the following tasks:

- Creates a new unit.
- Defines a new class that descends from the ATL classes *CCOMObjectRootEx* and *CCOMCoClass*. For more information on the base classes, see “Code generated by wizards” on page 38-22.
- Adds a type library to your project and adds your object and its interface to the type library.

Before you create a COM object, create or open the project for the application containing functionality that you want to implement. The project can be either an application or ActiveX library, depending on your needs.

To bring up the COM object wizard,

- 1 Choose File | New | Other to open the New Items dialog box.
- 2 Select the tab labeled, ActiveX.
- 3 Double-click the COM object icon.

In the wizard, you must specify the following:

- **CoClass name:** This is the name of the object as it appears to clients. The class created to implement your object has this name with a 'T' prepended. If you do not choose to implement an existing interface, the wizard gives your CoClass a default interface that has this name with an 'I' prepended.
- **Implemented Interface:** By default, the wizard gives your object a default interface that descends from *IUnknown*. After exiting the wizard, you can then use the Type Library editor to add properties and methods to this interface. However, you can also select a pre-defined interface for your object to implement. Click the List button in the COM object wizard to bring up the Interface Selection wizard, where you can select any dual or custom interface defined in a type library registered on your system. The interface you select becomes the default interface for your new CoClass. The wizard adds all the methods on this interface to the generated implementation class, so that you only need to fill in the bodies of the methods in the implementation unit. Note that if you select an existing interface, the interface is not added to your project's type library. This means that when deploying your object, you must also deploy the type library that defines the interface.
- **Threading Model:** Typically, client requests to your object enter on different threads of execution. You can specify how COM serializes these threads when it calls your object. Your choice of threading model determines how the object is registered. You are responsible for providing any threading support implied by the model you choose. For information on the different possibilities, see "Choosing a threading model" on page 41-5. For information on how to provide thread support to your application, see Chapter 11, "Writing multi-threaded applications."
- **Event support:** You must indicate whether you want your object to generate events to which clients can respond. The wizard can provide support for the interfaces required to generate events and the dispatching of calls to client event handlers. For information on how events work and what you need to do when implementing them, see "Exposing events to clients" on page 41-10.
- **Oleautomation:** If you are willing to confine yourself to Automation-compatible types, you can let COM handle the marshaling for you when you are not generating an in-process server. By marking your object's interface as OleAutomation in the type library, you enable COM to set up the proxies and stubs for you and handles passing parameters across process boundaries. For more information on this process, see "The marshaling mechanism" on page 38-8.

You can only specify whether your interface is Automation-compatible if you are generating a new interface. If you select an existing interface, its attributes are already specified in its type library. If your object's interface is not marked as OleAutomation, you must either create an in-process server or write your own marshaling code.

- **Implement Ancestor Interfaces:** Select this option if you want the wizard to provide stub routines for inherited interfaces. There are three inherited interfaces that will never be implemented by the wizard: *IUnknown*, *IDispatch*, and *IAppServer*. *IUnknown* and *IDispatch* are not implemented because ATL provides its own implementation of these two interfaces. *IAppServer* is not implemented because it is implemented automatically when working with client datasets and dataset providers.

You can optionally add a description of your COM object. This description appears in the type library for your object.

Using the Automation object wizard

The Automation object wizard performs the following tasks:

- Creates a new unit.
- Defines a new class that descends from the ATL classes *CComObjectRootEx* and *CComCoClass*. For more information on the base classes, see “Code generated by wizards” on page 38-22.
- Adds a type library to your project and adds your object and its interface to the type library.

Before you create an Automation object, create or open the project for an application containing functionality that you want to expose. The project can be either an application or ActiveX library, depending on your needs.

To display the Automation wizard:

- 1 Choose File | New | Other.
- 2 Select the tab labeled, ActiveX.
- 3 Double-click the Automation Object icon.

In the wizard dialog, specify the following:

- **CoClass name:** This is the name of the object as it appears to clients. Your object's default interface is created with a name based on this CoClass name with an 'I' prepended, and the class created to implement your object has this name with a 'T' prepended.
- **Threading Model:** Typically, client requests to your object enter on different threads of execution. You can specify how COM serializes these threads when it calls your object. Your choice of threading model determines how the object is registered. You are responsible for providing any threading support implied by the model you choose. For information on the different possibilities, see

“Choosing a threading model” on page 41-5. For information on how to provide thread support to your application, see Chapter 11, “Writing multi-threaded applications.”

- **Event support:** You must indicate whether you want your object to generate events to which clients can respond. The wizard can provide support for the interfaces required to generate events and the dispatching of calls to client event handlers. For information on how events work and what you need to do when implementing them, see “Exposing events to clients” on page 41-10.

You can optionally add a description of your COM object. This description appears in the type library for your object.

The Automation object implements a **dual interface**, which supports both early (compile-time) binding through the VTable and late (runtime) binding through the *IDispatch* interface. For more information, see “Dual interfaces” on page 41-12.

Choosing a threading model

When creating an object using a wizard, you select a threading model that your object agrees to support. By adding thread support to your COM object, you can improve its performance, because multiple clients can access your application at the same time.

Table 41.1 lists the different threading models you can specify.

Table 41.1 Threading models for COM objects

| Threading model | Description | Implementation pros and cons |
|---|---|---|
| Single | The server provides no thread support. COM serializes client requests so that the application receives one request at a time. | Clients are handled one at a time so no threading support is needed. No performance benefit. |
| Apartment (or Single-threaded apartment) | COM ensures that only one client thread can call the object at a time. All client calls use the thread in which the object was created. | Objects can safely access their own instance data, but global data must be protected using critical sections or some other form of serialization. The thread’s local variables are reliable across multiple calls. Some performance benefits. |
| Free (also called multi-threaded apartment) | Objects can receive calls on any number of threads at any time. | Objects must protect all instance and global data using critical sections or some other form of serialization. Thread local variables are <i>not</i> reliable across multiple calls. |

Table 41.1 Threading models for COM objects (continued)

| Threading model | Description | Implementation pros and cons |
|-----------------|---|---|
| Both | This is the same as the Free-threaded model except that outgoing calls (for example, callbacks) are guaranteed to execute in the same thread. | Maximum performance and flexibility. Does not require the application to provide thread support for parameters supplied to outgoing calls. |
| Neutral | Multiple clients can call the object on different threads at the same time, but COM ensures that no two calls conflict. | You must guard against thread conflicts involving global data and any instance data that is accessed by multiple methods. This model should not be used with objects that have a user interface (visual controls). This model is only available under COM+. Under COM, it is mapped to the Apartment model. |

Note Local variables (except those in callbacks) are always safe, regardless of the threading model. This is because local variables are stored on the stack and each thread has its own stack. Local variables may not be safe in callbacks when using free-threading.

The threading model you choose in the wizard determines how the object is registered in the system Registry. You must make sure that your object implementation adheres to the threading model you have chosen. For general information on writing thread-safe code, see Chapter 11, “Writing multi-threaded applications.”

Note In order for COM to call your object according to the specified threading model, it must be initialized to support that kind of model. You can specify how COM is initialized using the ATL page of the project options dialog.

For in-process servers, setting the threading model in the wizard sets the threading model key in the CLSID registry entry.

Out-of-process servers are registered as EXE, and COM must be initialized for the highest threading model required. For example, if an EXE includes a free-threaded object, it is initialized for free threading, which means that it can provide the expected support for any free-threaded or apartment-threaded objects contained in the EXE. To specify how COM is initialized, use the ATL page of the project options dialog.

Writing an object that supports the free threading model

Use the free threading (or both) model rather than apartment threading whenever the object needs to be accessed from more than one thread. A common example is a client application connected to an object on a remote machine. When the remote client calls a method on that object, the server receives the call on a thread from the thread pool on the server machine. This receiving thread makes the call locally to the actual object; and, because the object supports the free threading model, the thread can make a direct call into the object.

If the object supported the apartment threading model instead, the call would have to be transferred to the thread on which the object was created, and the result would have to be transferred back into the receiving thread before returning to the client. This approach requires extra marshaling.

To support free threading, you must consider how instance data can be accessed for *each* method. If the method is writing to instance data, you must use critical sections or some other form of serialization, to protect the instance data. Likely, the overhead of serializing critical calls is less than executing COM's marshaling code.

Note that if the instance data is read-only, serialization is not needed.

Free-threaded in-process servers can improve performance by acting as the outer object in an aggregation with the free-threaded marshaler. The free-threaded marshaler provides a shortcut for COM's standard thread handling when a free-threaded DLL is called by a host (client) that is not free-threaded.

To aggregate with the free threaded marshaler, you must

- Call *CoCreateFreeThreadedMarshaler*, passing your object's *IUnknown* interface for the resulting free-threaded marshaler to use:

```
CoCreateFreeThreadedMarshaler(static_cast<IUnknown *>(this), &FMarshaler);
```

This line assigns the interface for the free-threaded marshaler to a class member, *FMarshaler*.

- Using the Type Library editor, add the *IMarshal* interface to the set of interfaces your CoClass implements.
- In your object's *QueryInterface* method, delegate calls for *IDD_IMarshal* to the free-threaded marshaler (stored as *FMarshaler* above).

Warning

The free-threaded marshaler violates the normal rules of COM marshaling to provide additional efficiency. It should be used with care. In particular, it should only be aggregated with free-threaded objects in in-process servers, and should only be instantiated by the object that uses it (not another thread).

Writing an object that supports the apartment threading model

To implement the (single-threaded) apartment threading model, you must follow a few rules:

- The first thread in the application that gets created is COM's main thread. This is typically the thread on which *WinMain* was called. This must also be the last thread to uninitialize COM.
- Each thread in the apartment threading model must have a message loop, and the message queue must be checked frequently.
- When a thread gets a pointer to a COM interface, that pointer may only be used in that thread.

The single-threaded apartment model is the middle ground between providing no threading support and full, multi-threading support of the free threading model. A server committing to the apartment model promises that the server has serialized access to all of its global data (such as its object count). This is because different

objects may try to access the global data from different threads. However, the object's instance data is safe because the methods are always called on the same thread.

Typically, controls for use in Web browsers use the apartment threading model because browser applications always initialize their threads as apartment.

Writing an object that supports the neutral threading model

Under COM+, you can use another threading model that is in between free threading and apartment threading: the neutral model. Like the free-threading model, this model allows multiple threads to access your object at the same time. There is no extra marshaling to transfer to the thread on which the object was created. However, your object is guaranteed to receive no conflicting calls.

Writing an object that uses the neutral threading model follows much the same rules as writing an apartment-threaded object, except that you do need to guard instance data against thread conflicts if it can be accessed by different methods in the object's interface. Any instance data that is only accessed by a single interface method is automatically thread-safe.

Specifying ATL options

Once you have used a wizard to create a COM object, the Project Options dialog gains an additional page labeled "ATL". This page lets you set a number of application-level flags that control what parameters are generated for ATL calls that initialize COM or register the application, as well as flags that control whether debug tracing is enabled in code that uses the ATL.

Use the ATL page to set the following options:

- **Instancing:** If your application is not an in-process server, instancing determines how many instances of your object clients can create within a single process space. If you specify single use, then once a client has instantiated your object, COM removes the application from view so that other clients must launch their own instances of the application. If you specify multiple use, then multiple clients can each create their own instance of your object, and all instances run in the same process space.
- **OLE Initialization COINIT_XXX flag:** This flag determines how COM is initialized by your application. You can specify apartment-threaded, in which case each object is always called on the thread in which it was created, or multi-threaded, in which case the objects can be called on multiple threads. The COINIT flags influence what threading models objects in the application can use. If the COINIT flag is set to apartment-threaded, you can only have single-threaded or apartment-threaded objects in the application. Objects that are registered with any other threading model default to apartment-threaded.
- **Debugging flags:** You can also set flags to specify that ATL calls are logged in the event log when your application runs in the IDE. You can trace calls to *IUnknown* methods (QueryInterface and reference counting calls), or trace all ATL calls.

Defining a COM object's interface

When you use a wizard to create a COM object, the wizard automatically generates a type library. The type library provides a way for host applications to find out what the object can do. It also lets you define your object's interface using the Type Library editor. The interfaces you define in the Type Library editor define what properties, methods, and events your object exposes to clients.

Note If you selected an existing interface in the COM object wizard, you do not need to add properties and methods. The definition of the interface is imported from the type library in which it was defined. Instead, simply locate the methods of the imported interface in the implementation unit and fill in their bodies.

Adding a property to the object's interface

When you add a property to your object's interface using the Type Library editor, it automatically adds a method to read the property's value and/or a method to set the property's value. The Type Library editor, in turn, adds these methods to your implementation class, and in your implementation unit creates empty method implementations for you to complete.

To add a property to your object's interface,

- 1 In the type library editor, select the default interface for the object.

The default interface should be the name of the object preceded by the letter "I". To determine the default, in the Type Library editor, choose the CoClass and Implements tab, and check the list of implemented interfaces for the one marked, "Default."

- 2 To expose a read/write property, click the Property button on the toolbar; otherwise, click the arrow next to the Property button on the toolbar, and then click the type of property to expose.
- 3 In the Attributes pane, specify the name and type of the property.
- 4 On the toolbar, click the Refresh button.

A definition and skeletal implementations for the property access methods are inserted into the object's implementation unit.

- 5 In the implementation unit, locate the access methods for the property. These have names of the form `get_PropertyName` and `set_PropertyName`, and include only the code to catch exceptions and return an HRESULT. Add code (between **try** and **catch** statements) that gets or sets the property value of your object. This code may simply call an existing function inside the application, access a data member that you add to the object definition, or otherwise implement the property.

Adding a method to the object's interface

When you add a method to your object's interface using the Type Library editor, the Type Library editor can, in turn, add the methods to your implementation class, and in your implementation unit create empty implementation for you to complete.

To expose a method via your object's interface,

- 1 In the Type Library editor, select the default interface for the object.
The default interface should be the name of the object preceded by the letter "I". To determine the default, in the Type Library editor, choose the CoClass and Implements tab, and check the list of implemented interfaces for the one marked, "Default."
- 2 Click the Method button.
- 3 In the Attributes pane, specify the name of the method.
- 4 In the Parameters pane, specify the method's return type and add the appropriate parameters.
- 5 On the toolbar, click the Refresh button.
A definition and skeletal implementation for the method is inserted into the object's implementation unit.
- 6 In the implementation unit, locate the newly inserted method implementation. The method is completely empty. Fill in the body to perform whatever task the method represents.

Exposing events to clients

There are two types of events that a COM object can generate: traditional events and COM+ events.

- COM+ events require that you create a separate event object using the event object wizard and add code to call that event object from your server object. For more information about generating COM+ events, see "Generating events under COM+" on page 44-20.
- You can use the wizard to handle much of the work in generating traditional events. This process is described below.

In order for an object to generate events, you need to do the following:

- 1 In the wizard, check the box, Generate event support code.
The wizard creates an object that includes an Events interface as well as the default interface. This Events interface has a name of the form `ICoClassNameEvents`. It is an outgoing (source) interface, which means that it is not an interface your object implements, but rather is an interface that clients must implement and which your object calls. (You can see this by selecting your CoClass, going to the Implements

page, and noting that the Source column on the Events interface says **true**.) The GUID for the Events interface is added to the Connection Points map, which appears beneath the interface map in the object's declaration. For more information about the Connection Points map, see the ATL documentation.

In addition to the Events interface, the wizard adds additional base classes to your object. These include an implementation of the *IConnectionPointContainer* interface (*IConnectionPointContainerImpl*) and a templated base class that manages the firing of events to all clients (*TEvents_CoClassName*). The template for this latter class can be found in the `_TLB` unit header.

- 2 In the Type Library editor, select the outgoing Events interface for your object. (This is the one with a name of the form *ICoClassNameEvents*)
- 3 Click the Method button from the Type Library toolbar. Each method you add to the Events interface represents an event handler that the client must implement.
- 4 In the Attributes pane, specify the name of the event handler, such as *MyEvent*.
- 5 On the toolbar, click the Refresh button.

Your object implementation now has everything it needs to accept client event sinks and maintain a list of interfaces to call when the event occurs. To call these interfaces, you can call the method that fires an event (implemented by *TEvents_CoClassName*) to generate the event on clients. For each event handler, this method has a name of the form *Fire_EventHandlerName*.

- 6 Whenever you need to fire the event so that clients are informed of its occurrence, call the method that dispatches the event to all event sinks:

```
if (EventOccurs) Fire_MyEvent; // Call method you created to fire events.
```

Managing events in your Automation object

For a server to support traditional COM events, it must provide the definition of an outgoing interface which is implemented by a client. This outgoing interface includes all the event handlers the client must implement to respond to server events.

When a client has implemented the outgoing event interface, it registers its interest in receiving event notification by querying the server's *IConnectionPointContainer* interface. The *IConnectionPointContainer* interface returns the server's *IConnectionPoint* interface, which the client then uses to pass the server a pointer to its implementation of the event handlers (known as a sink).

The server maintains a list of all client sinks and calls methods on them when an event occurs, as described above.

Automation interfaces

The Automation Object wizard implements a dual interface by default, which means that the Automation object supports both

- Late binding at runtime, which is through the *IDispatch* interface. This is implemented as a dispatch interface, or **dispinterface**.
- Early binding at compile-time, which is accomplished through directly calling one of the member functions in the object's virtual function table (VTable). This is referred to as a **custom interface**.

Note Any interfaces generated by the COM object wizard that do not descend from *IDispatch* only support VTable calls.

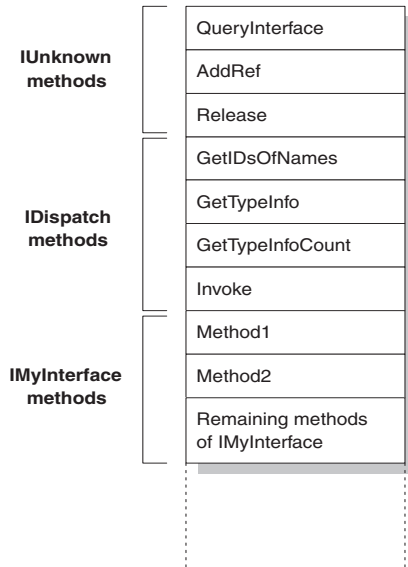
Dual interfaces

A dual interface is a custom interface and a dispinterface at the same time. It is implemented as a COM VTable interface that derives from *IDispatch*. For those controllers that can access the object only at runtime, the dispinterface is available. For objects that can take advantage of compile-time binding, the more efficient VTable interface is used.

Dual interfaces offer the following combined advantages of VTable interfaces and dispinterfaces:

- For Automation controllers that cannot obtain type information, the dispinterface provides runtime access to the object.
- For in-process servers, you have the benefit of fast access through VTable interfaces.
- For out-of-process servers, COM marshals data for both VTable interfaces and dispinterfaces. COM provides a generic proxy/stub implementation that can marshal the interface based on the information contained in a type library. For more information on marshaling, see, "Marshaling data," on page 41-14.

The following diagram depicts the *IMyInterface* interface in an object that supports a dual interface named *IMyInterface*. The first three entries of the VTable for a dual interface refer to the *IUnknown* interface, the next four entries refer to the *IDispatch* interface, and the remaining entries are COM entries for direct access to members of the custom interface.

Figure 41.1 Dual interface VTable

Dispatch interfaces

Automation controllers are clients that use the COM *IDispatch* interface to access the COM server objects. The controller must first create the object, then query the object's *IUnknown* interface for a pointer to its *IDispatch* interface. *IDispatch* keeps track of methods and properties internally by a dispatch identifier (dispID), which is a unique identification number for an interface member. Through *IDispatch*, a controller retrieves the object's type information for the dispatch interface and then maps interface member names to specific dispIDs. These dispIDs are available at runtime, and controllers get them by calling the *IDispatch* method, *GetIDsOfNames*.

Once it has the dispID, the controller can then call the *IDispatch* method, *Invoke*, to execute the appropriate code (property or method), packaging the parameters for the property or method into one of the *Invoke* parameters. *Invoke* has a fixed compile-time signature that allows it to accept any number of arguments when calling an interface method.

The Automation object's implementation of *Invoke* must then unpackage the parameters, call the property or method, and be prepared to handle any errors that occur. When the property or method returns, the object passes its return value back to the controller.

This is called late binding because the controller binds to the property or method at runtime rather than at compile time.

Note C++Builder can't create CoClasses with dispatch interfaces that are not dual interfaces. This is because its COM support rests on the ATL, which does not support non-dual dispatch interfaces.

Note When importing a type library, C++Builder will query for dispIDs at the time it generates the code, thereby allowing generated wrapper classes to call *Invoke* without calling *GetIDsOfNames*. This can significantly increase the runtime performance of controllers.

Custom interfaces

Custom interfaces are user-defined interfaces that allow clients to invoke interface methods based on their order in the VTable and knowledge of the argument types. The VTable lists the addresses of all the properties and methods that are members of the object, including the member functions of the interfaces that it supports. If the object does not support *IDispatch*, the entries for the members of the object's custom interfaces immediately follow the members of *IUnknown*.

If the object has a type library, you can access the custom interface through its VTable layout, which you can get using the Type Library editor. If the object has a type library and also supports *IDispatch*, a client can also get the dispIDs of the *IDispatch* interface and bind directly to a VTable offset. C++Builder's type library importer (TLBIMP) retrieves dispIDs at import time, so clients that use dispinterface wrappers can avoid calls to *GetIDsOfNames*; this information is already in the _TLB unit. However, clients still need to call *Invoke*.

Marshaling data

For out-of-process and remote servers, you must consider how COM marshals data outside the current process. You can provide marshaling:

- Automatically, using the *IDispatch* interface.
- Automatically, by creating a type library with your server and marking the interface with the OLE Automation flag. COM knows how to marshal all the **Automation-compatible** types in the type library and can set up the proxies and stubs for you. Some type restrictions apply to enable automatic marshaling.
- Manually by implementing all the methods of the *IMarshal* interface. This is called **custom marshaling**.

Note The first method (using *IDispatch*) is only available on Automation servers. The second method is automatically available on all objects that are created by wizards and which use a type library.

Automation compatible types

Function result and parameter types of the methods declared in dual and dispatch interfaces and interfaces that you mark as OLE Automation must be *Automation-compatible* types. The following types are OLE Automation-compatible:

- The predefined valid types such as *short*, *int*, *single*, *double*, *WideString*. For a complete list, see "Valid types" on page 39-11.

- Enumeration types defined in a type library. OLE Automation-compatible enumeration types are stored as 32-bit values and are treated as values of type *Integer* for purposes of parameter passing.
- Interface types defined in a type library that are OLE Automation safe, that is, derived from *IDispatch* and containing only OLE Automation compatible types.
- Dispinterface types defined in a type library.
- Any custom record type defined within the type library.
- *IFont*, *IStrings*, and *IPicture*. Helper objects must be instantiated to map
 - an *IFont* to a *TFont*
 - an *IStrings* to a *TStrings*
 - an *IPicture* to a *TPicture*

The ActiveX control and ActiveForm wizards create these helper objects automatically when needed. To use the helper objects, call the global routines, *GetOleFont*, *GetOleStrings*, *GetOlePicture*, respectively.

Type restrictions for automatic marshaling

For an interface to support automatic marshaling (also called Automation marshaling or type library marshaling), the following restrictions apply. When you edit your object using the type library editor, the editor enforces these restrictions:

- Types must be compatible for cross-platform communication. For example, you cannot use data structures (other than implementing another property object), unsigned arguments, *AnsiStrings*, and so on.
- String data types must be transferred as *BSTR*. *PChar* and *AnsiString* cannot be marshaled safely.
- All members of a dual interface must pass an *HRESULT* as the function's return value.
- Members of a dual interface that need to return other values should specify these parameters as **var** or **out**, indicating an output parameter that returns the value of the function.

Note One way to bypass the Automation types restrictions is to implement a separate *IDispatch* interface and a custom interface. By doing so, you can use the full range of possible argument types. This means that COM clients have the option of using the custom interface, which Automation controllers can still access. In this case, though, you must implement the marshaling code manually.

Custom marshaling

Typically, you use automatic marshaling in out-of-process and remote servers because it is easier—COM does the work for you. However, you may decide to provide custom marshaling if you think you can improve marshaling performance.

When implementing your own custom marshaling, you must support the *IMarshal* interface. For more information, on this approach, see the Microsoft documentation.

Registering a COM object

You can register your server object as an in-process or an out-of-process server. For more information on the server types, see “In-process, out-of-process, and remote servers” on page 38-6.

Note Before you remove a COM object from your system, you should unregister it.

Registering an in-process server

To register an in-process server (DLL or OCX),

- Choose Run | Register ActiveX Server.

To unregister an in-process server,

- Choose Run | Unregister ActiveX Server.

Registering an out-of-process server

To register an out-of-process server,

- Run the server with the **/regserver** command-line option.

You can set command-line options with the Run | Parameters dialog box.

You can also register the server by running it.

To unregister an out-of-process server,

- Run the server with the **/unregserver** command-line option.

As an alternative, you can use the **treregsvr** command from the command line or run the **regsvr32.exe** from the operating system.

Note If the COM server is intended for use under COM+, you should install it in a COM+ application rather than register it. (Installing the object in a COM+ application automatically takes care of registration.) For information on how to install an object in a COM+ application, see “Installing transactional objects” on page 44-27.

Testing and debugging the application

To test and debug your COM server application,

- 1 Turn on debugging information using the Compiler tab on the Project | Options dialog box, if necessary. Also, turn on Integrated Debugging in the Tools | Debugger Options dialog.
- 2 For an in-process server, choose Run | Parameters, type the name of the Automation controller in the Host Application box, and choose OK.
- 3 Choose Run | Run.
- 4 Set breakpoints in the Automation server.
- 5 Use the Automation controller to interact with the Automation server.

The Automation server pauses when the breakpoints are reached.

In addition, it can be helpful to trace the calls your application makes to interfaces. By examining the flow of COM calls, it is possible to determine whether your application is behaving as expected. To tell C++Builder to add messages to the event log whenever a COM interface is called, use the ATL page of the project objects dialog to specify debugging options.

Note As an alternate approach, if you are also writing the Automation controller, you can debug into an in-process server by enabling COM cross-process support. Use the General page of the Tools | Debugger Options dialog to enable cross-process support.

Creating an Active Server Page

If you are using the Microsoft Internet Information Server (IIS) environment to serve your Web pages, you can use Active Server Pages (ASP) to create dynamic Web-based client/server applications. Active Server Pages let you write a script that gets called every time the server loads the Web page. This script can, in turn, call on Automation objects to obtain information that it includes in a generated HTML page. For example, you can write a C++Builder Automation server, such as one to create a bitmap or connect to a database, and use this control to access data that gets updated every time the server loads the Web page.

On the client side, the ASP acts like a standard HTML document and can be viewed by users on any platform using any Web Browser.

ASP applications are analogous to applications you write using C++Builder's Web broker technology. For more information about the Web broker technology, see Chapter 32, "Creating Internet server applications." ASP differs, however, in the way it separates the UI design from the implementation of business rules or complex application logic.

- The UI design is managed by the Active Server Page. This is essentially an HTML document, but it can include embedded script that calls on Active Server objects to supply it with content that reflects your business rules or application logic.
- The application logic is encapsulated by Active Server objects that expose simple methods to the Active Server Page, supplying it with the content it needs.

Note Although ASP provides the advantage of separating UI design from application logic, its performance is limited in scale. For Web sites that respond to extremely large numbers of clients, an approach based on the Web broker technology is recommended instead.

The script in your Active Server Pages and the Automation objects you embed in an active server page can make use of the ASP intrinsics (built-in objects that provide information about the current application, HTTP messages from the browser, and so on).

This chapter shows how to create an Active Server Object using the C++Builder Active Server Object wizard. This special Automation control can then be called by an Active Server Page and supply it with content.

Here are the steps for creating an Active Server Object:

- Create an Active Server Object for the application.
- Define the Active Server Object's interface.
- Register the Active Server Object.
- Test and debug the application.

Creating an Active Server Object

An Active Server Object is an Automation object that has access to information about the entire ASP application and the HTTP messages it uses to communicate with browsers. It descends from *TASPObj* or *TMTSASPObj* (as well as the ATL base classes *CComObjectRootEx* and *CComCoClass*), and supports Automation protocols, exposing itself for other applications (or the script in the Active Server page) to use. You create an Active Server Object using the Active Server Object wizard.

Your Active Server Object project can be either an executable (exe) or library (dll), depending on your needs. However, you should be aware of the drawbacks of using an out-of-process server. These drawbacks are discussed in “Creating ASPs for in-process or out-of-process servers” on page 42-7.

To display the Active Server Object wizard:

- 1 Choose File | New | Other.
- 2 Select the tab labeled, ActiveX.
- 3 Double-click the Active Server Object icon.

In the wizard, give your new Active Server Object a name, and specify the threading model you want to support. You must write the implementation so that it adheres to the model (for example, avoiding thread conflicts). The threading model involves the same choices that you make for other COM objects. For details, see “Choosing a threading model” on page 41-5.

The thing that makes an Active Server Object unique is its ability to access information about the ASP application and the HTTP messages that pass between the Active Server page and client Web browsers. This information is accessed using the ASP intrinsics. In the wizard, you can specify how your object accesses these by setting the Active Server Type:

- If you are working with IIS 3 or IIS 4, you use Page Level Event Methods. Under this model, your object implements the methods, *OnStartPage* and *OnEndPage*, which are called when the Active Server page loads and unloads. When your object is loaded, it automatically obtains an *IScriptingContext* interface, which it uses to access the ASP intrinsics. These interfaces are, in turn, surfaced as properties inherited from the base class (*TASPObj*).

- If you are working with IIS5 or later, you use the Object Context type. Under this model, your object fetches an *IObjectContext* interface, which it uses to access the ASP intrinsics. Again, these interfaces are surfaced as properties in the inherited base class (*TMTSASPObject*). One advantage of this latter approach is that your object has access to all of the other services available through *IObjectContext*. To access the *IObjectContext* interface, use the *ObjectContext* property of your Active Server Object. For more information about the services available through *IObjectContext*, see Chapter 44, “Creating MTS or COM+ objects.”

You can tell the wizard to generate a simple ASP page to host your new Active Server Object. The generated page provides a minimal script (written in VBScript) that creates your Active Server Object based on its ProgID, and indicates where you can call its methods. This script calls **Server.CreateObject** to launch your Active Server Object.

Note Although the generated test script uses VBScript, Active Server Pages also can be written using Jscript.

When you exit the wizard, a new unit is added to the current project that contains the definition for the Active Server Object. In addition, the wizard adds a type library project and opens the Type Library editor. Now you can expose the properties and methods of the interface through the type library as described in “Defining a COM object’s interface” on page 41-9. As you write the implementation of your object’s properties and methods, you can take advantage of the ASP intrinsics (described below) to obtain information about the ASP application and the HTTP messages it uses to communicate with browsers.

The Active Server Object, like any other Automation object, implements a **dual interface**, which supports both early (compile-time) binding through the *VTable* and late (runtime) binding through the *IDispatch* interface. For more information on dual interfaces, see “Dual interfaces” on page 41-12.

Using the ASP intrinsics

The ASP intrinsics are a set of COM objects supplied by ASP to the objects running in an Active Server Page. They let your Active Server Object access information that reflects the messages passing between your application and the Web browser, as well as a place to store information that is shared among Active Server Objects that belong to the same ASP application.

To make these objects easy to access, the base class for your Active Server Object surfaces them as properties. For a complete understanding of these objects, see the Microsoft documentation. However, the following topics provide a brief overview.

Application

The Application object is accessed through an *IApplicationObject* interface. It represents the entire ASP application, which is defined as the set of all .asp files in a virtual directory and its subdirectories. The Application object can be shared by multiple clients, so it includes locking support that you should use to prevent thread conflicts.

IApplicationObject includes the following:

Table 42.1 IApplicationObject interface members

| Property, Method, or Event | Meaning |
|----------------------------|---|
| Contents property | Lists all the objects that were added to the application using script commands. This interface has two methods, <i>Remove</i> and <i>RemoveAll</i> , that you can use to delete one or all objects from the list. |
| StaticObjects property | Lists all the objects that were added to the application with the <OBJECT> tag. |
| Lock method | Prevents other clients from locking the Application object until you call Unlock. All clients should call Lock before accessing shared memory (such as the properties). |
| Unlock method | Releases the lock that was set using the Lock method. |
| Application_OnEnd event | Occurs when the application quits, after the Session_OnEnd event. The only intrinsics available are Application and Server. The event handler must be written in VBScript or JScript. |
| Application_OnStart event | Occurs before the new session is created (before Session_OnStart). The only intrinsics available are Application and Server. The event handler must be written in VBScript or JScript. |

Request

The Request object is accessed through an *IRequest* interface. It provides information about the HTTP request message that caused the Active Server Page to be opened.

IRequest includes the following:

Table 42.2 IRequest interface members

| Property, Method, or Event | Meaning |
|----------------------------|--|
| ClientCertificate property | Indicates the values of all fields in the client certificate that is sent with the HTTP message. |
| Cookies property | Indicates the values of all Cookie headers on the HTTP message. |
| Form property | Indicates the values of form elements in the HTTP body. These can be accessed by name. |
| QueryString property | Indicates the values of all variables in the query string from the HTTP header. |
| ServerVariables property | Indicates the values of various environment variables. These variables represent most of the common HTTP header variables. |
| TotalBytes property | Indicates the number of bytes in the request body. This is an upper limit on the number of bytes returned by the BinaryRead method. |
| BinaryRead method | Retrieves the content of a Post message. Call the method, specifying the maximum number of bytes to read. The resulting content is returns as a Variant array of bytes. After calling BinaryRead, you can't use the Form property. |

Response

The Request object is accessed through an *IResponse* interface. It lets you specify information about the HTTP response message that is returned to the client browser.

IResponse includes the following:

Table 42.3 IResponse interface members

| Property, Method, or Event | Meaning |
|----------------------------|---|
| Cookies property | Determines the values of all Cookie headers on the HTTP message. |
| Buffer property | Indicates whether page output is buffered. When page output is buffered, the server does not send a response to the client until all of the server scripts on the current page are processed. |
| CacheControl property | Determines whether proxy servers can cache the output in the response. |
| Charset property | Adds the name of the character set to the content type header. |
| ContentType property | Specifies the HTTP content type of the response message's body. |
| Expires property | Specifies how long the response can be cached by a browser before it expires. |
| ExpiresAbsolute property | Specifies the date and time when the response expires. |
| IsClientConnected property | Indicates whether the client has disconnected from the server. |
| Pics property | Set the value for the pics-label field of the response header. |
| Status property | Indicates the status of the response. This is the value of an HTTP status header. |
| AddHeader method | Adds an HTTP header with a specified name and value. |
| AppendToLog method | Adds a string to the end of the Web server log entry for this request. |
| BinaryWrite method | Writes raw (uninterpreted) information to the body of the response message. |
| Clear method | Erases any buffered HTML output. |
| End method | Stops processing the .asp file and returns the current result. |
| Flush method | Sends any buffered output immediately. |
| Redirect method | Sends a redirect response message, redirecting the client browser to a different URL. |
| Write method | Writes a variable to the current HTTP output as a string. |

Session

The Session object is accessed through the *ISessionObject* interface. It allows you to store variables that persist for the duration of a client's interaction with the ASP application. That is, these variables are not freed when the client moves from page to page within the ASP application, but only when the client exits the application altogether.

ISessionObject includes the following:

Table 42.4 ISessionObject interface members

| Property, Method, or Event | Meaning |
|----------------------------|--|
| Contents property | Lists all the objects that were added to the session using the <OBJECT> tag. You can access any variable in the list by name, or call the Contents object's <i>Remove</i> or <i>RemoveAll</i> method to delete values. |
| StaticObjects property | Lists all the objects that were added to the session with the <OBJECT> tag. |
| CodePage property | Specifies the code page to use for symbol mapping. Different locales may use different code pages. |
| LCID property | Specifies the locale identifier to use for interpreting string content. |
| SessionID property | Indicates the session identifier for the current client. |
| TimeOut property | Specifies the time, in minutes, that the session persists without a request (or refresh) from the client until the application terminates. |
| Abandon method | Destroys the session and releases its resources. |
| Session_OnEnd event | Occurs when the session is abandoned or times out. The only intrinsics available are Application, Server, and Session. The event handler must be written in VBScript or JScript. |
| Session_OnStart event | Occurs when the server creates a new session is created (after Application_OnStart but before running the script on the Active Server Page). All intrinsics are available. The event handler must be written in VBScript or JScript. |

Server

The Server object is accessed through an *IServer* interface. It provides various utilities for writing your ASP application.

IServer includes the following:

Table 42.5 IServer interface members

| Property, Method, or Event | Meaning |
|----------------------------|---|
| ScriptTimeOut property | Same as the TimeOut property on the Session object. |
| CreateObject method | Instantiates a specified Active Server Object. |
| Execute method | Executes the script in a specified .asp file. |
| GetLastError method | Returns an ASPError object that describes the error condition. |
| HTMLEncode method | Encodes a string for use in an HTML header, replacing reserved characters by the appropriate symbolic constants. |
| MapPath method | Maps a specified virtual path (an absolute path on the current server or a path relative to the current page) into a physical path. |
| Transfer method | Sends all of the current state information to another Active Server Page for processing. |
| URLEncode method | Applies URL encoding rules, including escape characters, to a specified string |

Creating ASPs for in-process or out-of-process servers

You can use **Server.CreateObject** in an ASP page to launch either an in-process or out-of-process server, depending on your requirements. However, launching in-process servers is more common.

Unlike most in-process servers, an Active Server Object in an in-process server does not run in the client's process space. Instead, it runs in the IIS process space. This means that the client does not need to download your application (as, for example, it does when you use ActiveX objects). In-process component DLLs are faster and more secure than out-of-process servers, so they are better suited for server-side use.

Because out-of-process servers are less secure, it is common for IIS to be configured to *not* allow out-of-process executables. In this case, creating an out-of-process server for your Active Server Object would result in an error similar to the following:

```
Server object error 'ASP 0196'  
Cannot launch out of process component  
/path/outofprocess_exe.asp, line 11
```

Also, out-of-process components often create individual server processes for each object instance, so they are slower than CGI applications. They do not scale as well as component DLLs.

If performance and scalability are priorities for your site, in-process servers are highly recommended. However, Intranet sites that receive moderate to low traffic may use an out-of-process component without adversely affecting the site's overall performance.

For general information on in-process and out-of-process servers, see, “In-process, out-of-process, and remote servers,” on page 38-6.

Registering an Active Server Object

You can register the Active Server Page as an in-process or an out-of-process server. However, in-process servers are more common.

Note When you want to remove the Active Server Page object from your system, you should first unregister it, removing its entries from the Windows registry.

Registering an in-process server

To register an in-process server (DLL or OCX),

- Choose Run | Register ActiveX Server.

To unregister an in-process server,

- Choose Run | Unregister ActiveX Server.

Registering an out-of-process server

To register an out-of-process server,

- Run the server with the /regserver command-line option. (You can set command-line options with the Run | Parameters dialog box.)

You can also register the server by running it.

To unregister an out-of-process server,

- Run the server with the /unregserver command-line option.

Testing and debugging the Active Server Page application

Debugging any in-process server such as an Active Server Object is much like debugging a DLL. You choose a host application that loads the DLL, and debug as usual. To test and debug an Active Server Object,

- 1 Turn on debugging information using the Compiler tab on the Project | Options dialog box, if necessary. Also, turn on Integrated Debugging in the Tools | Debugger Options dialog.
- 2 Choose Run | Parameters, type the name of your Web Server in the Host Application box, and choose OK.
- 3 Choose Run | Run.
- 4 Set breakpoints in the Active Server Object implementation.
- 5 Use the Web browser to interact with the Active Server Page.

The debugger pauses when the breakpoints are reached.

Creating an ActiveX control

An ActiveX control is a software component that integrates into and extends the functionality of any host application that supports ActiveX controls, such as C++Builder, Delphi, Visual Basic, Internet Explorer, and (given a plug-in) Netscape Navigator. ActiveX controls implement a particular set of interfaces that allow this integration.

For example, C++Builder comes with several ActiveX controls, including charting, spreadsheet, and graphics controls. You can add these controls to the component palette in the IDE, and then use them like any standard VCL component, dropping them on forms and setting their properties using the Object Inspector.

An ActiveX control can also be deployed on the Web, allowing it to be referenced in HTML documents and viewed with ActiveX-enabled Web browsers.

C++Builder provides wizards that let you create two types of ActiveX controls:

- **ActiveX controls that wrap VCL classes.** By wrapping a VCL class, you can convert existing components into ActiveX controls or create new ones, test them out locally, and then convert them into ActiveX controls. ActiveX controls are typically intended to be embedded in a larger host application.
- **Active forms.** Active forms let you use the form designer to create a more elaborate control that acts like a dialog or like a complete application. You develop the Active form in much the same way that you develop a typical C++Builder application. Active Forms are typically intended for deployment on the Web.

This chapter provides an overview of how to create an ActiveX control in the C++Builder environment. It is not intended to provide complete implementation details of writing ActiveX control without using a wizard. For that information, refer to your Microsoft Developer's Network (MSDN) documentation or search the Microsoft Web site for ActiveX information.

Overview of ActiveX control creation

Creating ActiveX controls using C++Builder is very similar to creating ordinary controls or forms. This differs markedly from creating other COM objects, where you first define the object's interface and then complete the implementation. To create ActiveX controls (other than Active Forms), you reverse this process, starting with the implementation of a VCL control, and then generating the interface and type library once the control is written. When creating Active Forms, the interface and type library are created at the same time as your form, and then you use the form designer to implement the form.

The completed ActiveX control consists of a VCL control that provides the underlying implementation, a COM object that wraps the VCL control, and a type library that lists the COM object's properties, methods, and events.

To create a new ActiveX control (other than an Active Form), perform the following steps:

- 1 Design and create the custom VCL control that forms the basis of your ActiveX control.
- 2 Use the ActiveX control wizard to create an ActiveX control from the VCL control you created in step 1.
- 3 Use the ActiveX property page wizard to create one or more property pages for the control (optional).
- 4 Associate the property page with the ActiveX control (optional).
- 5 Register the control.
- 6 Test the control with all potential target applications.
- 7 Deploy the ActiveX control on the Web. (optional)

To create a new Active Form, perform the following steps:

- 1 Use the ActiveForm wizard to create an Active Form, which appears as a blank form in the IDE, and an associated ActiveX wrapper for that form.
- 2 Use the form designer to add components to your Active Form and implement its behavior in the same way you create and implement an ordinary form using the form designer.
- 3 Follow steps 3-7 above to give your Active Form a property page, register it, and deploy it on the Web.

Elements of an ActiveX control

An ActiveX control involves many elements which each perform a specific function. The elements include a VCL control, a corresponding COM object wrapper that exposes properties, methods, and events, and one or more associated type libraries.

VCL control

The underlying implementation of an ActiveX control in C++Builder is a VCL control. When you create an ActiveX control, you must first design or choose the VCL control from which you will make your ActiveX control.

The underlying VCL control must be a descendant of *TWinControl*, because it must have a window that can be parented by the host application. When you create an Active form, this object is a descendant of *TActiveForm*.

Note The ActiveX control wizard lists the available *TWinControl* descendants from which you can choose to make an ActiveX control. This list does not include all *TWinControl* descendants, however. Some controls, such as *THeaderControl*, are registered as incompatible with ActiveX (using the *RegisterNonActiveX* procedure) and do not appear in the list.

ActiveX wrapper

The actual COM object is an ActiveX wrapper object for the VCL control. It has a name of the form *TVCLClassXImpl*, where *TVCLClass* is the name of the VCL control class. Thus, for example, the ActiveX wrapper for *TButton* would be named *TButtonXImpl*.

The wrapper class descends from the classes declared by the *VCLCONTROL_IMPL* macro, which provide support for the ActiveX interfaces. The ActiveX wrapper inherits this support, which allows it to forward Windows messages to the VCL control and parent its window in the host application.

The ActiveX wrapper exposes the VCL control's properties and methods to clients via its default interface. The wizard automatically implements most of the wrapper class's properties and methods, delegating method calls to the underlying VCL control. The wizard also provides the wrapper class with methods that fire the VCL control's events on clients and assigns these methods as event handlers on the VCL control.

Type library

The ActiveX control wizards automatically generate a type library that contains the type definitions for the wrapper class, its default interface, and any type definitions that these require. This type information provides a way for your control to advertise its services to host applications. You can view and edit this information using the Type Library editor. Although this information is stored in a separate, binary type library file (.TLB extension), it is also automatically compiled into the ActiveX control DLL as a resource.

Property page

You can optionally give your ActiveX control a property page. The property page allows the user of a host (client) application to view and edit your control's properties. You can group several properties on a page, or use a page to provide a dialog-like interface for a property. For information on how to create property pages, see "Creating a property page for an ActiveX control" on page 43-13.

Designing an ActiveX control

When designing an ActiveX control, you start by creating a custom VCL control. This forms the basis of your ActiveX control. For information on creating custom controls, see Part V, “Creating custom components.”

When designing the VCL control, keep in mind that it will be embedded in another application; this control is not an application in itself. For this reason, you probably do not want to use elaborate dialog boxes or other major user-interface components. Your goal is typically to make a simple control that works inside of, and follows the rules of the main application.

In addition, you should make sure that the types for all properties and methods you want your object to expose to clients are Automation-compatible, because the ActiveX control’s interface must support *IDispatch*. The wizard does not add any methods to the wrapper class’s interface that have parameters that are not Automation-compatible. For a list of Automation-compatible types, see “Valid types” on page 39-11.

The wizards implement all the necessary ActiveX interfaces required using the COM wrapper class. They also surface all Automation-compatible properties, methods, and events through the wrapper class’s default interface. Once the wizard has generated the COM wrapper class and its interface, you can use the Type Library editor to modify the default interface or augment the wrapper class by implementing additional interfaces.

Generating an ActiveX control from a VCL control

To generate an ActiveX control from a VCL control, use the ActiveX Control wizard. The properties, methods, and events of the VCL control become the properties, methods, and events of the ActiveX control.

Before using the ActiveX control wizard, you must decide what VCL control will provide the underlying implementation of the generated ActiveX control.

To bring up the ActiveX control wizard,

- 1 Choose File | New | Other to open the New Items dialog box.
- 2 Select the tab labeled ActiveX.
- 3 Double-click the ActiveX Control icon.

In the wizard, select the name of the VCL control that will be wrapped by the new ActiveX control. The dialog lists all available controls, which are descendants of *TWinControl* that are not registered as incompatible with ActiveX using the *RegisterNonActiveX* procedure.

Tip If you do not see the control you want in the drop-down list, check whether you have installed it in the IDE or added its unit to your project.

Once you have selected a VCL control, the wizard automatically generates a name for the CoClass, the implementation unit for the ActiveX wrapper, and the ActiveX

library project. (If you currently have an ActiveX library project open, and it does not contain a COM+ event object, the current project is automatically used.) You can change any of these in the wizard (unless you have an ActiveX library project already open, in which case the project name is not editable).

The wizard always specifies Apartment as the threading model. This is not a problem if your ActiveX project usually contains only a single control. However, if you add additional objects to your project, you are responsible for providing thread support.

The wizard also lets you configure various options on your ActiveX control:

- **Enabling licensing:** You can make your control licensed to ensure that users of the control can't open it either for design purposes or at runtime unless they have a license key for the control.
- **Including Version information:** You can include version information, such as a copyright or a file description, in the ActiveX control. This information can be viewed in a browser. Some host clients, such as Visual Basic 4.0, require Version information or they will not host the ActiveX control. Specify version information by choosing Project | Options and selecting the Version Info page.
- **Including an About box:** You can tell the wizard to generate a separate form that implements an About box for your control. Users of the host application can display this About box in a development environment. By default, the About box includes the name of the ActiveX control, an image, copyright information, and an OK button. You can modify this default form, which the wizard adds to your project.

When you exit the wizard, it generates the following:

- An ActiveX Library project file, which contains the code required to start an ActiveX control. You usually don't change this file.
- A type library, which defines and CoClass for your control, the interface it exposes to clients, and any type definitions that these require. For more information about the type library, refer to Chapter 39, "Working with type libraries."
- An ActiveX implementation unit, which defines and implements the ActiveX control, which is adapted to the Microsoft Active Template Library (ATL) using the `VCLCONTROL_IMPL` macro. This ActiveX control is a fully-functioning implementation that requires no additional work on your part. However, you can modify this class if you want to customize the properties, methods, and events that the ActiveX control exposes to clients.
- An ATL unit, which has a name of the form *ActiveXControlProj_ATL.cpp (.h)*, where *ActiveXControlProj* is the name of the project. This unit mostly consists of include statements that make the ATL template classes available to your project and define classes that allow your generated ActiveX wrapper to work with a VCL object. It also declares the global variable called `_Module`, which represents the ActiveX library to the ATL classes.
- An About box form and unit if you requested them.
- A .LIC file if you enabled licensing.

Generating an ActiveX control based on a VCL form

Unlike other ActiveX controls, Active Forms are not first designed and then wrapped by an ActiveX wrapper class. Instead, the ActiveForm wizard generates a blank form that you design later when the wizard leaves you in the Form Designer.

When an ActiveForm is deployed on the Web, C++Builder creates an HTML page to contain the reference to the ActiveForm and specify its location on the page. The ActiveForm can then displayed and run from a Web browser. Inside the browser, the form behaves just like a stand-alone C++Builder form. The form can contain any VCL components or ActiveX controls, including custom-built VCL controls.

To start the ActiveForm wizard,

- 1 Choose File | New | Other to open the New Items dialog box.
- 2 Select the tab labeled ActiveX.
- 3 Double-click the ActiveForm icon.

The Active Form wizard looks just like the ActiveX control wizard, except that you can't specify the name of the VCL class to wrap. This is because Active forms are always based on *TActiveForm*.

As in the ActiveX control wizard, you can change the default names for the CoClass, implementation unit, and ActiveX library project. Similarly, this wizard lets you indicate whether you want your Active Form to require a license, whether it should include version information, and whether you want an About box form.

When you exit the wizard, it generates the following:

- An ActiveX Library project file, which contains the code required to start an ActiveX control. You usually don't change this file.
- A type library, which defines and CoClass for your control, the interface it exposes to clients, and any type definitions that these require. For more information about the type library, refer to Chapter 39, "Working with type libraries."
- A form that descends from *TActiveForm*. This form appears in the form designer, where you can use it to visually design the Active Form that appears to clients. Its implementation appears in the generated implementation unit.
- The declaration of an ActiveX wrapper for the form. This wrapper class is also defined in the implementation unit, and has a name of the form *TActiveFormXImpl*, where *TActiveFormX* is the name of the form class. This ActiveX wrapper is a fully-functioning implementation that requires no additional work on your part. However, you can modify this class if you want to customize the properties, methods, and events that the Active Form exposes to clients.
- An ATL unit, which has a name of the form *ActiveXControlProj_ATL.cpp (.h)*, where *ActiveXControlProj* is the name of the project. This unit mostly consists of include statements that make the ATL template classes available to your project and define classes that allow your generated ActiveX wrapper to work with a VCL form. It also declares the global variable called *_Module*, which represents the ActiveX library to the ATL classes.

- An About box form and unit if you requested them.
- A .LIC file if you enabled licensing.

At this point, you can add controls and design the form as you like.

After you have designed and compiled the ActiveForm project into an ActiveX library (which has the OCX extension), you can deploy the project to your Web server and C++Builder creates a test HTML page with a reference to the ActiveForm.

Licensing ActiveX controls

Licensing an ActiveX control consists of providing a license key at design-time and supporting the creation of licenses dynamically for controls created at runtime.

To provide design-time licenses, the ActiveX wizard creates a key for the control, which it stores in a file with the same name as the project with the LIC extension. This .LIC file is added to the project. The user of the control must have a copy of the .LIC file to open the control in a development environment. Each control in the project that has Make Control Licensed checked has a separate key entry in the LIC file.

To support runtime licenses, the wrapper class implements two methods, *GetLicenseString* and *GetLicenseFilename*. These return the license string for the control and the name of the .LIC file, respectively. When a host application tries to create the ActiveX control, the class factory for the control calls these methods and compares the string returned by *GetLicenseString* with the string stored in the .LIC file.

Runtime licenses for the Internet Explorer require an extra level of indirection because users can view HTML source code for any Web page, and because an ActiveX control is copied to the user's computer before it is displayed. To create runtime licenses for controls used in Internet Explorer, you must first generate a license package file (LPK file) and embed this file in the HTML page that contains the control. The LPK file is essentially an array of ActiveX control CLSIDs and license keys.

Note To generate the LPK file, use the utility, LPK_TOOL.EXE, which you can download from the Microsoft Web site (www.microsoft.com).

To embed the LPK file in a Web page, use the HTML objects, <OBJECT> and <PARAM> as follows:

```
<OBJECT CLASSID="clsid:6980CB99-f75D-84cf-B254-55CA55A69452">
  <PARAM NAME="LPKPath" VALUE="ctrllic.lpk">
</OBJECT>
```

The CLSID identifies the object as a license package and PARAM specifies the relative location of the license package file with respect to the HTML page.

When Internet Explorer tries to display the Web page containing the control, it parses the LPK file, extracts the license key, and if the license key matches the control's license (returned by *GetLicenseString*), it renders the control on the page. If more than one LPK is included in a Web page, Internet Explorer ignores all but the first.

For more information, look for Licensing ActiveX Controls on the Microsoft Web site.

Customizing the ActiveX control's interface

The ActiveX Control and ActiveForm wizards generate a default interface for the ActiveX wrapper class. This default interface simply exposes the properties, methods, and events of the original VCL control or form, with the following exceptions:

- Data-aware properties do not appear. Because ActiveX controls have a different mechanism for making controls data-aware than VCL controls, the wizards do not convert properties related to data. See “Enabling simple data binding with the type library” on page 43-11 for information on how to make your ActiveX control data-aware.
- Any property, method, or event that type that is not Automation-compatible does not appear. You may want to add these to the ActiveX control's interface after the wizard has finished.

You can add, edit, and remove the properties, methods, and events in an ActiveX control by editing the type library using the Type Library editor as described in Chapter 39, “Working with type libraries.”

Note You can add unpublished properties to your ActiveX control's interface. Such properties can be set at runtime and will appear in a development environment, but changes made to them will not persist. That is, when the user of the control changes the value of a property at design time, the changes are not reflected when the control is run. This is because ActiveX controls use the VCL streaming system rather than the ATL streaming system. If the source is a VCL object and the property is not already published, you can make properties persistent by creating a descendant of the VCL object and publishing the property in the descendant.

You may also choose not to expose all of the VCL control's properties, methods, and events to host applications. You can use the Type Library editor to remove these from the interfaces that the wizard generated. When you remove properties and methods from an interface using the Type Library editor, the Type Library editor does not remove them from the corresponding implementation class. Edit the ActiveX wrapper class in the implementation unit to remove these after you have changed the interface in the Type Library editor.

Warning Any changes you make to the type library will be lost if you regenerate the ActiveX control from the original VCL control or form.

Tip It is a good idea to check the methods that the wizard adds to your ActiveX wrapper class. Not only does this give you a chance to note where the wizard omitted any data-aware properties or methods that were not Automation-compatible, it also lets you detect methods for which the wizard could not generate an implementation. Such methods appear with a comment in the implementation that indicates the problem.

Adding additional properties, methods, and events

Adding properties and methods to your ActiveX control's interface works the same way as adding properties, methods, and events to any COM interface. Adding events is the same as adding methods (event handlers), except that you add them to the Events interface rather than the object's default interface. Using the type library to add properties and events is described in "Defining a COM object's interface" on page 41-9.

When you add to an ActiveX control's interface, you are often just surfacing a property, method, or event in the underlying VCL control. The following topics describe how to do this.

Adding properties and methods

The ActiveX wrapper class implements properties in its interface using read and write access methods. That is, the wrapper class has COM properties, which appear on an interface as getter and/or setter methods. Unlike VCL properties, you do not see a "property" declaration on the interface for COM properties. Rather, you see methods that are flagged as property access methods. When you add a property to the ActiveX control's default interface, the wrapper class definition (which appears in the _TLB unit that is updated by the Type Library editor) gains one or two new methods (a getter and/or setter) that you must implement, just as when you add a method to the interface, the wrapper class gains a corresponding method for you to implement. Thus, adding properties to the wrapper class's interface is essentially the same as adding methods: the wrapper class definition gains new skeletal method implementations for you to complete.

Note For details on what appears in the generated _TLB unit, see "Code generated when you import type library information" on page 40-5.

For example, consider a *Caption* property, of type *AnsiString* in the underlying VCL object. When you add this property in the Type Library editor, C++Builder adds the following declarations to the wrapper class:

```
STDMETHOD(get_Caption(BSTR* Value));
STDMETHOD(set_Caption(BSTR Value));
```

In addition, it adds skeletal method implementations for you to complete:

```
STDMETHODIMP TButtonXImpl::get_Caption(BSTR* Value)
{
    try
    {
    }
    catch(Exception &e)
    {
        return Error(e.Message.c_str(), IID_IButtonX);
    }
    return S_OK;
};
```

```
STDMETHODIMP TButtonXImpl::set_Caption(BSTR Value)
{
    try
    {
    }
    catch(Exception &e)
    {
        return Error(e.Message.c_str(), IID_IButtonX);
    }
    return S_OK;
};
```

Typically, you can implement these methods by simply delegating to the associated VCL control, which can be accessed using the *m_VclCtl* member of the wrapper class:

```
STDMETHODIMP TButtonXImpl::get_Caption(BSTR* Value)
{
    try
    {
        *Value = WideString(m_VclCtl->Caption).Copy();
    }
    catch(Exception &e)
    {
        return Error(e.Message.c_str(), IID_IButtonX);
    }
    return S_OK;
};

STDMETHODIMP TButtonXImpl::set_Caption(BSTR Value)
{
    try
    {
        m_VclCtl->Caption = AnsiString(Value);
    }
    catch(Exception &e)
    {
        return Error(e.Message.c_str(), IID_IButtonX);
    }
    return S_OK;
};
```

In some cases, you may need to add code to convert the COM data types to native C++ types. The preceding example manages this with typecasting.

Adding events

The ActiveX control can fire events to its container in the same way that an automation object fires events to clients. This mechanism is described in “Exposing events to clients” on page 41-10.

If the VCL control you are using as the basis of your ActiveX control has any published events, the wizards automatically add the necessary support for managing a list of client event sinks to your ActiveX wrapper class and define the outgoing dispinterface that clients must implement to respond to events.

In order to fire events to the container, your ActiveX wrapper class must implement an event handler for the event on the VCL object. This event handler calls the *Fire_EventName* method that is implemented by the *TEvents_CoClassName* class defined in the *_TLB* unit:

```
void __fastcall TButtonXImpl::KeyPressEvent(TObject *Sender, char &Key)
{
    short TempKey;
    TempKey = (short)Key;
    Fire_OnKeyPress(&TempKey);
    Key = (short)TempKey;
};
```

You must then assign this event handler to the VCL control so that it is called when the event occurs. To do this, add the event to the *InitializeControl* method, which appears in the wrapper class's declaration (in the header of the implementation unit):

```
void InitializeControl()
{
    m_VclCtl->OnClick = ClickEvent;
    m_VclCtl->OnKeyPress = KeyPressEvent;
}
```

Enabling simple data binding with the type library

With simple data binding, you can bind a property of your ActiveX control to a field in a database. To do this, the ActiveX control must communicate with its host application about what value represents field data and when it changes. You enable this communication by setting the property's binding flags using the Type Library editor.

By marking a property bindable, when a user modifies the property (such as a field in a database), the control notifies its container (the client host application) that the value has changed and requests that the database record be updated. The container interacts with the database and then notifies the control whether it succeeded or failed to update the record.

Note The container application that hosts your ActiveX control is responsible for connecting the data-aware properties you enable in the type library to the database. See "Using data-aware ActiveX controls" on page 40-8 for information on how to write such a container using C++Builder.

Use the type library to enable simple data binding.

- 1 On the toolbar, click the property that you want to bind.
- 2 Choose the flags page.

3 Select the following binding attributes:

| Binding attribute | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| Bindable | Indicates that the property supports data binding. If marked bindable, the property notifies its container when the property value has changed. |
| Request Edit | Indicates that the property supports the <code>OnRequestEdit</code> notification. This allows the control to ask the container if its value can be edited by the user. |
| Display Bindable | Indicates that the container can show users that this property is bindable. |
| Default Bindable | Indicates the single, bindable property that best represents the object. Properties that have the default bind attribute must also have the bindable attribute. Cannot be specified on more than one property in a dispinterface. |
| Immediate Bindable | Allows individual bindable properties on a form to specify this behavior. When this bit is set, all changes will be notified. The bindable and request edit attribute bits need to be set for this new bit to have an effect. |

4 Click the Refresh button on the toolbar to update the type library.

To test a data-binding control, you must register it first.

For example, to convert a *TEdit* control into a data-bound ActiveX control, create the ActiveX control from a *TEdit* and then change the Text property flags to Bindable, Display Bindable, Default Bindable, and Immediate Bindable.

To enable editing of data in the ActiveX wrapper, it must ask its container if its value can be changed before allowing edits. To do this, it calls its *FireOnRequestEdit*, which it inherits from the *TVclComControl* base class, when the VCL control receives key press messages from the user. The ActiveX wrapper already assigns an *OnKeyPress* event handler to the VCL control. This is modified to look like the following:

```
void __fastcall TMyAwareEditImpl::KeyPressEvent(TObject *Sender, char &Key)
{
    signed_char TempKey;
    const DISPID dispid = -517; // this is the dispatch id of the data-bound property

    if (FireOnRequestEdit(dispid) == S_FALSE) // ask container if edits ok?
    {
        Key = 0; // if edits not ok, cancel the keypress message
        return;
    }
    TempKey = (signed_char)Key;
    Fire_OnKeyPress(&TempKey); // this forwards the OnKeyPress event to fire in the container
    Key = (signed_char)TempKey;
};
```

The ActiveX wrapper also needs to notify the container when the data changes. To do this, it calls its *FireOnChanged* method (inherited from *TVclComControl*) when the edit control's value changes. *FireOnChanged* notifies the control that something is different. When data in the control is edited, the container can put the associated

dataset into edit mode. *FireOnChanged* also enables real-time modification of field data. The following code shows the modified *OnChange* event handler:

```
void __fastcall TMyAwareEditImpl::ChangeEvent(TObject *Sender)
{
    const DISPID dispid = -517; // the dispath id of the data-bound property
    FireOnChanged(dispid); // add this line to inform the container of changes
    Fire_OnChange(); // this was the original call to fire the event in the container
};
```

After the control is registered and imported, it can be used to display data.

Creating a property page for an ActiveX control

A property page is a dialog box similar to the C++Builder Object Inspector in which users can change the properties of an ActiveX control. A property page dialog allows you to group many properties for a control together to be edited at once. Or, you can provide a dialog box for more complex properties.

Typically, users access the property page by right-clicking the ActiveX control and choosing Properties.

The process of creating a property page is similar to creating a form, you

- 1 Create a new property page.
- 2 Add controls to the property page.
- 3 Associate the controls on the property page with the properties of an ActiveX control.
- 4 Connect the property page to the ActiveX control.

Note When adding properties to an ActiveX control or ActiveForm, you must publish the properties that you want to persist. If they are not published in the underlying VCL control, you must make a custom descendant of the VCL control that redeclares the properties as published and then use the ActiveX control wizard to create an ActiveX control from the descendant class.

Creating a new property page

You use the Property Page wizard to create a new property page.

To create a new property page,

- 1 Choose File | New | Other.
- 2 Select the ActiveX tab.
- 3 Double-click the Property Page icon.

The wizard creates a new form and implementation unit for the property page. The form is a descendant of *TPropertyPage*, which lets you associate the form with the ActiveX control whose properties it edits. In addition, the implementation unit declares an implementation object (using the `PROPERTYPAGE_IMPL` macro). This

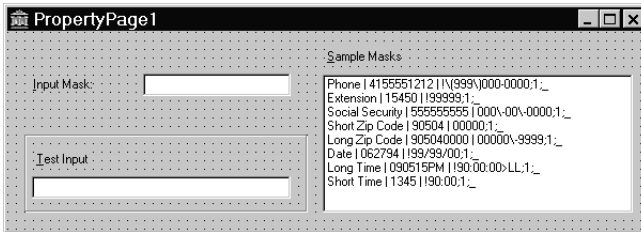
implementation object implements the property page interfaces, passing appropriate calls to the form.

Adding controls to a property page

You must add a control to the property page for each property of the ActiveX control that you want the user to access.

For example, the following illustration shows a property page for setting the MaskEdit property of an ActiveX control.

Figure 43.1 Mask Edit property page in design mode



The list box allows the user to select from a list of sample masks. The edit controls allow the user to test the mask before applying it to the ActiveX control. You add controls to the property page the same as you would to a form.

Associating property page controls with ActiveX control properties

After adding the controls you need to the property page, you must associate each control with its corresponding property. You make this association by adding code to the property page's *UpdatePropertyPage* and *UpdateObject* methods.

Updating the property page

Add code to the *UpdatePropertyPage* method to update the control on the property page when the properties of the ActiveX control change. You must add code to the *UpdatePropertyPage* method to update the property page with the current values of the ActiveX control's properties.

You can access the ActiveX control using the property page's *OleObject* property, which is an *OleVariant* that contains the ActiveX control's interface.

For example, the following code updates the property page's edit control (InputMask) with the current value of the ActiveX control's *EditMask* property:

```
void __fastcall TPropertyPage1::UpdatePropertyPage(void)
{
    InputMask->Text = OleObject.OlePropertyGet("EditMask");
}
```


Note It is also possible to write a property page that represents more than one ActiveX control. In this case, you don't use the *OleObject* property. Instead, you must iterate through a list of interfaces that is maintained by the *OleObjects* property.

Updating the object

Add code to the *UpdateObject* method to update the property when the user changes the controls on the property page. You must add code to the *UpdateObject* method in order to set the properties of the ActiveX control to their new values.

Once again you use the *OleObject* property to access the ActiveX control.

For example, the following code sets the *EditMask* property of the ActiveX control using the value in the property page's edit box control (InputMask):

```
void __fastcall TPropertyPage1::UpdateObject(void)
{
    // Update OleObject from your control
    OleObject.OlePropertySet<WideString>("EditMask", WideString(InputMast->Text).Copy());
}
```

Connecting a property page to an ActiveX control

To connect a property page to an ActiveX control,

- 1 Between the BEGIN_PROPERTY_MAP and END_PROPERTY_MAP statements in the ActiveX control's implementation unit, add a PROP_PAGE macro call, passing it the property page's GUID. (The GUID is defined in the property page's implementation unit; it is generated automatically by the Property Page wizard.)

For example, if the GUID for the property page is defined as CLSID_PropertyPage1 (the default), then the property map section for an ActiveX control based on a VCL form should look like this:

```
BEGIN_PROPERTY_MAP(TActiveFormXImpl)
    // Define property pages here. Property pages are defined using
    // the PROP_PAGE macro with the class id of the page. For example,
    // PROP_PAGE(CLSID_ActiveFormXPage)
    PROP_PAGE(CLSID_PropertyPage1)
END_PROPERTY_MAP()
```

- 2 Include the property page unit in the ActiveX control's unit.

Registering an ActiveX control

After you have created your ActiveX control, you must register it so that other applications can find and use it.

To register an ActiveX control:

- Choose Run | Register ActiveX Server.

Note Before you remove an ActiveX control from your system, you should unregister it.

To unregister an ActiveX control:

- Choose Run | Unregister ActiveX Server.

As an alternative, you can use the **regsvr** command from the command line or run the regsvr32.exe from the operating system.

Testing an ActiveX control

To test your control, add it to a package and import it as an ActiveX control. This procedure adds the ActiveX control to the C++Builder component palette. You can drop the control on a form and test as needed.

Your control should also be tested in all target applications that will use the control.

To debug the ActiveX control, select Run | Parameters and type the client name in the Host Application edit box.

The parameters then apply to the host application. Selecting Run | Run will run the host or client application and allow you to set breakpoints in the control.

Deploying an ActiveX control on the Web

Before the ActiveX controls that you create can be used by Web clients, they must be deployed on your Web server. Every time you make a change to the ActiveX control, you must recompile and redeploy it so that client applications can see the changes.

Before you can deploy your ActiveX control, you must have a Web Server that will respond to client messages.

To deploy your ActiveX control, use the following steps:

- 1 Select Project | Web Deployment Options.
- 2 On the Project page, set the Target Dir to the location of the ActiveX control DLL as a path on the Web server. This can be a local path name or a UNC path, for example, C:\INETPUB\wwwroot.
- 3 Set the Target URL to the location as a Uniform Resource Locators (URL) of the ActiveX control DLL (without the file name) on your Web Server, for example, <http://mymachine.inprise.com/>. See the documentation for your Web Server for more information on how to do this.
- 4 Set the HTML Dir to the location (as a path) where the HTML file that contains a reference to the ActiveX control should be placed, for example, C:\INETPUB\wwwroot. This path can be a standard path name or a UNC path.
- 5 Set desired Web deployment options as described in “Setting options” on page 43-17.
- 6 Choose OK.
- 7 Choose Project | Web Deploy.

This creates a deployment code base that contains the ActiveX control in an ActiveX library (with the OCX extension). Depending on the options you specify, this deployment code base can also contain a cabinet (with the CAB extension) or information (with the INF extension).

The ActiveX library is placed in the Target Directory you specified in step 2. The HTML file has the same name as the project file but with the HTM extension. It is created in the HTML Directory specified in step 4. The HTML file contains a URL reference to the ActiveX library at the location specified in step 3.

Note If you want to put these files on your Web server, use an external utility such as ftp.

8 Invoke your ActiveX-enabled Web browser and view the created HTML page.

When this HTML page is viewed in the Web browser, your form or control is displayed and runs as an embedded application within the browser. That is, the library runs in the same process as the browser application.

Setting options

Before deploying an ActiveX control, specify the Web deployment options that should be followed when creating the ActiveX library.

Web deployment options include settings to allow you to set the following:

- **Including additional files:** If your ActiveX control depends on any packages or other additional files, you can indicate that these should be deployed with the project. By default, these files use the same options that you specify for the entire project, but you can override these settings using the Packages or Additional files tab. When you include packages or additional files, C++Builder creates a file with the .INF extension (for INformation). This file specifies the various files that need to be downloaded and set up for the ActiveX library to run. The syntax of the INF file allows URLs pointing to packages or additional files to download.
- **CAB file compression:** A cabinet is a single file, usually with a CAB file extension, that stores compressed files in a file library. Cabinet compression can dramatically decrease download time (up to 70%) of a file. During installation, the browser decompresses the files stored in a cabinet and copies them to the user's system. Each file that you deploy can be CAB file compressed. You can specify that the ActiveX library use CAB file compression on the Project tab of the Web Deployment options dialog.
- **Version information:** You can specify that you want version information included with your ActiveX control. This information is set in the VersionInfo page of the Project Options dialog. Part of this information is the release number, which you can have automatically updated every time you deploy your ActiveX control. If you include additional packages or files, their Version information resources can get added to the INF file as well.

Depending on whether you include additional files and whether you use CAB file compression, the resulting ActiveX library may be an OCX file, a CAB file containing an OCX file, or an INF file. The following table summarizes the results of choosing different combinations.

| Packages and/or additional files | CAB file compression | Result |
|----------------------------------|----------------------|---|
| No | No | An ActiveX library (OCX) file. |
| No | Yes | A CAB file containing an ActiveX library file. |
| Yes | No | An INF file, an ActiveX library file, and any additional files and packages. |
| Yes | Yes | An INF file, a CAB file containing an ActiveX library, and a CAB file each for any additional files and packages. |

Creating MTS or COM+ objects

C++Builder uses the term transactional objects to refer to objects that take advantage of the transaction services, security, and resource management supplied by Microsoft Transaction Server (MTS) (for versions of Windows prior to Windows 2000) or COM+ (for Windows 2000 and later). These objects are designed to work in a large, distributed environment. They are not available for use in cross-platform applications due to their dependence on Windows-specific technology.

C++Builder provides a wizard that creates transactional objects so that you can take advantage of the benefits of COM+ attributes or the MTS environment. These features make creating COM clients and servers, particularly remote servers, easier to implement.

Note For database applications, C++Builder also provides a Transactional Data Module. For more information, see Chapter 29, “Creating multi-tiered applications.”

Transactional objects make use of a number of low-level services, such as

- Managing system resources, including processes, threads, and database connections so that your server application can handle many simultaneous users
- Automatically initiating and controlling transactions so that your application is reliable.
- Creating, executing, and deleting server components when needed.
- Providing role-based security so that only authorized users can access your application.
- Managing events so that clients can respond to conditions that arise on the server (COM+ only).

By letting MTS or COM+ provide these underlying services, you can concentrate on developing the specifics for your particular distributed application. Which technology you choose (MTS or COM+) depends on the server on which you choose to run your application. To clients, the difference between the two (or, for that matter, the fact that the server object uses any of these services) is transparent (unless the client explicitly manipulates transactional services via a special interface).

Understanding transactional objects

Typically, transactional objects are small, and are used for discrete business functions. They can implement an application's business rules, providing views and transformations of the application state. Consider, for example, the case of a medical application. Medical records stored in various databases represent the persistent state of the application, such as a patient's health history. Transactional objects update that state to reflect such changes as new patients, test results, and X-ray files.

Transactional objects are distinguished from other COM objects in that they use a set of attributes supplied by MTS or COM+ for handling issues that arise in a distributed computing environment. Some of these attributes require the transactional object to implement the *IObjectControl* interface. *IObjectControl* defines methods that are called when the object is activated or deactivated, where you can manage resources such as database connections. It also is required for object pooling, which is described in "Object pooling" on page 44-9.

Note If you are using MTS, your transactional objects must implement *IObjectControl*. Under COM+, *IObjectControl* is not required, but is highly recommended. The Transactional Object wizard provides an object that derives from *IObjectControl*.

A client of a transactional object is called a **base client**. From a base client's perspective, a transactional object looks like any other COM object.

Under MTS, the transactional object must be built into a library (DLL), which is then installed in the MTS runtime environment (the MTS executive, *mtxex.exe*). That is, the server object runs in the MTS runtime process space. The MTS executive can be running in the same process as the base client, as a separate process on the same machine as the base client, or as a remote server process on a separate machine.

Under COM+, the server application need not be an in-process server. Because the various services are integrated into the COM libraries, there is no need for a separate MTS process to intercept calls to the server. Instead, COM itself (or, rather, COM+) provides the resource management, transaction support, and so on. However, the server application must still be installed, this time into a COM+ application.

The connection between the base client and the transactional object is handled by a proxy on the client and a stub on the server, just as with any out-of-process server. Connection information is maintained by the proxy. The connection between the base client and proxy remains open as long as the client requires a connection to the server, so it appears to the client that it has continued access to the server. In reality, though, the proxy may deactivate and reactivate the object, conserving resources so that other clients may use the connection. For details on activating and deactivating, see "Just-in-time activation" on page 44-4.

Requirements for a transactional object

In addition to the COM requirements, a transactional object must meet the following requirements:

- The object must have a standard class factory. This is automatically supplied by the wizard when you create the object.
- The server must expose its class object by exporting the standard *DllGetClassObject* method. Code to do this is supplied by the wizard.
- All object interfaces and CoClasses must be described by a type library, which is created automatically by the wizard. You can add methods and properties to interfaces in the type library by using the Type Library editor. The information in the type library is used by the MTS Explorer or COM+ Component Manager to extract information about the installed components at runtime.
- The server must only export interfaces that use standard COM marshaling. This is automatically supplied by the Transactional Object wizard. C++Builder's support of transactional objects does not allow manual marshaling for custom interfaces. All interfaces must be implemented as dual interfaces that use COM's automatic marshaling support.
- The server must export the *DllRegisterServer* function and perform self-registration of its CLSID, ProgID, interfaces, and type library in this routine. This is provided by the Transactional Object wizard.

When using MTS rather than COM+, the following conditions apply as well:

- MTS requires that the server be a dynamic-link library (DLL). Servers that are implemented as executable files (.EXE files) cannot execute in the MTS runtime environment.
- The object must implement the *IObjectControl* interface. Support for this interface is automatically added by the Transactional Object wizard.
- A server running in the MTS process space cannot aggregate with COM objects not running in MTS.

Managing resources

Transactional objects can be administered to better manage the resources used by your application. These resources include everything from the memory for the object instances themselves to any resources they use (such as database connections).

In general, you configure how your application manages resources by the way you install and configure your object. You set your transactional object so that it takes advantage of the following:

- Just-in-time activation
- Resource pooling
- Object pooling (COM+ only)

If you want your object to take full advantage of these services, however, it must use the *IObjectContext* interface to indicate when resources can safely be released.

Accessing the object context

As with any COM object, a transactional object must be created before it is used. COM clients create an object by calling the COM library function, *CoCreateInstance*.

Each transactional object must have a corresponding context object. This context object is implemented automatically by MTS or COM+ and is used to manage the transactional object. The context object's interface is *IObjectContext*. Transactional objects created by the Transactional object wizard automatically fetch the object context when they are activated. The object context is stored in a member variable called `m_spObjectContext`. For example, you can use the object context pointer as follows:

```
BOOL flags;
m_spObjectContext->IsCallerInRole(OLESTR("Manager"), &flags);
```

You can also obtain a pointer to the object context by calling the *GetObjectContext* method of *TMtsDll*. The *TMtsDll* object adapts your call to fetch the object context so that it work whether your application runs under MTS or COM+:

```
IObjectContext* IAmWatchingYou = NULL;
TMtsDll MTSDLL;
HRESULT hr = MTSDLL.GetObjectContext(&IAmWatchingYou);
if (! (SUCCEEDED(hr)) )
{
    // do something useful with the error
}

BOOL flags;
IAmWatchingYou->IsCallerInRole(OLESTR("Manager"), &flags);
```

Warning Use the *GetObjectContext* method of *TMtsDll* rather than the *GetObjectContext* macro defined in `comsvcs.h`. The latter is undefined by VCL headers to avoid redefining the *GetObjectContext* method of *TDatabase*.

Note The `m_spObjectContext` member is assigned using the *TMtsDll* method, so it works under both MTS and COM+.

Just-in-time activation

The ability for an object to be deactivated and reactivated while clients hold references to it is called **just-in-time activation**. From the client's perspective, only a single instance of the object exists from the time the client creates it to the time it is finally released. Actually, it is possible that the object has been deactivated and reactivated many times. By having objects deactivated, clients can hold references to the object for an extended time without affecting system resources. When an object is deactivated, all its resources can be released. For example, when an object is deactivated, it can release its database connection so that other objects can use it.

A transactional object is created in a deactivated state and becomes active upon receiving a client request. When the transactional object is created, a corresponding context object is also created. This context object exists for the entire lifetime of the transactional object, across one or more reactivation cycles. The context object,

accessed by the *IObjectContext* interface, keeps track of the object during deactivation and coordinates transactions.

Transactional objects are deactivated as soon as it is safe to do so. This is called **as-soon-as-possible deactivation**. A transactional object is deactivated when any of the following occurs:

- **The object requests deactivation with *SetComplete* or *SetAbort*:** An object calls the *IObjectContext* *SetComplete* method when it has successfully completed its work and it does not need to save the internal object state for the next call from the client. An object calls *SetAbort* to indicate that it cannot successfully complete its work and its object state does not need to be saved. That is, the object's state rolls back to the state prior to the current transaction. Often, objects can be designed to be **stateless**, which means that objects deactivate upon return from every method.
- **A transaction is committed or aborted:** When an object's transaction is committed or aborted, the object is deactivated. Of these deactivated objects, the only ones that continue to exist are the ones that have references from clients outside the transaction. Subsequent calls to these objects reactivate them and cause them to execute in a new transaction.
- **The last client releases the object:** Of course, when a client releases the object, the object is deactivated, and the object context is also released.

Note If you install the transactional object under COM+ from the IDE, you can specify whether object supports just-in-time activation using the COM+ page of the Type Library editor. Just select the object (CoClass) in the Type Library editor, go to the COM+ page, and check or uncheck the box for Just In Time Activation. Otherwise, a system administrator specifies this attribute using the COM+ Component Manager or MTS Explorer. (The system administrator can also override any settings you specify using the Type Library editor.)

Resource pooling

Since idle system resources are freed during a deactivation, the freed resources are available to other server objects. For example, a database connection that is no longer used by a server object can be reused by another client. This is called **resource pooling**. Pooled resources are managed by a resource dispenser.

A resource dispenser caches resources, so that transactional objects that are installed together can share them. The resource dispenser also manages nondurable shared state information. In this way, resource dispensers are similar to resource managers such as the SQL Server, but without the guarantee of durability.

When writing your transactional object, you can take advantage of two types of resource dispenser that are provided for you already:

- Database resource dispensers
- Shared Property Manager

Before other objects can use pooled resources, you must explicitly release them.

Database resource dispensers

Opening and closing connections to a database can be time-consuming. By using a resource dispenser to pool database connections, your object can reuse existing database connections rather than create new ones. For example, if you have a database lookup and a database update component running in a customer maintenance application, you can install those components together, and then they can share database connections. In this way, your application does not need as many connections and new object instances can access the data more quickly by using a connection that is already open but not in use.

- If you are using BDE components to connect to your data, the resource dispenser is the Borland Database Engine (BDE). This resource dispenser is only available when your transactional object is installed with MTS. To enable the resource dispenser, use the BDE administrator to turn on MTS POOLING in the System/Init area of the configuration.
- If you are using the ADO database components to connect to your data, the resource dispenser is provided by ADO.

Note There is no built-in resource pooling if you are using InterbaseExpress components for your database access.

For remote transactional data modules, connections are automatically enlisted on an object's transactions, and the resource dispenser can automatically reclaim and reuse connections.

Shared property manager

The Shared Property Manager is a resource dispenser that you can use to share state among multiple objects within a server process. By using the Shared Property Manager, you avoid having to add a lot of code to your application for managing shared data: the Shared Property Manager handles it for you by implementing locks and semaphores to protect shared properties from simultaneous access. The Shared Property Manager eliminates name collisions by providing **shared property groups**, which establish unique name spaces for the shared properties they contain.

To use the Shared Property Manager resource, you first use the *CreateSharedPropertyGroup* helper function to create a shared property group. Then you can write all the properties to that group and read all the properties from that group. By using a shared property group, the state information is saved across all deactivations of a transactional object. In addition, state information can be shared among all transactional objects installed in the same MTS package or COM+ application. You can install transactional objects into a package as described in "Installing transactional objects" on page 44-27.

For objects to share state, they all must run in the same process. If you want instances of different components to share properties, you must install them in the same MTS package or COM+ application. Because there is a risk that administrators may move components from one package to another, it's safest to limit the use of a shared property group to instances of objects that are defined in the same DLL or EXE.

Objects sharing properties must have the same activation attribute. If two components in the same package have different activation attributes, they generally

won't be able to share properties. For example, if one component is configured to run in a client's process and the other is configured to run in a server process, their objects will usually run in different processes, even though they're in the same MTS package or COM+ application.

The following example shows how to add code to support the Shared Property Manager in a transactional object:

Example: Sharing properties among transactional object instances

This example creates a property group called MyGroup to contain the properties to be shared among objects and object instances. In this example, there is a Counter property that is shared. It uses the *CreateSharedPropertyGroup* helper function to create the property group manager and property group, and then uses the *CreateProperty* method of the Group object to create a property called Counter.

To get the value of a property, you use the *PropertyByName* method of the Group object as shown below. You can also use the *PropertyByPosition* method.

```
#include "Project1_TLB.H"
#define _MTX_NOFORCE_LIBS
#include <vc1\mtshlp.h>

class ATL_NO_VTABLE TSharedPropertyExampleImpl :
public CComObjectRootEx<CComSingleThreadModel>,
public CComCoClass<TSharedPropertyExampleImpl, &CLSID_SharedPropertyExample>,
public IObjectControl,
public IDispatchImpl<ISharedPropertyExample, &IID_ISharedPropertyExample, &LIBID_Project1>
{
private:
    ISharedPropertyGroupManager* manager;
    ISharedPropertyGroup* PG13;
    ISharedProperty* Counter;
public:
    TSharedPropertyExampleImpl()
    {
    }
    DECLARE_THREADING_MODEL(otApartment);
    DECLARE_PROGID("Project1.SharedPropertyExample");
    DECLARE_DESCRIPTION("");

static HRESULT WINAPI UpdateRegistry(BOOL bRegister)
{
    TTypedComServerRegistrarT<TSharedPropertyExampleImpl>
    regObj(GetObjectCLSID(), GetProgID(), GetDescription());
    return regObj.UpdateRegistry(bRegister);
}

DECLARE_NOT_AGGREGATABLE(TSharedPropertyExampleImpl)

BEGIN_COM_MAP(TSharedPropertyExampleImpl)
    COM_INTERFACE_ENTRY(ISharedPropertyExample)
    COM_INTERFACE_ENTRY(IObjectControl)
    COM_INTERFACE_ENTRY(IDispatch)
END_COM_MAP()

public:
```

Managing resources

```
    STDMETHODCALLTYPE Activate();
    STDMETHODCALLTYPE IncrementCounter();
    STDMETHODCALLTYPE (BOOL, CanBePooled)();
    STDMETHODCALLTYPE (void, Deactivate)();

CComPtr<IObjectContext> m_spObjectContext;

public:
};

// SHAREDPROPERTYEXAMPLEIMPL : Implementation of TSharedPropertyExampleImpl

#include <vc1.h>
#pragma hdrstop

#include "SHAREDPROPERTYEXAMPLEIMPL.H"

STDMETHODIMP TSharedPropertyExampleImpl::Activate()
{
    static TMTsDll Mts;
    HRESULT hr = E_FAIL;
    hr = Mts.Get_ObjectContext(&m_spObjectContext);
    if (SUCCEEDED(hr))
    {
        VARIANT_BOOL _false = VARIANT_FALSE;
        VARIANT_BOOL _true = VARIANT_TRUE;
        CoCreateInstance( CLSID_SharedPropertyGroupManager, NULL, CLSCTX_INPROC_SERVER,
                        IID_ISharedPropertyGroupManager, (void**)manager);
        manager->CreatePropertyGroup(L"Test Group", LockSetGet, Standard, &_false, &PG13);
        if ( (PG13->CreateProperty(L"Counter", &_true, &Counter)) == S_OK)
        {
            Counter->put_Value(TVariant(0));
        }
        return S_OK;
    }
    return hr;
}

STDMETHODIMP_(BOOL) TSharedPropertyExampleImpl::CanBePooled()
{
    return FALSE;
}

STDMETHODIMP_(void) TSharedPropertyExampleImpl::Deactivate()
{
    PG13->Release();
    manager->Release();
    m_spObjectContext.Release();
}

STDMETHODIMP TSharedPropertyExampleImpl::IncrementCounter()
{
    try
    {
        TVariant temp;
        Counter->get_Value(&temp);
        temp=(int)temp+1;;
        Counter->put_Value(temp);
    }
}
```

```

    }
    catch(Exception &e)
    {
        return Error(e.Message.c_str(), IID_ISharedPropertyExample);
    }
    return S_OK;
};

```

Releasing resources

You are responsible for releasing resources of an object. Typically, you do this by calling the *IObjectContext* methods *SetComplete* and *SetAbort* after servicing a client request. These methods release the resources allocated by the resource dispenser.

At this same time, you must release references to all other resources, including references to other objects (including transactional objects and context objects) and memory held by any instances of the component (freeing the component).

The only time you would not include these calls is if you want to maintain state between client calls. For details, see “Stateful and stateless objects” on page 44-12.

Object pooling

Just as you can pool resources, under COM+ you can also pool objects. When an object is deactivated, COM+ calls the *IObjectControl* interface method, *CanBePooled*, which indicates that the object can be pooled for reuse. If *CanBePooled* returns **true**, then instead of being destroyed on deactivation, the object is moved to the object pool. It remains in the object pool for a specified time-out period, during which time it is available for use to any client requesting it. Only when the object pool is empty is a new instance of the object created. Objects that return **false** or that do not support the *IObjectControl* interface are destroyed when they are deactivated.

Object pooling is not available under MTS. MTS calls *CanBePooled* as described, but no pooling takes place. Because of this, when the wizard creates transactional objects the generated *CanBePooled* method always returns **false**. If your object will only run under COM+ and you want to allow object pooling, locate this method in the implementation unit and edit it so that it returns **true**.

Even if an object’s *CanBePooled* method returns **true**, it can be configured so that COM+ does not move it to the object pool. If you install the transactional object under COM+ from the IDE, you can specify whether COM+ tries to pool the object using the COM+ page of the Type Library editor. Just select the object (CoClass) in the type library editor, go to the COM+ page, and check or uncheck the box for Object Pooling. Otherwise, a system administrator specifies this attribute using the COM+ Component Manager or MTS Explorer.

Similarly, you can configure the time a deactivated object remains in the object pool before it is freed. If you are installing from the IDE, you can specify this duration using the Creation Timeout setting on the COM+ page of the type library editor. Otherwise, a system administrator specifies this attribute using the COM+ Component Manager.

MTS and COM+ transaction support

The transaction support that gives transactional objects their name lets you group actions into transactions. For example, in a medical records application, if you had a Transfer component to transfer records from one physician to another, you could include your Add and Delete methods in the same transaction. That way, either the entire Transfer works or it can be rolled back to its previous state. Transactions simplify error recovery for applications that must access *multiple* databases.

Transactions ensure that

- All updates in a single transaction are either committed or get aborted and rolled back to their previous state. This is referred to as **atomicity**.
- A transaction is a correct transformation of the system state, preserving the state invariants. This is referred to as **consistency**.
- Concurrent transactions do not see each other's partial and uncommitted results, which might create inconsistencies in the application state. This is referred to as **isolation**. Resource managers use transaction-based synchronization protocols to isolate the uncommitted work of active transactions.
- Committed updates to managed resources (such as database records) survive failures, including communication failures, process failures, and server system failures. This is referred to as **durability**. Transactional logging allows you to recover the durable state after disk media failures.

An object's associated context object indicates whether the object is executing within a transaction and, if so, the identity of the transaction. When an object is part of a transaction, the services that resource managers and resource dispensers perform on its behalf execute under the transaction as well. Resource dispensers use the context object to provide transaction-based services. For example, when an object executing within a transaction allocates a database connection by using the ADO or BDE resource dispenser, the connection is automatically enlisted on the transaction. All database updates using this connection become part of the transaction, and are either committed or aborted.

Work from multiple objects can be composed into a single transaction. Allowing an object to either live in its own transaction or be part of a larger group of objects that belong to a single transaction is a major advantage of MTS and COM+. It allows an object to be used in various ways, so that application developers can reuse application code in different applications without rewriting the application logic. In fact, developers can determine how objects are used in transactions when installing the transactional object. They can change the transaction behavior simply by adding an object to a different MTS package or COM+ application. For details about installing transactional objects, see "Installing transactional objects" on page 44-27.

Transaction attributes

Every transactional object has a transaction attribute that is recorded in the MTS catalog or that is registered with COM+.

C++Builder lets you set the transaction attribute at design time using the Transactional Object wizard or the Type Library editor.

Each transaction attribute can be set to these settings:

| | |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| Requires a transaction | Objects must execute <i>within the scope of a transaction</i> . When a new object is created, its object context inherits the transaction from the context of the client. If the client does not have a transaction context, a new one is automatically created. |
| Requires a new transaction | Objects must execute <i>within their own transactions</i> . When a new object is created, a new transaction is automatically created for the object, regardless of whether its client has a transaction. An object never runs inside the scope of its client's transaction. Instead, the system always creates independent transactions for the new objects. |
| Supports transactions | Objects can execute <i>within the scope of their client's transactions</i> . When a new object is created, its object context inherits the transaction from the context of the client. This enables multiple objects to be composed in a single transaction. If the client does not have a transaction, the new context is also created without one. |
| Transactions Ignored | Objects <i>do not run within the scope of transactions</i> . When a new object is created, its object context is created without a transaction, regardless of whether the client has a transaction. This setting is only available under COM+. |
| Does not support transactions | The meaning of this setting varies, depending on whether you install the object under MTS or COM+. Under MTS, this setting has the same meaning as Transactions Ignored under COM+. Under COM+, not only is the object context created without a transaction, this setting prevents the object from being activated if the client has a transaction. |

Setting the transaction attribute

You can set a transaction attribute when you first create a transactional object using the Transactional Object wizard.

You can also set (or change) the transaction attribute using the Type Library editor. To change the transaction attribute in the Type Library editor,

- 1 Choose View | Type Library to open the Type Library editor.
- 2 Select the class corresponding to the transactional object.
- 3 Click the COM+ tab and choose the desired transaction attribute.

Warning When you set the transaction attribute, C++Builder inserts a special GUID for the specified attribute as custom data in the type library. This value is not recognized outside of C++Builder. Therefore, it only has an effect if you install the transactional object from the IDE. Otherwise, a system administrator must set this value using the MTS Explorer or COM+ Component Manager.

Note: If the transactional object is already installed, you must first uninstall the object and reinstall it when changing the transaction attribute. Use Run | Install MTS objects or Run | Install COM+ objects to do so.

Stateful and stateless objects

Like any COM object, transactional objects can maintain internal state across multiple interactions with a client. For example, the client could set a property value in one call, and expect that property value to remain unchanged when it makes the next call. Such an object is said to be **stateful**. Transactional objects can also be **stateless**, which means the object does not hold any intermediate state while waiting for the next call from a client.

When a transaction is committed or aborted, all objects that are involved in the transaction are deactivated, causing them to lose any state they acquired during the course of the transaction. This helps ensure transaction isolation and database consistency; it also frees server resources for use in other transactions. Completing a transaction enables the resources held by an object to be reclaimed when the object is deactivated. See the following section for information on how to control when the object's state is released.

Maintaining state on an object requires the object to remain activated, holding potentially valuable resources such as database connections.

Influencing how transactions end

A transactional object uses the *IObjectContext* methods as shown in the following table to influence how a transaction completes. These methods, together with the object's transaction attribute, allow you to enlist one or more objects into a single transaction.

Table 44.1 IObjectContext methods for transaction support

| Method | Description |
|-------------|--|
| SetComplete | Indicates that the object has successfully completed its work for the transaction. The object is deactivated upon return from the method that first entered the context. The object reactivates on the next call that requires object execution. |
| SetAbort | Indicates that the object's work can never be committed and the transaction should be rolled back. The object is deactivated upon return from the method that first entered the context. The object reactivates on the next call that requires object execution. |

Table 44.1ObjectContext methods for transaction support (continued)

| Method | Description |
|---------------|---|
| EnableCommit | <p>Indicates that the object's work is not necessarily done, but that its transactional updates can be committed in their current form. Use this to retain state across multiple calls from a client while still allowing transactions to complete. The object is not deactivated until it calls SetComplete or SetAbort.</p> <p>EnableCommit is the default state when an object is activated. This is why an object should <i>always call SetComplete or SetAbort before returning from a method</i>, unless you want the object to maintain its internal state for the next call from a client.</p> |
| DisableCommit | <p>Indicates that the object's work is inconsistent and that it cannot complete its work until it receives further method invocations from the client. Call this before returning control to the client to maintain state across multiple client calls while keeping the current transaction active.</p> <p>DisableCommit prevents the object from deactivating and releasing its resources on return from a method call. Once an object has called DisableCommit, if a client attempts to commit the transaction before the object has called EnableCommit or SetComplete, the transaction will abort.</p> |

Initiating transactions

Transactions can be controlled in three ways:

- They can be controlled by the client.

Clients can have direct control over transactions by using a transaction context object (using the *ITransactionContext* interface).

- They can be controlled by the server.

Servers can control transactions explicitly creating an object context for them. When the server creates an object this way, the created object is automatically enlisted in the current transaction.

- Transactions can occur automatically as a result of the object's transaction attribute.

Transactional objects can be declared so that their objects always execute within a transaction, regardless of how the objects are created. This way, objects do not need to include any logic to handle transactions. This feature also reduces the burden on client applications. Clients do not need to initiate a transaction simply because the component that they are using requires it.

Setting up a transaction object on the client side

A client-based application can control transaction context through the *ITransactionContextEx* interface. The following code example shows how a client application uses *CreateTransactionContextEx* to create the transaction context. This method returns an interface to this object.

```
#include <vcl\mtshlpr.h>

int main(int argc, char* argv[])
{
    // first, create a transactional object. [requires COM+ or local installation of MTS]
    TCOMITransactionClientExample first_client = CoTransactionClientExample::Create();

    //then, check to see if it's in a transaction.

    ITransactionContext* TCTX;
    HRESULT happily_transacting = first_client->QueryInterface(IID_ITransactionContext,
        (void**)&TCTX);

    // if it is in a transaction, you can do your data access calls from here
    // and then call Commit or Abort yourself instead of waiting for the
    // transactional object to do so.

    if (happily_transacting)
    {
        TVariant database = "name";
        TVariant record = "data";
        TVariant flag;
        first_client.UpdateData(&database, &record, &flag);
        flag ? TCTX->Commit() : TCTX->Abort();
    }
    else
    {
        // otherwise, you can create a transaction:
        ITransactionContextEx* TXCTX = CreateTransactionContextEx();

        // and an object. any objects you create in this fashion
        // will be enlisted in the transaction represented by this object.

        TCOMITransactionClientExample* second_client;
        TXCTX->CreateInstance(CLSID_TransactionClientExample, IID_ITransactionClientExample,
            (void**)&second_client);

        // and then perform your data access and commit or abort.

        TVariant database = "name";
        TVariant record = "data";
        TVariant flag;
        second_client->UpdateData(&database, &record, &flag);
        flag ? TXCTX->Commit() : TXCTX->Abort();
    }
    return 0;
}
```

Setting up a transaction object on the server side

To control transaction context from the server side, you create an instance of *ObjectContext*. In the following example, the Transfer method is in the transactional object. In using *ObjectContext* this way, the instance of the object we are creating will inherit all the transaction attributes of the object that creates it.

```

#include <vc1\mtshlpr.h>

STDMETHODIMP TTransactionServerExampleImpl::DoTransactionContext(long execflag)
{
    if (m_spObjectContext->IsInTransaction())
    {
        // this means the current object has a transaction, and can pass
        // its transaction information to its children.
        // for simplicity, this object simply creates another object of its
        // own type, within the same transaction.
        // NOTE: you are still responsible for aggregating, if appropriate;

        if (execflag)
        {
            TCOMITransactionServerExample* inner;
            m_spObjectContext->CreateInstance(CLSID_TransactionServerExample,
                                           IID_ITransactionServerExample, (void**)&inner);
            inner->DoTransactionContext(false);

            // add data access code here. data_access_succeeded() below is
            // an unimplemented placeholder.

            data_access_succeeded() ? m_spObjectContext->EnableCommit()
                                   : m_spObjectContext->DisableCommit();
        }
    }
    else
    {
        //this means the current object has no transaction, and must
        //create one the way a client would.

        ITransactionContextEx* TCTX = CreateTransactionContextEx();
        TCOMITransactionServerExample* inner;

        // afterwards, follow the same steps.

        TCTX->CreateInstance(CLSID_TransactionServerExample,
                           IID_ITransactionServerExample, (void**)&inner);
        inner->DoTransactionContext(true);

        // add data access code here. data_access_succeeded() below is
        // an unimplemented placeholder.
        data_access_succeeded() ? TCTX->Commit() : TCTX->Abort();
    }
}

```

Transaction time-out

The transaction time-out sets how long (in seconds) a transaction can remain active. The system automatically aborts transactions that are still alive after the time-out. By default, the time-out value is 60 seconds. You can disable transaction time-outs by specifying a value of 0, which is useful when debugging transactional objects.

To set the time-out value on your computer,

- 1 In the MTS Explorer or COM+ Component Manager, select Computer, My Computer.

By default, My Computer corresponds to the local computer.

- 2 Right-click and choose Properties and then choose the Options tab.

The Options tab is used to set the computer's transaction time-out property.

- 3 Change the time-out value to 0 to disable transaction time-outs.
- 4 Click OK to save the setting.

For more information on debugging MTS applications, see “Debugging and testing transactional objects” on page 44-26.

Role-based security

MTS and COM+ provide role-based security where you assign a role to a logical group of users. For example, a medical information application might define roles for Physician, X-ray technician, and Patient.

You define authorization for each object and interface by assigning roles. For example, in the physicians' medical application, only the Physician may be authorized to view all medical records; the X-ray Technician may view only X-rays; and Patients may view only their own medical record.

Typically, you define roles during application development and assign roles for each MTS package or COM+ Application. These roles are then assigned to specific users when the application is deployed. Administrators can configure the roles using the MTS Explorer or COM+ Component Manager.

If you want to control access to blocks of code rather than entire objects, you can provide more fine-grained security by using the *IObjectContext* method, *IsCallerInRole*. This method only works if security is enabled, which can be checked by calling the *IObjectContext* method *IsSecurityEnabled*. For example,

```
if (m_spObjectContext.IsSecurityEnabled()) // check if security is enabled
{
    if (!m_spObjectContext.IsCallerInRole("Physician")) // check caller's role
    { // If not a physician, do something appropriate here.
    }
    else
    { // execute the call normally
    }
}
else // no security enabled
{ // do something appropriate
}
```

Note For applications that require stronger security, context objects implement the *ISecurityProperty* interface, whose methods allow retrieval of the Window's security identifier (SID) for the direct caller and creator of the object, as well as the SID for the clients which are using the object.

Overview of creating transactional objects

The process of creating transactional object is as follows:

- 1 Use the Transactional Object wizard to create the transactional object.
- 2 Add methods and properties to the object's interface using the Type Library editor. For details on adding methods and properties using the Type Library editor, see Chapter 39, "Working with type libraries."
- 3 When implementing your object's methods, you can use the *IObjectContext* interface to manage transactions, persistent state, and security. In addition, if you are passing object references, you will need to use extra care so that they are correctly handled. (See "Passing object references" on page 24.)
- 4 Debug and test the transactional object.
- 5 Install the transactional object into an MTS package or COM+ application.
- 6 Administer your objects using the MTS Explorer or COM+ Component Manager.

Using the Transactional Object wizard

Use the Transactional Object wizard to create a COM object that can take advantage of the resource management, transaction processing, and role-based security provided by MTS or COM+.

To bring up the Transactional Object wizard,

- 1 Choose File | New | Other.
- 2 Select the tab labeled ActiveX.
- 3 Double-click the Transactional Object icon.

In the wizard, you must specify the following:

- A threading model that indicates how client applications can call your object's interface. The threading model determines how the object is registered. You are responsible for ensuring that the object's implementation adheres to the selected model. For more information on threading models, see "Choosing a threading model for a transactional object" on page 44-18.
- A transaction model
- An indication of whether your object notifies clients of events. Event support is only provided for traditional events, not COM+ events.

When you complete this procedure, a new unit is added to the current project that contains the definition for the transactional object. In addition, the wizard adds a type library to the project and opens it in the Type Library editor. Now you can expose the properties and methods of the interface through the type library. You define the interface as you would define any COM object as described in "Defining a COM object's interface" on page 41-9.

The transactional object implements a **dual interface**, which supports both early (compile-time) binding through the vtable and late (runtime) binding through the *IDispatch* interface.

The generated transactional object implements the *IObjectControl* interface methods, *Activate*, *Deactivate*, and *CanBePooled*.

It is not strictly necessary to use the transactional object wizard. You can convert any Automation object into a COM+ transactional object (and any in-process Automation object into an MTS transactional object) by using the COM+ page of the Type Library editor and then installing the object into an MTS package or COM+ application. However, the transactional object wizard provides certain benefits:

- It automatically implements the *IObjectControl* interface, adding *OnActivate* and *OnDeactivate* events to the object so that you can create event handlers that respond when the object is activated or deactivated.
- It automatically generates an *m_spObjectContext* member so that it is easy for your object to access the *IObjectContext* methods to control activation and transactions.

Choosing a threading model for a transactional object

The MTS runtime environment or COM+ manages threads for you. Transactional objects should not create threads. They must also never terminate a thread that calls into a DLL.

When you specify the threading model using the Transactional object wizard, you specify how objects are assigned to threads for method execution.

Table 44.2 Threading models for transactional objects

| Threading model | Description | Implementation pros and cons |
|-----------------|---|--|
| Single | No thread support. Client requests are serialized by the calling mechanism. All objects of a single-threaded component execute on the main thread. This is compatible with the default COM threading model, which is used for components that do not have a Threading Model Registry attribute or for COM components that are not reentrant. Method execution is serialized across all objects in the component and across all components in a process. | Allows components to use libraries that are not reentrant. Very limited scalability. Single-threaded, stateful components are prone to deadlocks. You can eliminate this problem by using stateless objects and calling <i>SetComplete</i> before returning from any method. |

Table 44.2 Threading models for transactional objects (continued)

| Threading model | Description | Implementation pros and cons |
|--|--|---|
| Apartment (or Single-threaded apartment) | Each object is assigned to a thread apartment, which lasts for the life of the object; however, multiple threads can be used for multiple objects. This is a standard COM concurrency model. Each apartment is tied to a specific thread and has a Windows message pump. | Provides significant concurrency improvements over the single threading model. Two objects can execute concurrently as long as they are not in the same activity. Similar to a COM apartment, except that the objects can be distributed across multiple processes. |
| Both | Same as Apartment, except that callbacks to clients are serialized. | Same advantages as Apartment. In addition, this model is required if you want to use Object Pooling. |

Note These threading models are similar to those defined by COM objects. However, because the MTS and COM+ provide more underlying support for threads, the meaning of each threading model differs here. Also, the free threading model does not apply to transactional objects due to the built-in support for activities.

Activities

In addition to the threading model, transactional objects achieve concurrency through **activities**. Activities are recorded in an object's context, and the association between an object and an activity cannot be changed. An activity includes the transactional object created by the base client, as well as any transactional objects created by that object and its descendants. These objects can be distributed across one or more processes, executing on one or more computers.

For example, a physician's medical application may have a transactional object to add updates and remove records to various medical databases, each represented by a different object. This record object may use other objects as well, such as a receipt object to record the transaction. This results in several transactional objects that are either directly or indirectly under the control of a base client. These objects all belong to the same activity.

MTS or COM+ tracks the flow of execution through each activity, preventing inadvertent parallelism from corrupting the application state. This feature results in a single logical thread of execution throughout a potentially distributed collection of objects. By having one logical thread, applications are significantly easier to write.

When a transactional object is created from an existing context, using either a transaction context object or an object context, the new object becomes a member of the same activity. In other words, the new context inherits the activity identifier of the context used to create it.

Only a single logical thread of execution is allowed within an activity. This is similar in behavior to a COM apartment threading model, except that the objects can be distributed across multiple processes. When a base client calls into an activity, all

other requests for work in the activity (such as from another client thread) are blocked until after the initial thread of execution returns back to the client.

Under MTS, every transactional object belongs to one activity. Under COM+, you can configure the way the object participates in activities by setting the **call synchronization**. The following options are available:

Table 44.3 Call synchronization options

| Option | Meaning |
|---------------|---|
| Disabled | COM+ does not assign activities to the object but it may inherit them with the caller's context. If the caller has no transaction or object context, the object is not assigned to an activity. The result is the same as if the object was not installed in a COM+ application. This option should not be used if any object in the application uses a resource manager or if the object supports transactions or just-in-time activation. |
| Not Supported | COM+ never assigns the object to an activity, regardless of the status of its caller. This option should not be used if any object in the application uses a resource manager or if the object supports transactions or just-in-time activation. |
| Supported | COM+ assigns the object to the same activity as its caller. If the caller does not belong to an activity, the object does not either. This option should not be used if any object in the application uses a resource manager or if the object supports transactions or just-in-time activation. |
| Required | COM+ always assigns the object to an activity, creating one if necessary. This option must be used if the transaction attribute is Supported or Required. |
| Requires New | COM+ always assigns the object to a new activity, which is distinct from its caller's. |

Generating events under COM+

Many COM-based technologies, such as the ActiveX scripting engine and ActiveX controls, use event sinks and COM's connection point interfaces to generate events. Event sinks and connection points are examples of a tightly coupled event model. In such a model, applications that generate events (called publishers in COM+ terminology, and sinks in previous COM terminology) are aware of those applications that respond to events (called subscribers), and vice versa. The lifetime of publishers and subscribers coincides; they must be active at the same time. The collection of subscribers, and the mechanism that notifies them when events occur, must be maintained and implemented in the publisher.

COM+ introduces a new system for managing events. Instead of burdening each publisher with the management and notification of each subscriber, the underlying system (COM+) steps in and takes over this process. The COM+ Events model is loosely coupled, allowing publishers and subscribers to be developed, deployed, and activated independently of each other.

Although the COM+ event model greatly simplifies communication between publishers and subscribers, it also introduces some additional administrative tasks to manage the new layer of software that now exists between them. Information on events and subscribers is maintained in a part of the COM+ Catalog known as the

event store. Tools such as the Component Services manager are used to perform these administrative tasks. The Component Services tool is completely scriptable, allowing much of the administration to be automated. For example, an installation script can perform these tasks during its execution. In addition, the event store can be administered programmatically using the *TComAdminCatalog* object. The COM+ components can also be installed directly from C++Builder, by selecting Run | Install COM+ objects.

As with the tightly coupled event model, an event is simply a method in an interface. Therefore, you must first create an interface for your event methods. You can use C++ Builder's COM+ Event Object wizard to create a project containing a COM+ event object. Then, using the Component Services administrative tool (or *TComAdminCatalog*, or the IDE), create a COM+ application that houses an event class component. When you create the event class component in the COM+ application, you will select your event object. The event class is the glue that COM+ uses to bind the publisher to the list of subscribers.

The interesting thing about a COM+ event object is that it contains no implementation of the event interface. A COM+ event object simply defines the interface that publishers and subscribers will use to communicate. When you create a COM+ event object with C++Builder, you will use the type library editor to define your interface. The interface is implemented when you create a COM+ application and its the event class component. The event class then, contains a reference, and provides access to the implementation provided by COM+. At runtime, the publisher creates an instance of the event class with the usual COM mechanisms (e.g. *CoCreateInstance*). The COM+ implementation of your interface is such that all a publisher has to do is call a method on the interface (through the instance of the event class) to generate an event that will notify all subscribers.

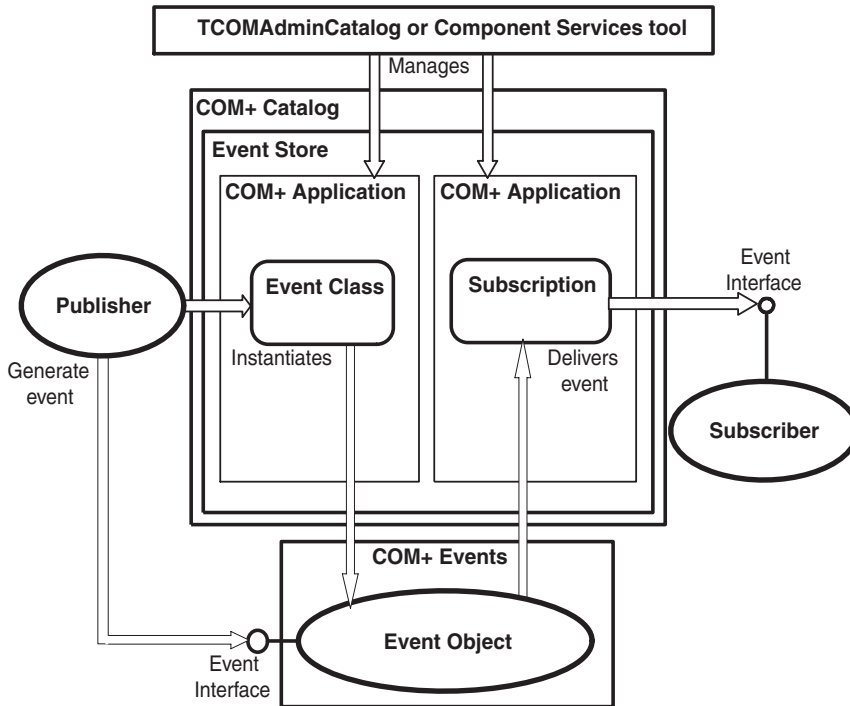
Note A publisher need not be a COM component itself. A publisher is simply any application that creates an instance of the event class, and generates events by calling methods on the event interface.

The subscriber component must also be installed in the COM+ Catalog. Again, this can be done either programmatically with *TComAdminCatalog*, the IDE, or with the Component Services administration tool. The subscriber component can be installed in a separate COM+ application, or it can be installed in the same application used to contain the event class component. After installing the component, a subscription must be created for each event interface supported by the component. After creating the subscription, select those event classes (i.e. publishers) you want the component to listen to. A subscriber component can select individual event classes, or all event classes.

Unlike the COM+ event object, a COM+ subscription object does contain its own implementation of an event interface; this is where the actual work is done to respond to the event when it is generated. C++ Builder's COM+ Event Subscription Object wizard can be used to create a project that contains a subscriber component.

The following figure depicts the interaction between publishers, subscribers, and the COM+ Catalog:

Figure 44.1 The COM+ Events system



Using the Event Object wizard

You can create event objects using the Event Object wizard. The wizard first checks whether the current project contains any implementation code, because projects containing COM+ event objects do not include an implementation. They can only contain event object definitions. (You can, however, include multiple COM+ event objects in a single project.)

To bring up the Event Object wizard,

- 1 Choose File | New | Other.
- 2 Select the tab labeled ActiveX.
- 3 Double-click the COM+ Event Object icon.

In the Event Object wizard, specify the name of the event object, the name of the interface that defines the event handlers, and (optionally) a brief description of the events.

When you exit, the wizard creates a project containing a type library that defines your event object and its interface. Use the Type Library editor to define the methods of that interface. These methods are the event handlers that clients implement to respond to events.

The Event object project includes the project file, `_ATL` unit to import the ATL template classes, and the `_TLB` unit to define the type library information. It does not include an implementation unit, however, because COM+ event objects have no implementation. The implementation of the interface is the responsibility of the client. When your server object calls a COM+ event object, COM+ intercepts the call and dispatches it to registered clients. Because COM+ event objects require no implementation object, all you need to do after defining the object's interface in the Type Library editor is compile the project and install it with COM+

COM+ places certain restrictions on the interfaces of event objects. The interface you define in the Type Library editor for your event object must obey the following rules:

- The event object's interface must derive from `IDispatch`.
- All method names must be unique across all interfaces of the event object.
- All methods on the event object's interface must return an `HRESULT` value.
- The modifier for all parameters of methods must be `[in]`.

Using the COM+ Event Subscription object wizard

You can create the subscriber component using C++Builder's COM+ Subscription Object wizard. To bring up the wizard,

- 1 Choose **File | New | Other**.
- 2 Select the tab labeled **ActiveX**.
- 3 Double-click the **COM+ Subscription Object** icon.

In the wizard dialog, enter the name of the class that will implement the event interface. Choose the threading model from the combo box. In the Interface field, you can type the name of your event interface, or click on the Browse button to bring up a list of all event classes currently installed in the COM+ Catalog. The COM+ Event Interface Selection dialog also contains a browse button. You can use this button to search for and select a type library containing the event interface. When you select an existing event class (or type library), the wizard will give you the option of automatically implementing the interface supported by that event class. If you check the **Implement Existing Interface** checkbox, the wizard will automatically stub out each method in the interface for you. You can elect to have the wizard implement inherited interfaces by checking the **Implement Ancestor Interfaces** checkbox. Three ancestor interfaces are never implemented by the wizard: *IUnknown*, *IDispatch*, and *IAppServer*. To complete the wizard, enter a brief description of your event subscriber component, and click on **OK**.

Firing events using a COM+ event object

To fire an event, a publisher first creates an instance of the event class, with the usual COM mechanisms (e.g. *CoCreateInstance*). Remember, the event class contains its own implementation of the event interface, so, generating an event amounts to simply calling the appropriate method on the interface.

The COM+ Events system takes over from there. Calling an event method causes the system to look up all the subscribers in the COM+ Catalog, and each subscriber is notified. On the subscriber's side, the event appears to be nothing more to a call on the event method.

When a publisher generates an event, subscribers are notified synchronously, one at a time. There is no way to specify the order of notification, nor can you rely on the order being the same each time an event is fired. When an event class is installed in the COM+ Catalog, the administrator can select the *FireInParallel* option to request the event to be delivered using multiple threads. This does not guarantee simultaneous delivery; it is simply a request to the system to permit this to happen.

The value returned to the publisher is an aggregate of all the return codes from each subscriber. There is no direct way for a publisher to find out which subscriber failed. To do so, a publisher must implement a publisher filter. See the Microsoft MSDN documentation for more information on this subject. The following table summarizes the possible return codes:

Table 44.4 Event publisher return codes

| Return Code | Meaning |
|---------------------------------|---|
| S_OK | All subscribers succeeded. |
| EVENT_S_SOME_SUBSCRIBERS_FAILED | Some subscribers either could not be invoked, or returned a failure code (note this is not an error condition). |
| EVENT_E_ALL_SUBSCRIBERS_FAILED | None of the subscribers could be invoked, or all of the subscribers returned a failure code. |
| EVENT_S_NOSUBSCRIBERS | There are no subscriptions in the COM+ Catalog (note this is not an error condition). |

Passing object references

Note Information on passing object references applies only to MTS, not COM+. This mechanism is needed under MTS because it is necessary to ensure that all pointers to objects running under MTS are routed through interceptors. Because interceptors are built into COM+, you do not need to pass object references.

Under MTS, you can pass object references, (for example, for use as a callback) only in the following ways:

- Through return from an object creation interface, such as *CoCreateInstance* (or its equivalent), *ITransactionContext::CreateInstance*, or *IObjectContext::CreateInstance*.
- Through a call to *QueryInterface*.

- Through a method that has called *SafeRef* to obtain the object reference.

An object reference that is obtained in the above ways is called a **safe reference**. Methods invoked using safe references are guaranteed execute within the correct context.

The MTS runtime environment requires calls to use safe references so that it can manage context switches and allows transactional objects to have lifetimes that are independent of client references. Safe references are not necessary under COM+.

Using the SafeRef method

An object can use the *SafeRef* function to obtain a reference to itself that is safe to pass outside its context. This function is available as a method of the *TMtsDll* object, which checks whether your server is running under MTS or COM+ and returns the appropriate pointer accordingly.

SafeRef takes as input

- A reference to the interface ID (RIID) of the interface that the current object wants to pass to another object or client.
- A reference to the current object's IUnknown interface.

SafeRef returns a pointer to the interface specified in the RIID parameter that is safe to pass outside the current object's context. It returns NULL if the object is requesting a safe reference on an object other than itself, or the interface requested in the RIID parameter is not implemented.

When an MTS object wants to pass a self-reference to a client or another object (for example, for use as a callback), it should always call *SafeRef* first and then pass the reference returned by this call. An object should never pass a **self** pointer, or a self-reference obtained through an internal call to *QueryInterface*, to a client or to any other object. Once such a reference is passed outside the object's context, it is no longer a valid reference.

Calling *SafeRef* on a reference that is already safe returns the safe reference unchanged, except that the reference count on the interface is incremented.

When a client calls *QueryInterface* on a reference that is safe, the reference returned to the client is also a safe reference.

An object that obtains a safe reference must release the safe reference when finished with it.

For details on *SafeRef* see the *SafeRef* topic in the Microsoft documentation.

Callbacks

Objects can make callbacks to clients and to other transactional objects. For example, you can have an object that creates another object. The creating object can pass a reference of itself to the created object; the created object can then use this reference to call the creating object.

If you choose to use callbacks, note the following restrictions:

- Calling back to the base client or another package requires access-level security on the client. Additionally, the client must be a DCOM server.
- Intervening firewalls may block calls back to the client.
- Work done on the callback executes in the environment of the object being called. It may be part of the same transaction, a different transaction, or no transaction.
- Under MTS, the creating object must call *SafeRef* and pass the returned reference to the created object in order to call back to itself.

Debugging and testing transactional objects

You can debug local and remote transactional objects. When debugging transactional objects, you may want to turn off transaction time-outs.

The transaction time-out sets how long (in seconds) a transaction can remain active. Transactions that are still alive after the time-out are automatically aborted by the system. By default, the time-out value is 60 seconds. You can disable transaction time-outs by specifying a value of 0, which is useful when debugging.

For information on remote debugging, see the Remote Debugging topic in Online help.

When testing a transactional object that you intend to run under MTS, you may first want to test your object outside the MTS environment to simplify your test environment.

While developing your server, you cannot rebuild the server when it is still in memory. You may get a compiler error like, "Cannot write to DLL while executable is loaded." To avoid this, you can set the MTS package or COM+ application properties to shut down the server when it is idle.

To shut down the server when idle,

- 1 In the MTS Explorer or COM+ Component Manager, right-click the MTS package or COM+ application in which your transactional object is installed and choose Properties.
- 2 Select the Advanced tab.

The Advanced tab determines whether the server process associated with a package always runs, or whether it shuts down after a certain period of time.
- 3 Change the time-out value to 0, which shuts down the server as soon as no longer has a client to service.
- 4 Click OK to save the setting.

Installing transactional objects

MTS applications consist of a group of in-process MTS objects running in a single instance of the MTS executive (EXE). A group of COM objects that all run in the same process is called a **package**. A single machine can be running several different packages, where each package is running within a separate MTS EXE.

Under COM+, you work with a similar group, called a COM+ application. In a **COM+ application**, the objects need not be in-process, and there is no separate runtime environment.

You can group your application components into a single MTS package or COM+ application to be managed by a single process. You might want to distribute your components into different MTS packages or COM+ applications to partition your application across multiple processes or machines.

To install transactional objects into an MTS package or COM+ application,

- 1 If your system supports COM+, choose Run | Install COM+ objects. If your system does not support COM+ but you have MTS installed on your system, choose Run | Install MTS objects. If your system supports neither MTS nor COM+, you will not see a menu item for installing transactional objects.
- 2 In the Install Object dialog box, check the objects to be installed.
- 3 If you are installing MTS objects, click the Package button to get a list of MTS packages on your system. If you are installing COM+ objects, click the Application button. Indicate the MTS package or COM+ application into which you are installing your objects. You can choose Into New Package or Into New Application to create a new MTS package or COM+ application in which to install the object. You can choose Into Existing Package or Into Existing Application to install the object into an existing listed MTS package or COM+ application.
- 4 Choose OK to refresh the catalog, which makes the objects available at runtime.

MTS packages can contain components from multiple DLLs, and components from a single DLL can be installed into different packages. However, a single component cannot be distributed among multiple packages.

Similarly, COM+ applications can contain components from multiple executables and different components from a single executable can be installed into different COM+ applications.

Note You can also install your transactional object using the COM+ Component Manager or MTS Explorer. Be sure when installing the object with one of these tools that you apply the settings for the object that appear on the COM+ page of the Type Library editor. These settings are not applied automatically when you do not install from the IDE.

Administering transactional objects

Once you have installed transactional objects, you can administer these runtime objects using the MTS Explorer (if they are installed into an MTS package) or the COM+ Component Manager (if they are installed into a COM+ application). Both tools are identical, except that the MTS Explorer operates on the MTS runtime environment and the COM+ Component Manager operates on COM+ objects.

The COM+ Component Manager and MTS Explorer have a graphical user interface for managing and deploying transactional objects. Using one of these tools, you can

- Configure transactional objects, MTS packages or COM+ applications, and roles
- View properties of components in an package or COM+ application and view the MTS packages or COM+ applications installed on a computer
- Monitor and manage transactions for objects that comprise transactions
- Move MTS packages or COM+ applications between computers
- Make a remote transactional object available to a local client

For more details on these tools, see the appropriate *Administrator's Guide* from Microsoft.

Creating custom components

The chapters in “Creating custom components” present concepts necessary for designing and implementing custom components in C++Builder.

Overview of component creation

This chapter provides an overview of component design and the process of writing components for C++Builder applications. The material here assumes that you are familiar with C++Builder and its standard components.

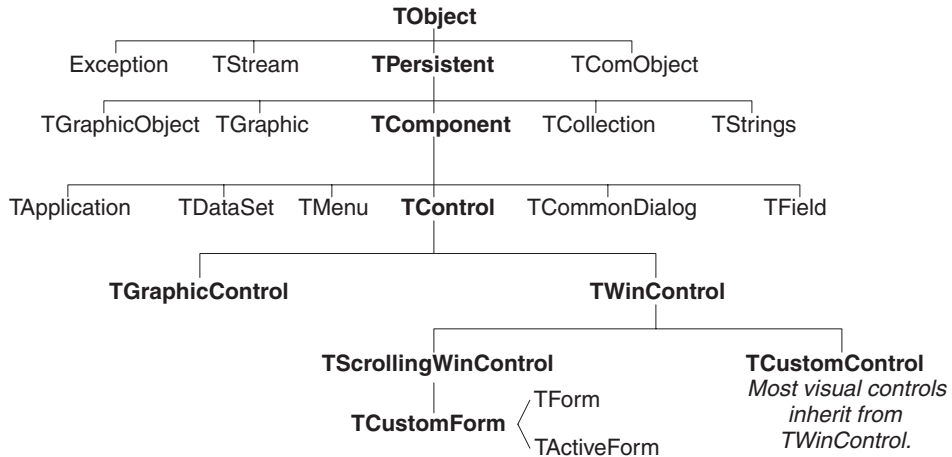
- Class libraries
- Components and classes
- How do you create components?
- What goes into a component?
- Creating a new component
- Testing uninstalled components
- Testing installed components
- Installing a component on the Component palette

For information on installing new components, see “Installing component packages” on page 15-5.

Class libraries

C++Builder’s components reside in two class hierarchies called the Visual Component Library (VCL) and the Component Library for Cross Platform (CLX). Figure 45.1 shows the relationship of selected classes that make up the VCL. The CLX hierarchy is similar to the VCL but Windows controls are called widgets (therefore *TWinControl* is called *TWidgetControl*, for example), and there are other differences. For a more detailed discussion of class hierarchies and the inheritance relationships among classes, see Chapter 46, “Object-oriented programming for component writers.” For an overview of how CLX differs from the VCL, see “CLX versus VCL” on page 14-5 and refer to the CLX online reference for details on the components.

The *TComponent* class is the shared ancestor of every component in the VCL and CLX. *TComponent* provides the minimal properties and events necessary for a component to work in C++Builder. The various branches of the library provide other, more specialized capabilities.

Figure 45.1 Visual Component Library class hierarchy

When you create a component, you add to the VCL or CLX by deriving a new class from one of the existing class types in the hierarchy.

Components and classes

Because components are classes, component writers work with objects at a different level from application developers. Creating new components requires that you derive new classes.

Briefly, there are two main differences between creating components and using them in applications. When creating components,

- You access parts of the class that are inaccessible to application programmers.
- You add new parts (such as properties) to your components.

Because of these differences, you need to be aware of more conventions and think about how application developers will use the components you write.

How do you create components?

A component can be almost any program element that you want to manipulate at design time. Creating a component means deriving a new class from an existing one. You can derive a new component in several ways:

- Modifying existing controls
- Creating windowed controls
- Creating graphic controls
- Subclassing Windows controls
- Creating nonvisual components

Table 45.1 summarizes the different kinds of components and the classes you use as starting points for each.

Table 45.1 Component creation starting points

| To do this | Start with this type |
|--|--|
| Modify an existing component | Any existing component, such as <i>TButton</i> or <i>TListBox</i> , or an abstract component type, such as <i>TCustomListBox</i> |
| Create a windowed (or widget-based in CLX) control | <i>TWinControl</i> (<i>TWidgetControl</i> in CLX) |
| Create a graphic control | <i>TGraphicControl</i> |
| Subclassing a control | Any Windows (VCL) or widget-based (CLX) control |
| Create a nonvisual component | <i>TComponent</i> |

You can also derive classes that are not components and cannot be manipulated on a form, such as *TRegIniFile* and *TFont*.

Modifying existing controls

The simplest way to create a component is to customize an existing one. You can derive a new component from any of the components provided with C++Builder.

Some controls, such as list boxes and grids, come in several variations on a basic theme. In these cases, the VCL and CLX includes an abstract class (with the word “custom” in its name, such as *TCustomGrid*) from which to derive customized versions.

For example, you might want to create a special list box that does not have some of the properties of the standard *TListBox* class. You cannot remove (hide) a property inherited from an ancestor class, so you need to derive your component from something above *TListBox* in the hierarchy. Rather than force you to start from the abstract *TWinControl* (or *TWidgetControl* in CLX) class and reinvent all the list box functions, the VCL or CLX provides *TCustomListBox*, which implements the properties of a list box but does not publish all of them. When you derive a component from an abstract class like *TCustomListBox*, you publish only the properties you want to make available in your component and leave the rest protected.

Chapter 47, “Creating properties,” explains publishing inherited properties. Chapter 53, “Modifying an existing component,” and Chapter 55, “Customizing a grid,” show examples of modifying existing controls.

Creating windowed controls

Windowed controls in the VCL and CLX are objects that appear at runtime and that the user can interact with. Each windowed control has a window handle, accessed through its *Handle* property, that lets the operating system identify and operate on the control. If using VCL controls, the handle allows the control to receive input focus and can be passed to Windows API functions. In CLX, these controls are widget-

based controls. Each widget-based control has a handle, accessed through its *Handle* property, that identifies the underlying widget.

All windowed controls descend from the *TWinControl* (*TWidgetControl* in CLX) class. These include most standard windowed controls, such as pushbuttons, list boxes, and edit boxes. While you could derive an original control (one that's not related to any existing control) directly from *TWinControl* (*TWidgetControl* in CLX), C++Builder provides the *TCustomControl* component for this purpose. *TCustomControl* is a specialized windowed control that makes it easier to draw complex visual images.

Chapter 55, “Customizing a grid,” presents an example of creating a windowed control.

Creating graphic controls

If your control does not need to receive input focus, you can make it a graphic control. Graphic controls are similar to windowed controls, but have no window handles, and therefore consume fewer system resources. Components like *TLabel*, which never receive input focus, are graphic controls. Although these controls cannot receive focus, you can design them to react to mouse messages.

C++Builder supports the creation of custom controls through the *TGraphicControl* component. *TGraphicControl* is an abstract class derived from *TControl*. Although you can derive controls directly from *TControl*, it is better to start from *TGraphicControl*, which provides a canvas to paint on and on Windows, handles *WM_PAINT* messages; all you need to do is override the *Paint* method.

Chapter 54, “Creating a graphic control,” presents an example of creating a graphic control.

Subclassing Windows controls

In traditional Windows programming, you create custom controls by defining a new *window class* and registering it with Windows. The window class (which is similar to the *objects* or *classes* in object-oriented programming) contains information shared among instances of the same sort of control; you can base a new window class on an existing class, which is called *subclassing*. You then put your control in a dynamic-link library (DLL), much like the standard Windows controls, and provide an interface to it.

Using C++Builder, you can create a component “wrapper” around any existing window class. So if you already have a library of custom controls that you want to use in C++Builder applications, you can create C++Builder components that behave like your controls, and derive new controls from them just as you would with any other component.

For examples of the techniques used in subclassing Windows controls, see the components in the *StdCtrls* header file that represent standard Windows controls, such as *TEdit*. For CLX examples, see *QStdCtrls*.

Creating nonvisual components

Nonvisual components are used as interfaces for elements like databases (*TDataSet* or *TSQLConnection*) and system clocks (*TTimer*), and as placeholders for dialog boxes (*TCommonDialog* (VCL) or *TDialog* (CLX) and its descendants). Most of the components you write are likely to be visual controls. Nonvisual components can be derived directly from *TComponent*, the abstract base class for all components.

What goes into a component?

To make your components reliable parts of the C++Builder environment, you need to follow certain conventions in their design. This section discusses the following topics:

- Removing dependencies
- Setting properties, methods, and events
- Encapsulating graphics
- Registering components

Removing dependencies

One quality that makes components usable is the absence of restrictions on what they can do at any point in their code. By their nature, components are incorporated into applications in varying combinations, orders, and contexts. You should design components that function in any situation, without preconditions.

An excellent example of removing dependencies is the *Handle* property of *TWinControl*. If you have written Windows applications before, you know that one of the most difficult and error-prone aspects of getting a program running is making sure that you do not try to access a windowed control until you have created it by calling the *CreateWindow* API function. C++Builder windowed controls relieve users from this concern by ensuring that a valid window handle is always available when needed. By using a property to represent the window handle, the control can check whether the window has been created; if the handle is not valid, the control creates a window and returns the handle. Thus, whenever an application's code accesses the *Handle* property, it is assured of getting a valid handle.

By removing background tasks like creating the window, C++Builder components allow developers to focus on what they really want to do. Before passing a window handle to an API function, there is no need to verify that the handle exists or to create the window. The application developer can assume that things will work, instead of constantly checking for things that might go wrong.

Although it can take time to create components that are free of dependencies, it is generally time well spent. It not only spares you from repetition and drudgery, but it reduces your documentation and support burdens.

Setting properties, methods, and events

Aside from the visible image manipulated in the Form designer, the most obvious attributes of a component are its properties, events, and methods. Each of these has a chapter devoted to it in this book, but the discussion that follows explains some of the motivation for their use.

Properties

Properties give the application developer the illusion of setting or reading the value of a variable, while allowing the component writer to hide the underlying data structure or to implement special processing when the value is accessed.

There are several advantages to using properties:

- Properties are available at design time. The application developer can set or change initial values of properties without having to write code.
- Properties can check values or formats as the application developer assigns them. Validating input at design time prevents errors.
- The component can construct appropriate values on demand. Perhaps the most common type of error programmers make is to reference a variable that has not been initialized. By representing data with a property, you can ensure that a value is always available on demand.
- Properties allow you to hide data under a simple, consistent interface. You can alter the way information is structured in a property without making the change visible to application developers.

Chapter 47, “Creating properties,” explains how to add properties to your components.

Events

An event is a special property that invokes code in response to input or other activity at runtime. Events give the application developer a way to attach specific blocks of code to specific runtime occurrences, such as mouse actions and keystrokes. The code that executes when an event occurs is called an *event handler*.

Events allow application developers to specify responses to different kinds of input without defining new components.

Chapter 48, “Creating events,” explains how to implement standard events and how to define new ones.

Methods

Class methods are functions that operate on a class rather than on specific instances of the class. For example, every component’s constructor method is a class method. Component methods are functions that operate on the component instances themselves. Application developers use methods to direct a component to perform a specific action or return a value not contained by any property.

Because they require execution of code, methods can be called only at runtime. Methods are useful for several reasons:

- Methods encapsulate the functionality of a component in the same object where the data resides.
- Methods can hide complicated procedures under a simple, consistent interface. An application developer can call a component's *AlignControls* method without knowing how the method works or how it differs from the *AlignControls* method in another component.
- Methods allow updating of several properties with a single call.

Chapter 49, "Creating methods," explains how to add methods to your components.

Encapsulating graphics

C++Builder simplifies Windows graphics by encapsulating various graphics tools into a canvas. The canvas represents the drawing surface of a window or control and contains other classes, such as a pen, a brush, and a font. A canvas is like a Windows device context, but it takes care of all the bookkeeping for you.

If you have written a graphical Windows application, you are familiar with the requirements imposed by Windows' graphics device interface (GDI). For example, GDI limits the number of device contexts available and requires that you restore graphic objects to their initial state before destroying them.

With C++Builder, you do not have to worry about these things. To draw on a form or other component, you access the component's *Canvas* property. If you want to customize a pen or brush, you set its color or style. When you finish, C++Builder disposes of the resources. C++Builder caches resources to avoid recreating them if your application frequently uses the same kinds of resource.

You still have full access to the Windows GDI, but you will often find that your code is simpler and runs faster if you use the canvas built into C++Builder components. Graphics features are detailed in Chapter 50, "Using graphics in components."

CLX graphics encapsulation works differently. A canvas is a painter instead. To draw on a form or other component, you access the component's *Canvas* property. *Canvas* is a property and it is also an object called *TCanvas*. *TCanvas* is a wrapper around a Qt painter that is accessible through the *Handle* property. You can use the handle to access low-level Qt graphics library functions.

If you want to customize a pen or brush, you set its color or style. When you finish, C++Builder disposes of the resources. CLX also caches the resources.

You can use the canvas built into CLX components by descending from them. How graphics images work in the component depends on the canvas of the object from which your component descends.

Registering components

Before you can install your components in the C++Builder IDE, you have to register them. Registration tells C++Builder where to place the component on the Component palette. You can also customize the way C++Builder stores your components in the form file. For information on registering a component, see Chapter 52, “Making components available at design time.”

Creating a new component

You can create a new component two ways:

- Creating a component with the Component wizard
- Creating a component manually

You can use either of these methods to create a minimally functional component ready to install on the Component palette. After installing, you can add your new component to a form and test it at both design time and runtime. You can then add more features to the component, update the Component palette, and continue testing.

There are several basic steps that you perform whenever you create a new component. These steps are described below; other examples in this document assume that you know how to perform them.

- 1 Create a unit for the new component.
- 2 Derive your component from an existing component type.
- 3 Add properties, methods, and events.
- 4 Register your component with C++Builder.
- 5 Create a Help file for your component and its properties, methods, and events.

Note Creating a Help file to instruct component users on how to use the component is optional.

- 6 Create a package (a special dynamic-link library) so that you can install your component in the C++Builder IDE.

When you finish, the complete component includes the following files:

- A package (.BPL) or package collection (.PCE) file
- A library (.LIB) for the package
- A Borland import library (.BPI) file for the package
- A compiled unit (.OBJ) file
- A compiled resource (.RES) file for the palette map
- A Help (.HLP) file

You can also create a bitmap to represent your new component. See “Creating a bitmap for a component” on page 45-14.

The chapters in the rest of Part V explain all the aspects of building components and provide several complete examples of writing different kinds of components.

Creating a component with the Component wizard

The Component wizard simplifies the initial stages of creating a component. When you use the Component wizard, you need to specify:

- The class from which it is derived.
- The class name for the new component.
- The Component palette page where you want it to appear.
- The name of the unit in which the component is created.
- The search path where the unit is found.
- The name of the package in which you want to place the component.

The Component wizard performs the same tasks you would when creating a component manually:

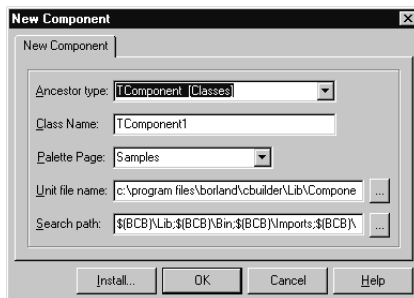
- Creating a unit (a .CPP file and its associated header).
- Deriving the component.
- Declaring a new constructor.
- Registering the component.

The Component wizard cannot add new components to an existing unit (consisting of a .CPP file and an associated header file). If you want to add new components, you must add them to the unit manually.

1 To start the Component wizard, choose one of these two methods:

- Choose Component | New Component.
- Choose File | New | Other and double-click Component.

Figure 45.2 Component wizard



Fill in the fields in the Component wizard:

1 In the Ancestor Type field, specify the class from which you are deriving your new component.

Note

In the drop-down list, many components are listed twice with different unit names, one for VCL and one for CLX. The CLX-specific units begin with Q (such as QGraphics instead of Graphics). Be sure to descend from the correct component.

- 2 In the Class Name field, specify the name of your new component class.
- 3 In the Palette Page field, specify the page on the Component palette on which you want the new component to be installed.
- 4 In the Unit file name field, specify the name of the unit you want the component class declared in.
- 5 If the unit is not on the search path, edit the search path in the Search Path field as necessary.
- 6 To place the component in a new or existing package, click Component | Install and use the dialog box that appears to specify a package.

Warning

If you derive a component from a VCL or CLX class whose name begins with “custom” (such as *TCustomControl*), do not try to place the new component on a form until you have overridden any abstract methods in the original component. C++Builder cannot create instance objects of a class that has abstract properties or methods.

- 7 After you fill in the fields in the Component wizard, choose OK. C++Builder creates a new unit consisting of a .cpp file and an associated header file.

The .cpp file appears in the Code editor. It contains a constructor for the component and the *Register* function that registers the component, informing C++Builder which component to add to the component library and on which page of the Component palette it should appear. The file also contains an include statement that specifies the header file that was created. For example:

```
#include <vcl.h>
#pragma hdrstop
#include "NewComponent.h"
#pragma package(smart_init);
//-----
// ValidCtrCheck is used to assure that the components created do not have
// any pure virtual functions.
//

static inline void ValidCtrCheck(TNewComponent *)
{
    new TNewComponent (NULL);
}
//-----
__fastcall TNewComponent::TNewComponent(TComponent* Owner)
    : TComponent(Owner)
{
}
//-----
namespace Newcomponent
{
    void __fastcall PACKAGE Register()
    {
        TComponentClass classes[1] = {__classid(TNewComponent)};
        RegisterComponents("Samples", classes, 0); //In CLX use a different page than Samples
    }
}
```

CLX Names and locations of some of the header files differ in CLX applications. For example, `<vcl\controls.hpp>` is `<clx\qcontrols.hpp>` in CLX.

To open the header file in the Code editor, place your cursor on the header file name, click your right mouse button to display the context menu, and choose Open File at Cursor on the menu.

The header file contains the new class declaration, including a constructor declaration, and several **#include** statements to support the new class. For example,

```
#ifndef NewComponentH
#define NewComponentH
//-----
#include <SysUtils.hpp>
#include <Controls.hpp>
#include <Classes.hpp>
#include <Forms.hpp>
//-----
class PACKAGE TNewComponent : public TComponent
{
private:
protected:
public:
    __fastcall TNewComponent(TComponent* Owner);
    __published:
};
//-----
#endif
```

Save the .cpp file, with a meaningful name, before proceeding.

Creating a component manually

The easiest way to create a new component is to use the Component wizard. You can, however, perform the same steps manually.

To create a component manually, follow these steps:

- 1 Creating a unit file
- 2 Deriving the component
- 3 Declaring a new constructor
- 4 Registering the component

Creating a unit file

A C++Builder unit is comprised of a .CPP file and a .H file combination that is compiled into an .OBJ file. C++Builder uses units for a number of purposes. Every form has its own unit, and most components (or logical groups of components) have their own units as well.

When you create a component, you either create a new unit for the component or add the new component to an existing unit.

- 1 To create a unit for a component, choose one of these methods:
 - Choose File | New | Unit.
 - Choose File | New | Other to display the New Items dialog box, select Unit, and choose OK.

C++Builder creates a .CPP file and a header file and displays the .CPP file in the Code editor. Save the file with a meaningful name.

- 2 To open the header file, place your cursor on header file name in the Code editor, right-click, and choose Open File at Cursor from the pop-up menu.
- 3 To open an existing unit, choose File | Open and select the source code unit that you want to add your component to.

Note When adding a component to an existing unit, make sure that the unit contains only component code. For example, adding component code to a unit that contains a form causes errors in the Component palette.

- 4 Once you have either a new or existing unit for your component, you can derive the component class.

Deriving the component

Every component is a class derived from *TComponent*, from one of its more specialized descendants (such as *TControl* or *TGraphicControl*), or from an existing component class. “How do you create components?” on page 45-2 describes which class to derive different kinds of components from.

Deriving classes is explained in more detail in the section “Defining new classes” on page 46-1.

To derive a component class, add a class declaration to the header file.

A simple component class is a nonvisual component descended directly from *TComponent*.

To create a simple component class, add the following class declaration to your header file:

```
class PACKAGE TNewComponent : public TComponent
{
};
```

The PACKAGE macro expands to a statement that allows classes to be imported and exported. You should also add the necessary include statements that specify the .HPP files needed by the new component. These are the most common include statements you need:

```
#include <vcl\SysUtils.hpp>
#include <vcl\Controls.hpp>
#include <vcl\Classes.hpp>
#include <vcl\Forms.hpp>
```

So far the new component does nothing different from *TComponent*. You have created a framework on which to build your new component.

Declaring a new constructor

Each new component must have a constructor that overrides the constructor of the class from which it was derived. When you write the constructor for your new component, it must *always* call the inherited constructor.

Within the class declaration, declare a virtual constructor in the public section of the class. You can learn more about the public section in “Controlling access” on page 46-4. For example,

```
class PACKAGE TNewComponent : public TComponent
{
public:
    virtual __fastcall TNewComponent(TComponent* AOwner);
};
```

In the .CPP file, implement the constructor:

```
__fastcall TNewComponent::TNewComponent(TComponent* AOwner): TComponent(AOwner)
{
}
```

Within the constructor, you add the code you want to execute when the component is created.

Registering the component

Registration is a simple process that tells C++Builder which components to add to its component library, and on which pages of the Component palette they should appear. For a more detailed discussion of the registration process, see Chapter 52, “Making components available at design time.”

To register a component,

- 1 Add a function named *Register* to the unit’s .CPP file, placing it within a namespace. The namespace is the name of the file the component is in, minus the file extension, with all lowercase letters except the first letter.

For example, this code exists within a *Newcomp* namespace, whereas *Newcomp* is the name of the .CPP file:

```
namespace Newcomp
{
    void __fastcall PACKAGE Register()
    {
    }
}
```

- 2 Within the *Register* function, declare an open array of type *TComponentClass* that holds the array of components you are registering. The syntax should look like this:

```
TComponentClass classes[1] = {__classid(TNewComponent)};
```

In this case, the array of classes contains just one component, but you can add all the components you want to register to the array.

- 3 Within the *Register* function, call *RegisterComponents* for each component you want to register.

RegisterComponents is a function that takes three parameters: the name of a Component palette page, the array of component classes, and the size – 1 of the component classes. If you’re adding a component to an existing registration, you can either add the new component to the set in the existing statement, or add a new statement that calls *RegisterComponents*.

You can register multiple components with just one *RegisterComponents* call if all components go on the same page on the Component palette.

To register a component named *TNewComponent* and place it on the Samples page of the Component palette, add the following *Register* function to the .CPP file of the unit that declares *TNewComponent*:

```
namespace Newcomp
{
    void __fastcall PACKAGE Register()
    {
        TComponentClass classes[1] = {__classid(TNewComponent)};
        RegisterComponents("Samples", classes, 0);
    }
}
```

This *Register* call places *TNewComponent* on the Samples page of the Component palette.

Once you register a component, you can test the component, and finally install the component onto the Component palette. This is described in more detail in the section “Installing a component on the Component palette” on page 45-18.

Creating a bitmap for a component

When you create a new component, you can define your own bitmaps for custom components.

- 1 Choose Tools | Image Editor.
- 2 In the Image Editor dialog box, choose File | New | Component Resource File (.dcr).
- 3 In the untitled1.dcr dialog box, right-click Contents. Choose New | Bitmap.
- 4 In the Bitmaps Properties dialog box, change both the Width and Height to 24 pixels. Make sure VGA (16 colors) is checked. Click OK.
- 5 Bitmap and Bitmap1 appear below Contents. Select Bitmap1, right-click, and choose Rename. Give the bitmap the same name as the class name for your new component, including the T, using all uppercase letters. For example, if your new class name is going to be *TMyNewButton*, name the bitmap TMYNEWBUTTON.

Note You must name all uppercase letters, no matter how you spell the class name in the New Component dialog box.



- 6 Double-click TMYNEWBUTTON to display a dialog box with an empty bitmap.
- 7 Use the color palette at the bottom of the Image Editor to design your icon.
- 8 Choose File | Save As and give the resource file (.dcr or .res) the same base name as the unit you want the component class declared in. For example, name the resource file MyNewButton.dcr.
- 9 Choose Component | New Component. Follow the instructions for creating a new component using the Component wizard on page 45-9. Make sure that the component source, MyNewButton.cpp, is in the same directory as MyNewButton.dcr.

The Component wizard, for a class named *TMyNewButton*, names the component source, or unit, MyNewButton.cpp with a default placement in the LIB directory. Click the Browse button to find the new location for the generated component unit.

Note If you are using a .res file for the bitmap rather than a .dcr file, then add a reference to the component source to bind the resource. For example, if your .res file is named MyNewButton.res, after ensuring that the .cpp and .res are in the same directory, add the following in MyNewButton.cpp:

```
#pragma resource "*.res"
```

- 10 Choose Component | Install Component to install your component into a new or existing package. Click OK.

Your new package is built and then installed. The bitmap representing your new component appears on the Component palette page you designated in the Component wizard.

Testing uninstalled components

You can test the runtime behavior of a component before you install it on the Component palette. This is particularly useful for debugging newly created components, but the same technique works with any component, whether or not it is on the Component palette. For information on testing already installed components, see “Testing installed components” on page 45-18.

Testing your components without installing has the added benefit of generating compile-time errors that are seen only when the class is instantiated. For example, trying to create an instance of an abstract class yields an error directing you to the pure virtual that must be overloaded.

You test an uninstalled component by emulating the actions performed by C++Builder when the component is selected from the palette and placed on a form.

To test an uninstalled component, do the following:

- 1 Create a new application or open an existing one.
- 2 Choose Project | Add to Project to add the component unit to your project.
- 3 Include the .H file of the component unit in the header file of a form unit.
- 4 Add a data member to the form to represent the component.

This is one of the main differences between the way you add components and the way C++Builder does it. You add the data member to the public part at the bottom of the form’s class declaration. C++Builder would add it above, in the published part of the class declaration that it manages.

You should never add data members to the C++Builder-managed part of the form’s class declaration. The items in that part of the class declaration correspond to the items stored in the form file. Adding the names of components that do not exist on the form can render your form file invalid.

- 5 Construct the component in the form’s constructor.

When you call the component’s constructor, you must pass a parameter specifying the owner of the component (the component responsible for destroying the component when the time comes). You nearly always pass **this** as the owner. In a method, **this** is a reference to the class that contains the method. In this case, in the form’s *OnCreate* handler, **this** refers to the form.

- 6 Assign the *Parent* property.

Setting the *Parent* property is always the first thing to do after constructing a control. The parent is the component that visually contains the control, which is most often the form, but might be a group box or panel. Normally, you’ll set *Parent* to **this**, that is, the form. Always set *Parent* before setting other properties of the control.

- 7 Set any other component properties as desired.

Suppose you want to test a new component of class *TNewControl* in a unit named *NewCtrl*. Create a new project, then follow the steps to end up with a header file for the form that looks like this:

```
//-----
#ifndef TestFormH
#define TestFormH
//-----
#include <vcl\Classes.hpp>
#include <vcl\Controls.hpp>
#include <vcl\StdCtrls.hpp>
#include <vcl\Forms.hpp>
#include "NewCtrl.h"
//-----
class TForm1 : public TForm
{
__published:      // IDE-managed Components
private:          // User declarations
public:            // User declarations
    TNewControl* NewControl1;
    __fastcall TForm1(TComponent* Owner);
};
//-----
extern TForm1 *Form1;
//-----
#endif
```

The **#include** statement that includes the NEWCTRL.H file assumes that the component resides in the directory of the current project or in a directory that is on the include path of the project.

This is the .CPP file of the form unit:

```
#include <vcl\vcl.h>
#pragma hdrstop
#include "TestForm.h"
#include "NewCtrl.h"
//-----
#pragma package(smart_init);
#pragma resource "*.dfm"
TForm1 *Form1;
//-----
static inline TNewControl *ValidCtrCheck()
{
    return new TNewControl(NULL);
}
//-----
__fastcall TForm1::TForm1(TComponent* Owner)
    : TForm(Owner)
{
    NewControl1 = new TNewControl(this);
    NewControl1->Parent = this;
    NewControl1->Left = 12;
}
```

```
//-----  
namespace Newctrl  
{  
    void __fastcall PACKAGE Register()  
    {  
        TComponentClass classes[1] = {__classid(TNewControl)};  
        RegisterComponents("Samples", classes, 0);  
    }  
}
```

Testing installed components

You can test the design-time behavior of a component after you install it on the Component palette. This is particularly useful for debugging newly created components, but the same technique works with any component, whether or not it is on the Component palette. For information on testing components that have not yet been installed, see “Testing uninstalled components” on page 45-16.

Testing your components after installing allows you to debug the component that only generates design-time exceptions when dropped on a form.

Test an installed component using a second running instance of C++Builder:

- 1 From the C++Builder IDE menu select Project | Options | and on the Directories/Conditionals page, set the Debug Source Path to the component’s source file.
- 2 Then select Tools | Debugger Options. On the Language Exceptions page, enable the exceptions you want to track.
- 3 Open the component source file and set breakpoints.
- 4 Select Run | Parameters and set the Host Application field to the name and location of the C++Builder executable file.
- 5 In the Run Parameters dialog, click the Load button to start a second instance of C++Builder.
- 6 Then drop the components to be tested on the form, which should break on your breakpoints in the source.

Installing a component on the Component palette

There are two parts to the process of adding a component to the Component Palette:

- Making source files available.
- Adding the component.

Making source files available

All source files used by a component should be located in the same directory. These files include source code files (.CPP and .PAS) and binary files (.DFM, .RES, .RC, and .DCR). Header files (.H and .HPP) should be located in the Include directory (or in a location on the search path for the IDE or a project).

The process of adding a component results in the creation of a number of files. These files are automatically put in directories specified in the IDE environment options (use the menu command Tools | Environment Options, navigate to the Library tab page). The .LIB files are placed in the BPI/LIB output directory. If adding the component entails creating a new package (as opposed to installing it into an existing package), the .BPL file is put in the BPL output directory and .BPI files in the BPI/LIB output directory.

Adding the component

To add components to the component library:

- 1 Choose Component | Install Component.

The Install Component dialog box appears.

- 2 Elect to install the new component into an existing or a new package by selecting the applicable page.
- 3 Enter the name of the .CPP file containing the new component or choose Browse to find the unit.
- 4 Adjust the search path if the .CPP file for the new component is not in the default location shown.
- 5 Enter the name of the package into which to install the component or choose Browse to find the package.
- 6 If the component is installed into a new package, optionally enter a meaningful description of the package.
- 7 Choose OK to close the Install Component dialog box. This compiles/rebuilds the package and installs the component on the Component Palette.

Note Newly installed components initially appear on the page of the Component palette that was specified by the component writer. You can move the components to a different page after they have been installed on the palette with the Component | Configure Palette dialog box.

Object-oriented programming for component writers

If you have written applications with C++Builder, you know that a class contains both data and code, and that you can manipulate classes at design time and at runtime. In that sense, you've become a component user.

When you create new components, you deal with classes in ways that application developers never need to. You also try to hide the inner workings of the component from the developers who will use it. By choosing appropriate ancestors for your components, designing interfaces that expose only the properties and methods that developers need, and following the other guidelines in this chapter, you can create versatile, reusable components.

Before you start creating components, you should be familiar with these topics, which are related to object-oriented programming (OOP):

- Defining new classes
- Ancestors, descendants, and class hierarchies
- Controlling access
- Dispatching methods
- Abstract class members
- Classes and pointers

Defining new classes

The difference between component writers and application developers is that component writers create new classes while application developers manipulate instances of classes.

A class is essentially a type. As a programmer, you are always working with types and instances, even if you do not use that terminology. For example, you create variables of a type, such as *int*. Classes are usually more complex than simple data

types, but they work the same way: By assigning different values to instances of the same type, you can perform different tasks.

For example, it is quite common to create a form containing two buttons, one labeled OK and one labeled Cancel. Each is an instance of the class *TButton*, but by assigning different values to their *Caption* properties and different handlers to their *OnClick* events, you make the two instances behave differently.

Deriving new classes

There are two reasons to derive a new class:

- To change class defaults to avoid repetition
- To add new capabilities to a class

In either case, the goal is to create reusable objects. If you design components with reuse in mind, you can save work later on. Give your classes usable default values, but allow them to be customized.

To change class defaults to avoid repetition

Most programmers try to avoid repetition. Thus, if you find yourself rewriting the same lines of code over and over, you place the code in a function, or build a library of routines that you can use in many programs. The same reasoning holds for components. If you find yourself changing the same properties or making the same method calls, you can create a new component that does these things by default.

For example, suppose that each time you create an application, you add a dialog box to perform a particular operation. Although it is not difficult to recreate the dialog each time, it is also not necessary. You can design the dialog once, set its properties, and install a wrapper component associated with it onto the Component palette. By making the dialog into a reusable component, you not only eliminate a repetitive task, but you encourage standardization and reduce the likelihood of errors each time the dialog is recreated.

Chapter 53, “Modifying an existing component,” shows an example of changing a component’s default properties.

Note If you want to modify only the published properties of an existing component, or to save specific event handlers for a component or group of components, you may be able to accomplish this more easily by creating a *component template*.

To add new capabilities to a class

A common reason for creating new components is to add capabilities not found in existing components. When you do this, you derive the new component from either an existing component or an abstract base class, such as *TComponent* or *TControl*.

Derive your new component from the class that contains the closest subset of the features you want. You can add capabilities to a class, but you cannot take them away; so if an existing component class contains properties that you do *not* want to include in yours, you should derive from that component’s ancestor.

For example, if you want to add features to a list box, you could derive your component from *TListBox*. However, if you want to add new features but exclude some capabilities of the standard list box, you need to derive your component from *TCustomListBox*, the ancestor of *TListBox*. Then you can recreate (or make visible) only the list-box capabilities you want, and add your new features.

Chapter 55, “Customizing a grid,” shows an example of customizing an abstract component class.

Declaring a new component class

In addition to standard components, C++Builder provides many abstract classes designed as bases for deriving new components. Table 45.1 on page 45-3 shows the classes you can start from when you create your own components.

To declare a new component class, add a class declaration to the component’s header file.

Here is the declaration of a simple graphical component:

```
class PACKAGE TSampleShape : public TGraphicControl
{
public:
    virtual __fastcall TSampleShape(TComponent* Owner);
};
```

Do not forget to include the `PACKAGE` macro (defined in `Sysmac.h`), which allows classes to be imported and exported.

A finished component declaration includes property, data member, and method declarations before the final brace, but an empty declaration is also valid, and provides a starting point for the addition of component features.

Ancestors, descendants, and class hierarchies

Application developers take for granted that every control has properties named *Top* and *Left* that determine its position on the form. To them, it may not matter that all controls inherit these properties from a common ancestor, *TControl*. When you create a component, however, you must know which class to derive it from so that it inherits the appropriate features. And you must know everything that your control inherits, so you can take advantage of inherited features without recreating them.

The class from which you derive a component is called its *immediate ancestor*. Each component inherits from its immediate ancestor, and from the immediate ancestor of its immediate ancestor, and so forth. All of the classes from which a component inherits are called its *ancestors*; the component is a *descendant* of its ancestors.

Together, all the ancestor-descendant relationships in an application constitute a hierarchy of classes. Each generation in the hierarchy contains more than its

ancestors, since a class inherits everything from its ancestors, then adds new properties and methods or redefines existing ones.

If you do not specify an immediate ancestor, C++Builder derives your component from the default ancestor, *TObject*. *TObject* is the ultimate ancestor of all classes in the object hierarchy.

The general rule for choosing which object to derive from is simple: Pick the object that contains as much as possible of what you want to include in your new object, but which does not include anything you do not want in the new object. You can always add things to your objects, but you cannot take things out.

Controlling access

There are five levels of *access control*—also called *visibility*—on properties, methods, and data members. Visibility determines which code can access which parts of the class. By specifying visibility, you define the *interface* to your components.

Table 46.1 shows the levels of visibility, from most restrictive to most accessible:

Table 46.1 Levels of visibility within an object

| Visibility | Meaning | Used for |
|-------------|--|--|
| private | Accessible only to the class where it is defined. | Hiding implementation details. |
| protected | Accessible to the class where it is defined and its descendants. | Defining the component writer's interface. |
| public | Accessible to all code. | Defining the runtime interface. |
| __automated | Accessible to all code. Automation type information is generated. | OLE automation only. |
| __published | Accessible to all code and accessible from the Object Inspector. Saved in a form file. | Defining the design-time interface. |

Hiding implementation details

Declaring part of a class as **private** makes that part invisible to code outside the class unless the functions are friends of the class. Private parts of a class are mostly useful for hiding details of implementation from users of the class. Because users of the class cannot access the private parts, you can change the internal implementation of the class without affecting user code.

If you do not specify any access control on a data member, method, or property, that part is **private**.

Here is an example shown in two parts that illustrates how declaring a data member as **private** prevents users from accessing information.

The first part is a form unit made up of a header file and a .CPP file that assigns a value to a private data member in the form's *OnCreate* event handler. Because the event handler is declared within the *TSecretForm* class, the unit compiles without error.

```
#ifndef HideInfoH
#define HideInfoH
//-----
#include <vcl\SysUtils.hpp>
#include <vcl\Controls.hpp>
#include <vcl\Classes.hpp>
#include <vcl\Forms.hpp>
//-----
class PACKAGE TSecretForm : public TForm
{
__published:    // IDE-managed Components
    void __fastcall FormCreate(TObject *Sender);
private:
    int FSecretCode;                                // declare a private data member
public:         // User declarations
    __fastcall TSecretForm(TComponent* Owner);
};
//-----
extern TSecretForm *SecretForm;
//-----
#endif
```

This is the accompanying .CPP file:

```
#include <vcl.h>
#pragma hdrstop
#include "hideInfo.h"
//-----
#pragma package(smart_init);
#pragma resource "*.dfm"
TSecretForm *SecretForm;
//-----
__fastcall TSecretForm::TSecretForm(TComponent* Owner)
    : TForm(Owner)
{
}
//-----
void __fastcall TSecretForm::FormCreate(TObject *Sender)
{
    FSecretCode = 42;                                // this compiles correctly
}
```

The second part of this example is another form unit that attempts to assign a value to the *FSecretCode* data member in the *SecretForm* form. This is the header file for the unit:

```
#ifndef TestHideH
#define TestHideH
//-----
#include <vcl\SysUtils.hpp>
```

Controlling access

```
#include <vcl\Controls.hpp>
#include <vcl\Classes.hpp>
#include <vcl\Forms.hpp>
//-----
class PACKAGE TTestForm : public TForm
{
    __published:    // IDE-managed Components
        void __fastcall FormCreate(TObject *Sender);
public:            // User declarations
    __fastcall TTestForm(TComponent* Owner);
};
//-----
extern TTestForm *TestForm;
//-----
#endif
```

This is the accompanying .CPP file. Because the *OnCreate* event handler attempts to assign a value to a data member private to the *SecretForm* form, the compilation fails with the error message 'TSecretForm::FSecretCode' is not accessible.

```
#include <vcl.h>
#pragma hdrstop
#include "testHide.h"
#include "hideInfo.h"
//-----
#pragma package(smart_init);
#pragma resource "*.dfm"
TTestForm *TestForm;
//-----
__fastcall TTestForm::TTestForm(TComponent* Owner)
    : TForm(Owner)
{
}
//-----
void __fastcall TTestForm::FormCreate(TObject *Sender)
{
    SecretForm->FSecretCode = 13;           //compiler stops here with error message
}
```

Although a program using the *HideInfo* unit can use classes of type *TSecretForm*, it cannot access the *FSecretCode* data member in any of those classes.

CLX Names and locations of some of the header files differ in CLX applications. For example, <vcl\controls.hpp> is <clx\qcontrols.hpp> in CLX.

Defining the component writer's interface

Declaring part of a class as **protected** makes that part visible only to the class itself and its descendants.

You can use **protected** declarations to define a *component writer's interface* to the class. Application units do not have access to the protected parts, but derived classes do. This means that component writers can change the way a class works without making the details visible to application developers.

Note A common mistake is trying to access protected methods from an event handler. Event handlers are typically methods of the form, not the component that receives the event. As a result, they do not have access to the component's protected methods (unless the component is declared in the same unit as the form).

Defining the runtime interface

Declaring part of a class as **public** makes that part visible to any code that has access to the class as a whole.

Public parts are available at runtime to all code, so the public parts of a class define its *runtime interface*. The runtime interface is useful for items that are not meaningful or appropriate at design time, such as properties that depend on runtime input or which are read-only. Methods that you intend for application developers to call must also be public.

Here is an example that shows two read-only properties declared as part of a component's runtime interface:

```
class PACKAGE TSampleComponent : public TComponent
{
private:
    int FTempCelsius;                                // implementation details are private
    int GetTempFahrenheit();
public:
    :
    __property int TempCelsius = {read=FTempCelsius};    // properties are public
    __property int TempFahrenheit = {read=GetTempFahrenheit};
};
```

This is the *GetTempFahrenheit* method in the .CPP file:

```
int TSampleComponent::GetTempFahrenheit()
{
    return FTempCelsius * (9 / 5) + 32;
}
```

Defining the design-time interface

Declaring part of a class as **published** makes that part public and also generates runtime type information. Among other things, runtime type information allows the Object Inspector to access properties and events.

Because they show up in the Object Inspector, the published parts of a class define that class's *design-time interface*. The design-time interface should include any aspects of the class that an application developer might want to customize at design time, but must exclude any properties that depend on specific information about the runtime environment.

Read-only properties cannot be part of the design-time interface because the application developer cannot assign values to them directly. Read-only properties should therefore be public, rather than published.

Here is an example of a published property called *Temperature*. Because it is published, it appears in the Object Inspector at design time.

```
class PACKAGE TSampleComponent : public TComponent
{
private:
    int FTemperature;
    :
__published:
    __property int Temperature = {read=FTemperature, write=FTemperature};
};
```

Dispatching methods

Dispatch is the term used to describe how your application determines which class method should be invoked when it encounters a class method call. When you write code that calls a class method, it looks like any other function call. Classes, however, have two different ways of dispatching methods.

The two types of method dispatch are

- Regular (not virtual) methods
- Virtual methods

Regular methods

Class methods are regular (or nonvirtual) unless you specifically declare them as virtual, or unless they override a virtual method in a base class. The compiler can determine the exact address of a regular class member at compile time. This is known as compile-time binding.

A base class regular method is inherited by derived classes. In the following example, an object of type *Derived* can call the method *Regular()* as it were its own method.

Declaring a method in a derived class with the same name and parameters as a regular method in the class's ancestor *replaces* the ancestor's method. In the following example, when *d->AnotherRegular()* is called, it is being dispatched to the *Derived* class replacement for *AnotherRegular()*.

```
class Base
{
public:
    void Regular();
    void AnotherRegular();
    virtual void Virtual();
};

class Derived : public Base
{
public:
    void AnotherRegular();           // replaces Base::AnotherRegular()
    void Virtual();                 // overrides Base::Virtual()
```

```

};

void FunctionOne()
{
    Derived *d;
    d = new Derived;
    d->Regular();           // Calling Regular() as it were a member of Derived
                           // The same as calling d->Base::Regular()

    d->AnotherRegular();    // Calling the redefined AnotherRegular(), ...
                           // ... the replacement for Base::AnotherRegular()

    delete d;
}

void FunctionTwo(Base *b)
{
    b->Virtual();
    b->AnotherRegular();
}

```

Virtual methods

Unlike regular methods, which are bound at compile time, virtual methods are bound at *runtime*. The virtual mechanism of C++ allows a method to be called depending on the class type that is being used to invoke the method.

In the previous example, if you were to call *FunctionTwo()* with a pointer to a *Derived* object, the function *Derived::Virtual()* would be called. The virtual mechanism dynamically inspects the class type of the object you passed at runtime and dispatches the appropriate method. But the call to the regular function *b->AnotherRegular()* will always call *Base::AnotherRegular()* because the address of *AnotherRegular()* was determined at compile time.

To declare a new virtual method, preface the method declaration with the **virtual** keyword.

When the compiler encounters the **virtual** keyword, it creates an entry in the class's virtual method table (VMT). The VMT holds the addresses of all the virtual methods in a class. This lookup table is used at runtime to determine that *b->Virtual* should call *Derived::Virtual()*, and not *Base::Virtual()*.

When you derive a new class from an existing class, the new class receives its own VMT, which includes the entries from its ancestor's VMT, plus any additional virtual methods declared in the new class. In addition, the descendant class can *override* any of its inherited virtual methods.

Overriding methods

Overriding methods means extending or refining an ancestor's method, rather than replacing it. To override a method in a descendant class, redeclare the method in the derived class, ensuring that the number and type of arguments are the same.

The following code shows the declaration of two simple components. The first declares two methods, each with a different kind of dispatching. The other, derived from the first, replaces the nonvirtual method and overrides the virtual method.

Abstract class members

```
class PACKAGE TFirstComponent : public TComponent
{
public:
    void Move();                // regular method
    virtual void Flash();       // virtual method
};

class PACKAGE TSecondComponent : public TFirstComponent
{
public:
    void Move();                // declares new method "hiding" TFirstComponent::Move()
    void Flash();               // overrides virtual TFirstComponent::Flash in TFirstComponent
};
```

Abstract class members

When a method is declared as **abstract** in an ancestor class, you must surface it (by redeclaring and implementing it) in any descendant component before you can use the new component in applications. C++Builder cannot create instances of a class that contains abstract members. For more information about surfacing inherited parts of classes, see Chapter 47, “Creating properties,” and Chapter 49, “Creating methods.”

Classes and pointers

Every class (and therefore every component) is really a pointer. The status of classes as pointers becomes important when you pass a class as a parameter. In general, you should pass classes by value rather than by reference. The reason is that classes are already pointers, which are references; passing a class by reference amounts to passing a reference to a reference.

Creating properties

Properties are the most visible parts of components. The application developer can see and manipulate them at design time and get immediate feedback as the components react in the Form Designer. Well-designed properties make your components easier for others to use and easier for you to maintain.

To make the best use of properties in your components, you should understand the following:

- Why create properties?
- Types of properties
- Publishing inherited properties
- Defining properties
- Creating array properties
- Storing and loading properties

Why create properties?

From the application developer's standpoint, properties look like variables. Developers can set or read the values of properties as if they were data members. (About the only thing you can do with a variable that you cannot do with a property is pass it as an argument to a method by reference.)

Properties provide more power than simple data members because

- Application developers can set properties at design time. Unlike methods, which are available only at runtime, properties let the developer customize components before running an application. Properties can appear in the Object Inspector, which simplifies the programmer's job; instead of handling several parameters to construct an object, you let C++ Builder read the values from the Object Inspector. The Object Inspector also validates property assignments as soon as they are made.

- Properties can hide implementation details. For example, data stored internally in an encrypted form can appear unencrypted as the value of a property; although the value is a simple number, the component may look up the value in a database or perform complex calculations to arrive at it. Properties let you attach complex effects to outwardly simple assignments; what looks like an assignment to a data member can be a call to a method which implements elaborate processing.
- Properties can be virtual. Hence, what looks like a single property to an application developer may be implemented differently in different components.

A simple example is the *Top* property of all controls. Assigning a new value to *Top* does not just change a stored value; it repositions and repaints the control. And the effects of setting a property need not be limited to an individual component; for example, setting the *Down* property of a speed button to **true** sets *Down* property of all other speed buttons in its group to **false**.

Types of properties

A property can be of any type. Different types are displayed differently in the Object Inspector, which validates property assignments as they are made at design time.

Table 47.1 How properties appear in the Object Inspector

| Property type | Object Inspector treatment |
|---------------|---|
| Simple | Numeric, character, and string properties appear as numbers, characters, and strings. The application developer can edit the value of the property directly. |
| Enumerated | Properties of enumerated types (including Boolean) appear as editable strings. The developer can also cycle through the possible values by double-clicking the value column, and there is a drop-down list that shows all possible values. |
| Set | Properties of set types appear as sets. By double-clicking on the property, the developer can expand the set and treat each element as a Boolean value (true if it is included in the set). |
| Object | Properties that are themselves classes often have their own property editors, specified in the component's registration procedure. If the class held by a property has its own published properties, the Object Inspector lets the developer to expand the list (by double-clicking) to include these properties and edit them individually. Object properties must descend from <i>TPersistent</i> . |
| Interface | Properties that are interfaces can appear in the Object Inspector as long as the value is an interface that is implemented by a component (a descendant of <i>TComponent</i>). Interface properties often have their own property editors. |
| Array | Array properties must have their own property editors; the Object Inspector has no built-in support for editing them. You can specify a property editor when you register your components. |

Publishing inherited properties

All components inherit properties from their ancestor classes. When you derive a new component from an existing one, your new component inherits all the properties of its immediate ancestor. If you derive from one of the abstract classes, many of the inherited properties are either protected or public, but not published.

To make a protected or public property available at design time in the Object Inspector, you must redeclare the property as published. Redefining means adding a declaration for the inherited property to the declaration of the descendant class.

If you derive a VCL component from *TWinControl*, for example, it inherits the protected *DockSite* property. By redeclaring *DockSite* in your new component, you can change the level of protection to either public or published.

The following code shows a redeclaration of *DockSite* as published, making it available at design time.

```
class PACKAGE TSampleComponent : public TWinControl
{
    __published:
        __property DockSite;
};
```

When you redeclare a property, you specify only the property name, not the type and other information described in “Defining properties”. You can also declare new default values and specify whether to store the property.

Redeclarations can make a property less restricted, but not more restricted. Thus you can make a protected property public, but you cannot hide a public property by redeclaring it as protected.

Defining properties

This section shows how to declare new properties and explains some of the conventions followed in the standard components. Topics include:

- The property declaration
- Internal data storage
- Direct access
- Access methods
- Default property values

The property declaration

A property is declared in the declaration of its component class. To declare a property, you specify three things:

- The name of the property.
- The type of the property.

- The methods used to read and write the value of the property. If no write method is declared, the property is read-only.

Properties declared in a **__published** section of the component's class declaration are editable in the Object Inspector at design time. The value of a published property is saved with the component in the form file. Properties declared in a **public** section are available at runtime and can be read or set in program code.

Here is a typical declaration for a property called *Count*.

```
class PACKAGE TYourComponent : public TComponent
{
private:
    int FCount;                                // data member for storage
    int __fastcall GetCount();                  // read method
    void __fastcall SetCount( int ACount );     // write method
public:
    __property int Count = {read=GetCount, write=SetCount}; // property declaration
    :
};
```

Internal data storage

There are no restrictions on how you store the data for a property. In general, however, C++Builder components follow these conventions:

- Property data is stored in class data members.
- The data members used to store property data are private and should be accessed only from within the component itself. Derived components should use the inherited property; they do not need direct access to the property's internal data storage.
- Identifiers for these data members consist of the letter *F* followed by the name of the property. For example, the raw data for the *Width* property defined in *TControl* is stored in a data member called *FWidth*.

The principle that underlies these conventions is that only the implementation methods for a property should access the data behind it. If a method or another property needs to change that data, it should do so through the property, not by direct access to the stored data. This ensures that the implementation of an inherited property can change without invalidating derived components.

Direct access

The simplest way to make property data available is *direct access*. That is, the **read** and **write** parts of the property declaration specify that assigning or reading the property value goes directly to the internal-storage data member without calling an access method. Direct access is useful when you want to make a property available in the Object Inspector but changes to its value trigger no immediate processing.

It is common to have direct access for the **read** part of a property declaration but use an access method for the **write** part. This allows the status of the component to be updated when the property value changes.

The following component-type declaration shows a property that uses direct access for both the **read** and the **write** parts.

```
class PACKAGE TSampleComponent : public TComponent
{
private:
    bool FReadOnly;           // internal storage is private
                             // declare data member to hold value
    :
__published:
    __property bool ReadOnly = {read=FReadOnly, write=FReadOnly};
};
```

Access methods

You can specify an access method instead of a data member in the **read** and **write** parts of a property declaration. Access methods should be protected, and are usually declared as **virtual**; this allows descendant components to override the property's implementation.

Avoid making access methods public. Keeping them protected ensures that application developers do not inadvertently modify a property by calling one of these methods.

Here is a class that declares three properties using the index specifier, which allows all three properties to have the same read and write access methods:

```
class PACKAGE TSampleCalendar : public TCustomGrid
{
private:
    int __fastcall GetDateElement(int Index);    // note Index parameter
    void __fastcall SetDateElement(int Index, int Value);
public:
    __property int Day = {read=GetDateElement, write=SetDateElement, index=3, nodefault};
    __property int Month = {read=GetDateElement, write=SetDateElement, index=2, nodefault};
    __property int Year = {read=GetDateElement, write=SetDateElement, index=1, nodefault};
};
```

Because each element of the date (day, month, and year) is an int, and because setting each requires encoding the date when set, the code avoids duplication by sharing the read and write methods for all three properties. You need only one method to read a date element, and another to write the date element.

Here is the read method that obtains the date element:

```
int __fastcall TSampleCalendar::GetDateElement(int Index)
{
    unsigned short AYear, AMonth, ADay;
    int result;
    FDate.DecodeDate(&AYear, &AMonth, &ADay); // break date into elements
    switch (Index)
    {
```

Defining properties

```
        case 1: result = AYear; break;
        case 2: result = AMonth; break;
        case 3: result = ADay; break;
        default: result = -1;
    }
    return result;
}
```

This is the write method that sets the appropriate date element:

```
void __fastcall TSampleCalendar::SetDateElement(int Index, int Value)
{
    unsigned short AYear, AMonth, ADay;
    if (Value > 0) // all elements must be positive
    {
        FDate.DecodeDate(&AYear, &AMonth, &ADay); // get date elements
        switch (Index)
        {
            case 1: AYear = Value; break;
            case 2: AMonth = Value; break;
            case 3: ADay = Value; break;
            default: return;
        }
    }
    FDate = TDateTime(AYear, AMonth, ADay); // encode the modified date
    Refresh(); // update the visible calendar
}
```

The read method

The read method for a property is a function that takes no parameters (except as noted below) and returns a value of the same type as the property. By convention, the function's name is *Get* followed by the name of the property. For example, the read method for a property called *Count* would be *GetCount*. The read method manipulates the internal storage data as needed to produce the value of the property in the appropriate type.

The only exceptions to the no-parameters rule are for array properties and properties that use index specifiers (see “Creating array properties” on page 47-8), both of which pass their index values as parameters. (Use index specifiers to create a single read method that is shared by several properties.)

If you do not declare a read method, the property is write-only. Write-only properties are seldom used.

The write method

The write method for a property is a member function that takes a single parameter (except as noted below) of the same type as the property. The parameter can be passed by reference or by value, and can have any name you choose. By convention, the write method's name is *Set* followed by the name of the property. For example, the write method for a property called *Count* would be *SetCount*. The value passed in the parameter becomes the new value of the property; the write method must perform any manipulation needed to put the appropriate data in the property's internal storage.

The only exceptions to the single-parameter rule are for array properties and properties that use index specifiers, both of which pass their index values as a second parameter. (Use index specifiers to create a single write method that is shared by several properties.)

If you do not declare a write method, the property is read-only.

Write methods commonly test whether a new value differs from the current value before changing the property. For example, here is a simple write method for an integer property called *Count* that stores its current value in a data member called *FCount*.

```
void __fastcall TMyComponent::SetCount( int Value )
{
    if ( Value != FCount )
    {
        FCount = Value;
        Update();
    }
}
```

Default property values

When you declare a property, you can specify a *default value* for it. C++Builder uses the default value to determine whether to store the property in a form file. If you do not specify a default value for a property, C++Builder always stores the property.

To declare a default value for a property, append an equal sign after the property name and a set of braces that holds the **default** keyword and the default value. For example,

```
__property bool IsTrue = {default=true};
```

Note Declaring a default value does not set the property to that value. The component's constructor method should initialize property values when appropriate. However, since objects always initialize their data members to 0, it is not strictly necessary for the constructor to set integer properties to 0, string properties to null, or Boolean properties to **false**.

Specifying no default value

When redeclaring a property, you can specify that the property has no default value, even if the inherited property specified one.

To designate a property as having no default value, append an equal sign after the property name and a set of braces that holds the **nodefault** keyword. For example,

```
__property int NewInteger = {nodefault};
```

When you declare a property for the first time, there is no need to include **nodefault**. The absence of a declared default value means that there is no default.

Here is the declaration of a component that includes a single Boolean property named *IsTrue* with a default value of **true**, including the constructor that sets the default value.

Creating array properties

```
class PACKAGE TSampleComponent : public TComponent
{
private:
    bool FIsTrue;
public:
    virtual __fastcall TSampleComponent( TComponent* Owner );
__published:
    __property bool IsTrue = {read=FIsTrue, write=FIsTrue, default=true};
};

__fastcall TSampleComponent::TSampleComponent ( TComponent* Owner )
: TComponent ( Owner )
{
    FIsTrue = true;
}
```

Creating array properties

Some properties lend themselves to being indexed like arrays. For example, the *Lines* property of *TMemo* is an indexed list of the strings that make up the text of the memo; you can treat it as an array of strings. *Lines* provides natural access to a particular element (a string) in a larger set of data (the memo text).

Array properties are declared like other properties, except that

- The declaration includes one or more indexes with specified types. The indexes can be of any type.
- The **read** and **write** parts of the property declaration, if specified, must be methods. They cannot be data members.

The read and write methods for an array property take additional parameters that correspond to the indexes. The parameters must be in the same order and of the same type as the indexes specified in the declaration.

There are a few important differences between array properties and arrays. Unlike the index of an array, the index of an array property does not have to be an integer type. You can index a property on a string, for example. In addition, you can reference only individual elements of an array property, not the entire range of the property.

The following example shows the declaration of a property that returns a string based on an integer index.

```
class PACKAGE TDemoComponent : public TComponent
{
private:
    System::AnsiString __fastcall GetNumberSize(int Index);
public:
    __property System::AnsiString NumberSize[int Index] = {read=GetNumberSize};
    :
};
```


This is the *GetNumberSize* method in the .CPP file:

```
System::AnsiString __fastcall TDemoComponent::GetNumberSize(int Index)
{
    System::AnsiString Result;
    switch (Index)
    {
        case 0:
            Result = "Zero";
            break;
        case 100:
            Result = "Medium";
            break;
        case 1000:
            Result = "Large";
            break;
        default: Result = "Unknown size";
    }
    return Result;
}
```

Creating properties for subcomponents

By default, when a property's value is another component, you assign a value to that property by adding an instance of the other component to the form or data module and then assigning that component as the value of the property. However, it is also possible for your component to create its own instance of the object that implements the property value. Such a dedicated component is called a subcomponent.

Subcomponents can be any persistent object (any descendant of *TPersistent*). Unlike separate components that happen to be assigned as the value of a property, the published properties of subcomponents are saved with the component that creates them. In order for this to work, however, the following conditions must be met:

- The *Owner* of the subcomponent must be the component that creates it and uses it as the value of a published property. For subcomponents that are descendants of *TComponent*, you can accomplish this by setting the *Owner* property of the subcomponent. For other subcomponents, you must override the *GetOwner* method of the persistent object so that it returns the creating component.
- If the subcomponent is a descendant of *TComponent*, it must indicate that it is a subcomponent by calling the *SetSubComponent* method. Typically, this call is made either by the owner when it creates the subcomponent or by the constructor of the subcomponent.

Typically, properties whose values are subcomponents are read-only. If you allow a property whose value is a subcomponent to be changed, the property setter must free the subcomponent when another component is assigned as the property value. In addition, the component often re-instantiates its subcomponent when the property is set to NULL. Otherwise, once the property is changed to another component, the

subcomponent can never be restored at design time. The following example illustrates such a property setter for a property whose value is a *TTimer*:

```
void __fastcall TDemoComponent::SetTimerProp(ExtCtrls::TTimer *Value)
{
    if (Value != FTimer)
    {
        if (Value)
        {
            if (FTimer && FTimer->Owner == this)
                delete FTimer;
            FTimer = Value;
            FTimer->FreeNotification(this);
        }
        else // NULL value
        {
            if (FTimer && FTimer->Owner != this)
            {
                FTimer = new ExtCtrls::TTimer(this);
                FTimer.SetSubComponent(true);
                FTimer->FreeNotification(this);
            }
        }
    }
}
```

Note that the property setter above called the *FreeNotification* method of the component that is set as the property value. This call ensures that the component that is the value of the property sends a notification if it is about to be destroyed. It sends this notification by calling the *Notification* method. You handle this call by overriding the *Notification* method, as follows:

```
void __fastcall TDemoComponent::Notification(Classes::TComponent *AComponent,
Classes::TOperation Operation)
{
    TComponent::Notification(AComponent, Operation); { call inherited method }
    if ((Operation == opRemove) && (AComponent == (TComponent *)FTimer))
        FTimer = NULL;
}
```

Storing and loading properties

C++Builder stores forms and their components in form (.dfm in the VCL and .xfm in CLX) files. A form file stores the properties of a form and its components. When C++Builder developers add the components you write to their forms, your components must have the ability to write their properties to the form file when saved. Similarly, when loaded into C++Builder or executed as part of an application, the components must restore themselves from the form file.

Most of the time you will not need to do anything to make your components work with form files because the ability to store a representation and load from it are part of the inherited behavior of components. Sometimes, however, you might want to

alter the way a component stores itself or the way it initializes when loaded; so you should understand the underlying mechanism.

These are the aspects of property storage you need to understand:

- Using the store-and-load mechanism
- Specifying default values
- Determining what to store
- Initializing after loading
- Storing and loading unpublished properties

Using the store-and-load mechanism

The description of a form consists of a list of the form's properties, along with similar descriptions of each component on the form. Each component, including the form itself, is responsible for storing and loading its own description.

By default, when storing itself, a component writes the values of all its published properties that differ from their default values, in the order of their declaration. When loading itself, a component first constructs itself, setting all properties to their default values, then reads the stored, non-default property values.

This default mechanism serves the needs of most components, and requires no action at all on the part of the component writer. There are several ways you can customize the storing and loading process to suit the needs of your particular components, however.

Specifying default values

C++Builder components save their property values only if those values differ from the defaults. If you do not specify otherwise, C++Builder assumes a property has no default value, meaning the component always stores the property, whatever its value.

To specify a default value for a property,

- 1 Add an equal sign (=) after the property name.
- 2 After the equal sign, add braces({}).
- 3 Within the braces, type the keyword **default**, followed by another equal sign.
- 4 Specify the new default value.

For example,

```
__property Alignment = {default=taCenter};
```

You can also specify a default value when redeclaring a property. In fact, one reason to redeclare a property is to designate a different default value.

Note Specifying the default value does not automatically assign that value to the property on creation of the object. You must make sure that the component's constructor assigns the necessary value. A property whose value is not set by a component's

constructor assumes a zero value- that is, whatever value the property assumes when its storage memory is set to 0. Thus numeric values default to 0, Boolean values to **false**, pointers to **NULL**, and so on. If there is any doubt, assign a value in the constructor method.

The following code shows a component declaration that specifies a default value for the *Align* property and the implementation of the component's constructor that sets the default value. In this case, the new component is a special case of the standard panel component that will be used for status bars in a window, so its default alignment should be to the bottom of its owner.

```
class PACKAGE TMyStatusBar : public TPanel
{
public:
    virtual __fastcall TMyStatusBar(TComponent* AOwner);
    __published:
        __property Align = {default=alBottom};
};
```

The constructor of the *TMyStatusBar* component is in the .CPP file:

```
__fastcall TMyStatusBar::TMyStatusBar (TComponent* AOwner)
: TPanel(AOwner)
{
    Align = alBottom;
}
```

Determining what to store

You can control whether C++Builder stores each of your components' properties. By default, all properties in the published part of the class declaration are stored. You can choose not to store a given property at all, or you can designate a function that determines dynamically whether to store the property.

To control whether C++Builder stores a property:

- 1 Add an equal sign (=) after the property name.
- 2 After the equal sign, add braces({}).
- 3 Within the braces, type the keyword **stored**, followed by **true**, **false**, or the name of a Boolean function.

The following code shows a component that declares three new properties. One is always stored, one is never stored, and the third is stored depending on the value of a Boolean function:

```
class PACKAGE TSampleComponent : public TComponent
{
protected:
    bool __fastcall StoreIt();
public:
    :
    __published:
        __property int Important = {stored=true};           // always stored
```

```

__property int Unimportant = {stored=false};    // never stored
__property int Sometimes = {stored=StoreIt};    // storage depends on function value
};

```

Initializing after loading

After a component reads all its property values from its stored description, it calls a virtual method named *Loaded*, which performs any required initializations. The call to *Loaded* occurs before the form and its controls are shown, so you do not need to worry about initialization causing flicker on the screen.

To initialize a component after it loads its property values, override the *Loaded* method.

Note The first thing to do in any *Loaded* method is call the inherited *Loaded* method. This ensures that any inherited properties are correctly initialized before you initialize your own component.

Storing and loading unpublished properties

By default, only published properties are loaded and saved with a component. However, it is possible to load and save unpublished properties. This allows you to have persistent properties that do not appear in the Object Inspector. It also allows components to store and load property values that C++Builder does not know how to read or write because the value of the property is too complex. For example, the *TStrings* object can't rely on C++Builder's automatic behavior to store and load the strings it represents and must use the following mechanism.

You can save unpublished properties by adding code that tells C++Builder how to load and save your property's value.

To write your own code to load and save properties, use the following steps:

- 1 Create methods to store and load the property value.
- 2 Override the *DefineProperties* method, passing those methods to a filer object.

Creating methods to store and load property values

To store and load unpublished properties, you must first create a method to store your property value and another to load your property value. You have two choices:

- Create a method of type *TWriterProc* to store your property value and a method of type *TReaderProc* to load your property value. This approach lets you take advantage of C++Builder's built-in capabilities for saving and loading simple types. If your property value is built out of types that C++Builder knows how to save and load, use this approach.
- Create two methods of type *TStreamProc*, one to store and one to load your property's value. *TStreamProc* takes a stream as an argument, and you can use the stream's methods to write and read your property values.

For example, consider a property that represents a component that is created at runtime. C++Builder knows how to write this value, but does not do so automatically because the component is not created in the form designer. Because the streaming system can already load and save components, you can use the first approach. The following methods load and store the dynamically created component that is the value of a property named *MyCompProperty*:

```
void __fastcall TSampleComponent::LoadCompProperty(TReader *Reader)
{
    if (Reader->ReadBoolean())
        MyCompProperty = Reader->ReadComponent(NULL);
}
void __fastcall TSampleComponent::StoreCompProperty(TWriter *Writer)
{
    if (MyCompProperty)
    {
        Writer->WriteBoolean(true);
        Writer->WriteComponent(MyCompProperty);
    }
    else
        Writer->WriteBoolean(false);
}
```

Overriding the DefineProperties method

Once you have created methods to store and load your property value, you can override the component's *DefineProperties* method. C++Builder calls this method when it loads or stores the component. In the *DefineProperties* method, you must call the *DefineProperty* method or the *DefineBinaryProperty* method of the current filer, passing it the method to use for loading or saving your property value. If your load and store methods are of type *TWriterProc* and type *TReaderProc*, then you call the filer's *DefineProperty* method. If you created methods of type *TStreamProc*, call *DefineBinaryProperty* instead.

No matter which method you use to define the property, you pass it the methods that store and load your property value as well as a boolean value indicating whether the property value needs to be written. If the value can be inherited or has a default value, you do not need to write it.

For example, given the *LoadCompProperty* method of type *TReaderProc* and the *StoreCompProperty* method of type *TWriterProc*, you would override *DefineProperties* as follows:

```
void __fastcall TSampleComponent::DefineProperties(TFiler *Filer)
{
    // before we do anything, let the base class define its properties.
    // Note that this example assumes that TSampleComponent derives directly from TComponent
    TComponent::DefineProperties(Filer);
    bool WriteValue;
    if (Filer->Ancestor) // check for inherited value
    {
        if ((TSampleComponent *)Filer->Ancestor)->MyCompProperty == NULL)
            WriteValue = (MyCompProperty != NULL);
        else if ((MyCompProperty == NULL) ||
```

```

        (((TSampleComponent *)Filer->Ancestor)->MyCompProperty->Name !=
        MyCompProperty->Name))
        WriteValue = true;
    else WriteValue = false;
}
else // no inherited value, write property if not null
    WriteValue = (MyCompProperty != NULL);
Filer->DefineProperty("MyCompProperty ", LoadCompProperty, StoreCompProperty, WriteValue);
end;

```


Creating events

An event is a link between an occurrence in the system (such as a user action or a change in focus) and a piece of code that responds to that occurrence. The responding code is an *event handler*, and is nearly always written by the application developer. Events let application developers customize the behavior of components without having to change the classes themselves. This is known as *delegation*.

Events for the most common user actions (such as mouse actions) are built into all the standard components, but you can also define new events. To create events in a component, you need to understand the following:

- What are events?
- Implementing the standard events
- Defining your own events

Events are implemented as properties, so you should already be familiar with the material in Chapter 47, “Creating properties,” before you attempt to create or change a component’s events.

What are events?

An event is a mechanism that links an occurrence to some code. More specifically, an event is a closure that points to a method in a specific class instance.

From the application developer’s perspective, an event is just a name related to a system occurrence, such as *OnClick*, to which specific code can be attached. For example, a push button called *Button1* has an *OnClick* method. By default, C++Builder generates an event handler called *Button1Click* in the form that contains the button and assigns it to *OnClick*. When a click event occurs in the button, the button calls the method assigned to *OnClick*, in this case, *Button1Click*.

To write an event, you need to understand the following:

- Events are closures.
- Events are properties.

- Event types are closure types.
- Event handlers have a return type of void
- Event handlers are optional.

Events are closures

C++Builder uses closures to implement events. A closure is a special pointer type that points to a specific method in a specific class instance. As a component writer, you can treat the closure as a place holder: your code detects that an event occurs, so you call the method (if any) specified by the user for that event.

Closures maintain a hidden pointer to a class instance. When the user assigns a handler to a component's event, the assignment is not just to a method with a particular name, but rather to a specific method of a specific class instance. That instance is usually the form that contains the component, but it need not be.

All controls, for example, inherit a virtual method called *Click* for handling click events:

```
virtual void __fastcall Click(void);
```

The implementation of *Click* calls the user's click-event handler, if one exists. If the user has assigned a handler to a control's *OnClick* event, clicking the control results in that method being called. If no handler is assigned, nothing happens.

Events are properties

Components use properties to implement their events. Unlike most other properties, events do not use methods to implement their read and write parts. Instead, event properties use a private data member the same type as the property.

By convention, the data member's name is the same as the name of the property, but preceded by the letter *F*. For example, the *OnClick* closure is stored in a data member called *FOnClick* of type *TNotifyEvent*, and the declaration of the *OnClick* event property looks like this:

```
class PACKAGE TControl : public TComponent
{
private:
    TNotifyEvent FOnClick;
    :
protected:
    __property TNotifyEvent OnClick = {read=FOnClick, write=FOnClick};
    :
};
```

To learn about *TNotifyEvent* and other event types, see the next section, "Event types are closure types".

As with any other property, you can set or change the value of an event at runtime. The main advantage to having events be properties, however, is that component users can assign handlers to events at design time, using the Object Inspector.

Event types are closure types

Because an event is a pointer to an event handler, the type of the event property must be a closure type. Similarly, any code to be used as an event handler must be an appropriately typed method of a class.

To be compatible with an event of a given type, an event-handler method must have the same number and type of parameters, in the same order, passed in the same way.

C++Builder defines closures for all its standard events. When you create your own events, you can use an existing closure if that is appropriate, or define one of your own.

Event handlers have a return type of void

Event handlers must have a return type of void only. Even though the handler can return only void, you can still get information back from the user's code by passing arguments by reference. When you do this, make sure you assign a valid value to the argument before calling the handler so you do not require the user's code to change the value.

An example of passing arguments by reference to an event handler is the key-pressed event, of type *TKeyPressEvent*. *TKeyPressEvent* defines two arguments, one to indicate which object generated the event, and one to indicate which key was pressed:

```
typedef void __fastcall (__closure *TKeyPressEvent)(TObject *Sender, Char &Key);
```

Normally, the *Key* parameter contains the character pressed by the user. Under certain circumstances, however, the user of the component might want to change the character. One example might be to force all characters to uppercase in an edit control. In that case, the user could define the following handler for keystrokes:

```
void __fastcall TForm1::Edit1KeyPress(TObject *Sender, Char &Key)
{
    Key = UpCase(Key);
}
```

You can also use arguments passed by reference to let the user override the default handling.

Event handlers are optional

When creating events, remember that developers using your components may not attach handlers to them. This means that your component should not fail or generate errors simply because there is no handler attached to a particular event. (The mechanics of calling handlers and dealing with events that have no attached handler are explained in "Calling the event" on page 48-8.)

Events happen almost constantly in a GUI application. Just moving the mouse pointer across a visual component sends numerous mouse-move messages, which the component translates into *OnMouseMove* events. In most cases, developers do not want to handle the mouse-move events, and this should not cause a problem. So the components you create should not require handlers for their events.

Moreover, application developers can write any code they want in an event handler. The components in the VCL and CLX have events written in such a way as to minimize the chance of an event handler generating errors. Obviously, you cannot protect against logic errors in application code, but you can ensure that data structures are initialized before calling events so that application developers do not try to access invalid data.

Implementing the standard events

The controls that come with C++Builder inherit events for the most common occurrences. These are called the *standard events*. Although all these events are built into the controls, they are often **protected**, meaning developers cannot attach handlers to them. When you create a control, you can choose to make events visible to users of your control.

There are three things you need to consider when incorporating the standard events into your controls:

- Identifying standard events
- Making events visible
- Changing the standard event handling

Identifying standard events

There are two categories of standard events: those defined for all controls and those defined only for the standard windowed controls.

Standard events for all controls

The most basic events are defined in the class *TControl*. All controls, whether windowed, graphical, or custom, inherit these events. The following events are available in all controls:

| | | | |
|-------------------|-------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| <i>OnClick</i> | <i>OnDragDrop</i> | <i>OnEndDrag</i> | <i>OnMouseMove</i> |
| <i>OnDblClick</i> | <i>OnDragOver</i> | <i>OnMouseDown</i> | <i>OnMouseUp</i> |

The standard events have corresponding protected virtual methods declared in *TControl*, with names that correspond to the event names. For example, *OnClick* events call a method named *Click*, and *OnEndDrag* events call a method named *DoEndDrag*.

Standard events for standard controls

In addition to the events common to all controls, standard windowed controls (those that descend from *TWinControl* in the VCL and *TWidgetControl* in CLX) have the following events:

| | | |
|----------------|------------------|-------------------|
| <i>OnEnter</i> | <i>OnKeyDown</i> | <i>OnKeyPress</i> |
| <i>OnKeyUp</i> | <i>OnExit</i> | |

Like the standard events in *TControl*, the windowed control events have corresponding methods. The standard key events listed above respond to all normal keystrokes.

VCL To respond to special keystrokes (such as the Alt key), however, you must respond to the `WM_GETDLGCODE` or `CM_WANTSPECIALKEYS` message from Windows. See Chapter 51, “Handling messages and system notifications” for information on writing message handlers.

Making events visible

The declarations of the standard events in *TControl* and *TWinControl* (*TWidgetControl* in CLX) are protected, as are the methods that correspond to them. If you are inheriting from one of these abstract classes and want to make their events accessible at runtime or design time, you need to redeclare the events as either public or published.

Redeclaring a property without specifying its implementation keeps the same implementation methods, but changes the protection level. You can, therefore, take an event that is defined in *TControl* but not made visible, and surface it by declaring it as public or published.

For example, to create a component that surfaces the *OnClick* event at design time, you would add the following to the component’s class declaration.

```
class PACKAGE TMyControl : public TCustomControl
{
    :
    __published:
        __property OnClick;           // Makes OnClick available in the Object Inspector
};
```

Changing the standard event handling

If you want to change the way your component responds to a certain kind of event, you might be tempted to write some code and assign it to the event. As an application developer, that is exactly what you would do. But when you are creating a component, you must keep the event available for developers who use the component.

This is the reason for the protected implementation methods associated with each of the standard events. By overriding the implementation method, you can modify the

internal event handling; and by calling the inherited method you can maintain the standard handling, including the event for the application developer's code.

The order in which you call the methods is significant. As a rule, call the inherited method first, allowing the application developer's event-handler to execute before your customizations (and in some cases, to keep the customizations from executing). There may be times when you want to execute your code before calling the inherited method, however. For example, if the inherited code is somehow dependent on the status of the component and your code changes that status, you should make the changes and then allow the user's code to respond to them.

Suppose you are writing a component and you want to modify the way it responds to mouse clicks. Instead of assigning a handler to the *OnClick* event as an application developer would, you override the protected method *Click*:

```
void __fastcall TMyControl::Click()
{
    TWinControl::Click();      // perform standard handling, including calling handler
    // your customizations go here
}
```

Defining your own events

Defining entirely new events is relatively unusual. There are times, however, when a component introduces behavior that is entirely different from that of any other component, so you will need to define an event for it.

There are the issues you will need to consider when defining an event:

- Triggering the event
- Defining the handler type
- Declaring the event
- Calling the event

Triggering the event

You need to know what triggers the event. For some events, the answer is obvious. For example, a mouse-down event occurs when the user presses the left button on the mouse and Windows sends a *WM_LBUTTONDOWN* message to the application. Upon receiving that message, a component calls its *MouseDown* method, which in turn calls any code the user has attached to the *OnMouseDown* event.

But some events are less clearly tied to specific external occurrences. For example, a scroll bar has an *OnChange* event, which is triggered by several kinds of occurrence, including keystrokes, mouse clicks, and changes in other controls. When defining your events, you must ensure that all the appropriate occurrences call the proper events.

CLX For CLX applications, see “Responding to system notifications using CLX” on page 51-10.

Two kinds of events

There are two kinds of occurrence you might need to provide events for: user interactions and state changes. User-interaction events are nearly always triggered by a message from Windows, indicating that the user did something your component may need to respond to. State-change events may also be related to messages from Windows (focus changes or enabling, for example), but they can also occur through changes in properties or other code.

You have total control over the triggering of the events you define. Define the events with care so that developers are able to understand and use them.

Defining the handler type

Once you determine when the event occurs, you must define how you want the event handled. This means determining the type of the event handler. In most cases, handlers for events you define yourself are either simple notifications or event-specific types. It is also possible to get information back from the handler.

Simple notifications

A notification event is one that only tells you that the particular event happened, with no specific information about when or where. Notifications use the type *TNotifyEvent*, which carries only one parameter, the sender of the event. All a handler for a notification “knows” about the event is what kind of event it was, and what component the event happened to. For example, click events are notifications. When you write a handler for a click event, all you know is that a click occurred and which component was clicked.

Notification is a one-way process. There is no mechanism to provide feedback or prevent further handling of a notification.

Event-specific handlers

In some cases, it is not enough to know which event happened and what component it happened to. For example, if the event is a key-press event, it is likely that the handler will want to know which key the user pressed. In these cases, you need handler types that include parameters for additional information.

If your event was generated in response to a message, it is likely that the parameters you pass to the event handler come directly from the message parameters.

Returning information from the handler

Because all event handlers return void only, the only way to pass information back from a handler is through a parameter passed by reference. Your components can use such information to determine how or whether to process an event after the user’s handler executes.

For example, all the key events (*OnKeyDown*, *OnKeyUp*, and *OnKeyPress*) pass by reference the value of the key pressed in a parameter named *Key*. The event handler can change *Key* so that the application sees a different key as being involved in the event. This is a way to force typed characters to uppercase, for example.

Declaring the event

Once you have determined the type of your event handler, you are ready to declare the closure and the property for the event. Be sure to give the event a meaningful and descriptive name so that users can understand what the event does. Try to be consistent with names of similar properties in other components.

Event names start with “On”

The names of most events in C++Builder begin with “On.” This is just a convention; the compiler does not enforce it. The Object Inspector determines that a property is an event by looking at the type of the property: all closure properties are assumed to be events and appear on the Events page.

Developers expect to find events in the alphabetical list of names starting with “On.” Using other kinds of names is likely to confuse them.

Note The main exception to this rule is that many events that occur before and after some occurrence begin with “Before” and “After.”

Calling the event

You should centralize calls to an event. That is, create a virtual method in your component that calls the application’s event handler (if it assigns one) and provides any default handling.

Putting all the event calls in one place ensures that someone deriving a new component from yours can customize event handling by overriding a single method, rather than searching through your code for places where you call the event.

There are two other considerations when calling the event:

- Empty handlers must be valid.
- Users can override default handling.

Empty handlers must be valid

You should never create a situation in which an empty event handler causes an error, nor should the proper functioning of your component depend on a particular response from the application’s event-handling code.

An empty handler should produce the same result as no handler at all. So the code for calling an application’s event handler should look like this:

```
if (OnClick)
    OnClick(this);
// perform default handling }
```


You should *never* have something like this:

```
if (OnClick)
    OnClick(this);
else
    // perform default handling
```

Users can override default handling

For some kinds of events, developers may want to replace the default handling or even suppress all responses. To allow this, you need to pass an argument by reference to the handler and check for a certain value when the handler returns.

This is in keeping with the rule that an empty handler should have the same effect as no handler at all. Because an empty handler will not change the values of arguments passed by reference, the default handling always takes place after calling the empty handler.

When handling key-press events, for example, the user can suppress the component's default handling of the keystroke by setting the *Key* parameter to a null character. The logic for supporting that looks like this:

```
if (OnKeyPress)
    OnKeyPress(this, &Key);
if (Key != NULL)
    //perform default handling
```

The actual code is a little different from this because it deals with Windows messages, but the logic is the same. By default, the component calls any user-assigned handler, then performs its standard handling. If the user's handler sets *Key* to a null character, the component skips the default handling.

Creating methods

Component methods are no different from any other class's methods. That is, they are member functions built into the structure of a component class. Although there are essentially no restrictions on what you can do with the methods of a component, C++Builder does use some standards you should follow. These guidelines include:

- Avoiding dependencies
- Naming methods
- Protecting methods
- Making methods virtual
- Declaring methods

In general, components should not contain many methods and you should minimize the number of methods that an application needs to call. The features you might be inclined to implement as methods are often better encapsulated into properties. Properties provide an interface that suits the C++Builder environment and are accessible at design time.

Avoiding dependencies

At all times when writing components, minimize the preconditions imposed on the developer. To the greatest extent possible, developers should be able to do anything they want to a component, whenever they want to do it. There will be times when you cannot accommodate that, but your goal should be to come as close as possible.

This list gives you an idea of the kinds of dependencies to avoid:

- Methods that the user *must* call to use the component
- Methods that must execute in a particular order
- Methods that put the component into a state or mode where certain events or methods could be invalid

The best way to handle these situations is to ensure that you provide ways out of them. For example, if calling a method puts your component into a state where calling another method might be invalid, then write that second method so that if an application calls it when the component is in a bad state, the method corrects the state before executing its main code. At a minimum, you should throw an exception in cases when a user calls a method that is invalid.

In other words, if you create a situation where parts of your code depend on each other, the burden should be on *you* to be sure that using the code in incorrect ways does not cause problems. A warning message, for example, is preferable to a system failure if the user does not accommodate your dependencies.

Naming methods

C++Builder imposes no restrictions on what you name methods or their parameters. There are a few conventions that make methods easier for application developers, however. Keep in mind that the nature of a component architecture dictates that many different kinds of people can use your components.

If you are accustomed to writing code that only you or a small group of programmers use, you might not think too much about how you name things. It is a good idea to make your method names clear because people unfamiliar with your code (and even unfamiliar with coding) might have to use your components.

Here are some suggestions for making clear method names:

- Make names descriptive. Use meaningful verbs.

A name like *PasteFromClipboard* is much more informative than simply *Paste* or *PFC*.

- Function names should reflect the nature of what they return.

Although it might be obvious to you as a programmer that a function named *X* returns the horizontal position of something, a name like *GetHorizontalPosition* is more universally understandable.

- If a function return type is void, the function name should be active.

Use active verbs in your function names. For example, *ReadFileNames* is much more helpful than *DoFiles*.

As a final consideration, make sure the method really needs to be a method. A good guideline is that method names have verbs in them. If you find that you create a lot of methods that do not have verbs in their names, consider whether those methods ought to be properties.

Protecting methods

All parts of classes, including data members, methods, and properties, have a level of protection or “visibility,” as explained in “Controlling access” on page 46-4. Choosing the appropriate visibility for a method is simple.

Most methods you write in your components are **public** or **protected**. You rarely need to make a method **private**, unless it is truly specific to that type of component, to the point that even derived components should not have access to it.

Note There is generally no reason for declaring a method (other than an event handler) as **__published**. Doing so looks to the end user exactly as if the method were **public**.

Methods that should be public

Any method that application developers need to call must be declared as **public**. Keep in mind that most method calls occur in event handlers, so methods should avoid tying up system resources or putting the operating system in a state where it cannot respond to the user.

Note Constructors and destructors should always be **public**.

Methods that should be protected

Any implementation methods for the component should be **protected** so that applications cannot call them at the wrong time. If you have methods that application code should not call, but that are called in derived classes, declare them as **protected**.

For example, suppose you have a method that relies on having certain data set up for it beforehand. If you make that method **public**, there is a chance that applications will call it before setting up the data. On the other hand, by making it **protected**, you ensure that applications cannot call it directly. You can then set up other, **public** methods that ensure that data setup occurs before calling the **protected** method.

Property-implementation methods should be declared as virtual **protected** methods. Methods that are so declared allow the application developers to override the property implementation, either augmenting its functionality or replacing it completely. Such properties are fully polymorphic. Keeping access methods **protected** ensures that developers do not accidentally call them, inadvertently modifying a property.

Making methods virtual

You make methods **virtual** when you want different types to be able to execute different code in response to the same method call.

If you create components intended to be used directly by application developers, you can probably make all your methods nonvirtual. On the other hand, if you create

abstract components from which other components will be derived, consider making the added methods **virtual**. This way, derived components can override the inherited **virtual** methods.

Declaring methods

Declaring a method in a component is the same as declaring any class method.

To declare a new method in a component, you do these things:

- Add the declaration to the component's class declaration in the component's header file.
- Write the code that implements the method in the .CPP file of the unit.

The following code shows a component that defines two new methods, one **protected** method and one **public** virtual method. This is the interface definition in the .H file:

```
class PACKAGE TSampleComponent : public TControl
{
protected:
    void __fastcall MakeBigger();
public:
    virtual int __fastcall CalculateArea();
    :
};
```

This is the code in the .CPP file of the unit that implements the methods:

```
void __fastcall TSampleComponent::MakeBigger()
{
    Height = Height + 5;
    Width = Width + 5;
}

int __fastcall TSampleComponent::CalculateArea()
{
    return Width * Height;
}
```

Using graphics in components

Windows provides a powerful graphics device interface (GDI) for drawing device-independent graphics. The GDI, however, imposes extra requirements on the programmer, such as managing graphic resources. C++Builder takes care of all the GDI drudgery, allowing you to focus on productive work instead of searching for lost handles or unreleased resources.

As with any part of the Windows API, you can call GDI functions directly from your C++Builder application. But you will probably find that using C++Builder's encapsulation of the graphic functions is faster and easier.

CLX GDI functions are Windows-specific and do not apply to CLX or cross-platform applications. However, CLX components use the Qt library.

The topics in this section include:

- Overview of graphics
- Using the canvas
- Working with pictures
- Off-screen bitmaps
- Responding to changes

Overview of graphics

C++Builder encapsulates the Windows GDI (Qt in CLX) at several levels. The most important to you as a component writer is the way components display their images on the screen. When calling GDI functions directly, you need to have a handle to a device context, into which you have selected various drawing tools such as pens, brushes, and fonts. After rendering your graphic images, you must restore the device context to its original state before disposing of it.

Instead of forcing you to deal with graphics at a detailed level, C++Builder provides a simple yet complete interface: your component's *Canvas* property. The canvas ensures that it has a valid device context, and releases the context when you are not

using it. Similarly, the canvas has its own properties representing the current pen, brush, and font.

The canvas manages all these resources for you, so you need not concern yourself with creating, selecting, and releasing things like pen handles. You just tell the canvas what kind of pen it should use, and it takes care of the rest.

One of the benefits of letting C++Builder manage graphic resources is that it can cache resources for later use, which can speed up repetitive operations. For example, if you have a program that repeatedly creates, uses, and disposes of a particular kind of pen tool, you need to repeat those steps each time you use it. Because C++Builder caches graphic resources, chances are good that a tool you use repeatedly is still in the cache, so instead of having to recreate a tool, C++Builder uses an existing one.

An example of this is an application that has dozens of forms open, with hundreds of controls. Each of these controls might have one or more *TFont* properties. Though this could result in hundreds or thousands of instances of *TFont* objects, most applications wind up using only two or three font handles, thanks to a font cache.

Here are two examples of how simple C++Builder's graphics code can be. The first uses standard GDI functions to draw a yellow ellipse outlined in blue on a window, the way you would using other development tools. The second uses a canvas to draw the same ellipse in an application written with C++Builder.

This is the `ObjectWindows` code:

```
void TMyWindow::Paint(TDC& PaintDC, bool erase, TRect& rect)
{
    HPEN PenHandle, OldPenHandle;
    HBRUSH BrushHandle, OldBrushHandle;
    PenHandle = CreatePen(PS_SOLID, 1, RGB(0, 0, 255));
    OldPenHandle = SelectObject(PaintDC, PenHandle);
    BrushHandle = CreateSolidBrush(RGB(255, 255, 0));
    OldBrushHandle = SelectObject(PaintDC, BrushHandle);
    Ellipse(10, 20, 50, 50);
    SelectObject(OldBrushHandle);
    DeleteObject(BrushHandle);
    SelectObject(OldPenHandle);
    DeleteObject(PenHandle);
}
```

This C++Builder code accomplishes the same thing:

```
void __fastcall TForm1::FormPaint(TObject *Sender)
{
    Canvas->Pen->Color = clBlue;
    Canvas->Brush->Color = clYellow;
    Canvas->Ellipse(10, 20, 50, 50);
}
```


Using the canvas

The canvas class encapsulates graphics controls at several levels, including high-level functions for drawing individual lines, shapes, and text; intermediate properties for manipulating the drawing capabilities of the canvas; and in the VCL, provides low-level access to the Windows GDI.

Table 50.1 summarizes the capabilities of the canvas.

Table 50.1 Canvas capability summary

| Level | Operation | Tools |
|--------------|-------------------------------|---|
| High | Drawing lines and shapes | Methods such as <i>MoveTo</i> , <i>LineTo</i> , <i>Rectangle</i> , and <i>Ellipse</i> |
| | Displaying and measuring text | <i>TextOut</i> , <i>TextHeight</i> , <i>TextWidth</i> , and <i>TextRect</i> methods |
| | Filling areas | <i>FillRect</i> and <i>FloodFill</i> methods |
| Intermediate | Customizing text and graphics | <i>Pen</i> , <i>Brush</i> , and <i>Font</i> properties |
| | Manipulating pixels | <i>Pixels</i> property. |
| | Copying and merging images | <i>Draw</i> , <i>StretchDraw</i> , <i>BrushCopy</i> , and <i>CopyRect</i> methods; <i>CopyMode</i> property |
| Low | Calling Windows GDI functions | <i>Handle</i> property |

For detailed information on canvas classes and their methods and properties, see online Help.

Working with pictures

Most of the graphics work you do in C++Builder is limited to drawing directly on the canvases of components and forms. C++Builder also provides for handling stand-alone graphic images, such as bitmaps, metafiles, and icons, including automatic management of palettes.

There are three important aspects to working with pictures in C++Builder:

- Using a picture, graphic, or canvas
- Loading and storing graphics
- Handling palettes

Using a picture, graphic, or canvas

There are three kinds of classes in C++Builder that deal with graphics:

- A *canvas* represents a bitmapped drawing surface on a form, graphic control, printer, or bitmap. A canvas is always a property of something else, never a stand-alone class.

- A *graphic* represents a graphic image of the sort usually found in a file or resource, such as a bitmap, icon, or metafile. C++Builder defines classes *TBitmap*, *TIcon*, and *TMetafile* (VCL only), all descended from a generic *TGraphic*. You can also define your own graphic classes. By defining a minimal standard interface for all graphics, *TGraphic* provides a simple mechanism for applications to use different kinds of graphics easily.
- A *picture* is a container for a graphic, meaning it could contain any of the graphic classes. That is, an item of type *TPicture* can contain a bitmap, an icon, a metafile, or a user-defined graphic type, and an application can access them all in the same way through the picture class. For example, the image control has a property called *Picture*, of type *TPicture*, enabling the control to display images from many kinds of graphics.

Keep in mind that a picture class always has a graphic, and a graphic might have a canvas. (The only standard graphic that has a canvas is *TBitmap*.) Normally, when dealing with a picture, you work only with the parts of the graphic class exposed through *TPicture*. If you need access to the specifics of the graphic class itself, you can refer to the picture's *Graphic* property.

Loading and storing graphics

All pictures and graphics in C++Builder can load their images from files and store them back again (or into different files). You can load or store the image of a picture at any time.

CLX You can also load images from and save them to a Qt MIME source, or a stream object if creating CLX components.

To load an image into a picture from a file, call the picture's *LoadFromFile* method. To save an image from a picture into a file, call the picture's *SaveToFile* method.

LoadFromFile and *SaveToFile* each take the name of a file as the only parameter. *LoadFromFile* uses the extension of the file name to determine what kind of graphic object it will create and load. *SaveToFile* saves whatever type of file is appropriate for the type of graphic object being saved.

To load a bitmap into an image control's picture, for example, pass the name of a bitmap file to the picture's *LoadFromFile* method:

```
void __fastcall TForm1::FormCreate(TObject *Sender)
{
    Image1->Picture->LoadFromFile("c:\\windows\\athena.bmp");
}
```

The picture recognizes .bmp as the standard extension for bitmap files, so it creates its graphic as a *TBitmap*, then calls that graphic's *LoadFromFile* method. Because the graphic is a bitmap, it loads the image from the file as a bitmap.

Handling palettes

For VCL and CLX components, when running on a palette-based device (typically, a 256-color video mode), C++Builder controls automatically support palette realization. That is, if you have a control that has a palette, you can use two methods inherited from *TControl* to control how Windows accommodates that palette.

Palette support for controls has these two aspects:

- Specifying a palette for a control
- Responding to palette changes

Most controls have no need for a palette, but controls that contain “rich color” graphic images (such as the image control) might need to interact with Windows and the screen device driver to ensure the proper appearance of the control. Windows refers to this process as *realizing* palettes.

Realizing palettes is the process of ensuring that the foremost window uses its full palette, and that windows in the background use as much of their palettes as possible, then map any other colors to the closest available colors in the “real” palette. As windows move in front of one another, Windows continually realizes the palettes.

Note C++Builder itself provides no specific support for creating or maintaining palettes, other than in bitmaps. If you have a palette handle, however, C++Builder controls can manage it for you.

Specifying a palette for a control

To specify a palette for a VCL and CLX control, override the control’s *GetPalette* method to return the handle of the palette.

Specifying the palette for a control does these things for your application:

- It tells the application that your control’s palette needs to be realized.
- It designates the palette to use for realization.

Responding to palette changes

If your VCL and CLX control specifies a palette by overriding *GetPalette*, C++Builder automatically takes care of responding to palette messages from Windows. The method that handles the palette messages is *PaletteChanged*.

The primary role of *PaletteChanged* is to determine whether to realize the control’s palette in the foreground or the background. Windows handles this realization of palettes by making the topmost window have a foreground palette, with other windows resolved in background palettes. C++Builder goes one step further, in that it also realizes palettes for controls within a window in tab order. The only time you might need to override this default behavior is if you want a control that is not first in tab order to have the foreground palette.

Off-screen bitmaps

When drawing complex graphic images, a common technique in graphics programming is to create an off-screen bitmap, draw the image on the bitmap, and then copy the complete image from the bitmap to the final destination onscreen. Using an off-screen image reduces flicker caused by repeated drawing directly to the screen.

The bitmap class in C++Builder, which represents bitmapped images in resources and files, can also work as an off-screen image.

There are two main aspects to working with off-screen bitmaps:

- Creating and managing off-screen bitmaps.
- Copying bitmapped images.

Creating and managing off-screen bitmaps

When creating complex graphic images, avoid drawing them directly on a canvas that appears onscreen. Instead of drawing on the canvas for a form or control, you can construct a bitmap object, draw on its canvas, and then copy its completed image to the onscreen canvas. The most common use of an offscreen bitmap is in the *Paint* method of a graphic control.

For an example of painting a complex image on an offscreen bitmap, see the source code for the Gauge control from the Samples page of the Component palette. The gauge draws its different shapes and text on an offscreen bitmap before copying them to the screen. Source code for the gauge is in the file Cgauges.cpp in the Examples\Controls\Source subdirectory.

Copying bitmapped images

C++Builder provides four different ways to copy images from one canvas to another. Depending on the effect you want to create, you call different methods.

Table 50.2 summarizes the image-copying methods in canvas objects.

Table 50.2 Image-copying methods

| To create this effect | Call this method |
|--|------------------|
| Copy an entire graphic. | Draw |
| Copy and resize a graphic. | StretchDraw |
| Copy part of a canvas. | CopyRect |
| Copy a bitmap with raster operations. | BrushCopy (VCL) |
| Copy a graphic repeatedly to tile an area. | TiledDraw(C LX) |

Responding to changes

All graphic objects, including canvases and their owned objects (pens, brushes, and fonts) have events built into them for responding to changes in the object. By using these events, you can make your components (or the applications that use them) respond to changes by redrawing their images.

Responding to changes in graphic objects is particularly important if you publish them as part of the design-time interface of your components. The only way to ensure that the design-time appearance of the component matches the properties set in the Object Inspector is to respond to changes in the objects.

To respond to changes in a graphic object, assign a method to the class's *OnChange* event.

The shape component publishes properties representing the pen and brush it uses to draw its shape. The component's constructor assigns a method to the *OnChange* event of each, causing the component to refresh its image if either the pen or brush changes. Although the shape component is written in Object Pascal, the following is a C++ translation of the shape component with a new name, *TMyShape*.

This is the class declaration in the header file:

```
class PACKAGE TMyShape : public TGraphicControl
{
private:
protected:
public:
    virtual __fastcall TMyShape(TComponent* Owner);
__published:
    TPen *FPen;
    TBrush *FBrush;
    void __fastcall StyleChanged(TObject *Sender);
};
```

This is the code in the .CPP file:

```
__fastcall TMyShape::TMyShape(TComponent* Owner)
: TGraphicControl(Owner)
{
    Width = 65;
    Height = 65;
    FPen = new TPen;
    FPen->OnChange = StyleChanged;
    FBrush = new TBrush;
    FBrush->OnChange = StyleChanged;
}

void __fastcall TMyShape::StyleChanged(TObject *Sender)
{
    Invalidate();
}
```


Handling messages and system notifications

Components often need to respond to notifications from the underlying operating system. The operating system informs the application of occurrences such as what the user does with the mouse and keyboard. Some controls also generate notifications, such as the results from user actions such as selecting an item in a list box. The VCL and CLX handle most of the common notifications already. It is possible, however, that you will need to write your own code for handling such notifications.

In the VCL, notifications arrive in the form of *messages*. These messages can come from any source, including Windows, VCL components, and components you have defined. There are three aspects to working with messages:

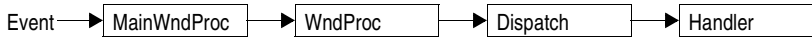
- Understanding the message-handling system
- Changing message handling
- Creating new message handlers

In CLX, notifications arrive in the form of *signals* and *system events* instead of Windows messages. See “Responding to system notifications using CLX” on page 51-10 for details on how to work with system notifications in CLX.

Understanding the message-handling system

All VCL classes have a built-in mechanism for handling messages, called *message-handling methods* or *message handlers*. The basic idea of message handlers is that the class receives messages of some sort and dispatches them, calling one of a set of specified methods depending on the message received. If no specific method exists for a particular message, there is a default handler.

The following diagram shows the message-dispatch system:



The Visual Component Library defines a message-dispatching system that translates all Windows messages (including user-defined messages) directed to a particular class into method calls. You should never need to alter this message-dispatch mechanism. All you will need to do is create message-handling methods. See the section “Declaring a new message-handling method” on page 51-7 for more on this subject.

What’s in a Windows message?

A Windows message can be thought of as a data structure that contains several useful data members. The most important of these is an integer-size value that identifies the message. Windows defines a lot of messages, and the `MESSAGES.HPP` file declares identifiers for all of them.

Windows programmers are used to working with the Windows definitions that identify a message, such as `WM_COMMAND` or `WM_PAINT`. A traditional Windows program contains a window procedure that serves as a callback for system generated messages. In this window procedure there is usually a large switch statement with case labels for each message this window intends to handle.

Additional useful information is passed to this window procedure in two parameters, *wParam* and *lParam*, for *word parameter* and *long parameter*. Often, each parameter contains more than one piece of information and it is necessary to pull out the relevant portions with Windows macros such as `LOWORD` and `HIWORD`. For example, calling `HIWORD(lParam)` yields the high word of this parameter.

Originally, Windows programmers had to remember or look up in the Windows API what information each parameter contained. Now Windows uses *message crackers* to simplify the syntax associated with handling a Windows message and its associated parameters. With message crackers, instead of using a large switch statement that unpacks all of the information into the parameters, you can simply associate a handler function with the message. If you include `WINDOWSX.H` into a standard Windows program, the `HANDLE_MSG` macro is available to your program so you can write code like this:

```

void MyKeyDownHandler( HWND hwnd, UINT nVirtKey, BOOL fDown, int CRepeat, UINT flags )
{
    :
}

LRESULT MyWndProc( HWND hwnd, UINT Message, WPARAM wParam, LPARAM lParam )
{
    switch( Message )
    {
        HANDLE_MSG( hwnd, WM_KEYDOWN, MyKeyDownHandler );
        :
    }
}

```


Using this style of message cracking makes it clearer that messages are being dispatched to a particular handler. Also, you can give significant names to the parameter list for your handler function. It is easier to understand a function that takes a parameter called *nVirtKey*, which is the value for *wParam* in a *WM_KEYDOWN* message.

Dispatching messages

When an application creates a window, it registers a *window procedure* with the Windows kernel. The window procedure is the routine that handles messages for the window. Traditionally, the window procedure contains a huge **switch** statement with entries for each message the window has to handle. Keep in mind that “window” in this sense means just about anything on the screen: each window, each control, and so on. Every time you create a new type of window, you have to create a complete window procedure.

The VCL simplifies message dispatching in several ways:

- Each component inherits a complete message-dispatching system.
- The dispatch system has default handling. You define handlers only for messages you need to respond to specially.
- You can modify small parts of the message handling and rely on inherited methods for most processing.

The greatest benefit of this message dispatch system is that you can safely send any message to any component at any time. If the component does not have a handler defined for the message, the default handling takes care of it, usually by ignoring the message.

Tracing the flow of messages

The VCL registers a method called *MainWndProc* as the window procedure for each type of component in an application. *MainWndProc* contains an exception-handling block, passing the message structure from Windows to a virtual method called *WndProc* and handling any exceptions by calling the application class’s *HandleException* method.

MainWndProc is a nonvirtual method that contains no special handling for any particular messages. Customizations take place in *WndProc*, since each component type can override the method to suit its particular needs.

WndProc methods check for any special conditions that affect their processing so they can “trap” unwanted messages. For example, while being dragged, components ignore keyboard events, so the *WndProc* method of *TWinControl* passes along keyboard events only if the component is not being dragged. Ultimately, *WndProc* calls *Dispatch*, a nonvirtual method inherited from *TObject*, which determines which method to call to handle the message.

Dispatch uses the *Msg* data member of the message structure to determine how to dispatch a particular message. If the component defines a handler for that particular message, *Dispatch* calls the method. If the component does not define a handler for that message, *Dispatch* calls *DefaultHandler*.

Changing message handling

Before changing the message handling of your components, make sure that is what you really want to do. The VCL translates most Windows messages into events that both the component writer and the component user can handle. Rather than changing the message-handling behavior, you should probably change the event-handling behavior.

To change message handling in VCL components, you override the message-handling method. You can also prevent a component from handling a message under certain circumstances by trapping the message.

Overriding the handler method

To change the way a component handles a particular message, you override the message-handling method for that message. If the component does not already handle the particular message, you need to declare a new message-handling method.

To override a message-handling method,

- 1 Declare a new method in your component with the same name as the method it overrides in the protected part of the component declaration.
- 2 Map the method to the message it overrides by using three macros.

The macros take this form:

```
BEGIN_MESSAGE_MAP
    MESSAGE_HANDLER(parameter1, parameter2, parameter3)
END_MESSAGE_MAP
```

Parameter1 is the message index as Windows defines it, *parameter2* is the message structure type, and *parameter3* is the name of the message method.

You can include as many *MESSAGE_HANDLER* macros as you want between the *BEGIN_MESSAGE_MAP* and *END_MESSAGE_MAP* macros.

For example, to override a component's handling of the *WM_PAINT* message, you redeclare the *WMPaint* method, and with three macros, map the method to the *WM_PAINT* message:

```
class PACKAGE TMyComponent : public TComponent
{
protected:
    void __fastcall WMPaint(TWMPaint* Message);

    BEGIN_MESSAGE_MAP
        MESSAGE_HANDLER(WM_PAINT, TWMPaint, WMPaint)
    END_MESSAGE_MAP(TComponent)
};
```

Using message parameters

Once inside a message-handling method, your component has access to all the parameters of the message structure. Because the parameter passed to the message handler is a pointer, the handler can change the values of the parameters if necessary. The only parameter that changes frequently is the return value for the message: the value returned by the *SendMessage* call that sends the message.

Because the type of the *Message* parameter in the message-handling method varies with the message being handled, you should refer to the documentation on Windows messages for the names and meanings of individual parameters. If for some reason you need to refer to the message parameters by their old-style names (*WParam*, *LParam*, and so on), you can typecast *Message* to the generic type *TMessage*, which uses those parameter names.

Trapping messages

Under some circumstances, you might want your components to ignore messages. That is, you want to keep the component from dispatching the message to its handler. To trap a message, you override the virtual method *WndProc*.

For VCL components, the *WndProc* method screens messages before passing them to the *Dispatch* method, which in turn determines which method gets to handle the message. By overriding *WndProc*, your component gets a chance to filter out messages before dispatching them. An override of *WndProc* for a control derived from *TWinControl* looks like this:

```
void __fastcall TMyControl::WndProc(TMessage& Message)
{
    // tests to determine whether to continue processing
    if (Message.Msg != WM_LBUTTONDOWN)
        TWinControl::WndProc(Message);
}
```

The *TControl* component defines entire ranges of mouse messages that it filters when a user is dragging and dropping controls. Overriding *WndProc* helps this in two ways:

- It can filter ranges of messages instead of having to specify handlers for each one.
- It can preclude dispatching the message at all, so the handlers are never called.

Here is part of the *WndProc* method for *TControl* as it is implemented in VCL in Object Pascal:

```
procedure TControl.WndProc(var Message: TMessage);
begin
    ...
    if (Message.Msg >= WM_MOUSEFIRST) and (Message.Msg <= WM_MOUSELAST) then
        if Dragging then { handle dragging specially }
            DragMouseMsg(TWMMouse(Message))
```

```
        else
            :                               { handle others normally }
        end;
        :                                   { otherwise process normally }
    end;
```

Creating new message handlers

Because the VCL provides handlers for most common messages, the time you will most likely need to create new message handlers is when you define your own messages. Working with user-defined messages has three aspects:

- Defining your own messages.
- Declaring a new message-handling method.
- Sending messages.

Defining your own messages

A number of the standard components define messages for internal use. The most common reasons for defining messages are broadcasting information not covered by standard messages and notification of state changes. You can define your own messages in the VCL.

Defining a message is a two-step process. The steps are:

- 1 Declaring a message identifier.
- 2 Declaring a message-structure type.

Declaring a message identifier

A message identifier is an integer-sized constant. Windows reserves the messages below 1,024 for its own use, so when you declare your own messages you should start above that level.

The constant *WM_APP* represents the starting number for user-defined messages. When defining message identifiers, you should base them on *WM_APP*.

Be aware that some standard Windows controls use messages in the user-defined range. These include list boxes, combo boxes, edit boxes, and command buttons. If you derive a component from one of these and want to define a new message for it, be sure to check the *MESSAGES.HPP* file to see which messages Windows already defines for that control.

The following code shows two user-defined messages.

```
#define MY_MYFIRSTMESSAGE  (WM_APP + 400)
#define MY_MYSECONDMESSAGE (WM_APP + 401)
```

Declaring a message-structure type

If you want to give useful names to the parameters of your message, you need to declare a message-structure type for that message. The message-structure is the type of the parameter passed to the message-handling method. If you do not use the message's parameters, or if you want to use the old-style parameter notation (*wParam*, *lParam*, and so on), you can use the default message-structure, *TMessage*.

To declare a message-structure type, follow these conventions:

- 1 Name the structure type after the message, preceded by a *T*.
- 2 Call the first data member in the structure *Msg*, of type *TMsgParam*.
- 3 Define the next two bytes to correspond to the *Word* parameter, and the next two bytes as unused.

Or

Define the next four bytes to correspond to the *Longint* parameter.

- 4 Add a final data member called *Result*, of type *Longint*.

For example, here is the message structure for all mouse messages, *TWMKey*:

```
struct TWMKey
{
    Cardinal Msg;                // first parameter is the message ID
    Word CharCode;              // this is the first wParam
    Word Unused;
    Longint KeyData;            // this is the lParam
    Longint Result;             // this is the result data member
};
```

Declaring a new message-handling method

There are two sets of circumstances that require you to declare new message-handling methods:

- Your component needs to handle a Windows message that is not already handled by the standard components.
- You have defined your own message for use by your components.

To declare a message-handling method, do the following:

- 1 Declare the method in a **protected** part of the component's class declaration using the `BEGIN_MESSAGE_MAP ... END_MESSAGE_MAP` macros.
- 2 Be sure that the method returns `void`.
- 3 Name the method after the message it handles, but without any underline characters.
- 4 Pass a pointer called *Message* of the type of the message structure.
- 5 Map the method to the message using macros.

- 6 Within the message method implementation, write code for any handling specific to the component.
- 7 Call the inherited message handler.

Here is the declaration, for example, of a message handler for a user-defined message called `CM_CHANGECOLOR`.

```
#define CM_CHANGECOLOR (WM_APP + 400)

class TMyControl : public TControl
{
protected:
    void __fastcall CMChangeColor(TMessage &Message);

BEGIN_MESSAGE_MAP
    MESSAGE_HANDLER(CM_CHANGECOLOR, TMessage, CMChangeColor)
END_MESSAGE_MAP(TControl)
};

void __fastcall TMyControl::CMChangeColor(TMessage &Message)
{
    Color = Message.LParam;                // set color from long parameter
    TControl::CMChangeColor(Message);      // call the inherited message handler
}
```

Sending messages

Typically, an application sends message to send notifications of state changes or to broadcast information. Your component can broadcast messages to all the controls in a form, send messages to a particular control (or to the application itself), or even send messages to itself.

There are several different ways to send a Windows message. Which method you use depends on why you are sending the message. The following topics describe the different ways to send Windows messages.

Broadcasting a message to all controls in a form

When your component changes global settings that affect all of the controls in a form or other container, you may want to send a message to those controls so that they can update themselves appropriately. Not every control may need to respond to the notification, but by broadcasting the message, you can inform all controls that know how to respond and allow the other controls to ignore the message.

To broadcast a message to all the controls in another control, use the *Broadcast* method. Before you broadcast a message, you fill out a message structure with the information you want to convey. (See “Declaring a message-structure type” on page 51-7 for information on message structures.)

```
TMessage Msg;
Msg.Msg = MY_MYCUSTOMMESSAGE;
Msg.WParam = 0;
Msg.LParam = (int)(this);
Msg.Result = 0;
```

Then, pass this message structure to the parent of all the controls you want to notify. This can be any control in the application. For example, it can be the parent of the control you are writing:

```
Parent->Broadcast(Msg);
```

It can be the form that contains your control:

```
GetParentForm(this)>Broadcast(Msg);
```

It can be the active form:

```
Screen->ActiveForm->Broadcast(Msg);
```

It can even be all the forms in your application:

```
for (int i = 0; i < Screen->FormCount; i++)
    Screen->Forms[i]>Broadcast(Msg);
```

Calling a control's message handler directly

Sometimes there is only a single control that needs to respond to your message. If you know the control that should receive your message, the simplest and most straightforward way to send the message is to call the control's *Perform* method.

There are two main reasons why you call a control's *Perform* method:

- You want to trigger the same response that the control makes to a standard Windows (or other) message. For example, when a grid control receives a keystroke message, it creates an inline edit control and then sends the keystroke message on to the edit control.
- You may know what control you want to notify, but not know what type of control it is. Because you don't know the type of the target control, you can't any of its specialized methods, but all controls have message-handling capabilities so you can always send a message. If the control has a message handler for the message you send, it will respond appropriately. Otherwise, it will ignore the message you send and return 0.

To call the *Perform* method, you do not need to create a message structure. You need only pass the message identifier, *WParam*, and *LParam* as parameters. *Perform* returns the message result.

Sending a message using the Windows message queue

In a multithreaded application, you can't just call the *Perform* method because the target control is in a different thread than the one that is executing. However, by using the Windows message queue, you can safely communicate with other threads. Message handling always occurs in the main VCL thread, but you can send a message using the Windows message queue from any thread in the application. A call to *SendMessage* is synchronous. That is, *SendMessage* does not return until the target control has handled the message, even if it is in another thread.

Use the Windows API call, *SendMessage*, to send a message to a control using the Windows message queue. *SendMessage* takes the same parameters as the *Perform*

method, except that you must identify the target control by passing its Window handle. Thus, instead of writing

```
MsgResult = TargetControl->Perform(MY_MYMESSAGE, 0, 0);
```

you would write

```
MsgResult = SendMessage(TargetControl->Handle, MYMESSAGE, 0, 0);
```

For more information on the *SendMessage* function, see the Microsoft MSDN documentation. For more information on writing multiple threads that may be executing simultaneously, see “Coordinating threads” on page 11-7.

Sending a message that does not execute immediately

There are times you may want to send a message but you do not know whether it is safe for the target of the message to execute right away. For example, if the code that sends a message is called from an event handler on the target control, you may want to make sure that the event handler has finished executing before the control executes your message. You can handle this situation as long as you do not need to know the message result.

Use the Windows API call, *PostMessage*, to send a message to a control but allow the control to wait until it has finished any other messages before it handles yours. *PostMessage* takes exactly the same parameters as *SendMessage*.

For more information on the *PostMessage* function, see the Microsoft MSDN documentation.

Responding to system notifications using CLX

When using Windows, the operating system sends notifications directly to your application and the controls it contains using Windows messages. This approach, however, is not appropriate for CLX, because CLX is a cross-platform library, and Windows messages are not used on Linux. Instead, CLX uses a platform-neutral way to respond to system notifications

On CLX, the analog to Windows messages is a system of signals from the underlying widget layer. Whereas in the VCL, Windows messages can originate either from the operating system or from the native Windows controls that the VCL wraps, the widget layer that CLX uses makes a distinction between these two. If the notification originates from a widget, it is called a signal. If the notification originates with the operating system, it is called a system event. The widget layer communicates system events to your CLX components as a signal of type *event*.

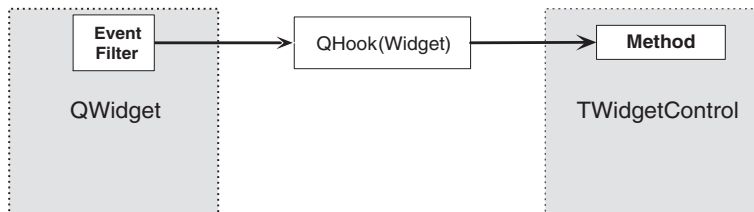
Responding to signals

The underlying widget layer emits a variety of signals, each of which represents a different type of notification. These signals include system events (the event signal) as well as notifications that are specific to the widget that generates them. For example, all widgets generate a destroyed signal when the widget is freed, trackbar

widgets generate a *valueChanged* signal, header controls generate a *sectionClicked* signal, and so on.

Each CLX component responds to signals from its underlying widget by assigning a method as the handler for the signal. It does this using a special hook object that is associated with the underlying widget. The hook object is a lightweight object that is really just a collection of method pointers, each method pointer specific to a particular signal. When a method of the CLX component has been assigned to the hook object as the handler for a specific signal, then every time the widget generates the specific signal, the method on the CLX component gets called. This is illustrated in Figure 51.1.

Figure 51.1 Signal routing



Note The methods for each hook object are declared in the Qt unit. Check `qt.hpp` to see the methods available for a given hook object. The methods are flattened into global routines with names that reflect the hook object to which they belong. For example, all methods on the hook object associated with the application widget (`QApplication`) begin with `'QApplication_hook.'` This flattening is necessary so that the Object Pascal CLX object can access the methods of the C++ hook object.

Assigning custom signal handlers

Many CLX controls already assign methods to handle signals from the underlying widget. Typically, these methods are private and not virtual. Thus, if you want to write your own method to respond to a signal, you must assign your own method to the hook object associated with your widget. To do this, override the *HookEvents* method.

Note If the signal to which you want to respond is a system event notification, you must not use an override of the *HookEvents* method. For details on how to respond to system events, see “Responding to system events” later.

In your override of the *HookEvents* method, declare a variable of type *TMethod*. Then for each method you want to assign to the hook object as a signal handler, do the following:

- 1 Initialize the variable of type *TMethod* to represent a method handler for the signal.
- 2 Assign this variable to the hook object. You can access the hook object using the *Hooks* property that your component inherits from *THandleComponent* or *TWidgetControl*.

In your override, always call the inherited *HookEvents* method so that the signal handlers that base classes assign are also hooked up.

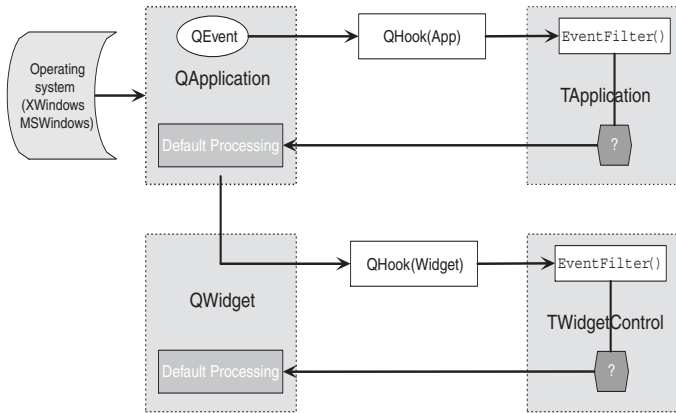
The following code is a translation of the *HookEvents* method of *TTrackBar*. It illustrates how to override the *HookEvents* method to add custom signal handlers.

```
virtual void __fastcall TTrackBar::HookEvents(void)
{
    TMethod Method;
    // initialize Method to represent a handler for the QSlider valueChanged signal
    // ValueChangedHook is a method of TTrackBar that responds to the signal.
    QSlider_valueChanged_Event(Method) = @ValueChangedHook;
    // Assign Method to the hook object. Note that you can cast Hooks to the
    // type of hook object associated with the underlying widget.
    QSlider_hook_hook_valueChanged(dynamic_cast<QSlider_hookH>(Hooks), Method);
    // Repeat the process for the sliderMoved event:
    QSlider_sliderMoved_Event(Method) := @ValueChangedHook;
    QSlider_hook_hook_valueChanged(dynamic_cast<QSlider_hookH>(Hooks), Method);
    // Call the inherited method so that inherited signal handlers are hooked up:
    TWidgetControl::HookEvents();
}
```

Responding to system events

When the widget layer receives an event notification from the operating system, it generates a special event object (*QEvent* or one of its descendants) to represent the event. The event object contains read-only information about the event that occurred. The type of the event object indicates the type of event that occurred.

The widget layer notifies your CLX component of system events using a special signal of type event. It passes the *QEvent* object to the signal handler for the event. The processing of the event signal is a bit more complicated than processing other signals because it goes first to the application object. This means an application has two opportunities to respond to a system event: once at the application level (*TApplication*) and once at the level of the individual component (your *TWidgetControl* or *THandleComponent* descendant.) All of these classes (*TApplication*, *TWidgetControl*, and *THandleComponent*) already assign a signal handler for the event signal from the widget layer. That is, all system events are automatically directed to the *EventFilter* method, which plays a role similar to the *WndProc* method on VCL controls. The handling of system events is illustrated in Figure 51.2.

Figure 51.2 System event routing

EventFilter handles most of the commonly used system notifications, translating them into the events that are introduced by your component's base classes. Thus, for example, the *EventFilter* method of *TWidgetControl* responds to mouse events (*QMouseEvent*) by generating the *OnMouseDown*, *OnMouseMove*, and *OnMouseUp* events, to keyboard events (*QKeyEvent*) by generating the *OnKeyDown*, *OnKeyPress*, *OnKeyString*, and *OnKeyUp* events, and so on.

Commonly used events

The *EventFilter* method of *TWidgetControl* handles many of the common system notifications by calling on protected methods that are introduced in *TControl* or *TWidgetControl*. Most of these methods are virtual, so that you can override them when writing your own components and implement your own responses to the system event. When overriding these methods, you do not need to worry about working with the event object or (in most cases) any of the other objects in the underlying widget layer.

When you want your CLX component to respond to system notifications, it is a good idea to first check whether there is a protected method that already responds to the notification. You can check the documentation for *TControl* or *TWidgetControl* (and any other base classes from which you derive your component) to see if there is a protected method that responds to the event in which you are interested. Table 51.1 lists many of the most commonly used protected methods from *TControl* and *TWidgetControl* that you can use.

Table 51.1 *TWidgetControl* protected methods for responding to system notifications

| Method | Description |
|----------------------|--|
| <i>BeginAutoDrag</i> | Called when the user clicks the left mouse button if the control has a <i>DragMode</i> of <i>dmAutomatic</i> . |
| <i>Click</i> | Called when the user releases the mouse button over the control. |
| <i>DbClick</i> | Called when the user double-clicks with the mouse over the control. |
| <i>DoMouseWheel</i> | Called when the user rotates the mouse wheel. |

Table 51.1 TWidgetControl protected methods for responding to system notifications (continued)

| Method | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| <i>DragOver</i> | Called when the user drags the mouse cursor over the control. |
| <i>KeyDown</i> | Called when the user presses a key while the control has focus. |
| <i>KeyPress</i> | Called after <i>KeyDown</i> if <i>KeyDown</i> does not handle the keystroke. |
| <i>KeyString</i> | Called when the user enters a keystroke when the system uses a multibyte character system. |
| <i>KeyUp</i> | Called when the user releases a key while the control has focus. |
| <i>MouseDown</i> | Called when the user clicks the mouse button over the control. |
| <i>MouseMove</i> | Called when the user moves the mouse cursor over the control. |
| <i>MouseUp</i> | Called when the user releases the mouse button over the control. |
| <i>PaintRequest</i> | Called when the system needs to repaint the control. |
| <i>WidgetDestroyed</i> | Called when a widget underlying a control is destroyed. |

In the override, call the inherited method so that any default processes still take place. responds to signals

Note In addition to the methods that respond to system events, controls include a number of similar methods that originate with *TControl* or *TWidgetControl* to notify the control of various events. Although these do not respond to system events, they perform the same task as many Windows messages that are sent to VCL controls. Table 51.1 lists some of these methods.

Table 51.2 TWidgetControl protected methods for responding to events from controls

| Method | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| <i>BoundsChanged</i> | Called when the control is resized. |
| <i>ColorChanged</i> | Called when the color of the control changes. |
| <i>CursorChanged</i> | Called when the cursor changes shape. The mouse cursor assumes this shape when it's over this widget. |
| <i>EnabledChanged</i> | Called when an application changes the enabled state of a window or control. |
| <i>FontChanged</i> | Called when the collection of font resources changes. |
| <i>PaletteChanged</i> | Called when the widget's palette changes. |
| <i>ShowHintChanged</i> | Called when Help hints are displayed or hidden on a control. |
| <i>StyleChanged</i> | Called when the window or control's GUI styles change. |
| <i>TabStopChanged</i> | Called when the tab order on the form changes. |
| <i>TextChanged</i> | Called when the control's text changes. |
| <i>VisibleChanged</i> | Called when a control is hidden or shown. |

Overriding the EventFilter method

If you want to respond to an event notification and there is no protected method for that event that you can override, you can override the *EventFilter* method itself. In your override, check the type of the *Event* parameter of the *EventFilter* method, and perform your special processing when it represents the type of notification to which

you want to respond. You can prevent further processing of the event notification by having your *EventFilter* method return **true**.

Note See the Qt documentation from TrollTech for details about the different types of *QEvent* objects.

The following code is a translation of the *EventFilter* method on *TCustomControl*. It illustrates how to obtain the event type from the *QEvent* object when overriding *EventFilter*. Note that, although it is not shown here, you can cast the *QEvent* object to an appropriate specialized *QEvent* descendant (such as *QMouseEvent*) once you have identified the event type.

```
virtual bool __fastcall TCustomControl::EventFilter(Qt::QObjectH* Sender, Qt::QEventH*
Event)
{
    bool retval = TWidgetControl::EventFilter(Sender, Event);
    switch (QEvent_type(Event))
    {
        case QEventType_Resize:
        case QEventType_FocusIn:
        case QEventType_FocusOut:
            UpdateMask();
    }
    return retval;
}
```

Generating Qt events

Similar to the way a VCL control can define and send custom Windows messages, you can make your CLX control define and generate Qt system events. The first step is to define a unique ID for the event (similar to the way you must define a message ID when defining a custom Windows message):

```
static const MyEvent_ID = (int) QCLXEventType_ClxUser + 50;
```

In the code where you want to generate the event, use the *QCustomEvent_create* function (declared in *Qt.hpp*) to create an event object with your new event ID. An optional second parameter lets you supply the event object with a data value that is a pointer to information you want to associate with the event:

```
QCustomEventH *MyEvent = QCustomEvent_create(MyEvent_ID, this);
```

Once you have created the event object, you can post it by calling the *QApplication_postEvent* method:

```
QApplication_postEvent(Application->Handle, MyEvent);
```

For any component to respond to this notification, it need only override its *EventFilter* method, checking for an event type of *MyEvent_ID*. The *EventFilter* method can retrieve the data you supplied to the constructor by calling the *QCustomEvent_data* method that is declared in *Qt.hpp*.

Making components available at design time

This chapter describes the steps for making the components you create available in the IDE. Making your components available at design time requires several steps:

- Registering components
- Adding palette bitmaps
- Providing Help for your component
- Adding property editors
- Adding component editors
- Compiling components into packages

Not all these steps apply to every component. For example, if you don't define any new properties or events, you don't need to provide Help for them. The only steps that are always necessary are registration and compilation.

Once your components have been registered and compiled into packages, they can be distributed to other developers and installed in the IDE. For information on installing packages in the IDE, see "Installing component packages" on page 15-5.

Registering components

Registration works on a compilation unit basis, so if you create several components in a single compilation unit, you can register them all at once.

To register a component, add a *Register* function to the .CPP file of the unit. Within the *Register* function, you register the components and determine where to install them on the Component palette.

Note If you create your component by choosing Component | New Component in the IDE, the code required to register your component is added automatically.

The steps for manually registering a component are:

- Declaring the Register function
- Writing the Register function

Declaring the Register function

Registration involves writing a single function in the .CPP file of the unit, which must have the name *Register*. The *Register* function must exist within a namespace. The namespace is the name of the file the component is in with all lowercase letters except the first letter.

The following code shows how the *Register* function is implemented within a namespace. The namespace is named *Newcomp*, where the file is named *Newcomp.CPP*:

```
namespace Newcomp
{
    void __fastcall PACKAGE Register()
    {
    }
}
```

Within the *Register* function, call *RegisterComponents* for each component you want to add to the Component palette. If the header and .CPP file combination contain several components, you can register them all in one step. The *PACKAGE* macro expands to a statement that allows classes to be imported and exported.

Writing the Register function

Inside the *Register* function of a unit containing components, you must register each component you want to add to the Component palette. If the unit contains several components, you can register them at the same time.

To register a component, call the *RegisterComponents* function once for each page of the Component palette to which you want to add components. *RegisterComponents* involves three important things:

- 1 Specifying the components
- 2 Specifying the palette page
- 3 Using the *RegisterComponents* function

Specifying the components

Within the *Register* function, declare an open array of type *TComponentClass* that holds the array of components you are registering. The syntax should look like this:

```
TMetaClass classes[1] = {__classid(TNewComponent)};
```


In this case, the array of classes contains just one component, but you can add all the components you want to register to the array. For example, this code places two components in the array:

```
TMetaClass classes[2] =
    {__classid(TNewComponent), __classid(TAnotherComponent)};
```

Another way to add a component to the array is to assign the component to the array in a separate statement. These statements add the same two components to the array as the previous example:

```
TMetaClass classes[2];
classes[0] = __classid(TNewComponent);
classes[1] = __classid(TAnotherComponent);
```

Specifying the palette page

The palette page name is an `AnsiString`. If the name you give for the palette page does not already exist, C++Builder creates a new page with that name. C++Builder stores the names of the standard pages in string-list resources so that international versions of the product can name the pages in their native languages. If you want to install a component on one of the standard pages, you should obtain the string for the page name by calling the *LoadStr* function, passing the constant representing the string resource for that page, such as *srSystem* for the System page.

Using the RegisterComponents function

Within the *Register* function, call *RegisterComponents* to register the components in the classes array. *RegisterComponents* is a function that takes three parameters: the name of a Component palette page, the array of component classes, and the index of the last entry in the array.

The following *Register* function found in the `NEWCOMP.CPP` file, registers a component named *TMyComponent* and places it on a Component palette page called *Miscellaneous*:

```
namespace Newcomp
{
    void __fastcall PACKAGE Register()
    {
        TMetaClass classes[1] = {__classid(TMyComponent)};
        RegisterComponents("Miscellaneous", classes, 0);
    }
}
```

Note that the third argument in the *RegisterComponents* call is 0, which is the index of the last entry in the classes array (the size of the array minus 1).

You can also register several components on the same page at once, or register components on different pages, as shown in the following code:

```
namespace Mycomps
{
    void __fastcall PACKAGE Register()
    {
        // declares an array that holds two components
```

```
TMetaClass classes1[2] = {__classid(TFirst), __classid(TSecond)};
// adds a new palette page with the two components in the classes1 array
RegisterComponents("Miscellaneous", classes1, 1);
// declares a second array
TMetaClass classes2[1];
// assigns a component to be the first element in the array
classes2[0] = __classid(TThird);
// adds the component in the classes2 array to the Samples page
RegisterComponents("Samples", classes2, 0);
}
}
```

In the example two arrays, `classes1` and `classes2` are declared. In the first *RegisterComponents* call the `classes1` array has 2 entries, so the third argument is the index of the second entry, which is 1. In the second *RegisterComponents* call, the `classes2` array has one element, so the third argument is 0.

Adding palette bitmaps

Every component needs a bitmap to represent the component on the Component palette. If you don't specify your own bitmap, C++Builder uses a default bitmap.

Because the palette bitmaps are needed only at design time, you don't compile them into the component's compilation unit. Instead, you supply them in a Windows resource file with the same name as the .CPP file, but with the extension .DCR (dynamic component resource). You can create this resource file using the Image editor in C++Builder. Each bitmap should be 24 pixels square.

For each component you want to install, supply a palette bitmap file, and within each palette bitmap file, supply a bitmap for each component you register. The bitmap image has the same name as the component class. Keep the palette bitmap file in the same directory with the compiled files, so C++Builder can find the bitmaps when it installs the components on the Component palette.

For example, if you create a component named *TMyControl*, you need to create a .DCR or .RES resource file that contains a bitmap called TMYCONTROL. The resource names are not case-sensitive, but by convention, they are usually in uppercase letters.

Providing Help for your component

When you select a standard component on a form, or a property or event in the Object Inspector, you can press *F1* to get Help on that item. You can provide developers with the same kind of documentation for your components if you create the appropriate Help files.

You can provide a small Help file to describe your components, and your help file becomes part of the user's overall C++Builder Help system.

See the section “Creating the Help file” on page 52-5 for information on how to compose the help file for use with a component.

Creating the Help file

You can use any tool you want to create the source file for a Windows Help file (in .rtf format). C++Builder includes the Microsoft Help Workshop, which compiles your Help files and provides an online help authoring guide. You can find complete information about creating Help files in the online guide for Help Workshop.

Composing help files for components consists of the steps:

- Creating the entries
- Making component help context-sensitive Adding component help files

Creating the entries

To make your component’s Help integrate seamlessly with the Help for the rest of the components in the library, observe the following conventions:

1 Each component should have a help topic.

The component topic should show which unit the component is declared in and briefly describe the component. The component topic should link to secondary windows that describe the component’s position in the object hierarchy and list all of its properties, events, and methods. Application developers access this topic by selecting the component on a form and pressing *F1*. For an example of a component topic, place any component on a form and press *F1*.

The component topic must have a # footnote with a value unique to the topic. The # footnote uniquely identifies each topic by the Help system.

The component topic should have a K footnote for keyword searching in the help system Index that includes the name of the component class. For example, the keyword footnote for the *TMemo* component is “TMemo.”

The component topic should also have a \$ footnote that provides the title of the topic. The title appears in the Topics Found dialog box, the Bookmark dialog box, and the History window.

2 Each component should include the following secondary navigational topics:

- A hierarchy topic with links to every ancestor of the component in the component hierarchy.
- A list of all properties available in the component, with links to entries describing those properties.
- A list of all events available in the component, with links to entries describing those events.
- A list of methods available in the component, with links to entries describing those methods.

Links to object classes, properties, methods, or events in the C++Builder help system can be made using Alinks. When linking to an object class, the Alink uses

the class name of the object, followed by an underscore and the string “object”. For example, to link to the *TCustomPanel* object, use the following:

```
!AL(TCustomPanel_object,1)
```

When linking to a property, method, or event, precede the name of the property, method, or event by the name of the object that implements it and an underscore. For example, to link to the *Text* property which is implemented by *TControl*, use the following:

```
!AL(TControl_Text,1)
```

To see an example of the secondary navigation topics, display the help for any component and click on the links labeled hierarchy, properties, methods, or events.

3 Each property, method, and event that is declared within the component should have a topic.

A property, event, or method topic should show the declaration of the item and describe its use. Application developers see these topics either by highlighting the item in the Object Inspector and pressing *F1* or by placing the cursor in the Code editor on the name of the item and pressing *F1*. To see an example of a property topic, select any item in the Object Inspector and press *F1*.

The property, event, and method topics should include a K footnote that lists the name of the property, method, or event, and its name in combination with the name of the component. Thus, the *Text* property of *TControl* has the following K footnote:

```
Text,TControl;TControl,Text;Text,
```

The property, method, and event topics should also include a \$ footnote that indicates the title of the topic, such as *TControl::Text*.

All of these topics should have a topic ID that is unique to the topic, entered as a # footnote.

Making component help context-sensitive

Each component, property, method, and event topic must have an A footnote. The A footnote is used to display the topic when the user selects a component and presses *F1*, or when a property or event is selected in the Object Inspector and the user presses *F1*. The A footnotes must follow certain naming conventions:

If the Help topic is for a component, the A footnote consists of two entries separated by a semicolon using this syntax:

```
ComponentClass_Object;ComponentClass
```

where *ComponentClass* is the name of the component class.

If the Help topic is for a property or event, the A footnote consists of three entries separated by semicolons using this syntax:

```
ComponentClass_Element;Element_Type;Element
```

where *ComponentClass* is the name of the component class, *Element* is the name of the property, method, or event, and *Type* is the either Property, Method, or Event

For example, for a property named *BackgroundColor* of a component named *TMyGrid*, the A footnote is

```
TMyGrid_BackgroundColor;BackgroundColor_Property;BackgroundColor
```

Adding component help files

To add your Help file to C++Builder, use the OpenHelp utility (called oh.exe) located in the bin directory or accessed using Help | Customize in the IDE.

You will find information about using OpenHelp in the OpenHelp.hlp file, including adding your Help file to the Help system.

Adding property editors

The Object Inspector provides default editing for all types of properties. You can, however, provide an alternate editor for specific properties by writing and registering property editors. You can register property editors that apply only to the properties in the components you write, but you can also create editors that apply to all properties of a certain type.

At the simplest level, a property editor can operate in either or both of two ways: displaying and allowing the user to edit the current value as a text string, and displaying a dialog box that permits some other kind of editing. Depending on the property being edited, you might find it useful to provide either or both kinds.

Writing a property editor requires these five steps:

- 1 Deriving a property-editor class
- 2 Editing the property as text
- 3 Editing the property as a whole
- 4 Specifying editor attributes
- 5 Registering the property editor

Deriving a property-editor class

Both the VCL and CLX define several kinds of property editors, all of which descend from *TPropertyEditor*. When you create a property editor, your property-editor class can either descend directly from *TPropertyEditor* or indirectly through one of the property-editor classes described in Table 52.1. The classes in the DesignEditors unit can be used for both VCL and CLX applications. Some of the property editor classes, however, supply specialized dialogs and so are specialized to either VCL or CLX. These can be found in the VCLEditors and CLXEditors units, respectively.

Note All that is absolutely necessary for a property editor is that it descend from *TBasePropertyEditor* and that it support the *IProperty* interface. *TPropertyEditor*, however, provides a default implementation of the *IProperty* interface.

The list in Table 52.1 is not complete. The VCLEditors and CLXEditors units also define some very specialized property editors used by unique properties such as the component name. The listed property editors are the ones that are the most useful for user-defined properties.

Table 52.1 Predefined property-editor types

| Type | Properties edited |
|---------------------|--|
| TOrdinalProperty | All ordinal-property editors (those for integer, character, and enumerated properties) descend from <i>TOrdinalProperty</i> . |
| TIntegerProperty | All integer types, including predefined and user-defined subranges. |
| TCharProperty | <i>Char</i> -type and subranges of <i>Char</i> , such as 'A'..'Z'. |
| TEnumProperty | Any enumerated type. |
| TFloatProperty | All floating-point numbers. |
| TStringProperty | AnsiStrings. |
| TSetElementProperty | Individual elements in sets, shown as Boolean values |
| TSetProperty | All sets. Sets are not directly editable, but can expand into a list of set-element properties. |
| TClassProperty | Classes. Displays the name of the class and allows expansion of the class's properties. |
| TMethodProperty | Method pointers, most notably events. |
| TComponentProperty | Components in the same form. The user cannot edit the component's properties, but can point to a specific component of a compatible type. |
| TColorProperty | Component colors. Shows color constants if applicable, otherwise displays hexadecimal value. Drop down list contains the color constants. Double-click opens the color-selection dialog box. |
| TFontNameProperty | Font names. The drop down list displays all currently installed fonts. |
| TFontProperty | Fonts. Allows expansion of individual font properties as well as access to the font dialog box. |

The following example shows the declaration of a simple property editor named *TMyPropertyEditor*:

```
class PACKAGE TMyPropertyEditor : public TPropertyEditor
{
public:
    virtual bool __fastcall AllEqual(void);
    virtual System::AnsiString __fastcall GetValue(void);
    virtual void __fastcall SetValue(const System::AnsiString Value);
    __fastcall virtual ~TMyPropertyEditor(void) { }
    __fastcall TMyPropertyEditor(void) : Dsgnintf::TPropertyEditor() { }
};
```

Editing the property as text

All properties need to provide a string representation of their values for the Object Inspector to display. Most properties also allow the user to type in a new value for the property. Property-editor classes provide virtual methods you can override to convert between the text representation and the actual value.

The methods you override are called *GetValue* and *SetValue*. Your property editor also inherits a set of methods used for assigning and reading different sorts of values, as shown in Table 52.2.

Table 52.2 Methods for reading and writing property values

| Property type | Get method | Set method |
|-----------------|----------------|----------------|
| Floating point | GetFloatValue | SetFloatValue |
| Closure (event) | GetMethodValue | SetMethodValue |
| Ordinal type | GetOrdValue | SetOrdValue |
| String | GetStrValue | SetStrValue |

When you override a *GetValue* method, you will call one of the Get methods, and when you override *SetValue*, you will call one of the Set methods.

Displaying the property value

The property editor's *GetValue* method returns a string that represents the current value of the property. The Object Inspector uses this string in the value column for the property. By default, *GetValue* returns "unknown".

To provide a string representation of your property, override the property editor's *GetValue* method.

If the property is not a string value, *GetValue* must convert the value into a string representation.

Setting the property value

The property editor's *SetValue* method takes a string typed by the user in the Object Inspector, converts it into the appropriate type, and sets the value of the property. If the string does not represent a proper value for the property, *SetValue* should throw an exception and not use the improper value.

To read string values into properties, override the property editor's *SetValue* method.

SetValue should convert the string and validate the value before calling one of the Set methods.

Editing the property as a whole

You can optionally provide a dialog box in which the user can visually edit a property. The most common use of property editors is for properties that are themselves classes. An example is the *Font* property, for which the user can open a font dialog box to choose all the attributes of the font at once.

To provide a whole-property editor dialog box, override the property-editor class's *Edit* method.

Edit methods use the same Get and Set methods used in writing *GetValue* and *SetValue* methods. In fact, an *Edit* method calls both a Get method and a Set method.

Because the editor is type-specific, there is usually no need to convert the property values to strings. The editor generally deals with the value “as retrieved.”

When the user clicks the ‘...’ button next to the property or double-clicks the value column, the Object Inspector calls the property editor’s *Edit* method.

Within your implementation of the *Edit* method, follow these steps:

- 1 Construct the editor you are using for the property.
- 2 Read the current value and assign it to the property using a Get method.
- 3 When the user selects a new value, assign that value to the property using a Set method.
- 4 Destroy the editor.

Specifying editor attributes

The property editor must provide information that the Object Inspector can use to determine what tools to display. For example, the Object Inspector needs to know whether the property has subproperties or can display a list of possible values.

To specify editor attributes, override the property editor’s *GetAttributes* method.

GetAttributes is a method that returns a set of values of type *TPropertyAttributes* that can include any or all of the following values:

Table 52.3 Property-editor attribute flags

| Flag | Related method | Meaning if included |
|-----------------|----------------|--|
| paValueList | GetValues | The editor can give a list of enumerated values. |
| paSubProperties | GetProperties | The property has subproperties that can display. |
| paDialog | Edit | The editor can display a dialog box for editing the entire property. |
| paMultiSelect | N/A | The property should display when the user selects more than one component. |
| paAutoUpdate | SetValue | Updates the component after every change instead of waiting for approval of the value. |
| paSortList | N/A | The Object Inspector should sort the value list. |
| paReadOnly | N/A | Users cannot modify the property value. |
| paRevertable | N/A | Enables the Revert to Inherited menu item on the Object Inspector’s context menu. The menu item tells the property editor to discard the current property value and return to some previously established default or standard value. |
| paFullWidthName | N/A | The value does not need to be displayed. The Object Inspector uses its full width for the property name instead. |

Table 52.3 Property-editor attribute flags (continued)

| Flag | Related method | Meaning if included |
|-------------------------|--------------------|---|
| paVolatileSubProperties | GetProperties | The Object Inspector re-fetches the values of all subproperties any time the property value changes. |
| paReference | GetComponent Value | The value is a reference to something else. When used in conjunction with paSubProperties the referenced object should be displayed as sub properties to this property. |

Color properties are more versatile than most, in that they allow several ways for users to choose them in the Object Inspector: typing, selection from a list, and customized editor. *TColorProperty*'s *GetAttributes* method, therefore, includes several attributes in its return value:

```
virtual __fastcall TPropertyAttributes TColorProperty::GetAttributes()
{
    return TPropertyAttributes() << paMultiSelect << paDialog << paValueList << paRevertable;
}
```

Registering the property editor

Once you create a property editor, you need to register it with C++Builder. Registering a property editor associates a type of property with a specific property editor. You can register the editor with all properties of a given type or just with a particular property of a particular type of component.

To register a property editor, call the *RegisterPropertyEditor* function.

RegisterPropertyEditor takes four parameters:

- A type-information pointer for the type of property to edit. Specify the type information like this:

```
__typeinfo(TMyComponent)
```
- The type of the component to which this editor applies. If this parameter is null, the editor applies to all properties of the given type.
- The name of the property. This parameter only has meaning if the previous parameter specifies a particular type of component. In that case, you can specify the name of a particular property in that component type to which this editor applies.
- The type of property editor to use for editing the specified property.

Here is an excerpt from the function that registers the editors for the standard components on the Component palette:

```
namespace Newcomp
{
    void __fastcall PACKAGE Register()
    {
        RegisterPropertyEditor(__typeinfo(TComponent), 0L, "", __classid(TComponentProperty));
        RegisterPropertyEditor(__typeinfo(TComponentName), __classid(TComponent), "Name",
```

```
        __classid(TComponentNameProperty));  
    RegisterPropertyEditor(__typeinfo(TMenuItem), __classid(TMenu), "",  
        __classid(TMenuItemProperty));  
    :  
    }  
}
```

The three statements in this function cover the different uses of *RegisterPropertyEditor*:

- The first statement is the most typical. It registers the property editor *TComponentProperty* for all properties of type *TComponent* (or descendants of *TComponent* that do not have their own editors registered). In general, when you register a property editor, you have created an editor for a particular type, and you want to use it for all properties of that type, so the second and third parameters are *NULL* and an empty string, respectively.
- The second statement is the most specific kind of registration. It registers an editor for a specific property in a specific type of component. In this case, the editor is for the *Name* property (of type *TComponentName*) of all components.
- The third statement is more specific than the first, but not as limited as the second. It registers an editor for all properties of type *TMenuItem* in components of type *TMenu*.

Property categories

In the IDE, the Object Inspector lets you selectively hide and display properties based on property categories. The properties of new custom components can be fit into this scheme by registering properties in categories. Do this at the same time you register the component by calling *RegisterPropertyInCategory* or *RegisterPropertiesInCategory*. Use *RegisterPropertyInCategory* to register a single property. Use *RegisterPropertiesInCategory* to register multiple properties in a single function call. These functions are defined in the unit *DesignIntf*.

Note that it is not mandatory that you register properties or that you register all of the properties of a custom component when some are registered. Any property not explicitly associated with a category is included in the *TMiscellaneousCategory* category. Such properties are displayed or hidden in the Object Inspector based on that default categorization.

In addition to these two functions for registering properties, there is an *IsPropertyInCategory* function. This function is useful for creating localization utilities, in which you must determine whether a property is registered in a given property category.

Registering one property at a time

Register one property at a time and associate it with a property category using the *RegisterPropertyInCategory* function. *RegisterPropertyInCategory* comes in four

overloaded variations, each providing a different set of criteria for identifying the property in the custom component to be associated with the property category.

The first variation lets you identify the property by the property's name. The line below registers a property related to visual display of the component, identifying the property by its name, "AutoSize".

```
RegisterPropertyInCategory("Visual", "AutoSize");
```

The second variation is much like the first, except that it limits the category to only those properties of the given name that appear on components of a given type. The example below registers (into the 'Help and Hints' category) a property named "HelpContext" of a component of the custom class *TMyButton*.

```
RegisterPropertyInCategory("Help and Hints", __classid(TMyButton), "HelpContext");
```

The third variation identifies the property using its type rather than its name. The example below registers a property based on its type, a special class called *TArrangement*.

```
RegisterPropertyInCategory('Visual', typeid(TArrangement));
```

The final variation uses both the property's type and its name to identify the property. The example below registers a property based on a combination of its type, *TBitmap*, and its name, "Pattern."

```
RegisterPropertyInCategory("Visual", typeid(TBitmap), "Pattern");
```

See the section *Specifying property categories* for a list of the available property categories and a brief description of their uses.

Registering multiple properties at once

Register multiple properties at one time and associate them with a property category using the *RegisterPropertiesInCategory* function. *RegisterPropertiesInCategory* comes in three overloaded variations, each providing a different set of criteria for identifying the property in the custom component to be associated with property categories.

The first variation lets you identify properties based on property name or type. The list is passed as an array of constants. In the example below, any property that either has the name "Text" or belongs to a class of type *TEdit* is registered in the category 'Localizable.'

```
RegisterPropertiesInCategory("Localizable", ARRAYOFCONST("Text", __typeinfo(TEdit)));
```

The second variation lets you limit the registered properties to those that belong to a specific component. The list of properties to register include only names, not types. For example, the following code registers a number of properties into the 'Help and Hints' category for all components:

```
RegisterPropertyInCategory("Help and Hints", __classid(TComponent),  
    ARRAYOFCONST("HelpContext", "Hint", "ParentShowHint"));
```

The third variation lets you limit the registered properties to those that have a specific type. As with the second variation, the list of properties to register can include only names:

```
RegisterPropertiesInCategory("Localizable", __typeid(TStrings), ARRAYOFCONST("Lines",  
"Commands"));
```

See the section Specifying property categories for a list of the available property categories and a brief description of their uses.

Specifying property categories

When you register properties in a category, you can use any string you want as the name of the category. If you use a string that has not been used before, the Object Inspector generates a new property category class with that name. You can also, however, register properties into one of the categories that are built-in. The built-in property categories are described in Table 52.4.:

Table 52.4 Property categories

| Category | Purpose |
|-------------------------|---|
| Action | Properties related to runtime actions; the <i>Enabled</i> and <i>Hint</i> properties of <i>TEdit</i> are in this category. |
| Database | Properties related to database operations; the <i>DatabaseName</i> and <i>SQL</i> properties of <i>TQuery</i> are in this category. |
| Drag, Drop, and Docking | Properties related to drag-and-drop and docking operations; the <i>DragCursor</i> and <i>DragKind</i> properties of <i>TImage</i> are in this category. |
| Help and Hints | Properties related to using online help or hints; the <i>HelpContext</i> and <i>Hint</i> properties of <i>TMemo</i> are in this category. |
| Layout | Properties related to the visual display of a control at design-time; the <i>Top</i> and <i>Left</i> properties of <i>TDBEdit</i> are in this category. |
| Legacy | Properties related to obsolete operations; the <i>Ctl3D</i> and <i>ParentCtl3D</i> properties of <i>TComboBox</i> are in this category. |
| Linkage | Properties related to associating or linking one component to another; the <i>DataSet</i> property of <i>TDataSource</i> is in this category. |
| Locale | Properties related to international locales; the <i>BiDiMode</i> and <i>ParentBiDiMode</i> properties of <i>TMainMenu</i> are in this category. |
| Localizable | Properties that may require modification in localized versions of an application. Many string properties (such as <i>Caption</i>) are in this category, as are properties that determine the size and position of controls. |
| Visual | Properties related to the visual display of a control at runtime; the <i>Align</i> and <i>Visible</i> properties of <i>TScrollBar</i> are in this category. |
| Input | Properties related to the input of data (need not be related to database operations); the <i>Enabled</i> and <i>ReadOnly</i> properties of <i>TEdit</i> are in this category. |
| Miscellaneous | Properties that do not fit a category or do not need to be categorized (and properties not explicitly registered to a specific category); the <i>AllowAllUp</i> and <i>Name</i> properties of <i>TSpeedButton</i> are in this category. |

Using the `IsPropertyInCategory` function

An application can query the existing registered properties to determine whether a given property is already registered in a specified category. This can be especially useful in situations like a localization utility that checks the categorization of properties preparatory to performing its localization operations. Two overloaded variations of the *IsPropertyInCategory* function are available, allowing for different criteria in determining whether a property is in a category.

The first variation lets you base the comparison criteria on a combination of the class type of the owning component and the property's name. In the command line below, for *IsPropertyInCategory* to return **true**, the property must belong to a *TCustomEdit* descendant, have the name "Text", and be in the property category 'Localizable'.

```
IsItThere = IsPropertyInCategory("Localizable", __classid(TCustomEdit), "Text");
```

The second variation lets you base the comparison criteria on a combination of the class name of the owning component and the property's name. In the command line below, for *IsPropertyInCategory* to return **true**, the property must be a *TCustomEdit* descendant, have the name "Text", and be in the property category 'Localizable'.

```
IsItThere = IsPropertyInCategory("Localizable", "TCustomEdit", "Text");
```

Adding component editors

Component editors determine what happens when the component is double-clicked in the designer and add commands to the context menu that appears when the component is right-clicked. They can also copy your component to the Windows clipboard in custom formats.

If you do not give your components a component editor, C++Builder uses the default component editor. The default component editor is implemented by the class *TDefaultEditor*. *TDefaultEditor* does not add any new items to a component's context menu. When the component is double-clicked, *TDefaultEditor* searches the properties of the component and generates (or navigates to) the first event handler it finds.

To add items to the context menu, change the behavior when the component is double-clicked, or add new clipboard formats, derive a new class from *TComponentEditor* and register its use with your component. In your overridden methods, you can use the *Component* property of *TComponentEditor* to access the component that is being edited.

Adding a custom component editor consists of the steps:

- Adding items to the context menu
- Changing the double-click behavior
- Adding clipboard formats
- Registering the component editor

Adding items to the context menu

When the user right-clicks the component, the *GetVerbCount* and *GetVerb* methods of the component editor are called to build context menu. You can override these methods to add commands (verbs) to the context menu.

Adding items to the context menu requires the steps:

- Specifying menu items
- Implementing commands

Specifying menu items

Override the *GetVerbCount* method to return the number of commands you are adding to the context menu. Override the *GetVerb* method to return the strings that should be added for each of these commands. When overriding *GetVerb*, add an ampersand (&) to a string to cause the following character to appear underlined in the context menu and act as a shortcut key for selecting the menu item. Be sure to add an ellipsis (...) to the end of a command if it brings up a dialog. *GetVerb* has a single parameter that indicates the index of the command.

The following code overrides the *GetVerbCount* and *GetVerb* methods to add two commands to the context menu.

```
int __fastcall TMyEditor::GetVerbCount(void)
{
    return 2;
}

System::AnsiString __fastcall TMyEditor::GetVerb(int Index)
{
    switch (Index)
    {
        case 0: return "&DoThis ..."; break;
        case 1: return "Do&That"; break;
    }
}
```

Note Be sure that your *GetVerb* method returns a value for every possible index indicated by *GetVerbCount*.

Implementing commands

When the command provided by *GetVerb* is selected in the designer, the *ExecuteVerb* method is called. For every command you provide in the *GetVerb* method, implement an action in the *ExecuteVerb* method. You can access the component that is being edited using the *Component* property of the editor.

For example, the following *ExecuteVerb* method implements the commands for the *GetVerb* method in the previous example.

```
void __fastcall TMyEditor::ExecuteVerb(int Index)
{
    switch (Index)
    {

```

```

    case 0:
        TMyDialog *MySpecialDialog = new TMyDialog();
        MySpecialDialog->Execute();
        ((TMyComponent *)Component)->ThisProperty = MySpecialDialog->ReturnValue;
        delete MySpecialDialog;
        break;
    case 1:
        That(); // call the "That" method
        break;
}
}

```

Changing the double-click behavior

When the component is double-clicked, the *Edit* method of the component editor is called. By default, the *Edit* method executes the first command added to the context menu. Thus, in the previous example, double-clicking the component executes the *DoThis* command.

While executing the first command is usually a good idea, you may want to change this default behavior. For example, you can provide an alternate behavior if

- you are not adding any commands to the context menu.
- you want to display a dialog that combines several commands when the component is double-clicked.

Override the *Edit* method to specify a new behavior when the component is double-clicked. For example, the following *Edit* method brings up a font dialog when the user double-clicks the component:

```

void __fastcall TMyEditor::Edit(void)
{
    TFontDialog *pFontDlg = new TFontDialog(NULL);
    pFontDlg->Execute();
    ((TMyComponent *)Component)->Font = pFontDlg->Font;
    delete pFontDlg;
}

```

Note If you want a double-click on the component to display the Code editor for an event handler, use *TDefaultEditor* as a base class for your component editor instead of *TComponentEditor*. Then, instead of overriding the *Edit* method, override the protected *TDefaultEditor::EditProperty* method instead. *EditProperty* scans through the event handlers of the component, and brings up the first one it finds. You can change this to look a particular event instead. For example:

```

void __fastcall TMyEditor::EditProperty(TPropertyEditor* PropertyEditor,
                                       bool &Continue, bool &FreeEditor)
{
    if (PropertyEditor->ClassNameIs("TMethodProperty") &&
        CompareText(PropertyEditor->GetName, "OnSpecialEvent") == 0)
    {
        TDefaultEditor::EditProperty(PropertyEditor, Continue, FreeEditor);
    }
}

```

Adding clipboard formats

By default, when a user chooses Copy while a component is selected in the IDE, the component is copied in C++Builder's internal format. It can then be pasted into another form or data module. Your component can copy additional formats to the Clipboard by overriding the *Copy* method.

For example, the following *Copy* method allows a *TImage* component to copy its picture to the Clipboard. This picture is ignored by the C++Builder IDE, but can be pasted into other applications.

```
void __fastcall TMyComponentEditor::Copy(void)
{
    WORD AFormat;
    int AData;
    HPALETTE APalette;
    ((TImage *)Component)->Picture->SaveToClipboardFormat(AFormat, AData, APalette);
    TClipboard *pClip = Clipboard(); // don't clear the clipboard!
    pClip->SetAsHandle(AFormat, AData);
}
```

Registering the component editor

Once the component editor is defined, it can be registered to work with a particular component class. A registered component editor is created for each component of that class when it is selected in the form designer.

To create the association between a component editor and a component class, call *RegisterComponentEditor*. *RegisterComponentEditor* takes the name of the component class that uses the editor, and the name of the component editor class that you have defined. For example, the following statement registers a component editor class named *TMyEditor* to work with all components of type *TMyComponent*:

```
RegisterComponentEditor(__classid( TMyComponent), __classid(TMyEditor));
```

Place the call to *RegisterComponentEditor* in the namespace where you register your component. For example, if a new component named *TMyComponent* and its component editor *TMyEditor* are both implemented in *NewComp.cpp*, the following code (in *NewComp.cpp*) registers the component and its association with the component editor.

```
namespace Newcomp
{
    void __fastcall PACKAGE Register()
    {
        TMetaClass classes[1] = {__classid(TMyComponent)};
        RegisterComponents("Miscellaneous", classes, 0);
        RegisterComponentEditor(classes[0], __classid(TMyEditor));
    }
}
```


Compiling components into packages

Once your components are registered, you must compile them as packages before they can be installed in the IDE. A package can contain one or several components as well as custom property editors. For more information about packages, see Chapter 15, “Working with packages and components.”

To create and compile a package, see “Creating and editing packages” on page 15-6. Put the source-code units for your custom components in the package’s Contains list. If your components depend on other packages, include those packages in the Requires list.

To install your components in the IDE, see “Installing component packages” on page 15-5.

Troubleshooting custom components

A common problem when registering and installing custom components is that the component does not show up in the list of components after the package is successfully installed.

The most common causes for component not showing up in the list or on the palette:

- Missing PACKAGE modifier on the Register function
- Missing PACKAGE modifier on the class
- Missing `#pragma package(smart_init)` in the C++ source file
- Register function is not found in a namespace with the same name as the source code module name.
- Register is not being successfully exported. Use `tdump` on the .BPL to look for the exported function:

```
tdump -ebpl mypack.bpl mypack.dmp
```

In the exports section of the dump, you should see the Register function (within the namespace) being exported.

Modifying an existing component

The easiest way to create a component is to derive it from a component that does nearly everything you want, then make whatever changes you need. The example in this chapter modifies the standard memo component to create a memo that has a yellow background. The other chapters in this part describe creating more complex components. The basic process is always the same, but more complex components require more steps in customizing the new class.

Modifying an existing component takes only two steps:

- Creating and registering the component
- Modifying the component class

Creating and registering the component

Creation of every component begins the same way: you create a unit, derive a component class, register it, and install it on the Component palette. This process is outlined in “Creating a new component” on page 45-8.

For this example, follow the general procedure for creating a component, with these specifics:

- 1 Name the component’s unit *YelMemo* and save it, so that the header file is `YELMEMO.H` and the `.CPP` file is `YELMEMO.CPP`.
- 2 Derive a new component class called *TYellowMemo*, descended from *TMemo*.
- 3 Register *TYellowMemo* on the Samples page (or other page in CLX) of the Component palette.

The resulting header file should look like this:

```
#ifndef YelMemoH
#define YelmemoH
//-----
#include <sysutils.hpp>
#include <controls.hpp>
#include <classes.hpp>
#include <forms.hpp>
#include <StdCtrls.hpp>
//-----
class PACKAGE TYellowMemo : public TMemo
{
private:
protected:
public:
__published:
};
//-----
#endif
```

The accompanying .CPP file should look like this:

```
#include <vcl.h>
#pragma hdrstop
#include "Yelmemo.h"
//-----
#pragma package(smart_init);
//-----
// ValidCtrCheck is used to assure that the components created do not have
// any pure virtual functions.
//
static inline void ValidCtrCheck(TYellowMemo *)
{
    new TYellowMemo(NULL);
}
//-----
__fastcall TYellowMemo::TYellowMemo(TComponent* Owner)
    : TMemo(Owner)
{
}
//-----
namespace Yelmemo
{
    void __fastcall PACKAGE Register()
    {
        TComponentClass classes[1] = {__classid(TYellowMemo)};
        RegisterComponents("Samples", classes, 0); //"Common Controls" in CLX applications
    }
}
```

CLX Names and locations of some of the header files differ in CLX applications. For example, `<vcl\controls.hpp>` is `<clx\qcontrols.hpp>` in CLX.

Note This example assumes you are not using the Component wizard to create this component, but that you are creating it manually. If you use the Component wizard, a constructor will automatically be added to *TYellowMemo*.

Modifying the component class

Once you have created a new component class, you can modify it in almost any way. In this case, you will change only the initial value of one property in the memo component. This involves two small changes to the component class:

- Overriding the constructor.
- Specifying the new default property value.

The constructor actually sets the value of the property. The default tells C++Builder what values to store in the form (.dfm for VCL and .xfm for CLX) file. C++Builder stores only values that differ from the default, so it is important to perform both steps.

Overriding the constructor

When a component is placed on a form at design time, or when an application constructs a component at runtime, the component's constructor sets the property values. When a component is loaded from a form file, the application sets any properties changed at design time.

Note When you override a constructor, the new constructor must call the inherited constructor before doing anything else. For more information, see “Overriding methods” on page 46-9.

For this example, your new component needs to override the constructor inherited from *TMemo* to set the *Color* property to *clYellow*. To achieve this, add the declaration of the constructor override to the class declaration, then write the new constructor in the .CPP part file:

```
class PACKAGE TYellowMemo : public TMemo
{
public:
    virtual __fastcall TYellowMemo(TComponent* Owner); // the constructor declaration
__published:
    __property Color;
};

__fastcall TYellowMemo::TYellowMemo(TComponent* Owner)
    : TMemo(Owner) // the constructor implementation first...
                  // ...calls the constructor for TMemo
{
    Color = clYellow; // colors the component yellow
}
```

Note If you used the Component wizard to create the component, all you need to do is add `Color = clYellow;` to the existing constructor.

Now you can install the new component on the Component palette and add it to a form. Note that the *Color* property now defaults to *clYellow*.

Specifying the new default property value

When C++Builder stores a description of a form in a form file, it stores the values only of properties that differ from their defaults. Storing only the differing values keeps the form files small and makes loading the form faster. If you create a property or change the default value, it is a good idea to update the property declaration to include the new default. Form files, loading, and default values are explained in more detail in Chapter 52, “Making components available at design time.”

To change the default value of a property:

- 1 Redeclare the property name.
- 2 Place an equal sign (=) after the property name.
- 3 Type the **default** keyword, another equal sign, and the default value all within braces.

Note that you do not need to redeclare the entire property, just the name and the default value.

For the yellow memo component, you redeclare the *Color* property in a **__published** part of the class declaration, with a default value of *clYellow*:

```
class PACKAGE TYellowMemo : public TMemo
{
public:
    virtual __fastcall TYellowMemo(TComponent* Owner);
    __published:
        __property Color = {default=clYellow};
};
```

Here is *TYellowMemo* again, but this time it has another published property, *WordWrap*, with a default value of **false**:

```
class PACKAGE TYellowMemo : public TMemo
{
public:
    virtual __fastcall TYellowMemo(TComponent* Owner);
    __published:
        __property Color = {default=clYellow};
        __property WordWrap = {default=false};
};
```

Specifying the default property value does not affect the workings of the component at all. You must still explicitly set the default value in the component’s constructor.

The difference is in the inner workings of the application. For *TYellowMemo*, C++Builder no longer writes *WordWrap* to the form file if it is **false**, because you have told it that the constructor will set that value automatically. Here is the constructor:

```
__fastcall TYellowMemo::TYellowMemo(TComponent* AOwner) : TMemo(AOwner)
{
    Color = clYellow;
    WordWrap = false;
}
```

Creating a graphic control

A graphic control is a simple kind of component. Because a purely graphic control never receives focus, it does not have or need a window handle. Users can still manipulate the control with the mouse, but there is no keyboard interface.

The graphic control presented in this chapter is *TShape*, the shape component on the Additional page of the Component palette. Although the component created is identical to the standard shape component, you need to call it something different to avoid duplicate identifiers. This chapter calls its shape component *TSampleShape* and shows you all the steps involved in creating the shape component:

- Creating and registering the component
- Publishing inherited properties
- Adding graphic capabilities

Creating and registering the component

Creation of every component begins the same way: derive a component class, save the component's .CPP and .H files, derive a component class, register it, compile it, and install it on the Component palette. This process is outlined in "Creating a new component" on page 45-8.

Note This example assumes you are not using the Component wizard, but are creating the component manually.

For this example, follow the general procedure for creating a component, with these specifics:

- 1 Derive a new component type called *TSampleShape*, descended from *TGraphicControl*.
- 2 Call the component's header file SHAPES.H and the .CPP file SHAPES.CPP.
- 3 Register *TSampleShape* on the Samples page (or other page in CLX) of the Component palette.

The resulting header file should look like this:

```
//-----
#ifndef ShapesH
#define ShapesH
//-----
#include <sysutils.hpp>
#include <controls.hpp>
#include <classes.hpp>
#include <forms.hpp>
//-----
class PACKAGE TSampleShape : public TGraphicControl
{
private:
protected:
public:
    __published:
};
//-----
#endif
```

The .CPP file should look like this:

```
//-----
#include <vcl.h>
#pragma hdrstop
#include "Shapes.h"
//-----
#pragma package(smart_init);
//-----
// ValidCtrCheck is used to assure that the components created do not have
// any pure virtual functions.
//

static inline void ValidCtrCheck(TSampleShape *)
{
    new TSampleShape(NULL);
}
//-----
__fastcall TSampleShape::TGraphicControl(TComponent* Owner)
    : TGraphicControl(Owner)
{
}
//-----
namespace Shapes
{
    void __fastcall PACKAGE Register()
    {
        TComponentClass classes[1] = {__classid(TSampleShape)};
        RegisterComponents("Samples", classes, 0);
    }
}
```

CLX Names and locations of some of the header files differ in CLX applications. For example, <vcl\controls.hpp> is <clx\qcontrols.hpp> in CLX.

Publishing inherited properties

Once you derive a component type, you can decide which of the properties and events declared in the protected parts of the ancestor class you want to surface in the new component. *TGraphicControl* already publishes all the properties that enable the component to function as a control, so all you need to publish is the ability to respond to mouse events and handle drag-and-drop.

Publishing inherited properties and events is explained in “Publishing inherited properties” on page 47-3 and “Making events visible” on page 48-5. Both processes involve redeclaring just the name of the properties in the published part of the class declaration.

For the shape control, you can publish the three mouse events, the three drag-and-drop events, and the two drag-and-drop properties:

```
class PACKAGE TSampleShape : public TGraphicControl
{
private:
__published:
    __property DragCursor ;
    __property DragMode ;
    __property OnDragDrop ;
    __property OnDragOver ;
    __property OnEndDrag ;
    __property OnMouseDown ;
    __property OnMouseMove ;
    __property OnMouseUp ;
};
```

The sample shape control now makes mouse and drag-and-drop interactions available to its users.

Adding graphic capabilities

Once you have declared your graphic component and published any inherited properties you want to make available, you can add the graphic capabilities that distinguish your component. You have two tasks to perform when creating a graphic control:

- 1 Determining what to draw.
- 2 Drawing the component image.

In addition, for the shape control example, you will add some properties that enable application developers to customize the appearance of the shape at design time.

Determining what to draw

A graphic control can change its appearance to reflect a dynamic condition, including user input. A graphic control that always looks the same should probably not be a

component at all. If you want a static image, you can import the image instead of using a control.

In general, the appearance of a graphic control depends on some combination of its properties. The gauge control, for example, has properties that determine its shape and orientation and whether it shows its progress numerically as well as graphically. Similarly, the shape control has a property that determines what kind of shape it should draw.

To give your control a property that determines the shape it draws, add a property called *Shape*. This requires

- 1 Declaring the property type.
- 2 Declaring the property.
- 3 Writing the implementation method.

Creating properties is explained in more detail in Chapter 47, “Creating properties.”

Declaring the property type

When you declare a property of a user-defined type, you must declare the type first, before the class that includes the property. The most common sort of user-defined type for properties is enumerated.

For the shape control, you need an enumerated type with an element for each kind of shape the control can draw.

Add the following type definition above the shape control class’s declaration.

```
enum TSampleShapeType { sstRectangle, sstSquare, sstRoundRect, sstRoundSquare, sstEllipse,
sstCircle };

class PACKAGE TSampleShape : public TGraphicControl           // this is already there
```

You can now use this type to declare a new property in the class.

Declaring the property

When you declare a property, you usually need to declare a private data member to store the data for the property, then specify methods for reading and writing the property value. Often, you don’t need to use a method to read the value, but can just point to the stored data instead.

For the shape control, you will declare a data member that holds the current shape, then declare a property that reads that data member and writes to it through a method call.

Add the following declarations to *TSampleShape*:

```
class PACKAGE TSampleShape : public TGraphicControl
{
private:
    TSampleShapeType FShape;
    void __fastcall SetShape(TSampleShapeType Value);
__published:
    __property TSampleShapeType Shape = {read=FShape, write=SetShape, nodefault};
};
```

Now all that remains is to add the implementation of *SetShape*.

Writing the implementation method

When the **read** or **write** part of a property definition uses a method instead of directly accessing the stored property data, you need to implement the method.

Add the implementation of the *SetShape* method to the SHAPES.CPP file:

```
void __fastcall TSampleShape::SetShape(TSampleShapeType Value)
{
    if (FShape != Value)           // ignore if this isn't a change
    {
        FShape = Value;           // store the new value
        Invalidate();             // force a repaint with the new shape
    }
}
```

Overriding the constructor and destructor

To change default property values and initialize owned classes for your component, you must override the inherited constructor and destructor. In both cases, remember always to call the inherited method in your new constructor or destructor.

Changing default property values

The default size of a graphic control is fairly small, so you can change the width and height in the constructor. Changing default property values is explained in more detail in Chapter 53, “Modifying an existing component.”

In this example, the shape control sets its size to a square 65 pixels on each side.

Add the overridden constructor to the declaration of the component class:

```
class PACKAGE TSampleShape : public TGraphicControl
{
public:
    virtual __fastcall TSampleShape(TComponent *Owner);
};
```

If you started creating the component with the Component wizard, this step will already be done for you.

1 Redeclare the *Height* and *Width* properties with their new default values:

```
class PACKAGE TSampleShape : public TGraphicControl
{
    :
    __published:
        __property Height;
        __property Width;
}
```

2 Write the new constructor in the .CPP file:

```
__fastcall TSampleShape::TSampleShape(TComponent* Owner) : TGraphicControl(Owner)
{
    Width = 65;
    Height = 65;
}
```

If you used the Component wizard, all you need to do is add the new default values to the already existing constructor.

Publishing the pen and brush

By default, a canvas has a thin black pen and a solid white brush. To let developers change the pen and brush, you must provide classes for them to manipulate at design time, then copy the classes into the canvas during painting. Classes such as an auxiliary pen or brush are called *owned classes* because the component owns them and is responsible for creating and destroying them.

Managing owned classes requires:

- 1 Declaring the class data members.
- 2 Declaring the access properties.
- 3 Initializing owned classes.
- 4 Setting owned classes' properties.

Declaring the data members

Each class a component owns must have a data member declared for it in the component. The data member ensures that the component always has a pointer to the owned object so that it can destroy the class before destroying itself. In general, a component initializes owned objects in its constructor and destroys them in its destructor.

Data members for owned objects are nearly always declared as **private**. If applications (or other components) need access to the owned objects, you can declare **published** or **public** properties for this purpose.

Add data members for a pen and brush to the shape control:

```
class PACKAGE TSampleShape : public TGraphicControl
{
private:
    // data members are always private
    TPen *FPen;           // a data member for the pen object
    TBrush *FBrush;       // a data member for the brush object
    :
};
```

Declaring the access properties

You can provide access to the owned objects of a component by declaring properties of the type of the objects. That gives developers a way to access the objects at design

time or runtime. Usually, the read part of the property just references the data member, but the write part calls a method that enables the component to react to changes in the owned object.

To the shape control, add properties that provide access to the pen and brush data members. You will also declare methods for reacting to changes to the pen or brush.

```
class PACKAGE TSampleShape : public TGraphicControl
{
    :
private:
    TPen *FPen;
    TBrush *FBrush;
    void __fastcall SetBrush(TBrush *Value);
    void __fastcall SetPen(TPen *Value);
    :
__published:
    __property TBrush* Brush = {read=FBrush, write=SetBrush, nodefault};
    __property TPen* Pen = {read=FPen, write=SetPen, nodefault};
};
```

Then, write the *SetBrush* and *SetPen* methods in the .CPP file:

```
void __fastcall TSampleShape::SetBrush( TBrush* Value)
{
    FBrush->Assign(Value);
}

void __fastcall TSampleShape::SetPen( TPen* Value)
{
    FPen->Assign(Value);
}
```

To directly assign the contents of *Value* to *FBrush*...

```
FBrush = Value;
```

...would overwrite the internal pointer for *FBrush*, lose memory, and create a number of ownership problems.

Initializing owned classes

If you add classes to your component, the component's constructor must initialize them so that the user can interact with the objects at runtime. Similarly, the component's destructor must also destroy the owned objects before destroying the component itself.

Because you have added a pen and a brush to the shape control, you need to initialize them in the shape control's constructor and destroy them in the control's destructor:

1 Construct the pen and brush in the shape control constructor:

```
__fastcall TSampleShape::TSampleShape(TComponent* Owner) : TGraphicControl(Owner)
{
    Width = 65;
    Height = 65;
    FBrush = new TBrush();           // construct the pen
    FPen = new TPen();               // construct the brush
}
```

2 Add the overridden destructor to the declaration of the component class:

```
class PACKAGE TSampleShape : public TGraphicControl
{
    :
public:
    virtual __fastcall TSampleShape(TComponent* Owner);
    __fastcall ~TSampleShape();           // the destructor
    :
};
```

3 Write the new destructor in the .CPP file:

```
__fastcall TSampleShape::~TSampleShape()
{
    delete FPen;                         // delete the pen object
    delete FBrush;                       // delete the brush object
}
```

Setting owned classes' properties

As the final step in handling the pen and brush classes, you need to make sure that changes in the pen and brush cause the shape control to repaint itself. Both pen and brush classes have *OnChange* events, so you can create a method in the shape control and point both *OnChange* events to it.

Add the following method to the shape control, and update the component's constructor to set the pen and brush events to the new method:

```
class PACKAGE TSampleShape : public TGraphicControl
{
    :
public:
    void __fastcall StyleChanged(TObject* Owner);
    :
};
```

In the SHAPES.CPP file, assign the *StyleChanged* method to the *OnChange* events for the pen and brush classes in the *TSampleShape* constructor:

```
__fastcall TSampleShape::TSampleShape(TComponent* Owner) : TGraphicControl(Owner)
{
    Width = 65;
    Height = 65;
    FBrush = new TBrush();
    FBrush->OnChange = StyleChanged;
    FPen = new TPen();
    FPen->OnChange = StyleChanged;
}
```

Include the implementation of the *StyleChanged* method:

```
void __fastcall TSampleShape::StyleChanged( TObject* Sender)
{
    Invalidate();           // repaints the component
}
```

With these changes, the component redraws to reflect changes to either the pen or the brush.

Drawing the component image

The essential element of a graphic control is the way it paints its image on the screen. The abstract type *TGraphicControl* defines a method called *Paint* that you override to paint the image you want on your control.

The *Paint* method for the shape control needs to do several things:

- Use the pen and brush selected by the user.
- Use the selected shape.
- Adjust coordinates so that squares and circles use the same width and height.

Overriding the *Paint* method requires two steps:

- 1 Add *Paint* to the component's declaration.
- 2 Write the *Paint* method in the .CPP file.

For the shape control, add the following declaration to the class declaration:

```
class PACKAGE TSampleShape : public TGraphicControl
{
    :
protected:
    virtual void __fastcall Paint();
    :
};
```

Then write the method in the .CPP file:

```
void __fastcall TSampleShape::Paint()
{
    int X,Y,W,H,S;
    Canvas->Pen = FPen;                // copy the component's pen
    Canvas->Brush = FBrush;              // copy the component's brush
    W=Width;                             // use the component width
    H=Height;                             // use the component height
    X=Y=0;                                // save smallest for circles/squares
    if( W<H )
        S=W;
    else
        S=H;
    switch(FShape)
    {
        case sstRectangle:                // draw rectangles and squares
        case sstSquare:
            Canvas->Rectangle(X,Y,X+W,Y+H);
            break;
        case sstRoundRect:                // draw rounded rectangles and squares
        case sstRoundSquare:
            Canvas->RoundRect(X,Y,X+W,Y+H,S/4,S/4);
            break;
        case sstCircle:                   // draw circles and ellipses
        case sstEllipse:
            Canvas->Ellipse(X,Y,X+W,Y+H);
            break;
```

```

        default:
            break;
    }
}

```

Paint is called whenever the control needs to update its image. Controls are painted when they first appear or when a window in front of them goes away. In addition, you can force repainting by calling *Invalidate*, as the *StyleChanged* method does.

Refining the shape drawing

The standard shape control does one more thing that your sample shape control does not yet do: it handles squares and circles as well as rectangles and ellipses. To do that, you need to write code that finds the shortest side and centers the image.

Here is a refined *Paint* method that adjusts for squares and ellipses:

```

void __fastcall TSampleShape::Paint(void)
{
    int X,Y,W,H,S;
    Canvas->Pen = FPen;                // copy the component's pen
    Canvas->Brush = FBrush;             // copy the component's brush
    W=Width;                           // use the component width
    H=Height;                          // use the component height
    X=Y=0;                             // save smallest for circles/squares
    if( W<H )
        S=W;
    else
        S=H;
    switch(FShape)                     // adjust height, width and position
    {
        case sstRectangle:
        case sstRoundRect:
        case sstEllipse:
            Y=X=0;                    // origin is top-left for these shapes
            break;
        case sstSquare:
        case sstRoundSquare:
        case sstCircle:
            X= (W-S)/2;               // center these horizontally
            Y= (H-S)/2;               // and vertically
            break;
        default:
            break;
    }
    switch(FShape)
    {
        case sstSquare:                // draw rectangles and squares
            W=H=S;                    // use shortest dimension for width and height
        case sstRectangle:
            Canvas->Rectangle(X,Y,X+W,Y+H);
            break;
        case sstRoundSquare:           // draw rounded rectangles and squares
            W=H=S;
    }
}

```



```

case sstRoundRect:
    Canvas->RoundRect(X,Y,X+W,Y+H,S/4,S/4);
    break;
case sstCircle:
    // draw circles and ellipses
    W=H=S;
case sstEllipse:
    Canvas->Ellipse(X,Y,X+W,Y+H);
    break;
default:
    break;
}
}

```


Customizing a grid

C++Builder provides abstract components you can use as the basis for customized components. The most important of these are grids and list boxes. In this chapter, you will see how to create a small one month calendar from the basic grid component, *TCustomGrid*.

Creating the calendar involves these tasks:

- Creating and registering the component
- Publishing inherited properties
- Changing initial values
- Resizing the cells
- Filling in the cells
- Navigating months and years
- Navigating days

In VCL applications, the resulting component is similar to the *TCalendar* component on the Samples page of the Component palette. In CLX applications, save the component to a different page or create a new palette page. See “Specifying the palette page” on page 52-3 or “Component palette, adding pages” in online Help.

Creating and registering the component

You create every component the same way: derive a component class, save the component’s .CPP and .H files, derive a component class, register it, compile it, and install it on the Component palette. This process is outlined in “Creating a new component” on page 45-8.

For this example, follow the general procedure for creating a component, with these specifics:

- 1 Derive a new component type called *TSampleCalendar*, descended from *TCustomGrid*.

- 2 Call the component's header file CALSAMP.H and its .CPP file CALSAMP.CPP.
- 3 Register *TSampleCalendar* on the Samples page (or other page in CLX) of the Component palette. For CLX applications, use another Component palette page.

The resulting header file should look like this:

```
#ifndef CalSampH
#define CalSampH
//-----
#include <vcl\sysutils.hpp>
#include <vcl\controls.hpp>
#include <vcl\classes.hpp>
#include <vcl\forms.hpp>
#include <vcl\grids.hpp>
//-----
class PACKAGE TSampleCalendar : public TCustomGrid
{
private:
protected:
public:
__published:
};
//-----
#endif
```

The CALSAMP.CPP file should resemble this:

```
#include <vcl\vcl.h>
#pragma hdrstop
#include "CalSamp.h"
//-----
#pragma package(smart_init);
//-----
static inline TSampleCalendar *ValidCtrCheck()
{
    return new TSampleCalendar(NULL);
}
//-----
namespace Calsamp
{
    void __fastcall PACKAGE Register()
    {
        TComponentClass classes[1] = {__classid(TSampleCalendar)};
        RegisterComponents("Samples", classes, 0); //In CLX, use a different page than "Samples"
    }
}
```

Note If you used the Component wizard to create the component, the header file will also declare a new constructor, and the CALSAMP.CPP file will have the beginnings of a constructor. If the constructor is not there, you can add it later.

CLX Names and locations of some of the header files differ in CLX applications. For example, <vcl\controls.hpp> is <clx\qcontrols.hpp> in CLX.

Publishing inherited properties

The abstract grid component, *TCustomGrid*, provides a large number of **protected** properties. You can choose which of those properties you want to make available to users of the calendar control.

To make inherited protected properties available to users of your components, redeclare the properties in the **_published** part of your component's declaration.

For the calendar control, publish the following properties and events, as shown here:

```
class PACKAGE TSampleCalendar : public TCustomGrid
{
  :
  __published:
    __property Align ;                // publish properties
    __property BorderStyle ;
    __property Color ;
    __property Font ;
    __property GridLineWidth ;
    __property ParentColor ;
    __property ParentFont ;
    __property OnClick ;              // publish events
    __property OnDblClick ;
    __property OnDragDrop ;
    __property OnDragOver ;
    __property OnEndDrag ;
    __property OnKeyDown ;
    __property OnKeyPress ;
    __property OnKeyUp ;
};
```

There are a number of other properties you could also publish, but which do not apply to a calendar, such as the *Options* property that would enable the user to choose which grid lines to draw.

If you install the modified calendar component to the Component palette and use it in an application, you will find many more properties and events available in the calendar, all fully functional. You can now start adding new capabilities of your own design.

Changing initial values

A calendar is essentially a grid with a fixed number of rows and columns, although not all the rows always contain dates. For this reason, you have not published the grid properties *ColCount* and *RowCount*, because it is highly unlikely that users of the calendar will want to display anything other than seven days per week. You still must set the initial values of those properties so that the week always has seven days, however.

To change the initial values of the component's properties, override the constructor to set the desired values.

Remember that you need to add the constructor to the **public** part of the component's class declaration, then write the new constructor in the header file:

```
class PACKAGE TSampleCalendar : public TCustomGrid
{
protected:
    virtual void __fastcall DrawCell(int ACol, int ARow, const Windows::TRect &Rect,
        TGridDrawState AState);
    :
public:
    __fastcall TSampleCalendar(TComponent *Owner);    // the added constructor
    :
};
```

In the CALSAMP.CPP file, write the constructor code:

```
__fastcall TSampleCalendar::TSampleCalendar(TComponent *Owner) : TCustomGrid(Owner)
{
    ColCount = 7;
    RowCount = 7;
    FixedCols = 0;
    FixedRows = 1;
    ScrollBars = ssNone;
    Options = (Options >> goRangeSelect) << goDrawFocusSelected;
}

void __fastcall TSampleCalendar::DrawCell(int ACol, int ARow, const Windows::TRect
    &ARect, TGridDrawState AState)
{
}
```

Note You will notice that a *DrawCell* method was also added to the class declaration, and in the .CPP file, the *DrawCell* method was started. This is not absolutely necessary now, but if you should attempt to test *TSampleCalendar* before overriding *DrawCell*, you would encounter a pure virtual function error. This is because *TCustomGrid* is an abstract class. Overriding *DrawCell* is discussed later in the “Filling in the cells” section.

The calendar now has seven columns and seven rows, with the top row fixed, or nonscrolling.

Resizing the cells

VCL When a user or application changes the size of a window or control, Windows sends a message called *WM_SIZE* to the affected window or control so it can adjust any settings needed to later paint its image in the new size. Your VCL component can respond to that message by altering the size of the cells so they all fit inside the boundaries of the control. To respond to the *WM_SIZE* message, you will add a message-handling method to the component.

Creating a message-handling method is described in detail in “Creating new message handlers” on page 51-6.

In this case, the calendar control needs a response to *WM_SIZE*, so add a protected method called *WMSize* to the control, then write the method so that it calculates the proper cell size to allow all cells to be visible in the new size:

```
class PACKAGE TSampleCalendar : public TCustomGrid
{
:
protected:
    void __fastcall WMSize(TWMSize &Message);

BEGIN_MESSAGE_MAP
    MESSAGE_HANDLER(WM_SIZE, TWMSize, WMSize)
END_MESSAGE_MAP(TCustomGrid)
};
```

Here is the code for the method in the CALSAMP.CPP file:

```
void __fastcall TSampleCalendar::WMSize(TWMSize &Message)
{
    int GridLines; // temporary local variable
    GridLines = 6 * GridLineWidth; // calculated combined size of all lines
    DefaultColWidth = (Message.Width - GridLines) / 7; // set new default cell width
    DefaultRowHeight = (Message.Height - GridLines) / 7; // and cell height
}
```

Now when the calendar is resized, it displays all the cells in the largest size that will fit in the control.

CLX In CLX, changes to the size of a window or control are automatically notified by a call to the protected *BoundsChanged* method. Your CLX component can respond to this notification by altering the size of the cells so they all fit inside the boundaries of the control.

In this case, the calendar control needs to override *BoundsChanged* so that it calculates the proper cell size to allow all cells to be visible in the new size:

```
class PACKAGE TSampleCalendar : public TCustomGrid
{
:
protected:
    void __fastcall BoundsChanged(void);
};
```

Here is the code for the method in the CALSAMP.CPP file:

```
void __fastcall TSampleCalendar::BoundsChanged(void)
{
    int GridLines; // temporary local variable
    GridLines = 6 * GridLineWidth; // calculated combined size of all lines
    DefaultColWidth = (Width - GridLines) / 7; // set new default cell width
    DefaultRowHeight = (Height - GridLines) / 7; // and cell height
    TCustomGrid::BoundsChanged(); // now call the inherited method
}
```

Filling in the cells

A grid control fills in its contents cell-by-cell. In the case of the calendar, that means calculating which date, if any, belongs in each cell. The default drawing for grid cells takes place in a virtual method called *DrawCell*.

To fill in the contents of grid cells, override the *DrawCell* method.

The easiest part to fill in is the heading cells in the fixed row. The runtime library contains an array with short day names, so for the calendar, use the appropriate one for each column:

Here is the code for the *DrawCell* method:

```
void __fastcall TSampleCalendar::DrawCell(int ACol, int ARow, const Windows::TRect &ARect,
    TGridDrawState AState)
{
    String TheText;
    int TempDay;
    if (ARow == 0) TheText = ShortDayNames[ACol + 1];
    else
    {
        TheText = "";
        TempDay = DayNum(ACol, ARow); // DayNum is defined later
        if (TempDay != -1) TheText = IntToStr(TempDay);
    }
    Canvas->TextRect(ARect, ARect.Left + (ARect.Right - ARect.Left
        - Canvas->TextWidth(TheText)) / 2,
        ARect.Top + (ARect.Bottom - ARect.Top - Canvas->TextHeight(TheText)) / 2, TheText);
}
```

Tracking the date

For the calendar control to be useful, users and applications must have a mechanism for setting the day, month, and year. C++Builder stores dates and times in variables of type *TDateTime*. *TDateTime* is an encoded numeric representation of the date and time, which is useful for programmatic manipulation, but not convenient for human use.

You can therefore store the date in encoded form, providing runtime access to that value, but also provide *Day*, *Month*, and *Year* properties that users of the calendar component can set at design time.

Tracking the date in the calendar consists of the processes:

- Storing the internal date
- Accessing the day, month, and year
- Generating the day numbers
- Selecting the current day

Storing the internal date

To store the date for the calendar, you need a private data member to hold the date and a runtime-only property that provides access to that date.

1 Declare a private data member to hold the date:

```
class PACKAGE TSampleCalendar : public TCustomGrid
{
private:
    TDateTime FDate;
    :
};
```

2 Initialize the date data member in the constructor:

```
__fastcall TSampleCalendar::TSampleCalendar(TComponent *Owner) : TCustomGrid(Owner)
{
    :
    FDate = FDate.CurrentDate();
}
```

3 Declare a runtime property to allow access to the encoded date:

```
class PACKAGE TSampleCalendar : public TCustomGrid
{
public:
    __property TDateTime CalendarDate = {read=FDate, write=SetCalendarDate, nodefault};
    :
};
```

You will need a method for setting the date, because setting the date requires updating the onscreen image of the control. Declare *SetCalendarDate* in *TSampleCalendar*:

```
class PACKAGE TSampleCalendar : public TCustomGrid
{
private:
    void __fastcall SetCalendarDate(TDateTime Value);
    :
};
```

This is the *SetCalendarDate* method:

```
void __fastcall TSampleCalendar::SetCalendarDate(TDateTime Value)
{
    FDate = Value;                // Set the new date value
    Refresh();                    // Update the onscreen image
}
```

Accessing the day, month, and year

An encoded numeric date is fine for applications, but humans prefer to work with days, months, and years. You can provide alternate access to those elements of the stored, encoded date by creating properties.

Because each element of the date (day, month, and year) is an integer, and because setting each requires encoding the date when set, you can avoid duplicating the code each time by sharing the implementation methods for all three properties. That is,

you can write two methods, one to read an element and one to write one, and use those methods to get and set all three properties.

To provide design-time access to the day, month, and year, you do the following:

1 Declare the three properties, assigning each a unique index number:

```
class PACKAGE TSampleCalendar : public TCustomGrid
{
    :
public:
    __property int Day = {read=GetDateElement, write=SetDateElement, index=3,
        nodefault};
    __property int Month = {read=GetDateElement, write=SetDateElement, index=2,
        nodefault};
    __property int Year = {read=GetDateElement, write=SetDateElement, index=1,
        nodefault};
};
```

2 Declare and write the implementation methods, setting different elements for each index value:

```
class PACKAGE TSampleCalendar : public TCustomGrid
{
private:
    int __fastcall GetDateElement(int Index);           // note the Index parameter
    void __fastcall SetDateElement(int Index, int Value);
    :
};
```

Here are the *GetDateElement* and *SetDateElement* methods:

```
int __fastcall TSampleCalendar::GetDateElement(int Index)
{
    unsigned short AYear, AMonth, ADay;
    int result;
    FDate.DecodeDate(&AYear, &AMonth, &ADay);           // break encoded date into elements
    switch (Index)
    {
        case 1: result = AYear; break;
        case 2: result = AMonth; break;
        case 3: result = ADay; break;
        default: result = -1;
    }
    return result;
}

void __fastcall TSampleCalendar::SetDateElement(int Index, int Value)
{
    unsigned short AYear, AMonth, ADay;
    if (Value > 0)                                       // all elements must be positive
    {
        FDate.DecodeDate(&AYear, &AMonth, &ADay);       // get current date elements
        switch (Index)
        {
            case 1: AYear = Value; break;
            case 2: AMonth = Value; break;
            case 3: ADay = Value; break;
        }
    }
}
```

```

        default: return;
    }
}
FDate = TDateTime(AYear, AMonth, ADay);    // encode the modified date
Refresh();                                // update the visible calendar
}

```

Now you can set the calendar's day, month, and year at design time using the Object Inspector or at runtime using code. Of course, you have not yet added the code to paint the dates into the cells, but now you have the needed data.

Generating the day numbers

Putting numbers into the calendar involves several considerations. The number of days in the month depends on which month it is, and whether the given year is a leap year. In addition, months start on different days of the week, dependent on the month and year. Use the *IsLeapYear* function to determine whether the year is a leap year. Use the *MonthDays* array in the SysUtils header file to get the number of days in the month.

Once you have the information on leap years and days per month, you can calculate where in the grid the individual dates go. The calculation is based on the day of the week the month starts on.

Because you will need the month-offset number for each cell you fill in, the best practice is to calculate it once when you change the month or year, then refer to it each time. You can store the value in a class data member, then update that data member each time the date changes.

To fill in the days in the proper cells, you do the following:

- 1 Add a month-offset data member to the class and a method that updates the data member value:

```

class PACKAGE TSampleCalendar : public TCustomGrid
{
private:
    int FMonthOffset;                // storage for the offset
    :
protected:
    virtual void __fastcall UpdateCalendar(void);
    :
};

void __fastcall TSampleCalendar::UpdateCalendar(void)
{
    unsigned short AYear, AMonth, ADay;
    TDateTime FirstDate;              // date of first day of the month
    if ((int)FDate != 0)              // only calculate offset if date is valid
    {
        FDate.DecodeDate(&AYear, &AMonth, &ADay); // get elements of date
        FirstDate = TDateTime(AYear, AMonth, 1);  // date of the first
        FMonthOffset = 2 - FirstDate.DayOfWeek(); // generate the offset into the grid
    }
    Refresh();                       // always repaint the control
}

```

- 2** Add statements to the constructor and the *SetCalendarDate* and *SetDateElement* methods that call the new update method whenever the date changes:

```
__fastcall TSampleCalendar::TSampleCalendar(TComponent *Owner)
: TCustomGrid(Owner)
{
    :
    UpdateCalendar();
}

void __fastcall TSampleCalendar::SetCalendarDate(TDateTime Value)
{
    FDate = Value;                // this was already here
    UpdateCalendar();             // this previously called Refresh
}

void __fastcall TSampleCalendar::SetDateElement(int Index, int Value)
{
    :
    FDate = TDateTime(AYear, AMonth, ADay);    // this was already here
    UpdateCalendar();                         // this previously called Refresh
}
```

- 3** Add a method to the calendar that returns the day number when passed the row and column coordinates of a cell:

```
int __fastcall TSampleCalendar::DayNum(int ACol, int ARow)
{
    int result = FMonthOffset + ACol + (ARow - 1) * 7;    // calculate day for this cell
    if ((result < 1) || (result > MonthDays[IsLeapYear(Year)][Month]))
        result = -1;    // return -1 if invalid
    return result;
}
```

Remember to add the declaration of *DayNum* to the component's type declaration.

- 4** Now that you can calculate where the dates go, you can update *DrawCell* to fill in the dates:

```
void __fastcall TSampleCalendar::DrawCell(int ACol, int ARow, const TRect &ARect,
TGridDrawState AState)
{
    String TheText;
    int TempDay;
    if (ARow == 0)                // this is the header row
        TheText = ShortDayNames[ACol + 1];    // just use the day name
    else
    {
        TheText = "";            // blank cell is the default
        TempDay = DayNum(ACol, ARow);    // get number for this cell
        if (TempDay != -1) TheText = IntToStr(TempDay); // use the number if valid
    }
    Canvas->TextRect(ARect, ARect.Left + (ARect.Right - ARect.Left -
        Canvas->TextWidth(TheText)) / 2,
        ARect.Top + (ARect.Bottom - ARect.Top - Canvas->TextHeight(TheText)) / 2, TheText);
}
```

Now if you reinstall the calendar component and place one on a form, you will see the proper information for the current month.

Selecting the current day

Now that you have numbers in the calendar cells, it makes sense to move the selection highlighting to the cell containing the current day. By default, the selection starts on the top left cell, so you need to set the *Row* and *Column* properties both when constructing the calendar initially and when the date changes.

To set the selection on the current day, change the *UpdateCalendar* method to set *Row* and *Column* before calling *Refresh*:

```
void __fastcall TSampleCalendar::UpdateCalendar(void)
{
    unsigned short AYear, AMonth, ADay;
    TDateTime FirstDate;
    if ((int) FDate != 0)
    {
        :                                     // existing statements to set FMonthOffset
        Row = (ADay - FMonthOffset) / 7 + 1;
        Col = (ADay - FMonthOffset) % 7;
    }
    Refresh();                               // this is already here
}
```

Note that you are now reusing the *ADay* variable previously set by decoding the date.

Navigating months and years

Properties are useful for manipulating components, especially at design time. But sometimes there are types of manipulations that are so common or natural, often involving more than one property, that it makes sense to provide methods to handle them. One example of such a natural manipulation is a “next month” feature for a calendar. Handling the wrapping around of months and incrementing of years is simple, but very convenient for the developer using the component.

The only drawback to encapsulating common manipulations into methods is that methods are only available at runtime. However, such manipulations are generally only cumbersome when performed repeatedly, and that is fairly rare at design time.

For the calendar, add the following four methods for next and previous month and year. Each of these methods uses the *IncMonth* function in a slightly different manner to increment or decrement *CalendarDate*, by increments of a month or a year.

```
void __fastcall TSampleCalendar::NextMonth()
{
    CalendarDate = IncMonth(CalendarDate, 1);
}

void __fastcall TSampleCalendar::PrevMonth()
{

```

```
        CalendarDate = IncMonth(CalendarDate, -1);
    }

    void __fastcall TSampleCalendar::NextYear()
    {
        CalendarDate = IncMonth(CalendarDate, 12);
    }

    void __fastcall TSampleCalendar::PrevYear()
    {
        CalendarDate = IncMonth(CalendarDate, -12);
    }
```

Be sure to add the declarations of the new methods to the class declaration.

Now when you create an application that uses the calendar component, you can easily implement browsing through months or years.

Navigating days

Within a given month, there are two obvious ways to navigate among the days. The first is to use the arrow keys, and the other is to respond to clicks of the mouse. The standard grid component handles both as if they were clicks. That is, an arrow movement is treated like a click on an adjacent cell.

The process of navigating days consists of

- Moving the selection
- Providing an OnChange event
- Excluding blank cells

Moving the selection

The inherited behavior of a grid handles moving the selection in response to either arrow keys or clicks, but if you want to change the selected day, you need to modify that default behavior.

To handle movements within the calendar, override the *Click* method of the grid.

When you override a method such as *Click* that is tied in with user interactions, you will nearly always include a call to the inherited method, so as not to lose the standard behavior.

The following is an overridden *Click* method for the calendar grid. Be sure to add the declaration of *Click* to *TSampleCalendar*.

```
void __fastcall TSampleCalendar::Click()
{
    int TempDay = DayNum(Col, Row);           // get the day number for the clicked cell
    if (TempDay != -1) Day = TempDay;         // change day if valid
}
```

Providing an OnChange event

Now that users of the calendar can change the date within the calendar, it makes sense to allow applications to respond to those changes.

Add an *OnChange* event to *TSampleCalendar*.

- 1 Declare the event, a data member to store the event, and a virtual method to call the event:

```
class PACKAGE TSampleCalendar : public TCustomGrid
{
private:
    TNotifyEvent FOnChange;
    :
protected:
    virtual void __fastcall Change();
__published:
    __property TNotifyEvent OnChange = {read=FOnChange, write=FOnChange};
    :
}
```

- 2 Write the *Change* method:

```
void __fastcall TSampleCalendar::Change()
{
    if(FOnChange != NULL) FOnChange(this);
}
```

- 3 Add statements calling *Change* to the end of the *SetCalendarDate* and *SetDateElement* methods:

```
void __fastcall TSampleCalendar::SetCalendarDate(TDateTime Value)
{
    FDate = Value;
    UpdateCalendar();
    Change();           // this is the only new statement
}

void __fastcall TSampleCalendar::SetDateElement(int Index, int Value)
{
    : // many statements setting element values
    FDate = TDateTime(AYear, AMonth, ADay);
    UpdateCalendar();
    Change();           // this is new
}
```

Applications using the calendar component can now respond to changes in the date of the component by attaching handlers to the *OnChange* event.

Excluding blank cells

As the calendar is written, the user can select a blank cell, but the date does not change. It makes sense, then, to disallow selection of the blank cells.

To control whether a given cell is selectable, override the *SelectCell* method of the grid.

SelectCell is a function that takes a column and row as parameters, and returns a Boolean value indicating whether the specified cell is selectable.

You can override *SelectCell* to return **false** if the cell does not contain a valid date:

```
bool __fastcall TSampleCalendar::SelectCell(int ACol, int ARow)
{
    if (DayNum(ACol,ARow) == -1) return false;           // -1 indicates invalid date
    else return TCustomGrid::SelectCell(ACol, ARow);    // otherwise, use inherited value
}
```

Now if the user clicks a blank cell or tries to move to one with an arrow key, the calendar leaves the current cell selected.

Making a control data aware

When working with database connections, it is often convenient to have controls that are *data aware*. That is, the application can establish a link between the control and some part of a database. C++Builder includes data-aware labels, edit boxes, list boxes, combo boxes, lookup controls, and grids. You can also make your own controls data aware. For more information about using data-aware controls, see Chapter 19, “Using data controls.”

There are several degrees of data awareness. The simplest is read-only data awareness, or *data browsing*, the ability to reflect the current state of a database. More complicated is editable data awareness, or *data editing*, where the user can edit the values in the database by manipulating the control. Note also that the degree of involvement with the database can vary, from the simplest case, a link with a single field, to more complex cases, such as multiple-record controls.

This chapter first illustrates the simplest case, making a read-only control that links to a single field in a dataset. The specific control used will be the *TSampleCalendar* calendar created in Chapter 55, “Customizing a grid.” You can also use the standard calendar control on the Samples page of the Component palette, *TCCalendar* (VCL only).

The chapter then continues with an explanation of how to make the new data browsing control a data editing control.

Creating a data browsing control

Creating a data-aware calendar control, whether it is a read-only control or one in which the user can change the underlying data in the dataset, involves the following steps:

- Creating and registering the component
- Adding the data link
- Responding to data changes

Creating and registering the component

You create every component the same way: derive a component class, save the component's .CPP and .H files, derive a component class, register it, compile it, and install it on the Component palette. This process is outlined in "Creating a new component" on page 45-8.

For this example, follow the general procedure for creating a component, with these specifics:

- Derive a new component class called *TDBCcalendar*, descended from the component *TSampleCalendar*. Chapter 55, "Customizing a grid," shows you how to create the *TSampleCalendar* component.
- Name the header file DBCAL.H and the .CPP file DBCAL.CPP.
- Register *TDBCcalendar* on the Samples page (or other page in CLX applications) of the Component palette.

CLX Names and locations of some of the header files differ in CLX applications. For example, <vcl\controls.hpp> is <clx\qcontrols.hpp> in CLX.

The resulting header file should look like this:

```
#ifndef DBCalH
#define DBCalH
//-----
#include <vcl\sysutils.hpp>
#include <vcl\controls.hpp>
#include <vcl\classes.hpp>
#include <vcl\forms.hpp>
#include <vcl\grids.hpp>           // include the Grids header
#include "calsamp.h"             // include the header that declares TSampleCalendar
//-----
class PACKAGE TDBCcalendar : public TSampleCalendar
{
private:
protected:
public:
    __published:
};
//-----
#endif
```

The .CPP file should look like this:

```
#pragma link "Calsamp"           // link in TSampleCalendar

#include <vcl\vcl.h>
#pragma hdrstop
#include "DBCAl.h"
//-----
#pragma package(smart_init);
//-----
static inline TDBCcalendar *ValidCtrCheck()
{
```

```

    return new TDBCalendar(NULL);
}
//-----
namespace Dbcal
{
    void __fastcall PACKAGE Register()
    {
        TComponentClass classes[1] = {__classid(TDBCalendar)};
        RegisterComponents("Samples", classes, 0); //Use different page in CLX applications
    }
}

```

Note If you used the Component wizard to begin the *TDBCalendar* component, your header file will have the constructor already declared, and the .CPP file has the constructor's definition.

You can now proceed with making the new calendar a data browser.

Making the control read-only

Because this data calendar will be read-only with respect to the data, it makes sense to make the control itself read-only, so users will not make changes within the control and expect them to be reflected in the database.

Making the calendar read-only involves:

- Adding the `ReadOnly` property.
- Allowing needed updates.

VCL Note that if you started with the *TCalendar* component from C++Builder's Samples page instead of *TSampleCalendar*, it already has a *ReadOnly* property, so you can skip these steps.

Adding the `ReadOnly` property

By adding a *ReadOnly* property, you will provide a way to make the control read-only at design time. When that property is set to **true**, you can make all cells in the control unable to be selected.

- 1 Add the property declaration and a **private** data member to hold the value in the `DBCAL.H` file:

```

class PACKAGE TDBCalendar : public TSampleCalendar
{
private:
    bool FReadOnly; // field for internal storage
protected:
public:
    virtual __fastcall TDBCalendar(TComponent* Owner);
__published:
    __property ReadOnly = {read=FReadOnly, write=FReadOnly, default=true};
};

```

2 Write the constructor in DBCAL.CPP:

```
virtual __fastcall TDBCcalendar::TDBCcalendar(TComponent* Owner) :
    TSampleCalendar(Owner)
{
    FReadOnly = true;                // sets the default value
}
```

3 Override the *SelectCell* method to disallow selection if the control is read-only. Use of *SelectCell* is explained in “Excluding blank cells” on page 55-14.

```
bool __fastcall TDBCcalendar::SelectCell(long ACol, long ARow)
{
    if (FReadOnly) return false;    // can't select if read only
    return TSampleCalendar::SelectCell(ACol, ARow); // otherwise, use inherited method
}
```

Remember to add the declaration of *SelectCell* to the class declaration of *TDBCcalendar*.

If you now add the calendar to a form, you will find that the component ignores clicks and keystrokes. It also fails to update the selection position when you change the date.

Allowing needed updates

The read-only calendar uses the *SelectCell* method for all kinds of changes, including setting the *Row* and *Col* properties. The *UpdateCalendar* method sets *Row* and *Col* every time the date changes, but because *SelectCell* disallows changes, the selection remains in place, even though the date changes.

To get around this absolute prohibition on changes, you can add an internal Boolean flag to the calendar, and permit changes when that flag is set to **true**:

```
class PACKAGE TDBCcalendar : public TSampleCalendar
{
private:
    :
    bool FUpdating;                // private flag for internal use
protected:
    virtual bool __fastcall SelectCell(long ACol, long ARow);
public:
    :
    virtual void __fastcall UpdateCalendar();
    :
};

bool __fastcall TDBCcalendar::SelectCell(long ACol, long ARow)
{
    if (!FUpdating && FReadOnly) return false;    // can't select if read only
    return TSampleCalendar::SelectCell(ACol, ARow); // otherwise, use inherited method
}

void __fastcall TDBCcalendar::UpdateCalendar()
{
    FUpdating=true;                // set flag to allow updates
    try
    {
```

```

        TSampleCalendar::UpdateCalendar();           // update as usual
    }
    catch(...)
    {
        FUpdating = false;
        throw;
    }
    FUpdating = false;                               // always clear the flag
}

```

The calendar still disallows user changes, but now correctly reflects changes made in the date by changing the date properties. Now that you have a true read-only calendar control, you are ready to add the data browsing ability.

Adding the data link

The connection between a control and a database is handled by a class called a *data link*. The data link class that connects a control with a single data member in a database is *TFieldDataLink*. There are also data links for entire tables.

A data-aware control *owns* its data link class. That is, the control has the responsibility for constructing and destroying the data link. For details on management of owned classes, see Chapter 54, “Creating a graphic control.”

Establishing a data link as an owned class requires these three steps:

- 1 Declaring the class data member.
- 2 Declaring the access properties.
- 3 Initializing the data link.

Declaring the data member

A component needs a data member for each of its owned classes, as explained in “Declaring the data members” on page 54-6. In this case, the calendar needs a data member of type *TFieldDataLink* for its data link.

Declare a field for the data link in the calendar:

```

class PACKAGE TDBCalendar : public TSampleCalendar
{
private:
    TFieldDataLink *FDataLink;
    :
};

```

Before you can compile the application, you need to include the DB.HPP and DBTABLES.HPP files in the DBCAL.H file:

```

#include <DB.hpp>
#include <DBTables.hpp>

```

Declaring the access properties

Every data-aware control has a *DataSource* property that specifies which data source class in the application provides the data to the control. In addition, a control that accesses a single field needs a *DataField* property to specify that field in the data source.

Unlike the access properties for the owned classes in the example in Chapter 54, “Creating a graphic control”, these access properties do not provide access to the owned classes themselves, but rather to corresponding properties in the owned class. That is, you will create properties that enable the control and its data link to share the same data source and field.

Declare the *DataSource* and *DataField* properties and their implementation methods, then write the methods as “pass-through” methods to the corresponding properties of the data link class:

An example of declaring access properties

```
class PACKAGE TDBCcalendar : public TSampleCalendar
{
private:
    :
    AnsiString __fastcall GetDataField();           // methods are private
    TDataSource *__fastcall GetDataSource();        // returns name of data field
    void __fastcall SetDataField(AnsiString Value); // returns reference to data
                                                    // source
    void __fastcall SetDataSource(TDataSource *Value); // assigns name of data field
    :
__published:                                     // make properties available at design time
    __property AnsiString DataField = {read=GetDataField, write=SetDataField, nodefault};
    __property TDataSource * DataSource = {read=GetDataSource, write=SetDataSource,
        nodefault};
    :
};

AnsiString __fastcall TDBCcalendar::GetDataField()
{
    return FDataLink->FieldName;
}

TDataSource *__fastcall TDBCcalendar::GetDataSource()
{
    return FDataLink->DataSource;
}

void __fastcall TDBCcalendar::SetDataField(AnsiString Value)
{
    FDataLink->FieldName = Value;
}

void __fastcall TDBCcalendar::SetDataSource(TDataSource *Value)
{
    if(Value != NULL)
        Value->FreeNotification(this);
    FDataLink->DataSource = Value;
}
```

Now that you have established the links between the calendar and its data link, there is one more important step. You must construct the data link class when the calendar control is constructed, and destroy the data link before destroying the calendar.

Initializing the data link

A data-aware control needs access to its data link throughout its existence, so it must construct the data link object as part of its own constructor, and destroy the data link object before it is itself destroyed.

Override the constructor and destructor of the calendar:

```
class PACKAGE TDBCcalendar : public TSampleCalendar
{
public:
    virtual __fastcall TDBCcalendar(TComponent *Owner);
    __fastcall ~TDBCcalendar();
};

__fastcall TDBCcalendar::TDBCcalendar(TComponent* Owner) : TSampleCalendar(Owner)
{
    FReadOnly = true;
    FDataLink = new TFieldDataLink();
    FDataLink->Control = this;
}

__fastcall TDBCcalendar::~TDBCcalendar()
{
    FDataLink->Control = NULL;
    FDataLink->OnUpdateData = NULL;
    delete FDataLink;
}
```

Now you have a complete data link, but you have not yet told the control what data it should read from the linked field. The next section explains how to do that.

Responding to data changes

Once a control has a data link and properties to specify the data source and data field, it needs to respond to changes in the data in that field, either because of a move to a different record or because of a change made to that field.

Data link classes all have events named *OnDataChange*. When the data source indicates a change in its data, the data link object calls any event handler attached to its *OnDataChange* event.

To update a control in response to data changes, attach a handler to the data link's *OnDataChange* event.

In this case, you will add a method to the calendar, then designate it as the handler for the data link's *OnDataChange*.

Declare and implement the *DataChange* method, then assign it to the data link's *OnDataChange* event in the constructor. In the destructor, detach the *OnDataChange* handler before destroying the object.

```
class PACKAGE TDBCalendar : public TSampleCalendar
{
private:
    void __fastcall DataChange(TObject *Sender);
    :
};

void __fastcall TDBCalendar::DataChange( TObject* Sender)
{
    if (FDataLink->Field == NULL)                // if no field is assigned ...
        CalendarDate = 0;                        // ...set to invalid date
    else CalendarDate = FDataLink->Field->AsDateTime; // otherwise, set to new data
}

__fastcall TDBCalendar::TDBCalendar(TComponent* Owner) : TSampleCalendar(AOwner)
{
    FReadOnly = true;
    FDataLink = new TFieldDataLink();            // construct the datalink object
    FDataLink->Control = this;
    FDataLink->OnDataChange = DataChange;         // attach the handler
}

__fastcall TDBCalendar::~TDBCalendar()
{
    FDataLink->Control = NULL;
    FDataLink->OnUpdateData = NULL;
    FDataLink->OnDataChange = NULL;              // detach the handler before...
    delete FDataLink;                          // ...destroying the datalink object
}
```

You now have a data browsing control.

Creating a data editing control

When you create a data editing control, you create and register the component and add the data link just as you do for a data browsing control. You also respond to data changes in the underlying field in a similar manner, but you must handle a few more issues.

For example, you probably want your control to respond to both key and mouse events. Your control must respond when the user changes the contents of the control. When the user exits the control, you want the changes made in the control to be reflected in the dataset.

The data editing control described here is the same calendar control described in the first part of the chapter. The control is modified so that it can edit as well as view the data in its linked field.

Modifying the existing control to make it a data editing control involves:

- Changing the default value of FReadOnly.
- Handling mouse-down and key-down messages.
- Updating the field data link class.
- Modifying the Change method.
- Updating the dataset.

Changing the default value of *FReadOnly*

Because this is a data editing control, the *ReadOnly* property should be set to **false** by default. To make the *ReadOnly* property **false**, change the value of *FReadOnly* in the constructor:

```
__fastcall TDBCalendar::TDBCalendar (TComponent* Owner) : TSampleCalendar(Owner)
{
    FReadOnly = false;           // set the default value
    :
}
```

Handling mouse-down and key-down messages

When the user of the control begins interacting with it, the control receives either mouse-down messages (*WM_LBUTTONDOWN*, *WM_MBUTTONDOWN*, or *WM_RBUTTONDOWN*) or a key-down message (*WM_KEYDOWN*) from Windows. To enable a control to respond to these messages, you must write handlers that respond to these messages.

- Responding to mouse-down messages
- Responding to key-down messages

CLX If using CLX, notification is from the operating system in the form of system events. For information on writing components that respond to system and widget events, see “Responding to system notifications using CLX” on page 51-10.

Responding to mouse-down messages

A *MouseDown* method is a protected method for a control’s *OnMouseDown* event. The control itself calls *MouseDown* in response to a Windows mouse-down message. When you override the inherited *MouseDown* method, you can include code that provides other responses in addition to calling the *OnMouseDown* event.

To override *MouseDown*, add the *MouseDown* method to the *TDBCalendar* class:

```
class PACKAGE TDBCalendar : public TSampleCalendar
{
    :
protected:
    virtual void __fastcall MouseDown(TMouseButton Button, TShiftState Shift, int X,
        int Y);
    :
};
```

Write the *MouseDown* method in the .CPP file:

```
void __fastcall TDBCalendar::MouseDown(TMouseButton Button, TShiftState Shift, int X,
    int Y)
{
    TMouseEvent MyMouseDown;           // declare event type
    if (!FReadOnly && FDataLink->Edit()) // if the field can be edited
        TSampleCalendar::MouseDown(Button, Shift, X, Y); // call the inherited MouseDown
    else
```

```

    {
        MyMouseDown = OnMouseDown;           // assign OnMouseDown event
        if (MyMouseDown != NULL) MyMouseDown(this, Button, // execute code in the...
            Shift, X, Y);                       // ...OnMouseDown event handler
    }
}

```

When *MouseDown* responds to a mouse-down message, the inherited *MouseDown* method is called only if the control's *ReadOnly* property is **false** and the data link object is in edit mode, which means the field can be edited. If the field cannot be edited, the code the programmer put in the *OnMouseDown* event handler, if one exists, is executed.

Responding to key-down messages

A *KeyDown* method is a protected method for a control's *OnKeyDown* event. The control itself calls *KeyDown* in response to a Windows key-down message. When overriding the inherited *KeyDown* method, you can include code that provides other responses in addition to calling the *OnKeyDown* event.

To override *KeyDown*, follow these steps:

- 1 Add a *KeyDown* method to the *TDBCcalendar* class:

```

class PACKAGE TDBCcalendar : public TSampleCalendar
{
    :
protected:
    virtual void __fastcall KeyDown(unsigned short &Key, TShiftState Shift);
    :
};

```

- 2 Write the *KeyDown* method in the .CPP file:

```

void __fastcall TDBCcalendar::KeyDown(unsigned short &Key, TShiftState Shift)
{
    TKeyEvent MyKeyDown;           // declare event type
    Set<unsigned short,0,8> keySet;
    keySet = keySet << VK_UP << VK_DOWN << VK_LEFT // assign virtual keys to set
        << VK_RIGHT << VK_END << VK_HOME << VK_PRIOR << VK_NEXT;
    if (!FReadOnly &&           // if control is not read only...
        (keySet.Contains(Key)) && // ...and key is in the set...
        FDataLink->Edit() )      // ...and field is in edit mode
    {
        TCustomGrid::KeyDown(Key, Shift); // call the inherited KeyDown method
    }
    else
    {
        MyKeyDown = OnKeyDown;           // assign OnKeyDown event
        if (MyKeyDown != NULL) MyKeyDown(this,Key,Shift); // execute code in...
    }                                     // ...OnKeyDown event handler
}

```

When *KeyDown* responds to a mouse-down message, the inherited *KeyDown* method is called only if the control's *ReadOnly* property is **false**, the key pressed is one of the cursor control keys, and the data link object is in edit mode, which means the field

can be edited. If the field cannot be edited or some other key is pressed, the code the programmer put in the *OnKeyDown* event handler, if one exists, is executed.

Updating the field data link class

There are two types of data changes:

- A change in a field value that must be reflected in the data-aware control.
- A change in the data-aware control that must be reflected in the field value.

The *TDBCcalendar* component already has a *DataChange* method that handles a change in the field's value in the dataset by assigning that value to the *CalendarDate* property. The *DataChange* method is the handler for the *OnDataChange* event. So the calendar component can handle the first type of data change.

Similarly, the field data link class also has an *OnUpdateData* event that occurs as the user of the control modifies the contents of the data-aware control. The calendar control has a *UpdateData* method that becomes the event handler for the *OnUpdateData* event. *UpdateData* assigns the changed value in the data-aware control to the field data link.

- 1 To reflect a change made to the value in the calendar in the field value, add an *UpdateData* method to the private section of the calendar component:

```
class PACKAGE TDBCcalendar : public TSampleCalendar
{
private:
    void __fastcall UpdateData(TObject *Sender);
};
```

- 2 Write the *UpdateData* method in the .CPP file:

```
void __fastcall TDBCcalendar::UpdateData( TObject* Sender)
{
    FDataLink->Field->AsDateTime = CalendarDate;    // set field link to calendar date
}
```

- 3 Within the constructor for *TDBCcalendar*, assign the *UpdateData* method to the *OnUpdateData* event:

```
__fastcall TDBCcalendar::TDBCcalendar(TComponent* Owner)
: TSampleCalendar(Owner)
{
    FDataLink = new TFieldDataLink();    // this was already here
    FDataLink->OnDataChange = DataChange; // this was here too
    FDataLink->OnUpdateData = UpdateData; // assign UpdateData to the OnUpdateData event
}
```

Modifying the Change method

The *Change* method of the *TDBCcalendar* is called whenever a new date value is set. *Change* calls the *OnChange* event handler, if one exists. The component user can write code in the *OnChange* event handler to respond to changes in the date.

When the calendar date changes, the underlying dataset should be notified that a change has occurred. You can do that by overriding the *Change* method and adding one more line of code. These are the steps to follow:

- 1 Add a new *Change* method to the *TDBCcalendar* component:

```
class PACKAGE TDBCcalendar : public TSampleCalendar
{
protected:
    virtual void __fastcall Change();
    :
};
```

- 2 Write the *Change* method, calling the *Modified* method that informs the dataset the data has changed, then call the inherited *Change* method:

```
void __fastcall TDBCcalendar::Change()
{
    if (FDataLink != NULL)
        FDataLink->Modified();           // call the Modified method
    TSampleCalendar::Change();           // call the inherited Change method
}
```

Updating the dataset

So far, a change within the data-aware control has changed values in the field data link class. The final step in creating a data editing control is to update the dataset with the new value. This should happen after the person changing the value in the data-aware control exits the control by clicking outside the control or pressing the *Tab* key. This process works differently in the VCL and CLX.

- VCL** VCL has defined message control IDs for operations on controls. For example, the *CM_EXIT* message is sent to the control when the user exits the control. You can write message handlers that respond to the message. In this case, when the user exits the control, the *CMExit* method, the message handler for *CM_EXIT*, responds by updating the record in the dataset with the changed values in the field data link class. For more information about message handlers, see Chapter 51, “Handling messages and system notifications.”

To update the dataset within a message handler, follow these steps:

- 1 Add the message handler to the *TDBCcalendar* component:

```
class PACKAGE TDBCcalendar : public TSampleCalendar
{
private:
    void __fastcall CMExit(TWMNoParams Message);

BEGIN_MESSAGE_MAP
    MESSAGE_HANDLER(CM_EXIT, TWMNoParams, CMExit)
END_MESSAGE_MAP
};
```

2 Write the code in the .CPP file so that it looks like this:

```
void __fastcall TDBCcalendar::CMExit(TWMNoParams &Message)
{
    try
    {
        FDataLink.UpdateRecord();           // tell data link to update database
    }
    catch(...)
    {
        SetFocus();                         // if it failed, don't let focus leave
        throw;
    }
}
```

CLX In CLX, *TWidgetControl* has a protected *DoExit* method that is called when input focus shifts away from the control. This method calls the event handler for the *OnExit* event. You can override this method to update the record in the dataset before generating the *OnExit* event handler.

To update the dataset when the user exits the control, follow these steps:

1 Add an override for the *DoExit* method to the *TDBCcalendar* component:

```
class PACKAGE TDBCcalendar : public TSampleCalendar
{
private:
    DYNAMIC void __fastcall DoExit(void);
    :
};
```

2 Write the code in the .CPP file so that it looks like this:

```
void __fastcall TDBCcalendar::DoExit(void)
{
    try
    {
        FDataLink.UpdateRecord();           // tell data link to update database
    }
    catch(...)
    {
        SetFocus();                         // if it failed, don't let focus leave
        throw;
    }
    TCustomGrid::DoExit(); // let the inherited method generate an OnExit event
}
```


Making a dialog box a component

You will find it convenient to make a frequently used dialog box into a component that you add to the Component palette. Your dialog box components will work just like the components that represent the standard common dialog boxes. The goal is to create a simple component that a user can add to a project and set properties for at design time.

Making a dialog box a component requires these steps:

- 1 Defining the component interface
- 2 Creating and registering the component
- 3 Creating the component interface
- 4 Testing the component

The C++Builder “wrapper” component associated with the dialog box creates and executes the dialog box at runtime, passing along the data the user specified. The dialog-box component is therefore both reusable and customizable.

In this chapter, you will see how to create a wrapper component around the generic About Box form provided in the C++Builder Object Repository.

Note Copy the files ABOUT.H, ABOUT.CPP and ABOUT.DFM into your working directory. Add ABOUT.CPP to your project so that an ABOUT.OBJ file is created when your dialog wrapper component builds.

There are not many special considerations for designing a dialog box that will be wrapped into a component. Nearly any form can operate as a dialog box in this context.

Defining the component interface

Before you can create the component for your dialog box, you need to decide how you want developers to use it. You create an interface between your dialog box and applications that use it.

For example, look at the properties for the common dialog box components. They enable the developer to set the initial state of the dialog box, such as the caption and initial control settings, then read back any needed information after the dialog box closes. There is no direct interaction with the individual controls in the dialog box, just with the properties in the wrapper component.

The interface must therefore contain enough information that the dialog box form can appear in the way the developer specifies and return any information the application needs. You can think of the properties in the wrapper component as being persistent data for a transient dialog box.

In the case of the About box, you do not need to return any information, so the wrapper's properties only have to contain the information needed to display the About box properly. Because there are four separate fields in the About box that the application might affect, you will provide four string-type properties to provide for them.

Creating and registering the component

Creation of every component begins the same way: derive a component class, save the component's .CPP and .H files, derive a component class, register it, compile it, and install it on the component palette. This process is outlined in "Creating a new component" on page 45-8.

For this example, follow the general procedure for creating a component, with these specifics:

- Derive a new component type called *TAboutBoxDlg*, descended from *TComponent*.
- Call the component's unit files ABOUTDLG.H and ABOUTDLG.CPP.
- Register *TAboutBoxDlg* on the Samples page of the component palette.

The resulting .HPP file should look like this:

```
#ifndef AboutDlgH
#define AboutDlgH
//-----
#include <vcl\sysutils.hpp>
#include <vcl\controls.hpp>
#include <vcl\classes.hpp>
#include <vcl\forms.hpp>
//-----
class PACKAGE TAboutBoxDlg : public TComponent
{
private:
protected:
public:
    __published:
};
//-----
#endif
```


The .CPP file of the unit should look like this:

```
#include <vcl\vcl.h>
#pragma hdrstop
#include "AboutDlg.h"
//-----
#pragma package(smart_init);
//-----
static inline TAboutBoxDlg *ValidCtrCheck()
{
    return new TAboutBoxDlg(NULL);
}
//-----
namespace AboutDlg {
{
    void __fastcall PACKAGE Register()
    {
        TComponentClass classes[1] = {__classid(TAboutBoxDlg)};
        RegisterComponents("Samples", classes, 0);
    }
}
```

Note If you used the Component wizard to begin this component, *TAboutDlg* will also have a constructor added.

CLX Names and locations of some of the header files differ in CLX applications. For example, `<vcl\controls.hpp>` is `<clx\qcontrols.hpp>` in CLX.

The new component now has only the capabilities built into *TComponent*. It is the simplest nonvisual component. In the next section, you will create the interface between the component and the dialog box.

Creating the component interface

These are the steps to create the component interface:

- 1 Including the form unit files.
- 2 Adding interface properties.
- 3 Adding the Execute method.

Including the form unit files

For your wrapper component to initialize and display the wrapped dialog box, you must add the form's files to the project.

Include ABOUT.HPP and link in ABOUT.OBJ in the component's header file:

```
#include "About.h"
#pragma link "About.obj"
```

The form header file always declares an instance of the form class. In the case of the About box, the form class is *TAboutBox*, and the ABOUT.H file includes the following:

```
extern TAboutBox *AboutBox;
```

Adding interface properties

Before proceeding, decide on the properties your wrapper needs to enable developers to use your dialog box as a component in their applications. Then, you can add declarations for those properties to the component's class declaration.

Properties in wrapper components are somewhat simpler than the properties you would create if you were writing a regular component. Remember that in this case, you are just creating some persistent data that the wrapper can pass back and forth to the dialog box. By putting that data in the form of properties, you enable developers to set data at design time so that the wrapper can pass it to the dialog box at runtime.

Declaring an interface property requires two additions to the component's class declaration:

- A private data member, which is a variable the wrapper uses to store the value of the property
- The published property declaration itself, which specifies the name of the property and tells it which data member to use for storage

Interface properties of this sort do not need access methods. They use direct access to their stored data. By convention, the data member that stores the property's value has the same name as the property, but with the letter *F* in front. The data member and the property *must* be of the same type.

For example, to declare an integer-type interface property called *Year*, you would declare it as follows:

```
class PACKAGE TWrapper : public TComponent
{
private:
    int FYear;                                // data member to hold the Year-property data
protected:
public:
    __published:
        __property int Year = {read=FYear, write=FYear};    // property matched with storage
};
```

For this About box, you need four string-type properties—one each for the product name, the version information, the copyright information, and any comments. This is how the ABOUTDLG.H file should look:

```
class PACKAGE TAboutBoxDlg : public TComponent
{
private:
    int FYear;
    String FProductName, FVersion, FCopyright, FComments;
protected:
```

```

public:
__published:
    __property int Year = {read=FYear, write=FYear};
    __property String ProductName = {read=FProductName, write=FProductName};
    __property String Version = {read=FVersion, write=FVersion};
    __property String Copyright = {read=FCopyright, write=FCopyright};
    __property String Comments = {read=FComments, write=FComments};
};

```

When you install the component onto the component palette and place the component on a form, you will be able to set the properties, and those values will automatically stay with the form. The wrapper can then use those values when executing the wrapped dialog box.

Adding the Execute method

The final part of the component interface is a way to open the dialog box and return a result when it closes. As with the common dialog box components, you use a boolean function called *Execute* that returns **true** if the user clicks OK, or **false** if the user cancels the dialog box.

The declaration for the *Execute* method always looks like this:

```

class PACKAGE TMyWrapper : public TComponent
{
    :
public:
    bool __fastcall Execute();
    :
};

```

The minimum implementation for *Execute* needs to construct the dialog box form, show it as a modal dialog box, and return either **true** or **false**, depending on the return value from *ShowModal*.

Here is the minimal *Execute* method for a dialog-box form of type *TMyDialogBox*:

```

bool __fastcall TMyWrapper::Execute()
{
    DialogBox = new TMyDialogBox(Application);    // construct the form
    bool Result;
    try
    {
        Result = (DialogBox->ShowModal() IDOK); // execute; set result based on how closed
    }
    catch(...)
    {
        Result = false;                          // if it fails, set Result to false
    }
    DialogBox->Free();                             // dispose of form
}

```

In practice, there will be more code inside the exception handler. Specifically, before calling *ShowModal*, the wrapper will set some of the dialog box's properties based on the wrapper component's interface properties. After *ShowModal* returns, the wrapper

will probably set some of its interface properties based on the outcome of the dialog box execution.

In the case of the About box, you need to use the wrapper component's four interface properties to set the contents of the labels in the About box form. Because the About box does not return any information to the application, there is no need to do anything after calling *ShowModal*. Write the About box wrapper's *Execute* method so that it looks like this in the ABOUTDLG.CPP file:

```
bool __fastcall TAboutBoxDlg::Execute()
{
    AboutBox = new TAboutBox(Application);           // construct the About box
    bool Result;
    try
    {
        if (ProductName == "")                      // if product name's left blank ...
            ProductName = Application->Title;        // ... use application title instead
        AboutBox->ProductName->Caption = ProductName; // copy product name
        AboutBox->Version->Caption = Version;         // copy version information
        AboutBox->Copyright->Caption = Copyright;     // copy copyright information
        AboutBox->Comments->Caption = Comments;       // copy comments
        AboutBox->Caption = "About " + ProductName;   // set About-box caption
        Result = (AboutBox->ShowModal() == IDOK);      // execute and set result
    }
    catch(...)
    {
        Result = false;                             // if it fails, set Result to false
        :
    }
    AboutBox->Free();                                // dispose of About box
    return Result == IDOK;                           // compare Result to IDOK and return Boolean value
}
```

To the ABOUTDLG.H header, add the declaration for the *Execute* method to the public part of the *TAboutDlg* class:

```
class PACKAGE TAboutDlg : public TComponent
{
public:
    virtual bool __fastcall Execute();
};
```

Testing the component

Once you have installed the dialog box component, you can use it as you would any of the common dialog boxes, by placing one on a form and executing it. A quick way to test the About box is to add a command button to a form and execute the dialog box when the user clicks the button.

For example, if you created an About dialog box, made it a component, and added it to the Component palette, you can test it with the following steps:

- 1** Create a new project.
- 2** Place an About box component on the main form.
- 3** Place a command button on the form.
- 4** Double-click the command button to create an empty click-event handler.
- 5** In the click-event handler, type the following line of code:

```
AboutBoxDlg1->Execute();
```

- 6** Run the application.

When the main form appears, click the command button. The About box appears with the default project icon and the name Project1. Choose OK to close the dialog box.

You can further test the component by setting the various properties of the About box component and again running the application.

Extending the IDE

You can extend and customize the IDE with your own menu items, tool bar buttons, dynamic form-creation wizards, and more, using the Open Tools API (often shortened to just Tools API). The Tools API is a suite of over 100 interfaces (abstract classes) that interact with and control the IDE, including the main menu, the tool bars, the main action list and image list, the source editor's internal buffers, keyboard macros and bindings, forms and their components in the form editor, the debugger and the process being debugged, code completion, the message view, and the To-Do list.

Using the Tools API is simply a matter of writing classes that implement certain interfaces, and calling on services provided by other interfaces. Your Tools API code must be compiled and loaded into the IDE at design-time as a design-time package or in a DLL. Thus, writing a Tools API extension is somewhat like writing a property or component editor. Before tackling this chapter, make sure you are familiar with the basics of working with packages (Chapter 15, "Working with packages and components") and registering components (Chapter 52, "Making components available at design time"). It is also a good idea to read Chapter 13, "C++ language support for the VCL and CLX," especially the section "Inheritance and interfaces" on page 13-2 for information about Delphi-style interfaces.

This chapter covers the following topics:

- Overview of the Tools API
- Writing a wizard class
- Obtaining Tools API services
- Working with files and editors
- Creating forms and projects
- Notifying a wizard of IDE events
- Installing a wizard DLL

Overview of the Tools API

All of the Tools API declarations reside in a single header file, `ToolsAPI.hpp`; the namespace is `Toolsapi`. To use the Tools API, you typically use the designide package, which means you must build your Tools API add-in as a design-time package or as a DLL that uses runtime packages. For information about package and library issues, see “Installing the wizard package” on page 58-7 and “Installing a wizard DLL” on page 58-22.

The main interface for writing a Tools API extension is *IOTAWizard*, so most IDE add-ins are called wizards. C++Builder and Delphi wizards are, for the most part, interoperable. You can write and compile a wizard in Delphi, then use it in C++Builder, and vice versa. Interoperability works best with the same version number, but it is also possible to write wizards so they can be used in future versions of both products. For more information on forward compatibility, see “Using a DLL without runtime packages” on page 58-23.

To use the Tools API, you write wizard classes that implement one or more of the interfaces defined in the `ToolsAPI` unit. Recall from Chapter 13 that C++Builder represents an Object Pascal interface as an abstract class. To implement the interface, you must override the member functions of the abstract class and its ancestors, and implement the `QueryInterface` function to recognize the interface GUID.

A wizard makes use of services that the Tools API provides. Each service is an interface that presents a set of related functions. The implementation of the interface is hidden within the IDE. The Tools API publishes only the interface, which you can use to write your wizards without concerning yourself with the implementation of the interfaces. The various services offer access to the source editor, form designer, debugger, and so on. The section “Obtaining Tools API services” on page 58-7 examines this topic in depth.

The service and other interfaces fall into two basic categories. You can tell them apart by the prefix used for the type name:

- The NTA (native tools API) grants direct access to actual IDE objects, such as the IDE’s *TMainMenu* object. When using these interfaces, the wizard must use Borland packages, which also means the wizard is tied to a specific version of the IDE. The wizard can reside in a design-time package or in a DLL that uses runtime packages.
- The OTA (open tools API) does not require packages and accesses the IDE only through interfaces. In theory, you could write a wizard in any language that supports COM-style interfaces, provided you can also work with Borland’s `__fastcall` calling convention and Object Pascal types such as `AnsiString`. OTA interfaces do not grant full access to the IDE, but almost all the functionality of the Tools API is available through OTA interfaces. If a wizard uses only OTA interfaces, it is possible to write a DLL that is not dependent on a specific version of the IDE.

The Tools API has two kinds of interfaces: those that you, the programmer, must implement and those that the IDE implements. Most of the interfaces are in the latter category: the interfaces define the capability of the IDE but hide the actual

implementation. The kinds of interfaces that you must implement fall into three categories: wizards, notifiers, and creators:

- As mentioned earlier in this section, a wizard class implements the *IOTAWizard* interface and possibly derived interfaces.
- A notifier is another kind of interface in the Tools API. The IDE uses notifiers to call back to your wizard when something interesting happens. You write a class that implements the notifier interface, register the notifier with the Tools API, and the IDE calls back to your notifier object when the user opens a file, edits source code, modifies a form, starts a debugging session, and so on. Notifiers are covered in “Notifying a wizard of IDE events” on page 58-18.
- A creator is another kind of interface that you must implement. The Tools API uses creators to create new units, projects, or other files, or to open existing files. The section “Creating forms and projects” on page 58-14 discusses this subject in more depth.

Other important interfaces are modules and editors. A module interface represents an open unit, which has one or more files. An editor interface represents an open file. Different kinds of editor interfaces give you access to different aspects of the IDE: the source editor for source files, the form designer for form files, and project resources for a resource file. The section “Working with files and editors” on page 58-12 covers these topics in more depth.

The following sections take you through the steps of writing a wizard. Refer to the online help files for the complete details of each interface.

Writing a wizard class

There are four kinds of wizards, where the wizard kind depends on the interfaces that the wizard class implements. Table 58.1 describes the four kinds of wizards.

Table 58.1 The four kinds of wizards

| Interface | Description |
|-------------------|---|
| IOTAFormWizard | Typically creates a new unit, form, or other file |
| IOTAMenuWizard | Automatically added to Help menu |
| IOTAProjectWizard | Typically creates a new application or other project |
| IOTAWizard | Miscellaneous wizard that doesn't fit into other categories |

The four kinds of wizards differ only in how the user invokes the wizard:

- A menu wizard is added to the IDE's Help menu. When the user picks the menu item, the IDE calls the wizard's *Execute()* function. Plain wizards offer much more flexibility, so menu wizards are typically used only for prototypes and debugging.
- Form and project wizards are called repository wizards because they reside in the Object Repository. The user invokes these wizards from the New Items dialog box. The user can also see the wizards in the object repository (by choosing the Tools | Repository menu item). The user can check the New Form checkbox for a form

wizard, which tells the IDE to invoke the form wizard when the user chooses the File | New Form menu item. The user can also check the Main Form checkbox. This tells the IDE to use the form wizard as the default form for a new application. The user can check the New Project checkbox for a project wizard. When the user chooses File | New Application, the IDE invokes the selected project wizard.

- The fourth kind of wizard is for situations that don't fit into the other categories. A plain wizard does not do anything automatically or by itself. Instead, you must define how the wizard is invoked.

The Tools API does not enforce any restrictions on wizards, such as requiring a project wizard to create a project. You can just as easily write a project wizard to create a form and a form wizard to create a project (if that's something you really want to do).

Implementing the wizard interfaces

Every wizard class must implement at least *IOTAWizard*, which requires implementing its ancestors, too: *IOTANotifier* and *IInterface*. Form and project wizards must implement all their ancestor interfaces, namely, *IOTARepositoryWizard*, *IOTAWizard*, *IOTANotifier*, and *IInterface*.

Your implementation of *IInterface* must follow the normal rules for Object Pascal interfaces, which are the same as the rules for COM interfaces. That is, *QueryInterface* performs type casts, and *AddRef* and *Release* manage reference counting. You might want to use a common base class to simplify writing wizard and notifier classes.

For example, Delphi has the *TNotifierObject* class, which implements *IOTANotifier* with empty function bodies. You can write a similar class in C++, as shown below.

```
class PACKAGE NotifierObject : public IOTANotifier {
public:
    __fastcall NotifierObject() : ref_count(0) {}
    virtual __fastcall ~NotifierObject();
    void __fastcall AfterSave();
    void __fastcall BeforeSave();
    void __fastcall Destroyed();
    void __fastcall Modified();
protected:
    // IInterface
    virtual HRESULT __stdcall QueryInterface(const GUID&, void**);
    virtual ULONG __stdcall AddRef();
    virtual ULONG __stdcall Release();
private:
    long ref_count;
};
```

The implementation of the *IInterface* interface is straightforward:

```
ULONG __stdcall NotifierObject::AddRef()
{
    return InterlockedIncrement(&ref_count);
}
```

```

ULONG __stdcall NotifierObject::Release()
{
    ULONG result = InterlockedDecrement(&ref_count);
    if (ref_count == 0)
        delete this;
    return result;
}

HRESULT __stdcall NotifierObject::QueryInterface(const GUID& iid, void** obj)
{
    if (iid == __uuidof(IInterface)) {
        *obj = static_cast<IInterface*>(this);
        static_cast<IInterface*>(*obj)->AddRef();
        return S_OK;
    }
    if (iid == __uuidof(IOTANotifier)) {
        *obj = static_cast<IOTANotifier*>(this);
        static_cast<IOTANotifier*>(*obj)->AddRef();
        return S_OK;
    }
    return E_NOINTERFACE;
}

```

Although wizards inherit from *IOTANotifier*, and must therefore implement all of its functions, the IDE does not usually make use of those functions, so your implementations can be empty:

```

void __fastcall NotifierObject::AfterSave() {}
void __fastcall NotifierObject::BeforeSave() {}
void __fastcall NotifierObject::Destroyed() {}
void __fastcall NotifierObject::Modified() {}

```

To use *NotifierObject* as a base class you must use multiple inheritance. Your wizard class must inherit from *NotifierObject* and from the wizard interfaces that you need to implement, such as *IOTAWizard*. Because *IOTAWizard* inherits from *IOTANotifier* and *IInterface*, there is an ambiguity in the derived class: functions such as *AddRef()* are declared in every branch of the ancestral inheritance graph. To resolve this problem, pick one base class as the primary base class and delegate all ambiguous functions to that one class. For example, the class declaration might look as follows:

```

class PACKAGE MyWizard : public NotifierObject, public IOTAMenuWizard {
    typedef NotifierObject inherited;
public:
    // IOTAWizard
    virtual AnsiString __fastcall GetIDString();
    virtual AnsiString __fastcall GetName();
    virtual TWizardState __fastcall GetState();
    virtual void __fastcall Execute();

    // IOTAMenuWizard
    virtual AnsiString __fastcall GetMenuText();

    void __fastcall AfterSave();
    void __fastcall BeforeSave();
    void __fastcall Destroyed();
    void __fastcall Modified();

```

```
protected:
// IInterface
virtual HRESULT __stdcall QueryInterface(const GUID&, void**);
virtual ULONG __stdcall AddRef();
virtual ULONG __stdcall Release();
};
```

The class implementation might include the following:

```
ULONG __stdcall MyWizard::AddRef() { return inherited::AddRef(); }
ULONG __stdcall MyWizard::Release() { return inherited::Release(); }
HRESULT __stdcall MyWizard::QueryInterface(const GUID& iid, void** obj)
{
    if (iid == __uuidof(IOTAMenuWizard)) {
        *obj = static_cast<IOTAMenuWizard*>(this);
        static_cast<IOTAMenuWizard*>(*obj)->AddRef();
        return S_OK;
    }
    if (iid == __uuidof(IOTAWizard)) {
        *obj = static_cast<IOTAWizard*>(this);
        static_cast<IOTAWizard*>(*obj)->AddRef();
        return S_OK;
    }
    return inherited::QueryInterface(iid, obj);
}
```

Because *AfterSave*, *BeforeSave*, and so on, have empty function bodies in the base class, you can leave them as empty function bodies in the derived class, and avoid the unnecessary call to *inherited::AfterSave()*.

Simplifying implementing interfaces

Because Object Pascal interfaces are similar to COM interfaces, you can use COM wizards to help you write the wizard class. However, COM involves much more overhead than what simple Object Pascal interfaces require. With judicious use of base classes and a little copy and paste, you will probably find it easier not to use the COM wizards and stick with simple implementations. For example, you can make it easier to implement *QueryInterface* by defining a simple macro:

```
#define QUERY_INTERFACE(T, iid, obj) \
    if ((iid) == __uuidof(T)) { \
        *obj = static_cast<T*>(this); \
        static_cast<T*>(*obj)->AddRef(); \
        return S_OK; \
    }
```

Use this macro as follows:

```
HRESULT __stdcall MyWizard::QueryInterface(const GUID& iid, void* obj)
{
    QUERY_INTERFACE(IOTAMenuWizard, iid, obj);
    QUERY_INTERFACE(IOTAWizard, iid, obj);
    return inherited::QueryInterface(iid, obj);
}
```

You must also override all the member functions of *IOTAWizard* and the derived classes you are using. Most of the functions of the various wizard interfaces are self-explanatory. The IDE calls your wizard's functions to decide how to present the wizard to the end-user and how to run the wizard when the user invokes it.

Once you have finished writing the wizard class, the next step is to install the wizard.

Installing the wizard package

As with any other design-time package, a wizard package must have at least one *Register* function. (See Chapter 52, “Making components available at design time” for details about the *Register* function.) In the *Register* function, you can register any number of wizards by calling *RegisterPackageWizard*, and passing a wizard object as the sole argument, as shown below:

```
namespace Example {
    void __fastcall PACKAGE Register()
    {
        RegisterPackageWizard(new MyWizard());
        RegisterPackageWizard(new MyOtherWizard());
    }
}
```

You can also register property editors, components, and so on, as part of the same package.

Remember that a design-time package is part of the main C++Builder application, which means any form names must be unique throughout the entire application and all other design-time packages. This is the main disadvantage to using packages: you never know what someone else might name their forms.

During development, install the wizard package the way you would any other design-time package: click the Install button in the package manager. The IDE will compile and link the package and attempt to load it. The IDE displays a dialog box telling you whether it successfully loaded the package.

Obtaining Tools API services

To do anything useful, a wizard needs access to the IDE: its editors, windows, menus, and so on. This is the role of the service interfaces. The Tools API includes many services, such as action services to perform file actions, editor services to access the source code editor, debugger services to access the debugger, and so on. Table 58.2 summarizes all the service interfaces.

Table 58.2 Tools API service interfaces

| Interface | Description |
|----------------------------|--|
| INTAServices | Provides access to native IDE objects: main menu, action list, image list, and tool bars. |
| IOTAActionServices | Performs basic file actions: open, close, save, and reload a file. |
| IOTACodeCompletionServices | Provides access to code completion, allowing a wizard to install a custom code completion manager. |
| IOTADebuggerServices | Provides access to debugger. |
| IOTAEditorServices | Provides access to source code editor and its internal buffers. |
| IOTAKeyBindingServices | Permits a wizard to register custom keyboard bindings. |
| IOTAKeyboardServices | Provides access to keyboard macros and bindings. |
| IOTAKeyboardDiagnostics | Toggle debugging of keystrokes. |
| IOTAMessageServices | Provides access to message view. |
| IOTAModuleServices | Provides access to open files. |
| IOTAPackageServices | Queries the names of all installed packages and their components. |
| IOTAServices | Miscellaneous services. |
| IOTAToDoServices | Provides access to the To-Do list, allowing a wizard to install a custom To-Do manager. |
| IOTAToolsFilter | Registers tools filter notifiers. |
| IOTAWizardServices | Registers and unregisters wizards. |

To use a service interface, cast the *BorlandIDEServices* variable to the desired service using the *Supports* member function. For example,

```
void set_keystroke_debugging(bool debugging)
{
    _di_IOTAKeyboardDiagnostics diag;
    if (BorlandIDEServices->Supports(diag))
        diag->KeyTracing = debugging;
}
```

If your wizard needs to use a specific service often, you can keep a pointer to the service as a data member of your wizard class. By using the *DelphiInterface* template (e.g., *_di_IOTAModuleServices*), the Tools API automatically manages the object's lifetime, and you don't need to do anything special in your wizard's destructor.

Using native IDE objects

Wizards have full access to the main menu, tool bars, action list, and image list of the IDE. (Note that the IDE's many context menus are not accessible through the Tools API.) This section presents a simple example of how a wizard can use these native IDE objects to interact with the IDE.

Using the INTAServices interface

The starting point for working with native IDE objects is the *INTAServices* interface. Use this interface to add an image to the image list, an action to the action list, a menu item to the main menu, and a button to a tool bar. You can tie the action to the menu item and tool button. When the wizard is destroyed, it must clean up the objects it creates, but it must not delete the image it added to the image list. Deleting an image would scramble the indices for all images added after this wizard.

The wizard uses the actual *TMainMenu*, *TActionList*, *TImageList*, and *TToolBar* objects from the IDE, so you can write code the way you would any other application. It also means you have a lot of scope for crashing the IDE or otherwise disabling important features, such as deleting the File menu.

Adding an image to the image list

Suppose you want to add a menu item to invoke your wizard. You also want to enable the user to add a toolbar button that invokes the wizard. The first step is to add an image to the IDE's image list. The index of your image can then be used for the action, which in turn is used by the menu item and toolbar button. Use the Image Editor to create a resource file that contains a 16 by 16 bitmap resource. Add the following code to your wizard's constructor:

```
_di_INTAServices services;
BorlandIDEServices->Supports(services);

// Add an image to the image list.
Graphics::TBitmap* bitmap(new Graphics::TBitmap());
bitmap->LoadFromResourceName(reinterpret_cast<unsigned>(HInstance), "Bitmap1");
int image = services->AddMasked(bitmap, bitmap->TransparentColor,
                                "Tempest Software.intro wizard image");

delete bitmap;
```

Notice that *HInstance* has the wrong type, so you must cast it to the type that *LoadFromResourceID* requires. Also be sure to load the resource by the name or ID you specify in the resource file. Add the resource file to the package using *#pragma resource*. You must choose a color that will be interpreted as the background color for the image. If you don't want a background color, choose a color that does not exist in the bitmap.

Adding an action to the action list

The image index is used to create an action, as shown below. The wizard uses the *OnExecute* and *OnUpdate* events. A common scenario is for a wizard to use the *OnUpdate* event to enable or disable the action. Be sure the *OnUpdate* event returns quickly, or the user will notice that the IDE becomes sluggish after loading your wizard. The action's *OnExecute* event is similar to the wizard's *Execute* method. If you are using a menu item to invoke a form or project wizard, you might even want to have *OnExecute* call *Execute* directly.

```
action = new TAction(0);
action->ActionList = services->ActionList;
action->Caption = GetMenuText();
action->Hint = "Display a silly dialog box";
```

```

    action->ImageIndex = image;
    action->OnUpdate    = action_update;
    action->OnExecute   = action_execute;

```

The menu item sets its *Action* property to the newly created action. The tricky part of creating the menu item is knowing where to insert it. The example below looks for the View menu, and inserts the new menu item as the first item in the View menu. (In general, relying on absolute position is not a good idea: you never know when another wizard might insert itself in the menu. Future versions of C++Builder are likely to reorder the menu, too. A better approach is to search the menu for a menu item with a specific name. The simplistic approach is shown below for the sake of clarity.)

```

for (int i = 0; i < services->MainMenu->Items->Count; ++i)
{
    TMenuItem* item = services->MainMenu->Items->Items[i];
    if (CompareText(item->Name, "ViewsMenu") == 0)
    {
        menu_item = new TMenuItem(0);
        menu_item->Action = action;
        item->Insert(0, menu_item);
    }
}

```

By adding the action to the IDE's action list, the user can see the action when customizing the toolbars. The user can select the action and add it as a button to any toolbar. This causes a problem when your wizard is unloaded: all the tool buttons end up with dangling pointers to the non-existent action and *OnClick* event handler. To prevent access violations, your wizard must find all tool buttons that refer to its action, and remove those buttons.

Deleting toolbar buttons

There is no convenient function for removing a button from a toolbar; you must send the `CM_CONTROLCHANGE` message, where the first parameter is the control to change, and the second parameter is zero to remove it or non-zero to add it to the toolbar. After removing the toolbar buttons, the destructor deletes the action and menu item. Deleting these items automatically removes them from the IDE's `ActionList` and `MainMenu`.

```

void __fastcall remove_action (TAction* action, TToolBar* toolbar)
{
    for (int i = toolbar->ButtonCount; --i >= 0; )
    {
        TToolButton* button = toolbar->Buttons[i];
        if (button->Action == action)
        {
            // Remove "button" from "toolbar".
            toolbar->Perform(CM_CONTROLCHANGE, WPARAM(button), 0);
            delete button;
        }
    }
}

```



```

__fastcall MyWizard::~MyWizard()
{
    _di_INTAServices services;
    BorlandIDEServices->Supports(services);
    // Check all the toolbars, and remove any buttons that use
    // this action.
    remove_action(action, services->ToolBar[sCustomToolBar]);
    remove_action(action, services->ToolBar[sDesktopToolBar]);
    remove_action(action, services->ToolBar[sStandardToolBar]);
    remove_action(action, services->ToolBar[sDebugToolBar]);
    remove_action(action, services->ToolBar[sViewToolBar]);
    remove_action(action, services->ToolBar[sInternetToolBar]);

    delete menu_item;
    delete action;
}

```

As you can see from this simple example, you have a lot of flexibility in how your wizard interacts with the IDE. With the flexibility comes responsibility, however. It is easy to wind up with dangling pointers or other access violations. The next section presents some tips to help you diagnose these kinds of problems.

Debugging a wizard

When writing wizards that use the native tools API, you can write code that causes the IDE to crash. It is also possible that you write a wizard that installs but does not act the way you want it to. One of the challenges of working with design-time code is debugging. It's an easy problem to solve, however. Because the wizard is installed in C++Builder itself, you simply need to set the package's Host Application to the C++Builder executable (bcb.exe) from the Run | Parameters... menu item.

When you want (or need) to debug the package, don't install it. Instead, choose Run | Run from the menu bar. This starts up a new instance of C++Builder. In the new instance, install the already-compiled package by choosing Components | Install Package... from the menu bar. Back in the original instance of C++Builder, you should now see the telltale blue dots that tell you where you can set breakpoints in the wizard source code. (If not, double-check your compiler options to be sure you enabled debugging; make sure you loaded the right package; and double-check the process modules to make extra sure that you loaded the .bpl file you wanted to load.)

You cannot debug into the VCL, CLX, or RTL code this way, but you have full debug capabilities for the wizard itself, which might be enough to tell what is going wrong.

Interface version numbers

If you look closely at the declarations of some of the interfaces, such as *IOTAMessageServices*, you will see that they inherit from other interfaces with similar names, such as *IOTAMessageServices50*, which inherits from *IOTAMessageServices40*. This use of version numbers helps insulate your code from changes between releases of C++Builder.

The Tools API follows the basic principle of COM, namely, that an interface and its GUID never change. If a new release adds features to an interface, the Tools API declares a new interface that inherits from the old one. The GUID remains the same, attached to the old, unchanged interface. The new interface gets a brand new GUID. Old wizards that use the old GUIDs continue to work.

The Tools API also changes interface names to try to preserve source-code compatibility. To see how this works, it is important to distinguish between the two kinds of interfaces in the Tools API: Borland-implemented and user-implemented. If the IDE implements the interface, the name stays with the most recent version of the interface. The new functionality does not affect existing code. The old interfaces have the old version number appended.

For a user-implemented interface, however, new member functions in the base interface require new functions in your code. Therefore, the name tends to stick with the old interface, and the new interface has a version number tacked onto the end.

For example, consider the message services. C++Builder 6 introduced a new feature: message groups. Therefore, the basic message services interface required new member functions. These functions were declared in a new interface class, which retained the name *IOTAMessageServices*. The old message services interface was renamed to *IOTAMessageServices50* (for version 5). The GUID of the old *IOTAMessageServices* is the same as the GUID of the new *IOTAMessageServices50* because the member functions are the same.

Consider *IOTAIDENotifier* as an example of a user-implemented interface. C++Builder 5 added new overloaded functions: *AfterCompile* and *BeforeCompile*. Existing code that used *IOTAIDENotifier* did not need to change, but new code that required the new functionality had to be modified to override the new functions inherited from *IOTAIDENotifier50*. Version 6 did not add any more functions, so the current version to use is *IOTAIDENotifier50*.

The rule of thumb is to use the most-derived class when writing new code. Leave the source code alone if you are merely recompiling an existing wizard under a new release of C++Builder.

Working with files and editors

Before going any further, you need to understand how the Tools API works with files. The main interface is *IOTAModule*. A module represents a set of logically related open files. For example, a single module represents a single unit. The module, in turn, has one or more editors, where each editor represents one file, such as the implementation (.cpp), interface (.h), or form (.dfm or .xfm) file. The editor interfaces reflect the internal state of the IDE's editors, so a wizard can see the modified code and forms that the user sees, even if the user has not saved any changes.

Using module interfaces

To obtain a module interface, start with the module services (*IOTAModuleServices*). You can query the module services for all open modules, look up a module from a file name or form name, or open a file to obtain its module interface.

There are different kinds of modules for different kinds of files, such as projects, resources, and type libraries. Cast a module interface to a specific kind of module interface to learn whether the module is of that type. For example, one way to obtain the current project group interface is as follows:

```
// Return the current project group, or 0 if there is no project group.
_di_IOTAProjectGroup __fastcall CurrentProjectGroup()
{
    _di_IOTAModuleServices svc;
    BorlandIDEServices->Supports(svc);

    for (int i = 0; i < svc->ModuleCount; ++i)
    {
        _di_IOTAModule module = svc->Modules[i];
        _di_IOTAProjectGroup group;
        if (module->Supports(group))
            return group;
    }
    return 0;
}
```

Using editor interfaces

Every module has at least one editor interface. Some modules have several editors, such as an implementation (.cpp) file, interface (.h) file, and form description (.dfm) file. All editors implement the *IOTAEditor* interface; cast the editor to a specific type to learn what kind of editor it is. For example, to obtain the form editor interface for a unit, you can do the following:

```
// Return the form editor for a module, or 0 if the unit has no form.
_di_IOTAFormEditor __fastcall GetFormEditor(_di_IOTAModule module)
{
    for (int i = 0; i < module->ModuleFileCount; ++i)
    {
        _di_IOTAEditor editor = module->ModuleFileEditors[i];
        _di_IOTAFormEditor formEditor;
        if (editor->Supports(formEditor))
            return formEditor;
    }
    return 0;
}
```

The editor interfaces give you access to the editor's internal state. You can examine the source code or components that the user is editing, make changes to the source code, components, or properties, change the selection in the source and form editors, and carry out almost any editor action that the end user can perform.

Using a form editor interface, a wizard can access all the components on the form. Each component (including the root form or data module) has an associate *IOTAComponent* interface. A wizard can examine or change most of the component's properties. If you need complete control over the component, you can cast the *IOTAComponent* interface to *INTAComponent*. The native component interface enables your wizard to access the *TComponent* pointer directly. This is important if you need to read or modify a class-type property, such as *TFont*, which is possible only through NTA-style interfaces.

Creating forms and projects

C++Builder comes with a number of form and project wizards already installed, and you can write your own. The Object Repository lets you create static templates that can be used in a project, but a wizard offers much more power because it is dynamic. The wizard can prompt the user and create different kinds of files depending on the user's responses. This section describes how to write a form or project wizard.

Creating modules

A form or project wizard typically creates one or more new files. Instead of real files, however, it is best to create unnamed, unsaved modules. When the user saves them, the IDE prompts the user for a file name. A wizard uses a creator object to create such modules.

A creator class implements a creator interface, which inherits from *IOTACreator*. The wizard passes a creator object to the module service's *CreateModule* method, and the IDE calls back to the creator object for the parameters it needs to create the module.

For example, a form wizard that creates a new form typically implements *GetExisting()* to return **false** and *GetUnnamed()* to return **true**. This creates a module that has no name (so the user must pick a name before the file can be saved) and is not backed by an existing file (so the user must save the file even if the user does not make any changes). Other methods of the creator tell the IDE what kind of file is being created (e.g., project, unit, or form), provide the contents of the file, or return the form name, ancestor name, and other important information. Additional callbacks let a wizard add modules to a newly created project, or add components to a newly created form.

To create a new file, which is often required in a form or project wizard, you usually need to provide the contents of the new file. To do so, write a new class that implements the *IOTAFile* interface. If your wizard can make do with the default file contents, you can return a 0 pointer from any function that returns *IOTAFile*.

For example, suppose your organization has a standard comment block that must appear at the top of each source file. You could do this with a static template in the Object Repository, but the comment block would need to be updated manually to reflect the author and creation date. Instead, you can use a creator to dynamically fill in the comment block when the file is created.

The first step is to write a wizard that creates new units and forms. Most of the creator's functions return zero, empty strings, or other default values, which tells the Tools API to use its default behavior for creating a new unit or form. Override *GetCreatorType* to inform the Tools API what kind of module to create: a unit or a form. To create a unit, return the macro `sUnit`. To create a form, return `sForm`. To simplify the code, use a single class that takes the creator type as an argument to the constructor. Save the creator type in a data member, so that *GetCreatorType* can return its value. Override *NewImplSource* and *NewIntfSource* to return the desired file contents.

```
class PACKAGE Creator : public IOTAModuleCreator {
public:
    __fastcall Creator(const AnsiString creator_type)
        : ref_count(0), creator_type(creator_type) {}
    virtual __fastcall ~Creator();

    // IOTAModuleCreator
    virtual AnsiString __fastcall GetAncestorName();
    virtual AnsiString __fastcall GetImplFileName();
    virtual AnsiString __fastcall GetIntfFileName();
    virtual AnsiString __fastcall GetFormName();
    virtual bool __fastcall GetMainForm();
    virtual bool __fastcall GetShowForm();
    virtual bool __fastcall GetShowSource();
    virtual _di_IOTAFile __fastcall NewFormFile(
        const AnsiString FormIdent, const AnsiString AncestorIdent);
    virtual _di_IOTAFile __fastcall NewImplSource(
        const AnsiString ModuleIdent, const AnsiString FormIdent,
        const AnsiString AncestorIdent);
    virtual _di_IOTAFile __fastcall NewIntfSource(
        const AnsiString ModuleIdent, const AnsiString FormIdent,
        const AnsiString AncestorIdent);
    virtual void __fastcall FormCreated(
        const _di_IOTAFormEditor FormEditor);

    // IOTACreator
    virtual AnsiString __fastcall GetCreatorType();
    virtual bool __fastcall GetExisting();
    virtual AnsiString __fastcall GetFileSystem();
    virtual _di_IOTAModule __fastcall GetOwner();
    virtual bool __fastcall GetUnnamed();

protected:
    // IInterface
    virtual HRESULT __stdcall QueryInterface(const GUID&, void**);
    virtual ULONG __stdcall AddRef();
    virtual ULONG __stdcall Release();

private:
    long ref_count;
    const AnsiString creator_type;
};
```

Most of the members of *Creator* return zero or empty strings. The boolean methods return **true**, except *GetExisting*, which returns **false**. The most interesting method is *GetOwner*, which returns a pointer to the current project module, or 0 if there is no

project. There is no simple way to discover the current project or the current project group. Instead, *GetOwner* must iterate over all open modules. If a project group is found, it must be the only project group open, so *GetOwner* returns its current project. Otherwise, the function returns the first project module it finds, or 0 if no projects are open.

```
_di_IOTAModule __fastcall Creator::GetOwner()
{
    // Return the current project.
    _di_IOTAProject result = 0;

    _di_IOTAModuleServices svc = interface_cast<IOTAModuleServices>(BorlandIDEServices);
    for (int i = 0; i < svc->ModuleCount; ++i)
    begin
        _di_IOTAModule module = svc->Modules[i];
        _di_IOTAProject project;
        _di_IOTAProjectGroup group;
        if (module->Supports(project)) {
            // Remember the first project module.
            if (result == 0)
                result = project;
        } else if (module->Supports(group)) {
            // Found the project group, so return its active project.
            result = group->ActiveProject;
            break;
        }
    }
    return result;
}
```

The creator returns 0 from *NewFormSource*, to generate a default form file. The interesting methods are *NewImplSource* and *NewIntfSource*, which create an *IOTAFile* instance that returns the file contents.

The *File* class implements the *IOTAFile* interface. It returns -1 as the file age (which means the file does not exist), and returns the file contents as a string. To keep the *File* class simple, the creator generates the string, and the *File* class simply passes it on.

```
class File : public IOTAFile {
public:
    __fastcall File(const AnsiString source);
    virtual __fastcall ~File();
    AnsiString __fastcall GetSource();
    System::TDateTime __fastcall GetAge();
protected:
    // IInterface
    virtual HRESULT __stdcall QueryInterface(const GUID&, void**);
    virtual ULONG __stdcall AddRef();
    virtual ULONG __stdcall Release();
private:
    long ref_count;
    AnsiString source;
};

__fastcall File::File(const AnsiString source)
```

```

: ref_count(0), source(source)
{}

AnsiString __fastcall File::GetSource()
{
    return source;
}

System::TDateTime __fastcall File::GetAge()
{
    return -1;
}

```

You can store the text for the file contents in a resource to make it easier to modify, but for the sake of simplicity, this example hardcodes the source code in the wizard. The example below generates the source code, assuming there is a form. You can easily add the simpler case of a plain unit. Test *FormIdent*, and if it is empty, create a plain unit; otherwise create a form unit. The basic skeleton for the code is the same as the IDE's default (with the addition of the comments at the top, of course), but you can modify it any way you desire.

```

_di_IOTAFile __fastcall Creator::NewImplSource(
    const AnsiString ModuleIdent,
    const AnsiString FormIdent,
    const AnsiString AncestorIdent)
{
    const AnsiString form_source =
        "/*-----\n"
        " %m - description\n"
        " Copyright © %y Your company, inc.\n"
        " Created on %d\n"
        " By %u\n"
        " -----*/\n"
        "\n"
        "#include <vcl.h>\n"
        "#pragma hdrstop\n"
        "\n"
        "#include \"%m.h\"\n"
        "//-----\n"
        "#pragma package(smart_init)\n"
        "#pragma resource \"%*.dfm\"\n"
        "T%f *%f;\n"
        "//-----\n"
        "__fastcall T%m::T%m(TComponent* Owner)\n"
        "    : T%a(Owner)\n"
        "{\n"
        "}\n"
        "//-----\n";

    return new File(expand(form_source, ModuleIdent, FormIdent,
        AncestorIdent));
}

```

Notice that the source code contains strings of the form %m and %y. These are similar in spirit to printf or Format controls, but are expanded by the wizard's expand function. Specifically, %m expands to the module or unit identifier, %f to the

form name, and %a to the ancestor name. Notice how the form name is used in the form's type name by inserting a capital T. Some additional format specifiers make it easier to generate the comment block: %d for the date, %u for the user, and %y for the year. (Writing expand is unrelated to the Tools API and is left as an exercise for the reader.)

NewIntfSource is similar to *NewImplSource*, but it generates the interface (.h) file.

The final step is to create two form wizards: one uses *sUnit* as the creator type, and the other uses *sForm*. As an added benefit for the user, you can use *INTAServices* to add a menu item to the File|New menu to invoke each wizard. The menu item's *OnClick* event handler can call the wizard's *Execute* function.

Some wizards need to enable or disable the menu items, depending on what else is happening in the IDE. For example, a wizard that checks a project into a source code control system should disable its Check In menu item if no files are open in the IDE. You can add this capability to your wizard by using notifiers, the subject of the next section.

Notifying a wizard of IDE events

An important aspect of writing a well-behaved wizard is to have the wizard respond to IDE events. In particular, any wizard that keeps track of module interfaces must know when the user closes the module, so the wizard can release the interface. To do this, the wizard needs a notifier, which means you must write a notifier class.

All notifier classes implement one or more notifier interfaces. The notifier interfaces define callback methods; the wizard registers a notifier object with the Tools API, and the IDE calls back to the notifier when something important happens.

Every notifier interface inherits from *IOTANotifier*, although not all of its methods are used for a particular notifier. Table 58.3 lists all the notifier interfaces, and gives a brief description of each one.

Table 58.3 Notifier interfaces

| Interface | Description |
|-------------------------------|---|
| <i>IOTANotifier</i> | Abstract base class for all notifiers |
| <i>IOTABreakpointNotifier</i> | Triggering or changing a breakpoint in the debugger |
| <i>IOTADebuggerNotifier</i> | Running a program in the debugger, or adding or deleting breakpoints |
| <i>IOTAEditLineNotifier</i> | Tracking movements of lines in the source editor |
| <i>IOTAEditorNotifier</i> | Modifying or saving a source file, or switching files in the editor |
| <i>IOTAFormNotifier</i> | Saving a form, or modifying the form or any components on the form (or data module) |
| <i>IOTAIDENotifier</i> | Loading projects, installing packages, and other global IDE events |
| <i>IOTAMessageNotifier</i> | Adding or removing tabs (message groups) in the message view |
| <i>IOTAModuleNotifier</i> | Changing, saving, or renaming a module |
| <i>IOTAProcessModNotifier</i> | Loading a process module in the debugger? |

Table 58.3 Notifier interfaces (continued)

| Interface | Description |
|-------------------------|--|
| IOTAProcessNotifier | Creating or destroying threads and processes in the debugger |
| IOTAThreadNotifier | Changing a thread's state in the debugger |
| IOTAToolsFilterNotifier | Invoking a tools filter |

To see how to use notifiers, consider the previous example. Using module creators, the example creates a wizard that adds a comment to each source file. The comment includes the unit's initial name, but the user almost always saves the file under a different name. In that case, it would be a courtesy to the user if the wizard updated the comment to match the file's true name.

To do this, you need a module notifier. The wizard saves the module interface that *CreateModule* returns, and uses it to register a module notifier. The module notifier receives notification when the user modifies the file or saves the file, but these events are not important for this wizard, so the *AfterSave* and related functions all have empty bodies. The important function is *ModuleRenamed*, which the IDE calls when the user saves the file under a new name. The declaration for the module notifier class is shown below:

```
class ModuleNotifier : public NotifierObject, public IOTAModuleNotifier
{
    typedef NotifierObject inherited;
public:
    __fastcall ModuleNotifier(const _di_IOTAModule module);
    __fastcall ~ModuleNotifier();

    // IOTAModuleNotifier
    virtual bool __fastcall CheckOverwrite();
    virtual void __fastcall ModuleRenamed(const AnsiString NewName);

    // IOTANotifier
    void __fastcall AfterSave();
    void __fastcall BeforeSave();
    void __fastcall Destroyed();
    void __fastcall Modified();
protected:
    // IInterface
    virtual HRESULT __stdcall QueryInterface(const GUID&, void**);
    virtual ULONG __stdcall AddRef();
    virtual ULONG __stdcall Release();
private:
    _di_IOTAModule module;
    AnsiString name;           // Remember the module's old name.
    int index;                 // Notifier index.
};
```

One way to write a notifier is to have it register itself automatically in its constructor. The destructor unregisters the notifier. In the case of a module notifier, the IDE calls the *Destroyed* method when the user closes the file. In that case, the notifier must unregister itself and release its reference to the module interface. The IDE releases its reference to the notifier, which reduces its reference count to zero and frees the

object. Therefore, you need to write the destructor defensively: the notifier might already be unregistered.

```
__fastcall ModuleNotifier::ModuleNotifier(const _di_IOTAModule module)
: index(-1), module(module)
{
    // Register this notifier.
    index = module->AddNotifier(this);
    // Remember the module's old name.
    name = ChangeFileExt(ExtractFileName(module->FileName), "");
}

__fastcall ModuleNotifier::~ModuleNotifier()
{
    // Unregister the notifier if that hasn't happened already.
    if (index >= 0)
        module->RemoveNotifier(index);
}

void __fastcall ModuleNotifier::Destroyed()
{
    // The module interface is being destroyed, so clean up the notifier.
    if (index >= 0)
    {
        // Unregister the notifier.
        module->RemoveNotifier(index);
        index = -1;
    }
    module = 0;
}
```

The IDE calls back to the notifier's *ModuleRenamed* function when the user renames the file. The function takes the new name as a parameter, which the wizard uses to update the comment in the file. To edit the source buffer, the wizard uses an edit position interface. The wizard finds the right position, double checks that it found the right text, and replaces that text with the new name.

```
void __fastcall ModuleNotifier::ModuleRenamed(const AnsiString NewName)
{
    // Get the module name from the new file name.
    AnsiString ModuleName = ChangeFileExt(ExtractFileName(NewName), "");
    for (int i = 0; i < module->GetModuleFileCount(); ++i)
    {
        // Update every source editor buffer.
        _di_IOTAEditor editor = module->GetModuleFileEditor(i);
        _di_IOTAEditBuffer buffer;
        if (editor->Supports(buffer))
        {
            _di_IOTAEditPosition pos = buffer->GetEditPosition();
            // The module name is on line 2 of the comment.
            // Skip leading white space and copy the old module name,
            // to double check we have the right spot.
            pos->Move(2, 1);
            pos->MoveCursor(mmSkipWhite | mmSkipRight);
            AnsiString check = pos->RipText("", rfIncludeNumericChars | rfIncludeAlphaChars);
```

```

    if (check == name)
    {
        pos->Delete(check.Length());    // Delete the old name.
        pos->InsertText(ModuleName);    // Insert the new name.
        name = ModuleName;             // Remember the new name.
    }
}
}
}

```

What if the user inserts additional comments above the module name? In that case, you need to use an edit line notifier to keep track of the line number where the module name sits. To do this, use the *IOTAEditLineNotifier* and *IOTAEditLineTracker* interfaces, which are described in the Online Help.

You need to be cautious when writing notifiers. You must make sure that no notifier outlives its wizard. For example, if the user were to use the wizard to create a new unit, then unload the wizard, there would still be a notifier attached to the unit. The results would be unpredictable, but most likely, the IDE would crash. Thus, the wizard needs to keep track of all of its notifiers, and must unregister every notifier before the wizard is destroyed. On the other hand, if the user closes the file first, the module notifier receives a *Destroyed* notification, which means the notifier must unregister itself and release all references to the module. The notifier must remove itself from the wizard's master notifier list, too.

Below is the final version of the wizard's *Execute* function. It creates the new module, uses the module interface and creates a module notifier, then saves the module notifier in an interface list (*TInterfaceList*).

```

void __fastcall DocWizard::Execute()
{
    _di_IOTAModuleServices svc;
    BorlandIDEServices->Supports(svc);
    _di_IOTAModule module = svc->CreateModule(new Creator(creator_type));
    _di_IOTAModuleNotifier notifier = new ModuleNotifier(module);
    list->Add(notifier);
}

```

The wizard's destructor iterates over the interface list and unregisters every notifier in the list. Simply letting the interface list release the interfaces it holds is not sufficient because the IDE also holds the same interfaces. You must tell the IDE to release the notifier interfaces in order to free the notifier objects. In this case, the destructor tricks the notifiers into thinking their modules have been destroyed. In a more complicated situation, you might find it best to write a separate *Unregister* function for the notifier class.

```

__fastcall DocWizard::~DocWizard()
{
    // Unregister all the notifiers in the list.
    for (int i = list->Count; --i >= 0; )
    {
        _di_IOTANotifier notifier;
        list->Items[i]->Supports(notifier);
        // Pretend the associated object has been destroyed.
    }
}

```

```

        // That convinces the notifier to clean itself up.
        notifier->Destroyed();
        list->Delete(i);
    }
    delete list;
    delete item;
}

```

The rest of the wizard manages the mundane details of registering the wizard, installing menu items, and the like. The next section expands on the details of registering a wizard by discussing how to do so in a DLL instead of a package.

Installing a wizard DLL

You can also install a wizard in a DLL. Make sure the wizard is using the dynamic RTL and runtime packages. Add the designide package to the list of runtime packages in the Project Options. The DLL must export an initialization function whose name is INITWIZARD0001. When the IDE loads the DLL, it looks for the special export name, and calls that function. You can use a module definition file to export the function, or use a `__declspec(dllexport)` declaration. In the latter case, you must also avoid name mangling, so declare the function as extern “C”.

The function must be of type *TWizardInitProc*. It takes a pointer to a registration function as one of its arguments. It calls this function to register each wizard object, the same way that a package wizard calls *RegisterPackageWizard*. The initialization function should return true for success or false for failure. The following example shows how to write the initialization function.

```

extern "C" bool __stdcall __declspec(dllexport) INITWIZARD0001(
    const _di_IBorlandIDEServices,
    TWizardRegisterProc RegisterProc,
    TWizardTerminateProc&)
{
    RegisterProc(new MyWizard());
    RegisterProc(new MyOtherWizard());
    return true;
}

```

If you use runtime packages, the first argument to the initialization function is unimportant. (The first parameter is discussed in “Using a DLL without runtime packages” on page 58-23) The final argument is a reference to a function pointer for a termination procedure. You can use this function to perform global clean up. Usually, you can ignore the last parameter because your wizard should clean up after itself in its destructor.

To install the DLL, add an entry to the registry under the following key:

```
HKEY_CURRENT_USER\Software\Borland\C++Builder\6.0\Experts
```

The entry name should be a unique name, such as the wizard’s ID string. The value should be the complete path to the DLL. The next time C++Builder starts, it checks the registry and loads all the DLLs listed under the Experts key. The DLL remains loaded while the IDE is running. When C++Builder terminates, it unloads the DLL.

This slows down debugging, which is why design-time packages are preferable during development. When you are ready to release the wizard, you can change from a design-time package to a DLL.

If C++Builder complains that your wizard is the wrong version, that means it cannot find the INITWIZARD0001 function. Double check that you spelled the name correctly and that you exported it without name mangling.

The main advantage of using DLLs instead of packages is that you avoid the problem of name collisions. You can include any forms you want or need in your DLL without fear of having the same name as that used in other wizard. Another advantage of DLLs is that you can design the DLL so it is not dependent on a specific version of C++Builder, but to do that, you cannot use runtime packages at all, and that is the subject of the next section.

Using a DLL without runtime packages

You don't have to use runtime packages with a wizard DLL. The main advantage to using runtime packages is that the DLL is smaller. Because the wizard is useful only when loaded into the IDE, you know the C++Builder packages are available, so you need to deploy only a small DLL. On the other hand, packages are version-specific. If you want to deploy a wizard that works across multiple versions of C++Builder and Delphi, you must not use runtime packages.

Because the *BorlandIDEServices* variable is defined only in the designide package, you cannot use this variable. Instead, you must use the first parameter passed to the initialization function, which happens to have the same value. Your wizard must save it and use it to access all Tools API services, for example,

```
extern "C" bool __stdcall __declspec(dllexport) INITWIZARD0001(
    const _di_IBorlandIDEServices svc,
    TWizardRegisterProc reg,
    TWizardTerminateProc&)
{
    LocalIDEServices = svc;
    reg(new DocWizard(sUnit));
    reg(new DocWizard(sForm));
    return true;
}

AnsiString __fastcall DocWizard::GetDesigner()
{
    _di_IOTAServices svc;
    LocalIDEServices->Supports(svc);
    return svc->GetActiveDesignerType();
}
```

The design of the Tools API ensures that the DLL will continue to function for newer releases of C++Builder. All the old interfaces retain their GUIDs, and new interfaces get new GUIDs. See “Interface version numbers” on page 58-11 for information on how the Tools API uses version numbers and GUIDs.

To be version independent, the wizard cannot use any native (NTA) interfaces. This limits what the wizard can do. The biggest limitation is that the wizard cannot access the menu bar and other IDE objects. Most of the Tools API interfaces are OTA interfaces, so you can still write useful and interesting wizards, no matter how the wizard is installed.



ANSI implementation-specific standards

Certain aspects of the ANSI C standard are not explicitly defined. Instead, each implementor of a C compiler is free to define these aspects individually. This chapter describes how Borland has chosen to define these implementation-specific details. The section numbers refer to the February 1990 C ANSI/ISO Standard.

Remember that there are differences between C and C++; this topic addresses C only. For information on C++ compliance, refer to the Borland Community Web Site at community.borland.com/cpp.

2.1.1.3 How to identify a diagnostic.

When the compiler runs with the correct combination of options, any messages it issues beginning with the words *Fatal*, *Error*, or *Warning* are diagnostics in the sense that ANSI specifies. The options needed to ensure this interpretation are as follows:

Table A.1 Options needed for ANSI compliance

| Option | Action |
|--------|---|
| -A | Enable only ANSI keywords. |
| -C- | No nested comments allowed. |
| -i32 | At most 32 significant characters in identifiers. |
| -p- | Use C calling conventions. |
| -w- | Turn off all warnings. |
| -wbei | Turn on warning about inappropriate initializers. |
| -wbig | Turn on warning about constants being too large. |
| -wcpt | Turn on warning about nonportable pointer comparisons. |
| -wdcl | Turn on warning about declarations without type or storage class. |
| -wdup | Turn on warning about duplicate nonidentical macro definitions. |

Table A.1 Options needed for ANSI compliance (continued)

| Option | Action |
|--------|--|
| -wext | Turn on warning about variables declared both as external and as static. |
| -wfdt | Turn on warning about function definitions using a typedef. |
| -wrpt | Turn on warning about nonportable pointer conversion. |
| -wstu | Turn on warning about undefined structures. |
| -wsus | Turn on warning about suspicious pointer conversion. |
| -wucp | Turn on warning about mixing pointers to signed and unsigned char. |
| -wvrt | Turn on warning about void functions returning a value. |

Other options not specifically mentioned here can be set to whatever you want.

2.1.2.2.1 The semantics of the arguments to main.

When the program is run on DOS, *argv*[0] points to the program name.

The remaining *argv* strings point to each component of the DOS command-line arguments. Whitespace separating arguments is removed, and each sequence of contiguous non-whitespace characters is treated as a single argument. Quoted strings are handled correctly (that is, as one string containing spaces).

2.1.2.3 What constitutes an interactive device.

An interactive device is any device that looks like the console.

2.2.1 The collation sequence of the execution character set.

The collation sequence for the execution character set uses the value of the character in ASCII.

2.2.1 Members of the source and execution character sets.

The source and execution character sets are the extended ASCII set supported by the IBM PC. Any character other than *Ctrl*+Z can appear in string literals, character constants, or comments.

2.2.1.2 Multibyte characters.

C++Builder supports multibyte characters.

2.2.2 The direction of printing.

Printing is from left-to-right, the normal direction for the PC.

2.2.4.2 The number of bits in a character in the execution character set.

There are 8 bits per character in the execution character set.

3.1.2 The number of significant initial characters in identifiers.

The first 250 characters are significant, although you can use a command-line option (*-i*) to change that number. Both internal and external identifiers use the same

number of significant characters. (The number of significant characters in C++ identifiers is unlimited.)

3.1.2 Whether case distinctions are significant in external identifiers.

The compiler normally forces the linker to distinguish between uppercase and lowercase. You can use a command-line compiler option (`-lc-`) to turn off case sensitivity. In the IDE, you can also choose Project | Options | Advanced Linker and check Case-insensitive link.

3.1.2.5 The representations and sets of values of the various types of integers.

Table A.2 Identifying diagnostics in C++

| Type | Minimum value | Maximum value |
|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| signed char | -128 | 127 |
| unsigned char | 0 | 255 |
| signed short | -32,768 | 32,767 |
| unsigned short | 0 | 65,535 |
| signed int | -2,147,483,648 | -2,147,483,647 |
| unsigned int | 0 | 4,294,967,295 |
| signed long | -2,147,483,648 | 2,147,483,647 |
| unsigned long | 0 | 4,294,967,295 |

All **char** types use one 8-bit byte for storage.

All **short** types use 2 bytes.

All **int** types use 4 bytes.

All **long** types use 4 bytes.

If alignment is requested (`-a`), all non**char** integer type objects will be aligned to even byte boundaries. If the requested alignment is `-a4`, the result is 4-byte alignment. Character types are never aligned.

3.1.2.5 The representations and sets of values of the various types of floating-point numbers.

The IEEE floating-point formats as used by the Intel 8086 are used for all C++Builder floating-point types. The **float** type uses 32-bit IEEE real format. The **double** type uses 64-bit IEEE real format. The **long double** type uses 80-bit IEEE extended real format.

3.1.3.4 The mapping between source and execution character sets.

Any characters in string literals or character constants remain unchanged in the executing program. The source and execution character sets are the same.

3.1.3.4 The value of an integer character constant that contains a character or escape sequence not represented in the basic execution character set or the extended character set for a wide character constant.

Wide characters are supported.

3.1.3.4 The current locale used to convert multibyte characters into corresponding wide characters for a wide character constant.

Wide character constants are recognized.

3.1.3.4 The value of an integer constant that contains more than one character, or a wide character constant that contains more than one multibyte character.

Character constants can contain one or two characters. If two characters are included, the first character occupies the low-order byte of the constant, and the second character occupies the high-order byte.

3.2.1.2 The result of converting an integer to a shorter signed integer, or the result of converting an unsigned integer to a signed integer of equal length, if the value cannot be represented.

These conversions are performed by simply truncating the high-order bits. Signed integers are stored as two's complement values, so the resulting number is interpreted as such a value. If the high-order bit of the smaller integer is nonzero, the value is interpreted as a negative value; otherwise, it is positive.

3.2.1.3 The direction of truncation when an integral number is converted to a floating-point number that cannot exactly represent the original value.

The integer value is rounded to the nearest representable value. Thus, for example, the **long** value ($2^{31} - 1$) is converted to the **float** value 2^{31} . Ties are broken according to the rules of IEEE standard arithmetic.

3.2.1.4 The direction of truncation or rounding when a floating-point number is converted to a narrower floating-point number.

The value is rounded to the nearest representable value. Ties are broken according to the rules of IEEE standard arithmetic.

3.3 The results of bitwise operations on signed integers.

The bitwise operators apply to signed integers as if they were their corresponding unsigned types. The sign bit is treated as a normal data bit. The result is then interpreted as a normal two's complement signed integer.

3.3.2.3 What happens when a member of a union object is accessed using a member of a different type.

The access is allowed and the different type member will access the bits stored there. You'll need a detailed understanding of the bit encodings of floating-point values to understand how to access a floating-type member using a different member. If the

member stored is shorter than the member used to access the value, the excess bits have the value they had before the short member was stored.

3.3.3.4 The type of integer required to hold the maximum size of an array.

For a normal array, the type is **unsigned int**, and for huge arrays the type is **signed long**.

3.3.4 The result of casting a pointer to an integer or vice versa.

When converting between integers and pointers of the same size, no bits are changed. When converting from a longer type to a shorter type, the high-order bits are truncated. When converting from a shorter integer type to a longer pointer type, the integer is first widened to an integer type the same size as the pointer type.

Thus signed integers will sign-extend to fill the new bytes. Similarly, smaller pointer types being converted to larger integer types will first be widened to a pointer type as wide as the integer type.

3.3.5 The sign of the remainder on integer division.

The sign of the remainder is negative when only one of the operands is negative. If neither or both operands are negative, the remainder is positive.

3.3.6 The type of integer required to hold the difference between two pointers to elements of the same array, ptrdiff_t.

The type is signed **int**.

3.3.7 The result of a right shift of a negative signed integral type.

A negative signed value is sign extended when right shifted.

3.5.1 The extent to which objects can actually be placed in registers by using the *register storage-class specifier*.

Objects declared with any one, two, or four-byte integer or pointer types can be placed in registers. At least two and as many as seven registers are available. The number of registers actually used depends on what registers are needed for temporary values in the function.

3.5.2.1 Whether a plain int bit-field is treated as a signed int or as an unsigned int bit field.

Plain **int** bit fields are treated as **signed int** bit fields.

3.5.2.1 The order of allocation of bit fields within an int.

Bit fields are allocated from the low-order bit position to the high-order.

3.5.2.1 The padding and alignment of members of structures.

By default, no padding is used in structures. If you use the word alignment option (**-a**), structures are padded to even size, and any members that do not have character or character array type are aligned to an even multiple offset.

3.5.2.1 Whether a bit-field can straddle a storage-unit boundary.

When alignment (**-a**) is not requested, bit fields can straddle dword boundaries, but are never stored in more than four adjacent bytes.

3.5.2.2 The integer type chosen to represent the values of an enumeration type.

Store all enumerators as full **ints**. Store the enumerations in a **long** or **unsigned long** if the values don't fit into an **int**. This is the default behavior as specified by **-b** compiler option.

The **-b**-behavior specifies that enumerations should be stored in the smallest integer type that can represent the values. This includes all integral types, for example, **signed char**, **unsigned char**, **signed short**, **unsigned short**, **signed int**, **unsigned int**, **signed long**, and **unsigned long**.

For C++ compliance, **-b-** must be specified because it is not correct to store all enumerations as **ints** for C++.

3.5.3 What constitutes an access to an object that has volatile-qualified type.

Any reference to a volatile object will access the object. Whether accessing adjacent memory locations will also access an object depends on how the memory is constructed in the hardware. For special device memory, such as video display memory, it depends on how the device is constructed. For normal PC memory, volatile objects are used only for memory that might be accessed by asynchronous interrupts, so accessing adjacent objects has no effect.

3.5.4 The maximum number of declarators that can modify an arithmetic, structure, or union type.

There is no specific limit on the number of declarators. The number of declarators allowed is fairly large, but when nested deeply within a set of blocks in a function, the number of declarators will be reduced. The number allowed at file level is at least 50.

3.6.4.2 The maximum number of case values in a switch statement.

There is no specific limit on the number of cases in a switch. As long as there is enough memory to hold the case information, the compiler will accept them.

3.8.1 Whether the value of a single-character character constant in a constant expression that controls conditional inclusion matches the value of the same character constant in the execution character set. Whether such a character constant can have a negative value.

All character constants, even constants in conditional directives, use the same character set (execution). Single-character character constants will be negative if the character type is signed (default and **-K** not requested).

3.8.2 The method for locating includable source files.

For include file names in angle brackets, if include directories are given in the command line, then the file is searched for in each of the include directories. Include directories are searched in this order:

- 1 In directories specified on the command line.
- 2 In directories specified in BCC32.CFG.
- 3 If no include directories are specified, search only the current directory.

3.8.2 The support for quoted names for includable source files.

For quoted includable file names, the file is searched in the following order:

- 1 In the same directory of the file that contains the **#include** statement.
- 2 In the directories of files that include (**#include**) that file.
- 3 The current directory.
- 4 Along the path specified by the **/I** compiler option.
- 5 Along paths specified by the INCLUDE environment variable.

3.8.2 The mapping of source file name character sequences.

Backslashes in include file names are treated as distinct characters, not as escape characters. Case differences are ignored for letters.

3.8.8 The definitions for **__DATE__** and **__TIME__** when they are unavailable.

The date and time are always available and will use the operating system date and time.

4.1.1 The decimal point character.

The decimal point character is a period (**.**).

4.1.5 The type of the **sizeof** operator, **size_t**.

The type *size_t* is *unsigned*.

4.1.5 The null pointer constant to which the macro **NULL** expands.

NULL expands to an **int** zero or a **long** zero. Both are 32-bit **signed** numbers.

4.2 The diagnostic printed by and the termination behavior of the **assert** function.

The diagnostic message printed is "Assertion failed: *expression*, file *filename*, line *nn*", where *expression* is the asserted expression that failed, *filename* is the source file name, and *nn* is the line number where the assertion took place.

Abort is called immediately after the assertion message is displayed.

4.3 The implementation-defined aspects of character testing and case-mapping functions.

None, other than what is mentioned in 4.3.1.

4.3.1 The sets of characters tested for by the `isalnum`, `isalpha`, `iscntrl`, `islower`, `isprint` and `isupper` functions.

First 128 ASCII characters for the default C locale. Otherwise, all 256 characters.

4.5.1 The values returned by the mathematics functions on domain errors.

An IEEE NAN (not a number).

4.5.1 Whether the mathematics functions set the integer expression `errno` to the value of the macro `ERANGE` on underflow range errors.

No, only for the other errors—domain, singularity, overflow, and total loss of precision.

4.5.6.4 Whether a domain error occurs or zero is returned when the `fmod` function has a second argument of zero.

No; `fmod(x,0)` returns 0.

4.7.1.1 The set of signals for the signal function.

`SIGABRT`, `SIGFPE`, `SIGILL`, `SIGINT`, `SIGSEGV`, and `SIGTERM`.

4.7.1.1 The semantics for each signal recognized by the signal function.

See the description of signal.

4.7.1.1 The default handling and the handling at program startup for each signal recognized by the signal function.

See the description of signal.

4.7.1.1 If the equivalent of `signal(sig, SIG_DFL)`; is not executed prior to the call of a signal handler, the blocking of the signal that is performed.

The equivalent of `signal(sig, SIG_DFL)` is always executed.

4.7.1.1 Whether the default handling is reset if the `SIGILL` signal is received by a handler specified to the signal function.

No, it is not.

4.9.2 Whether the last line of a text stream requires a terminating newline character.

No, none is required.

4.9.2 Whether space characters that are written out to a text stream immediately before a newline character appear when read in.

Yes, they do.

4.9.2 The number of null characters that may be appended to data written to a binary stream.

None.

4.9.3 Whether the file position indicator of an append mode stream is initially positioned at the beginning or end of the file.

The file position indicator of an append-mode stream is initially placed at the beginning of the file. It is reset to the end of the file before each write.

4.9.3 Whether a write on a text stream causes the associated file to be truncated beyond that point.

A write of 0 bytes might or might not truncate the file, depending on how the file is buffered. It is safest to classify a zero-length write as having indeterminate behavior.

4.9.3 The characteristics of file buffering.

Files can be fully buffered, line buffered, or unbuffered. If a file is buffered, a default buffer of 512 bytes is created upon opening the file.

4.9.3 Whether a zero-length file actually exists.

Yes, it does.

4.9.3 Whether the same file can be open multiple times.

Yes, it can.

4.9.4.1 The effect of the remove function on an open file.

No special checking for an already open file is performed; the responsibility is left up to the programmer.

4.9.4.2 The effect if a file with the new name exists prior to a call to rename.

Rename returns a -1 and *errno* is set to EEXIST.

4.9.6.1 The output for %p conversion in fprintf.

The output is eight hex digits (XXXXXXXX), zero padded, uppercase letters (the same as %08lX).

4.9.6.2 The input for %p conversion in fscanf.

See 4.9.6.1.

4.9.6.2 The interpretation of a –(hyphen) character that is neither the first nor the last character in the scanlist for a %[conversion in fscanf.

See the description of scanf.

4.9.9.1 The value the macro `errno` is set to by the `fgetpos` or `ftell` function on failure.

`EBADF` Bad file number.

4.9.10.4 The messages generated by `perror`.

Messages generated in Win32

| | |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Arg list too big | Math argument |
| Attempted to remove current directory | Memory arena trashed |
| Bad address | Name too long |
| Bad file number | No child processes |
| Block device required | No more files |
| Broken pipe | No space left on device |
| Cross-device link | No such device |
| Error 0 | No such device or address |
| Exec format error | No such file or directory |
| Executable file in use | No such process |
| File already exists | Not a directory |
| File too large | Not enough memory |
| Illegal seek | Not same device |
| Inappropriate I/O control operation | Operation not permitted |
| Input/output error | Path not found |
| Interrupted function call | Permission denied |
| Invalid access code | Possible deadlock |
| Invalid argument | Read-only file system |
| Invalid data | Resource busy |
| Invalid environment | Resource temporarily unavailable |
| Invalid format | Result too large |
| Invalid function number | Too many links |
| Invalid memory block address | Too many open files |
| Is a directory | |

4.10.3 The behavior of `calloc`, `malloc`, or `realloc` if the size requested is zero.

`calloc` and `malloc` will ignore the request and return 0. `Realloc` will free the block.

4.10.4.1 The behavior of the `abort` function with regard to open and temporary files.

The file buffers are not flushed and the files are not closed.

4.10.4.3 The status returned by `exit` if the value of the argument is other than zero, `EXIT_SUCCESS`, or `EXIT_FAILURE`.

Nothing special. The status is returned exactly as it is passed. The status is a represented as a **signed char**.

4.10.4.4 The set of environment names and the method for altering the environment list used by `getenv`.

The environment strings are those defined in the operating system with the SET command. *putenv* can be used to change the strings for the duration of the current program, but the SET command must be used to change an environment string permanently.

4.10.4.5 The contents and mode of execution of the string by the system function.

The string is interpreted as an operating system command. COMSPEC or CMD.EXE is used, and the argument string is passed as a command to execute. Any operating system built-in command, as well as batch files and executable programs, can be executed.

4.11.6.2 The contents of the error message strings returned by `strerror`.

See 4.9.10.4.

4.12.1 The local time zone and Daylight Saving Time.

Defined as local PC time and date.

4.12.2.1 The era for clock.

Represented as clock ticks, with the origin being the beginning of the program execution.

4.12.3.5 The formats for date and time.

C++Builder implements ANSI formats.

B

WebSnap server-side scripting reference

This appendix explains the mechanics of how script is used by WebSnap adapters to generate dynamic HTML pages in WebSnap Web server applications. It is intended for developers who use page producers instead of adapter page producers in their Web page modules. Adapter page producers handle script generation automatically; regular page producers must have script in their page templates added manually. The information contained here will help you write your own script in your page templates.

This appendix should also be of interest to adapter page producer users who want to better understand the output of the adapter page producer. Script manipulation is an advanced topic, however. You don't need to understand how to generate script to write basic WebSnap applications.

There are three sections to this appendix. The first section explains the different object types which can be accessed in script. The second section discusses global objects defined in WebSnap applications. The third section contains JScript examples which show how script can be used in HTML page templates to extract information from your Web server application.

This appendix is meant to be an API reference for objects' script interfaces. Object property descriptions include the property name, the type of property (such as text or Boolean), and whether the property can be read or written. Method descriptions start with the method name and calling syntax.

Object types

Table B.1 lists general scriptable object types. These types are commonly found as properties of objects like the global objects. Not all scriptable object types are tabulated here, just the object types whose instances can have different names. For

example, there is an application object type. Since there is only one application object type instantiated in any application, the application type is described as the Application object in the global objects section.

Table B.1 WebSnap object types

| Object type | Description |
|---|---|
| Adapter type (page B-2) | Defines the properties and methods of an adapter. Adapters can be accessed by name as a property of a Module. |
| AdapterAction type (page B-4) | Defines the properties and methods of an adapter action. Actions are referenced by name as a property of an adapter. |
| AdapterErrors type (page B-6) | Defines the Errors property of an adapter. The Errors property is used to list errors that occurred when executing an action or generating a page. |
| AdapterField type (page B-6) | Defines the properties and methods of an adapter field. Fields are referenced by name as a property of an Adapter. |
| AdapterFieldValues type (page B-10) | Defines the properties and methods of an adapter field's Values property. |
| AdapterFieldValuesList type (page B-10) | Defines the property and methods of an adapter field's ValuesList property. |
| AdapterHiddenFields type (page B-11) | Defines the HiddenFields and HiddenRecordFields property of an adapter. |
| AdapterImage type (page B-12) | Defines the Image property of adapter fields and adapter actions. |
| Module type (page B-12) | Defines the properties of a Module. A Module can be accessed by name as a property of the Modules variable. |
| Page type (page B-12) | Defines the properties of a page. A page can be accessed by name as a property of the Pages object. The page being generated can be accessed using the Page object. |

Adapter type

Defines the properties and methods of an adapter. You can access adapters by name as a property of a module (e.g. ModuleName.Adapter).

Adapters contain field components and action components that represent data items and commands, respectively. Server-side script statements access the value of adapter fields and the parameters of adapter actions in order to build HTML forms and tables.

Properties

Actions: Enumerator

See also: *Fields* property of Adapter type (below), Example 8 (page B-23)

Enumerates the action objects. Use the *Actions* property to loop through the actions of an adapter.

CanModify: Boolean, read

See also: *CanView* property of Adapter type (below) and AdapterField type (page B-6)

Indicates whether the end user has permission to modify fields of this adapter. Use the *CanModify* property to dynamically generate HTML that is sensitive to the end user's rights. For example, a page can include an `<input>` element if *CanModify* is *True* or a `<p>` if *CanModify* is *False*.

CanView: Boolean, read

See also: *CanModify* of Adapter type (above) and AdapterField type (page B-6)

Indicates whether the end user has permission to view fields of this adapter. Use the *CanModify* property to dynamically generate HTML that is sensitive to the end user's rights.

ClassName_: text, read

See also: *Name_* (below)

Identifies the class name of the adapter component.

Errors: AdapterErrors, read

See also: AdapterErrors type (page B-6), Example 7 (page B-22)

Enumerates errors detected while processing an HTTP request. Adapters capture errors that occur while generating an HTML page or executing an adapter action. Use the *Errors* property to enumerate the errors and display error messages on an HTML page.

Fields: Enumerator

See also: *Actions*

Enumerates the field objects. Use the *Fields* property to loop through the fields of an adapter.

HiddenFields: AdapterHiddenFields

See also: *HiddenRecordFields*, AdapterHiddenFields type (page B-11), Example 10 (page B-24), Example 22 (page B-37)

Defines the hidden input fields that pass adapter state information. One example of state information is a *TDataSetAdapter*'s mode. Edit and Insert are two possible mode values. When *TDataSetAdapter* is used to generate an HTML form, the *HiddenFields* property defines a hidden field for the mode. When the HTML form is submitted, the HTTP request contains this hidden field value. When executing an action, the mode value is extracted from the HTTP request. If the mode is Insert, a new row is inserted into the dataset. If the mode is Edit, a dataset row is updated.

HiddenRecordFields: AdapterHiddenFields

See also: *HiddenFields*, AdapterHiddenFields type (page B-11), Example 10 (page B-24), Example 22 (page B-37)

Defines the hidden input fields that pass state information needed by each row or record in the HTML form. For example, when *TDataSetAdapter* is used to generate an HTML form, the *HiddenRecordFields* property will define a hidden field that identifies a key value for each row in an HTML table. When the HTML form is submitted, the HTTP request will contain these hidden field values. When executing an action that updates multiple rows in a dataset, *TDataSetAdapter* uses these key values to locate the rows to update.

Mode: text, read/write

See also: Example 10 (page B-24)

Sets or gets the adapter's mode.

Some adapters support a mode. For example, the *TDataSetAdapter* supports Edit, Insert, Browse, and Query modes. The mode affects the behavior of the adapter. When the *TDataSetAdapter* is in Edit mode, a submitted form updates a row in a table. When the *TDataSetAdapter* is in Insert mode, a submitted form inserts a row in a table.

Name_: text, read

Identifies the variable name of the adapter.

Records: Enumerator, read

See also: Example 9 (page B-23)

Enumerates the records of the adapter. Use the Records property to loop through the adapter records to generate an HTML table.

AdapterAction type

See also: Adapter type (page B-2), AdapterField type (page B-6)

The AdapterAction type defines the properties and methods of an adapter action.

Properties

Array: Enumerator

See also: Example 11 (page B-26)

Enumerates the commands of an adapter action. Use the *Array* property to loop through the commands. *Array* will be *Null* if the action does not support multiple commands.

TAdapterGotoPageAction is an example of an action that has multiple commands. This action has a command for each page defined by the parent adapter. The *Array* property is used to generate a series of hyperlinks so that the end user can click a hyperlink to jump to a page.

AsFieldValue: text, read

See also: *AsHREF*, Example 10 (page B-24), Example 21 (page B-36)

Provides a text value that can be submitted in a hidden field.

AsFieldValue identifies the name of the action and the action's parameters. Put this value in a hidden field called `__act`. When the HTML form is submitted, the adapter dispatcher extracts the value from the HTTP request and uses the value to locate and call the adapter action.

AsHREF: text, read

See also: *AsFieldValue*, Example 11 (page B-26)

Provides a text value that can be used as the href attribute value in an `<a>` tag.

AsHREF identifies the name of the action and the action's parameters. Put this value in an anchor tag to submit a request to execute this action. Note that an anchor tag on an HTML form will not submit the form. If the action makes use of submitted form values then use a hidden form field and *AsFieldValue* to identify the action.

CanExecute: Boolean, read

Indicates whether the end user has rights to execute this action.

DisplayLabel: text, read

See also: Example 21 (page B-36)

Suggests an HTML display label for this adapter action.

DisplayStyle: string, read

See also: Example 21 (page B-36)

Suggests an HTML display style for this action.

Server-side script may use *DisplayStyle* to determine how to generate HTML. The built in adapters may return one of the following display styles:

| Value | Meaning |
|----------|---|
| " | Undefined display style |
| 'Button' | Display as <code><input type="submit"></code> |
| 'Anchor' | Use <code><a></code> |

Enabled: Boolean, read

See also: Example 21 (page B-36)

Indicates whether this action should be enabled on the HTML page.

Name: string, read

Provides the variable name of this adapter action

Visible: Boolean, read

Indicates whether this adapter field should be visible on the HTML page.

Methods

LinkToPage(PageSuccess, PageFail): AdapterAction, read

See also: Example 10 (page B-24), Example 11 (page B-26), Example 21 (page B-36), Page object, AdapterAction type (page B-4)

Use *LinkToPage* to specify pages to display after the action executes. The first parameter is the name of the page to display if the action executes successfully. The second parameter is the name of the page to display if errors occur during execution.

AdapterErrors type

See also: Adapter type's *Errors* property (page B-2)

The *AdapterErrors* type defines the properties of an adapter's *Errors* property.

Properties

Field: AdapterField, read

See also: AdapterField type (page B-6)

Identifies the adapter field that caused an error.

This property is *Null* if the error is not associated with a particular adapter field.

ID: integer, read

Provides the numeric identifier for an error.

This property is zero if an ID is not defined.

Message: text, read

See also: Example 7 (page B-22)

Provides a text description of the error.

AdapterField type

See also: Adapter type (page B-2), AdapterAction type (page B-4)

The AdapterField type defines the properties and methods of an adapter field.

Properties

CanModify: Boolean, read

See also: *CanView* property of AdapterField type (below) and Adapter type (page B-2)

Indicates whether the end user has rights to modify this field's value.

CanView: Boolean, read

See also: *CanModify* property of AdapterField type (above) and Adapter type (page B-2)

Indicates whether the end user has rights to view this field's value.

DisplayLabel: text, read

Suggests an HTML display label for this adapter field.

DisplayStyle: text, read

See also: *InputStyle* (below), *ViewMode* (below), Example 17 (page B-33)

DisplayStyle suggests how to display a read-only representation of a field's value.

Server-side script may use *DisplayStyle* to determine how to generate HTML. An adapter field may return one of the following display styles:

| Value | HTML display style |
|---------|--|
| " | Undefined. |
| 'Text' | Use <p>. |
| 'Image' | Use . The Image property of the field defines the src property. |
| 'List' | Use . Enumerate the Values property to generate each item. |

The *ViewMode* property indicates whether to use *InputStyle* or *DisplayStyle* to generate HTML.

DisplayText: text, read

See also: *EditText* (below), Example 9 (page B-23)

Provides text to use when displaying the adapter field's value for reading only. The value of *DisplayText* may include numeric formatting.

DisplayWidth: integer, read

See also: *MaxLength* (below)

Suggests a display width, in characters, for an adapter field's value.

-1 is returned if the display width is undefined.

EditText: text, read

See also: *DisplayText* (above), Example 10 (page B-24)

Provides text to use when defining an HTML input for this adapter field. The value of *EditText* is typically unformatted.

Image: AdapterImage type, read

See also: AdapterImage type (page B-12), Example 12 (page B-27)

Provides an object that defines an image for this adapter field.

Null is returned If the adapter field does not provide an image.

InputStyle: text, read

See also: *DisplayStyle* (above), *ViewMode* (below), Example 17 (page B-33)

Suggests an HTML input style for this field.

Server-side script may use the *InputStyle* to determine how to generate an HTML element. An adapter field may return one of the following input styles:

| Value | Meaning |
|------------------|---|
| " | Undefined input style. |
| 'TextInput' | Use <input type="text">. |
| 'PasswordInput' | Use <input type="password">. |
| 'Select' | Use <select>. Enumerate the ValuesList property to generate each <option> element. |
| 'SelectMultiple' | Use <select multiple>. Enumerate the ValuesList property to generate each <option> element. |
| 'Radio' | Enumerate the ValuesList property to generate one or more <input type="radio">. |
| 'CheckBox' | Enumerate the ValuesList property to generate one or more <input type="checkbox">. |
| 'TextArea' | Use <textarea>. |
| 'File' | Use <input type="file">. |

The *ViewMode* property indicates whether to use the *InputStyle* or *DisplayStyle* to generate HTML.

InputName: text, read

See also: Example 10 (page B-24)

Provides a name for an HTML input element to edit this adapter field.

Use *InputName* when generating an HTML <input>, <select>, or <textarea> element so that the adapter component will be able to associate the name/value pairs in the HTTP request with adapter fields.

MaxLength: integer, read

See also: *DisplayWidth* (above)

Indicates the maximum length in characters that can be entered into this field.

MaxLength is -1 if the maximum length is not defined.

Name: text, read

Returns the variable name of the adapter field.

Required: Boolean, read

Indicates whether a value for this adapter field is required when submitting a form.

Value: variant, read

See also: *Values* (below), *DisplayText* (above), *EditText* (above)

Returns a value that can be used in calculations. For example, use *Value* when adding two adapter field values together.

Values: AdapterFieldValues, read

See also: *ValuesList* (below), AdapterFieldValues type (page B-10), *Value* (above), Example 13 (page B-28)

Returns a list of the field's values. The *Values* property is Null unless this adapter field supports multiple values. A multiple value field would be used, for example, to allow the end user to select multiple values in a select list.

ValuesList: AdapterFieldValuesList, read

See also: *Values* (above), AdapterFieldValuesList type (page B-10), Example 13 (page B-28)

Provides a list of choices for this adapter field. Use *ValuesList* when generating an HTML select list, check box group, or radio button group. Each item in *ValuesList* has a value and may have a name.

Visible: Boolean, read

Indicates whether this adapter field should be visible on the HTML page.

ViewMode: text, read

See also: *DisplayStyle* (above), *InputStyle* (above), Example 17 (page B-33)

Suggests how to display this adapter field value on an HTML page.

An adapter field may return one of the following view modes:

| Value | View mode |
|-----------|--|
| " | Undefined. |
| 'Input' | Generate editable HTML form elements using <input>, <textarea>, or <select>. |
| 'Display' | Generate read-only HTML using <p>, , or . |

The *ViewMode* property indicates whether to use the *InputStyle* or *DisplayStyle* to generate HTML.

Methods

IsEqual(Value): Boolean

See also: Example 16 (page B-32)

Call this function to compare a variable with an adapter field's value.

AdapterFieldValues type

See also: AdapterField type's *Values* property (page B-6)

Provides a list of the field's values. Multiple value adapter fields support this property. A multiple value field would be used, for example, to allow the end user to select multiple values in a select list.

Properties

Records: Enumerator, read

See also: Example 15 (page B-30)

Enumerates the records in the list of values.

Value: variant, read

See also: *ValueField* (below)

Returns the value of the current enumeration item.

ValueField: AdapterField, read

See also: AdapterField type (page B-6), Example 15 (page B-30)

Returns an adapter field for the current enumeration item. Use *ValueField*, for example, to get the *DisplayText* for the current enumeration item.

Methods

HasValue(Value): Boolean

See also: Example 14 (page B-29)

Indicates whether a given value is in the list of field values. This method is to determine whether to select an item in an HTML select list or check an item in a group of check boxes.

AdapterFieldValuesList type

See also: Adapter type (page B-2)

Provides a list of possible values for this adapter field.

Use *ValuesList* when generating an HTML select list, check box group, or radio button group. Each item in *ValuesList* contains a value and may contain a name.

Properties

Image: AdapterImage, read

Returns the image of the current enumeration item, or Null if the item doesn't have an image.

Records: Enumerator, read

Enumerates the records in the list of values.

Value: variant, read

Returns the value of the current enumeration item.

ValueField: AdapterField, read

See also: AdapterField type (page B-6), Example 15 (page B-30)

Returns an adapter field for the current enumeration item. Use *ValueField*, for example, to get the *DisplayText* for the current enumeration item.

ValueName: text, read

Returns the text name of the current item. *ValueName* is blank if the value does not have a name.

Methods

ImageOfValue(Value): AdapterImage

Looks up the image associated with this value. Returns Null if there is no image.

NameOfValue(Value): text

Looks up the name associated with this value. Returns a blank string if the value is not found or if the value does not have a name.

AdapterHiddenFields type

See also: Adapter type's *HiddenFields* and *HiddenRecordFields* properties (page B-2)

Provides access to the hidden field names and values that an adapter requires on HTML forms used to submit changes.

Properties

Name: text, read

Returns the name of the hidden field being enumerated.

Value: text, read

Returns the string value of the hidden field being enumerated.

Methods

WriteFields(Response)

See also: Example 10 (page B-24), Example 22 (page B-37)

Writes hidden field names and values using `<input type="hidden">`.

Call this method to write all of the HTML hidden fields to an HTML form.

AdapterImage type

See also: AdapterField type (page B-12), AdapterAction type (page B-4)

Represents an image that is associated with an action or a field.

Properties

AsHREF: text, read

See also: Example 11 (page B-26), Example 12 (page B-27)

Provides a URL that can be used to define an HTML element.

Module type

See also: Modules object (page B-16)

Adapter components can be referenced by name as properties of a module. Also use a module to enumerate the scriptable objects (usually adapters) of a module.

Properties

Name_: text, read

See also: Example 20 (page B-35)

Identifies the variable name of the module. This is the name used to access the module as a property of the Modules variable.

ClassName_: text, read

See also: Example 20 (page B-35)

Identifies the class name of the module.

Objects: Enumerator

See also: Example 20 (page B-35)

Use *Objects* to enumerate the scriptable objects (typically adapters) within a module.

Page type

See also: Page object (page B-16), Example 20 (page B-35)

Defines properties and methods of pages.

Properties

CanView: Boolean, read

Indicates whether the end user has rights to view this page.

A page registers access rights. *CanView* compares the rights registered by the page with the rights granted to the end user.

DefaultAction: AdapterAction type, read

See also: Example 6 (page B-22)

Identifies the default adapter action associated with this page.

A default action is typically used when parameters must be passed to a page. *DefaultAction* may be Null.

HREF: text, read

See also: Example 5 (page B-21)

Provides a URL that can be used to generate a hyperlink to this page using the <a> tag.

LoginRequired: Boolean, read

Indicates whether the end user must login before accessing this page.

A page registers a *LoginRequired* flag. If *True* then the end user will not be permitted to access this page unless logged in.

Name: text, read

See also: Example 5 (page B-21)

Provides the name of the registered page.

If the page is published, the *PageDispatcher* will generate the page when the page's name is a suffix of the HTTP request's path info.

Published: Boolean, read

See also: Example 5 (page B-21)

Indicates whether the end user can access this page by specifying the page name as a suffix to the URL.

A page registers a published flag. The page dispatcher will automatically dispatch a published page. Typically the *Published* property is used while generating a menu with hyperlinks to pages. Pages that have the *Published* set to *False* are not listed in the menu.

Title: text, read

See also: Example 5 (page B-21), Example 18 (page B-34)

Provides the title of the page.

The title is typically displayed to the user.

Global objects

Global objects can be referenced with server-side script; you can make global object references in script which resemble the object references in your source code. For example,

```
<%= Application.Title %>
```

displays the application's title in a Web page.

The global script objects are tabulated below:

Table B.2 WebSnap global objects

| Object | Description |
|--------------------------------|--|
| Application object (page B-14) | Accesses fields and actions of the application adapter, such as the Title field. |
| EndUser object (page B-15) | Accesses fields and actions of the end user adapter, such as the DisplayName for the end user, the Login action, and Logout action. |
| Modules object (page B-16) | References a data module or page module by name. The Modules variables can also be used to enumerate the modules of the application. |
| Page object (page B-16) | Accesses the properties of the page being generated such as the page Title. |
| Pages object (page B-16) | References a registered page by name. The Pages variables can also be used to enumerate the registered pages of the application. |
| Producer object (page B-17) | Writes HTML content that may include transparent tags. |
| Request object (page B-17) | Accesses the properties and methods of the HTTP request. |
| Response object (page B-18) | Writes HTML content to the HTTP response. |
| Session object (page B-18) | Accesses the properties of the end user's session. |

Application object

See also: Adapter type (page B-2)

The Application object provides access to information about the application.

Use the Application object to access fields and actions of the application adapter, such as the *Title* field. The Application object is an Adapter, so it can be customized with additional fields and actions. Fields and actions that have been added to the application adapter can be accessed by name as properties of the Application object.

Properties

Designing: Boolean, read

See also: Example 1 (page B-20)

Indicates whether the Web application is being designed in the IDE.

Use the *Designing* property to conditionally generate HTML that must be different in design mode than when the Web application is running.

ModulePath: text, read

See also: *QualifyFileName* method

Identifies the location of the web application executable.

Use the *ModulePath* to construct file names that are in the same directory as the executable.

ModuleFileName: text, read

See also: *QualifyFileName* method

Identifies the fully qualified file name of the executable.

Title: text, read

See also: Example 18 (page B-34)

Provides the title of the application.

The *Title* property has the value of the *TApplicationAdapter*'s *Title* property. Typically this value is displayed at the top of HTML pages.

Methods

QualifyFileName(FileName): text

See also: Example 1 (page B-20)

Converts a relative file name or a directory reference to an absolute reference.

QualifyFileName uses the directory location of the Web application executable to qualify a file name that is not fully qualified. The method returns a fully qualified file name. If the *FileName* parameter is fully qualified, the file name is returned unchanged. In design mode, the *FileName* parameter is qualified with the directory location of the project file.

EndUser object

See also: Adapter type (page B-2)

Provides access to information about the current end user.

Use *EndUser* to access fields and actions of the end user adapter, such as the *DisplayName* for the end user. You can access fields and actions that have been added to the end user adapter by name as properties of the *EndUser* object.

Properties

DisplayName: text, read

See also: Example 19 (page B-35)

Provides the name of the end user.

LoggedIn: Boolean, read

See also: Example 19 (page B-35)

Indicates whether the end user is logged in.

LoginFormAction: AdapterAction type, read

See also: Example 19 (page B-35), AdapterAction type (page B-4)

Provides the adapter action used to log in a user.

LogoutAction: AdapterAction type, read

See also: Example 19 (page B-35), AdapterAction type (page B-4)

Provides the adapter action used to log out a user.

Modules object

See also: Example 2 (page B-20), Example 20 (page B-35)

The Modules object provides access to all modules that have been instantiated or activated to service the current HTTP request.

To references a particular module use the module's name as a property of the Modules variable. To enumerate all modules within the application, create an enumerator using the Modules object.

Page object

See also: Example 5 (page B-21), Page type (page B-12)

The Page object provides access to the properties of the page being generated.

See Page type for a description of the properties and methods of the Page object.

Pages object

See also: Example 5 (page B-21)

The Pages object provides access to all pages registered by the application.

To reference a particular page use the page's name as a property of the Pages variable. To enumerate all pages within the application, create an enumerator using the Pages object.

Producer object

See also: Response object (page B-18)

Use the Producer object to write text containing transparent tags. The tags will be translated by the page producer and then written to the HTTP response. If the text does not contain transparent tags, use the Response object for better performance.

Properties

Content: text, read/write

Provides access to the content portion of the HTTP response.

Use *Content* to read or write the entire content portion of the HTTP response. Setting *Content* translates transparent tags. If you are not using transparent tags, set *Response.Content* instead for better performance.

Methods

Write(Value)

Appends to the content portion of the HTTP request with support for transparent tags.

Use the *Write* method to append to the content portion of the HTTP request's content. Write translates transparent tags such as

```
Write('Translate this: <#MyTag>')
```

If you are not using transparent tags, use *Response.Write* for better performance.

Request object

Provides access to the HTTP request.

Use properties of the Response object to access information about the HTTP request.

Properties

Host: text, read

Reports the value of the Host header of the HTTP request.

Host is the same as *TWebRequest's Host* property.

PathInfo: text, read

Contains the PathInfo portion of the URL.

PathInfo is the same as *TWebRequest's InternalPathInfo* property.

ScriptName: text, read

Contains the script name portion of the URL, which specifies the name of a Web server application.

ScriptName is the same as *TWebRequest's InternalScriptName* property.

Response object

See also: Producer object (page B-17)

Provides access to the HTTP response. Use the Response object to write to the content portion of the HTTP response. If you are using transparent tags, use the Producer object instead of the Response object.

Properties

Content: text, read/write

Provides access to the content portion of the HTTP response.

Use *Content* to read or write the entire content portion of the HTTP response.

Methods

Write(Value)

See also: Example 5 (page B-21)

Appends Value to the content portion of the HTTP request.

Use the *Write* method to append Value to the HTTP request's content. Write does not translate transparent tags.

Use the Producer object's *Write* method to write a string containing one or more transparent tags.

Session object

The Session object provides access to the session ID and values.

A session is used to keep track of information about the end user for a short period of time.

Properties

SessionID.Value: text, read/write

Provides access to the ID of the current end user's session.

Values(Name): variant, read

Provides access to values stored in current end user's session.

JScript Examples

The following JScript examples demonstrate how many of the server-side scripting properties and methods are used.

Table B.3 JScript examples of server-side scripting

| Example | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| Example 1 (page B-20) | Uses the Application object's <i>QualifyFilename</i> method to generate a relative path reference to an image. |
| Example 2 (page B-20) | Declares a variable that references a module. |
| Example 3 (page B-20) | Enumerates the modules in the web application and displays their names in an HTML table. |
| Example 4 (page B-21) | Declares a variable that references a registered page. |
| Example 5 (page B-21) | Enumerates registered pages to generate a menu of hyperlinks to published pages. |
| Example 6 (page B-22) | Enumerates registered pages to generate a menu of hyperlinks to the published pages' default actions. |
| Example 7 (page B-22) | Writes a list of errors detected by an adapter. |
| Example 8 (page B-23) | Enumerates all of the action objects of an adapter to display action object property values in an HTML table. |
| Example 9 (page B-23) | Enumerates the records of an adapter to display adapter field values in an HTML table. |
| Example 10 (page B-24) | Generates an HTML form to edit adapter fields and submit adapter actions. |
| Example 11 (page B-26) | Displays adapter actions to support paging. |
| Example 12 (page B-27) | Displays an adapter field's image using the tag |
| Example 13 (page B-28) | Displays an adapter field using the <select> and <option> tags. |
| Example 14 (page B-29) | Displays an adapter field as a group of check boxes. |
| Example 15 (page B-30) | Displays an adapter field's values using and tags. |
| Example 16 (page B-32) | Displays an adapter field as a group of radio buttons. |
| Example 17 (page B-33) | Uses the adapter field's DisplayStyle, InputStyle and ViewMode properties to generate HTML. |
| Example 18 (page B-34) | Uses properties of the Application object and the Page object to generate a page heading. |
| Example 19 (page B-35) | Uses properties of the EndUser object to display the end user's name, the login command, and the logout command. |
| Example 20 (page B-35) | Lists the scriptable objects in a module. |
| Example 21 (page B-36) | Uses the adapter actions's DisplayStyle property to generate HTML. |
| Example 22 (page B-37) | Generate an HTML table to update multiple detail records. |

Example 1

See also: Application object's *Designing* and *QualifyFileName* properties (page B-14), Request object's *PathInfo* property (page B-17)

This example generates a relative path reference to an image. If the script is in design mode then it references an actual directory; otherwise it references a virtual directory.

```
<%
    function PathInfoToRelativePath(S)
    {
        var R = '';
        var L = S.length
        I = 0
        while (I < L)
        {
            if (S.charAt(I) == '/')
                R = R + '../'
            I++
        }
        return R
    }

    function QualifyImage(S)
    {
        if (Application.Designing)
            return Application.QualifyFileName("../images\\" + S);    // relative directory
        else
            return PathInfoToRelativePath(Request.PathInfo) + '../images/' + S;    // virtual
    }
    %>
```

Example 2

See also: Modules object (page B-16)

This example declares a variable that references WebModule1:

```
<% var M = Modules.WebModule1 %>
```

Example 3

See also: Modules object (page B-16)

Example 3 enumerates the instantiated module and displays its variable name and class name in a table:

```
<table border=1>
<tr><th>Name</th><th>ClassName</th></tr>
<%
    var e = new Enumerator(Modules)
```

```

        for (; !e.atEnd(); e.moveNext())
        {
            %>
            <tr><td><%=e.item().Name_%></td><td><%=e.item().ClassName._%></td></tr>
            <%
            }
            %>
        </table>

```

Example 4

See also: Pages object (page B-16), Page object's *Title* property (page B-16)

This example declares a variable that references a page named Home. It also displays Home's title.

```

<% var P = Pages.Home %>
<p><%= P.Title %></p>

```

Example 5

See also: Pages object (page B-16), Page object's *Published* and *HREF* properties (page B-16), Response object's *Write* method (page B-18)

This example enumerates the registered pages and creates a menu displaying hyperlinks to all published pages.

```

<table>
<td>
<%
    e = new Enumerator(Pages)
    s = ''
    c = 0
    for (; !e.atEnd(); e.moveNext())
    {
        if (e.item().Published)
        {
            if (c>0) s += ' | '
            if (Page.Name != e.item().Name)
                s += '<a href="' + e.item().HREF + '">' + e.item().Title + '</a>'
            else
                s += e.item().Title
            c++
        }
    }
    if (c>1) Response.Write(s)
%>
</td>
</table>

```

Example 6

See also: Page type's *DefaultAction* property (page B-12)

This example enumerates the registered pages and creates a menu displaying hyperlinks to default actions.

```
<table>
<td>
<% e = new Enumerator(Pages)
    s = ''
    c = 0
    for (; !e.atEnd(); e.moveNext())
    {
        if (e.item().Published)
        {
            if (c>0) s += ' | '
            if (Page.Name != e.item().Name)
                if (e.item().DefaultAction != null)
                    s += '<a href="'+e.item().DefaultAction.ASHREF+'"> ' + e.item().Title + '</a>'
                else
                    s += '<a href="' + e.item().HREF + '">' + e.item().Title + '</a>'
            else
                s += e.item().Title
            c++
        }
    }
    if (c>1) Response.Write(s)
%>
</td>
</table>
```

Example 7

See also: Adapter type's *Errors* property (page B-2), AdapterErrors type (page B-6), Modules object (page B-16), Response object's *Write* method (page B-18)

This example writes a list of errors detected by an adapter.

```
<% {
    var e = new Enumerator(Modules.CountryTable.Adapter.Errors)
    for (; !e.atEnd(); e.moveNext())
    {
        Response.Write("<li>" + e.item().Message)
    }
    e.moveFirst()
} %>
```


Example 8

See also: Adapter type's *Actions* property (page B-2), AdapterAction type (page B-4)

This example enumerates all of the actions of an adapter and display action property values in a table.

```
<% // Display some properties of an action in a table.
    function DumpAction(A)
    {
%>
        <table border="1">
            <tr><th COLSPAN=2><%=A.Name%></th>
            <tr><th>AsFieldValue:</th><td><%= A.AsFieldValue %></td>
            <tr><th>AsHREF:</th><td><%= A.AsHREF %></span>
            <tr><th>DisplayLabel:</th><td><%= A.DisplayLabel %></td>
            <tr><th>Enabled:</th><td><%= A.Enabled %></td>
            <tr><th>CanExecute:</th><td><span class="value"><%= A.CanExecute %></td>
        </table>
    <%
    }
%>

    <% // Call the DumpAction function for every action in an adapter.
        function DumpActions(A)
        {
            var e = new Enumerator(A)
            for (; !e.atEnd(); e.moveNext())
            {
                DumpAction(e.item())
            }
        }
    <%

    <%
    // Display properties of actions in the adapter named Adapter1.
    DumpActions(Adapter1.Actions) %>
```

Example 9

See also: Adapter type's *Records* property (page B-2), AdapterField type's *DisplayText* property (page B-6)

This example generates an HTML table by enumerating the records of an adapter.

```
<%
// Define variables for the adapter and fields.

vAdapter=Modules.CountryTable.Adapter
vAdapter_Name=vAdapter.Name
vAdapter_Capital=vAdapter.Capital
vAdapter_Continent=vAdapter.Continent
%>
```

```

<%
// Function to write column text so that all cells have borders.
function WriteColText(t)
{
    Response.Write((t!="")?t:" ")
}
%>

<table border="1">
    <tr>
        <th>Name</th>
        <th>Capital</th>
        <th>Continent</th>
    </th>
    <%
        // Enumerate all the records in the adapter and write the field values.

        var e = new Enumerator(vAdapter.Records)
        for (; !e.atEnd(); e.moveNext())
        { %>
            <tr>
                <td><div><% WriteColText(vAdapter_Name.DisplayText) %></div></td>
                <td><div><% WriteColText(vAdapter_Capital.DisplayText) %></div></td>
                <td><div><% WriteColText(vAdapter_Continent.DisplayText) %></div></td>
            </tr>
        <%
        }
    %>
</table>

```

Example 10

See also: *AdapterAction* type's *LinkToPage* and *AsFieldValue* properties (page B-4), *AdapterField* type's *InputName* and *DisplayText* properties (page B-6), *Adapter* type's *HiddenFields* and *HiddenRecordFields* properties (page B-2)

This example generates an HTML form to edit adapter fields and submits adapter actions.

```

<%
// Define some variables for the adapter, fields, and actions.

vAdapter=Modules.CountryTable.Adapter
vAdapter_Name=vAdapter.Name
vAdapter_Capital=vAdapter.Capital
vAdapter_Continent=vAdapter.Continent
vAdapter_Apply=vAdapter.Apply
vAdapter_RefreshRow=vAdapter.RefreshRow

// Put the adapter in Edit mode unless the mode is already set. If the mode is already
// set this is probably because an adapter action set the mode. For example, an insert
// row action would put the adapter in Insert mode.

```

```

if (vAdapter.Mode=="")
    vAdapter.Mode="Edit"
%>
<form name="AdapterForm1" method="post">

    <!-- This hidden field defines the action that is executed when the form is submitted. -->

    <input type="hidden" name="__act">

<%
    // Write hidden fields defined by the adapter.

    if (vAdapter.HiddenFields != null)
    {
        vAdapter.HiddenFields.WriteFields(Response)
    } %>
<% if (vAdapter.HiddenRecordFields != null)
    {
        vAdapter.HiddenRecordFields.WriteFields(Response)
    } %>
<table>
    <tr>
        <td>
            <table>
                <tr>
                    <!-- Write input fields to edit the fields of the adapter -->

                    <td>Name</td>
                    <td ><input type="text" size="24" name="<%=vAdapter_Name.InputName%>" value="
                        <%= vAdapter_Name.EditText %>" ></td>
                    </tr>
                    <tr>
                        <td>Capital</td>
                        <td ><input type="text" size="24" name="<%=vAdapter_Capital.InputName%>"
                            value="<%= vAdapter_Capital.EditText %>" ></td>
                        </tr>
                        <tr>
                            <td>Continent</td>
                            <td ><input type="text" size="24" name="<%=vAdapter_Continent.InputName%>"
                                value="<%= vAdapter_Continent.EditText %>" ></td>
                            </tr>
                        </table>
                    </td>
                </tr>
                <tr>
                    <td>
                        <table>
                            <!-- Write submit buttons to execute actions. Use LinkToPage so this
                                page is regenerated after executing an action. -->

                            <tr>
                                <td><input type="submit" value="Apply"
                                    onclick = "AdapterForm1.__act.value=

```

```

        <%=vAdapter_Apply.LinkToPage(Page.Name).AsFieldValue%>' "></td>
    <td><input type="submit" value="Refresh"
        onclick = "AdapterForm1.__act.value=
        <%=vAdapter_RefreshRow.LinkToPage(Page.Name).AsFieldValue%>' "> </td>
    </tr>
</table>
</td>
</tr>
</table>
</form>

```

Example 11

See also: `AdapterAction` type's *Array* and *AsHREF* properties (page B-4)

This example displays adapter actions to support paging. The `PrevPage`, `GotoPage`, and `NextPage` actions are displayed as hyperlinks. The `GotoPage` action has an array of commands. The commands are enumerated to generate a hyperlink to jump to each page.

```

<%
    // Define variables for the adapter and actions.

    vAdapter = Modules.WebDataModule1.QueryAdapter
    vPrevPage = vAdapter.PrevPage
    vGotoPage = vAdapter.GotoPage
    vNextPage = vAdapter.NextPage
%>

<!-- Generate a table that displays hyperlinks between pages. -->

<table cellpadding="5">
<tr>
<td>
<%
    // Prevpage displays "<<". Use an anchor tag only if the command is enabled.

    if (vPrevPage.Enabled)
    { %>
        <a href="<%=vPrevPage.LinkToPage(Page.Name).AsHREF%>"><<</a>
    <%
    }
    else
    { %>
        <a><<</a>
    <%} %>
    <%
    // GotoPage has a list of commands. Loop through the list.
    // Use an anchor tag only if the command is enabled.

    if (vGotoPage.Array != null)
    {
        var e = new Enumerator(vGotoPage.Array)

```

```

        for (; !e.atEnd(); e.moveNext())
        {
%>
            <td>
<%
            if (vGotoPage.Enabled)
            { %>
                <a href="<%=vGotoPage.LinkToPage(Page.Name).ASHREF%>"
                    <%=vGotoPage.DisplayLabel%></a>
<%
            }
            else
            { %>
                <a><%=vGotoPage.DisplayLabel%></a>
<%
            }
        }
%>
<td>
<%
    // NextPage displays ">>". Use an anchor tag only if the command is enabled.

    if (vNextPage.Enabled)
    { %>
        <a href="<%=vNextPage.LinkToPage(Page.Name).ASHREF%>">>></a>
<%
    }
    else
    { %>
        <a>>></a>
<%
    } %>
</td>
</table>

```

Example 12

See also: AdapterField type's *Image* property (page B-6)

Example 12 displays an adapter field's image.

```

<%
// Declare variables for the adapter and field.

vAdapter=Modules.WebDataModule3.DataSetAdapter1
vGraphic=vAdapter.Graphic
%>

<!-- Display the adapter field as an image. -->
">

```

Example 13

See also: AdapterField type's *Values* and *ValuesList* properties (page B-6)

This example writes an adapter field with HTML <select> and <option> elements.

```
<%
// Return an object that defines HTML select options for an adapter field.
// The returned object has the following elements:
//
// text - string containing the <option> elements.
// count - the number of <option> elements.
// multiple - string containing the either 'multiple' or ''.
//           Use this value as an attribute of the <select> element.
//
// Use as follows:
//   obj=SelOptions(f)
//   Response.Write('<select size="' + obj.count + '" name="' + f.InputName + '" ' +
//   obj.multiple + '>' + obj.text + '</select>')

function SelOptions(f)
{
    var s=''
    var v=''
    var n=''
    var c=0
    if (f.ValuesList != null)
    {
        var e = new Enumerator(f.ValuesList.Records)
        for (; !e.atEnd(); e.moveNext())
        {
            s+= '<option'
            v = f.ValuesList.Value;
            var selected
            if (f.Values == null)
                selected = f.IsEqual(v)
            else
                selected = f.Values.HasValue(v)
            if (selected)
                s += ' selected'
            n = f.ValuesList.ValueName;
            if (n=='')
            {
                n = v
                v = ''
            }
            if (v!='') s += ' value="' + v + '"'
            s += '>' + n + '</option>\r\n'
            c++
        }
        e.moveFirst()
    }
    r = new Object;
    r.text = s
}
```

```

        r.count = c
        r.multiple = (f.Values == null) ? '' : 'multiple'
        return r;
    }
%>

<%
// Generate HTML select options for an adapter field
function WriteSelectOptions(f)
{
    obj=SelOptions(f)
%>
    <select size="<%=obj.count%>" name="<%=f.InputName%>" <%=obj.multiple%> >
        <%=obj.text%>
    </select>
<%
}
%>

```

Example 14

See also: `AdapterField` type's *Values* and *ValuesList* properties (page B-6)

This example writes an adapter field as a group of `<input type="checkbox">` elements.

```

<%
// Return an object that defines HTML check boxes for an adapter field.
// The returned object has the following elements:
//
// text - string containing the <input type=checkbox> elements.
// count - the number of <option> elements.
//
// Use as follows to define a check box group with three columns and no additional
// attributes:
//   obj=CheckBoxGroup(f, 3, '')
//   Response.Write(obj.text)
//
function CheckBoxGroup(f,cols,attr)
{
    var s=''
    var v=''
    var n=''
    var c=0;
    var nm=f.InputName
    if (f.ValuesList == null)
    {
        s+= '<input type="checkbox"'
        if (f.IsEqual(true)) s+= ' checked'
        s += ' value="true"' + ' name="' + nm + '"'
        if (attr!='') s+= ' ' + attr
        s += '></input>\r\n'
        c = 1
    }
}

```

```

else
{
    s += '<table><tr>'
    var e = new Enumerator(f.ValuesList.Records)
    for (; !e.atEnd(); e.moveNext())
    {
        if (c % cols == 0 && c != 0) s += '</tr><tr>'
        s += '<td><input type="checkbox"'
        v = f.ValuesList.Value;
        var checked
        if (f.Values == null)
            checked = (f.IsEqual(v))
        else
            checked = f.Values.HasValue(v)
        if (checked)
            s += ' checked'
        n = f.ValuesList.ValueName;
        if (n=='')
            n = v
        s += ' value="' + v + '"' + ' name="' + nm + '"'
        if (attr!='') s += ' ' + attr
        s += '>' + n + '</input></td>\r\n'
        c++
    }
    e.moveFirst()
    s += '</tr></table>'
}
r = new Object;
r.text = s
r.count = c
return r;
}
%>

<%
// Write an adapter field as a check box group
function WriteCheckBoxGroup(f, cols, attr)
{
    obj=CheckBoxGroup(f, cols, attr)
    Response.Write(obj.text);
}
%>

```

Example 15

See also: *AdapterField* type's *Values* and *ValuesList* properties (page B-6), *AdapterFieldValues* type (page B-10)

This example writes an adapter field as a list of read-only values using `` and `` elements.

```

<%
// Return an object that defines HTML list values for an adapter field.

```



```

// The returned object has the following elements:
//
// text - string containing the <li> elements.
// count - the number of elements.
//
// text will be blank and count will be zero if the adapter field does not
// support multiple values.
//
// Use as follows to define a displays a read only list of this an adapter
// fields values.
//  obj=ListValues(f)
//  Response.Write('<ul>' + obj.text + '</ul>')
//
function ListValues(f)
{
    var s=''
    var v=''
    var n=''
    var c=0;
    r = new Object;
    if (f.Values != null)
    {
        var e = new Enumerator(f.Values.Records)
        for (; !e.atEnd(); e.moveNext())
        {
            s+= '<li>'
            s += f.Values.ValueField.DisplayText;
            s += '</li>'
            c++
        }
        e.moveFirst()
    }
    r.text = s
    r.count = c
    return r;
}
%>

<%
// Write an adapter field as a list of read-only values.
function WriteListValues(f)
{
    obj=ListValues(f)
%>
<ul><%=obj.text%></ul>
<%
}
%>

```

Example 16

See also: AdapterFieldValuesList type (page B-10), AdapterField type's *Values* and *ValuesList* properties (page B-6)

This example writes an adapter field as a group of <input type="radio"> elements.

```
<%
// Return an object that defines HTML radio buttons for an adapter field.
// The returned object has the following elements:
//
// text - string containing the <input type=radio> elements.
// count - the number of elements.
//
// Use as follows to define a radio button group with three columns and no additional
// attributes:
//   obj=RadioGroup(f, 3, '')
//   Response.Write(obj.text)
//
```

```
function RadioGroup(f,cols,attr)
{
    var s=''
    var v=''
    var n=''
    var c=0;
    var nm=f.InputName
    if (f.ValuesList == null)
    {
        s+= '<input type="radio"'
        if (f.IsEqual(true)) s+= ' checked'
        s += ' value="true"' + ' name="' + nm + '"'
        if (attr!='') s+= ' ' + attr
        s += '></input>\r\n'
        c = 1
    }
    else
    {
        s += '<table><tr>'
        var e = new Enumerator(f.ValuesList.Records)
        for (; !e.atEnd(); e.moveNext())
        {
            if (c % cols == 0 && c != 0) s += '</tr><tr>'
            s+= '<td><input type="radio"'
            v = f.ValuesList.Value;
            var checked
            if (f.Values == null)
                checked = (f.IsEqual(v))
            else
                checked = f.Values.HasValue(v)
            if (checked)
                s+= ' checked'
            n = f.ValuesList.ValueName;
            if (n=='')
```

```

        {
            n = v
        }
        s += ' value="' + v + '"' + ' name="' + nm + '"'
        if (attr!='') s+= ' ' + attr
        s += '>' + n + '</input></td>\r\n'
        c++
    }
    e.moveFirst()
    s += '</tr></table>'
}
r = new Object;
r.text = s
r.count = c
return r;
}
%>

<%
// Write an adapter field as a radio button group
function WriteRadioGroup(f, cols, attr)
{
    obj=RadioGroup(f, cols, attr)
    Response.Write(obj.text);
}
%>

```

Example 17

See also: AdapterField type's *DisplayStyle*, *ViewMode*, and *InputStyle* properties (page B-6)

This example generates HTML for an adapter field based on the field's *InputStyle*, *DisplayStyle*, and *ViewMode* property values.

```

<%
function WriteField(f)
{
    Mode = f.ViewMode
    if (Mode == 'Input')
    {
        Style = f.InputStyle
        if (Style == 'SelectMultiple' || Style == 'Select')
            WriteSelectOptions(f)
        else if (Style == 'CheckBox')
            WriteCheckBoxGroup(f, 2, '')
        else if (Style == 'Radio')
            WriteRadioGroup(f, 2, '')
        else if (Style == 'TextArea')
        {
            <textarea wrap=OFF name="<%=f.InputName%>"><%= f.EditText %></textarea>
        }
    }
}
%>
<%

```

```

    }
    else if (Style == 'PasswordInput')
    {
%>
        <input type="password" name="<%=f.InputName%>"/>
<%
    }
    else if (Style == 'File')
    {
%>
        <input type="file" name="<%=f.InputName%>"/>
<%
    }
    else
    {
%>
        <input type="input" name="<%=f.InputName%>" value="<%= f.EditText %>"/>
<%
    }
}
else
{
    Style = f.DisplayStyle
    if (Style == 'List')
        WriteListValues(f)
    else if (Style == 'Image')
    {
%>
        ">
<%
    }
    else
        Response.Write('<p>' + f.DisplayText + '</p>')
}
}
%>

```

Example 18

See also: Page object (page B-16), Application object's *Title* property (page B-14)

This example uses properties of the Application object and Page object to generate a page heading.

```

<html>
<head>
<title>
<%= Page.Title %>
</title>
</head>
<body>
<h1><%= Application.Title %></h1>

<h2><%= Page.Title %></h2>

```

Example 19

See also: EndUser object (page B-15)

This example uses properties of the EndUser object to display an end user's name, login command, and logout command.

```
<% if (EndUser.Logout != null)
{
    if (EndUser.DisplayName != '')
    {
%>
        <h1>Welcome <%=EndUser.DisplayName %></h1>
<%    }
        if (EndUser.Logout.Enabled) {
%>
            <a href="<%=EndUser.Logout.AshREF%>">Logout</a>
<%    }
        if (EndUser.LoginForm.Enabled) {
%>
            <a href="<%=EndUser.LoginForm.AshREF%>">Login</a>
<%    }
    }
%>
```

Example 20

See also: Module type (page B-12)

This example lists the scriptable objects in a module.

```
<%
    // Write an HTML table list the name and classname of all scriptable objects in a module.
    function ListModuleObjects(m)
    {
%>
        <p></p>
        <table border="1">
        <tr>
        <th colspan="2"><%=m.Name_ + ': ' + m.ClassName_%></th>
        </tr>
<%
        var e = new Enumerator(m.Objects)
        for (; !e.atEnd(); e.moveNext())
        {
%>
            <tr>
            <td>
                <%= e.item().Name_ + ': ' + e.item().ClassName_%>
            </td>
            </tr>
<%
        }
%>
```

```

        </table>
    <%
    }
    %>

```

Example 21

See also: `AdapterAction` type's *DisplayStyle* and *Enabled* properties (page B-4)

This example generates HTML for an adapter action based on the action's *DisplayStyle* property.

```

<%
    // Write HTML for an adapter action using the DisplayStyle property.
    //
    // a - action
    // cap - caption. If blank the action's display label is used.
    // fm - name of the HTML form
    // p - page name to goto after action execution. If blank, the current page is used.
    //
    // Note that this function does not use the action's Array property. Is is assumed that
    // the action has a single command.
    //
    function WriteAction(a, cap, fm, p)
    {
        if (cap == '')
            cap = a.DisplayLabel
        if (p == '')
            p = Page.Name
        Style = a.DisplayStyle
        if (Style == 'Anchor')
        {

            if (a.Enabled)
            {
                // Do not use the href property. Instead, submit the form so that HTML form
                // fields are part of the HTTP request.
                <a href="" onclick="<%=fm%>.__act.value='
                <%=a.LinkToPage(p).AsFieldValue%>';<%=fm%>.submit();return false;">
                <%=cap%></a>
            }
            else
            {
                <a><%=cap%></a>
            }
        }
        else
        {
            <%=a.LinkToPage(p).AsFieldLabel%>
        }
    }
}
%>

```

```

        <input type="submit" value="<%= cap%>"
onclick="<%=fm%>.__act.value='<%=a.LinkToPage(p).AsFieldValue%>'">
<%
    }
}
%>

```

Example 22

See also: Adapter type's *HiddenFields*, *HiddenRecordFields*, and *Mode* properties (page B-2)

This example generates an HTML table to update multiple detail records.

```

<%
vItemsAdapter=Modules.DM.ItemsAdapter
vOrdersAdapter=Modules.DM.OrdersAdapter
vOrderNo=vOrdersAdapter.OrderNo
vCustNo=vOrdersAdapter.CustNo
vPrevRow=vOrdersAdapter.PrevRow
vNextRow=vOrdersAdapter.NextRow
vRefreshRow=vOrdersAdapter.RefreshRow
vApply=vOrdersAdapter.Apply
vItemNo=vItemsAdapter.ItemNo
vPartNo=vItemsAdapter.PartNo
vDiscount=vItemsAdapter.Discount
vQty=vItemsAdapter.Qty
%>

<!-- Use two adapters to update multiple detail records.
      The orders adapter is associated with the master dataset.
      The items adapter is associated with the detail dataset.
      Each row in a grid displays values from the items adapter. One
      column display an <input> element for editing Qty. The apply button
      updates the Qty value in each detail record.-->

<!-- Display the order number and customer number values. -->
<h2>OrderNo: <%= vOrderNo.DisplayText %></h2>
<h2>CustNo: <% vCustNo.DisplayText %></h2>

<%
    // Put the items adapter in edit mode because this form updates
    // the Qty field.
    vItemsAdapter.Mode = 'Edit'
%>

<form name="AdapterForm1" method="post">

    <!-- Define a hidden field for submitted the action name and parameters -->
    <input type="hidden" name="__act">

<%
    // Write hidden fields containing state information about the
    // orders adapter and items adapter.

```

JScript Examples

```
if (vOrdersAdapter.HiddenFields != null)
    vOrdersAdapter.HiddenFields.WriteFields(Response)
if (vItemsAdapter.HiddenFields != null)
    vItemsAdapter.HiddenFields.WriteFields(Response)

// Write hidden fields containing state information about the current
// record of the orders adapter.
if (vOrdersAdapter.HiddenRecordFields != null)
    vOrdersAdapter.HiddenRecordFields.WriteFields(Response)%>

<table border="1">
  <tr>
    <th>ItemNo</th>
    <th>PartNo</th>
    <th>Discount</th>
    <th>Qty</th>
  </tr>
<%
  var e = new Enumerator(vItemsAdapter.Records)
  for (; !e.atEnd(); e.moveNext())
  { %>
    <tr>
      <td><%=vItemNo.DisplayText%></td>
      <td><%=vPartNo.DisplayText%></td>
      <td><%=vDiscount.DisplayText%></td>
      <td><input type="text" name="<%=vQty.InputName%>" value="<%= vQty.EditText %>" ></td>
    </tr>
  <%
    // Write hidden fields containing state information about each record of the
    // items adapter. This is needed by the items adapter when updating the Qty field.

    if (vItemsAdapter.HiddenRecordFields != null)
        vItemsAdapter.HiddenRecordFields.WriteFields(Response)
  }
  %>
</table>
<p></p>
<table>
  <td><input type="submit" value="Prev Order"

onclick="AdapterForm1.__act.value='<%=vPrevRow.LinkToPage(Page.Name).AsFieldValue%>'"></td>
  <td><input type="submit" value="Next Order"

onclick="AdapterForm1.__act.value='<%=vNextRow.LinkToPage(Page.Name).AsFieldValue%>'"></td>
  <td><input type="submit" value="Refresh"

onclick="AdapterForm1.__act.value='<%=vRefreshRow.LinkToPage(Page.Name).AsFieldValue%>'"></
td>
  <td><input type="submit" value="Apply"

onclick="AdapterForm1.__act.value='<%=vApply.LinkToPage(Page.Name).AsFieldValue%>'"></
td>
</table>
</form>
```


Index

Symbols

& (ampersand) character 8-33
... (ellipsis) buttons 19-21

Numerics

80x87 coprocessors A-3

A

-a compiler option A-5, A-6
abort function A-10
Abort procedure
 preventing edits 22-20
AbortOnKeyViol
 property 24-51
AbortOnProblem
 property 24-51
About box 57-2
 adding properties 57-4
 adding to ActiveX
 controls 43-5
 executing 57-6
abstract classes 45-3
accelerators 8-33
access
 memory regions A-6
 unions A-4
 volatile objects A-6
access rights
 WebSnap 34-28 to 34-30
Access tables
 local transactions 24-31
Acquire method 11-8
action bands 8-18
 defined 8-17
Action client, defined 8-17
action editor
 adding actions 33-4
 changing actions 33-6
action items 33-3, 33-4, 33-5 to 33-8
 adding 33-4
 caution for changing 33-3
 chaining 33-8
 default 33-5, 33-7
 dispatching 34-38
 enabling and disabling 33-6
 event handlers 33-4
 page producers and 33-15
 responding to requests 33-7

 selecting 33-6, 33-7
Action List editor 8-18
action lists 5-5, 8-17, 8-19, 8-23
 to 8-49
Action Manager 8-18, 8-19, 8-22
 defined 8-17
action requests 34-36
action responses 34-36
actions 8-23 to 8-29
 action classes 8-27
 clients 8-18
 defined 8-17, 8-18
 executing 8-24
 predefined 8-28
 registering 8-28
 target 8-18
 updating 8-26
Actions property 33-4
activation attribute
 shared properties 44-6
Active Documents 38-10, 38-14
 See also IOleDocumentSite
 interface
Active property
 client sockets 37-6
 datasets 22-4
 server sockets 37-7
 sessions 24-17, 24-18
active scripting 34-31
Active Server Object
 wizard 42-2 to 42-3
Active Server Objects 42-1 to 42-8
 creating 42-2 to 42-7
 debugging 42-8
 in-process servers 42-7
 out-of-process servers 42-7
 registering 42-7 to 42-8
Active Server Pages *See* ASP
Active Template Library *See* ATL
ActiveAggs property 27-13
ActiveFlag property 20-19, 20-20
ActiveForms 43-1, 43-6 to 43-7
 as database Web
 applications 29-30
 creating 43-2
 multi-tiered
 applications 29-30
 vs. InternetExpress 29-29

 wizard 43-6 to 43-7
ActiveX 38-13 to 38-14, 43-1
 comparison to ASP 42-7
 interfaces 38-20
 vs. InternetExpress 29-29
 Web applications 38-13, 43-1, 43-16 to 43-18
ActiveX controls 17-5, 38-10, 38-13, 43-1 to 43-18
 adding methods 43-9 to 43-10
 adding properties 43-9 to 43-10
 .cab files 43-17
 component wrappers 40-6, 40-7, 40-8 to 40-9
 _OCX unit 40-4
 creating 43-2, 43-4 to 43-7
 data-aware 40-8 to 40-9, 43-8, 43-11 to 43-13
 debugging 43-16
 designing 43-4
 elements 43-2 to 43-3
 embedding in HTML 33-14
 event handling 43-10 to 43-11
 firing events 43-11
 from VCL controls 43-4 to 43-7
 importing 40-4 to 40-5
 interfaces 43-8 to 43-13
 licensing 43-5, 43-7
 persistent properties 43-13
 property pages 40-7, 43-3, 43-13 to 43-15
 registering 43-15 to 43-16
 threading model 43-5
 type libraries 38-17, 43-3
 using Automation-
 compatible types 43-4, 43-8
 Web applications 38-13, 43-1, 43-16 to 43-18
 Web deployment 43-16 to 43-18
 wizard 43-4 to 43-5
ActiveX page (Component palette) 5-8, 40-5
activities
 transactional objects 44-19 to 44-20
ActnList unit 8-28

- adapter dispatcher
 - requests 34-35
- adapter dispatchers 34-8, 34-9, 34-34
- adapter page producers B-1
- AdapterPageProducer 34-10
- adapters 34-2, 34-5 to 34-6
- Add Fields dialog box 23-4
- Add method
 - menus 8-40
 - persistent columns 19-18
 - strings 4-18
- Add To Repository
 - command 7-24
- AddAlias method 24-24
- AddFieldDef method 22-38
- AddFontResource
 - function 17-14
- AddIndex method 27-8
- AddIndexDef method 22-38
- Additional page (Component palette) 5-7
- AddObject method 4-19
- AddParam method 22-52
- AddPassword method 24-21
- AddRef method 38-4
- Address property,
 - TSocketConnection 29-23
- addresses
 - socket connections 37-3, 37-4
- AddStandardAlias
 - method 24-24
- AddStrings method 4-18, 4-19
- ADO 18-1, 22-2, 25-1, 25-2
 - components 25-1 to 25-19
 - overview 25-1 to 25-2
 - data stores 25-2, 25-3
 - deployment 17-6
 - implicit transactions 25-6
 - providers 25-3
 - resource dispensers 44-6
- ADO commands 25-7, 25-16 to 25-19
 - asynchronous 25-18
 - canceled 25-17 to 25-18
 - executing 25-17
 - iterating over 21-12
 - parameters 25-18 to 25-19
 - retrieving data 25-18
 - specifying 25-17
- ADO connections 25-2 to 25-8
 - asynchronous 25-5
 - connecting to data stores 25-2 to 25-6
 - events 25-7 to 25-8
 - executing commands 25-5
 - timing out 25-5
- ADO datasets 25-8 to 25-16
 - asynchronous fetching 25-11
 - batch updates 25-11 to 25-14
 - connecting 25-9 to 25-10
 - data files 25-14 to 25-15
 - index-based searches 22-27
- ADO objects 25-1
 - Connection object 25-4
 - RDS DataSpace 25-16
 - Recordset 25-8, 25-10
- ADO page (Component palette) 5-7, 18-1, 25-1
- ADT fields 23-22, 23-23 to 23-24
 - displaying 19-22, 23-23
 - flattening 19-22
 - persistent fields 23-24
- ADTG files 25-14
- AfterApplyUpdates
 - event 27-31, 28-8
- AfterCancel event 22-21
- AfterClose event 22-4
- AfterConnect event 21-3, 29-26
- AfterConstruction 13-14
- AfterDelete event 22-19
- AfterDisconnect event 21-4, 29-26
- AfterDispatch event 33-5, 33-8
- AfterEdit event 22-17
- AfterGetRecords event 28-7
- AfterInsert event 22-18
- AfterOpen event 22-4
- AfterPost event 22-20
- AfterScroll event 22-5
- AggFields property 27-13
- aggregate fields 23-6, 27-13
 - defining 23-10
 - displaying 23-10
- Aggregates property 27-11, 27-13
- aggregation
 - client datasets 27-11 to 27-13
 - COM 38-9
- aliases
 - BDE 24-3, 24-14, 24-24 to 24-25
 - creating 24-24 to 24-25
 - deleting 24-25
 - local 24-24
 - specifying 24-13, 24-14 to 24-15
 - Type Library editor 39-10, 39-16
- AliasName property 24-13
- Align property 8-4
 - panels 8-43
 - status bars 9-14
 - text controls 6-7
- alignment A-3
 - bit fields and A-6
 - structure members A-5
 - word A-5, A-6
- Alignment property 9-6
 - column headers 19-20
 - data grids 19-20
 - data-aware memo controls 19-9
 - decision grids 20-12
 - fields 23-11
 - memo and rich edit controls 9-3
 - status bars 9-14
- AllowAllUp property 9-7
 - speed buttons 8-45
 - tool buttons 8-47
- AllowDelete property 19-28
- AllowGrayed property 9-7
- AllowInsert property 19-28
- alTop constant 8-43
- ampersand (&) character 8-33
- analog video 10-32
- ancestor classes 46-3 to 46-4
 - default 46-4
- animation controls 9-17, 10-29 to 10-31
 - example 10-30
- ANSIC
 - date and time formats A-11
 - diagnostics A-1, A-7
 - hyphens, interpreting A-9
 - implementation
 - specifics A-1
 - main function A-2
 - multibyte characters A-2
 - standards,
 - implementing A-1
- ANSI character sets 16-2
- extended A-2
- AnsiString 52-8
- Apache applications 32-7
 - creating 33-1, 34-8
 - debugging 32-10
- Apache DLLs 17-10
 - deployment 17-10
- Apache server DLLs 32-7
 - creating 33-1, 34-8
- apartment threading 41-7 to 41-8
- Append method 22-18, 22-19

- Insert vs. 22-18
- AppendRecord method 22-21
- application adapters 34-9
- application servers 18-13, 29-1, 29-12 to 29-17
 - callbacks 29-17
 - COM-based 29-5, 29-16, 29-20
 - dropping connections 29-26
 - identifying 29-22
 - interface 29-16 to 29-17
 - interfaces 29-27
 - multiple data modules 29-20 to 29-21
 - opening connections 29-26
 - registering 29-11, 29-21
 - remote data modules 7-23
 - writing 29-13
- Application variable 8-2
- applications
 - Apache 32-7, 33-1, 34-8
 - bi-directional 16-4
 - CGI stand-alone 34-8
 - client/server 29-1
 - network protocols 24-15
 - COM 7-19
 - CORBA 31-1 to 31-18
 - creating 8-1
 - cross-platform 14-1 to 14-26
 - database 18-1
 - cross-platform 14-19
 - deploying 17-1
 - files 17-2
 - graphical 45-7, 50-1
 - international 16-1
 - ISAPI 32-6, 32-7, 33-1, 34-8
 - MDI 7-2
 - MTS 7-19
 - multi-threaded 11-1
 - multi-tiered 29-1 to 29-40
 - overview 29-3 to 29-4
 - NSAPI 32-6, 33-1, 34-8
 - porting to Linux 14-2 to 14-19
 - realizing palettes 50-5
 - SDI 7-2
 - service 7-4
 - status information 9-14
 - Web Broker 33-1 to 33-20
 - Web server 7-16, 7-17, 34-7
 - Web-based client
 - applications 29-28 to 29-40
 - Win-CGI stand-alone 34-8
- Apply method 24-45
- ApplyRange method 22-34
- ApplyUpdates method 14-25, 24-32
 - BDE datasets 24-35
 - client datasets 25-12, 27-6, 27-19, 27-20 to 27-21, 28-3
 - providers 27-20, 28-3, 28-8
 - TDatabase 24-34
 - TXMLTransformClient 30-10
- AppNamespacePrefix variable 36-3
- AppServer property 27-32, 28-3, 29-16, 29-27
- Arc method 10-4
- architecture
 - BDE-based applications 24-1 to 24-2
 - CORBA applications 31-1 to 31-4
 - database applications 18-5 to 18-14, 24-1 to 24-2
 - client 29-4
 - server 29-5
 - multi-tiered 29-4, 29-5
 - Web Broker server
 - applications 33-3
- arguments
 - fmod function and A-8
- array fields 23-22, 23-25
 - displaying 19-22, 23-23
 - flattening 19-22
 - persistent fields 23-25
- array of const 13-18
- array properties 13-23
- arrays 47-2, 47-8
 - as function arguments 13-23
 - as properties 13-23
 - as return types 13-23
 - integer types A-5
 - pointers to A-5
 - open 13-17
 - safe 39-12
- ARRAYSIZE macro 13-17
- as operator 13-22
- AS_ApplyUpdates method 28-3
- AS_ATTRIBUTE 36-7
- AS_DataRequest method 28-3
- AS_Execute method 28-3
- AS_GetParams method 28-3
- AS_GetProviderNames method 28-3
- AS_GetRecords method 28-3
- AS_RowRequest method 28-3
- ASCII codes A-2
- ASCII tables 24-5
- ASP 38-13, 42-1 to 42-8
 - comparison to ActiveX 42-7
 - comparison to Web broker 42-1
 - generating pages 42-3
 - HTML documents 42-1
 - performance limitations 42-1
 - scripting language 38-13, 42-3
 - UI design 42-1
- ASP intrinsics 42-3 to 42-6
 - accessing 42-2 to 42-3
- Application object 42-3 to 42-4
 - Request object 42-4
 - Response object 42-5
 - Server object 42-6
 - Session object 42-5 to 42-6
- assembler code 14-18
- assert function A-7
- Assign Local Data command 27-13
- Assign method
 - string lists 4-19
- AssignedValues property 19-21
- assignment operators 13-6
- assignment statements 47-2
- AssignValue method 23-16
- Associate property 9-5
- as-soon-as-possible
 - deactivation 29-7
- ATL 38-22 to 38-23
 - header files 38-22
 - options 41-8
 - tracing calls 41-8, 41-17
- atomicity
 - transactions 18-4, 44-10
- attributes
 - property editors 52-10
- Attributes property
 - parameters 22-45, 22-51
 - TADOConnection 25-6
- audio clips 10-31
- auto_ptr 12-5
- AutoCalcFields property 22-22
- AutoComplete property 29-8
- auto-dispatching
 - components 36-11, 36-15
- AutoDisplay property 19-9, 19-10
- AutoEdit property 19-5
- AutoHotKeys property 8-33
- Automation
 - Active Server Objects 42-2
 - early binding 38-18
 - IDispatch interface 41-13

- interfaces 41-12 to 41-14
- late binding 41-13
- optimizing 38-18
- type compatibility 39-11, 41-14 to 41-15
- type descriptions 38-12
- Automation controllers 38-12, 40-1, 40-12 to 40-15, 41-13
 - creating objects 40-12 to 40-13
 - dispatch interfaces 40-13 to 40-14
 - dual interfaces 40-13
 - events 40-14 to 40-15
 - example 40-10 to 40-12
- Automation objects 38-12
 - See also* COM objects
 - component wrappers 40-7 to 40-8
 - example 40-10 to 40-12
 - wizard 41-4 to 41-8
- Automation servers 38-10, 38-12 to 38-13
 - See also* COM objects
 - accessing objects 41-13
 - type libraries 38-17
- AutoPopup property 8-48
- AutoSelect property 9-3
- AutoSessionName
 - property 24-17, 24-29, 33-17
- AutoSize property 8-4, 9-2, 17-13, 19-8
- averages, decision cubes 20-5
- .avi clips 9-17, 10-29, 10-32
- .avi files 10-32

B

- Background 8-20
- backgrounds 16-9
- backslash characters (\)
 - include files A-7
- Bands property 8-48, 9-8
- base classes
 - constructors 13-11
- base clients 44-2
- base unit 4-27, 4-29
- BaseCLX
 - defined 4-1, 14-5
 - exception classes 12-16
- Basic Object Adapter *See* BOA
- batch files
 - executing A-11
 - Linux 14-13
- batch operations 24-7 to 24-8, 24-47 to 24-51

- appending data 24-48, 24-49
- copying datasets 24-49
- deleting records 24-49
- different databases 24-49
- error handling 24-51
- executing 24-50
- mapping data types 24-49 to 24-50
- modes 24-8, 24-48
- setting up 24-47 to 24-48
- updating data 24-49
- batch updates 25-11 to 25-14
 - applying 25-13 to 25-14
 - canceling 25-14
- BatchMove method 24-7
- BDE
 - resource dispensers 44-6
- BDE Administration
 - utility 24-14, 24-53
- BDE datasets 18-1, 22-2, 24-2 to 24-12
 - applying cached updates 24-35
 - batch operations 24-47 to 24-51
 - copying 24-49
 - databases 24-3 to 24-4
 - decision support components and 20-4
 - local database support 24-5 to 24-7
 - sessions 24-3 to 24-4
 - types 24-2
- BDE page (Component palette) 5-7, 18-1
- BeforeApplyUpdates
 - event 27-30, 28-8
- BeforeCancel event 22-21
- BeforeClose event 22-4
- BeforeConnect event 21-3, 29-26
- BeforeDelete event 22-19
- BeforeDestruction
 - method 13-14
- BeforeDisconnect event 21-4, 29-26
- BeforeDispatch event 33-5, 33-7
- BeforeEdit event 22-17
- BeforeGetRecords event 28-7
- BeforeInsert event 22-18
- BeforeOpen event 22-4
- BeforePost event 22-20
- BeforeScroll event 22-5
- BeforeUpdateRecord
 - event 24-32, 24-39, 27-21, 28-11

- BEGIN_MESSAGE_MAP
 - macro 51-4, 51-7
- BeginAutoDrag method 51-13
- BeginDrag method 6-1
- BeginRead method 11-8
- BeginTrans method 21-6
- BeginWrite method 11-8
- Beveled 9-6
- beveled panels 9-17
- bevels 9-17
- bi-directional applications 16-4
 - methods 16-7
 - properties 16-6
- bi-directional cursors 22-48
- binary streams
 - null characters and A-9
- Bind method
 - TAutoDriver 40-13
- bit fields A-5
 - alignment A-6
 - order of allocation A-5
 - straddling word boundaries A-6
- bitmap buttons 9-7
- bitmap objects 10-3
- bitmaps 9-17, 10-18 to 10-19, 50-4
 - adding scrollable 10-17
 - adding to components 45-14, 52-4
 - associating with strings 4-19, 6-12
 - blank 10-17
 - brushes 10-9
 - brushes property 10-8, 10-9
 - destroying 10-21
 - drawing on 10-18
 - drawing surfaces 50-3
 - draw-item events 6-15
 - graphical controls vs. 54-4
 - in frames 8-15
 - internationalizing 16-10
 - loading 50-4
 - offscreen 50-6
 - replacing 10-20
 - scrolling 10-17
 - setting initial size 10-17
 - temporary 10-17, 10-18
 - toolbars 8-46
 - when they appear in application 10-2
- bitwise operators
 - signed integers and A-4
- BLOB fields 19-2
 - displaying values 19-8, 19-9

- fetch on demand 28-5
- getting values 24-4
- viewing graphics 19-9
- BLOBs 19-8, 19-9
 - caching 24-4
- blocking connections 37-9, 37-10
 - event handling 37-9
- BlockMode property 37-9, 37-10
- bmBlocking 37-10
- BMPDlg unit 10-21
- bmThreadBlocking 37-9, 37-10
- BOA 31-2, 31-4, 31-5
 - BOA_init 31-7
 - initializing 31-13
 - obj_is_ready method 31-8
 - thread conflicts 31-11
- Bof property 22-6, 22-8
- Bookmark property 22-9
- bookmarks 22-9 to 22-10
 - filtering records 25-10 to 25-11
 - support by dataset types 22-9
- BookmarkValid method 22-9
- Boolean fields 19-2, 19-13
- Boolean values 47-2, 47-12, 56-4
- borders
 - panels 9-12
- BorderWidth property 9-12
- Borland Database Engine 7-15, 18-1, 22-2, 24-1
 - aliases 24-3, 24-14, 24-16, 24-24 to 24-25
 - availability 24-25
 - creating 24-24 to 24-25
 - deleting 24-25
 - heterogeneous queries 24-9
 - specifying 24-13, 24-14 to 24-15
- API calls 24-1, 24-4
- batch operations 24-47 to 24-51
- cached updates 24-31 to 24-47
 - update errors 24-37
- closing connections 24-19
- connecting to
 - databases 24-12 to 24-16
- datasets 24-2
- default connection
 - properties 24-18
- deploying 17-8
- driver names 24-14

- drivers 24-1, 24-14
- heterogeneous queries 24-9 to 24-10
- implicit transactions 24-29
- license requirements 17-15
- managing connections 24-19 to 24-21
- ODBC drivers 24-16
- opening database connections 24-19
- retrieving data 22-47, 24-2, 24-10
- sessions 24-16
- table types 24-5
- utilities 24-53
- Web applications 17-10
- BorlandIDEServices
 - variable 58-8, 58-23
- bounding rectangles 10-11
- BoundsChanged method 51-14
- .bpi files 15-2, 15-13
- .bpk files 15-2, 15-6, 15-8
- .bpl files 15-1, 15-13, 17-3
- briefcase model 18-14
- Broadcast method 51-8
- brokering connections 29-25
- Brush property 9-17, 10-4, 10-8, 50-3
- BrushCopy method 50-3, 50-6
- brushes 10-8 to 10-9, 54-6
 - bitmap property 10-9
 - changing 54-8
 - colors 10-8
 - styles 10-8
- buffered files A-9
- building packages 15-10 to 15-12
- business rules 29-2, 29-13
 - ASP 42-1
 - transactional objects 44-2
- business-to-business communication 35-1
- ButtonAutoSize property 20-10
- buttons 9-6 to 9-8
 - adding to toolbars 8-43 to 8-45, 8-46
 - assigning glyphs to 8-44
 - disabling on toolbars 8-46
 - navigator 19-28
 - toolbars and 8-42
- ButtonStyle property
 - data grids 19-20, 19-21
- ByteType 4-21

C

- C++ exception handling 12-1
- C++ object models 13-1
- C++ vs Object Pascal
 - assignment 13-6
 - bool types 13-19
 - calling virtual methods 13-10, 13-14
 - constructors 13-21
 - copy constructors 13-7
 - copying objects 13-6
 - differences 13-15, 13-19
 - function arguments 13-7, 13-19, 13-23
 - initialization of classes 13-12
 - language counterparts 13-16
 - object construction 13-7
 - object destruction 13-13
 - pass by reference 13-16
 - references 13-5
 - RTTI 13-22
 - untyped parameters 13-16
- CacheBlobs property 24-4
- cached updates 27-15 to 27-24
 - ADO 25-11 to 25-14
 - applying 25-13 to 25-14
 - canceling 25-14
- BDE 24-31 to 24-47
 - applying 24-11, 24-33 to 24-37
 - multiple tables 24-39, 24-43
 - error handling 24-37 to 24-38
 - updating read-only datasets 24-11
- client datasets 18-10 to 18-14, 27-16, 27-19 to 27-24
 - applying 24-11, 27-20 to 27-21
 - multiple tables 24-39, 24-43
 - transactions 21-6
 - update errors 27-22 to 27-24, 28-11
 - updating read-only datasets 24-11
- master/detail
 - relationships 27-18
- overview 27-16 to 27-17
- providers 28-8
- update objects 27-18
- CachedUpdates property 14-25, 24-32

I-6 Developer's Guide

- Clear method
 - fields 23-16
 - string lists 4-19
- ClearSelection method 6-9
- click events 10-24, 10-25, 48-1, 48-2, 48-7
- Click method 48-2, 51-13
 - overriding 48-6, 55-12
- client applications
 - architecture 29-4
 - as Web server
 - applications 29-28
 - COM 38-3, 38-9, 40-1 to 40-16
 - CORBA 31-2, 31-13 to 31-16
 - creating 29-21 to 29-28, 40-1 to 40-16
 - interfaces 37-2
 - multi-tiered 29-2, 29-4
 - network protocols 24-15
 - sockets and 37-1
 - supplying queries 28-6
 - thin 29-2, 29-29
 - transactional objects 44-2
 - type libraries 39-13, 40-2 to 40-6
 - user interfaces 29-1
 - Web Services 36-16 to 36-17
- client connections 37-2, 37-3
 - accepting requests 37-7
 - opening 37-6
 - port numbers 37-5
- client datasets 27-1 to 27-34, 29-3
 - aggregating data 27-11 to 27-13
 - applying updates 27-20 to 27-21
 - calculated fields 27-10 to 27-11
 - connecting to other
 - datasets 18-10 to 18-14, 27-24 to 27-31
 - constraints 27-6 to 27-7, 27-29
 - disabling 27-29
 - copying data 27-13 to 27-15
 - creating tables 27-32
 - deleting indexes 27-9
 - deploying 17-6
 - editing 27-5
 - file-based applications 27-32 to 27-34
 - filtering records 27-2 to 27-5
 - grouping data 27-9 to 27-10
 - index-based searches 22-27
 - indexes 27-7 to 27-10
 - adding 27-8
 - limiting records 27-28
 - loading files 27-33
 - merging changes 27-33
 - merging data 27-14
 - navigation 27-2
 - parameters 27-26 to 27-28
 - providers and 27-24 to 27-31
 - refreshing records 27-30
 - resolving update
 - errors 27-20, 27-22 to 27-24
 - saving changes 27-6
 - saving files 27-34
 - sharing data 27-14
 - specifying providers 27-24 to 27-25
 - supplying queries 27-31 to 27-32
 - switching indexes 27-9
 - types 27-17 to 27-18
 - undoing changes 27-5
 - updating records 27-19 to 27-24
 - with internal source
 - dataset 27-21
 - with unidirectional
 - datasets 26-10
- client requests 32-5 to 32-6, 33-8
- client sockets 37-3, 37-6 to 37-7
 - assigning hosts 37-4
 - connecting to servers 37-8
 - error messages 37-8
 - event handling 37-8
 - identifying servers 37-6
 - properties 37-6
 - requesting services 37-6
 - socket objects 37-6
- client/server applications 7-15
- clients *See* client applications
- Clipboard 6-8, 6-9, 19-9
 - clearing selection 6-9
 - formats
 - adding 52-15, 52-18
 - graphics and 10-21 to 10-23
 - graphics objects 10-3, 19-9
 - testing contents 6-10
 - testing for images 10-23
- Clipbrd unit 6-8, 10-21
- clock function A-11
- CloneCursor method 27-14
- Close method
 - connection components 21-4
 - database connections 24-19
 - datasets 22-4
 - sessions 24-18
- CloseDatabase method 24-19
- CloseDataSets method 21-12
- __closure keyword 13-24
- closures 48-2, 48-8
- CLSIDs 38-5, 38-6, 38-16, 40-5
 - license package file 43-7
- CLX
 - defined 3-1
 - object construction 14-11
 - signals 51-10 to 51-12
 - system events 51-12 to 51-15
 - system notifications 51-10 to 51-15
 - units 14-9 to 14-11
 - VCL vs. 14-5 to 14-7
- CLX applications
 - creating 14-1 to 14-2
 - database applications 14-19 to 14-25
 - deploying 17-6
 - Internet applications 14-25 to 14-26
 - overview 14-1
 - porting to Linux 14-2 to 14-19
- clx60.bpl 17-6
- CM_EXIT message 56-12
- CMExit method 56-12
- CoClasses 38-6
 - ActiveX controls 43-4
 - CLSIDs 38-6
 - component wrappers 40-1, 40-3
 - _OCX unit 40-2
 - limitations 40-2
 - creating 38-6, 39-12, 40-5, 40-12 to 40-13
 - declarations 40-5
 - naming 41-3, 41-4
 - Type Library editor 39-9, 39-15 to 39-16
 - updating 39-14
- code 49-3
 - porting to Linux 14-15 to 14-19
 - templates 7-3
- Code editor 2-3
 - displaying 52-17
 - event handlers and 5-4
 - overview 2-3
- Code Insight
 - templates 7-3
- code pages 16-2

- COInit flags 41-8
- ColCount property 19-28
- collation sequence A-2
- color depths 17-12
 - programming for 17-13
- color grids 10-6
- Color property 9-4, 9-17
 - brushes 10-8
 - column headers 19-20
 - data grids 19-20
 - decision grids 20-12
 - pens 10-5, 10-6
- ColorChanged method 51-14
- colors
 - internationalization and 16-9
 - pens 10-6
- Cols property 9-15
- column headers 9-13, 19-17, 19-20
- columns 9-15
 - decision grids 20-11
 - default state 19-15, 19-21
 - deleting 19-16
 - including in HTML tables 33-19
 - persistent 19-15, 19-17
 - creating 19-17 to 19-21
 - deleting 19-18, 19-19
 - inserting 19-18
 - reordering 19-19
 - properties 19-17, 19-19 to 19-20
 - resetting 19-21
- Columns editor
 - creating persistent columns 19-17
 - deleting columns 19-18
 - reordering columns 19-19
- Columns property 9-9, 19-18
 - grids 19-15
 - radio groups 9-12
- ColWidths property 6-14, 9-15
- COM 7-19
 - aggregation 38-9
 - applications 38-2 to 38-10, 38-19
 - distributed 7-19
 - clients 38-3, 38-9, 39-13, 40-1 to 40-16
 - containers 38-10, 40-1
 - controllers 38-10, 40-1
 - CORBA vs. 31-1
 - definition 38-1 to 38-2
 - early binding 38-17
 - extensions 38-2, 38-10 to 38-12
 - overview 38-1 to 38-23
 - proxy 38-7, 38-8
 - specification 38-1
 - stubs 38-8
 - wizards 38-19 to 38-23, 41-1
- COM interfaces 38-3 to 38-4, 41-3
 - adding to type libraries 39-13
 - Automation 41-12 to 41-14
 - dispatch identifiers 41-13
 - dual interfaces 41-12 to 41-13
 - implementing 38-6, 38-23
 - interface pointer 38-4
 - IUnknown 38-4
 - marshaling 38-8 to 38-9
 - modifying 39-14 to 39-15, 41-9 to 41-11
 - optimizing 38-18
 - properties 39-8
 - type information 38-16
- COM library 38-2
- COM objects 38-3, 38-5 to 38-9, 41-1 to 41-17
 - aggregating 38-9
 - component wrappers 40-1, 40-2, 40-3, 40-4, 40-6 to 40-12
 - creating 41-1 to 41-16
 - debugging 41-8, 41-17
 - designing 41-2
 - interfaces 38-3, 41-9 to 41-14
 - registering 41-16
 - threading models 41-5 to 41-8
 - wizard 41-2 to 41-4, 41-5 to 41-8
- COM servers 38-3, 38-5 to 38-9, 41-1 to 41-17
 - designing 41-2
 - in-process 38-6
 - instanting 41-8
 - optimizing 38-18
 - out-of-process 38-7
 - remote 38-7
 - threading models 41-6, 41-8
- COM+ 7-19, 29-6, 38-10, 38-14, 44-1
 - See also* transactional objects
 - applications 44-6, 44-27
 - call synchronization 44-20
 - Component Manager 44-28
 - configuring activities 44-20
 - event objects 44-22 to 44-23
 - event subscriber objects 44-23
 - events 40-15, 44-20 to 44-24
 - in-process servers 38-7
 - interface pointers 38-5
 - MTS vs. 44-2
 - object pooling 44-9
 - transactional objects 38-14 to 38-15
 - transactions 29-17
- combo boxes 9-10, 14-7, 19-2, 19-11
 - data-aware 19-10 to 19-12
 - lookup 19-20
 - owner-draw 6-11
 - measure-item events 6-14
- COMCTL32.DLL 8-43
- command objects 25-16 to 25-19
 - iterating over 21-12
- Command Text editor 22-43
- CommandCount
 - property 21-12, 25-7
- Commands property 21-12, 25-7
- commands, action lists 8-18
- CommandText property 22-43, 25-15, 25-16, 25-17, 25-18, 26-6, 26-7, 27-31
- CommandTimeout
 - property 25-5, 25-18
- CommandType property 25-15, 25-16, 25-17, 26-5, 26-6, 26-7, 27-31
- comments
 - ANSI compliant A-2
- Commit method 21-8
- CommitTrans method 21-8
- CommitUpdates method 14-25, 24-32, 24-35
- common dialog boxes 8-15, 57-1
 - creating 57-2
 - executing 57-5
- Common Object Request Broker Architecture *See* CORBA
- communications 37-1
 - protocols 24-15, 32-3, 37-2
 - UDP vs. TCP 31-3
 - standards 32-3
 - OMG 31-1
- CompareBookmarks
 - method 22-9
- compiler directives
 - libraries 7-10
 - Linux applications 14-16

- packages 15-11
- compiler options 7-3
 - alignment A-6
- compiling code 2-4
- compliance A-1
- component editors 52-15 to 52-18
 - default 52-15
 - registering 52-18
- component interfaces
 - creating 57-3
 - properties, declaring 57-4
- component libraries
 - adding components 45-19
- Component palette 5-6
 - ActiveX page 5-8, 40-5
 - adding components 15-6, 52-1, 52-4
 - Additional page 5-7
 - ADO page 5-7, 18-1, 25-1
 - BDE page 5-7, 18-1
 - Data Access page 5-7, 18-2, 29-2
 - Data Controls page 18-15, 19-1, 19-2
 - DataSnap page 5-7, 29-2, 29-5, 29-6
 - dbExpress page 5-7, 18-2, 26-2
 - Decision Cube page 18-15, 20-1
 - Dialogs page 5-8
 - FastNet page 5-8
 - frames 8-14
 - Indy Clients page 5-8
 - Indy Misc page 5-8
 - Indy Servers page 5-8
 - installing components 45-18
 - InterBase page 5-7, 18-2
 - Internet page 5-7
 - InternetExpress page 5-7
 - moving components 45-19
 - pages listed 5-7
 - QReport page 5-8
 - Samples page 5-8
 - Servers page 5-8
 - specifying page 45-14
 - Standard page 5-7
 - System page 5-7
 - WebServices page 29-2
 - Win 3.1 page 5-8
 - Win32 page 5-7
- component templates 8-12, 46-2
 - and frames 8-14, 8-15
- Component wizard 45-9
- component wrappers 45-4, 57-2
 - ActiveX controls 40-4, 40-7, 40-8 to 40-9
 - Automation objects 40-7 to 40-8
 - example 40-10 to 40-12
 - COM objects 40-1, 40-2, 40-3, 40-6 to 40-12
 - initializing 57-3
- components 45-1, 46-1, 47-3
 - abstract 45-3
 - adding to Component Palette 52-1
 - adding to existing unit 45-12
 - adding to units 45-12
 - bitmaps 45-14
 - changing 53-1 to 53-4
 - context menus 52-15, 52-16 to 52-17
 - creating 45-2, 45-8
 - custom 5-8
 - customizing 45-3, 47-1, 48-1
 - data-aware 56-1
 - data-browsing 56-1 to 56-7
 - data-editing 56-8 to 56-12
 - dependencies 45-5
 - derived classes 45-3, 45-12, 54-3
 - double-click 52-15, 52-17
 - grouping 9-11 to 9-13
 - initializing 47-13, 54-7, 56-7
 - installing 5-8, 15-5 to 15-6, 45-18, 52-19
 - interfaces 46-4, 46-6, 57-1
 - design-time 46-7
 - runtime 46-7
 - moving 45-19
 - nonvisual 45-5, 45-12, 57-3
 - online help 52-4
 - packages 15-8, 52-19
 - palette bitmaps 52-4
 - problems installing 52-19
 - registering 45-13
 - registration 52-2
 - resizing 9-6
 - responding to events 48-5, 48-7, 48-8, 56-7
 - standard 5-6 to 5-8
 - testing 45-16, 45-18, 57-6 to 57-7
- ComputerName property 29-23
- ConfigMode property 24-25
- configuration files
 - Linux 14-13
- connected line segments 10-10
- Connected property 21-3
 - connection components 21-3
- ConnectEvents method 40-14
- connection components
 - database 18-7 to 18-9, 21-1 to 21-14, 24-3
 - accessing metadata 21-13 to 21-14
 - ADO 25-2 to 25-8
 - BDE 24-12 to 24-16
 - binding 24-13 to 24-15, 25-2 to 25-4, 26-3 to 26-5
 - dbExpress 26-2 to 26-5
 - executing SQL commands 21-10 to 21-11, 25-5
 - implicit 21-2, 24-3, 24-13, 24-19, 25-3
 - in remote data modules 29-6
 - statements per connection 26-3
- DataSnap 18-14, 29-3, 29-4 to 29-5, 29-21, 29-22 to 29-28
 - dropping connections 29-26
 - managing connections 29-26
 - opening connections 29-26
 - protocols 29-9 to 29-11, 29-22
- Connection Editor 26-5
- connection names 26-4 to 26-5
 - changing 26-5
 - defining 26-5
 - deleting 26-5
- connection parameters 24-14 to 24-15
 - ADO 25-3 to 25-4
 - dbExpress 26-4, 26-5
 - login information 21-4, 25-4
- Connection Points map 41-11
- Connection property 25-3, 25-9
- Connection String Editor 25-4
- ConnectionBroker 27-25
- ConnectionName property 26-4
- ConnectionObject property 25-4
- connections
 - client 37-3
 - database 21-2 to 21-5
 - asynchronous 25-5
 - closing 24-19
 - limiting 29-8
 - managing 24-19 to 24-21

- naming 26-4 to 26-5
 - network protocols 24-15
 - opening 24-18, 24-19
 - persistent 24-18
 - pooling 29-7
 - temporary 24-20
- database servers 21-3, 24-15
- DCOM 29-9, 29-23
- dropping 29-26
- HTTP 29-10 to 29-11, 29-24
- opening 29-26, 37-6
- protocols 29-9 to 29-11, 29-22
- SOAP 29-11, 29-25
- TCP/IP 29-9 to 29-10, 29-23, 37-2 to 37-3
- terminating 37-7
- ConnectionString
 - property 21-2, 21-4, 25-3, 25-9
- ConnectionTimeout
 - property 25-5
- ConnectOptions property 25-5
- consistency
 - transactions 18-4, 44-10
- console applications 7-4
 - CGI 32-7
 - VCL and 7-4
- Console Wizard 7-4
- constants
 - assigning sequential values 10-12
 - character A-6
 - values A-4
 - wide A-4
 - naming 10-12
 - null pointer A-7
 - wide character A-4
- CONSTRAINT constraint 28-12
- ConstraintErrorMessage
 - property 23-11, 23-21, 23-22
- constraints
 - controls 8-4
 - data 23-21 to 23-22
 - client datasets 27-6 to 27-7, 27-29
 - creating 23-21
 - disabling 27-29
 - importing 23-21 to 23-22, 27-29, 28-12, 28-13
- Constraints property 8-4, 27-7, 28-13
- constructors 12-6, 12-15, 45-16, 47-12, 49-3, 55-4, 56-7
 - base class 13-8, 13-12
 - C++ vs Object Pascal 13-21
 - copy 13-7
- cross-platform
 - applications 14-12
 - declaring 45-13
 - multiple 8-8
 - overriding 53-3
 - owned objects and 54-6, 54-7
- contacting Borland 1-3
- contained objects 38-9
- Contains list (packages) 15-6, 15-7, 15-8, 15-10, 52-19
- Content method
 - page producers 33-14
- content producers 33-4, 33-13
- event handling 33-15, 33-16
- Content property
 - Web response objects 33-12
- ContentFromStream method
 - page producers 33-14
- ContentFromString method
 - page producers 33-14
- ContentStream property
 - Web response objects 33-12
- context IDs 7-30
- context menus
 - adding items 52-16 to 52-17
 - Menu designer 8-37
 - toolbars 8-48
- context numbers (Help) 9-15
- ContextHelp 7-34
- contravariance 13-24
- controls
 - as ActiveX control
 - implementation 43-3
 - changing 45-3
 - custom 45-4
 - data-aware 19-1 to 19-31
 - data-browsing 56-1 to 56-7
 - data-editing 56-8 to 56-12
 - displaying data 19-4, 23-17
 - generating ActiveX
 - controls 43-2, 43-4 to 43-7
 - graphical 50-3, 54-1 to 54-11
 - creating 45-4, 54-3
 - drawing 54-3 to 54-5, 54-9 to 54-11
 - events 50-7
 - grouping 9-11 to 9-13
 - owner-draw 6-11, 6-13
 - declaring 6-12
 - palettes and 50-5
 - receiving focus 45-4
 - repainting 54-8, 54-10, 55-4, 55-5
 - resizing 50-6, 55-4
 - shape 54-8
- windowed 45-3
- ControlType property 20-9, 20-15
- conversions
 - data types A-4
 - floating-point A-4
 - integers A-4, A-5
 - wide character
 - constants A-4
 - field values 23-16, 23-17 to 23-19
 - floating-point A-4
 - integers A-4, A-5
 - pointers to integers A-5
 - rounding rules A-4
 - values not represented A-4
- Convert function 4-26, 4-28, 4-29, 4-32
- converting measurements
 - classes 4-30 to 4-32
 - complex conversions 4-28
 - conversion factor 4-30
 - conversion families 4-26
 - example creating 4-27
 - registering 4-27
 - currency 4-30
 - utilities 4-25 to 4-32
- ConvUtils unit 4-25
- cool bars 8-42, 8-43, 9-8
 - adding 8-47 to 8-48
 - configuring 8-48
 - designing 8-42 to 8-49
 - hiding 8-49
- coordinates
 - current drawing
 - position 10-25
- Copy (Object Repository) 7-25
- copy constructors 13-7
- CopyFile function 4-9
- CopyFrom
 - TStream 4-3
- copying
 - bitmapped images 50-6
 - objects 13-6
- CopyMode property 50-3
- CopyRect method 10-4, 50-3, 50-6
- CopyToClipboard method 6-9
 - data-aware memo
 - controls 19-9
 - graphics 19-9
- CORBA 31-1 to 31-18
 - accepting client
 - requests 31-6, 31-8

- automatically generated
 - code 31-9
- COM vs. 31-1
- delegation model 31-8 to 31-9
- IDL files 31-5
- implementing objects 31-6, 31-9 to 31-12
- instantiating objects 31-7
- overview 31-1 to 31-4
- standards 31-1 to 31-18
- testing 31-16 to 31-18
- threads 31-11 to 31-12
- VCL and 31-8, 31-13
- CORBA applications
 - clients 31-13 to 31-16
 - overview 31-1 to 31-4
 - servers 31-4 to 31-13
 - using the VCL 31-8, 31-13
- CORBA Client wizard 31-13
- CORBA Object wizard 31-6 to 31-7, 31-13
- CORBA objects
 - binding 31-15
 - defining interfaces 31-5 to 31-12
 - generic 31-15
- CORBA Server wizard 31-5
- Count property
 - string lists 4-18
 - TSessionList 24-28
- CP32MT.lib RTL library 12-18
- cp32mti.lib import library 12-18
- .cpp files 15-2, 15-13
- Create Data Set command 22-38
- Create Submenu command (Menu designer) 8-34, 8-37
- CREATE TABLE 21-11
- Create Table command 22-38
- CreateDataSet method 22-38
- CreateObject method 42-3
- CreateParam method 27-27
- CreateSharedPropertyGroup 44-6
- CreateSuspended
 - parameter 11-11
- CreateTable method 22-38
- CreateTransactionContextEx
 - example 44-13 to 44-14
- creating a Web page
 - module 34-18
- creator classes
 - CoClasses 40-5, 40-12
- creators 58-3, 58-14 to 58-18
- critical sections 11-8

- warning about use 11-8, 11-9
- cross-platform
 - applications 14-1 to 14-26
 - actions 8-19
 - creating 14-1
 - database 14-19 to 14-25
 - Internet 14-25 to 14-26
 - multi-tiered 29-11
 - porting to Linux 14-2 to 14-19
- crosstabs 20-2 to 20-3, 20-10
 - defined 20-2
 - multidimensional 20-3
 - one-dimensional 20-2
 - summary values 20-2, 20-3
- ctrl.dcu 17-6
- currency
 - conversion example 4-30
 - formats 16-9
 - internationalizing 16-9
- Currency property
 - fields 23-11
- CursorChanged method 51-14
- cursors 22-5
 - bi-directional 22-48
 - cloning 27-14
 - linking 22-35, 26-11 to 26-12
 - moving 22-6, 22-7, 22-28, 22-29
 - to first row 22-6, 22-8
 - to last row 22-6, 22-7
 - with conditions 22-10
 - synchronizing 22-40
 - unidirectional 22-48
- CursorType property 25-12
- CurValue property 28-11
- custom components 5-8
- custom controls 45-4
 - libraries 45-4
- Custom property 29-38
- CustomConstraint
 - property 23-11, 23-21, 27-7
- customizing components 47-1
- CutToClipboard method 6-9
 - data-aware memo
 - controls 19-9
 - graphics 19-9
- cw32mt.lib RTL library 12-18
- cw32mti.lib import
 - library 12-18

D

- D linker option 15-12
- data
 - accessing 56-1

- analyzing 18-15, 20-2
- changing 22-17 to 22-22
- default values 19-10, 23-20
- displaying 23-17, 23-17
 - current values 19-8
 - disabling repaints 19-6
 - in grids 19-15, 19-27
- display-only 19-8
- entering 22-18
- formats,
 - internationalizing 16-9
- graphing 18-15
- printing 18-16
- reporting 18-16
- synchronizing forms 19-4
- data access
 - components 7-15, 18-1
 - threads 11-4
 - cross-platform 17-7, 18-2
 - mechanisms 7-15 to 7-16, 18-1 to 18-2, 22-2
- Data Access page (Component palette) 5-7, 18-2, 29-2
- data binding 43-11
- Data Bindings editor 40-8
- data brokers 27-25, 29-1
- data compression
 - TSocketConnection 29-24
- data constraints *See* constraints
- data context
 - Web Service
 - applications 36-8
- Data Controls page (Component palette) 5-7, 18-15, 19-1, 19-2
- Data Definition
 - Language 21-10, 22-42, 24-8, 26-10
- Data Dictionary 23-12 to 23-14, 24-51 to 24-52, 29-3
 - constraints 28-13
- data fields 23-6
 - defining 23-6 to 23-7
- data filters 22-12 to 22-16
 - blank fields 22-14
 - client datasets 27-3 to 27-5
 - using parameters 27-28
 - defining 22-13 to 22-15
 - enabling/disabling 22-13
 - operators 22-14
 - queries vs. 22-13
 - setting at runtime 22-15
 - using bookmarks 25-10 to 25-11
- data formats, default 23-14

- data grids 19-2, 19-14, 19-15 to 19-27
 - customizing 19-16 to 19-21
 - default state 19-15
 - displaying data 19-15, 19-16, 19-27
 - ADT fields 19-22
 - array fields 19-22
 - drawing 19-25 to 19-26
 - editing data 19-6, 19-25
 - events 19-26 to 19-27
 - getting values 19-17
 - inserting columns 19-18
 - properties 19-28
 - removing columns 19-16, 19-18, 19-19
 - reordering columns 19-19
 - restoring default state 19-21
 - runtime options 19-24 to 19-25
- data integrity 18-5, 28-12
- data links 56-5 to 56-7
 - initializing 56-7
- Data Manipulation Language 21-10, 22-42, 24-8
- data members 3-2
 - initializing 13-12
 - message structures 51-5
 - naming 48-2
- data modules 18-6
 - accessing from forms 7-23
 - creating 7-20
 - database components 24-16
 - editing 7-20
 - remote vs. standard 7-20
 - sessions 24-17
 - Web 34-2, 34-3, 34-4 to 34-5
 - Web applications and 33-2
 - Web Broker
 - applications 33-4
- data packets 30-4
 - application-defined
 - information 27-15, 28-6
 - controlling fields 28-4
 - converting to XML
 - documents 30-1 to 30-8
 - copying 27-13 to 27-15
 - editing 28-7
 - ensuring unique
 - records 28-4
 - fetching 27-25 to 27-26, 28-7
 - including field
 - properties 28-5
 - limiting client edits 28-5
- mapping to XML documents 30-2
- read-only 28-5
- refreshing updated records 28-6
- XML 29-29, 29-31, 29-34
 - editing 29-35
 - fetching 29-34 to 29-35
- Data property 27-5, 27-14, 27-15, 27-33
- data sources 18-6, 19-3 to 19-5
 - disabling 19-4
 - enabling 19-4
 - events 19-4
- data stores 25-2
- data types
 - persistent fields 23-6
- data-aware controls 18-15, 19-1 to 19-31, 23-17, 56-1
 - associating with
 - datasets 19-3 to 19-4
 - common features 19-2
 - creating 56-1 to 56-13
 - data-browsing 56-1 to 56-7
 - data-editing 56-8 to 56-12
 - destroying 56-7
 - disabling repaints 19-6, 22-8
 - displaying data 19-6 to 19-7
 - current values 19-8
 - in grids 19-15, 19-27
 - displaying graphics 19-9
 - editing 19-5 to 19-6, 22-17
 - entering data 23-14
 - grids 19-14
 - inserting records 22-18
 - list 19-2
 - read-only 19-8
 - refreshing data 19-6
 - representing fields 19-7
 - responding to changes 56-7
- database applications 7-15, 18-1
- architecture 18-5 to 18-14, 29-28
- cross-platform 14-19
- deployment 17-6
- distributed 7-16
- file-based 18-9 to 18-10, 25-14 to 25-15, 27-32 to 27-34
- multi-tiered 29-3 to 29-4
- porting 14-22
- scaling 18-11
- XML and 30-1 to 30-10
- database components 7-15, 24-3, 24-12 to 24-16
- applying cached updates 24-34
- identifying databases 24-13 to 24-15
- sessions and 24-12 to 24-13, 24-20 to 24-21
- shared 24-16
- temporary 24-19
 - dropping 24-20
- database connections 21-2 to 21-5
 - dropping 21-3, 21-3 to 21-4
 - limiting 29-8
 - maintaining 21-3
 - persistent 24-18
 - pooling 29-7, 44-6
- Database Desktop 24-53
- database drivers
 - BDE 24-1, 24-3, 24-14
 - dbExpress 26-3
- database engines
 - third-party 17-7
- Database Explorer 24-14, 24-53
- database management systems 29-1
- database navigator 19-2, 19-28 to 19-31, 22-5, 22-6
 - buttons 19-28
 - deleting data 22-20
 - editing 22-17
 - enabling/disabling
 - buttons 19-29
 - help hints 19-30
- Database parameter 26-4
- Database Properties editor 24-14
 - viewing connection
 - parameters 24-15
- database servers 7-15, 21-3, 24-15
 - connecting 18-7 to 18-9
 - constraints 23-21, 23-21 to 23-22, 28-12
 - describing 21-2
 - types 18-2
- DatabaseCount property 24-21
- DatabaseName property 21-2, 24-3, 24-14
 - heterogenous queries 24-9
- databases 7-15, 18-1 to 18-5, 56-1
 - access properties 56-6 to 56-7
 - accessing 22-1
 - adding data 22-21
 - aliases and 24-14

- choosing 18-3
- connecting 21-1 to 21-14
- file-based 18-3
- generating HTML
 - responses 33-17 to 33-20
- identifying 24-13 to 24-15
- implicit connections 21-2
- logging in 18-4, 21-4 to 21-5
- naming 24-14
- relational 18-1
- security 18-3 to 18-4
- transactions 18-4 to 18-5
- types 18-2
- unauthorized access 21-4
- Web applications and 33-17
- Databases property 24-21
- DataChange method 56-11
- DataCLX
 - defined 14-5
- data-entry validation 23-15
- DataField property 19-11, 56-6
 - lookup list and combo boxes 19-12
- DataRequest method 27-31, 28-3
- dataset fields 23-22, 23-25 to 23-26
 - displaying 19-24
 - persistent 22-36
- dataset page producers 33-18
 - converting field values 33-18
- DataSet property
 - data grids 19-16
 - providers 28-2
- dataset providers 18-11
- DataSetCount property 21-12
- DataSetField property 22-37
- datasets 18-7, 22-1 to 22-53
 - adding records 22-18 to 22-19, 22-21
 - ADO-based 25-8 to 25-16
 - BDE-based 24-2 to 24-12
 - categories 22-23 to 22-24
 - changing data 22-17 to 22-22
 - closing 22-4 to 22-5
 - posting records 22-20
 - without disconnecting 21-12
 - creating 22-37 to 22-39
 - current row 22-5
 - cursors 22-5
 - custom 22-2
 - decision components and 20-4 to 20-6
 - deleting records 22-19 to 22-20
 - editing 22-17 to 22-18
 - fields 22-1
 - filtering records 22-12 to 22-16
 - HTML documents 33-19, 33-20
 - iterating over 21-12
 - marking records 22-9 to 22-10
 - modes 22-3 to 22-4
 - navigating 19-28, 22-5 to 22-8, 22-16
 - opening 22-4
 - posting records 22-20
 - providers and 28-2
 - queries 22-23, 22-41 to 22-48
 - read-only, updating 24-11
 - searching 22-10 to 22-12
 - extending a search 22-29
 - multiple columns 22-11, 22-12
 - partial keys 22-29
 - using indexes 22-11, 22-12, 22-27 to 22-30
 - states 22-3 to 22-4
 - stored procedures 22-24, 22-48 to 22-53
 - tables 22-23, 22-25 to 22-41
 - undoing changes 22-21
 - unidirectional 26-1 to 26-18
 - unindexed 22-21
- DataSets property 21-12
- DataSnap page (Component palette) 5-7, 29-2, 29-5, 29-6
- DataSource property
 - ActiveX controls 40-8
 - data grids 19-16
 - data navigators 19-30
 - data-aware controls 56-6
 - lookup list and combo boxes 19-12
 - queries 22-46
- DataType property
 - parameters 22-44, 22-45, 22-51
- date fields
 - formatting 23-14
- date formats A-11
- __DATE__ macro
 - availability A-7
- dates
 - calendar components 9-11
 - entering 9-11
 - internationalizing 16-9
 - local A-11
 - setting A-7
- DateTimePicker
 - component 9-11
- Day property 55-6
- DB/2 driver
 - deploying 17-9
- dBASE tables 24-5
 - accessing data 24-9
 - adding records 22-19
 - DatabaseName 24-3
 - indexes 24-6
 - local transactions 24-31
 - password protection 24-21 to 24-23
 - renaming 24-7
- DBChart component 18-15
- DBCheckBox component 19-2, 19-13
- DBComboBox component 19-2, 19-10 to 19-11
- DBConnection property 27-16
- DBCtrlGrid component 19-2, 19-27 to 19-28
 - properties 19-28
- DBEdit component 19-2, 19-8
- dbExpress 17-7, 18-2, 26-1 to 26-2
 - components 26-1 to 26-18
 - cross-platform applications 14-19 to 14-24
 - debugging 26-17 to 26-18
 - deploying 26-1
 - drivers 26-3
 - metadata 26-12 to 26-16
- dbExpress applications 17-10
- dbExpress page (Component palette) 5-7, 18-2, 26-2
- dbGo 25-1
- DBGrid component 19-2, 19-15 to 19-27
 - events 19-26
 - properties 19-20
- DBGridColumn
 - component 19-15
- DBImage component 19-2, 19-9 to 19-10
- DblClick method 51-13
- DBListBox component 19-2, 19-10 to 19-11
- DBLogDlg unit 21-4
- DBLookupComboBox
 - component 19-2, 19-11 to 19-12

- DBLookupListBox
 - component 19-2, 19-11 to 19-12
- DBMemo component 19-2, 19-8 to 19-9
- DBMS 29-1
- DBNavigator component 19-2, 19-28 to 19-31
- DBRadioGroup
 - component 19-2, 19-13 to 19-14
- DBRichEdit component 19-2, 19-9
- DBSession property 24-3
- DBText component 19-2, 19-8
- dbxconnections.ini 26-4, 26-5
- dbxdrivers.ini 26-3
- DCOM 38-7, 38-8
 - connecting to application server 27-25, 29-23
 - distributing applications 7-19
 - InternetExpress applications 29-33
 - multi-tiered applications 29-9
- DCOM connections 29-9, 29-23
- DCOMCnfg.exe 29-33
- .dcr files 52-4
 - bitmaps 45-14
- DDL 21-10, 22-42, 22-47, 24-8, 26-10
- debugging
 - Active Server Objects 42-8
 - ActiveX controls 43-16
 - code 2-4
 - COM objects 41-8, 41-17
 - CORBA 31-16 to 31-18
 - dbExpress applications 26-17 to 26-18
 - service applications 7-9
 - transactional objects 44-26
 - Web server applications 32-9 to 32-11, 33-2, 34-8
 - wizards 58-11
- decimal points A-7
- Decision Cube Editor 20-7 to 20-8
 - Cube Capacity 20-19
 - Dimension Settings 20-8
 - Memory Control 20-8
- Decision Cube page (Component palette) 18-15, 20-1
- decision cubes 20-7 to 20-8
- design options 20-8
- dimension maps 20-5, 20-7, 20-8, 20-19, 20-20
- dimensions
 - opening/closing 20-9
 - paged 20-20
- displaying data 20-9, 20-11
- drilling down 20-5, 20-9, 20-11, 20-20
- getting data 20-4
- memory management 20-8
- pivoting 20-5, 20-9
- properties 20-7
- refreshing 20-7
- subtotals 20-5
- decision datasets 20-4 to 20-6
- decision graphs 20-13 to 20-18
 - customizing 20-15 to 20-18
 - data series 20-17 to 20-18
 - dimensions 20-14
 - display options 20-15
 - graph types 20-16
 - pivot states 20-9
 - runtime behaviors 20-19
 - templates 20-16
- decision grids 20-10 to 20-13
 - dimensions
 - drilling down 20-11
 - opening/closing 20-11
 - reordering 20-11
 - selecting 20-12
 - events 20-12
 - pivot states 20-9, 20-11
 - properties 20-12
 - runtime behaviors 20-18
- decision pivots 20-9 to 20-10
 - dimension buttons 20-10
 - orientation 20-10
 - properties 20-10
 - runtime behaviors 20-18
- decision queries, defining 20-6
- Decision Query editor 20-6
- decision sources 20-9
 - events 20-9
 - properties 20-9
- decision support
 - components 18-15, 20-1 to 20-20
 - adding 20-3 to 20-4
 - assigning data 20-4 to 20-6
 - design options 20-8
 - memory management 20-19
 - runtime 20-18 to 20-19
- declarations
 - classes 46-10, 54-6
 - interfaces 13-2
 - private 46-4
 - protected 46-6
 - public 46-7
 - published 46-7
 - event handlers 48-5, 48-8, 55-13
 - message handlers 51-5, 51-6, 51-8
 - methods 10-15, 46-9, 49-4
 - public 49-3
 - new component types 46-3
 - properties 47-3, 47-3 to 47-7, 47-12, 48-8, 54-4
 - user-defined types 54-4
- declarators
 - nesting A-6
 - number of A-6
- __declspec 13-2
- __declspec(delphirtti) 36-2
- __declspec keyword 7-12, 13-28
- DECnet protocol (Digital) 37-1
- default
 - ancestor class 46-4
 - handlers
 - events 48-9
 - message 51-3
 - overriding 48-9
 - keyword 47-7
 - parameters 13-21
 - project options 7-3
 - property values 47-7
 - changing 53-3, 53-4
 - specifying 47-11 to 47-12
 - values 19-10
- Default checkbox 7-3
- Default property
 - action items 33-7
- DEFAULT_ORDER index 27-7
- DefaultColWidth property 9-15
- DefaultDatabase property 25-4
- DefaultDrawing property 6-12, 19-26
- DefaultExpression
 - property 23-20, 27-7
- DefaultHandler method 51-3
- DefaultPage property 34-39
- DefaultRowHeight
 - property 9-15
- delegation 48-1
- Delete command (Menu designer) 8-37
- Delete method 22-19
 - string lists 4-19

- DELETE statements 24-39, 24-42, 28-9
- Delete Table command 22-40
- Delete Templates command (Menu designer) 8-37, 8-39
- Delete Templates dialog box 8-39
- DeleteAlias method 24-25
- DeleteFile function 4-7
- DeleteFontResource function 17-14
- DeleteIndex method 27-9
- DeleteRecords method 22-40
- DeleteSQL property 24-39
- DeleteTable method 22-40
- delphiclass argument 13-28
- DelphiInterface class 13-3, 13-20, 58-8
- delphireturn argument 13-28
- delta packets 28-8, 28-9
 - editing 28-8, 28-9
 - screening updates 28-11
 - XML 29-34, 29-35 to 29-36
- Delta property 27-5, 27-19
- DEPLOY document 17-8, 17-9, 17-15
- deploying
 - ActiveX controls 17-5
 - applications 17-1
 - Borland Database Engine 17-8
 - CLX applications 17-6
 - database applications 17-6
 - dbExpress 26-1
 - DLL files 17-5
 - fonts 17-14
 - general applications 17-1
 - IDE extensions 58-7, 58-22 to 58-24
 - MIDAS applications 17-10
 - package files 17-3
 - SQL Links 17-9
 - Web applications 17-10
- deploying applications
 - packages 15-13
- dereferenced pointers 13-6
- descendant classes 46-3 to 46-4
- design-time interfaces 46-7
- design-time packages 15-1, 15-5 to 15-6
- destination datasets, defined 24-47
- destructors 12-6, 49-3, 56-7
 - owned objects and 54-6, 54-7
- VCL implications 13-13, 13-13 to 13-14
- developer support 1-3
- device contexts 10-1, 10-2, 45-7, 50-1
- device-independent graphics 50-1
- devices, interactive A-2
- DeviceType property 10-31
- .dfm files 14-2, 16-10, 47-10
 - generating 16-12
- diacritical marks 16-9
- diagnostic messages (ANSI) A-1
- dialog boxes 57-1 to 57-7
 - common 8-15
 - creating 57-1
 - DLL example of 7-13
 - internationalizing 16-8, 16-10
 - multipage 9-13
 - property editors as 52-9
 - setting initial state 57-1
 - Windows common 57-1
 - creating 57-2
 - executing 57-5
- Dialogs page (Component palette) 5-8
- digital audio tapes 10-32
- Dll 31-14, 31-15
 - Interface Repository 31-12
- DimensionMap property 20-5, 20-7
- Dimensions property 20-12
- Direction property
 - parameters 22-45, 22-51
- directives
 - #ifdef 14-16
 - #ifndef 14-17
 - \$LIBPREFIX compiler 7-10
 - \$LIBSUFFIX compiler 7-10
 - \$LIBVERSION compiler 7-10
 - conditional
 - compilation 14-16
 - Linux 14-17
 - protected 48-5
 - published 47-3, 57-4
- directories
 - include files and A-7
 - Linux and 14-15
- Directory directive 17-11
- directory service 31-3
- DirtyRead 21-9
- DisableCommit method 44-13
- DisableConstraints
 - method 27-29
- DisableControls method 19-6
- DisabledImages property 8-46
- disconnected model 18-14
- DisconnectEvents method 40-14
- dispatch actions 34-9
- dispatch interfaces 41-12, 41-13
 - calling methods 40-13 to 40-14
 - identifiers 41-13
 - type compatibility 41-14
 - type libraries 39-9
- Dispatch method 51-3, 51-5
- dispatcher 33-2, 33-4 to 33-5, 34-34
 - auto-dispatching
 - objects 33-5
 - DLL-based applications and 33-3
 - handling requests 33-8
 - selecting action items 33-6, 33-7
- dispatchers 34-38
- dispatching requests
 - WebSnap 34-33
- dispIDs 38-16, 40-13, 41-13
 - binding to 41-14
- dispinterfaces 41-12, 41-13
 - dynamic binding 39-9
 - type libraries 39-9
- DisplayFormat property 19-25, 23-11, 23-15
- DisplayLabel property 19-17, 23-11
- DisplayWidth property 19-16, 23-11
- distributed applications
 - CORBA 31-1 to 31-18
 - database 7-16
 - MTS and COM+ 7-19
- distributed COM 38-7, 38-8
- distributed data processing 29-2
- distributed objects
 - CORBA *See* CORBA objects
- division
 - sign of remainder A-5
- dllexport 7-11, 7-12
- DllGetClassObject 44-3
- dllimport 7-11
- DllRegisterServer 44-3
- DLLs 7-12
 - Apache 17-10
 - COM servers 38-6
 - threading models 41-6

- creating 7-10, 7-11
- deployment 17-10
- embedding in HTML 33-14
- HTTP servers 32-6
- installing 17-5
- internationalizing 16-11, 16-12
- linking 7-15
- Linux *See* .so files
- MTS 44-2
- packages 15-1, 15-2, 15-11
- DML 21-10, 22-42, 22-47, 24-8
- .dmt files 8-38, 8-39
- docking 6-4
- docking site 6-5
- Document Literal style 36-1
- DocumentElement
 - property 35-4
- DoExit method 56-13
- DOM 35-2, 35-2 to 35-3
 - implementations 35-2
 - using 35-3
- domain errors A-8
- DoMouseWheel method 51-13
- double-clicks
 - components 52-15
 - responding to 52-17
- Down property 9-7
 - speed buttons 8-44
- .dpl files 15-2
- drag cursors 6-2
- drag object 6-3
- drag-and-dock 6-4 to 6-6
- drag-and-drop 6-1 to 6-4
 - customizing 6-3
 - DLLs 6-4
 - events 54-3
 - getting state information 6-3
 - mouse pointer 6-4
- DragMode property 6-1
 - grids 19-19
- DragOver method 51-14
- draw grids 9-15
- Draw method 10-4, 50-3, 50-6
- drawing modes 10-29
- drawing tools 50-1, 50-7, 54-6
 - assigning as default 8-45
 - changing 10-13, 54-8
 - handling multiple in an application 10-12
 - testing for 10-12
- DrawShape 10-15
- drill-down forms 19-14
- printf unit 24-52
- driver names 24-14

- DriverName property 24-14, 26-3
- DropConnections
 - method 24-13, 24-20
- drop-down lists 19-20
- drop-down menus 8-34
- DropDownCount
 - property 9-10, 19-11
- DropDownMenu property 8-48
- DropDownRows property
 - data grids 19-20, 19-21
 - lookup combo boxes 19-12
- dual interfaces 41-12 to 41-13
- Active Server Objects 42-3
 - calling methods 40-13
 - parameters 41-15
 - transactional objects 44-3, 44-18
 - type compatibility 41-14
- durability
 - resource dispensers 44-5
 - transactions 18-4, 44-10
- dynamic argument 13-29
- dynamic array types 36-4
- dynamic binding 31-14
 - CORBA 31-4, 31-15
 - DII 31-4
- dynamic columns 19-16
 - properties 19-16
- dynamic fields 23-2 to 23-3
- dynamic invocation interface
 - See* DII
- dynamic linking 7-11, 7-12

E

- early binding
 - Automation 38-18, 41-12
 - COM 38-17
- EBX register 14-8, 14-19
- edit controls 6-6, 9-1 to 9-3, 19-2, 19-8
 - multi-line 19-8
 - rich edit formats 19-9
 - selecting text 6-8
- Edit method 22-17, 52-9, 52-10
- edit mode 22-17
 - canceled 22-17
- EditFormat property 19-25, 23-11, 23-15
- editing code 2-2, 2-3
- editing script 34-32
- EditKey method 22-27, 22-29
- EditMask property 23-14
 - fields 23-11
- editors
 - Tools API 58-3, 58-12 to 58-14
- EditRangeEnd method 22-33
- EditRangeStart method 22-33
- Ellipse method 10-4, 10-11, 50-3
- ellipses
 - drawing 10-11, 54-10
- ellipsis (...)
 - buttons in grids 19-21
- Embed HTML tag
 - (<EMBED>) 33-14
- EmptyDataSet method 22-40, 27-26
- EmptyTable method 22-40
- EnableCommit method 44-13
- EnableConstraints
 - method 27-29
- EnableControls method 19-6
- Enabled property
 - action items 33-6
 - data sources 19-4, 19-5
 - data-aware controls 19-7
 - menus 6-9, 8-41
 - speed buttons 8-44
- EnabledChanged method 51-14
- encryption,
 - TSocketConnection 29-24
- end user adapters 34-9, 34-25
- END_MESSAGE_MAP
 - macro 51-4, 51-7
- endpoints
 - socket connections 37-5
- EndRead method 11-8
- EndWrite method 11-8
- enumerated types 47-2, 54-4
 - constants vs. 10-12
 - declaring 10-12, 10-13
 - Type Library editor 39-9 to 39-10, 39-16
 - Web Services 36-6
- enumerations A-6
- environments A-11
- EOF marker 4-4
- Eof property 22-6, 22-7
- era, clock function and A-11
- EReadError 4-2
- ERemotableException 36-14, 36-15
- error messages A-7, A-10, A-11
 - internationalizing 16-10
- errors
 - domain A-8
 - sockets 37-8
 - underflow range A-8

- ul style="list-style-type: none;">
- escape sequences
 - source files A-7
- Euro conversions 4-30, 4-32
- event handlers 5-3 to 5-6, 45-6, 48-2, 48-8, 56-7
 - associating with events 5-4
 - declarations 48-5, 48-8, 55-13
 - default, overriding 48-9
 - defined 5-3
 - deleting 5-6
 - displaying the Code editor 52-17
 - drawing lines 10-26
 - empty 48-8
 - locating 5-4
 - menu templates and 8-40
 - menus 5-5 to 5-6, 6-10
 - methods 48-4, 48-5
 - overriding 48-5
 - parameters 48-7, 48-9
 - notification events 48-7
 - passing parameters by reference 48-9
 - responding to button clicks 10-13
 - return type 48-3
 - Sender parameter 5-5
 - shared 5-4 to 5-6, 10-15
 - types 48-3, 48-7 to 48-8
 - writing 5-4
- event objects 11-10
- event sinks 41-11
 - defining 40-14
- EventFilter method
 - system events 51-14
- events 5-3 to 5-6, 45-6, 48-1 to 48-9
 - accessing 48-5
 - ActiveX controls 43-10 to 43-11
 - ADO connections 25-7 to 25-8
 - application-level 8-2
 - associating with handlers 5-4
 - Automation
 - controllers 40-10, 40-14 to 40-15
 - Automation objects 41-5
 - COM 41-10, 41-11
 - COM objects 41-3, 41-10 to 41-11
 - COM+ 40-15, 44-20 to 44-24
 - data grids 19-26 to 19-27
 - data sources 19-4
 - data-aware controls
 - enabling 19-7
 - default 5-4
 - defining new 48-6 to 48-9
 - field objects 23-15 to 23-16
 - firing 43-11
 - graphical controls 50-7
 - implementing 48-2, 48-4
 - inherited 48-4
 - interfaces 41-10
 - login 21-5
 - message handling 51-4, 51-6
 - mouse 10-24 to 10-26
 - testing for 10-26
 - naming 48-8
 - providing help 52-4
 - responding to 48-5, 48-7, 48-8, 56-7
 - shared 5-5
 - signalling 11-10
 - standard 48-4
 - system 3-3
 - timeout 11-11
 - types 3-3
 - user 3-3
 - VCL component
 - wrappers 40-2
 - waiting for 11-10
 - XML brokers 29-35
- EWriteError 4-2
- __except keyword 12-7, 12-8
- Exception
 - defined 3-5
- Exception class 12-17
- exception handling 12-1 to 12-18
 - C++ syntax 12-1
 - catch statement 12-3
 - compiler options 12-14
 - constructors and destructors 12-6
 - exception specification 12-4
 - filters 12-8
 - helper functions 12-7
 - safe pointers 12-5
 - structured exceptions 12-6
 - example 12-11
 - syntax 12-7
 - throw statement 12-2
 - try block 12-2
 - VCL 12-15
- __except keyword 12-10
- exceptions 49-2, 51-3
 - bit format 12-12
 - constructors 13-13
 - definition 12-1
 - Linux 14-14
 - raising 4-2
 - reraising 4-2
 - threads 11-6
- exclusive locks
 - tables 24-6
- Exclusive property 24-6
- ExecProc method 22-53, 26-10
- ExecSQL method 22-47, 26-10
 - update objects 24-45
- executable files
 - COM servers 38-7
 - internationalizing 16-11, 16-12
 - on Linux 14-14
- Execute method
 - ADO commands 25-17, 25-19
 - client datasets 27-27, 28-3
 - connection
 - components 21-10 to 21-11
 - dialogs 8-15, 57-5
 - providers 28-3
 - TBatchMove 24-50
 - threads 11-4
- ExecuteOptions property 25-11
- ExecuteTarget method 8-28
- EXISTINGARRAY macro 13-17, 13-19
- exit functions A-10
- Expandable property 19-23
- Expanded property
 - columns 19-22, 19-23
 - data grids 19-20
- exported functions 7-11, 7-12
- Expression property 27-11
- ExprText property 23-10
- extended character sets A-2
- ## F
-
- factory 34-5
 - FastNet page (Component palette) 5-8
 - features
 - non-portable Windows 14-7
 - Fetch Params command 27-27
 - FetchAll method 14-25, 24-32
 - FetchBlobs method 27-26, 28-3
 - FetchDetails method 27-26, 28-3
 - fetch-on-demand 27-26
 - FetchOnDemand
 - property 27-26
 - FetchParams method 27-27, 28-3

- fgetpos function A-10
- field attributes 23-12 to 23-14
 - assigning 23-13
 - in data packets 28-5
 - removing 23-14
- field datalink class 56-11
- field definitions 22-38
- Field Link designer 22-35
- field objects 23-1 to 23-27
 - accessing values 23-19 to 23-20
 - defining 23-5 to 23-10
 - deleting 23-10
 - display and edit
 - properties 23-11
 - dynamic 23-2 to 23-3
 - vs. persistent 23-2
 - events 23-15 to 23-16
 - persistent 23-3 to 23-16
 - vs. dynamic 23-2
 - properties 23-1, 23-10 to 23-15
 - runtime 23-12
 - sharing 23-12
- field types
 - converting 23-16, 23-17 to 23-19
- FieldAddress method 13-22
- FieldByName method 22-31, 23-20
- FieldCount property
 - persistent fields 19-17
- FieldDefs property 22-38
- FieldKind property 23-11
- FieldName property 23-5, 23-11, 29-38
 - data grids 19-20, 19-21
 - decision grids 20-12
 - persistent fields 19-17
- fields 23-1 to 23-27
 - abstract data types 23-22 to 23-27
 - activating 23-16
 - adding to forms 10-26 to 10-27
 - assigning values 22-22
 - changing values 19-5
 - databases 56-6, 56-7
 - default formats 23-14
 - default values 23-20
 - displaying values 19-11, 23-17
 - entering data 22-18, 23-14
 - hidden 28-5
 - limiting valid data 23-21 to 23-22
 - listing 21-13
 - message records 51-7
 - mutually-exclusive
 - options 19-2
 - null values 22-21
 - persistent columns
 - and 19-17
 - properties 23-1
 - read-only 19-5
 - retrieving data 23-17
 - updating values 19-5
- Fields editor 7-23, 23-3
 - applying field
 - attributes 23-13
 - creating persistent
 - fields 23-4 to 23-5, 23-5 to 23-10
 - defining attribute sets 23-13
 - deleting persistent
 - fields 23-10
 - list of fields 23-4
 - navigation buttons 23-4
 - removing attribute sets 23-14
 - reordering columns 19-19
 - title bar 23-4
- Fields property 23-19
- FieldValues property 23-19
- file lists
 - dragging items 6-2, 6-3
 - dropping items 6-3
- file names
 - changing A-9
 - searching for A-7
- file permissions
 - Linux 14-14
- file streams
 - changing the size of 4-4
 - creating 4-6
 - end of marker 4-4
 - exceptions 4-2
 - file I/O 4-5 to 4-7
 - getting a handle 4-9
 - opening 4-6
 - portable 4-5
- FileAge function 4-9
- file-based applications 18-9 to 18-10
 - client datasets 27-32 to 27-34
- FileExists function 4-7
- FileGetDate function 4-9
- FileName property
 - client datasets 18-9, 27-33, 27-34
- file-position indicator A-9
- files 4-4 to 4-12
 - appending A-9
 - buffering A-9
 - copying 4-9
 - date-time routines 4-9
 - deleting 4-7
 - finding 4-7
 - form 14-2
 - graphics 10-19 to 10-21, 50-4
 - handles 4-5, 4-6
 - manipulating 4-7 to 4-9
 - modes 4-6
 - opening
 - abort function and A-10
 - multiple times A-9
 - remove function and A-9
 - position 4-4
 - renaming 4-9, A-9
 - resource 8-42
 - routines
 - date-time routines 4-9
 - runtime library 4-7
 - Windows API 4-5
 - seeking 4-4
 - sending over the Web 33-12
 - size 4-4
 - temporary A-10
 - truncation while writing
 - to A-9
 - working with 4-4 to 4-12
 - zero-length A-9
- files streams 4-5 to 4-7
- FileSetDate function 4-9
- fill patterns 10-8
- FillRect method 10-4, 50-3
- Filter property 22-13, 22-14 to 22-15
- Filtered property 22-13
- FilterGroup property 25-12, 25-13
- FilterOnBookmarks
 - method 25-10
- FilterOptions property 22-15
- filters 22-12 to 22-16
 - blank fields 22-14
 - case sensitivity 22-15
 - client datasets 27-3 to 27-5
 - using parameters 27-28
 - comparing strings 22-15
 - defining 22-13 to 22-15
 - enabling/disabling 22-13
 - exception handling 12-8
 - operators 22-14
 - options for text fields 22-15

- queries vs. 22-13
- ranges vs. 22-30
- setting at runtime 22-15
- using bookmarks 25-10 to 25-11
- `__finally` keyword 12-7, 12-13
- `FindClose` procedure 4-7
- `FindDatabase` method 24-20
- `FindFirst` function 4-7
- `FindFirst` method 22-16
- `FindKey` method 22-27, 22-29
 - `EditKey` vs. 22-29
- `FindLast` method 22-16
- `FindNearest` method 22-27, 22-29
- `FindNext` function 4-7
- `FindNext` method 22-16
- `FindPrior` method 22-16
- `FindResourceHInstance`
 - function 16-11
- `FindSession` method 24-28
- `Fire` 43-11
- `FireOnChanged` 43-12
- `FireOnRequestEdit` 43-12
- `First Impression` 17-5
- `First` method 22-6
- `FixedColor` property 9-15
- `FixedCols` property 9-15
- `FixedOrder` property 8-48, 9-8
- `FixedRows` property 9-15
- `FixedSize` property 9-8
- flags 56-4
- `FlipChildren` method 16-7
- floating-point values A-4
 - decimal point character A-7
 - format specifiers A-3
- `FloodFill` method 10-4, 50-3
- fly-by help 9-15
- fly-over help 19-30
- `fmod` function A-8
- focus 45-4
 - fields 23-16
 - moving 9-5
- `FocusControl` method 23-16
- `FocusControl` property 9-4
- Font property 9-2, 9-4, 10-4, 50-3
 - column headers 19-20
 - data grids 19-20
 - data-aware memo
 - controls 19-9
- `FontChanged` method 51-14
- fonts 17-14
 - height of 10-5
- Footer property 33-19

- FOREIGN KEY constraint 28-13
- foreign translations 16-1
- form files 3-7, 14-2, 16-12
- form linking 8-3
- form wizards 58-3
- Format property 20-12
- formats A-11
- formatting data
 - international
 - applications 16-9
- forms 8-1
 - adding fields to 10-26 to 10-27
 - adding to projects 8-1 to 8-4
 - adding unit references 8-3
 - as components 57-1
 - creating at runtime 8-6
 - displaying 8-5
 - drill down 19-14
 - global variable for 8-5
 - linking 8-3
 - main 8-2
 - master/detail tables 19-14
 - memory management 8-5
 - modal 8-5
 - modeless 8-5, 8-6
 - passing arguments to 8-7 to 8-8
 - querying properties
 - example 8-8
 - referencing 8-3
 - retrieving data from 8-8 to 8-11
 - sharing event handlers 10-15
 - synchronizing data 19-4
 - using local variables to create 8-7
- Forms unit
 - Web applications and 33-3
- Formula One 17-5
- Found property 22-16
- FoxPro tables
 - local transactions 24-31
- `fprintf` function A-9
- `FrameRect` method 10-4
- frames 8-12, 8-13 to 8-15
 - and component
 - templates 8-14, 8-15
 - graphics 8-15
 - resources 8-15
 - sharing and
 - distributing 8-15
- `FReadOnly` 56-9
- free threading 41-6 to 41-7
- `FreeBookmark` method 22-10

- free-threaded marshaler 41-7
- `FromCommon` 4-30
- `fscanf` function A-9
- `ftell` function A-10
- functions 45-6
 - arguments 13-7
 - C++ vs Object Pascal 13-23
 - graphics 50-1
 - math A-8
 - naming 49-2
 - property settings 52-11
 - reading properties 47-6, 52-9, 52-10
 - return type 49-2
 - virtual 13-12
 - Windows API 45-3, 50-1

G

- GDI applications 45-7, 50-1
- Generate event support
 - code 41-10
- geometric shapes
 - drawing 54-10
- `GetAliasDriverName`
 - method 24-26
- `GetAliasNames` method 24-26
- `GetAliasParams` method 24-26
- `GetAttributes` method 52-10
- `GetBookmark` method 22-9
- `GetConfigParams`
 - method 24-26
- `GetData` method
 - fields 23-16
- `GetDatabaseNames`
 - method 24-26
- `GetDriverNames` method 24-26
- `GetDriverParams` method 24-26
- `getenv` function A-11
- `GetExceptionCode`
 - function 12-7
- `GetExceptionInformation`
 - function 12-7, 12-8
- `GetFieldByName` method 33-9
- `GetFieldNames` method 21-13, 24-26
- `GetFloatValue` method 52-9
- `GetGroupState` method 27-10
- `GetHandle` 7-29
- `GetHelpFile` 7-29
- `GetHelpStrings` 7-29
- `GetIDsOfNames` method 40-13, 41-13
- `GetIndexNames` method 21-14, 22-26
- `GetInterface` method 13-4

- GetMethodValue method 52-9
- GetNextPacket method 14-25, 24-32, 27-25, 27-26, 28-3
- GetOptionalParam method 27-15, 28-6
- GetOrdValue method 52-9
- GetPalette method 50-5
- GetParams method 28-3
- GetPassword method 24-22
- GetProcAddress 7-11
- GetProcedureNames method 21-14
- GetProcedureParams method 21-14
- GetProperties method 52-10
- GetRecords method 28-3, 28-7
- GetSessionNames method 24-29
- GetStoredProcNames method 24-26
- GetStrValue method 52-9
- GetTableNames method 21-13, 24-26
- GetValue method 52-9
- GetVersionEx function 17-14
- GetViewerName 7-28
- GetXML method 30-10
- Gi linker option 15-12
- Gl linker option 15-12
- Global Offset Table (GOT) 14-18
- global routines 4-1
- Glyph property 8-44, 9-7
- GNU assembler
 - Linux 14-16
- GNU make utility
 - Linux 14-14
- GotoBookmark method 22-9
- GotoCurrent method 22-40
- GotoKey method 22-28
- GotoNearest method 22-28
- Gpd linker option 15-12
- Gpr linker option 15-12
- Graph Custom Control 17-5
- Graphic property 10-18, 10-21, 50-4
- graphical controls 45-4, 50-3, 54-1 to 54-11
 - bitmaps vs. 54-4
 - creating 45-4, 54-3
 - drawing 54-3 to 54-5, 54-9 to 54-11
 - events 50-7
 - saving system resources 45-4
- graphics 45-7, 50-1 to 50-7
 - adding controls 10-17
 - adding to HTML 33-14
 - associating with strings 4-19
 - changing images 10-20
 - complex 50-6
 - containers 50-4
 - copying 10-22
 - deleting 10-22
 - displaying 9-16
 - drawing lines 10-5, 10-10 to 10-11, 10-27 to 10-29
 - changing pen width 10-6
 - event handlers 10-26
 - drawing tools 50-1, 50-7, 54-6
 - changing 54-8
 - drawing vs. painting 10-4, 10-22
 - file formats 10-3
 - files 10-19 to 10-21
 - functions, calling 50-1
 - in frames 8-15
 - internationalizing 16-9
 - loading 10-19, 50-4
 - methods 50-3, 50-4
 - copying images 50-6
 - palettes 50-5
 - owner-draw controls 6-11
 - pasting 10-22
 - programming overview 10-1 to 10-3
 - redrawing images 50-7
 - replacing 10-20
 - resizing 10-20, 19-10, 50-6
 - rubber banding
 - example 10-23 to 10-29
 - saving 10-20, 50-4
 - standalone 50-3
 - storing 50-4
 - types of objects 10-3
- graphics boxes 19-2
- graphics methods 50-6
 - palettes 50-5
- graphics objects
 - threads 11-5
- GridLineWidth property 9-15
- grids 9-15, 19-2, 55-1, 55-3, 55-6, 55-12
 - adding rows 22-18
 - color 10-6
 - customizing 19-16 to 19-21
 - data-aware 19-14, 19-27
 - default state 19-15
 - displaying data 19-15, 19-16, 19-27
- drawing 19-25 to 19-26
- editing data 19-6, 19-25
- getting values 19-17
- inserting columns 19-18
- removing columns 19-16, 19-18, 19-19
- reordering columns 19-19
- restoring default state 19-21
- runtime options 19-24 to 19-25
- group boxes 9-12
- Grouped property
 - tool buttons 8-47
- GroupIndex property 9-7
 - menus 8-41
 - speed buttons 8-44, 8-45
- grouping components 9-11 to 9-13
- grouping levels 27-9
 - maintained aggregates 27-12
- GroupLayout property 20-10
- Groups property 20-10
- GUI applications 8-1
- GUIDs 38-3, 39-8, 40-5

H

- .h files 15-2, 15-13
- Handle property 4-7, 37-7, 45-3, 45-4, 45-5, 50-3
 - device context 10-1, 10-2
- HANDLE_MSG macro 51-2
- HandleException method 51-3
- handles
 - resource modules 16-11
 - socket connections 37-7
- HandleShared property 24-16
- HandlesTarget method 8-28
- HasConstraints property 23-11
- HasFormat method 6-10, 10-23
- header controls 9-13
- Header property 33-19
- headers
 - HTTP requests 32-4
 - owner-draw 6-11
- Height property 8-4
 - list boxes 19-11
- Help 52-4
 - context sensitive 9-15
 - hints 9-15
 - tool-tip 9-15
 - type information 39-8
- Help hints 19-30
- Help Manager 7-26, 7-27 to 7-36
- Help selectors 7-32, 7-35
- Help systems 7-26, 52-4

- files 52-4
- interfaces 7-27
- keywords 52-5
- registering objects 7-32
- tool buttons 8-48
- Help viewers 7-26
- HelpContext 7-34
- HelpContext property 7-33, 9-15
- helper objects 4-1
- HelpFile property 7-34, 9-15
- HelpIntfs unit 7-27
- HelpKeyword 7-34
- HelpKeyword property 7-33
- HelpSystem 7-34
- HelpType 7-33, 7-34
- heterogeneous queries 24-9 to 24-10
 - Local SQL 24-9
- hidden fields 28-5
- hidesbase argument 13-29
- Hiding unused items and categories in action bands 8-22
- hierarchy (classes) 46-3
- Hint property 9-15
- hints 9-15
- Hints property 19-30
- holder classes 36-6
- HookEvents method 51-11
- horizontal track bars 9-5
- HorzScrollBar 9-4
- host names 37-4
 - IP addresses vs. 37-4
- Host property
 - TSocketConnection 29-23
- hosts 29-23, 37-4
 - addresses 37-4
 - URLs 32-3
- hot keys 9-5
- HotImages property 8-46
- HotKey property 9-5
- HTML commands 33-13
 - database information 33-18
 - generating 33-14
- HTML documents 32-5
 - ASP and 42-1
 - databases and 33-17
 - dataset page producers 33-18
 - datasets 33-19, 33-20
 - embedded ActiveX controls 43-1
 - embedding tables 33-19
 - generated for ActiveForms 43-6

- HTTP response messages 32-6
- InternetExpress applications 29-31
- page producers 33-13 to 33-17
- style sheets 29-38
- table producers 33-18 to 33-20
- templates 29-36, 29-38 to 29-40, 33-13 to 33-15
- HTML forms 29-37
- HTML Result tab 34-2
- HTML Script tab 34-2
- HTML tables 33-14, 33-19
 - captions 33-19
 - creating 33-18 to 33-20
 - setting properties 33-19
- HTML templates 29-38 to 29-40, 33-13 to 33-17, 34-4
 - default 29-36, 29-38
- HTMLDoc property 29-36, 33-14
- HTMLFile property 33-14
- HTML-transparent tags
 - converting 33-13, 33-15
 - parameters 33-13
 - predefined 29-39, 33-14
 - syntax 33-13
- HTTP 32-3
 - connecting to application server 29-24
 - message headers 32-3
 - multi-tiered applications 29-10 to 29-11
 - overview 32-5 to 32-6
 - request headers 32-4, 33-9, 42-4
 - request messages *See* request messages
 - response headers 33-12, 42-5
 - response messages *See* response messages
 - SOAP 36-1
 - status codes 33-11
- HTTP requests
 - images 34-37
- HTTP responses
 - actions 34-36
 - images 34-37
- httpd.conf 17-11
- httpsrvr.dll 29-10, 29-13, 29-24
- HyperHelp viewer 7-26
- hypertext links
 - adding to HTML 33-14

- IApplicationObject interface 42-3
- IAppServer interface 27-30, 27-32, 28-3 to 28-4, 29-4, 29-5
 - calling 29-27
 - extending 29-16
 - local providers 28-3
 - remote providers 28-3
 - state information 29-19
 - transactions 29-18
 - XML brokers 29-32
- IAppServerSOAP interface 29-5, 29-25
- IConnectionPoint interface 40-14, 41-11
- IConnectionPointContainer interface 40-14, 41-11
- IConnectionPointContainerImpl implementation 41-11
- icons 9-17, 50-4
 - adding to components 45-14
 - adding to menus 8-21
 - graphics object 10-3
 - toolbars 8-46
 - tree views 9-10
- ICustomHelpViewer 7-26, 7-27, 7-28, 7-29
 - implementing 7-28
- IDataIntercept interface 29-24
- IDE
 - adding actions 58-9 to 58-10
 - adding images 58-9
 - customizing 58-1
 - deleting buttons 58-10 to 58-11
- identifiers
 - See also* GUIDs
 - case sensitivity A-3
 - constants 10-12
 - data members 48-2
 - events 48-8
 - external A-3
 - invalid 8-31
 - length A-2
 - message-record types 51-7
 - methods 49-2
 - property settings 47-6
 - resources 52-4
 - significant characters in A-2
 - types 10-12
- ideographic characters 16-3
 - abbreviations and 16-8

- IDispatch interface 38-8, 38-19, 41-12, 41-13
 - Automation 38-12, 40-13
 - identifiers 41-13, 41-14
- IDL (Interface Definition Language) 31-5, 38-17, 38-19
 - Type Library editor 39-7
- IDL compiler 38-19
- IDL files 31-5
 - compiling 31-6
 - CORBA clients 31-13
 - CORBA Server Wizard 31-5
 - exporting from type library 39-19
- IDOMImplementation 35-3
- IEEE
 - floating-point formats A-3
 - rounding A-4
- IETF protocols and standards 32-3
- IExtendedHelpViewer 7-27, 7-31
- #ifdef directive 14-16
- #ifndef directive 14-17
- IHelpManager 7-27, 7-35
- IHelpSelector 7-27, 7-31
- IHelpSystem 7-27, 7-35
- IIDs 38-3, 40-5
- IInterface
 - implementing 13-3, 13-4
 - lifetime management 13-5
- IInvokable 36-2
- IIS 42-1
 - version 42-2
- Image Editor
 - using 45-14
- Image HTML tag () 33-14
- image requests 34-37
- ImageIndex property 8-46, 8-48
- ImageList 8-19
- ImageMap HTML tag (<MAP>) 33-14
- images 9-17, 19-2, 50-3
 - adding 10-17
 - adding control for 6-12
 - adding to menus 8-35
 - brushes 10-9
 - changing 10-20
 - controls for 10-2, 10-16
 - copying 50-6
 - displaying 9-16
 - drawing 54-9
 - erasing 10-22
 - in frames 8-15
 - internationalizing 16-9
 - redrawing 50-7
 - reducing flicker 50-6
 - regenerating 10-2
 - saving 10-20
 - scrolling 10-17
 - tool buttons 8-46
- Images property
 - tool buttons 8-46
- IMarshal interface 41-14, 41-16
- IME 16-8
- ImeMode property 16-8
- ImeName property 16-8
- Implementation
 - Repository 31-3
- Import ActiveX Control
 - command 40-2, 40-4
- import libraries 7-11, 7-15
- import library 7-11
- Import Type Library
 - command 40-2, 40-3
- imported functions 7-11
- ImportedConstraint
 - property 23-11, 23-21
- include files
 - searching for A-7
- Include Unit Hdr command 8-3
- Increment property 9-5
- incremental fetching 27-25, 29-19
- incremental search 19-10
- Indent property 8-44, 8-46, 8-48, 9-10
- index definitions 22-38
 - copying 22-39
- index files 24-6
- Index File editor 24-6
- Index property
 - fields 23-11
- index reserved word 55-8
- index-based searches 22-11, 22-12, 22-27 to 22-30
- IndexDefs property 22-38
- indexes 22-26 to 22-37, 47-8
 - batch moves and 24-49
 - client datasets 27-7 to 27-10
 - dBASE tables 24-6 to 24-7
 - deleting 27-9
 - grouping data 27-9 to 27-10
 - listing 21-14, 22-26
 - master/detail
 - relationships 22-35
 - ranges 22-30
 - searching on partial
 - keys 22-29
 - sorting records 22-26 to 22-27, 27-7
 - specifying 22-26 to 22-27
- IndexFieldCount
 - property 22-26
- IndexFieldNames
 - property 22-27, 26-7, 27-8
- IndexName vs. 22-27
- IndexFields property 22-26
- IndexFiles property 24-6
- IndexName property 24-6, 26-7, 27-9
- IndexFieldNames vs. 22-27
- IndexOf method 4-18, 4-19
- Indy Clients page (Component palette) 5-8
- Indy Misc page (Component palette) 5-8
- Indy Servers page (Component palette) 5-8
- INFINITE constant 11-11
- Informix drivers
 - deploying 17-9
- Inherit (Object Repository) 7-25
- inheritance
 - multiple 13-2
 - restrictions 13-2
- inherited
 - events 48-4
 - methods 48-6
 - properties 54-3, 55-3
 - publishing 47-3
- inherited keyword 13-8, 13-10, 13-12, 13-14
- inheriting from classes 3-4 to 3-5
- InheritsFrom method 13-22
- .ini files 14-6
 - Win-CGI applications 32-7
- InitializeControl method 43-11
- InitWidget property 14-12
- INITWIZARD0001 58-22
- inner objects 38-9
- in-process servers 38-6
 - ActiveX 38-13
 - ASP 42-7
 - MTS 44-2
- input controls 9-4
- input focus 45-4
 - fields 23-16
- Input Mask editor 23-14
- input method editor 16-8
- input parameters 22-50
- input/output parameters 22-50

- Insert command (Menu designer) 8-37
- Insert From Resource command (Menu designer) 8-37, 8-42
- Insert from Resource dialog box 8-42
- Insert From Template command (Menu designer) 8-37, 8-38
- Insert method 22-18, 22-19
 - Append vs. 22-18
 - menus 8-40
 - strings 4-18
- INSERT statement 21-11
- INSERT statements 24-39, 24-42, 28-9
- Insert Template dialog box 8-39
- InsertObject method 4-19
- InsertRecord method 22-21
- InsertSQL property 24-39
- Install COM+ objects command 44-27
- Install command (Component) 45-19
- Install Components dialog box 45-19
- Install MTS objects command 44-27
- installation
 - programs 17-2
 - support 1-3
- installation support 1-3
- Installing transactional objects 44-27
- InstallShield Express 2-5, 17-1
 - deploying
 - applications 17-2
 - BDE 17-8
 - packages 17-3
 - SQL Links 17-9
- instances 48-2
- instancing
 - COM servers 41-8
- instantiation 13-5
- int types A-3
- INTAComponent 58-14
- INTAServices 58-8, 58-9, 58-18
- integer types A-3
- integers A-6
 - arrays and A-5
 - casting to pointer A-5
 - dividing A-5
 - enumerations and A-6
 - pointers and A-5
 - right shifted A-5
 - signed A-4
- IntegralHeight property 9-9, 19-11
- integrated debugger 2-4
- integrity violations 24-51
- InterBase driver
 - deploying 17-9
- InterBase page (Component palette) 5-7, 18-2
- InterBase tables 24-9
- InterBaseExpress 14-21
- interceptors 38-5
 - __interface 13-2, 36-2
- Interface Definition Language
 - See IDL
- interface maps 38-23
- interface pointers 38-5
- Interface Repository 31-4
 - registering CORBA interfaces 31-12
- INTERFACE_UUID macro 13-2, 36-2
- interfaces 7-12, 46-4, 46-6, 57-1, 57-3
 - ActiveX 38-20
 - customizing 43-8 to 43-13
 - adding methods 41-10
 - adding properties 41-9
 - application servers 29-16 to 29-17, 29-27
 - Automation 41-12 to 41-14
 - COM 7-19, 38-1, 38-3 to 38-4, 39-8 to 39-9, 40-1, 41-3, 41-9 to 41-14
 - declarations 40-5
 - events 41-10
 - wrappers 40-5
 - COM+ event objects 44-23
 - CORBA 31-2, 31-5 to 31-12
 - custom 41-14
 - declaring 13-2
 - design-time 46-7
 - dispatch 41-13
 - distributed applications 3-4
 - DOM 35-2
 - dynamic binding 31-4, 39-9, 41-12
 - extending single inheritance 3-4
 - Help system 7-27
 - implementing 38-6, 41-3
 - internationalizing 16-8, 16-10, 16-12
 - invokable 36-2 to 36-9
 - multiple inheritance 13-2
- nonvisual program elements 45-5
- outgoing 41-10, 41-11
- properties, declaring 57-4
- registering 31-12 to 31-13
- runtime 46-7
- skeletons and 31-2
- stubs and 31-2
- Tools API 58-1, 58-4 to 58-7
 - version numbers 58-11 to 58-12
- type libraries 38-12, 38-18, 40-5, 41-9
- Type Library editor 39-8 to 39-9, 39-13, 41-9
- Web Services 36-1
- XML nodes 35-4
- InternalCalc fields 23-6, 27-10 to 27-11
 - indexes and 27-9
- internationalizing applications 16-1
 - abbreviations and 16-8
 - converting keyboard input 16-8
 - localizing 16-11
- Internet Engineering Task Force 32-3
- Internet Information Server (IIS) 42-1
 - version 42-2
- Internet page (Component palette) 5-7
- Internet servers 32-1 to 32-11
- Internet standards and protocols 32-3
- InternetExpress 7-18, 29-31 to 29-40
 - vs. ActiveForms 29-29
- InternetExpress page (Component palette) 5-7
- intranets
 - See local networks
 - host names 37-4
- InTransaction property 21-7
- Invalidate method 54-10
- invocation registry 36-3, 36-12
 - creating invokable classes 36-13
- invokable classes
 - creating 36-13
- invokable interfaces 36-2 to 36-9
 - calling 36-16 to 36-17
 - implementing 36-12 to 36-13
 - namespaces 36-3

- registering 36-3
- Invoke method 41-13
- InvokeRegistry.hpp 36-4
- invokers 36-11
- IObjectContext interface 38-15, 42-3, 44-4, 44-5
 - methods to end
 - transactions 44-12
- IObjectControl interface 38-15, 44-2
- IObjectClientSite interface 40-15
- IObjectDocumentSite interface 40-15
- iostreams A-9
- IOTAActionServices 58-8
- IOTABreakpointNotifier 58-18
- IOTACodeCompletionServices 58-8
- IOTAComponent 58-14
- IOTACreator 58-14
- IOTADebuggerNotifier 58-18
- IOTADebuggerServices 58-8
- IOTAEditLineNotifier 58-18
- IOTAEditor 58-13
- IOTAEditorNotifier 58-18
- IOTAEditorServices 58-8
- IOTAFile 58-14, 58-16
- IOTAFormNotifier 58-18
- IOTAFormWizard 58-3
- IOTAIDENotifier 58-18
- IOTAKeyBindingServices 58-8
- IOTAKeyboardDiagnostics 58-8
- IOTAKeyboardServices 58-8
- IOTAMenuWizard 58-3
- IOTAMessageNotifier 58-18
- IOTAMessageServices 58-8
- IOTAModule 58-12
- IOTAModuleNotifier 58-18
- IOTAModuleServices 58-8, 58-13
- IOTANotifier 58-18
- IOTAPackageServices 58-8
- IOTAProcessModNotifier 58-18
- IOTAProcessNotifier 58-19
- IOTAProjectWizard 58-3
- IOTAServices 58-8
- IOTAThreadNotifier 58-19
- IOTAToDoServices 58-8
- IOTAToolsFilter 58-8
- IOTAToolsFilterNotifier 58-19
- IOTAWizard 58-2, 58-3
- IOTAWizardServices 58-8
- IP addresses 37-4, 37-6
 - host names vs. 37-4
 - hosts 37-4

- IProvideClassInfo interface 38-17
- IProviderSupport interface 28-2
- IPX/SPX protocols 37-1
- IRequest interface 42-4
- IResponse interface 42-5
- is operator 13-22
- isalnum function A-8
- isalpha function A-8
- ISAPI applications 32-6, 32-7
 - creating 33-1, 34-8
 - debugging 32-10
 - request messages 33-2
- ISAPI DLLs 17-10
- IsCallerInRole method 44-16
- iscntrl function A-8
- IScriptingContext interface 42-2
- ISecurityProperty interface 44-16
- IServer interface 42-6
- ISessionObject interface 42-5
- islower function A-8
- isolation
 - transactions 18-4, 44-10
- ISpecialWinHelpViewer 7-27
- isprint function A-8
- IsSecurityEnabled 44-16
- isupper function A-8
- IsValidChar method 23-16
- ItemHeight property 9-9
 - combo boxes 19-11
 - list boxes 19-11
- ItemIndex property 9-9
 - radio groups 9-12
- Items property
 - list boxes 9-9
 - radio controls 19-13
 - radio groups 9-12
- ITypeComp interface 38-18
- ITypeInfo interface 38-18
- ITypeInfo2 interface 38-18
- ITypeLib interface 38-18
- ITypeLib2 interface 38-18
- IUnknown
 - implementing 13-4
- IUnknown interface 38-3, 38-4, 38-19
 - ATL support 38-23
 - Automation
 - controllers 41-13
 - implementing 13-3
 - lifetime management 13-5
 - tracing calls 41-8
- IXMLNode 35-4 to 35-5, 35-7

J

- javascript libraries 29-31, 29-33
 - locating 29-32, 29-33
- just-in-time activation 29-7, 44-4 to 44-5
 - enabling 44-5

K

- K footnotes (Help systems) 52-5
- KeepConnection property 21-3, 21-12, 24-18
- KeepConnections
 - property 24-13, 24-18
- key fields 22-32
 - multiple 22-31, 22-32
- key violations 24-51
- keyboard events
 - internationalization 16-8
- keyboard mappings 16-8, 16-9
- keyboard shortcuts 9-5
 - adding to menus 8-33 to 8-34
- key-down messages 48-5, 56-9
- KeyDown method 51-14, 56-10
- KeyExclusive property 22-29, 22-33
- KeyField property 19-12
- KeyFieldCount property 22-29
- key-press events 48-3, 48-9
- KeyPress method 51-14
- KeyString method 51-14
- KeyUp method 51-14
- KeyViolTableName
 - property 24-51
- keyword extensions 13-23
- keyword-based help 7-30
- KeywordHelp 7-34
- keywords 52-5
 - protected 48-5
- Kind property
 - bitmap buttons 9-7

L

- labels 9-3, 16-9, 19-2, 45-4
 - columns 19-17
- language extensions 13-28
- Last method 22-6
- late binding 31-14
 - Automation 41-12, 41-13
- Layout property 9-7
- leap years 55-9
- Left property 8-4
- LeftCol property 9-15
- .lib files 15-2, 15-13

- packages 15-13
- \$LIBPREFIX directive 7-10
- libraries
 - custom controls 45-4
 - exceptions 12-18
- LibraryName property 26-3
- \$LIBSUFFIX directive 7-10
- \$LIBVERSION directive 7-10
- .lic file 43-7
- license agreement 17-15
- license keys 43-7
- license package file 43-7
- licensing
 - ActiveX controls 43-5, 43-7
 - Internet Explorer 43-7
- lines
 - drawing 10-5, 10-10, 10-10 to 10-11, 10-27 to 10-29
 - changing pen width 10-6
 - event handlers 10-26
 - erasing 10-28
- Lines property 9-3, 47-8
- LineSize property 9-5
- LineTo method 10-4, 10-8, 10-10, 50-3
- Link HTML tag (<A>) 33-14
- linker switches
 - packages 15-12
- linking 7-11
- Linux
 - batch files 14-13
 - cross-platform
 - applications 14-1 to 14-26
 - directories 14-15
 - Registry 14-13
 - system notifications 51-10 to 51-15
 - Windows vs. 14-13 to 14-14
- list boxes 9-9, 19-2, 19-11, 55-1
 - data-aware 19-10 to 19-12
 - dragging items 6-2, 6-3
 - dropping items 6-3
 - owner-draw 6-11
 - draw-item events 6-15
 - measure-item events 6-14
 - populating 19-10
 - storing properties
 - example 8-8
- list controls 9-9 to 9-11
- List property 24-29
- list views
 - owner draw 6-11
- listening connections 37-2, 37-3, 37-7, 37-9
 - closing 37-7
- port numbers 37-5
- ListField property 19-12
- lists
 - accessing 4-14
 - adding 4-13
 - collections 4-15
 - deleting 4-14
 - persistent 4-14
 - rearranging 4-14
 - string 4-14, 4-15 to 4-19
 - using in threads 11-5
- ListSource property 19-12
- load balancing 31-3
- Loaded method 47-13
- LoadFromFile method
 - ADO datasets 25-14
 - client datasets 18-9, 27-33
 - graphics 10-19, 50-4
 - strings 4-15
- LoadFromStream method
 - client datasets 27-33
- LoadLibrary 7-11
- LoadPackage function 15-4
- LoadParamListItems
 - procedure 21-14
- LoadParamsFromIniFile
 - method 26-5
- LoadParamsOnConnect
 - property 26-4
- local databases 18-3
 - accessing 24-5
 - aliases 24-24
 - BDE support 24-5 to 24-7
 - renaming tables 24-7
- local dates A-11
- local networks 31-3
- Local SQL 24-9, 24-10
 - heterogeneous queries 24-9
- local time A-11
- local transactions 24-31
- locale settings 4-21
- locales 16-1
 - data formats and 16-9
 - resource modules 16-10
- LocalHost property
 - client sockets 37-6
- localization 16-12
 - localizing applications 16-1
 - resources 16-10, 16-11, 16-12
- localizing applications 16-12
- LocalPort property
 - client sockets 37-6
- Locate method 22-10
- Lock method 11-7
- locking objects
 - nesting calls 11-7
 - threads 11-7
- LockList method 11-7
- LockType property 25-12
- LogChanges property 27-5, 27-34
- logging in
 - SOAP connections 29-25
 - Web connections 29-25
- logical values 19-2, 19-13
- Login dialog box 21-4
- login events 21-5
- login information
 - specifying 21-4
- login pages
 - WebSnap 34-26 to 34-28
- login scripts 21-4 to 21-5
- login support
 - WebSnap 34-24 to 34-30
- LoginPrompt property 21-4
- logins, requiring 34-28
- lookup combo boxes 19-2, 19-11 to 19-12
 - in data grids 19-20
 - lookup fields 19-12
 - populating 19-21
 - secondary data
 - sources 19-12
- lookup fields 19-12, 23-6
 - caching values 23-9
 - defining 23-8 to 23-9
 - in data grids 19-20
 - performance 23-9
 - providing values
 - programmatically 23-9
 - specifying 19-21
- lookup list boxes 19-2, 19-11 to 19-12
 - lookup fields 19-12
 - secondary data
 - sources 19-12
- Lookup method 22-11
- lookup values 19-17
- LookupCache property 23-9
- LookupDataSet property 23-9, 23-11
- LookupKeyFields
 - property 23-9, 23-11
- LookupResultField
 - property 23-11
- LParam parameter 51-9
- .lpk file 43-7
- LPK_TOOL.EXE 43-7

M

- m_spObjectContext 44-4
- m_VclCtl 43-10
- macros 13-17, 13-21, 13-28, 51-4
 - expansion A-7
 - HANDLE_MSG 51-2
- main form 8-2
- main function A-2
- main VCL thread 11-4
 - OnTerminate event 11-7
- MainMenu component 8-30
- maintained aggregates 18-15, 27-11 to 27-13
 - aggregate fields 23-10
 - specifying 27-11 to 27-12
 - subtotals 27-12
 - summary operators 27-12
 - values 27-13
- MainWndProc method 51-3
- make utility
 - Linux 14-14
- malloc function A-10
- Man pages 7-26
- mappings
 - XML 30-2 to 30-3
 - defining 30-4
- Mappings property 24-49
- Margin property 9-7
- marshaling 38-7
 - COM interfaces 38-8 to 38-9, 41-3, 41-14 to 41-16
 - CORBA interfaces 31-2
 - custom 41-15
 - IDispatch interface 38-13, 41-14
 - transactional objects 44-3
 - Web Services 36-3
- masks 23-14
- master/detail forms 19-14
 - example 22-35 to 22-36
- master/detail
 - relationships 19-14, 22-34 to 22-37, 22-46 to 22-47
 - cascaded deletes 28-5
 - cascaded updates 28-6
 - client datasets 27-18
 - indexes 22-35
 - multi-tiered
 - applications 29-18
 - nested tables 22-36 to 22-37, 29-18
 - referential integrity 18-5
 - unidirectional datasets 26-11 to 26-12
- MasterFields property 22-34, 26-11
- MasterSource property 22-34, 26-11
- math functions
 - domain errors and A-8
 - underflow range errors and A-8
- Max property
 - progress bars 9-14
 - track bars 9-5
- MaxDimensions property 20-19
- MaxLength property 9-2
 - data-aware memo controls 19-8
 - data-aware rich edit controls 19-9
- MaxRecords property 29-34
- MaxRows property 33-19
- MaxStmtsPerConn
 - property 26-3
- MaxSummaries property 20-19
- MaxTitleRows property 19-23
- MaxValue property 23-11
- MBCS 4-20
- MDAC 17-6
- MDI applications 7-1 to 7-3
 - active menu 8-41
 - creating 7-2
 - merging menus 8-41 to 8-42
- measurements
 - converting 4-25 to 4-32
 - units 4-28
- media devices 10-31
- media players 5-6, 10-31 to 10-33
 - example 10-33
- member functions 3-3
 - property settings 47-6
- memo controls 6-6, 9-2, 47-8
 - modifying 53-1
- memo fields 19-2, 19-8 to 19-9
 - rich edit 19-9
- memory management
 - decision components 20-8, 20-19
 - forms 8-5
- menu components 8-30
- Menu designer 5-5, 8-30 to 8-34
 - context menu 8-37
- menu items 8-31 to 8-34
 - adding 8-32, 8-40
 - defined 8-29
 - deleting 8-32, 8-37
 - editing 8-36
 - grouping 8-33
 - moving 8-35
 - naming 8-31, 8-40
 - nesting 8-34
 - placeholders 8-37
 - separator bars 8-33
 - setting properties 8-36
 - underlining letters 8-33
- Menu property 8-41
- menu wizards 58-3
- menus 8-29 to 8-40
 - accessing commands 8-33
 - action lists 8-18
 - adding 8-30, 8-34
 - adding images 8-35
 - defined 8-17
 - disabling items 6-9
 - displaying 8-36, 8-37
 - handling events 5-5 to 5-6, 8-40
 - importing 8-42
 - internationalizing 16-8, 16-10
 - moving among 8-37
 - moving items 8-35
 - naming 8-31
 - owner-draw 6-11
 - pop-up 6-10
 - reusing 8-37
 - saving as templates 8-38, 8-39 to 8-40
 - shortcuts 8-33 to 8-34
 - templates 8-30, 8-37, 8-38, 8-39
- merge modules 17-3
- MergeChangeLog method 27-6, 27-33
- message handlers 51-1, 51-3, 55-5
 - creating 51-6 to 51-8
 - declarations 51-5, 51-6, 51-8
 - default 51-3
 - methods, redefining 51-7
 - overriding 51-4
- message handling 51-4 to 51-6
- message headers (HTTP) 32-3, 32-4
- message loop
 - threads 11-4
- MESSAGE_HANDLER
 - macro 51-4
- MESSAGE_MAP macro 51-7
- message-based servers
 - See Web server applications

- messages 51-1 to 51-8, 55-4, A-10
 - defined 51-1
 - identifiers 51-6
 - key 56-9
 - Linux *See* system
 - notifications
 - mouse 56-9
 - mouse- and key-down 56-9
 - multithreaded
 - applications 51-9
 - record
 - types, declaring 51-7
 - sending 51-8 to 51-10
 - structures 51-5
 - trapping 51-5
 - user-defined 51-6, 51-8
 - Windows 51-1 to 51-10
- messages.hpp file 51-2
- metadata 21-13 to 21-14
 - dbExpress 26-12 to 26-16
 - modifying 26-10 to 26-11
 - obtaining from
 - providers 27-26
- metafiles 9-17, 10-1, 10-19, 50-4
 - when to use 10-3
- Method property 33-9
- MethodAddress method 13-22
- methods 3-3, 10-15, 45-6, 49-1, 55-11
 - adding to ActiveX
 - controls 43-9 to 43-10
 - adding to interfaces 41-10
 - calling 48-5, 49-3, 54-5
 - declaring 10-15, 46-9, 49-4
 - public 49-3
 - deleting 5-6
 - drawing 54-9, 54-10
 - event handlers 48-4, 48-5
 - overriding 48-5
 - graphics 50-3, 50-4, 50-6
 - palettes 50-5
 - inherited 48-6
 - initialization 47-13
 - message-handling 51-1, 51-3, 51-5
 - naming 49-2
 - overriding 51-4, 51-5, 55-12
 - properties and 47-5 to 47-7, 49-1, 49-2, 54-4
 - protected 49-3
 - public 49-3
 - redefining 51-7
 - virtual 46-9, 49-3
 - inheritance 13-2
- MethodType property 33-6, 33-10
- Microsoft Server DLLs 32-6, 32-7
 - creating 33-1, 34-8
 - request messages 33-2
- Microsoft SQL Server
 - deploying driver 17-9
- Microsoft Transaction Server 7-19
- Microsoft Transaction Server *See* MTS
- midas.dll 27-1, 29-3
- midaslib.dcu 17-6, 29-3
- MIDI files 10-32
- MIDL 38-19
 - See also* IDL
- MIME messages 32-6
- MIME types and constants 10-22
- Min property
 - progress bars 9-14
 - track bars 9-5
- MinSize property 9-6
- MinValue property 23-11
- MM film 10-32
- mobile computing 18-14
- modal forms 8-5
- Mode property 24-48
 - pens 10-5
- modeless forms 8-5, 8-6
- Modified method 56-12
- Modified property 9-3
- Modifiers property 9-5
- ModifyAlias method 24-25
- ModifySQL property 24-39
- modules
 - Tools API 58-3, 58-12 to 58-14
 - Type Library editor 39-10, 39-17
 - types 7-20
 - Web types 34-2
- Month property 55-6
- MonthCalendar
 - component 9-11
- months, returning current 55-9
- mouse buttons 10-24
 - clicking 10-24, 10-25
 - mouse-move events
 - and 10-26
- mouse events 10-24 to 10-26, 54-3
 - defined 10-24
- dragging and dropping 6-1 to 6-4
 - parameters 10-24
 - state information 10-24
 - testing for 10-26
- mouse messages 56-9
- mouse pointer
 - drag-and-drop 6-4
- mouse-down messages 56-9
- MouseDown method 51-14, 56-9
- MouseMove method 51-14
- MouseToCell method 9-15
- MouseUp method 51-14
- .mov files 10-32
- Move method
 - string lists 4-18, 4-19
- MoveBy method 22-7
- MoveCount property 24-50
- MoveFile function 4-9
- MovePt 10-28
- MoveTo method 10-4, 10-7, 50-3
- .mpg files 10-32
- Msg parameter 51-3
- MSI technology 17-3
- MTS 7-19, 29-6, 38-10, 38-14, 44-1
 - See also* transactional objects
 - COM+ vs. 44-2
 - in-process servers 44-2
 - object references 44-24 to 44-26
 - requirements 44-3
 - runtime environment 44-2
 - transactional objects 38-14 to 38-15
 - transactions 29-17
- MTS executive 44-2
- MTS Explorer 44-28
- MTS packages 44-6, 44-27
- multibyte character codes 16-3
- multibyte character set 16-3
- multibyte characters
 - (MBCS) 14-19, A-2, A-4
 - cross-platform
 - applications 14-16
- multidimensional
 - crosstabs 20-3
- multi-line text controls 19-8, 19-9
- multimedia applications 10-29 to 10-33
- multipage dialog boxes 9-13
- multiple document interface 7-1 to 7-3

- multiprocessing
 - threads 11-1
- multi-read exclusive-write synchronizer 11-8
 - warning about use 11-9
- MultiSelect property 9-9
- multi-threaded
 - applications 11-1
 - sending messages 51-9
 - sessions 24-13, 24-28 to 24-29
- Multitier page (New Items dialog) 29-2
- multi-tiered applications 18-3, 18-12, 29-1 to 29-40
 - advantages 29-2
 - architecture 29-4, 29-5
 - building 29-11 to 29-28
 - callbacks 29-17
 - components 29-2 to 29-3
 - cross-platform 29-11
 - deploying 17-10
 - master/detail
 - relationships 29-18
 - overview 29-3 to 29-4
 - parameters 27-27
 - server licenses 29-3
 - Web applications 29-28 to 29-40
 - building 29-30 to 29-31, 29-31 to 29-40
- mutexes
 - CORBA 31-11
- MyBase 27-32
- MyEvent_ID type 51-15

N

- Name property
 - fields 23-11
 - menu items 5-5, 5-6
 - parameters 22-51
- named connections 26-4 to 26-5
 - adding 26-5
 - deleting 26-5
 - loading at runtime 26-4
 - renaming 26-5
- namespaces 45-13
 - invokable interfaces 36-3
- naming a thread 11-12 to 11-13
- naming conventions
 - data members 48-2
 - events 48-8
 - message-record types 51-7
 - methods 49-2
 - properties 47-6
 - resources 52-4
- native tools API 58-2, 58-8 to 58-11
- navigator 19-2, 19-28 to 19-31, 22-5, 22-6
 - buttons 19-28
 - deleting data 22-20
 - editing 22-17
 - enabling/disabling buttons 19-29
 - help hints 19-30
 - sharing among datasets 19-30
- NDX indexes 24-6
- nested declarators A-6
- nested details 22-36 to 22-37, 23-25 to 23-26, 29-18
 - fetch on demand 28-5
- nested tables 22-36 to 22-37, 23-25 to 23-26, 29-18
- .Net
 - Web Services 36-1
- NetCLX 7-17
 - defined 14-5
- NetFileDir property 24-23
- Netscape Server DLLs
 - creating 33-1
- network control files 24-23
- networks
 - communication layer 31-2
 - connecting to
 - databases 24-15
 - neutral threading 41-8
- New command 45-12
- New Field dialog box 23-5
 - defining fields 23-6, 23-7, 23-8, 23-10
- Field properties 23-5
- Field type 23-6
- Lookup definition 23-6
 - Dataset 23-9
 - Key Fields 23-9
 - Lookup Keys 23-9
 - Result Field 23-9
- Type 23-6
- New Items dialog 7-24, 7-25
- New Thread Object dialog 11-2
- New Unit command 45-12
- newline characters A-8
- New Value property 24-37, 28-11
- Next method 22-6
- NextRecordSet method 22-53, 26-9
- nodefault keyword 47-7
- non-blocking connections 37-10

- no-nonsense license
 - agreement 17-15
- non-production index files 24-6
- nonvisual components 45-5, 45-12, 57-3
- NOT NULL constraint 28-12
- NOT NULL UNIQUE
 - constraint 28-12
- notebook dividers 9-13
- notification events 48-7
- notifiers 58-3
 - Tools API
 - notifiers 58-18 to 58-22
 - writing 58-21
- NotifyID 7-28
- NSAPI applications 32-6
 - creating 33-1, 34-8
 - debugging 32-10
 - request messages 33-2
- null characters A-9
- NULL macro A-7
- NULL pointers A-7
- null values
 - ranges 22-31
- null-terminated routines 4-23 to 4-24
- numbers 47-2
 - internationalizing 16-9
 - property values 47-12
- numeric coprocessors
 - floating-point format A-3
- numeric fields
 - formatting 23-14
- NumericScale property 22-45, 22-51
- NumGlyphs property 9-7

O

- OAD 31-3 to 31-4, 31-13
- .obj files 15-2, 15-13
 - packages 15-13
- Object Activation Daemon *See* OAD
- Object Broker 29-25
- object contexts 44-4, 44-5
 - ASP 42-3
 - transactions 44-10
- object fields 23-22 to 23-27
 - types 23-22
- Object HTML tag
 - (<OBJECT>) 33-14
- Object Inspector 5-2, 47-2, 52-7
 - editing array properties 47-2
 - help with 52-4
 - selecting menus 8-38

- Object Management Group *See*
 - OMG
- object maps 38-22
- object models 13-1
- Object Pascal
 - object models 13-1
- object pooling 44-9
 - disabling 44-9
 - remote data modules 29-8 to 29-9
- object reference 13-6
- Object Repository 7-24 to 7-26
 - adding items 7-24
 - database components 24-16
 - sessions 24-17
 - specifying shared
 - directory 7-24
 - using items from 7-25
 - wizards 58-3
- Object Repository dialog 7-24
- Object Repository wizards 58-3
- ObjectBroker property 29-23, 29-24, 29-25, 29-26
- ObjectContext property
 - Active Server Objects 42-3
 - example 44-14 to 44-15
- object-oriented
 - programming 46-1 to 46-10
 - declarations 46-3, 46-10
 - classes 46-4, 46-6, 46-7
 - methods 46-9
- objects
 - See also* COM objects
 - construction 13-7 to 13-13, 14-11
 - copying 13-6
 - distributed 31-1
 - dragging and dropping 6-1
 - function arguments 13-7
 - inheritance 3-4 to 3-5
 - initializing 10-13
 - owned 54-6 to 54-8
 - initializing 54-7
 - scripting 34-32
 - temporary 50-6
 - TObject 3-5
 - volatile, accessing A-6
- Objects property 9-15
 - string lists 4-19, 6-14
- ObjectView property 19-22, 22-36, 23-23
- .ocx files 17-5
- ODBC drivers
 - using with ADO 25-1, 25-2
 - using with the BDE 24-1, 24-15, 24-16
- ODL (Object Description Language) 38-17
- OEM character sets 16-2
- OEMConvert property 9-3
- offscreen bitmaps 50-6
- OldValue property 24-37, 28-11
- OLE
 - containers 5-6
 - merging menus 8-41
- OLE DB 25-1, 25-2
- OleFunction method 40-13
- OleObject property 43-14, 43-15
- OleProcedure method 40-13
- OlePropertyGet method 40-13
- OlePropertyPut method 40-13
- OLEView 38-19
- OMG 31-1, 31-5
- OnAccept event 37-7, 37-9
 - server sockets 37-9
- OnAction event 33-7
- OnAfterPivot event 20-9
- OnBeforePivot event 20-9
- OnBeginTransComplete
 - event 21-7, 25-8
- OnCalcFields event 22-22, 23-7, 27-10, 27-11
- OnCellClick event 19-26
- OnChange event 23-15, 50-7, 54-8, 55-13, 56-11
- OnClick event 9-7, 48-1, 48-2, 48-4
 - menus 5-5
- OnColEnter event 19-26
- OnColExit event 19-26
- OnColumnMoved event 19-19, 19-26
- OnCommitTransComplete
 - event 21-8, 25-8
- OnConnect event 37-9
- OnConnectComplete event 25-7
- OnConstrainedResize event 8-4
- OnDataChange event 19-4, 56-7, 56-11
- OnDataRequest event 27-31, 28-3, 28-12
- OnDbClick event 19-26, 48-4
- OnDecisionDrawCell
 - event 20-12
- OnDecisionExamineCell
 - event 20-13
- OnDeleteError event 22-20
- OnDisconnect event 25-7, 37-7, 37-8
- OnDragDrop event 6-2, 19-26, 48-4
- OnDragOver event 6-2, 19-26, 48-4
- OnDrawCell event 9-15
- OnDrawColumnCell
 - event 19-26
- OnDrawDataCell event 19-26
- OnDrawItem event 6-15
- OnEditButtonClick event 19-21, 19-26
- OnEditError event 22-17
- OnEndDrag event 6-3, 19-26, 48-4
- OnEndPage method 42-2
- OnEnter event 19-26, 48-5
- OnError event 37-8
- one-to-many
 - relationships 22-34, 26-11
- OnExecuteComplete event 25-8
- OnExit event 19-26, 56-13
- OnFilterRecord event 22-13, 22-15
- OnGetData event 28-7
- OnGetDataSetProperties
 - event 28-6
- OnGetTableName event 24-11, 27-21, 28-12
- OnGetText event 23-15
- OnGetThread event 37-9
- OnHandleActive event 37-8
- OnHTMLTag event 29-39, 33-15, 33-16
- OnIdle event handler 11-5
- OnInfoMessage event 25-8
- OnKeyDown event 19-26, 48-5, 51-13, 56-10
- OnKeyPress event 19-26, 48-5, 51-13
- OnKeyString event 51-13
- OnKeyUp event 19-26, 48-5, 51-13
- OnLayoutChange event 20-9
- online help 52-4
- OnListening event 37-9
- OnLogin event 21-5
- OnMeasureItem event 6-14
- OnMouseDown event 10-24, 10-25, 48-4, 51-13, 56-9
 - parameters passed to 10-24, 10-25
- OnMouseMove event 10-24, 10-26, 48-4, 51-13
 - parameters passed to 10-24, 10-25

- OnMouseUp event 10-14, 10-24, 10-25, 48-4, 51-13
 - parameters passed to 10-24, 10-25
- OnNewDimensions event 20-9
- OnNewRecord event 22-18
- OnPaint event 9-17, 10-2
- OnPassword event 24-13, 24-22
- OnPopup event 6-10
- OnPostError event 22-20
- OnReceive event 37-8, 37-10
- OnReconcileError event 14-25, 24-32, 27-20, 27-23
- OnRefresh event 20-7
- OnRequestRecords event 29-35
- OnResize event 10-2
- OnRollbackTransComplete event 21-9, 25-8
- OnScroll event 9-4
- OnSend event 37-8, 37-10
- OnSetText event 23-15
- OnStartDrag event 19-26
- OnStartPage method 42-2
- OnStartup event 24-17
- OnStateChange event 19-4, 20-9, 22-4
- OnSummaryChange event 20-9
- OnTerminate event 11-7
- OnTitleClick event 19-26
- OnTranslate event 30-7
- OnUpdateData event 19-4, 28-8, 28-9
- OnUpdateError event 14-25, 24-32, 24-37 to 24-38, 27-22, 28-11
- OnUpdateRecord event 24-32, 24-35 to 24-37, 24-39, 24-45
- OnValidate event 23-15
- OnWillConnect event 21-5, 25-7
- open arrays 13-17
 - temporary 13-18
- Open method
 - connection components 21-3
 - datasets 22-4
 - queries 22-47
 - server sockets 37-7
 - sessions 24-18
- Open Tools API *See* Tools API
- OPENARRAY macro 13-19
- OpenDatabase method 24-18, 24-19
- OpenSession method 24-28, 24-29
- operating system environment
 - strings, changing
 - permanently A-11
- operators
 - assignment 13-6
 - bitwise
 - signed integers A-4
- optimizing system
 - resources 45-4
- optional parameters 27-15, 28-6
- options
 - mutually exclusive 8-45
- Options property 9-15
 - data grids 19-24
 - decision grids 20-12
 - providers 28-5 to 28-6
 - TSQClientDataSet 27-16
- Oracle drivers
 - deploying 17-9
- Oracle tables 24-12
- Oracle8
 - limits on creating
 - tables 22-39
- ORB 31-1, 31-5
 - initializing 31-3
 - ORB_init 31-7
- ORDER BY clause 22-26
- Orientation property
 - data grids 19-28
 - track bars 9-5
- Origin property 10-28, 23-11
- osagent 31-2, 31-3
- outer objects 38-9
- outlines, drawing 10-5
- out-of-process servers 38-7
 - ASP 42-7
- output parameters 22-50, 27-26
- Overload property 24-12
- overloaded stored
 - procedures 24-12
- overriding
 - methods 51-4, 51-5, 55-12
 - virtual methods 13-11
- owned objects 54-6 to 54-8
 - initializing 54-7
- Owner property 45-16
- owner-draw controls 4-19, 6-11
 - declaring 6-12
 - drawing 6-13, 6-14
 - list boxes 9-9, 9-10
 - sizing 6-14
- OwnerDraw property 6-12
- P**

 - package argument 13-29
 - Package Collection Editor 15-14
 - package collection files 15-13
 - package files 17-3
 - packages 15-1 to 15-15, 52-19
 - collections 15-13
 - compiler directives 15-11
 - compiling 15-10 to 15-12
 - components 15-8, 52-19
 - Contains list 15-6, 15-7, 15-8, 15-10, 52-19
 - creating 7-10, 15-6 to 15-12
 - custom 15-4
 - default settings 15-7
 - deploying applications 15-13
 - design-only option 15-7
 - design-time 15-1, 15-5 to 15-6
 - distributing to other
 - developers 15-13
 - DLLs 15-1, 15-2, 15-11
 - duplicate references 15-10
 - dynamically loading 15-4
 - editing 15-7
 - file name extensions 15-1, 15-8, 15-12
 - installing 15-5 to 15-6
 - internationalizing 16-11, 16-12
 - linker switches 15-12
 - missing 52-19
 - naming 15-9
 - options 15-7
 - project options files 15-8
 - Requires list 15-6, 15-7, 15-8, 15-9, 52-19
 - runtime 15-1, 15-3 to 15-4, 15-7
 - source files 15-2, 15-8
 - using 7-11
 - using in applications 15-3 to 15-4
 - weak packaging 15-11
 - PacketRecords property 14-25, 24-32, 27-25
 - page controls 9-13
 - adding pages 9-13
 - page dispatchers 34-9, 34-34
 - page modules 34-2, 34-4
 - page producers 33-13 to 33-17, 34-2, 34-4, 34-6 to 34-7, B-1
 - chaining 33-16
 - Content method 33-14
 - ContentFromStream
 - method 33-14
 - ContentFromString
 - method 33-14
 - converting templates 33-15
 - data-aware 29-36 to 29-40, 33-18

- event handling 33-15, 33-16
- templates 34-4
- types 34-10
- PageSize property 9-5
- paint boxes 9-17
- Paint method 50-6, 54-9, 54-10
- paintboxes 5-6
- PaintRequest method 51-14
- palette bitmap files 52-4
- PaletteChanged method 50-5, 51-14
- palettes 50-5
 - default behavior 50-5
 - specifying 50-5
- PanelHeight property 19-28
- panels
 - adding speed buttons 8-44
 - attaching to form tops 8-43
 - beveled 9-17
 - speed buttons 9-7
- Panels property 9-14
- PanelWidth property 19-28
- panes 9-6
 - resizing 9-6
- Paradox tables 24-3, 24-5
 - accessing data 24-9
 - adding records 22-19
 - batch moves 24-51
 - DatabaseName 24-3
 - directories 24-23 to 24-24
 - local transactions 24-31
 - network control files 24-23
 - password protection 24-21 to 24-23
 - renaming 24-7
 - retrieving indexes 22-26
- parallel processes
 - threads 11-1
- ParamBindMode property 24-11
- ParamByName method
 - queries 22-45
 - stored procedures 22-52
- ParamCheck property 22-44, 26-11
- parameter collection
 - editor 22-44, 22-50
- parameterized queries 22-42, 22-43 to 22-46
 - creating
 - at design time 22-44
 - at runtime 22-45
- parameters
 - binding modes 24-11
 - classes as 46-10
- client datasets 27-26 to 27-28
 - filtering records 27-28
- dual interfaces 41-15
- event handlers 48-7, 48-9
- from XML brokers 29-34
- HTML tags 33-13
- input 22-50
- input/output 22-50
- messages 51-3, 51-5, 51-7, 51-9
- mouse events 10-24, 10-25
- output 22-50, 27-26
- passing by reference 48-3
- property settings 47-6
 - array properties 47-8
- result 22-50
- TXMLTransformClient 30-9
- Parameters property 25-19
 - TADOCommand 25-19
 - TADOQuery 22-44
 - TADOStoredProc 22-50
- ParamName property 29-38
- Params property
 - client datasets 27-26, 27-27
 - queries 22-44, 22-45
 - stored procedures 22-50
 - TDatabase 24-14
 - TSQLConnection 26-4
 - XML brokers 29-34
- ParamType property 22-45, 22-51
- ParamValues property 22-45
- Parent property 45-16
- ParentColumn property 19-23
- ParentConnection property 29-28
- ParentShowHint property 9-15
- partial keys
 - searching 22-29
 - setting ranges 22-32
- pascalimplementation
 - argument 13-29
- passthrough SQL 24-30, 24-30 to 24-31
- passwords
 - dBASE tables 24-21 to 24-23
 - implicit connections and 24-13
 - Paradox tables 24-21 to 24-23
- PasteFromClipboard method 6-9
 - data-aware memo controls 19-9
 - graphics 19-10
- PathInfo property 33-6
- pathnames
 - Linux 14-14
- paths (URLs) 32-3
- patterns 10-9
- .pce files 15-13
- pdoxusr.net 24-23
- Pen property 10-4, 10-5, 50-3
- PenPos property 10-4, 10-7
- pens 10-5, 54-6
 - brushes 10-5
 - changing 54-8
 - colors 10-6
 - default settings 10-5
 - drawing modes 10-29
 - getting position of 10-7
 - position, setting 10-7, 10-25
 - style 10-6
 - width 10-6
- penwin.dll 15-11
- Perform method 51-9
- perror function A-10
- persistent columns 19-15, 19-17
 - creating 19-17 to 19-21
 - deleting 19-16, 19-18, 19-19
 - inserting 19-18
 - reordering 19-19
- persistent fields 19-15, 23-3 to 23-16
 - ADT fields 23-24
 - array fields 23-25
 - creating 23-4 to 23-5, 23-5 to 23-10
 - creating tables 22-38
 - data packets and 28-4
 - data types 23-6
 - dataset fields 22-36
 - defining 23-5 to 23-10
 - deleting 23-10
 - listing 23-4, 23-5
 - naming 23-5
 - ordering 23-5
 - properties 23-10 to 23-15
 - special types 23-5, 23-6
 - switching to dynamic 23-3
- persistent subscriptions 40-15
- per-user subscriptions 40-15
- PickList property 19-20, 19-21
- picture objects 10-3, 50-4
- Picture property 9-17, 10-17
 - in frames 8-15
- pictures 10-17, 50-3 to 50-5
 - changing 10-20
 - loading 10-19
 - replacing 10-20
 - saving 10-20

- Pie method 10-4
- Pixel property 10-4, 50-3
- pixels
 - reading and setting 10-9
- Pixels property 10-5, 10-9
- pmCopy constant 10-29
- pmNotXor constant 10-29
- pointers
 - casting to integer A-5
 - classes 46-10
 - default property values 47-12
 - dereferenced 13-6
 - exception handling 12-5
 - integer types A-5
 - NULL A-7
 - VCL implications 13-5
- Polygon method 10-4, 10-11
- polygons 10-11
 - drawing 10-11
- PolyLine method 10-4, 10-10
- polylines 10-10
 - drawing 10-10
- pop-up menus 6-10 to 6-11
 - displaying 8-36
 - drop-down menus and 8-34
- PopupMenu component 8-30
- PopupMenu property 6-10
- Port property 37-7
 - TSocketConnection 29-24
- porting applications
 - to Linux 14-2 to 14-19
- porting code 14-15 to 14-19
- ports 37-5
 - client sockets 37-6
 - multiple connections 37-5
 - server sockets 37-7
 - services and 37-2
- Position property 9-5, 9-14
- position-independent code (PIC) 14-8, 14-18
- Post method 22-20
 - Edit and 22-18
- PostMessage method 51-10
- #pragma package 52-19
- Precision property
 - fields 23-11
 - parameters 22-45, 22-51
- preexisting controls 45-4
- Prepared property
 - queries 22-47
 - stored procedures 22-52
 - unidirectional datasets 26-8
- Preview tab 34-2
- primary indexes
 - batch moves and 24-49
- PRIMARY KEY constraint 28-13
- printers A-2
- printing 4-25
- Prior method 22-7
- priorities
 - using threads 11-1, 11-2
- Priority property 11-3
- private properties 47-5
- PrivateDir property 24-24
- problem tables 24-51
- ProblemCount property 24-51
- ProblemTableName
 - property 24-51
- ProcedureName property 22-49
- procedures
 - naming 49-2
- programming templates 7-3
- progress bars 9-14
- project files
 - changing 2-2
 - distributing 2-5
- Project Manager 8-3
- project options 7-3
 - default 7-3
- Project Options dialog box 7-3
- project templates 7-25
- Project Updates dialog 31-9
- project wizards 58-3
- projects
 - adding forms 8-1 to 8-4
- PROP_PAGE macro 43-15
- properties 3-2, 47-1 to 47-13
 - accessing 47-5 to 47-7
 - adding to ActiveX controls 43-9 to 43-10
 - adding to interfaces 41-9
 - array 47-2, 47-8
 - as classes 47-2
 - changing 52-7 to 52-12, 53-3, 53-4
 - COM 38-2, 39-8
 - Write By Reference 39-8
 - COM interfaces 39-8
 - common dialog boxes 57-2
 - declaring 47-3, 47-3 to 47-7, 47-12, 48-8, 54-4
 - user-defined types 54-4
 - default values 47-7, 47-11 to 47-12
 - redefining 53-3, 53-4
- editing
 - as text 52-8
- events and 48-1, 48-2
- HTML tables 33-19
- inherited 47-3, 54-3, 55-3
- internal data storage 47-4, 47-6
- loading 47-13
- nodefault 47-7
- overview 45-6
- providing help 52-4
- published 55-3
- read and write 47-5
- reading values 52-9
- read-only 46-7, 47-7, 56-3
- redeclaring 47-11, 48-5
- setting 5-2 to 5-3
- specifying values 47-11, 52-9
- storing 47-12
- storing and loading
 - unpublished 47-13 to 47-15
- subcomponents 47-9
- types 47-2, 47-8, 52-9, 54-4
- updating 45-7
- viewing 52-9
- wrapper components 57-4
- write-only 47-6
- writing values 47-6, 52-9
- properties, memo and rich edit controls 9-2
- property editors 5-2, 47-2, 52-7 to 52-12
 - as derived classes 52-7
 - attributes 52-10
 - dialog boxes as 52-9
 - registering 52-11 to 52-12
- __property keyword 13-26
- Property Page wizard 43-13 to 43-14
- property pages 43-13 to 43-15
 - ActiveX controls 40-7, 43-3, 43-15
 - adding controls 43-14 to 43-15
 - associating with ActiveX control properties 43-14
 - creating 43-13 to 43-15
 - imported controls 40-4
 - updating 43-14
 - updating ActiveX controls 43-15
- property settings
 - reading 47-8
 - writing 47-8
- PROPERTYPAGE_IMPL macro 43-13
- Proportional property 10-3
- protected
 - directive 48-5
 - events 48-5
 - keyword 47-3, 48-5

- part of classes 46-6
- protocols
 - choosing 29-9 to 29-11
 - connection components 29-9 to 29-11, 29-22
 - Internet 32-3, 37-1
 - network connections 24-15
- Provider property 25-4
- ProviderFlags property 28-5, 28-10
- ProviderName property 18-12, 27-24, 28-3, 29-22, 29-34, 30-9
- providers 28-1 to 28-13, 29-3
 - applying updates 28-4, 28-8, 28-11
 - associating with datasets 28-2
 - associating with XML documents 28-2, 30-8
 - client datasets and 27-24 to 27-31
 - client-generated events 28-12
 - data constraints 28-12
 - error handling 28-11
 - external 18-11, 27-18, 27-24, 28-1
 - internal 27-18, 27-24, 28-1
 - local 27-24, 28-3
 - remote 27-25, 28-3, 29-6
 - screening updates 28-11
 - supplying data to XML documents 30-9 to 30-10
 - using update objects 24-11
 - XML 30-8
- providing 28-1, 29-3
- proxy 38-7, 38-8
 - event interfaces 40-5
 - transactional objects 44-2
- public
 - keyword 48-5
 - part of classes 46-7
 - properties 47-11
- published 47-3
 - directive 47-3, 57-4
 - keyword 48-5
 - part of classes 46-7
 - properties 47-11, 47-12
 - example 54-3, 55-3
- __published keyword 13-27
- putenv function A-11
- PVCS Version Manager 2-5

Q

- QApplication_postEvent method 51-15
- QCustomEvent_create function 51-15
- QEvent 51-12
- QKeyEvent 51-13
- QMouseEvent 51-13
- QReport page (Component palette) 5-8
- Qt events
 - messages 51-15
- Qt widget
 - creating 14-11
- queries 22-23, 22-41 to 22-48
 - BDE-based 24-2, 24-8 to 24-11
 - concurrent 24-17
 - live result sets 24-10
 - bi-directional cursors 22-48
 - executing 22-47 to 22-48
 - filtering vs. 22-13
 - heterogeneous 24-9 to 24-10
 - HTML tables 33-20
 - master/detail
 - relationships 22-46 to 22-47
 - optimizing 22-47, 22-48
 - parameterized 22-42
 - parameters 22-43 to 22-46
 - binding 22-44
 - from client datasets 27-28
 - master/detail
 - relationships 22-46 to 22-47
 - named 22-44
 - properties 22-44 to 22-45
 - setting at design time 22-44
 - setting at runtime 22-45
 - unnamed 22-44
- preparing 22-47
- result sets 22-48
- specifying 22-42 to 22-43, 26-6
- specifying the
 - database 22-41
- unidirectional cursors 22-48
- update objects 24-46 to 24-47
- Web applications 33-20
- Query Builder 22-43
- query part (URLs) 32-3
- Query property
 - update objects 24-46
- QueryInterface method 38-4
 - aggregation 38-9

R

- radio buttons 9-8, 19-2
 - data-aware 19-13 to 19-14
 - grouping 9-12
 - selecting 19-14
- radio groups 9-12
- RaiseException function 12-12
- raising exceptions 12-12
- ranges 22-30 to 22-34
 - applying 22-34
 - boundaries 22-33
 - canceling 22-34
 - changing 22-33
 - filters vs. 22-30
 - indexes and 22-30
 - null values 22-31, 22-32
 - specifying 22-30 to 22-33
- raster operations 50-6
- RC files 8-42
- RDBMS 18-3, 29-1
- RDSCConnection property 25-16
- Read method
 - TFileStream 4-2
- read method 47-6
- read reserved word 47-8, 54-5
- ReadBuffer method
 - TFileStream 4-2
- ReadCommitted 21-9
- reading property settings 47-6
- README document 17-15
- read-only
 - datasets, updating 18-10
 - fields 19-5
 - properties 46-7, 47-7, 56-3
 - tables 22-37
- ReadOnly property 9-2, 56-3, 56-9, 56-10
 - data grids 19-20, 19-25
 - data-aware controls 19-5
 - data-aware memo controls 19-8
 - data-aware rich edit controls 19-9
 - fields 23-12
 - tables 22-37
- Real type 13-23
- Real48 type 13-23
- realizing palettes 50-5
- realloc function A-10
- ReasonString property 33-11
- rebars 8-42, 8-47
- ReceiveBuf method 37-8
- ReceiveIn method 37-8
- RecNo property
 - client datasets 27-2

- Reconcile method 14-25, 24-32
- RecordCount property
 - TBatchMove 24-50
- records
 - adding 22-18 to 22-19, 22-21
 - appending 22-19, 24-8, 24-48, 24-49
 - batch operations 24-8, 24-48, 24-49
 - copying 24-8, 24-49
 - deleting 22-19 to 22-20, 22-40, 24-8, 24-49
 - displaying 19-27
 - fetching 26-8, 27-25 to 27-26
 - asynchronous 25-11
 - filtering 22-12 to 22-16
 - finding 22-10 to 22-12, 22-27 to 22-30
 - iterating through 22-8
 - marking 22-9 to 22-10
 - moving through 19-28, 22-5 to 22-8, 22-16
 - operations 24-8
 - posting 19-6, 22-20
 - data grids 25-25
 - when closing datasets 22-20
 - reconciling updates 27-22
 - refreshing 19-6, 27-30
 - repeating searches 22-29
 - search criteria 22-10, 22-11
 - sorting 22-26 to 22-27
 - synchronizing current 22-40
 - Type Library editor 39-10, 39-16 to 39-17
 - updating 22-21 to 22-22, 24-8, 24-49, 28-8, 29-35 to 29-36
 - client datasets 27-19 to 27-24
 - delta packets 28-8, 28-9
 - from XML
 - documents 30-10
 - identifying tables 28-11
 - multiple 28-6
 - queries and 24-11
 - screening updates 28-11
- RecordSet property 25-18
- Recordset property 25-10
- RecordsetState property 25-10
- RecordStatus property 25-12, 25-13
- Rectangle method 10-5, 10-11, 50-3
- rectangles
 - drawing 10-11, 54-10
- redrawing images 50-7
- reference counting
 - COM objects 38-4
- reference fields 23-22, 23-26 to 23-27
 - displaying 19-24
- references
 - C++ vs Object Pascal 13-5
 - forms 8-3
- referential integrity 18-5
- Refresh method 19-6, 27-30
- RefreshLookupList
 - property 23-9
- RefreshRecord method 27-30, 28-3
- Register method 10-3
- Register procedure 52-2
- RegisterComponents
 - function 45-14
- RegisterComponents
 - procedure 15-6, 52-2
- RegisterConversionType
 - function 4-27
- RegisterHelpViewer 7-36
- registering
 - Active Server Objects 42-7 to 42-8
 - ActiveX controls 43-15 to 43-16
 - COM objects 41-16
 - component editors 52-18
 - components 45-13, 45-14
 - conversion families 4-26
 - CORBA interfaces 31-12
 - property editors 52-11 to 52-12
- registering Help objects 7-32
- RegisterNonActiveX
 - procedure 43-3
- RegisterPooled flag 29-9
- RegisterPropertyEditor
 - function 52-11
- registers
 - objects and A-5
- RegisterTypeLib function 38-18
- RegisterViewer function 7-32
- Registry 16-9
- REGSERV32.EXE 17-5
- relational databases 18-1
- Release 7-29
- Release method 38-4
 - TCriticalSection 11-8
- release notes 17-15
- releasing mouse buttons 10-25
- relocatable code 14-18
- remotable classes 36-4, 36-7 to 36-9
 - built-in 36-7
 - example 36-8 to 36-9
 - exceptions 36-14 to 36-15
 - lifetime management 36-8
 - registering 36-5
- remotable type registry 36-4, 36-15
- remote applications
 - TCP/IP 37-1
- remote connections 37-2 to 37-3
 - multiple 37-5
 - opening 37-6, 37-7
 - sending/receiving information 37-9
 - terminating 37-7
- Remote Data Module
 - wizard 29-13 to 29-14
- remote data modules 7-23, 29-3, 29-12, 29-13 to 29-16
 - child 29-20
 - COM-based 29-5, 29-20
 - implementation class 29-14
 - implementation object 29-5
 - multiple 29-20 to 29-21, 29-28
 - parent 29-20
 - pooling 29-8 to 29-9
 - stateless 29-7, 29-9, 29-19 to 29-20
 - threading models 29-14, 29-15
- Remote Database Management
 - system 18-3
- remote database servers 18-2
- remote servers 24-9, 38-7
 - maintaining
 - connections 24-18
 - unauthorized access 21-4
- REMOTEDATAMODULE_IMP
 - L macro 29-5
- RemoteHost property 37-6
- RemotePort property 37-6
- RemoteServer property 27-24, 27-25, 29-22, 29-26, 29-32, 29-34, 30-9
- remove function A-9
- RemoveAllPasswords
 - method 24-22
- RemovePassword
 - method 24-22
- rename function A-9

- RenameFile function 4-9
- renaming files A-9
- repainting controls 54-8, 54-10, 55-4, 55-5
- RepeatableRead 21-9
- reports 18-16
- Repository
 - See Object Repository
- Request for Comment (RFC) documents 32-3
- request headers 33-9
- request messages 33-2, 33-3, 42-4
 - action items and 33-5
 - contents 33-10
 - dispatching 33-5
 - header information 33-8 to 33-10
 - HTTP overview 32-5 to 32-6
 - processing 33-5
 - responding to 33-7 to 33-8, 33-12
 - types 33-9
 - XML brokers 29-35
- request objects
 - header information 33-4
- RequestLive property 24-10
- RequestRecords method 29-35
- requests
 - adapters 34-35
 - dispatching 34-33
 - images 34-37
- Requires list (packages) 15-6, 15-7, 15-8, 15-9, 52-19
- .res files 45-15
- ResetEvent method 11-10
- resizing controls 9-6, 17-12, 55-4
 - graphics 50-6
- ResolveToDataSet
 - property 28-4
- resolving 28-1, 29-4
- resource dispensers 44-5
 - ADO 44-6
 - BDE 44-6
- Resource DLLs
 - dynamic switching 16-12
 - wizard 16-10
- resource files 8-42
 - loading 8-42
- resource modules 16-10, 16-11
- resource pooling 44-5 to 44-9
- resource strings 13-20
- resources 45-7, 50-1
 - caching 50-2
 - isolating 16-10

- localizing 16-10, 16-11, 16-12
- naming 52-4
- strings 16-10
- system, optimizing 45-4
- resourcestring macro 13-21
- response headers 33-12
- response messages 33-3, 42-5
 - contents 33-12, 33-13 to 33-20
 - creating 33-10 to 33-12, 33-13 to 33-20
 - database information 33-17 to 33-20
 - header information 33-11 to 33-12
 - sending 33-8, 33-12
 - status information 33-11
- response templates 33-13
- responses
 - actions 34-36
 - adapters 34-35
 - images 34-37
- RestoreDefaults method 19-21
- restrictions A-1
- Result parameter 51-7
- result parameters 22-50
- Resume method 11-11
- retaining aborts 25-6
- retaining commits 25-6
- ReturnValue property 11-9
- RevertRecord method 14-25, 24-32, 27-6
- RFC documents 32-3
- rich edit controls 9-2
- rich text controls 6-6, 19-9
- role-based security 44-16
- Rollback method 21-8
- RollbackTrans method 21-9
- root directories
 - Linux 14-15
- rounded rectangles 10-11
- rounding rules A-4
- RoundRect method 10-5, 10-11
- routines
 - null-terminated 4-23 to 4-24
- RowAttributes property 33-19
- RowCount property 19-12, 19-28
- RowHeights property 6-14, 9-15
- RowRequest method 28-3
- rows 9-15
 - decision grids 20-11
- Rows property 9-15
- RowsAffected property 22-48
- RPC 38-8
- RTTI 46-7

- C++ vs Object Pascal 13-22
- invokable interfaces 36-2
- rubber banding example 10-23 to 10-29
- runtime interfaces 46-7
- runtime library 4-1
- runtime packages 15-1, 15-3 to 15-4
- runtime type information 46-7

S

- safe arrays 39-12
- safe pointers
 - exception handling 12-5
- safe references 44-25
- SafeArray 39-12
- SafeRef method 44-25
- Samples page (Component palette) 5-8
- Save as Template command (Menu designer) 8-37, 8-39
- Save Attributes command 23-13
- Save Template dialog box 8-40
- SaveConfigFile method 24-25
- SavePoint property 27-6
- SaveToFile method 10-20
 - ADO datasets 25-14
 - client datasets 18-9, 27-34
 - graphics 50-4
 - strings 4-15
- SaveToStream method
 - client datasets 27-34
- scalability 18-11
- ScanLine property
 - bitmap example 10-18
- schema information 26-12 to 26-16
 - fields 26-14 to 26-15
 - indexes 26-15 to 26-16
 - stored procedures 26-14, 26-16
 - tables 26-13 to 26-14
- ScktSrvr.exe 29-10, 29-13, 29-23
- SCM 7-5
- screen
 - refreshing 10-2
 - resolution 17-12
 - programming for 17-12
- Screen variable 8-2, 16-8
- script objects 34-32
- ScriptAlias directive 17-11
- scripting 34-7
 - server-side 34-30 to 34-33
- scripts
 - active 34-31

- editing and viewing 34-32
 - generating in
 - WebSnap 34-32
 - URLs 32-3
- scroll bars 9-4
 - text windows 6-7
- scrollable bitmaps 10-17
- ScrollBars property 6-7, 9-15
 - data-aware memo
 - controls 19-9
- SDI applications 7-1 to 7-3
- search lists (Help systems) 52-5
- searching for files A-7
- Sections property 9-13
- security
 - databases 18-3 to 18-4, 21-4
 - to 21-5, 24-21 to 24-23
 - DCOM 29-33
 - local tables 24-21 to 24-23
 - multi-tiered
 - applications 29-2
 - registering socket
 - connections 29-10
 - SOAP connections 29-25
 - transactional data
 - modules 29-7, 29-9
 - transactional objects 44-16
 - Web connections 29-10, 29-24
- Seek method
 - ADO datasets 22-27
- Select Menu command (Menu designer) 8-37
- Select Menu dialog box 8-38
- SELECT statements 22-42
- SelectAll method 9-3
- SelectCell method 55-14, 56-4
- Selecting 34-10
- Selection property 9-15
- SelectKeyword 7-31
- selectors
 - Help 7-32
- SelEnd property 9-5
- SelLength property 6-8, 9-2
- SelStart property 6-8, 9-2, 9-5
- SelText property 6-8, 9-2
- SendBuf method 37-8
- Sender parameter 5-5
 - example 10-7
- sending messages 51-8 to 51-10
- SendIn method 37-8
- SendMessage method 51-9
- SendStream method 37-8
- separator bars (menus) 8-33
- sequential values, assigning to
 - constants 10-12
- server applications
 - architecture 29-5
 - COM 38-5 to 38-9, 41-1 to 41-17
 - CORBA 31-2, 31-4 to 31-13
 - interfaces 37-2
 - multi-tiered 29-5 to 29-11, 29-12 to 29-17
 - registering 29-11, 29-21, 31-12 to 31-13
 - OAD 31-3
 - services 37-1
 - Web Services 36-9 to 36-16
- server connections 37-2, 37-3
 - port numbers 37-5
- server sockets 37-7 to 37-8
 - accepting client
 - requests 37-7, 37-9
 - error messages 37-8
 - event handling 37-9
 - socket objects 37-7
 - specifying 37-6
- server types 34-8
- ServerGUID property 29-22
- ServerName property 29-22
- servers
 - Internet 32-1 to 32-11
 - Web application
 - debugger 34-8
- Servers page (Component palette) 5-8
- server-side scripting 34-7, 34-30
 - to 34-33, B-1 to B-38
 - global objects B-14 to B-18
 - JScript examples B-19 to B-38
 - object types B-1 to B-13
- service applications 7-4 to 7-9
 - debugging 7-9
 - example 7-7
 - example code 7-5, 7-7
- Service Control Manager 7-5, 7-9
- Service Start name 7-9
- service threads 7-7
- services 7-4 to 7-9
 - CORBA 31-1
 - directory 31-2, 31-3
 - example 7-7
 - example code 7-5, 7-7
 - implementing 37-1 to 37-2, 37-7
 - installing 7-5
 - name properties 7-9
- network servers 37-1
- ports and 37-2
- requesting 37-6
- Tools API 58-2, 58-7 to 58-14
- uninstalling 7-5
- Session variable 24-3, 24-16
- SessionName property 24-3, 24-12, 24-27 to 24-28, 33-17
- sessions 24-16 to 24-29
 - activating 24-17 to 24-18
 - associated databases 24-20 to 24-21
 - closing 24-18
 - closing connections 24-19
 - creating 24-26 to 24-27, 24-28
 - current state 24-17
 - databases and 24-12 to 24-13
 - datasets and 24-3 to 24-4
 - default 24-3, 24-12, 24-16 to 24-17
 - default connection
 - properties 24-18
 - getting information 24-26
 - implicit database
 - connections 24-13
 - managing aliases 24-24
 - managing connections 24-19 to 24-21
 - methods 24-13
 - multiple 24-13, 24-26, 24-28 to 24-29
 - multi-threaded
 - applications 24-13, 24-28 to 24-29
 - naming 24-27 to 24-28, 33-17
 - opening connections 24-19
 - passwords 24-21
 - restarting 24-18
 - Web applications 33-17
- Sessions property 24-29
- sessions service 34-9, 34-25, 34-26
- Sessions variable 24-17, 24-28
- set types 47-2
- SetAbort method 44-5, 44-9, 44-12
- SetBrushStyle method 10-8
- SetComplete method 29-17, 44-5, 44-9, 44-12
- SetData method 23-16
- SetEvent method 11-10
- SetFields method 22-21
- SetFloatValue method 52-9
- SetKey method 22-28
 - EditKey vs. 22-29

- SetMethodValue method 52-9
- SetOptionalParam method 27-15
- SetOrdValue method 52-9
- SetPenStyle method 10-7
- SetProvider method 27-24
- SetRange method 22-32
- SetRangeEnd method 22-31
 - SetRange vs. 22-32
- SetRangeStart method 22-31
 - SetRange vs. 22-32
- sets 47-2
- SetSchemaInfo method 26-12
- SetStrValue method 52-9
- SetUnhandledExceptionFilter function 12-7
- SetValue method 52-9
- Shape property 9-17
- shapes 9-17, 10-11 to 10-12, 10-14
 - drawing 10-11, 10-14
 - filling 10-8
 - filling with bitmap property 10-9
 - outlining 10-5
- shared object files *See* .so files
- shared property groups 44-6
- Shared Property Manager 44-6
 - to 44-9
 - example 44-7 to 44-9
- sharing forms and dialogs 7-24 to 7-26
- shell scripts
 - Linux 14-13
- Shift states 10-24
- ShortCut property 8-33
- Show method 8-6, 8-7
- ShowAccelChar property 9-4
- ShowButtons property 9-10
- ShowColumnHeaders property 9-11
- ShowFocus property 19-28
- ShowHint property 9-15, 19-30
- ShowHintChanged method 51-14
- ShowLines property 9-11
- ShowModal method 8-5
- ShowRoot property 9-11
- ShutDown 7-28, 7-29
- signal function A-8
- signalling events 11-10
- signals
 - Linux 14-14
 - responding to (CLX) 51-10 to 51-12

- Simple Object Access Protocol
 - See* SOAP
- simple types 47-2
- single document interface 7-1 to 7-3
- single-tiered applications 18-3, 18-9, 18-12
 - file-based 18-9
- Size property
 - fields 23-12
 - parameters 22-45, 22-51
- sizeof operator 13-17, A-7
- skeletons 31-2, 31-2, 31-6
 - delegation and 31-8
 - marshaling 31-2
- slow processes
 - using threads 11-1
- Smart Agents 31-2, 31-3
 - locating 31-3
- .so files 14-8, 14-13
- SOAP 36-1
 - application wizard 36-11
 - connecting to application servers 29-25
 - connections 29-11, 29-25
 - data modules 29-6
 - fault packets 36-14
 - multi-tiered applications 29-11
- SOAP Data Module
 - wizard 29-15 to 29-16
- socket components 37-5 to 37-8
- socket connections 29-9 to 29-10, 29-23, 37-2 to 37-3
 - closing 37-7
 - endpoints 37-3, 37-5
 - multiple 37-5
 - opening 37-6, 37-7
 - sending/receiving information 37-9
 - types 37-2
- socket dispatcher
 - application 29-10, 29-13, 29-23
- socket objects 37-5
 - client sockets 37-6
 - clients 37-6
 - server sockets 37-7
- sockets 37-1 to 37-10
 - accepting client requests 37-3
 - assigning hosts 37-4
 - describing 37-3
 - error handling 37-8
 - event handling 37-8 to 37-9, 37-10

- implementing services 37-1
 - to 37-2, 37-7
- network addresses 37-3, 37-4
- providing information 37-4
- reading from 37-10
- reading/writing 37-9 to 37-10
 - writing to 37-10
- SoftShutDown 7-28
- software license
 - requirements 17-15
- sort order 16-9
 - client datasets 27-7
 - descending 27-8
 - setting 22-27
 - TSQLTable 26-7
- Sorted property 9-9, 19-11
- SortFieldNames property 26-7
- source code
 - editing 2-2
 - optimizing 10-15
 - reusing
 - viewing
 - specific event handlers 5-4
- source datasets, defined 24-47
- source files A-7
 - changing 2-2
 - packages 15-2
 - sharing (Linux) 14-12
- SourceXml property 30-6
- SourceXmlDocument property 30-6
- SourceXmlFile property 30-6
- Spacing property 9-7
- SparseCols property 20-9
- SparseRows property 20-9
- speed buttons 9-7
 - adding to toolbars 8-43 to 8-45
 - assigning glyphs 8-44
 - centering 8-44
 - engaging as toggles 8-45
 - event handlers 10-13
 - for drawing tools 10-13
 - grouping 8-45
 - initial state, setting 8-44
 - operational modes 8-43
- spin edit controls 9-5
- splitters 9-6
- SPX/IPX 24-15
- SQL 18-2, 24-8
 - executing commands 21-10 to 21-11
 - local 24-9

- standards 28-12
 - Decision Query editor and 20-6
- SQL Builder 22-43
- SQL client datasets 27-21 to 27-22
- SQL Explorer 24-53, 29-3
 - defining attribute sets 23-13
- SQL Links 17-8, 24-1
 - deploying 17-9
 - driver files 17-9
 - drivers 24-9, 24-15, 24-30
 - license requirements 17-15
- SQL Monitor 24-53
- SQL property 22-42 to 22-43
 - changing 22-47
- SQL queries 22-42 to 22-43
 - copying 22-43
 - executing 22-47 to 22-48
 - loading from files 22-43
 - modifying 22-43
 - optimizing 22-48
 - parameters 22-43 to 22-46, 24-41 to 24-42
 - binding 22-44
 - master/detail relationships 22-46 to 22-47
 - setting at design time 22-44
 - setting at runtime 22-45
 - preparing 22-47
 - result sets 22-48
 - update objects 24-45
- SQL servers
 - logging in 18-4
- SQL statements
 - client-supplied 27-31, 28-6
 - decision datasets 20-4, 20-5
 - executing 26-9 to 26-10
 - generating
 - providers 28-4, 28-9 to 28-10
 - TSQldataSet 26-8
 - parameters 21-11
 - passthrough SQL 24-30
 - provider-generated 28-11
 - update objects and 24-40 to 24-43
- SQLConnection property 26-2, 26-17
- SQLPASSTHRUMODE 24-30
- squares, drawing 54-10
- standard components 5-6 to 5-8
- standard events 48-4
 - customizing 48-5
- Standard page (Component palette) 5-7
- StartTransaction method 21-7
- state information
 - communicating 28-7, 28-8, 29-19 to 29-20
 - managing 44-5
 - mouse events 10-24
 - shared properties 44-6
 - transactional objects 44-12
- State property 9-7
 - datasets 22-3, 23-8
 - grid columns 19-16
 - grids 19-15, 19-17
- stateless objects 44-12
- static binding
 - COM 38-17
 - CORBA 31-13
- static text control 9-3
- status bars 9-14
 - internationalizing 16-8
 - owner draw 6-11
- status information 9-14
- StatusCode property 33-11
- StatusFilter property 14-25, 24-32, 25-12, 27-6, 27-19, 28-8
- StdConvs unit 4-25, 4-26, 4-28
- Step property 9-14
- StepBy method 9-14
- StepIt method 9-14
- storage class specifiers
 - register A-5
- stored procedures 18-5, 22-24, 22-48 to 22-53
 - BDE-based 24-2, 24-11 to 24-12
 - parameter binding 24-11
 - creating 26-11
 - dbExpress 26-7 to 26-8
 - executing 22-53
 - listing 21-14
 - overloaded 24-12
 - parameters 22-50 to 22-52
 - design time 22-50 to 22-51
 - from client datasets 27-28
 - properties 22-51
 - runtime 22-52
 - preparing 22-52 to 22-53
 - specifying the database 22-49
- StoredProcName property 22-49
- StrByteType 4-21
- streams 4-2
 - copying data 4-3
 - position 4-3
 - reading and writing data 4-2
 - seeking 4-3
 - size 4-3
 - storage media 4-3
- strerror function A-11
- Stretch property 19-10
- StretchDraw method 10-5, 50-3, 50-6
- string fields
 - size 23-6
- string grids 9-15, 9-16
- String List editor
 - displaying 19-10
- string lists 4-15 to 4-19
 - adding to 4-18
 - associated objects 4-19
 - copying 4-19
 - creating 4-16 to 4-17
 - deleting strings 4-19
 - finding strings 4-18
 - iterating through 4-18
 - loading from files 4-15
 - long-term 4-16
 - moving strings 4-18
 - owner-draw controls 6-12 to 6-13
 - persistent 4-14
 - position in 4-18
 - saving to files 4-15
 - short-term 4-16
 - sorting 4-18
 - substrings 4-18
- strings 4-19, 47-2, 47-8
 - 2-byte conversions 16-3
 - associating graphics 6-12
 - changing permanently A-11
 - declaring and initializing 4-25
 - HTML templates 33-14
 - null-terminated 4-23 to 4-24
 - returning 47-8
 - routines
 - case sensitivity 4-21
 - Multi-byte character support 4-21
 - runtime library 4-19
 - size 6-8
 - sorting 16-9
 - starting position 6-8
 - translating 16-2, 16-8, 16-10
 - truncating 16-3
- Strings property 4-18
- StrNextChar function

- Linux 14-16
- structured exceptions 12-6
- Structured Query Language
 - See* SQL
- structures A-5
- stubs 31-2, 31-6, 31-14 to 31-15
 - COM 38-8
 - global variables and 31-15
 - marshaling 31-2
 - transactional objects 44-2
- Style property 6-12, 9-9
 - brushes 9-17, 10-8
 - combo boxes 9-10, 19-11
 - list boxes 9-9
 - pens 10-5
 - tool buttons 8-47
 - Web items 29-38
- style sheets 29-38
- StyleChanged method 51-14
- StyleRule property 29-38
- styles
 - TApplication 14-6
- Styles property 29-38
- StylesFile property 29-38
- subclassing Windows
 - controls 45-4
- subcomponents
 - properties 47-9
- submenus 8-34
- subscriber objects 40-15
- Subtotals property 20-12
- summary values
 - crosstabs 20-2, 20-3
 - decision cubes 20-19
 - decision graphs 20-15
 - maintained aggregates 27-13
- support options 1-3
- SupportCallbacks
 - property 29-17
- Suspend method 11-11
- switch statements
 - case values A-6
- Sybase driver
 - deploying 17-9
- Synchronize method 11-4
- synchronizing data
 - on multiple forms 19-4
- system events
 - customizing 51-15
- system notifications 51-10 to 51-15
- System page (Component palette) 5-7
- system resources,
 - conserving 45-4

T

- tab controls 9-13
 - owner-draw 6-11
- tab sets 9-13
- Table HTML tag
 - (<TABLE>) 33-14
- table producers 33-18 to 33-20
- TableAttributes property 33-19
- TableName property 22-25, 22-38, 26-7
- TableOfContents 7-31
- tables 22-23, 22-25 to 22-41
 - BDE-based 24-2, 24-4 to 24-8
 - access rights 24-6
 - appending records 24-8
 - batch operations 24-7 to 24-8
 - binding 24-5
 - closing 24-5
 - copying records 24-8
 - deleteing records 24-8
 - exclusive locks 24-6
 - index-based
 - searches 22-27
 - updating records 24-8
 - creating 22-37 to 22-39
 - indexes 22-38
 - persistent fields 22-38
 - dbExpress 26-6 to 26-7
 - defining 22-38
 - deleting 22-40
 - displaying in grids 19-16
 - emptying 22-40
 - field and index
 - definitions 22-38
 - preloading 22-39
 - indexes 22-26 to 22-37
 - inserting records 22-18 to 22-19, 22-21
 - listing 21-13
 - master/detail
 - relationships 22-34 to 22-37
 - nested 22-36 to 22-37
 - non-database grids 9-15
 - ranges 22-30 to 22-34
 - read-only 22-37
 - searching 22-27 to 22-30
 - sorting 22-26, 26-7
 - specifying the
 - database 22-25
 - synchronizing 22-41
- TableType property 22-38, 24-5 to 24-6
- tabs
 - draw-item events 6-15
- Tabs property 9-13
- TabStopChanged method 51-14
- tabular display (grids) 9-15
- tabular grids 19-27
- TAction 8-20
- TActionClientItem 8-22
- TActionList 8-18, 8-19
- TActionMainMenuBar 8-17, 8-18, 8-19, 8-20, 8-21, 8-22
- TActionManager 8-17, 8-19
- TActionToolBar 8-17, 8-18, 8-19, 8-20, 8-21, 8-22
- TActiveForm 43-3, 43-6
- TAdapterDispatcher 34-34
- TAdapterPageProducer 34-32
- TADOCCommand 25-2, 25-7, 25-9, 25-16 to 25-19
- TADOConnection 18-8, 21-1, 25-2, 25-2 to 25-8, 25-9
 - connecting to data
 - stores 25-3 to 25-4
- TADODataset 25-2, 25-8, 25-9, 25-15 to 25-16
- TADOQuery 25-2, 25-8, 25-9
 - SQL command 25-16
- TADOStoredProc 25-2, 25-8, 25-9
- TADOTable 25-2, 25-8, 25-9
- Tag property 23-12
- TApplication 7-27, 7-34
 - Styles 14-6
 - system events 51-12
- TApplicationEvents 8-2
- TASM code
 - Linux 14-16
- TASPObject 42-2
- TAutoDriver 40-5, 40-12, 40-13
- TBatchMove 24-47 to 24-51
 - error handling 24-51
- TBCDField
 - default formatting 23-15
- TBDEClientDataSet 24-2
- TBDEDataSet 22-2
- TBevel 9-17
- TBitmap 50-4
- TBrush 9-17
- tbsCheck constant 8-47
- TByteDynArray 36-4
- TCalendar 55-1
- TCanvas
 - using 4-19
- TCharProperty type 52-8
- TClassProperty type 52-8

- TClientDataSet 27-18
- TClientDataset 7-23
- TClientSocket 37-6
- TColorProperty type 52-8
- TComInterface 40-5, 40-12
- TComponent 3-4, 3-7, 45-5
 - defined 3-5
 - interfaces and 13-4, 13-5
- TComponentClass 45-13
- TComponentProperty type 52-8
- TControl 3-8, 45-4, 48-4, 48-5
 - defined 3-5
- TConvType values 4-26
- TConvTypeInfo 4-30
- TCoolBand 9-8
- TCoolBar 8-43
- TCP/IP 24-15, 37-1
 - clients 37-6
 - connecting to application server 29-23
 - multi-tiered applications 29-9 to 29-10
 - servers 37-7
- TCRemoteDataModule 29-14
- TCurrencyField
 - default formatting 23-15
- TCustomADODataset 22-2
- TCustomClientDataSet 22-2
- TCustomContentProducer 33-13
- TCustomControl 45-4
- TCustomEdit 14-7
- TCustomGrid 55-1, 55-3
- TCustomIniFile 4-11
- TCustomizeDlg 8-22
- TCustomListBox 45-3
- TDatabase 18-8, 21-1, 24-3, 24-12 to 24-16
 - DatabaseName property 24-3
 - temporary instances 24-19
 - dropping 24-20
- TDataSet 22-1
 - descendants 22-2 to 22-3
- TDataSetProvider 28-1, 28-2
- TDataSetTableProducer 33-20
- TDataSource 19-3 to 19-5
- TDateField
 - default formatting 23-15
- TDateTime type 55-6
- TDateTimeField
 - default formatting 23-15
- TDBChart 18-15
- TDBCheckBox 19-2, 19-13
- TDBComboBox 19-2, 19-10, 19-10 to 19-11
- TDBCtrlGrid 19-2, 19-27 to 19-28
 - properties 19-28
- TDBEdit 19-2, 19-8
- TDBGrid 19-2, 19-15 to 19-27
 - events 19-26
 - properties 19-20
- TDBGridColumn 19-15
- TDBImage 19-2, 19-9 to 19-10
- TDBListBox 19-2, 19-10, 19-10 to 19-11
- TDBLookupComboBox 19-2, 19-10, 19-11 to 19-12
- TDBLookupListBox 19-2, 19-10, 19-11 to 19-12
- TDBMemo 19-2, 19-8 to 19-9
- TDBNavigator 19-2, 19-28 to 19-31, 22-5, 22-6
- TDBRadioGroup 19-2, 19-13 to 19-14
- TDBRichEdit 19-2, 19-9
- TDBText 19-2, 19-8
- TDCOMConnection 29-23
- TDecisionCube 20-1, 20-4, 20-7 to 20-8
 - events 20-7
- TDecisionDrawState 20-12
- TDecisionGraph 20-1, 20-2, 20-13 to 20-18
 - events 20-12
 - properties 20-12
- TDecisionGrid 20-1, 20-2, 20-10 to 20-13
 - events 20-12
 - properties 20-10
- TDecisionQuery 20-1, 20-4, 20-6
- TDecisionSource 20-1, 20-9
 - events 20-9
 - properties 20-9
- TDefaultEditor 52-15
- TDependency_object 7-9
- TDragObject 6-3
- TDragObjectEx 6-3
- TDrawingTool 10-12
- technical support 1-3
- TEdit 9-1
- temperature units 4-28
- templates 7-24, 7-25
 - component 8-12
 - decision graphs 20-16
 - deleting 8-38
 - HTML 33-13 to 33-17
- menus 8-30, 8-37, 8-38
- page producers 34-4
- programming 7-3
- Web Broker applications 33-2
- temporary files A-10
- temporary objects 50-6
- TEnumProperty type 52-8
- terminate function 12-5
- Terminate method 11-6
- Terminated property 11-6
- termination block 12-13
- test server, Web Application Debugger 34-8
- testing
 - components 45-16, 45-18, 57-6 to 57-7
 - values 47-7
- TEvent 11-10
- TEventDispatcher 40-14
- text
 - copying, cutting, pasting 6-9
 - deleting 6-9
 - in controls 6-6
 - internationalizing 16-8
 - owner-draw controls 6-11
 - printing 9-3
 - reading right to left 16-6
 - searching for 9-3
 - selecting 6-8, 6-8
 - working with 6-6 to 6-11
- text controls 9-1 to 9-3
- Text property 9-2, 9-3, 9-10, 9-14
- text streams A-9
- TextChanged method 51-14
- TextHeight method 10-5, 50-3
- TextOut method 10-5, 50-3
- TextRect method 10-5, 50-3
- TextWidth method 10-5, 50-3
- TField 22-1, 23-1 to 23-27
 - events 23-15 to 23-16
 - methods 23-16
 - properties 23-1, 23-10 to 23-15
 - runtime 23-12
- TFieldDataLink 56-5
- TFiler 4-3
- TFileStream 4-2, 4-5
 - file I/O 4-5 to 4-7
- TFloatField
 - default formatting 23-15
- TFloatProperty type 52-8
- TFMTBcdField
 - default formatting 23-15
- TFontNameProperty type 52-8

- TFontProperty type 52-8
- TForm
 - scroll-bar properties 9-4
- TFrame 8-13
- TGraphic 50-4
- TGraphicControl 45-4, 54-3
- THandleComponent 51-11
- The 11-6
- THeaderControl 9-13
- thin client applications 29-2, 29-29
- this argument 45-16
- thread classes
 - defining 11-1
- thread function 11-4
- __thread modifier 11-5
- thread objects 11-1
 - defining 11-2
 - initializing 11-2
 - limitations 11-2
- Thread Status box 11-12
- thread variables 11-5
 - CORBA 31-11
- thread-aware objects 11-4
- ThreadID property 11-12
- threading models 41-5 to 41-8
 - ActiveX controls 43-5
 - Automation objects 41-4
 - COM objects 41-3
 - remote data modules 29-14
 - system registry 41-6
 - transactional data
 - modules 29-15
 - transactional objects 44-18 to 44-19
- thread-local variables 11-5
 - OnTerminate event 11-7
- threads 11-1 to 11-13
 - activities 44-19
 - avoiding simultaneous
 - access 11-7
 - BDE and 24-13
 - blocking execution 11-7
 - converting unnamed to
 - named 11-12
 - coordinating 11-4, 11-7 to 11-11
 - CORBA 31-11 to 31-12
 - creating 11-11
 - critical sections 11-8
 - data access components 11-4
 - exceptions 11-6
 - executing 11-11
 - freeing 11-2, 11-3
 - graphics objects 11-5
 - ids 11-12
 - initializing 11-2
 - ISAPI/NSAPI
 - programs 33-2, 33-17
 - limits on number 11-11
 - locking objects 11-7
 - message loop and 11-4
 - naming 11-12 to 11-13
 - priorities 11-1, 11-2
 - overriding 11-11
 - process space 11-4
 - returning values 11-9
 - service 7-7
 - stopping 11-11
 - terminating 11-6
 - using lists 11-5
 - VCL thread 11-4
 - waiting for 11-9
 - multiple 11-10
 - waiting for events 11-10
- thread-safe objects 11-4
- three-tiered applications *See* multi-tiered applications
- throw statement 12-1, 12-2, 12-17
- THTMLTableAttributes 33-18
- THTMLTableColumn 33-19
- THTTPrIo 36-16
- THTTPSoapCppInvoker 36-9, 36-11
- THTTPSoapDispatcher 36-9, 36-11
- TIBCustomDataSet 22-2
- TIBDatabase 18-8, 21-1
- TickMarks property 9-5
- TickStyle property 9-5
- TIcon 50-4
- tie classes 31-8 to 31-9
 - VCL and 31-8
- tiers 29-1
- TiledDraw method 50-6
- TImage
 - in frames 8-15
- TImageList 8-46
- time A-11
 - internationalizing 16-9
- time conversion 4-27
- time fields
 - formatting 23-14
- time formats A-11
- __TIME__ macro A-7
- timeout events 11-11
- timers 5-6
- times
 - entering 9-11
- TIniFile 4-10
- TIntegerProperty type 52-8
- TInterfacedObject 13-4, 13-5
- TInvokableClass 36-12
- Title property
 - data grids 19-20
- TKeyPressEvent 48-3
- TLabel 9-3, 45-4
- .TLB files 38-17, 39-2, 39-19
- TLCDNumber 9-1
- TLIBIMP command-line
 - tool 38-18, 40-2, 40-6, 41-14
- TListBox 45-3
- TLocalConnection 27-24, 29-5
- TMainMenu 8-19
- TMaskEdit 9-1
- TMemIniFile 4-10, 14-6
- TMemo 9-1
- TMemoryStream 4-2
- TMessage 51-5, 51-7
- TMetafile 50-4
- TMethod type 51-11
- TMethodProperty type 52-8
- TMTSASPObject 42-2
- TMTsDll 44-4, 44-25
- TMultiReadExclusiveWriteSync
 - hronizer 11-8
- TNestedDataSet 22-36
- TNotifyEvent 48-7
- TObject 3-4, 13-9, 13-23, 13-28, 46-4
 - defined 3-5
- ToCommon 4-30
- toggles 8-45, 8-47
- TOleContainer 40-15 to 40-16
 - Active Documents 38-14
- TOleControl 40-6, 40-7
- TOleServer 40-6
- tool buttons 8-46
 - adding images 8-46
 - disabling 8-46
 - engaging as toggles 8-47
 - getting help with 8-48
 - grouping/ungrouping 8-47
 - in multiple rows 8-46
 - initial state, setting 8-46
 - wrapping 8-46
- toolbars 8-42, 9-8
 - action lists 8-18
 - adding 8-45 to 8-47
 - adding panels as 8-43 to 8-45
 - context menus 8-48
 - creating 8-19
 - default drawing tool 8-45
 - defined 8-17

- designing 8-42 to 8-49
- disabling buttons 8-46
- hiding 8-49
- inserting buttons 8-43 to 8-45, 8-46
- owner-draw 6-11
- setting margins 8-44
- speed buttons 9-7
- transparent 8-46, 8-48
- Tools API 58-1 to 58-24
 - creating files 58-14 to 58-18
 - creators 58-3, 58-14 to 58-18
 - debugging 58-11
 - editors 58-3, 58-12 to 58-14
 - modules 58-3, 58-12 to 58-14
 - notifiers 58-3
 - services 58-2, 58-7 to 58-14
 - wizards 58-3, 58-3 to 58-7
- ToolsAPI unit 58-2
- tool-tip help 9-15
- Top property 8-4, 8-44
- TopRow property 9-15
- TOrdinalProperty type 52-8
- TPageControl 9-13
- TPageDispatcher 34-34
- TPageProducer 33-13
- TPaintBox 9-17
- TPanel 8-42, 9-12
- TPersistent 13-7
 - defined 3-5
- tpHigher constant 11-3
- tpHighest constant 11-3
- TPicture type 50-4
- tpIdle constant 11-3
- tpLower constant 11-3
- tpLowest constant 11-3
- tpNormal constant 11-3
- TPopupMenu 8-48
- Tpp linker option 15-12
- TPrinter 4-25
 - using 3-4
- TPropertyAttributes 52-10
- TPropertyEditor class 52-7
- TPropertyPage 43-13
- tpTimeCritical constant 11-3
- TQuery 24-2, 24-8 to 24-11
 - decision datasets and 20-5
- TQueryTableProducer 33-20
- track bars 9-5
- transaction attributes
 - setting 44-11
 - transactional data modules 29-15
- transaction isolation level 21-9 to 21-10
 - local transactions 24-31
 - specifying 21-10
 - transaction parameters
 - isolation level 21-10
 - Transactional Data Module wizard 29-14 to 29-15
 - transactional data modules 29-6 to 29-8
 - database connections 29-6, 29-8
 - pooling 29-7
 - implementation class 29-14
 - interface 29-17
 - security 29-9
 - threading models 29-15
 - transaction attributes 29-15
 - Transactional Object wizard 44-17 to 44-20
 - transactional objects 38-10, 38-14 to 38-15, 44-1 to 44-28
 - activities 44-19 to 44-20
 - administering 38-15, 44-28
 - callbacks 44-25 to 44-26
 - characteristics 44-2 to 44-3
 - creating 44-17 to 44-20
 - deactivation 44-5
 - debugging 44-26
 - dual interfaces 44-3
 - installing 44-27
 - managing resources 44-3 to 44-9
 - marshaling 44-3
 - object contexts 44-4
 - pooling database connections 44-6
 - releasing resources 44-9
 - requirements 44-3
 - security 44-16
 - sharing properties 44-6 to 44-9
 - stateless 44-12
 - transactions 44-5, 44-10 to 44-16
 - type libraries 44-3
 - transactions 18-4 to 18-5, 21-6 to 21-10
 - ADO 25-6, 25-8
 - retaining aborts 25-6
 - retaining commits 25-6
 - applying updates 21-6, 29-17
 - atomicity 18-4, 44-10
 - attributes 44-11 to 44-12
 - automatic 44-13
 - BDE 24-29 to 24-31
 - controlling 24-30 to 24-31
 - implicit 24-29
 - cached updates 24-33
 - client-controlled 44-13 to 44-14
 - committing 21-8
 - composed of multiple objects 44-10
 - consistency 18-4, 44-10
 - durability 18-4, 44-10
 - ending 21-8 to 21-9, 44-12 to 44-13
 - IAppServer 29-18
 - isolation 18-4, 44-10
 - levels 21-9 to 21-10
 - local 24-31
 - local tables 21-6
 - MTS and COM+ 44-10 to 44-16
 - multi-tiered
 - applications 29-17 to 29-18
 - nested 21-7
 - committing 21-8
 - object contexts 44-10
 - overlapped 21-7
 - rolling back 21-8 to 21-9
 - server-controlled 44-14 to 44-15
 - spanning multiple databases 44-10
 - starting 21-6 to 21-7
 - timeouts 44-15 to 44-16, 44-26
 - transaction components 21-7
 - transactional data modules 29-7, 29-15, 29-17 to 29-18
 - transactional objects 44-5, 44-10 to 44-16
 - using SQL commands 21-6, 24-30
 - transfer records 57-2
 - transformation files 30-1 to 30-6
 - TXMLTransform 30-7
 - TXMLTransformClient 30-9
 - TXMLTransformProvider 30-8
 - user-defined nodes 30-5, 30-7 to 30-8
 - TransformGetData
 - property 30-9
 - TransformRead property 30-8
 - TransformSetParams
 - property 30-9
 - TransformWrite property 30-8
 - transient subscriptions 40-15

- TransIsolation property 21-10
 - local transactions 24-31
- translating character
 - strings 16-2, 16-8, 16-10
 - 2-byte conversions 16-3
- translation 16-8
- translation tools 16-1
- Transliterate property 23-12, 24-48
- transparent backgrounds 16-9
- Transparent property 9-4
- transparent toolbars 8-46, 8-48
- TReader 4-3
- tree views 9-10
 - owner-draw 6-11
- TRegIniFile 14-6
- TRegistry 4-10
- TRegistryIniFile 4-10, 4-11
- TRegSvr 17-5, 38-18, 38-19
- TRemotable 36-7
- TRemoteDataModuleRegistrar 29-9
- triangles 10-11
- TRichEdit 9-1
- triggers 18-5
- try block 12-1, 12-2
- __try keyword 12-7
- try statement 12-10
- TScrollBar 9-4, 9-12
- TSearchRec 4-7
- TServerSocket 37-7
- TService_object 7-9
- TSession 24-16 to 24-29
 - adding 24-27, 24-28
- TSetElementProperty type 52-8
- TSetProperty type 52-8
- TSharedConnection 29-28
- TSocketConnection 29-23
- TSpinEdit control 9-5
- TSQLClientDataSet 26-2
- TSQLConnection 18-8, 21-1, 26-2 to 26-5
 - binding 26-3 to 26-5
 - monitoring messages 26-17
- TSQLDataSet 26-2, 26-6, 26-7
- TSQLMonitor 26-17
- TSQLQuery 26-2, 26-6
- TSQLStoredProc 26-2, 26-7
- TSQLTable 26-2, 26-7
- TSQLTimeStampField
 - default formatting 23-15
- TStoredProc 24-2, 24-11 to 24-12
- TStream 4-2
- TStringList 4-15 to 4-19, 7-30
- TStringProperty type 52-8
- TStrings 4-15 to 4-19
- TTabControl 9-13
- TTable 24-2, 24-4 to 24-8
 - decision datasets and 20-5
- TTextBrowser 9-1
- TTextViewer 9-1
- TThread 11-2
- TThreadList 11-5, 11-7
- TTimeField
 - default formatting 23-15
- TToolBar 8-19, 8-43, 8-45
- TToolButton 8-43
- TTreeView 9-10
- TUpdateSQL 24-39 to 24-47
 - providers and 24-11
- tutorial
 - WebSnap 34-11 to 34-22
- TWebActionItem 33-3
- TWebAppDataModule 34-2
- TWebAppPageModule 34-2
- TWebConnection 29-24
- TWebContext 34-33
- TWebDataModule 34-2
- TWebDispatcher 34-34, 34-38
- TWebPageModule 34-2
- TWebResponse 33-3
- TWidgetControl 14-5
 - defined 3-5
- TWinControl 3-9, 13-8, 13-11, 14-5, 16-8, 45-4, 48-5
 - defined 3-5
- TWMouse type 51-7
- two-phase commit 29-17
- two-tiered applications 18-3, 18-9, 18-12
- TWriter 4-3
- TWSDLHTMLPublish 36-10, 36-15
- TWSDLHTMLPublisher 36-11
- TXMLDocument 35-3 to 35-4, 35-8
- XMLTransform 30-6 to 30-8
 - source documents 30-6
- XMLTransformClient 30-9 to 30-10
 - parameters 30-9
- XMLTransformProvider 28-1, 28-2, 30-8
- type declarations
 - enumerated types 10-12, 10-13
 - properties 54-4
- type definitions
 - Type Library editor 39-9 to 39-10
- type information 38-16, 39-1
 - dispinterfaces 41-12
 - Help 39-8
 - IDispatch interface 41-13
 - importing 40-2 to 40-6
- type libraries 38-11, 38-12, 38-16 to 38-18, 39-1 to 39-19
 - _TLB unit 38-23, 39-2, 39-13, 40-2, 40-5 to 40-6, 41-14
 - accessing 38-17 to 38-18, 39-13, 40-2 to 40-6
 - Active Server Objects 42-3
 - ActiveX controls 43-3
 - adding
 - methods 39-14 to 39-15
 - properties 39-14 to 39-15
 - adding interfaces 39-13
 - benefits 38-18
 - browsers 38-18
 - browsing 38-19
 - contents 38-16, 39-1, 40-5 to 40-6
 - creating 38-17, 39-12 to 39-13
 - deploying 39-19
 - exporting as IDL 39-19
 - generated by wizards 39-1
 - IDL and ODL 38-17
 - importing 40-2 to 40-6
 - including as resources 39-19, 43-3
 - interfaces 38-18
 - modifying interfaces 39-14 to 39-15
 - opening 39-13
 - optimizing
 - performance 39-8
 - registering 38-18, 38-19, 39-18
 - registering objects 38-18
 - saving 39-18
 - tools 38-18
 - transactional objects 44-3
 - uninstalling 38-18
 - unregistering 38-18, 38-19
 - valid types 39-11 to 39-12
 - when to use 38-17
- Type Library editor 38-17, 39-2 to 39-19
 - adding interfaces 39-13
 - aliases 39-10
 - adding 39-16
 - application servers 29-16
 - binding attributes 43-12
 - CoClasses 39-9
 - adding 39-15 to 39-16

- COM+ page 44-5, 44-9
- displayer interfaces 39-9
- elements 39-8 to 39-10
 - common
 - characteristics 39-8
- enumerated types 39-9 to 39-10
 - adding 39-16
- error messages 39-5, 39-7
- interfaces 39-8 to 39-9
 - modifying 39-14 to 39-15
- methods
 - adding 39-14 to 39-15
- modules 39-10
 - adding 39-17
- Object list pane 39-4 to 39-5
- opening libraries 39-13
- parts 39-2 to 39-7
- properties
 - adding 39-14 to 39-15
- records and unions 39-10
 - adding 39-16 to 39-17
- saving and registering type information 39-17 to 39-19
- selecting elements 39-5
- status bar 39-5
- text page 39-7, 39-14
- toolbar 39-3 to 39-4
- type definitions 39-9 to 39-10
- type information pages 39-5 to 39-7
- updating 39-18
- type reserved word 10-12
- typedef, Object Pascal to C++ 13-15
- types
 - Automation 41-14 to 41-15
 - C++ vs Object Pascal 13-19
 - Char 16-3
 - event handlers 48-3
 - holder classes 36-6
 - message-record 51-7
 - MIME 10-22
 - naming 10-12
 - properties 47-2, 47-8, 52-9
 - type libraries 39-11 to 39-12
 - unspecified 13-16
 - user-defined 54-4
 - Web Services 36-3 to 36-9

U

- UCS standard 14-19
- UDP protocol 37-1
- Unassociate Attributes command 23-14

- underflow range errors
 - math functions and A-8
- undocking controls 6-6
- UndoLastChange method 27-5
- unexpected function 12-4
- unhandled exceptions 12-6
- UnhandledExceptionFilter function 12-7
- Unicode characters 16-3, 16-4
 - strings 4-20
- unidirectional cursors 22-48
- unidirectional datasets 26-1 to 26-18
 - binding 26-5 to 26-8
 - connecting to servers 26-2
 - editing data 26-10
 - executing commands 26-9 to 26-10
 - fetching data 26-8
 - fetching metadata 26-12 to 26-16
 - limitations 26-1
 - preparing 26-8
 - types 26-2
- UniDirectional property 22-48
- unindexed datasets 22-19, 22-21
- unions
 - accessing A-4
 - members with different types A-4
 - Type Library editor 39-10, 39-16 to 39-17
- units
 - adding components 45-12
 - C++Builder 45-11
 - CLX 14-9 to 14-11
 - existing
 - adding a component 45-12
 - VCL 14-9 to 14-11
- units, in conversion 4-27
- Unlock method 11-7
- UnlockList method 11-7
- unmapped types 13-23
- UnRegisterTypeLib function 38-18
- update errors
 - resolving 27-20, 27-22 to 27-24, 28-8, 28-11
 - response messages 29-36
- update objects 24-39 to 24-47, 27-18
 - executing 24-45 to 24-46
 - parameters 24-41 to 24-42, 24-45, 24-46 to 24-47

- providers and 24-11
- queries 24-46 to 24-47
- SQL statements 24-40 to 24-43
 - using multiple 24-43 to 24-46
- Update SQL editor 24-40 to 24-41
 - Options page 24-40
 - SQL page 24-41
- UPDATE statements 24-39, 24-43, 28-9
- UpdateBatch method 14-25, 25-12, 25-13
- UpdateCalendar method 56-4
- UpdateMode property 28-10
 - client datasets 27-21
- UpdateObject method 43-14, 43-15
- UpdateObject property 24-11, 24-32, 24-39, 24-44
- UpdatePropertyPage method 43-14
- UpdateRecordTypes property 14-25, 24-32, 27-18
- UpdateRegistry method 29-8
- UpdatesPending property 14-25, 24-32
- UpdateStatus property 14-25, 24-32, 25-12, 27-18, 28-9
- UpdateTarget method 8-28
- up-down controls 9-5
- URI vs. URL 32-4
- URL property 29-24, 29-25, 33-9, 36-16
- URLs 32-3
 - host names 37-4
 - IP addresses 37-4
 - javascript libraries 29-32, 29-33
 - SOAP connections 29-25
 - vs. URIs 32-4
 - Web browsers 32-5
 - Web connections 29-24
- Use CORBA Object wizard 31-14
- user interfaces 8-1, 18-15 to 18-16
 - forms 8-1 to 8-4
 - isolating 18-6
 - layout 8-4
 - multi-record 19-14
 - organizing data 19-7 to 19-8, 19-14 to 19-15
 - single record 19-7
- user list service 34-9, 34-25

- user-defined messages 51-6, 51-8
- user-defined types 54-4
- uses clause
 - adding data modules 7-23
- uuid argument 13-2

V

- validating data entry 23-15
- Value property
 - aggregates 27-13
 - fields 23-17
 - parameters 22-45, 22-51
- ValueChecked property 19-13
- values 47-2
 - Boolean 47-2, 47-12, 56-4
 - default data 19-10
 - default property 47-7, 47-11 to 47-12
 - redefining 53-3, 53-4
 - sequential 10-12
 - testing 47-7
- Values property
 - radio groups 19-14
- ValueUnchecked property 19-13
- var parameters 13-16
- VCL 7-12, 45-1 to 45-2
 - C++ language support
 - for 13-1 to 13-29
 - CLX vs. 14-5 to 14-7
 - exception classes 12-16
 - exception handling 12-15
 - main thread 11-4
 - object construction 13-9
 - overview 3-1 to 3-2
 - TComponent branch 3-7
 - TControl branch 3-8
 - TObject branch 3-5
 - TPersistent branch 3-6
 - TWinControl branch 3-9
 - units 14-9 to 14-11
- VCL applications
 - porting to Linux 14-2 to 14-14
- vcl60.bpl 15-1, 15-9, 17-6
- penwin.dll 15-11
- VCLCONTROL_IMPL
 - macro 43-3, 43-5
- VCL-style classes 13-1
 - inheritance 13-2
- VendorLib property 26-3
- version control 2-5
- version information
 - ActiveX controls 43-5
 - type information 39-8
- vertical track bars 9-5
- VertScrollBar 9-4
- video cassettes 10-32
- video clips 10-29, 10-31
- viewing scripts 34-32
- VisualStyle property 9-11
- virtual
 - class methods 13-15
 - functions 13-12
 - keyword 46-9
 - method table 46-9
 - methods 49-3
 - properties as 47-2
 - property editors 52-8 to 52-9
- Visible property 3-2
 - cool bars 8-49
 - fields 23-12
 - menus 8-41
 - toolbars 8-49
- VisibleButtons property 19-29, 19-30
- VisibleChanged method 51-14
- VisibleColCount property 9-15
- VisibleRowCount property 9-15
- VisualCLX
 - defined 14-5
 - packages 15-9
- VisualSpeller Control 17-5
- vtables 38-4
 - COM interface pointer 38-4
 - component wrappers 40-6
 - creator classes and 40-5, 40-12
 - dual interfaces 41-12
 - type libraries and 38-17
 - vs dispinterfaces 39-9

W

- W3C 35-2
- WaitFor method 11-9, 11-10
- WantReturns property 9-3
- WantTabs property 9-3
 - data-aware memo controls 19-8
 - data-aware rich edit controls 19-9
- .wav files 10-32
- wchar_t character constant A-4
- wchar_t widechar 14-19
- weak packaging 15-11
- Web application debugger 32-9, 33-2, 34-8
- Web application modules 34-2, 34-3
- Web application object 33-3
- Web applications
 - ActiveX 38-13, 43-1, 43-16 to 43-18
 - multi-tiered clients 29-30
 - ASP 38-13, 42-1
 - database 29-28 to 29-40
 - deploying 17-10
- Web Broker 7-17
- Web Broker server
 - applications 32-1 to 32-3, 33-1 to 33-20
 - accessing databases 33-17
 - adding to projects 33-3
 - architecture 33-3
 - creating 33-1 to 33-3
 - creating responses 33-7
 - event handling 33-5, 33-7, 33-8
 - managing database connections 33-17
 - overview 33-1 to 33-4
 - posting data to 33-10
 - querying tables 33-20
 - response templates 33-13
 - sending files 33-12
 - templates 33-2
 - Web dispatcher 33-4
- Web browsers
 - URLs 32-5
- Web connections 29-10 to 29-11, 29-24
- Web data modules 34-2, 34-3, 34-4 to 34-5
 - structure 34-5
- Web deployment 43-16 to 43-18
 - multi-tiered applications 29-30
- Web Deployment Options dialog box 43-17
- Web dispatcher
 - auto-dispatching objects 29-35
 - handling requests 33-3
- Web items 29-37
 - properties 29-37 to 29-38
- Web modules 33-2, 33-4, 34-2, 34-2 to 34-5
 - adding database sessions 33-17
 - DLLs and, caution 33-3
 - types 34-2
- Web page editor 29-37

- Web page modules 34-2, 34-4
- Web pages 32-5
 - InternetExpress page producer 29-36 to 29-40
- Web scripting 34-7
- Web server applications 7-16, 7-17, 32-1 to 32-11
 - ASP 42-1
 - debugging 32-9 to 32-11
 - multi-tiered 29-31 to 29-40
 - overview 32-6 to 32-11
 - resource locations 32-3
 - standards 32-3
 - types 32-6
- Web servers 29-30, 32-1 to 32-11, 42-6
 - client requests and 32-5
 - debugging 33-2
 - types 34-8
- Web Service Definition Language *See* WSDL
- Web Services 36-1 to 36-17
 - adding 36-12 to 36-13
 - clients 36-16 to 36-17
 - complex types 36-3 to 36-9
 - data context 36-8
 - enumerated types 36-6
 - exceptions 36-14 to 36-15
 - holder classes 36-6
 - implementation
 - classes 36-12 to 36-13
 - importing 36-13 to 36-14
 - namespaces 36-3
 - registering implementation
 - classes 36-12
 - scalar types 36-3
 - servers 36-9 to 36-16
 - wizard 36-11 to 36-14
 - writing servers 36-10 to 36-15
- Web Services importer 36-13
- WebDispatch property 29-35, 36-11
- WebPageItems property 29-36
- WebServices page (Component palette) 29-2
- WebServices page (New Items dialog) 29-2
- WebSnap 32-1 to 32-3
 - access rights 34-28 to 34-30
 - global script objects B-14
 - login pages 34-26 to 34-28
 - login support 34-24 to 34-30
 - requiring logins 34-28
- server-side scripting 34-30 to 34-33, B-1 to B-38
 - server-side scripting
 - examples B-19
 - tutorial 34-11 to 34-22
- wide character constants A-4
- wide characters 16-3
- widechar 14-19
- widestrings 14-19
- WidgetDestroyed
 - property 51-14
- widgets 3-9
 - creating 14-11
 - Windows controls vs. 14-5
- Width property 8-4, 9-14
 - data grid columns 19-16
 - data grids 19-20
 - pens 10-5, 10-6
- Win 3.1 page (Component palette) 5-8
- WIN32 14-17
- Win32 exception handling 12-6
- Win32 page (Component palette) 5-7
- WIN64 14-17
- Win-CGI applications 32-5, 32-6, 32-7
 - .ini files 32-7
 - creating 33-2, 34-8
- window
 - class 45-4
 - controls 45-3
 - handles 45-3, 45-4, 45-5
 - message handling 55-4
 - procedures 51-3
- Windows
 - API functions 45-3, 50-1, 51-2
 - common dialog boxes 57-1
 - creating 57-2
 - executing 57-5
 - controls, subclassing 45-4
 - device contexts 45-7, 50-1
 - events 48-4
 - Graphics Device Interface (GDI) 10-1
 - messages 51-3
 - messaging 51-1 to 51-10
- windows
 - resizing 9-6
- wininet.dll 29-24, 29-25
- wizards 7-24
 - Active Server Object 38-21, 42-2 to 42-3
 - ActiveForm 38-21, 43-6 to 43-7
- ActiveX controls 38-21, 43-4 to 43-5
- ActiveX library 38-21
- Automation object 38-20, 41-4 to 41-8
- COM 38-19 to 38-23, 41-1
- COM object 38-20, 39-12, 41-2 to 41-4, 41-5 to 41-8
- COM+ Event object 38-21, 44-22 to 44-23
- COM+ Event subscriber object 44-23
- Component 45-9
- Console Wizard 7-4
- CORBA client 31-13
- CORBA Object 31-6, 31-13
- CORBA Server 31-5
 - creating 58-2, 58-3 to 58-7
 - debugging 58-11
 - installing 58-7, 58-22 to 58-24
- Property Page 43-13 to 43-14
- property page 38-21
- Remote Data Module 29-13 to 29-14
- Resource DLL 16-10
 - responding to IDE events 58-18
- SOAP Data Module 29-15 to 29-16
- Tools API 58-3
- Transactional Data Module 29-14 to 29-15
- transactional object 38-21, 44-17 to 44-20
- Type Library 38-21, 39-12 to 39-13
 - types 58-3
- Use CORBA Object 31-14
- Web Services 36-11 to 36-14
- XML Data Binding 35-5 to 35-9
- WM_APP constant 51-6
- WM_KEYDOWN message 56-9
- WM_LBUTTONDOWN message 56-9
- WM_MBUTTONDOWN message 56-9
- WM_PAINT messages 10-2
- WM_RBUTTONDOWN message 56-9
- WM_SIZE message 55-4
- WndProc method 51-3, 51-5
- word alignment A-5, A-6
- word wrapping 6-7
- WordWrap property 6-7, 9-3

- data-aware memo controls 19-9
- WParam parameter 51-9
- Wrap property 8-46
- Wrapable property 8-46
- wrappers 45-4, 57-2
 - See also* component wrappers
- initializing 57-3
- Write By Reference
 - COM interface
 - properties 39-8
- Write method
 - TFileStream 4-2
- write method 47-6
- write reserved word 47-8, 54-5
- WriteBuffer method
 - TFileStream 4-2
- write-only properties 47-6
- WSDL 36-2
 - files 36-15
 - importing 36-3, 36-13 to 36-14, 36-16
 - publishing 36-15 to 36-16
- WSDL administrator 36-15
- WSDL publisher 36-11
- WSDLIMP 36-14

X

- XDR file 35-2
- Xerox Network System (XNS) 37-1
- .xfm files 14-2
- XML 30-1, 35-1
 - database applications 30-1 to 30-10
 - document type
 - declaration 35-2
 - mappings 30-2 to 30-3
 - defining 30-4
 - parsers 35-2
 - processing instructions 35-1
 - SOAP and 36-1
- XML brokers 29-32, 29-34 to 29-36
 - HTTP messages 29-35
- XML Data Binding wizard 35-5 to 35-9
- XML documents 30-1, 35-1 to 35-9
 - attributes 30-5, 35-5
 - child nodes 35-5
 - components 35-3 to 35-4, 35-8

- converting to data packets 30-1 to 30-8
- generating interfaces for 35-6
- mapping nodes to fields 30-2
- nodes 35-2, 35-4 to 35-5
- properties for nodes 35-6
- publishing database information 30-9
- root node 35-4, 35-6, 35-9
- transformation files 30-1
- XML files 25-14
- XML schemas 35-2
- XMLBroker property 29-38
- XMLDataFile property 28-2, 30-8
- XMLDataSetField
 - property 29-38
- XMLMapper 30-2, 30-4 to 30-6
- XSD file 35-2
- XSLPageProducer 34-4

Y

- Year property 55-6

Z

- zero-length files A-9

